INDEX.

	PA	GB
Bill of Complaint		1
Answer		10
Amendment to Ans	swer	20
Stipulation in re	Depositions From Former	
Case		40
Count	AINANT'S TESTIMONY.	
COMPLA	IINANI'S IESTIMOTIC	
	PRIMA FACIE.	
Marvin, Harry No	rton,	0=
	Direct	25
	Cross	33
	Re-direct	50
	Re-cross	60
1.1		
NATURE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE	REBUTTAL.	
Anthony, Frederic	k A.,	
	Direct	
ran tar	Cross	654
Armat, Thomas,		
	Direct	382
	Cross	384
Casler, Herman,		
The state of the s	Direct	387
	Cross	388
Dickson, William	K. L.,	
C."	Direct	
	Cross	
	TIC CIT CCO	
100	Re-cross	505
ACCUPATION OF THE PARTY OF THE	The state of the s	

			PAGE
Kleinert, Emil W.,		*1	
	Direct		. 619
	Cross		. 632
Latham, Woodville,			
	Direct		507
	Cross		. 545
	Re-direct		. 616
Market Commence	Re-cross		distribution of the same of th
Lauste, Eugene,			
	Direct		. 390
	Cross		
	Re-direct		. 438
	Re-cross		
Marvin, Harry Nort			
	Direct		. 335
	Cross		. 370
Page, Parker W.,			
	Direct		. 671
	Cross		. 674
Stephens, Thomas W			
	Direct		. 663
	Cross		. 666
COMPLA	INANT'S EXHIBITS		
COMPLA	INANI'S BAHHILIS		
		Off. Page	Ptd. Page
Assignment, Anthor	ny & Co. to An-		
thony & Scovill	Co. (Exhibit B).	23	725
Assignment, Anthon	y & Scovili Co. to		
American Muto	scope & Biograph		
Co. (Exhibit C))	23	727
Assignment, Americ			
	o Motion Picture		
	xhibit D)	23	730
Stipulation as to			
	Amusement Co.'s		
	Ise Thereof, and		
	of Armat Patent		
	h		

Off. Page	Ptd Page
Letter, Motion Picture Patents Co. to	
L. Bologino (Exhibit G) 58	745
Letter, Motion Picture Patents Co. to	
Universal Film Exchange of New	
York (Exhibit H) 58	746
Letter, Motion Picture Patents Co. to	
Universal Film Mfg. Co. (Exhib-	
it I) 58	748
Registry Receipt (Exhibit J) 59	751
Registry Return Receipt (Exhibit K) 59	753
Lauste Deposition in Latham vs. Ar-	
mat Interference (Exhibit L) 380	754
Latham Deposition in Latham vs. Ar-	
mat Interference (Exhibit M) 380	803
Colt Bills and Letters (Exhibit N) 380	1001
Clipping, Chicago Inter-Ocean (Ex-	
hibit O) 380	1005
Eastman Kodak Co. Bill Feb. 18,	
1895 (Exhibit P) 380	1010
Eastman Kodak Co. Bill Apr. 5, 1895	
(Exhibit Q) 380	1011
Eastman Kodak Co. Bill Apr. 27,	
1895 (Exhibit R) 381	1012
Eastman Letter (Exhibit S) 381	1013
Decision, Examiner of Interferences,	
Latham vs. Armat Interference	
(Exhibit T) 381	1015
Film of Griffo & Barnett Fight (Ex-	
hibit W) 381	1041
Otway Latham's Note of Experiment	
(Exhibit X) 381	1043

	Off. Page	Ptd. Page
Clipping, Sunday Mercury (Exhib-		
it Y)	381	1045
Clipping, New York Sun (Exhibit Z)	381	1047
Lauste Photograph (Exhibit CC)	381	1071
Bill of Boston Gear Walks, Jan.		
7, 1895	677	631
Patent, U. S.:		
No. 707,934, Latham Patent in Suit		
(Exhibit A)	23	711
Patent, British:		
No. 4,841 of 1896, Johnson (Latham)		15.43
(Exhibit BB)	381	1057
Drawings:		
Defendant, Prague Amusement Co.'s		
Machine (Exhibit E)	24	737
Certified Copy Latham Drawings		
Used in Latham vs. Armat Inter-		
ference (Exhibit U)		1029
Lauste Sketch (Exhibit V)		1039
Latham Drawings, Latham Exhibit		
No. 7 of Latham vs. Armat Inter-		
ference (Exhibit AA)	381	1049
Physical:		n more (A
Land on Defend		
Sample Reel of Film Used on Defend-		
ant, Prague Amusement Co.'s	24	
Machine (Exhibit F)	-	

DEFENDANTS' TESTIMONY.

DEFENDA		
		AGE
Barnes, Herbert C.,		
	Direct	266
	Cross	272
Beach, Frederick C.,		
	Direct	198
	Cross	200
Blair, Thomas H.,		
	Direct	188
	Cross	192
Bolognino, Lawrence		
	Direct	63
	Cross	63
Chinnock, Alvah L.,		
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Direct	295
Chinnock, Charles E.,		
, on the same of t	Direct	204
	Cross	
	Re-direct	242
Dyer, Frank L.,	are direct	
Dyer, Frank I.,	Direct	186
Edge, Howard H.,	Direct	100
Euge, Howard II.,	Disecti	210
Dama William	Direct	310
Edge, William,	Di	000
	Direct	
0 0 0	Cross	278
Gray, Robert D.,		
	Direct	
	Cross	197
Hammer, Edwin W.,		
	Direct	
	Cross	134
Hollman, William A.		
	Direct	290

		PAGE
Jenkins, Charles F.,		
	Direct	142
Lahey, James W.,		
	Direct	279
Lohman, Harry C.,		
	Direct	257
	Cross	261
*	Re-direct	263
Maltby, Frank D.,		
	Direct	314
	Cross	323
	Re-direct	328
	Re-cross	328
Miles, Herbert L.,		
	Direct	172
	Cross	176
	Re-direct	178
Milliken, John A.,		
	Direct	300
	Cross	305
	Re-direct	308
Moore, Robert T.,		
adore, adorete an	Direct	263
Morton, Baxter,		
morton, Duaver,	Direct	162
	Cross	169
Pearson, Charles O.,		
rearrow, charles on,	Direct	246
	Cross	253
	Re-direct	255
Porter, Edwin S.,	The direct	
Torter, Burm S.,	Direct	180
	Cross	181
Smith, Albert E.,	Closs	1.71
Smith, Arbert E.,	Direct	183
Smith, Charles W.,	Diffect	1.00
Simul, Charles W.,	Direct	243
	171144	640

		PAGE
Thompson, George S.,		
Direct		330
Walker, Herbert,		
Direct		201
DEFENDANTS' EXHIBITS.		
DEFENDANTS EXHIBITS.		
	Off. Page	Ptd. Page
License Notice (Exhibit 1)	63	1073
License Agreement, Precision Ma-		
chine 'Co. and Motion Picture		
Patents Co. (Exhibit 2)	37	1074
Decision, Dickinson, J., in U. S. vs.		
Motion Picture Patents Co., et al.		
(Exhibit 4)	47	1089
Chinnock Agreement (Exhibit 35)	126	1297
Chinnock-Hough-Werner Agreement		
(Exhibit 36)	126	1300
Hough Letter of Jan. 15, 1895 (Ex-		
hibit 37)	126	1301
Certificate of Incorporation, Maltby		
Mfg. Co. (Exhibit 38)	126	1302
Affidavit of Joseph F. McCoy (Exhib-		
it 39)	126	1306
Decision, Board of Examiners-in-		
Chief, Latham vs. Armat Inter-		
ference (Exhibit 45)	138	1437
Decision, Commissioner of Patents,		
Latham vs. Armat Interference		
(Exhibit 46)	139	1458
Decision, Court of Appeals, Latham		
vs. Armat Interference (Exhib-		
it 47)		1469
Baltmore Sun Article (Exhibit 48)	139	1481
Dyer Interview in Show World		
(Exhibit 49)	139	1487

File Wrapper:		5
	Off.	Ptd.
File Wrapper and Contents, Latham	rage	rage
Patent No. 707,934, Patent in		
Suit (Exhibit 44)	131	1321
Patents, U. S.:		
No. 224,440, Kidder (Exhibit 5)	76	1112
No. 433,776, Eckerson (Exhibit 6)	76	1119
No. 508,814, Cox (Exhibit 7)	77	1184
No. 376,247, Le Prince (Exhibit 11)	86	1144
No. 491,993, Edison (Exhibit 21)	101	1196
	101	1200
No. 589,168, Edison (Exhibit 23)	102	1212
No. 525,991, Mayer (Exhibit 24)	104	1221
No. 540,545, Gray (Exhibit 25)	105	1225
No. 569,875, Joly (Exhibit 29)	110	1244
No. 673,992, Armat (Exhibit 31)	117	1258
No. 666,495, Casler (Exhibit 33)	124	1274
No. 606,113, Latham (Exhibit 34)	125	1286
. Patents, French:		
No. 208,617 of 1890, Marey (Exhib-		
it 15)	95	
Translation of No. 208,617, Marey		
(Exhibit 16)	95	1169
No. 231,209 of 1893, Marey (Ex-		
hibit 18)	98	
Translation of No. 231,209, Marey		
(Exhibit 19)	98	1179
No. 249,875 of 1895, Joly (Ex-		
	110	
Translation of No. 249,875, Joly		
(Exhibit 28)	110	1233

Patent, British:	Off. Page	Ptd. Page
No. 10,131 of 1889, Greene & Evans	2 480	
(Exhibit 12)	89	1153
Drawings:		
Diagram of Kidder Patent No. 224,440		
(Exhibit 8)	80	1137
Diagram of Eckerson Patent No. 433,776 (Exhibit 9)	83	1139
Diagram of Cox Patent No. 508,814		
(Exhibit 10)	86	1141
Diagram of Greene & Evans British Patent No. 10,131 of 1889 (Ex-		
hibit 13)	94	1165
Diagram No. 2 of Greene & Evans		
British Patent No. 10,131 of 1889 (Exhibit 14)	94	1167
Diagram of Marey French Patent		
1890 (Exhibit 17)	98	1177
Diagram of Marey French Patent 1893 (Exhibit 20)		1193
Diagram of Gray Patent No. 540,545		
(Exhibit 26) Patent No.		1231
Diagram of Joly French Patent No. 249,875 and U. S. Patent No.		
569,875 (Exhibit 30)	117	1255
Diagram of Armat Patent No. 673,992 (Exhibit 32)	194	1271
Diagram of Chinnock Camera (Ex-		
hibit 43)	129	1319
Physical:		
Simplex Machine Used by the Prague		
Amusement Co. (Exhibit 3)	39	
Chinnock Camera (Exhibit 40) Receipt Book of American Kineto		
scope Company (Exhibit 42)		

Photographs:

Photographs:		-
Photograph No. 1, Chinnock Camera	Off. Page	Ptd Page
(Exhibit 41-A)	194	1309
Photograph No. 2, Chinnock Camera	120	1909
(Exhibit 41-B)	126	1311
Photograph No. 3, Chinnock Camera	120	1911
(Exhibit 41-C)	196	1313
Photograph No. 4, Chinnock Camera	120	1010
(Exhibit 41-D)	126	1315
Photograph No. 5, Chinnock Camera	120	1010
1 mg	126	1317
Photograph of Feeding Mechanism,		1011
Atlantic Machine (Exhibit 50)	382	1491
Petition for Rehearing		. 679
Opinion, Hough, D. J		. 693
Decree		698
Petition for Appeal and Order Thereo	n	699
Assignment of Errors		700
Citation		702
Order on Praecipe	• • • • • • • •	704
Praecipe		707
Stipulation (re record)		708
Certificate		710
		110
Opinion of United States Circuit Court of A	ppeals	1492
Decree of United States Circuit Court of A	ppeals	1498
Petition for rehearing		1500
Memorandum opinion on petition for rehea	ring	1510
Order denying petition for rehearing		
Clerk's certificate		1513
Writ of certiorari and return		1514

BILL OF COMPLAINT.

IN THE

District Court of the United States

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

2

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Complainant,

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTUR-ING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, INC., and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COM-PANY, INC.,

Defendants.

In Equity No. E12-194, on Latham Patent No. 707,934.

3

To the Honorable Judges of the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York.

Motion Picture Patents Company, a corporation created, organized and existing under the laws of the State of New Jersey, and a citizen of said State, plaintiff, brings this its Bill of Complaint against Universal Film Manufacturing Company, a corporation created and existing under the laws of the

State of New York, and a citizen of said State, and having a regular and established place of business in the City of New York, County of New York, State of New York, Universal Film Exchange of New York, Inc., a corporation created and existing under the laws of the State of New York and a citizen of said State, having a regular and established place of business in the City of New York, County of New York, and Prague Company, Inc., a corporation and existing under the laws of the State of New York and a citizen of said State, defendants, for infringement by said defendants of Letters Patent of the United States No. 707,934, dated August 26, 1902, committed in said City of New York, County of New York, State of New York, and elsewhere within this judicial district and elsewhere within said State of New York.

And thereupon your orator complains and says:

I. That prior to the 1st day of June, 1896, one Woodville Latham, a citizen of the United States, then residing in the City, County and State of New York, was the original, first and sole inventor or discoverer of certain new and useful improvements in Projecting-Kinetoscopes, which were not known or used by others in this country before his invention or discovery thereof, and not patented or described in any printed publication in this or any foreign country, before his invention or discovery thereof or more than two years prior to his application for patent in the county hereinafter mentioned, and not in public use or on sale in the United States for more than two years prior to his said application, and not abandoned by him; and that the said

Woodville Latham did, on the first day of June, 1896, make due application in writing, according to law, to the Commissioner of Patents of the United States for the grant of letters patent therefor, and did pay into the Treasury of the United States the fees required by law, and did then and there in all respects comply with all the necessary conditions and requirements of the Statutes of the United States in such case made and provided.

II. That thereafter by certain mesne assignments in writing duly executed and delivered and duly recorded in the United States Patent Office in Liber Y-54, page 146 and Liber Y-54, page 147, the E. and H. T. Anthony & Company, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of New York, acquired the entire right, title and interest to the said invention or discovery in projecting kinetoscopes, and in and to the said application for letters patent, and to any letters patent which might be granted for said invention or discovery, as by said assignment or a duly certified copy thereof here in Court to be produced will more fully and at large appear.

III. That after due examination having been made by the Commissioner of Patents as to the novelty and utility of the said invention or discovery as provided by law, letters patent of and in the name of the United States of America, under the seal of the Patent Office of the United States, signed by the Acting Commissioner of Patents and bearing date the 26th day of August, 1902, and numbered 707,934 and duly recorded according to law, were granted and issued to the said E. and H. T. Anthony & Company, its successors or assigns, where-

8

by there was secured to said E. and H. T. Anthony & Company, for the term of seventeen years from the date thereof, the exclusive right to make, use and sell the said invention or discovery throughout the United States and the territories thereof, as by reference to said letters patent No. 707,934, or a duly authenticated copy thereof, here in Court to be produced will more fully and at large appear.

IV. That by certain mesne assignments in writing, duly executed and delivered, and duly recorded 11 in the United States Patent Office in Liber O-82. page 371, and in Liber O-82, page 372, and in Liber M-81, page 242, all the right, title and interest in and to the said invention or discovery in projecting kinetoscopes, and in and to the said letters patent therefor, including the right to sue for and collect all damages and profits theretofore accrued by reason of past infringement of the said letters patent by the manufacture, use or sale of apparatus embodying the said invention or discovery, passed to and were acquired by your orator, as by said assignment or a duly authenticated copy thereof here in Court to be produced, will more fully and at large 12 appear, and that your orator, before the bringing of this suit, was and has ever since continued to be possessed of all of said right, title and interest.

V. That the utility of said patented invention and the validity of said letters patent have been widely recognized and acquiesced in by the public, and that your orator and its predecessors have expended great efforts and large sums of money in introducing said patented invention into practice; and that your orator and its predecessors have enjoyed, and but for the infringement hereinafter set

forth, and others similar thereto, would still be enjoying all the benefits and advantages of the said invention.

VI. That your orator and its predecessors and all persons making or vending projecting kinetoscopes under said letters patent No. 707,934, have given sufficient notice to the public that the articles made and sold by it and them under said letters patent No. 707,934 are patented by fixing thereon a label containing the word "Patented," together with the day and year said letters patent No. 707,934, were granted, and that in addition to such public notice. each of the defendants herein has been directly notified of its said infringement of said letters patent No. 707,934 and of the rights of your orator in the premises, but each of the said defendants has disregarded said notice and has continued, after such notice, to make, use and sell projecting kinetoscopes so patented by said letters patent No. 707,934, and still continues so to do.

VII. That your orator is informed and believes and therefore avers that the said defendants and each of them have well known the facts hereinbefore set forth, but contriving to injure your orator and to deprive it of the profits, benefits and advantages which might and otherwise would have accrued to your orator from the said patent, have, since the 26th day of August, 1902, and within the six years preceding the commencement of this suit, without the license of your orator and against your orator's will, and in spite of said notice and in violation of your orator's rights, jointly made, used and sold, and caused to be made, used and sold, and now continue jointly to make, use and sell and to

14

cause to be made, used and sold, within this judicial district, motion picture apparatus which embodies the invention or discovery described and claimed in your orator's said patent No. 707,934, the exclusive right to make, use and sell which is by law vested in your orator as aforesaid, and the said defendants, and each of them, in disregard of your orator's rights, have refused to pay to your orator the profits which the said defendants and each of them have made by such unlawful manufacture, use and sale, and refuse to desist from further infringement of the said patent.

17

VIII. That by reason of the said unlawful acts of the defendants, your orator has suffered and still suffers great and irreparable loss and injury, and has been deprived, and is being deprived of great gains and profits which it otherwise would have received and enjoyed, but which have been received and enjoyed by the said defendants; that the said defendants intend and threaten to continue such infringement and are prepared and ready so to do; and that your orator is unable to state how many machines embodying the invention described and claimed in the said letters patent No. 707,934 have been made, used and sold as aforesaid by defendants, and is unable to state the extent of the profits received and enjoyed as aforesaid by the defendants on such unlawful making, using and selling, but that your orator believes the same to have been very large and prays a discovery thereof.

18

IX. That forasmuch as your orator can have no adequate relief except in this Court of Equity where matters and things of this sort are properly cognizable and relievable, to the end therefore that the

21

defendants may account for and pay over to your orator the income thus unlawfully derived by them from the violation of the rights of your orator, and the damages due your orator in the premises, and may be restrained from any further violation of your orator's said rights, your orator prays, as follows:

- (1) That each of the said defendants may be required to make, according to the best of the knowledge, information and belief of its proper officers, full, true, direct and perfect answer (but not under oath, an answer under oath being hereby expressly waived) to all matters hereinbefore stated and charged, the same as if specifically interrogated as to the same.
- (2) That your Honors may grant unto your orator a writ or writs of injunction, preliminary until the hearing of this cause and permanent thereafter, issuing out of and under the seal of this Honorable Court, directed to each of the said defendants, and strictly enjoining it and each of its clerks, attorneys, agents, servants and workmen from directly or indirectly making, using or selling any machines containing or embodying the inventions patented and secured by the beforementioned letters patent.
- (3) That upon entering a decree in favor of your orator against each of the said defendants for infringement, as above prayed for, your Honors may proceed to assess or cause to be assessed, under your direction, the damages sustained by your orator by reason of such infringement, and that your Honors may increase the actual damages so assessed to a sum equal to three times the amount

of such assessment, under the circumstances of the wilful and unjust infringement committed by the said defendants in the premises; and also that the said defendants may be decreed to pay the costs of this suit; and that your orator may have such other and further relief in the premises as the nature of the case may require and to your Honors may seem meet.

And may it please your Honors to grant unto your orator the writ or writs of subpoena ad respondendum of the United States of America, issuing out of and under the seal of this Honorable Court, directed to the said defendants, Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, Inc., and Prague Amusement Company, Inc., commanding them, and each of them, on a day certain and under a certain penalty therein to be mentioned, to be and appear in this Honorable Court to make answer to this bill of complaint, and then and there to stand to, perform and abide by such further order, direction and decree as may be made against them.

And as in duty bound your orator will ever pray,

24

23

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,

By H. N. Marvin,

President.

GEORGE F. SCULL, Solicitor for Complainant.

MELVILLE CHURCH, Counsel. State of New York, County of New York, ss.:

H. N. Marvin, being duly sworn, deposes and says that he is the president of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the complainant hereinabove named; that he has read the foregoing bill of complaint subscribed by him, and knows the contents thereof; that the same is true of his own knowledge except as to matters therein stated on information and belief, and as to those matters he verily believes it to be true; and that the reason why this verification is not made by the complainant personally is because it is a corporation.

26

H. N. MARVIN.

Subscribed and sworn to before me this 18th day of March, 1915.

(Seal) WALTER HEARN.

Answer.

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Plaintiff.

VS.

In Equity No. 12-194. On Latham Patent No. 707,934.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTUR-ING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, INC., and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COM-PANY, INC.,

Defendants.

The defendants, Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, Inc., and Prague Amusement Company, Inc., answering the bill of complaint, allege:

Picture Patents Company, the plaintiff herein, is a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of New Jersey, and that the defendants, Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, Inc., and Prague Amusement Company, Inc., are all corporations organized and existing under the laws of the State of New York, and have regular and established places of business in the Borough of Manhattan, City of New York, in said State.

SECOND.—The defendants admit that Woodville Latham, a citizen of the United States, made application in the United States Patent Office on the 1st day of June, 1896, for United States Letters Patent; that thereafter the said application was assigned to the E. & H. T. Anthony Company, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of New York, and that Letters Patent were issued to said E. & H. T. Anthony Company on the 26th day of August, 1902, No. 707,934, but the defendants deny that the said Woodville Latham was the original, first and sole inventor or discoverer of the alleged new and useful improvements in Projecting-Kinetoscopes purporting to be set forth in said application or in the said Letters Patent; and they deny that the same were not known or used by others in this country before his alleged invention or discovery thereof, deny that the same were not patented or described in any printed publication in this or any foreign country before his alleged invention or discovery thereof, or more than two years prior to his application for his said Letters Patent, deny that the same were not in public use or on sale in the United States for more than two years prior to his said application for said Letters Patent, and deny that the same were not abandoned by the said Woodville Latham. The defendants have no knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to whether said Latham paid into the treasury of the United States the fees required by law, and they deny, on information and belief, that the said Woodville Latham did in all respects comply with all the necessary conditions and requirements and the statutes of the United States in such case made and provided.

32

36

THIRD.—The defendants have no knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to whether by certain mesne assignments in writing, or otherwise, the whole or any part of the right, title and interest in and to the said alleged invention or discovery in Projecting-Kinetoscopes, or in and to the said Letters Patent therefor, or any rights whatever in or to the said Letters Patent, or the right to recover damages or profits for the infringement of the same passed to or were acquired by the plaintiff, the said Motion Picture Patents Company. Defendants have no knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to whether the said plaintiff before the bringing of this suit was, or has since continued to be, possessed of all or any of the said right, title and interest in and to said Letters Patent. fendants deny upon information and belief that the utility of the said alleged invention or the validity of said Letters Patent have been widely or at all recognized and acquiesced in by the public, and that the plaintiff and its predecessors have expended great efforts and large sums of money in introducing the said alleged invention into practice, and that the plaintiff and its predecessors have enjoyed, and but for the alleged infringement of the defendants and other infringements similar thereto, if any there be, would still be enjoying all or any of the benefits and advantages, if any there be, of the said alleged invention.

FOURTH.—The defendants have no knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to whether the plaintiff and its predecessors and all persons making or vending Projecting-Kinetoscopes under

said Letters Patent No. 707,934 have given sufficient or any notice to the public that the articles made and sold by it and them, purporting or claimed to be under said Letters Patent No. 707,934, are patented by fixing thereon a label containing the word "Patented" together with the day and year said Letters Patent No. 707,934 were granted. It is admitted that the plaintiff notified each of the defendants Universal Film Manufacturing Co. and Universal Film Exchange of New York that it was infringing the said Letters Patent, but the said notice was in each case insufficient and inadequate to direct the defendants or any of them to the particular acts which were claimed to be infringements of the patent and in violation of the plaintiff's rights therein. The defendants deny that they did at any time jointly make, use and sell, Projecting-Kinetoscopes embodying the inventions of said Letters Patent No. 707,934.

FIFTH.—The defendants deny that they have at any time or in any manner without the license of the plaintiff or in violation of its rights, jointly made, used and sold, or caused to be made, used and sold, or that they continue generally to make, use and sell, or cause to be made, used and sold, within this judicial district, or elsewhere, any motion picture apparatus which embodies the alleged invention or discovery purporting to be described and claimed in said Letters Patent No. 707,934; and they deny that the plaintiff is entitled to any profits made by the defendants, in any manner whatsoever, and they deny each and every charge of infringement and each and every of the allegations contained in the seventh paragraph of the said bill of complaint.

38

SIXTH.—Defendants deny that the plaintiff has suffered, or still suffers, any loss or injury by reason of any acts of the defendants, or any of them, and deny that the plaintiff has been deprived, or is being deprived, of any gains or profits which have been received or enjoyed by the defendants or any of them; they deny that they intend or threaten to continue infringement of the said Letters Patent, or that they are prepared or ready so to do; and they deny that they have made any profits whatever to which, or to any part of which, the plaintiff is entitled.

41

SEVENTH.—Defendants allege, upon information and belief, that the said Letters Patent No. 707,934 were issued with claims of invention other than, and different and distinct from, the invention or inventions set forth and claimed in the original application for said Letters Patent and without any new or additional oath by the applicant, such as is required by the statute as a condition of the grant of Letters Patent, and for that reason the said Letters Patent were and are void.

42

Eighth.—Defendants further answering, allege on information and belief that said Letters Patent No. 707,934 were and are invalid and void because the alleged inventions and discoveries described and claimed therein, and all the material and substantial parts thereof, had been, prior to the alleged invention and discovery thereof by said Woodville Latham, patented, described and published in the following United States and Foreign Letters Patent:

UNITED STATES LETTERS PATENT.

No. 224,440, February 10, 1880, W. P. Kidder

No. 433,776, August 5, 1890, David I. Eckerson

No. 493,426, March 14, 1893, Thomas A. Edison

No. 540,545, June 4, 1895, Robert D. Gray

No. 569,875, October 20, 1896, M. J. H. Joly

No. 589,168, August 31, 1897, Thomas A. Edison

No. 666,495, January 22, 1901, Herman Casler

No. 673,992, May 14, 1901, Thomas Armat

BRITISH PATENT.

44

No. 10,131 of 1889 to Greene & Evans.

FRENCH PATENTS.

No. 208,617, October 3, 1890, A. M. Marey No. 231,209, June 29, 1893, A. M. Marey No. 249,875, August 26, 1895, M. J. H. Joly

also in other United States and foreign Letters Patent now unknown to these defendants, but which when known they pray leave, by proper amendment, to insert in this answer.

45

NINTH.—Defendants allege, upon information and belief, that the said Letters Patent No. 707,934 were and are invalid and void, because the alleged inventions purporting to be patented and described and claimed in said Letters Patent and every material and substantial part thereof, were, prior to the supposed invention thereof by the said Latham, published and described in numerous printed publications now unknown to these defendants, but which, when ascertained, they pray leave by proper amendment to insert in this answer.

TENTH.—Defendants allege, upon information and belief, that said Letters Patent No. 707,934 were and are invalid and void, because the said Latham was not the original and first inventor or discoverer of the alleged invention or inventions purporting to be patented in and by said Letters Patent, but that the same, and every material and substantial part thereof, were, prior to the alleged invention thereof by the said Latham, invented, if there is any patentable invention described and claimed therein, by, or known to and used by, the following named persons, at the places set opposite their respective names, such persons now residing to the best of these defendants, knowledge and belief at the places respectively specified, to-wit:

Charles E. Chinnock,
Adenor Petit,
Eugene Lauste,
(use at New York City).

Brooklyn, N. Y.
Newark, New Jersey,
London, England.

and by the patentees of the foregoing United States Letters Patent set forth in the "Eighth" paragraph hereof, whose residences are stated in their respective patents, at their said places of residence, and elsewhere; and by other persons whose names and residences are not at present known to these defendants, but which, when ascertained, they pray leave by proper amendment to insert in this answer.

ELEVENTH.—Defendants allege, upon information and belief, that the said Latham surreptitiously and unjustly obtained the said Letters Patent No. 707,934 for that which was in fact invented by others, if the said Letters Patent describe and claim any patentable invention, to-wit, each of the persons above-named in paragraphs

51

"Eighth" and "Tenth," who were using reasonable diligence in adopting and perfecting the same.

TWELFTH.—Defendants allege, upon information and belief, that the said Letters Patent No. 707,934 were and are invalid and void, because the alleged inventions purporting to be patent therein were in public use or on sale in the United States, by the persons set forth in paragraph "Tenth" hereof, and by the patentees set forth in the "Eighth" paragraph hereof at the places set opposite the names of said persons and patentees respectively in said paragraphs, for more than two years prior to any application for said Letters Patent by the said Latham, and that the said alleged invention of the said Letters Patent were abandoned to the public by the said Latham.

THIRTEENTH.—Defendants allege, upon information and belief, that the said Letters Patent No. 707,934 were and are invalid and void because the invention or inventions purporting to be patented thereby did not constitute patentable novelty or invention within the meaning of the patent law, in view of the prior state of the art and in view of what was common knowledge on the part of those skilled in the art, all prior to the date of the alleged invention of the said Letters Patent by the said Latham.

FOURTEENTH.—Defendants allege, upon information and belief, that said Letters Patent No. 707,934 were and are invalid and void, because for the purpose of deceiving the public the description and specification filed by said Latham in the United States Patent Office were made to contain less than the whole truth relevant to his alleged invention, or more than was necessary to produce the desired effect.

Fifteenth.—Defendants allege, upon information and belief, that on account of the proceedings of the said Latham in the United States Patent Office, and of the decisions of the United States Patent Office and the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia, rendered and filed in the course of said proceedings and particularly on account of the claims and assertions by and on behalf of said Latham in a certain interference proceeding between the said Latham and Thomas Armat and the decision of the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia in said interference in favor of said Armat and against the said Latham, in which decision said Latham acquiesced, the said Letters Patent No. 707,934 are absolutely invalid and void, and by reason thereof the plaintiff is estopped to claim that said Letters Patent cover apparatus for Projecting Moving Pictures.

54

53

SIXTEENTH .- Defendants allege, upon information and belief, that for a long period of years subsequent to the issue of the said Letters Patent No. 707,934, Moving Picture Projecting Machines similar to those now used by defendant Prague Amusement Company, Inc., were manufactured, sold and used by many persons with the knowledge of the plaintiff's said predecessors and without any complaint on their part or assertion that said machines or mechanism infringed the said Letters Patent, and the plaintiff's said predecessors neglected to assert any alleged rights under said Letters Patent and by reason of such neglect and laches the plaintiff and its predecessors forfeited all right to now claim that any Moving Picture Projecting Machines now made, used or sold by the defendants are infringements of any of plaintiff's alleged rights under the said Letters Patent. and by said acts the plaintiff and its said predecessors abandoned all right to any claim of infringement of said Letters Patent and to any relief in equity therefor.

SEVENTEENTH.—Defendants allege, upon information and belief, that if the plaintiff is entitled to any redress for any acts of these defendants, it has a full, complete and adequate remedy at law, and that this Court, as a Court of Equity, has no jurisdiction.

56

WHEREFORE, defendants pray that the bill of complaint be dismissed with costs.

EDMUND WETMORE,
OSCAR W. JEFFERY,
WETMORE & JENNER,
Solicitors for Defendants,
34 Pine Street,
New York City.

Amendment to Answer.

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Complainant,

VS.

In Equity No. 12-194. On Latham Patent No. 707,934.

59 UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTUR-ING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, INC., and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COM-PANY, INC.,

Défendants.

On reading and filing the consent hereto annexed and, on motion of Wetmore & Jenner, solicitors for the defendants, it is

ORDERED that the answer of the said defendants, heretofore filed herein, be and the same hereby is amended by inserting at the end of paragraph Fifth thereof, the following:

"But the defendants admit that the defendant, Prague Amusement Company, Inc., on and subsequent to December 29, 1914, at the 72nd Street Playhouse in the Borough of Manhattan, City of New York, used a motion picture projecting machine, commonly known as the 'Simplex' machine, containing and embodying the mechanisms and alleged inventions set forth and claimed in some of the claims of

said Patent No. 707,934, and that the said use of said machine was, as the defendants allege, under a license from the plaintiff under said Letters Patent No. 707,934."

And further by inserting after the Sixth paragraph thereof, the following:

"SIXTH-A.—Defendants further answering say that if and in the event that it shall be determined that the use of the said motion picture projecting machine by defendant, Prague Amusement Company, as stated in the Fifth paragraph of this answer as amended, was not under a license from the plaintiff under said Letters Patent No. 707,934, then and in that case the defendants allege that the said Letters Patent and each and every of the claims thereof were and are invalid and void as hereinafter alleged."

C. M. Hough, h. S. D. J. We hereby consent to the entry of the above order.

Dated, New York, Nov. 16, 1915.

GEORGE F. SCULL, Solicitor for Complainant.

WETMORE & JENNER, Solicitors for Defendants. 62

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Complainant,

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTUR-ING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, INC., and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COM-PANY, INC.,

Defendants.

In Equity 12-194.

New York, Tuesday, December 21st, 1915.

Before-Hon. CHARLES M. HOUGH, D. J.

APPEARANCES:

GEORGE F. SCULL, Esq., and MELVILLE CHURCH, Esq., for Complainant.

Messrs. Wetmore & Jenner, by Edmund Wetmore, Esq., and Oscar W. Jeffery, Esq., for Defendants.

The Court: I wish to ask on the record what claims you are resting on.

Mr. Church: Claim seven.

Mr. Jeffery; Do I understand you rest your whole case on the seventh claim?

Mr. Church: Yes.

Mr. Jeffery: The bill of particulars said the first ten claims.

The Court: Let it be noted on the record that Mr. Church states that the claim of the complainant here is rested upon the seventh claim of the patent in suit.

Mr. Church: I offer in evidence first the patent in suit.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit A.

I also offer in evidence the original acknowledged assignment from E. & H. T. Anthony & Company, to whom the patent was issued, to Anthony & Scovill Company.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit B.

Also the original acknowledged assignment from the Anthony & Scovill Company to the American Mutascope & Biograph Company.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit C.

Also certified copy of acknowledged assignment from the American Mutascope & Biograph Company to the Motion Picture Patents Company.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit D.

Mr. Jeffery: The defendants have no objection to the introduction of the certified copy in lieu of the original, but we do object to that as being an agreement which has been held by the Court in Philadelphia to be an agreement in a combination and system which has been held to be in restraint of trade, contrary to the Statutes of the United States.

Mr. Church: I will say that is a straight assignment.

The Court: Objection overruled. The Sherman law cases have not gone so far as to confiscate property.

Mr. Jeffery: Exception.

68

Mr. Church: I also offer in evidence a stipulation as to the construction of the defendants' machine.

Mr. Jeffery: I will state to the Court that is the machine of only one of the defendants.

Mr. Church: The machine that is complained of at the Seventy-Second Street Play House.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit E.

I also offer in evidence the sample of the film, the reel of defendants' film, which was used on this machine.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit F.

The Court: May it be admitted upon the record that one of the defendants had prior to the infringing act complained of, purchased, and the complainant had sold, the machine, the use of which constituted the infringement before the Court.

Mr. Church: The complainant does not sell machines at all.

The Court: Then it may be admitted on the record that the complainant never did sell the machines the use of which constituted the infringement alleged.

Mr. Church: Yes.

The Court: Then I should like to have it shown, if not now at early convenience, what relation this complainant has, and has had, with the Precision Machine Company which, apparently, did sell the machine that is complained of. I suppose that is a part of Mr. Jeffery's case.

Mr. Church: Yes.

71

HARRY NORTON MARVIN, a witness called on behalf of the complainant, being first duly sworn, testifies as follows:

Direct Examination by Mr. Church.

Q1. Mr. Marvin, will you please state your age, name, residence and occupation? A. Harry Norton Marvin; age, fifty-three; residence, Canastota, New York.

Q2. What has been your educational advantages and training which in your judgment qualifies you to testify as an expert on machines relating to motion pictures? A. After graduating from Syracuse University in 1893 I went into the testing department of the Edison Machine Works, in New York City, and remained there and with the Edison Lighting Company for two or three years in the capacity of expert and later for a year occupied a position of instructor in physics, mathematics and chemistry in a preparatory school at Tivoli, New York. Leaving that position I undertook the invention and development of an electric rock drill with which I was engaged for the next seven or eight years.

In 1894 my attention was directed to motion picture work and I have been identified with that work in various ways ever since.

Q3. State what, if any, has been your experience in the reading of specifications and drawings, and particularly specifications and drawings accompanying letters patent for inventions? A. I have given considerable attention to the reading of specifications and drawings. I have taken out twenty-five or thirty patents myself and for the last ten years have been very closely identified

74

with patent litigation in connection with the moving picture art.

Q4. Have you read and do you understand the specifications and drawings accompanying the Latham patent in suit, Exhibit A? A. I have, and I understand the specifications.

Q5. Will you please, as briefly as possible, describe so much of the mechanism disclosed in this patent as relates to the support and manipulation of the strip of perforated film that is designed to be acted upon by such mechanism? A. That part of the mechanism of the device covered by this patent to which you have referred is generally illustrated in Fig. 6 of the patent.

Referring to Fig. 6 I find here indicated a mechanism for supporting and moving a quantity of flexible film. I find that this mechanism embodies in the first place two supports for the bulk of the film, one at the top and the other at the bottom of the machine. The support at the bottom of the machine being a fixed support, marked 23, and being intended to carry the bulk of the film before it has passed through the machine.

78

By the Court:

Q6. On the spool 22? A. On the spool 22.

The film is finally wound up on the frictional driven support 25 after passing through the machine. After leaving the main support the film passes around a roller 54 and then around a rotary-toothed feed wheel 39 which runs continuously and draws film off from the supply reel and delivers it into the loop 21a. From this loop the film passes around a roller 55 through an exposure window 56 over another rotating toothed wheel

which is arranged to rotate with an intermittent movement, numbered 50. This wheel by its intermittent movement intermittently draws the film from the loop 21a and delivers it into the loop 21b.

From the loop 21b the film passes around the roller 46 which is a toothed-rotary feeding device which runs constantly. It constantly takes up the film from the loop 21b and delivers it to the take-up reel mounted on the frictional support 25.

The operation of the machine then is that the two continuously running toothed feed rollers 39 and 46 constantly produce slack film and take it up respectively.

Q7. They run at the same rate of rotation? A. They run at the same rate of rotation, and are the same diameter.

Between those two continuously running rotary feed devices there is always a slack portion of film. That slack portion of film is acted upon intermittently by the rotary-toothed roller 50. All of these toothed rollers have teeth that engage holes made in the edges of the film.

The existence of the loop 21a enables the intermittently actuated wheel 50 to take up first enough for one picture and then enough for another with a minimum of friction and possible tear.

Q8. If the loop were not formed there the toothed wheel 50 would pull against the toothed wheel 39 and that would be injurious to the film? A. Yes, or if the toothed wheel 39 were not there and the intermittent wheel pulled directly off from the reel, it would tend to tear it. The function of the loop is to relieve all strain on the film incident to the intermittent action.

Q9. What is indicated by 34a? A. That is an eccentric bearing in which is mounted the shaft of a part of the Geneva movement which may be seen

80

in Fig. 4. The Geneva movement consists of two drums or broken gears that work together.

Q10. Then it is the eccentricity of that shaft which is the source of the intermittent movement? A. No. The intermittent movement is accomplished, if you will look at Fig. 4—here is a broken gear, there is a flat part there (indicating).

It is also shown in Fig. 5 better. You see, as the wheel 47 revolves once during every revolution those few teeth engage the teeth in the drum 48. Now, that little 34a is a little eccentric bearing that is put in there so as to take up wear by bringing those surfaces closely together (indicating).

Q11. What is the effect of the maintenance of that loop of film, or slack portion of film between the two continuously rotating toothed feed wheels? A. The effect of that is to provide a very small quantity of free film for the intermittent device to act upon so that the action of the intermittent device and the strain on the film is no greater than if the film were only a few inches in length, that is, a distance substantially equivalent to the distance between those two continuously feeding devices. It being necessary to handle long quantities of film, ordinarily one thousand feet, it is necessary to have something of that sort to relieve the strain. because if you attempt to start the film, or stop it suddenly, the strain upon the little holes would be so great as to tear them.

The function of that slack part of the film is to relieve the film of all strain.

By Mr. Church:

Q12. Is the operation of the mechanism you have described affected by the circumstance that the thing acted upon, the film, the perforated film, is

83

to be used for taking photographs or for projecting photographs? A. As I understand this device the purposes to which that film may be put in the course of this intermittent movement is entirely immaterial.

It is obvious that when the film is stationary at the exposure window you may use it for any purpose you like, either for photographing upon it, or for throwing light upon it to project the picture that may have been printed there.

The operation of the mechanism for moving that film with an intermittent movement without straining it would be the same in any case.

Q13. That is to say, whether it was plain film with pictures or without pictures? A. Yes, it might have pictures on it, it might have pictures painted on it, or etched. It would not at all affect the operation of this piece of mechanism.

Q14. And the special use of this mechanism is indicated in the patent itself? A. The use to which the patentee indicates this mechanism is to be put is that of projecting upon a screen a series of pictures printed upon a flexible strip, for the purpose of making a motion picture exhibition.

The Court: I think I understand that as far as the witness has gone.

Q15. State whether or not you are familiar with the construction and operation of the machine that is pictured in Complainant's Exhibit E? (Witness examines exhibit.) A. I am.

Q16. Do you recognize from the structure shown in the picture the character of the machine, the name of it? A. I recognize these drawings as being drawings of the structure of a motion picture projecting machine known as the Simplex.

86

Q17. Will you please very briefly and in the same manner that you did describe the machine of the complainant's patent, describe the machine pictured in those drawings—

By the Court:

Q18. Let me ask you a question. Does not this Complainant's Exhibit Simplex machine marked Complainant's Exhibit E purport to diagrammatically represent a machine with the same lettering and numbering as in the patent in suit, Fig. 6? A. Fig. 1 of Complainant's Exhibit E appears to correspond to Fig. 6 of the patent in suit, and I notice that the principal parts of the two mechanisms are numbered with identical numbers.

Q19. Now, kindly follow through the Simplex machine, if you will, substantially as you did Fig. 6 of the patent? A. I will direct your attention to the fact that in the patent in suit it is intended that the film should be moved upwards, but in the Complainant's Exhibit E the film is intended to be moved downward. That is the only substantial difference.

Q20. Proceed? A. Comparing, we find that the support of the supply reel of the defendants' machine indicated by 23, compares with the support in the patent in suit 23 found at the bottom of the machine.

Conversely, the take-up reel, which is frictionally driven in each machine, is found in Defendants' machine at the bottom of the machine which is numbered 25.

Q21. As in Fig. 6 of the patent? A. As in Fig. 6 of the patent.

Q22. Show the part of the film and the actuation thereof with particular reference to the loop of

89

slack? A. The film starts from the reel on the support 23 and passes in the defendants' machine downward around the rotary-toothed feed wheel 39.

Q23. Having previously passed the idler 54? A. Having previously passed the idler 54. This rotary-toothed feed wheel 39 draws the film from the upper supply, or magazine, and delivers it into the loop 21a. From the loop it passes down through the exposure opening, or window, and around the rotary-toothed intermittently acting wheel 50, in each drawing. This intermittent toothed wheel delivers the film into the loop 21b, identical in both drawings.

92

The film passes around the continuously running toothed rotary feed wheel 46 and from there it passes down around the idler 56 onto the take-up reel 24, mounted on the frictionally driven support 25.

The Court: Mr. Jeffery, is it denied that the seventh claim of the patent in suit reads upon the Simplex machine?

Mr. Jeffery: No, sir, I do not think so, with one possible exception, I do not think, so far as the language of the claim is concerned.

93

By Mr. Church:

Q24. Will you state whether or not in the construction of the machine shown in the Complainant's patent the two continuously rotating toothed wheels are positively driven? A. They are.

Q25. Is that also true of the defendants' machine? A. That is also true of the defendants' machine, and they are independent of the support for the film.

Q26. And may I also ask whether or not all of the feeding wheels, the continuously operating feed wheels and intermittently operated wheels are adapted to act upon equally spaced holes in the film? A. They are, in both cases.

Q27. Please examine the reel of film marked Complainant's Exhibit F and state whether or not that film corresponds to or differs from the character of film set forth in the patent in suit? (Witness examines film.) A. This film corresponds in characteristics to the film referred to in the patent in suit as being the film intended for use in the machine, having equally spaced holes along its edges and being flexible.

Q28. For the purpose of completing the record will you give a little more extensive description of that film, because it may be lost. Just describe it very briefly? A. This film is a flexible transparent, or translucent film having equally spaced perforations along its edges and having upon it a series of sharply defined equi-distant photographs of different phases of a moving object as observed from a single point of view. It is of very considerable length, apparently, I should say, in the neighborhood of one thousand feet.

Q29. What is the width of that film, and how many perforations are there to a picture? A. This appears to be a film of the standard width, which I know to be one and three-eighth inches. The width of the picture itself is one inch, the height of the picture being three-quarters of an inch, and there are four perforations for each picture on each side.

95

Cross Examination by Mr. Jeffery:

XQ30. You are an officer of the Motion Picture Patents Company? A. Yes.

XQ31. What officer? A. I am president.

XQ32. How long have you been president? A. I have been president for three or four years, I think. I do not remember.

XQ33. How long have you been an officer of that Company altogether? A. I have been an officer of that Company since its organization, in 1908.

XQ24a. This film that you were just shown, Exhibit F, is that a film which is used generally in motion picture exhibiting machines, that is, a film of that nature and style with holes in it as you have described? A. Yes,

XQ25a. How long has that been the case? A. That has been the case ever since exhibiting machines came into vogue.

XQ26a. And that film is covered by a patent, or was covered by a patent?

Mr. Church: Is this proper cross-examination?

The Court: I do not see it, Mr. Jeffery.

Mr. Jeffery: Well, possibly not. We want Mr. Marvin here tomorrow morning then, because we will have to ask him some questions.

The Court: If you tell me that you consider this germane to some, or any, part of your affirmative defense.

Mr. Jeffery: Yes, I do.

The Court: As the question is merely one of the order of proofs you may go on, it being understood that you make the witness your own.

Mr. Jeffery: Yes.

90

XQ27a. Is that film made in accordance with the Edison re-issue patent No. 12,192?

Mr. Church: If your Honor please, that is a question of law.

The Court: No, that is a question of fact.

A. I presume from my observation that that film corresponds to the description given in the Edison re-issue patent.

XQ28a. And that patent expired when? A. That patent expired on the 31st day of August, 1914.

XQ29a. I show you a Simplex machine which bears the name plate of the Precision Machine Company and which bears a notice plate on which is "Manufacturer's Serial No. 3556, and special license 3667." Will you look at that machine and say whether or not that is a machine which contains the mechanism which you have described as being in the Latham patent in suit?

Mr. Church: I object to that as not proper cross-examination.

The Court: It is admitted it is not proper cross-examination. I have said and stick to it that if Mr. Jeffery tells me that it is germane to some of his defense he can go ahead in the interest of speed and make the witness his own.

Mr. Church: All right, if that is the case.

A. Is this a regular standard machine?

XQ30a. It is a regular standard Simplex machine? A. Well, a part of the mechanism is contained here, but I do not see any supports for the film.

XQ31a. If the film feed reel and the take-up reel were on that machine, would it then embody the

102

mechanism which you have described as being the subject of the Latham patent in suit? A. I should say if it had the customary supports for the film that go with the ordinary Simplex machine, as it is commonly known, it would.

XQ32a. This machine contains a place on the top for the reception of the film magazine, does it not? A. Yes, I assume so.

XQ33a. You will notice that this machine bears a license plate on it, do you not, from which I read those numbers? A. Yes, a sort of plate; I do not know whether you would call it a license plate or not.

104

XQ34. Well, for convenience sake I will show you a copy, what I will state to you is a correct copy, of the license notice on there and ask you if that machine bears a plate indicating that it is a license under the Latham patent in suit No. 707,934 and other patents belonging to the Motion Picture Patents Company which are on that plate enumerated? A. I do not wish to be finicky about this matter but I do not want to say anything here that I do not mean. I do not see that this statement on this plate gives a license for that machine.

105

By the Court:

XQ35. Are you able to state whether or not the form of words just before you, whatever the meaning of them may be, is inscribed upon, or fastened to, each Simplex machine? A. Yes, this is the wording of the plates commonly put upon the Simplex machine.

XQ36. And is it true that the patents there enumerated, not only the patent in suit, but other patents enumerated, do belong to the complain-

ant's company of which you are president? A. Yes, sir.

By Mr. Wetmore:

XQ37. Mr. Marvin, your company granted a written license to the Simplex Company, did it not? A. We granted a written license to the Precision Company, the company that manufactures the Simplex machine.

107 By the Court:

Q38. The name of that company is, I think the Precision Company; is that correct? A. I believe that is correct.

By Mr. Wetmore:

XQ39. And your company caused to be placed on that machine the license plate that has been referred to? A. Well, a provision of the license to the Precision Machine Company calls for placing such a plate.

108

XQ40. And your company furnished the wording of the plate? A. We did.

XQ41. And that went out on the market with that plate on it? A. I assume that it did.

XQ42. And these machines which you had are intended to be used with the film which you have identified? A. A film of that character?

XQ43. Yes, exactly of that character? A. Yes. XQ44. And those films of that character are practically universally used with the projecting machines in the motion picture business? A. Yes.

XQ45. And have been so since the time you men-

tioned? A. Well, they have been sold and leased since the expiration of the patent.

XQ46. And before that time also? A. Before the expiration of the patent.

XQ47. Well, since the expiration of the patent they have been used universally in these machines? A. Yes.

Mr. Jeffery: I ask that the copy of the notice on the machine which was identified by the witness be marked for identification.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 1 for identification.

110

By Mr. Jeffery:

XQ48. I show you an agreement which has been produced by the complainant's counsel in this case and which bears date June 20th, 1912, and which purports to be between the Motion Picture Patents Company and the Precision Machine Company, Incorporated, and ask you if that agreement was made between those two companies, and if you signed it? A. That is such an agreement.

111

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence that agreement and ask that a copy be marked in place of the original, at the request of the complainant's counsel.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 2.

Mr. Jeffery: I understand that it is admitted by my friends on the other side that the machines which were used by the Prague Amusement Company, and the use of which is said to constitute part of the infringement in this case, were manufactured and sold by the Precision Machine Company by

virtue and under authority of this license agreement.

Mr. Church: That is correct.

Mr. Jeffery: I would like also to ask my brothers on the other side whether they will now admit that the two pictures named "The Five Pound Note," and "The Refugee" were made subsequent to the expiration of the Edison patent No. 12,192.

Mr. Church: I do not know that.
Mr. Jeffery: Mr. Scull knows that.

Mr. Church: It is a fact, and I admit it.

By Mr. Jeffery:

XQ49. You said that the feeding devices on this machine as shown on the drawings which you have before you were positively driven. What did you mean by that? A. I mean that they are connected, all of them, with the main driving shaft of the machine in such a way as to insure positive movement of the feeding devices when the main crank is operated.

114 XQ50. That is, they are driven directly from the main crank? A. Through the positive gearing.

XQ51. Directly connected with the main shaft? A. Through positive gearing so that if we stop one of those it would stop the main drive unless there was some slippage.

XQ52. Why was an intermittent reed used on that machine as shown in the patent in suit? A. Why was an intermittent feed used in the Latham machine?

XQ53. What is the purpose of the intermittent movement as shown in the Latham patent in suit? A. Well, the purpose of the intermittent move-

ment appears to be to permit the intervals of rest of the film during which pictures of the stationary film may be projected.

XQ54. And during which light is thrown upon the screen? A. Yes. Light is supposed to be thrown on it in order to make it project. If you had no light it would not project although you may use the machine then for a direct view.

XQ55. And that period of rest is greater than the period of movement of the film as drawn by the intermittent, is it not? A. The intermittent indicated in the patent here is calculated to produce a movement in which the period of pause exceeds the period of movement.

XQ56. And you had to have that intermittent so as to get a period of rest of the film? A. That was the intent of it.

XQ57. And in order to prevent that jerk which the intermittent would cause directly on the film coming off the reel, the loop was provided, is that correct? A. Well, it had several functions. It not only avoided the jerk at the start when you started the film, but it prevented it having any jerk at any time during movement. It was to avoid strain on the film and to create there a condition similar to what you would have if you were operating on a few inches of film only.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer this machine in evidence, the Simplex machine, used by the Prague Amusement Company which has been referred to by the witness and shown to him.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 3.

XQ58. On Exhibit 3, being the Simplex machine made by the Precision Machine Company, is there

116

a device known as the framing device? A. There appears to be a device for accomplishing the purpose of a framing device. I suppose you could call it properly so. It is for the purpose of bringing the picture into proper register with the exposure opening.

XQ59. Is such a device as that common on all moving picture projecting machines? A. All projecting machines in common use have equivalent devices; that is, devices for accomplishing the purpose, whether by equivalent mechanism or not I cannot sav.

119

XQ60. You mentioned the object of the framing device on this Simplex machine? A. Yes.

XQ61. My question is whether the other projecting machines which are on the market all embody a framing device of one kind or another, but for the same purpose which you have just described? A. Yes.

XQ62. Mr. Marvin, a suit was brought against the Motion Picture Patents Company by the Government of the United States in the Eastern District of Pennsylvania under the anti-trust laws, was there not? A. There was.

120

XQ63. And a bill of complaint was filed by the Government, was it not? A. It was.

XQ64. And an answer was filed by the Motion Picture Patents Company? A. Yes.

XQ65. And did you sign the answer on behalf of the Motion Picture Patents Company? A. I may have, I do not remember.

> Mr. Jeffery: I wish to say that this is strictly cross-examination. This is not part of my case.

Mr. Church: Well, it is part of your case just the same.

Mr. Jeffery: I mean it is not part of my affirmative defense.

Mr. Church: Well, he is your witness still.

The Court: I think Mr. Jeffery is right about that, if I see what he is driving at.

Mr. Church: Well, perhaps I do not see it.

XQ66. You say you signed the answer? A. I 122 may have. I do not know whether I did or not.

XQ67. Have you seen printed copies of that answer? A. Yes.

XQ68. I show you a printed copy which bears the imprint of C. G. Burgoyne as printer and ask you whether that is a copy of the answer that is filed by your company and which you signed in that suit? A. Yes, that appears to be a copy.

XQ69. You read that answer before you signed it? A. Yes.

XQ70. Do you remember that you there stated, "The gist of the invention made by Latham consisted in providing a device for feeding the film regularly and continuously so that a predetermined loop of slack was formed and maintained"? A. I did so state.

XQ71. And that stated the contention of the Motion Picture Patents Company as to the nature of the Latham invention, did it not? A. Well, in general terms. It did not specify it particularly.

XQ72. Did you state further, "The intermittent sprocket feeding device operated on this loop of slack film which was freely moved and hence there was no likelihood of the teeth of the intermittent

sprocket wheel tearing or straining the film"? A. Yes, I suppose I said that.

XQ73. Did you further state, "The predetermined loop is incident in both a camera and in a projecting machine"? A. I presume I did. If it is there I did.

XQ74. Were you present at the argument of that case? A. I was.

XQ75. Did you hear Mr. Church's argument? A. I did.

125 XQ76. Do you recall that it was afterwards printed? A. Yes.

XQ77. Have you read it since it was printed? A. I have glanced through it.

XQ78. Do you remember that Mr. Church said this in that argument as printed here—

The Court: Mr. Jeffery, I shall rise in rebellion in trying to make a client responsible for everything that his counsel says.

(Discussion off the record.)

Mr. Jeffery: I withdraw the question.

126 XQ79. I understood you to say in your directexamination that this patent is intended to cover both the camera and the projector; is that correct? A. I do not think I said that.

XQ80. Just what was it you meant to convey?

Mr. Church: He did not say that.

The Court: I do not see that it is material what he did say, and I am inclined to so hold. If you can show any materiality, show it to me.

Mr. Jeffery: I may have misunderstood him, but I simply wanted to bring out that if that was his contention I wanted to make sure that their contention is contrary to that of Judge Hand and the Circuit Court of Appeals.

The Court: That is a matter of argument and not evidence.

XQ81. Were you connected with the Biograph Company at any time? A. I was, ever since it was organized.

XQ82. Did that company use the mechanisms which were shown in the Casler patent which was in interference with Armat and Latham? A. Yes, I remember that somewhat indistinctly, that mechanism, but fairly well I think. Perhaps well enough for your purposes.

XQ83. In that machine was there a friction feed, or a sprocket feed? A. A friction feed.

XQ84. And in that machine did that friction feed pull the film from the film reel? A. Yes, there was a pair of rollers, as I remember it, that pulled the film out.

XQ85. In Fig. 4 of drawings attached to the stipulation which is marked Complainant's Exhibit E there is shown a shutter. Will you be good enough to compare that drawing with the shutter on this machine, Defendants' Exhibit 3, and say if they are the same, and if not, what differences there are? A. Well, they seem to be substantially the same. I have not measured up exactly the openings there, but I do not know that that is material. It is substantially the same type of shutter.

XQ86. You cannot say whether the openings are the same? A. Well, I cannot measure them, but I assume they are.

XQ87. Is it not a fact that you can tell by examination of this that these holes are of different 128

131

sizes? A. I can tell that. I say I cannot tell whether there is exactly the same number of degrees covered by the opening.

XQ88. But the holes on the shutter Exhibit 3 are all different in size, are they not? A. Well, I assume there is one blade a little wider and two blades a little narrower.

Mr. Jeffery: I understand Mr. Scull says he will concede there is a difference in the openings.

Mr. Scull: And that difference is that one opening is 42, the other 46, and the other 47 degrees?

The Court: Those are the shutter openings?

Mr. Scull: Yes, your Honor.

The Court: The degrees are in the circumference of a circular shutter?

Mr. Scull: Yes.

By Mr. Jeffery:

132 XQ89. As I understand you, the Latham patent in suit contemplates a greater period of rest and illumination than of movement of the film, does it not? A. Well, I do not know as that is an essential feature of the invention.

XQ90. Will you please look at the drawings and state whether or not in your opinion that patent shows and contemplates a greater period of rest and illumination than of movement of the film? A. Well, I should say that the drawing of the structure indicated in the patent as illustrative of the invention indicates that the period of pause would be greater than the period of movement, if they use gears in the proportion shown in the drawing.

XQ91. Just refer to page 4 of the patent, lines 104 to 110. That states, does it not,

"The shutter 31, carried by the shaft 28, has "but a small solid section. Its use is to cover "the film during the interval of movement of "each picture"?

A. Yes, that is right.

XQ92. Does not that indicate that the period of rest and illumination is greater than that of the movement? A. Well, in these devices that are shown here, yes.

XQ93. And the period of illumination is greater than the period of darkness, is it not? A. Yes.

XQ94. You described in your direct examination that the intermittent movement of the film is caused by this intermittent sprocket. In the Edison camera patent, which was owned by your Company, that film is moved past the exposure opening, past the lens, by an intermittent sprocket, is it not? A. Yes.

XQ95. And it is done in such manner that they take about 46 pictures a second, do they not? A. Well, I do not know that there is anything to indicate the number that they take, or that that has any relation to the period of movement. I think Edison in his patent somewhere refers to taking pictures at over 40 a second, but I do not think it is common to take them at that rate.

XQ96. Mr. Marvin, do you remember that the petition in the Government suit had annexed to it a number of license and other agreements made by the Motion Picture Patents Company with other concerns, and that they were alleged by the Government to be agreements in restraint of trade? A. Yes, there were quite a number of them there.

134

XQ97. And among them was an agreement which was a specimen of the agreement with the projector manufacturers, was it not? A. Yes.

XQ98. And that was a specimen of the agreements of which this agreement with the Precision Machine Company which has been offered in evidence, was one? A. Well, substantially. I think there were some little modifications in that Precision agreement, but it was substantially the same, I think.

137

XQ99. Now, it was pursuant to that agreement that this plate on the Precision machine with the license restriction upon it was placed there, was it not? A. Well, it was pursuant to that agreement, I think, that the plate was placed there independent of what is on it.

XQ100. Now, Judge Dickinson decided that case, did he not, in October? A. I believe he did.

The Court: What is the relevancy of that? Mr. Jeffery: I want to get into the record that that very notice which is part of that agreement is one of the things which Judge Dickinson there in that suit has held to be a violation of the law, has held the agreement itself to be invalid. No decree has yet been entered upon that, but I want to make it clear on this record that this suit is an attempt to enforce an agreement, an arrangement, which has been held by another Court to be contrary to the rule—

Mr. Church: I would like to ask counsel if he claims under that agreement. Does the defendant here claim under that license agreement?

Mr. Jeffery: We claim that we have a license by reason of the fact that that machine was manufactured under a license.

Mr. Church: You claim under that agreement?

Mr. Jeffery: Your Honor will understand that this machine was not purchased direct from the Precision Company by our client. This machine came into our client's hands second or third hand, and their right to use it is a right dependent upon the right of every man who buys a machine that is stamped "Licensed."

140

The Court: Well, I will think about it over night.

Discussion off the record.

Adjourned to to-morrow, December 22, 1915, at 10:30 A. M.

New York, December 22, 1915, 10:30 A. M.

Trial resumed.

Mr. Wetmore: I offer in evidence a certified copy of Judge Dickinson's opinion.

Mr. Church: I object to it as incompetent, immaterial and irrelevant.

The Court: Let it be marked. Marked Defendants' Exhibit 4.

HARRY NORTON MARVIN, resumes the stand.

Cross Examination by Mr. Jeffery (continued):

XQ101. Mr. Marvin, were the Biograph machines which were spoken of yesterday sold by the Bio-

graph Company? I understood the name of the company that manufactured those machines was the Biograph Company, or some name of that kind? A. The first name of the company was the American Mutascope Company. The name was then changed later to the American Mutascope & Biograph Company and subsequently changed again to the Biograph Company. The identity of the company was not changed.

XQ102. And the machines were known as the Biograph? A. The Biograph Company never sold any machines.

XQ103. What was the name of the machines which incorporated the Casler friction feed which we spoke of yesterday? A. I think no machines were ever made and put to use involving the construction shown in the application that was in interference.

XQ104. There were no machines sold with the Casler friction feed in them, or with a friction feed? A. No machines of any kind were sold by the Biograph Company, but the Biograph Company subsequently used a machine with a friction feed but of a different construction from the one shown in that application.

XQ105. Did it use more than one machine with a friction feed? A. It used a number of machines with the friction feed.

XQ106. That is the friction feed for drawing the film off the wheel? A. Yes.

XQ107. From which it was fed to the intermittent? A. Yes.

XQ108. Those machines were in use for sometime? A. The Biograph Company used a number of those machines in giving exhibitions itself.

XQ109. And those exhibitions were successful exhibitions? A. They were quite successful.

143

XQ110. Now, Mr. Marvin, what is the object of the teeth on the continuous feeding devices 39 and 46 in those drawings of the Latham patent? A. The function of the teeth on those two rollers is to engage equally spaced holes made in the edges of the film, the purpose of that engagement being to advance the film positively and regularly without the possibility of slippage and to advance the film not by linear measurement of the film but by measurement per hole, so to speak. The revolution of the wheel always advances a certain number of holes per revolution of the wheel independent of the exact pitch of those holes, as might be influenced by shrinkage of the film.

146

XQ111. What is the purpose of the teeth on the intermittent device 50 on the drawings of the Latham patent? A. The purpose of the teeth on the intermittent wheel marked 50 is substantially the same as that of the purpose of the teeth on the two other rollers I mentioned.

XQ112. That is, on the continuous feeding devices 39 and 46? A. Yes, 39 and 46.

XQ113. Mr. Marvin, what part of the film used in this projecting machine in which the Latham mechanism is used wears out the quickest? A. What part of the film?

147

XQ114. Yes. A. Well, that depends upon a number of factors. If the sprocket teeth did not fit the perforations, if the tensions in the machine are adjusted too tightly, if the sprocket teeth become badly worn, then the holes in the film, or the little bridges between the holes may become worn out before the rest of the film is defaced. But on the contrary if the film is run upon a machine that is well adjusted and in good condition, then the back of the film may become scratched and worn

and defaced so as to produce a very bad spectacle before the perforations are destroyed.

XQ115. But in your experience, in actual practice, which part of the film wears out first, in the majority of cases? A. In the majority of cases, the emulsion surface becomes worn out before the perforations become destroyed.

XQ116. Now, Mr. Marvin, you remember that your company brought suit for infringement of the Edison reissue patent No. 12,192 in the Supreme Court of the District of Columbia? A. Yes.

XQ117. And that case went to the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia, did it not? A. It did.

XQ118. And the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia held that Claim 2 of that patent, which was the preferred claim, was invalid, did it not? A. Well, I do not remember the number of the claim, but I believe that the Court held that the part of the patent that we sued upon was invalid.

XQ119. In what year was that, if you remember? A. I do not remember the year. I think it was about 1912.

XQ120. It was 1912 or 1913? A. Somewheres along there, I cannot exactly remember.

Re-direct Examination by Mr. Church:

RDQ121. Mr. Marvin, the license from the complainant, the Patents Company—I will use that short phrase to save time—to the Precision Machine Company which has been offered in evidence for the defendants as Defendants' Exhibit 2 authorizes the sale of the patented projecting machine by the Precision Company for the use of the purchaser under at least two specific restrictions.

149

tions upon the purchaser respecting use, does it not? That is to say, first, that the machine be used by the purchaser only with moving pictures leased by a licensee of the Patents Company as the owner of the projecting machine and film patents, and, secondly, that the purchaser comply with the other terms as to use to be fixed by the Patents Company. Do I understand the matter correctly? A. Yes.

Mr. Jeffery: I object to that. The agreement speaks for itself.

The Court: Let the answer stand, but I think the question and the answer is plainly open to the objection made.

RDQ122. And in that agreement referred to there is a stipulation that the notice which I have spoken of, or that the condition of which I have spoken, shall be applied to the name-plate on this machine?

> Mr. Jeffery: Same objection. The Court: Objection sustained.

153

152

RDQ123. The machine that has been offered here in evidence as Defendants' Exhibit 3 you have testified has upon it the name-plate containing this notice of restriction; is that the fact? A. I have.

RDQ124. It was admitted here yesterday by counsel for the defendants that the Complainant's Exhibit F is a reel of motion picture film known as the "Five Pound Note," that it was used by the defendant, the Prague Amusement Company, at its 72nd Street playhouse, that it is the Simplex machine offered in evidence here, and that that

reel of film was made by the defendant, the Universal Film Manufacturing Company, and sold by that defendant to the defendant, the Universal Film Exchange, and furnished by the Universal Film Exchange to the Prague Amusement Company for use on its Simplex machines. I will ask you whether the Universal Film Manufacturing Company, or the Universal Film Exchange, was, or is, a licensee of the Patents Company under its patents on projecting machines and films?

155

156

Mr. Jeffery: I object to that as incompetent, immaterial and irrelevant.

The Court: I will permit him to answer; objection overruled.

A. Neither the Universal Film Manufacturing Company nor the Universal Film Exchange was or is a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company under any of its patents.

RDQ125. Was either the Universal Film Exchange or the Universal Film Manufacturing Company authorized to furnish that film, or any films, for use upon this particular Simplex machine, or any other Simplex machine, bearing a plate similar to the one affixed to the Simplex machine in evidence?

Mr. Jeffery: Same objection.

The Court: I will allow him to answer it.

Mr. Jeffery: Exception.

A. Neither of those concerns was authorized by the Motion Picture Patents Company to supply any film for use on any such machines.

RDQ126. Is the Prague Amusement Company,

158

the defendant here, regarded by the Patents Company as a licensee under this patent?

Mr. Jeffery: I object to that.

The Court: Objection sustained. You may ask him whether it is a licensee.

Mr. Church: I withdraw the question.

RDQ127. Is the Prague Amusement Company a licensee?

Mr. Jeffery: I object to that unless he states what he means by that.

Mr. Church: Under the projecting machine patents of the Patents Company.

Mr. Jeffery: I object to that as incompetent, immaterial and irrelevant.

Objection overruled; exception.

A. It was not.

RDQ128. Did the defendant, the Prague Amusement Company, ever apply to the Patents Company for terms upon which it might use the Simplex machine in its possession made by the Precision Machine Company?

159

Mr. Jeffery: I object to that as irrelevant and immaterial.

Objection overruled; exception.

A. It did not.

RDQ129. Did the defendant, the Prague Amusement Company, or any of its officers to your knowledge, or information, have knowledge of the terms upon which the Patents Company was accustomed to grant permission to use a machine put out by one of its licensed manufacturers?

Mr. Jeffery: I object to that as irrelevant and immaterial.

The Court: Objection sustained. The presumption is that the Precision Machine Company observed the terms of the contract, and that is as far as you are called upon to go at the present time.

161

RDQ130. Did the Patents Company, or any of its officers, ever bring home to any officer of the Prague Amusement Company a knowledge of the conditions under which the Patents Company was accustomed to grant licenses when application was made for the right to use licensed machines?

Mr. Jeffery: I object to that as incompetent and irrelevant.

The Court: Objection sustained. The reason why I sustain that objection is that I apprehend that the question here is whether the Prague Amusement Company could not do exactly what it is accused of having done, no matter how many conversations it had with the Patents Company, or any of its affiliated concerns, and that question I understand does not need that query to illuminate it.

162

Mr. Church: I may state to the Court that my object in asking the question was to show that the terms mentioned on the notice plates under which a licensed machine might be used were well-known to the Prague Amusement Company, and that they had been notified of that fact, as to the terms.

The Court: Well, assume that they knew all about it, because the presumption, I

think, is that a man can read and that the officers of the Corporation can read, being men. The question is was it lawful. That is the whole point.

RDQ131. The plate says that the machine can only be used upon terms imposed by the Patents Company? A. Yes.

Mr. Church: Now, the object of this question is to show what those terms were. The plate does not say what they were. Also that the terms were known to the defendant.

164

The Court: I might as well meet the question of law which I am prepared to meet and which I think is most clearly presented by this case as outlined. It does not make any difference whether they were known or not, as a matter of fact. If that notice is good for anything, it is plainly printed in the English language, anybody can read it, and if anybody is bound by it, it does not make any difference how many conversations there were about it, or how many times the matter was explained and expounded to the individuals who had in common parlance purchased the Simplex machine. That is the view that I entertain about this and I shall now adhere to it.

165

RDQ132. Was any officer of the Prague Amusement Company ever a licensee under the Patents Company's patents?

Mr. Jeffery: I object to that as immaterial and irrelevant.

The Court: Objection sustained. The Prague Amusement Company has not endeavored to show that it had any license in that sense of the word; that is, a contractual license. You are not obliged, and I do not think you ought to be permitted, to show this until some effort is made to show the other.

Mr. Church: May I have the record show that I except to the rulings on this set of questions?

The Court: Yes.

167

RDQ133. State what was the underlying policy of the Patents Company in this licensing scheme that is set forth in this agreement?

Mr. Jeffery: I object to that.

The Court: Objection sustained. The underlying policy, so far as it affects the users of the Simplex machine, is sufficiently explained by the plate. The only question is whether, however upright and virtuous the motives may be, that scheme as outlined in the notice was a lawful scheme. Therefore the motive is not necessary for that.

Mr. Church: Exception.

168

RDQ134. Before the beginning of this suit were notices of infringement sent to the several defendants advising them of their infringement. I mean to the Universal Film Manufacturing Company, the Universal Film Exchange and the Prague Amusement Company?

Mr. Jeffery: I make the preliminary objection that I think that the notices them-

selves should be produced so that we can see what the notices actually were.

The Court: Well, I think that is a fair objection technically, but I do not see that it is of any importance. If any notice of license is necessary what plainer notice could there be than this plate upon the machine?

Mr. Church: Your Honor will recall that under the patent statutes we are required to give notice of infringement if we are to recover damages.

The Court: But if I recollect right, I speak under correction, that does not affect the right of injunction for the future.

Mr. Church: No, not necessarily, but it does cover the right to recover damages, so it is customary in these cases to give notice of infringement and I am asking him as to whether any notice of infringement was given.

The Court: He may answer that question subject to correction by the introduction of any written documents hereafter, if there be any.

A. Such notices were sent.

RDQ135. Please examine the papers that I show you dated March 3rd, 1915, one of them, and the other two dated January 18th, 1915, and state what they represent? (Witness examines documents.)

A. The letter of January 18th, 1915, addressed to the 72nd Street Amusement Company, Mr. L. Bolognino, No. 53 East 72nd Street, New York City, is a notification that—

Mr. Jeffery: I object to his stating it.

170

173

By the Court:

Q136. It is a notification that was sent to your knowledge? A. It is a notification that was sent.

Q137. To your knowledge? A. No, it was not signed by me.

Q138. That does not prevent it being known by you? A. I know that it was sent.

Mr. Church: I offer the paper in evidence. Marked Complainant's Exhibit G.

A. (Continued) The letter of January 18th, 1915, addressed to the Universal Film Exchange, No. 1600 Broadway, New York City, was a notice that was sent.

Mr. Church: I offer this letter referred to by the witness in evidence. Marked Complainant's Exhibit H.

A. (Continued) The letter of March 3rd, 1915, addressed to the Universal Film Manufacturing Company, No. 1600 Broadway, New York City, is a copy of a letter that was sent.

> Mr. Church: I offer the paper in evidence. Marked Complainant's Exhibit I.

Q139. How were these notices sent, Mr. Marvin? A. They were sent by registered mail.

> Mr. Church: I understand that the two last papers Exhibits H and I are acknowledged to have been received.

Mr. Jeffery: Yes. I do not know about the first one, but the last two were received by the Companies to which they were addressed.

RDQ140. What is this paper that I show you? A. This is apparently a register receipt.

RDQ141. What is the date of it? A. It is dated January 19th, 1915.

RDQ142. Please state if upon this register receipt there is a note of the sending of the notice, or the package, to the 72nd Street Amusement Company? A. There is such a notation.

176

Mr. Church: I offer the official registry receipt in evidence and ask that it be marked. Marked Complainant's Exhibit J.

Mr. Jeffery: I think it is only fair that I should object to that on the ground that it does not show the receipt by any defendant here. It shows the receipt by a company that is not a defendant.

RDQ143. Will you now please examine the card that I show you and state what it is? A. This is 177 a register receipt dated January 19th, 1915, and signed with the name of L. Bolognino.

RDQ144. Who is L. Bolognino? A. He is the president of the Prague Amusement Company.

Mr. Church: I offer this registry receipt in evidence and ask that it be marked.

Mr. Jeffery: I object to the card on the ground that it is irrelevant and immaterial. I admit it was signed by some agent of Mr. Bolognino who is the president of the Prague Amusement Company.

The Court: Objection overruled.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit K.

179

RDQ145. Mr. Marvin, to what extent has mechanism for supporting and feeding perforated film as shown and described by the Latham patent embodying first the devices for supporting the film befor and after exposure, second, positively driven toothed feed wheels entirely disconnected from the supporting devices located at opposite sides of the exposure window and adapted to carrying the flexible film by the engagement of their teeth with the equally spaced holes in the edges of the film and to respectively produce and take up slack in the film, and thirdly, the intermittently acting feeding devices also provided with teeth which engage with the holes in the film whereby the film is intermittently drawn across the exposure opening? A. That construction is universally used in projecting machines used in this country and has been universally so used for many years.

RDQ146. Do you know of any projecting machine on the market that does not embody that construction? A. I do not.

RDQ147. How many machines embodying that construction do you suppose are on the market today? A. I know that upwards of forty thousand of such machines have been sold in the last seven years. I suppose that probably twenty or twenty-five thousand machines are in use at the present time.

Re-cross Examination by Mr. Jeffery:

RXQ148. Are you referring to the projecting machine, or do you include cameras? A. I am referring to projecting machines.

RXQ149. You said, as I understand you, that

you did not consider the Prague Amusement Company as a licensee; is that correct? A. Yes.

RXQ150. Is the Kalem Company a licensee under agreements with the Motion Picture Patents Company? A. Yes.

RXQ151. If the Prague Amusement Company used a film manufactured and supplied by the Kalem Company, would the Prague Amusement Company then be a licensee? A. Well, that would depend upon whether when the Prague Amusement Company used the film from the Kalem Company, it was complying with the other terms established by the Patents Company to be complied with by licensees while they were licensees.

RXQ152. Are there any projecting machines manufactured which are not manufactured under license from the Motion Picture Patents Company? A. I do not know of any such machines.

RXQ153. And the Motion Picture Patents Company licenses those machines under a number of patents, does it not? A. Yes.

RXQ154. Until the expiration of the patent, it licensed them under the Edison camera patent and Edison film patent which originally were embodied in patent No. 589,168? A. Well, I do not think you could say that they licensed the projecting machines under those patents because those patents do not cover projecting machines. I think what it did do was license users of projecting machines to use licensed film so long as the film was covered by the patent owned by the Patents Company.

RXQ155. The Motion Picture Patents Company owns the Armat patent which was issued after interference with Casler and Latham? A. Yes, I believe so.

182

RXQ156. They grant licenses to projecting machine manufacturers under that patent? A. I think that is included in a number of patents under which projecting machines are licensed, but I would not want to speak positively about that.

The Court: I do not see why it is not enough that this particular machine which is complained of was licensed under the Armat patent.

185 RXQ157. And when you license a manufacturer of projecting machines under one patent he has to take a license under all the patents, does he not? A. No.

RXQ158. Under all the patents named on that notice? A. Only under the patents the inventions of which are included in his machine. We license some manufacturers under some patents and other manufacturers under others. They are not all under the same patents but there are some patents under which all projecting machine manufacturers are licensed.

186 RXQ159. And this arrangement that you have spoken of in your direct examination which is the tying up of all these patents in this agreement is universal with all these projecting manufacturers, is it not—

Mr. Jeffery: I withdraw the question.

Prima facie Proofs Closed.

(Discussion off the record.)

DEFENDANTS' PROOFS.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence a copy of the license notice which was yesterday marked for identification Defendants' Exhibit 1.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 1.

It is admitted and stipulated by counsel for the complainant that the Simplex machine, Defendants' Exhibit 3, which bears the notice heretofore referred to, a copy of which is Defendants' Exhibit 1, was manufactured by the Precision Machine Company of New York City and sold by it to the 72nd Street Amusement Company, a New York corporation, operating the 72nd Street Playhouse, in the Borough of Manhattan, City of New York, at the time of said sale, and that when it was so sold it bore the said potice.

Also that if Mr. Lawrence S. Bolognino were called as a witness in this case he would testify that the 72nd Street Playhouse was leased by the said 72nd Street Amusement Company on November 2nd, 1914, to the Prague Amusement Company, one of the defendants here, and that along with the premises and among the equipment which was included in the said lease was the said machine, Defendants' Exhibit 3, which at that time bore the said notice.

LAWRENCE S. BOLOGNINO, being present, is now sworn and cross examined by Mr. Church.

Cross Examination by Mr. Church:

XQ1. Mr. Bolognino, you are familiar with the terms upon which the Patents Company authorized 188

the use of machines put out by its licensed manufacturers of projecting machines?

Mr. Jeffery: I object to that on the ground that it is immaterial and on the ground that the Court has already sustained objections to that very question.

Mr. Church: I withdraw the question.

XQ2. You are the president of the Prague Amusement Company? A. Yes.

191 XQ3. And you are also the president of other companies? A. Yes.

XQ4. Exhibiting machine companies; that is to say, exhibiting companies? A. Yes.

XQ5. What other ones, please mention them? A. The Eros Amusement Company; the Heyday Amusement Company; the Ausonia Amusement Company; The Trocadero Amusement Company; the 44th Street Amusement Corporation; the Brunelli Amusement Company, and the Bofan Amusement Company.

XQ6. Were you connected with the Star Motion 192 Picture Company? A. Yes, I used to be, up to two years ago.

XQ7. What theatre was operated by that company? A. The Apollo.

XQ8. Where? A. 304 Eighth Avenue, New York City.

XQ9. Were any of the concerns with which you are, or were, connected, licensees of the Patents Company?

Mr. Jeffery: I object to that as incompetent, immaterial and irrelevant and as among the questions the objections to which the Court sustained when asked the preceding witness, Mr. Marvin.

Mr. Church: Exception.

A. (No answer.)

Mr. Jeffery: It is further stipulated that since the execution of the agreement between the Motion Picture Patents Company and the Precision Machine Company, Incorporated, the Precision Machine Company has sold projecting machines manufactured by authority of said agreement and sold the same to customers located in states outside of the State of New York, all such machines bearing the plate and notice that has been referred to in this case as Defendants' Exhibit 1.

This stipulation is made subject to complainant's objection that it is immaterial and irrelevant to the issues in this case.

It is further stipulated and agreed for the purposes of this case that the motion pictures, "The Five Pound Note" and "The Refugees," which are stated in the stipulation, Complainant's Exhibit E, to have been used on March 17th, 1915, by the defendant the Prague Amusement Company at said 72nd Street Playhouse by feeding copies of said motion pictures through said machines, were thus exhibited on the machine, Defendants' Exhibit 3, said machine having attached to it at that time the film feeding reel, and the take-up or winding reel.

This stipulation is intended to supplement and make more explicit the said stipulation, 194

Complainant's Exhibit E, but is not intended as a substitute therefor, and said stipulation is understood as remaining in full force and effect.

EDWIN W. HAMMER, called as a witness on behalf of the defendants, being duly sworn, testifies as follows:

197 Direct Examination by Mr. Jeffery:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation? A. Edwin W. Hammer. Age, 48. Residence, East Orange, New Jersey. Occupation, consulting electrical and mechanical engineer and solicitor of patents.

Q2. Please state what education and experience you have had in mechanical and scientific matters and particularly what experience you have had with machines for taking and exhibiting motion pictures? A. I have been practicing my profession for thirty odd years. My experience dates from the year 1884 when I was connected with the exhibition of Mr. Edison's inventions at the Electrical Exposition, being held in that year in Philadelphia under the auspices of the Franklin Institute. During the succeeding years I had considerable engineering experience in connection with electric lighting and power matters and this included the superintendency and managership of an Edison central station plant for lighting and power distribution in Fall River, Massachusetts.

In 1889 I spent nearly the entire year in Paris in connection with Mr. Edison's exhibit of his inventions at the Paris Exposition of that year,

and in 1890 continued the exhibition of those inventions in this country, in New York City and in Minneapolis.

From 1891 to the present time I have had a very intimate connection with patent matters in connection with patent suits of large corporations including the Edison Electric Light Company, the Thomson Houston Company, the Edison General Electric Company, the Edison Company for Isolated Lighting, the Westinghouse Electric and Manufacturing Company, the General Electric Company, and others.

200

For fifteen years I was the technical man of the Board of Patent Control of the General Electric and Westinghouse Electric Companies and during that time had intimate connection with considerably more than a thousand patent cases.

I am a Fellow of the American Institute of Electrical Engineers; a Member of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers; a Member of the Franklin Institute, and am connected with other scientific bodies.

I have testified many times before the United States Courts as to matters of fact and opinion, including at least one litigation involving projecting machines for moving pictures and having to do with the proper presentation of such pictures upon the screen.

201

From the beginning of Mr. Edison's practical work in connection with moving pictures as known to the public I have been very much interested in this subject and have kept informed as to the general progress of the art.

Q3. Please briefly describe the device which is stated in the specification of the patent in suit to constitute the alleged invention of said patent, considering it as a disclosure to those skilled in the art. Please state first whether you have read and are familiar with the said patent in suit? A. I have read the patent in suit and believe I understand it.

It specifically states that it has reference to an apparatus for projecting pictures on a screen whereby the movement of the objects may be accurately exhibited. The purpose of the invention is said to be the provision of an apparatus capable of continuously projecting, or exhibiting, upon a suitable surface, a great number of pictures taken from moving objects and arranged upon a strip or film of great length, "whereby each picture in the strip is brought to rest at the moment of projection" so that there is given to the eye the desired impression.

The specification calls attention to the fact that if a continuously moved picture-bearing strip be employed in a projecting apparatus and this continuously moving strip be moved uninterruptedly across the optical axis-past the lens of the machine—a light of very high intensity is necessary

to give satisfactory results.

The patentee then states that such a very intense light is not required for satisfactory projection with an apparatus embodying his construction inasmuch as the "stoppage of each picture during its exposure permits the requisite quantity of light to pass through the condenser, the picture, and the objective to the screen or plane surface upon which the image is projected when the light employed is only of a moderately high power."

It will be understood that the patentee here differentiates his mechanism from some other mechanism in that he brings the film or picture

204

bearing strip to rest at the moment of projection, or when the picture is to be thrown upon the screen, and that by reason of the fact that the film may be brought to rest at such a time the requisite amount of light is permitted to pass through the film to the screen. This will be understood better when it is recognized that a machine employing a continuously operating or moving film should also be provided with a shutter which will shut off the light entirely from the screen except at the moment when the picture to be exhibited is actually passing the optical axis of the machine, and as the continuously moving picture is in such a position for an extremely brief interval the amount of light which is utilized at such a time is necessarily very small and unsatisfactory for projection purposes in comparison with the use of a device where the film may be exposed for what is really an appreciable period of time.

It is also understood that under these circumstances the continuously moving film would require a very intense light in comparison with the size of the light required for a film which is brought to rest for the longer interval.

The specification states that in consequence of this general principle of bringing the film to rest at the moment of exposure, the invention consists "in an apparatus for projecting successively a large number of pictures of moving objects embodying, among other things, means for bringing each picture to rest at the moment of projection, means for reducing the strain the picture film would otherwise suffer from the rapid interruption and renewal of its movement, and means for maintaining uniformity of movement of the film as it unwinds from the delivering reel and as it winds

206

upon the receiving reel, all as set forth in the claims at the end of this specification."

It would therefore appear to be the patentee's idea that the fundamental conception which he had and which he was giving to the world was the idea of bringing the picture to rest at the moment of projection in projecting machines so as to in that way secure a suitable illumination of the picture upon the screen with the minimum amount of light.

209

In connection with this, however, he puts forward the additional idea that by reason of the stoppage of the film for purposes of projection there must necessarily be a subsequent movement of the film which has been brought to rest, and that as a consequence of that interrupted movement of the film certain strains would be brought to bear upon the film which are obviated by the utilization of certain mechanisms which his specification describes; it also indicates that it is his desire to maintain a uniformity of movement of the film as it unwinds from one reel, and as it winds upon the other reel.

210

In the drawings of the patent in suit the mechanism is clearly illustrated in Fig. 6 of the patent which indicates clearly the general means that are employed for securing the stoppage of the film and renewing this movement and also for the protection of the film against strain, and the means for maintaining the uniformity or continuity of movement from one reel to the other reel. For example, in Fig. 6, it will be seen that the bulk of the film to be exhibited is wound upon a reel 22 mounted upon a fixed pivot 23. The film is drawn continuously and with uniformity from this reel 22 in an upward direction over the idler roller 54 by means of the continuously rotating roller 39. This roller 39 pulls the film from the reel 22

and delivers it to what is shown as a loop of slack film 21a. At the upper end of the machine on Fig. 6 is a take-up reel 24 mounted upon a pivot 25 driven from the general source of mechanical power by a friction connection, and the film is fed to this reel 24 at a uniform rate by means of the feed roller 46 which operates continuously and at uniform speed, taking the film which has been delivered from the lower reel 22 and supplying it to the upper reel 24.

The exposure window, or point through which the light must pass through the picture and to the lenses of the apparatus is what is known as the exposure window or opening 56 and just above this window 56 will be seen a feed roller 50. This feed roller 50 has an intermittent movement but it is so proportioned with respect to the continuously moving rollers 39 and 46 that it handles the same amount of film within a definite period of time that the continuously operating rollers 39 and 46 handle, in spite of the fact that it moves intermittently.

The effect of this combination of intermittently moving feed devices and continuously moving feed devices is to draw the film from the delivery wheel 22 at a uniform rate and supply such film to the loop of slack film 21a upon which the intermittent feed device 50 draws for its supply in moving the film past the exposure window or opening 56.

This movement of the film by the intermittent feeding device supplies such film to the second loop of slack 21b upon which the continuously moving feed device 46 draws for its supply so that we have in this apparatus two continuously operating feed devices 39 and 46 for supplying and taking up a supply of slack film and an intermittently

212

moving feed device for drawing upon the first loop of slack film and supplying film to the second loop of slack.

The specification points out at page 2, line 21, that the function of the two reels is merely to support the bulk of the film while successive sections of it are subjected to the feeding and exposing mechanism. One of the reels supplies the films for exposure and the other coils up and takes care of the film after exposure.

In this construction it will be seen that there is provided an intermittent movement of the film past the exposure window for exhibition purposes, and that in spite of these interruptions in the movement of the film the delicate strip is protected against undue strain by the fact that the jerks of the intermittent feed device are not against the weight or bulk of the film carried by the delivery wheel but is against the loop of slack film In other words, the amount of film upon which the jerk of the intermittent feed device is brought to bear is of very short length and of practically negligible weight and inertia so that the strain upon the film is minimized at that time. In like manner the continuous pull of the film by the feed roller 46 is not against the weight of the mass of film upon the delivery reel 22 but is upon the short length of slack film 21b.

It can readily be understood that if a sudden jerk should be brought to bear upon the mass of film carried by the delivery wheel 22 in securing the rapid though intermittent movement of the film, such film would be subjected to great mechanical strain which would tend to destroy it.

This general description which I have given of the operation and result of the operation of the

216

devices illustrated and described in the Latham patent is confirmed in the sentence beginning at line 65, page 3, in which it states:

"It will be understood from the description "that follows that the loops of slack below "and above the exposure window are alter"nately thrown out and then taken up by the "operation of the sprocket drums, respective"ly, and that they produce and take up the "slack by their own positive action entirely "independent of the film supporting reels at "the extremes of the apparatus."

218

In the patent in suit the film is described as having holes near its edges with which may cooperate teeth projecting from the edges of the feed rollers 39, 50 and 46 for the continuous and intermittent feeding of the film.

In other words, the feeding rollers 39, 50 and 46 are sprocket feed devices, in which there is a cooperation between the holes in the film and projections from the feed rollers.

219

That portion of the specification beginning at line 117 on page 3 and extending to line 70 of page 4 refers to what is there set forth as important and valuable parts of the invention in that they are set forth as producing accurate movement of the film and the proper registration of the film with the exposure window or optical axis for purposes of projection. The idea apparently seems to be that the combination of a perforated film with sprocket feed devices insures the regular movement of the film by the teeth on the sprocket such teeth necessarily moving the film forward merely as far as the rotation of the sprocket will

permit, and holding the film back from further movement, and guaranteeing that a movement corresponding to the number of teeth and the spacing of the holes shall take place.

In other words, the mere use of a perforated film and sprocket feed device guarantees a definiteness of movement which is a quality or function of that particular combination of holes to be coordinated with the projections on the feeding rollers. The specification of the patent in suit does not describe these holes as having particular characteristics and the specification does not describe the teeth or projections on the sprocket rollers as being of any particular type or size or spacing except that there is to be a co-operation between holes and sprocket projections.

Apparently the patentee realizes for his conception that he has secured something novel and useful in this apparatus not upon the provision of teeth on a sprocket wheel and not upon the punching of holes in the film with which those teeth may co-operate, but rather in the use of those particular instrumentalities in an apparatus which combines first of all supports for the bulk of the film and secondarily means for handling the film intermittently without subjecting the film to strain. In other words, his primary thought appears to be that he has found means for economizing in the size of the lamp or light which he must employ for suitable exhibiting purposes, and that this economy comes about through the fact that he stops the film while he is showing his picture.

On the other hand, he recognizes that the mere stoppage of the film is not enough because with the use of a very long film which necessarily must be of considerable weight and inertia the inter-

221

mittent jerking of the film to secure the periods of rest must necessarily involve considerable strain applied to the film. It is on this account that he has incorporated in his camera means for producing slack through the use of continuously operating feed devices, this slack being drawn upon by the intermittent feeding devices instead of such devices operating upon the bulk or weight of the film upon the supply reel.

As a consequence of the construction illustrated and described in the patent the patentee says at line 94, page 2:

224

"Hence in a device of the construction de-"scribed the period of rest of the film is four "times greater than its period of movement. "To prevent any vibration of the picture at "the moment of projection the smooth surfaces "of the broken gears 47 and 48 should pref-"erably be held in close sliding contact."

In other words, this relatively long period of

rest permits the eye to become impressed with the picture which is thrown upon the screen and full utilization is thus secured of that quality of the human eye which is known as "persistence of vision" which simply means that the eye persists in seeing an object after it has actually withdrawn from sight. In connection with this apparatus there is illustrated and described a shutter device 31 illustrated in the several drawings of the patent

In Fig. 2 this shutter consists of a single wing or moving arm of small size which, as a matter of fact, only covers about 40 degrees of the circle through which the shutter rotates. It is designed

but more particularly shown in Fig. 2.

that this single arm shutter shall pass the exposure window and optical axis or lens at the time and during the time that the movement of the film is taking place so that the actual movement of the film is hidden from the eye; this means that the eye only sees the picture while the film is at rest. This shutter is generally described at line 106 of page 4 of the patent where it says:

227

"The shutter 31, carried by the shaft 28, "has but a small solid section. Its use is to "cover the film during the interval of move-"ment of each picture."

It is a further consequence of this construction that inasmuch as the film is exposed while the film is at rest the film is also illuminated throughout. the period of rest. It therefore follows that the period of rest and illumination is greater than the period of movement, and that the period of illumination is greater than the period of darkness. In this way it was hoped to minimize, so far as possible, the flickering of the picture upon the screen.

228

Recess to 2:00 P. M.

Afternoon Session.

EDWIN A. HAMMER resumes the stand.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the patent to Kidder, No. 224,440.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 5.

I offer in evidence the patent to Eckerson, No. 433,776.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 6.

I offer in evidence the patent to J. L. Cox, No. 508,814.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 7.

Mr. Church: I object to the patent as not pleaded in the answer.

Mr. Jeffery: The patent of Cox is introduced as evidence of the prior state of the art.

Direct Examination by Mr. Jeffery (continued):

Q4. Please examine the patents to Kidder, Eckerson and Cox, being respectively Defendants' Exhibits 5, 6 and 7, and state what, if anything, they show as to the maintaining of a loop to prevent the strain on a reel of thin material in the machine? A. The Kidder patent No. 224,440, relates to a printing machine for a printing press in which the paper upon which the imprint is to be made is drawn from a delivery reel a and taken up by a take-up reel f.

The web of paper is long and thin and is necessarily fragile and poorer qualities of paper are more fragile than others. Such a web of paper needs to be drawn through the printing press and in the type of press described it is essential that the movement of the web of paper shall be intermittent and that the paper shall be brought to rest when the imprint is made upon it.

The Kidder specification says at page 1, line 20:

"Heretofore in all presses known to me adapted to print a long strip of paper or other material the paper was unwound from the drum or reel by the action of the feed, the drum or reel being one side of the platen and the feed the other side. The effect of this is

230

to throw more strain upon the printed paper than is desirable, especially when the paper is of a poor quality; and one feature of my present invention is designed to remedy this difficulty, this feature of my invention consisting in the use of two feeds, one serving to draw the paper from the drum or reel or other supply, so as to have the paper slack between the first feed and the form, while the other feeds the paper to the action of the type by simply taking up the slack furnished by the first feed."

233

The general course of the web of paper is illustrated in Figs. 1 and 2 of the Kidder patent, but for purposes of convenience and comparison I have had prepared a diagram showing the features of the Kidder apparatus which have to do with the movements of the paper web or strip. I produce this diagram at this time.

If reference be made thereto it will be seen that we have a reel a or a device for supporting the web of paper before it is printed. This reel of paper is necessarily of great weight and any intermittent pull thereon would tend to tear or rupture the

paper.

234

To obviate this difficulty the Kidder patent provides a pair of rollers a^1 a^2 , which have a continuous and uniform movement and tend to draw the paper continuously from the reel a and deliver it to a loop of slack paper C. The movement of the strip of paper through the press is secured through the feed rollers a^{τ} a^{s} which have an intermittent movement and drew the strip of paper intermittently past the point B, at which the impression is to be made upon the paper.

It will be seen that this intermittent pull or forward feeding of the strip of paper by the roller a' a' is a pull against the loop of slack paper C and not against the paper upon the roller or reel a. In this way the Kidder patent provides against undue strain upon the paper with possible rupture. The action of the intermittent feed rollers a' a' is to form a second loop of slack paper C, from which the take-up reel draws its supply of paper in winding it up.

It will thus be seen that the Kidder mechanism has a main feed a^{τ} a^{s} for drawing the paper past the platen intermittently and an auxiliary feed a^{τ} a^{z} for continuously drawing the paper from the reel a and forming the slack C.

As the Kidder patent says at page 1, line 47:

"The object is to keep the paper slack between the auxiliary feed a¹ a² and the main feed a⁷ a⁸ in order to relieve the latter feed of the duty of drawing the paper from the reel or other supply."

The specification also says, page 1, line 63:

"The strip of paper C extends from the feed a' a' through suitable guides and between the bed and platen through the main feed a' a', a' being a roll actuated positively, while a' may be actuated by friction only. In a bed and platen press this roll a' must be actuated intermittently, and in order to effect this I have combined with this feed a' a' the clutch device shown in detail in Figs. 5 and 6."

The specification of the Kidder patent shows that the paper may be either rolled up on a second

236

239

reel f after being printed upon, or the paper may be cut into strips of the necessary sizes after printing, according to the wish of the user. But it is distinctly specified at page 2, line 63, that where the take-up roll f is employed "the paper must be so wound upon this drum that it will always be slack between the feed a^{τ} a^{s} and the drum f."

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the diagram of the mechanism of the Kidder patent, Defendants' Exhibit 5.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 8.

Mr. Church: The diagram referred to is objected to by counsel for the complainant, on the ground that it is manifestly not a correct representation of the mechanism of the Kidder patent.

A. (Continued) Taking up the Eckerson patent No. 433,776, referred to in the question, it will be seen that it is a patent also that relates to printing presses. This patent also calls attention to the fact that, if desired, the paper may be cut up into sheets of any size, after printing, as illustrated in Fig. 1, for example, while it may also be wound up on a take-up reel after printing, as illustrated in Fig. 13, for example.

The general course of the paper from the delivery reel to the take-up roll is also to be noted from Figs. 1 and 13 of the Eckerson patent. The fact is that if we turn to Fig. 1 it will be seen that the paper is drawn from the delivery reel Q by continuously operating feed rollers RR¹ and forms a loop of slack paper between such continuous feed devices and the intermittent devices TT¹ UU¹ which are provided to move the paper intermittently through the press. Where a take-up reel

is employed, as in Fig. 13, the paper runs from the intermittent device around a friction device X^1 and from there is drawn upon the take-up reel which is driven by the belt y.

The especial objects of the improvement of this Eckerson patent are thus stated in the specification, page 1, line 25:

"The especial objects of this improvement are to improve the platen by the introduction of a sliding removable impression plate; to so arrange the paper feeding devices that there shall always be a slack loop of paper between the impression plate and the roll from which the paper is taken. * * *"

The general operation of the apparatus is described at line 80, page 1:

"The roll of paper to be printed from is carried upon a shaft in suitable supports at one end of the machine, the paper passing from said roll between a pair of rollers which are connected with another pair by gearing in such a manner that the paper passing between the two sets of rollers shall always form a loop at least sufficient in quantity to supply the paper needed for one impression, thus preventing the danger of tearing or otherwise injuring the sheet in its passage through the machine, as this slack prevents the sudden jerk which will come upon the paper owing to the intermittent movement of the feed rolls, which supply it to and take it away from the impression plate."

One might almost imagine this description was written upon the apparatus of the patent in suit.

242

I also call attention to the paragraph beginning at line 19 on page 4 of the specification for a further detailed description of the operation of the apparatus. I also call attention to the following statement at line 99, page 4:

"Thus the paper is continuously passing from the roll Q, falling down beneath the roll R¹ in a loop which is taken up at each movement of the intermittently moving feed rolls. By this means the jerking movement of the feed rolls upon the roll of paper is obviated and all danger of tearing it from this cause done away with."

It will also be seen from the paragraph beginning at line 32 of page 5 of the specification that it is the intention to retard the forward movement of the paper before it is taken by the take-up rollers, through the use of the brackets X¹ which is acting to form a second loop of slack upon which the take-up reel draws.

In order to illustrate graphically the general course of the web of paper through the Eckerson printing press I have had prepared a diagram which I now produce and which shows diagrammatically the apparatus to which reference has heretofore been made. In other words, the course of the paper on this diagram, as well as in that of the Kidder diagram, Exhibit H, is from the bottom of the diagram upwards. The paper leaves the delivery reel Q and passes by the feeding mechanism R¹ which acts to pull the paper from the reel Q and forms a first loop of stack paper against which the pull of the intermittent feed device T U is brought to bear.

245

The intermittent action of these feeding devices carries the paper past the part of the press where the printing is done and forms a second loop of slack between the intermittent device U and the second friction device; in this manner the upper or take-up reel draws continuously upon the second loop of slack paper and the operation of the whole device is to secure an intermittent movement of the paper past the platen and to have the intermittent jerks brought to bear upon the loops of slack paper rather than upon the bulk of paper upon the delivery reed Q.

248

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the diagram of the Eckerson patent No. 433,776.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 9.

Mr. Church: That is objected to by counsel for complainant on the ground that the exhibit is not a faithful representation of the mechanism of the Eckerson patent.

A. (Continued.) Taking up now the Cox patent No. 508,814 referred to in the question, it will be seen that this also relates to printing presses in with the same problem of protecting a delicate web or strip of paper against rupture when subjected to intermittent jerking movement is recognized and provided for through the production of loops of slack paper upon which the intermittent jerks are brought to bear.

If reference be made to the drawing accompanying the Cox patent, it will be seen that there is a feed or delivery roll W of paper at one end of the press and that this paper passes over a continuous feed device A and after passing about the web printing mechanism H H¹ is made to reach and be acted upon by an intermittent feed device 1, and

then is passed forward either to the shears or to a take-up roll.

The Cox specification says at page 1, line 12:

"This invention relates to web printing presses and its object is to provide an improved system of feeding the web through the press so that it may be positively and continuously drawn from the paper roll into the press and positively and continuously delivered both during and after the making of an impression thereon * * *"

251

Speaking of the production of the slack paper as a result of the action of the continuous feed A, the specification says, page 1, line 87:

"This governor roller C is a gravity roller, and takes up any slack of the infed web during the taking of an impression, and maintains the tension of the web by its weight. It may be otherwise mounted or guided provided it is left free to take up the slack in web."

252

The specification also says at page 1, line 100:

"The parts are so adjusted that the amount of web positively drawn from the roll W and fed into the press by the feed devices and the amount of web positively drawn out of the press by the delivery devices will be equal."

The paragraph also says in making clear that this apparatus is for the protection of the paper, the following at page 2, line 3:

"While the impressions are being taken, the web is nipped between the beds and cylinders and is, of course, held thereby, but during this time the roller 1 is rotated at such a speed that the loop of web thereunder is paid out to the delivery fast enough to prevent tearing of the web and at the same time the governor roller C (which is supported by the loop of web thereunder) descends and takes up all the web fed in during the taking of an impression, holding the web always at a constant and uniform tension."

254

In order to clearly indicate in the simplest diagrammatic form the general course of the web of paper through the Cox printing press I have had prepared a diagram which I now produce which shows this matter clearly.

In other words there is a delivery wheel W from which the web of paper is drawn by the continuously acting feed rollers A, the operation of which produces a first loop of slack paper. Against this slack is impressed the pull or jerk of the intermittent feed device *t* drawing the paper past the point at which the printing takes place.

255

The operation of this intermittent feed device produces a loop in the paper against which the pull of the uniform feed device S is brought to bear in supplying the paper to the take-up roller at the upper end of the diagram.

In all three of these printing press patents, the various parts are positively connected together by suitable gearing so as to maintain a positive operation of the different devices and secure such a harmonization or co-ordination of movement as to maintain the necessary amount of slack at the proper places against which the pull of the feeding devices may be brought to bear and in that way secure the desired safety of operation, and in that

258

way to prevent tearing or otherwise defacing the paper.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the diagram of that Cox patent No. 508,814, produced by the witness.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 10.

Mr. Church: I object to that as not a fair representation of the mechanism of the Cox patent.

Q5. In your opinion are the diagrams you have had made and which you have produced of the Kidder, Eckerson and Cox patents correct representations of those patents respectively? A. Yes, for the purposes of diagrammatic representation.

It may be noted that on these diagrams there are certain designations given to the various parts at the right of the diagram, and it is to be noted that these are merely expressions relating to the general mechanism of the Latham patent in suit and are intended to show the similarities of operation and function with corresponding devices in these printing press patents.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence copy of United States patent to Augustin Le Prince, No. 376,247, dated January 10, 1888.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 11.

Mr. Church: That is objected to as not pleaded in the answer.

Mr. Jeffery: This patent is introduced to show the state of the prior art.

Q6. Have you examined and do you understand the Le Prince patent, Defendants' Exhibit 11? A. Yes. Q7. Please explain it as briefly as is consistent with enabling the Court to understand the mechanism and invention there disclosed. A. The Le Prince patent describes both a taking machine or camera and a delivering device or projector. Fig. 3 shows a general view of the camera device and Fig. 7 a general view of the projector device.

It is to be noted that this patent contemplates the use of a long strip of photographic film, or its equivalent, and that in the camera apparatus such a film is unperforated and is moved forward by the effort of the take-up reels themselves. example, in Fig. 3 we will find a delivery reel D, and a take-up reel I1. These two reels are moved by a gear wheel B, mounted upon a shaft A. This gear B has a mutilated gear or, in other words, the teeth extend only part way there-around. Such teeth co-operate first with similar teeth on the delivery reel D and then with corresponding teeth on the take-up reel D1. It will be understood that the wheel B in co-operating with the reel D causes such reel to deliver a certain amount of slack film which will not be immediately drawn past the exposure window of the apparatus because, in the first place, the driving teeth of the wheel B have not yet reached the take-up reel D1 and in the second place because the pad or frame J is being pressed against the film at the point of exposure, so as to hold it against movement.

On the other hand, when the take-up reel D¹ begins to move the frame J is drawn away from the film at the exposure window and the reel D draws upon the loop of slack film which the delivery reel D had previously formed.

It is provided in the Le Prince patent that when pictures taken in the above apparatus are to be used for exhibition purposes they may be mounted

260

upon parallel metal strips which have holes punched in their edges and in this way built up into a long strip of positives which are ready for exhibition purposes. In the feeding of this strip Le Prince employs two sprocket wheels for feeding purposes indicated at G-6 of Fig. 7. As to this the specification says, page 3, line 79:

263

"The transparencies are adjusted on a pair of endless metallic ribbons accurately punched with small round holes II-7 in which fit the pins P and P¹ fixed on the driving and guide drums G-6, so that after having been wound around the drum D they are pulled and brought into position alternately by the action of gearing wheels N-5, O-5 and crank Q-5."

The general operation of the intermittent feeding of the apparatus is to be found on page 2, line 97 of the specification running down to the end of that paragraph.

264

We have here therefore, in this Le Prince patent the provision of an exhibiting machine in which a strip is employed, carrying a large number of pictures, this strip having perforated edges and being fed forward by sprocket wheels G-6.

This patent also indicates that where an intermittent movement of the film is to be secured, it is necessary and desirable, as in the printing press art, to have the pull of the intermittent feed device brought to bear upon a loop of slack film rather than upon any reel which carries a large amount of film which may be heavy and have a large inertia.

Q8. Have you read and do you understand and have you examined the British patent to Greene and Evans No. 10,131 of 1899? A. Yes.

Q3. Will you please explain as briefly as is consistent with making it clear the device which is the subject of that patent, but before you begin your answer I will offer in evidence the said Greene and Evans patent.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 12.

A. This Greene and Evans patent No. 10,131 of 1889, contains a very fair disclosure of a moving picture camera which has as its important feature the fact that it provides for the stoppage of the film at the moment the exposure is to be made and the photograph taken. And that this involves an intermittent movement of the film, which, if a great length of film be employed, would necessitate the intermittent jerking of the film alone unless means were provided for preventing the intermittent jerk to be brought to bear on the heavy weight of film but rather upon a loop of slack film definitely provided for the purposes of protection.

This Greene and Evans apparatus is one in which the work is done with a single camera and lens and in which the pictures may be taken with great rapidity. It is also one in which there is a positive relationship established and maintained between the delivery wheel, the take-up reel, the intermittent feeding device and the continuous feeding device, through appropriate gearing.

In other words, as the specification says, page 1. line 13:

"To carry out our invention we provide a main shaft which is actuated either by a winch turned by hand, clockwork, or otherwise, to this shaft is attached wheel work and counter-

266

shafts by which the whole apparatus is driven and the necessary cycle of motions performed."

As a matter of fact the patentees arranged "a long roll of sensitive photographic film on one of the spindles" as stated at line 27, page 1.

The patent also calls attention to the fact that as fast as the film is fed from one reel it is taken up by the co-operating take-up reel, in spite of the intermittent movement of the film past the exposure window. The paying out and taking up apparatus of the Green and Evans patent is continuous in its operation and in connection therewith an intermittent feeding device is employed.

All of this is indicated at line 39, page 1 of the specification as follows:

"As both paying out and rolling up rollers have a continuous motion communicated to them by the driving shaft and as it is desirous that the film during its exposure to the light should be at rest, we provide an arrangement to effect this which is as follows: Immediately beyond the exposure screen and between it and the up-winding roller we place an intermittently acting drum of such a diameter and circumference as that each turn thereof will take up or roll forward the exact amount of film that is required for each picture, and in passing this film forward the drum also draws into the exposure position a fresh length of film ready to be exposed."

At line 14, page 2, we find the following statement relative to the form of a loop of slack film:

"The constant uniform motion of the paying out spindle as it unwinds causes a certain uni-

269

form length of the film to pass forward towards the exposure screen when it collects into a kind of loop in readiness for use, it cannot, however, pass into the position for actual exposure until that portion of the film occupying such position has been withdrawn, as soon, however, as the detent tooth attached to the drum escapes through the slot in the pinion the drum makes a single revolution and in so doing both removes the exposed film from the screen and at the same time draws the loop of fresh film which has been gathering into the exposure position, and at the same time passes foward the already exposed film into the form of another loop in readiness to be wound up on the winding roller, which being provided with a similar uniform continuous motion from the main shaft as the paying out roller proceeds gradually to wind up this loop so that it is wholly taken up by the time the escape tooth again rotates when a fresh loop of film is passed forward."

273

272

There are two general schemes for producing these two loops of slack film and securing the intermittent actuation of the film past the exposure window, one of which is diagrammatically expressed in the drawing which I now produce.

By reference to this drawing it will be seen that there is a feed wheel upon which is mounted the bulk of the film to be exposed and which is marked 10 on the diagram. Against the surface of this film and in frictional contact therewith is a continuously operating feed roller 12 which tends to feed forward the film which is mounted upon the reel and by reason of that constant feeding opera-

275

tion produces a first loop of slack film indicated at 11. The apparatus for drawing upon this first loop of slack film is shown diagrammatically by the intermittently operating feed roller 16, provided with teeth, acting upon the film to draw it up past the exposure opening 15. The intermittent device 16 thus draws against the first loop of slack film and not upon the bulk of the film mounted upon the reel; at the same time it intermittently feeds forward a certain amount of film and thus provides a second loop of slack film. It is upon this second loop of slack film that the take-up roll 18 draws in winding up the film.

A modification of this general arrangement is indicated in a second diagram which I produce and which has been marked "Greene and Evans No. 2." In this arrangement there are two reels, one to hold the bulk of the film before exposure and the other to receive the bulk of the film after In frictional contact with the two rolls of film is a feeding device which operates uniformly to draw off a definite amount of film from the feed reel and to wind up a definite and

equal amount of film on the take-up reel.

The operation of this device is such as to provide a fresh loop of slack film 11 between the delivery reel and the exposure window and a second loop of slack film upon which the take-up reel may draw. Intermediate of these two continuously operating reels is the intermittent device 16 which is provided with teeth and which co-operates with the film in drawing the same forward intermittently past the exposure window. This intermittent feed device draws against the first loop of slack film and not upon the heavy mass of film upon the delivery reel.

This apparatus is provided with a suitable shutter which is described at line 45, on page 5 of the specifications.

The intermittent feed device with its projecting teeth is referred to at line 41, page 4 of the specification. It is to be understood that the shutter acts in such manner as to expose the lens while the film is in the position of rest.

I do not understand that the film used with the Greene and Evans apparatus is perforated although it may well be. The patent is silent on this subject. The fact is, however, that the intermittent feed device is provided with teeth and these teeth are adapted to co-operate with the film and draw it forward a certain and definite and predetermined distance, this tooth arrangement serving to act against the first loop of slack in the film provided by the continuous operation of feeding devices acting upon the film.

It is among the possibilities that the sprocket wheel 16 is designed to make its own perforations in the film, in which event such devices would cooperate with the same perforations if the film should be passed through the machine at subsequent times.

It is thus to be seen that in this Greene and Evans British patent there is disclosed a photographic apparatus for taking moving pictures, or photographing objects in motion, in which there is embodied a device for supporting the bulk of the film before exposure, and one for supporting the bulk of the film after exposure and feeding devices acting continuously upon the film to provide a definite forward feed of the film from the delivery reel and a definite supply of film to the take-up reel; it also discloses a toothed intermit-

278

tent feed device for drawing the film past the exposure window, this intermittent feed device taking up the slack formed below the exposure window by the first continuous feeding operation, and supplying a second loop of slack which is taken up by the second of the continuously operating feed movements.

In this patent there is also disclosed a friction feed at one part of the film and a sprocket feed on the intermittent.

281

The various parts are positively driven and are designed to obviate the possibility of rupture or other damage to the film during its operation and due to its great length or relatively great weight and inertia.

It is thus indicated clearly how it is possible to protect the film against damage when it is desired to bring the film to rest for purposes of exposure, and that the way in which this protection is to be carried out is through the co-operation with the intermittent feed device of continuous feeding devices which are on either side of the exposure window and are designed to form the slack and to take up slack in the film and in that way absolutely relieve the film of unnecessary strain.

282

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the diagram of the device of the Greene and Evans British patent No. 10,131 of 1889, being the first diagram produced by the witness.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 13.

Mr. Jeffery: I also offer in evidence the diagram entitled, "Greene and Evans No. 2," being the second diagram of the said Greene and Evans patent produced by the witness.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 14.

Mr. Church: Both diagrams are objected to by counsel for the complainant as not faithful representations of the mechanisms of the Greene and Evans patent.

Q10. In your opinion are those two diagrams faithful and correct and accurate representations of the device of the alleged invention disclosed in the Greene and Evans patent? A. Yes, for diagrammatic purposes.

284

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the copy of the French patent to M. Marey, No. 208.617 of 1890.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 15.

Mr. Jeffery: I also offer in evidence a translation of the said Marey patent No. 208,617 of 1890.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 16.

It is stipulated that subject to correction this translation is a correct translation of the said Marey patent.

285

Q11. Have you read, examined and do you understand the device and invention disclosed in this Marey patent No. 208,617 of October 3, 1890, being Defendants' Exhibit 15? A. Yes.

Q12. Have you read a translation of the said patent? A. Yes.

Q13. Will you please explain the device set forth and disclosed in that patent as briefly as may conveniently be possible? A. This Marey French patent of 1890 is one which relates to a photo-

graphic camera to be used in the photographing of moving objects. It provides that the film shall be carried upon a reel prior to the exposure and that there shall also be provided another reel which shall hold the bulk of the film after exposure. It also provides that the movement of the film shall be arrested during the intervals of exposure and this means that the film shall be alternately started and stopped with great rapidity and frequency.

As the specification states:

"To produce stoppages of the sensitized "strip the stoppage of the massive parts of "the mechanism is not to be thought of as "this would produce destructive shocks. On "the other hand, to arrest the film at one "point while the mechanism continues to pull "it would result in its rupture."

In other words, it is recognized in this Marey patent of 1890 that it is out of the question to consider the practical operation of a device of this sort in which the jerking upon the film should be against the massive parts of the apparatus itself inasmuch as such an intermittent pull upon the massive parts of the apparatus would involve such strain as to tend to destroy the film or rupture it. In other words, there would be destructive shocks.

At the same time it is recognized by this Marey patent that some means must be provided to protect the film against breakage through the pulling upon that film when the film was held stationary at the exposure window for exposure purposes. We thus have the same general recognition of the

288

problems that have been so clearly indicated in the various printing press patents to which I have referred and also in the Greene and Evans British patent which I have just described.

For purposes of illustration and explanation I have had prepared and now produce a diagrammatic expression of the apparatus of the Marey French patent of 1890 from which it will be seen that there is a reel or a device for supporting the bulk of the flexible film before exposure and that this reel is given a continuous unwinding movement so as to form a loop of slack film. The takeup reel at the other side of the apparatus has film fed to it by the continuously rotating feeding device 1. If no other device were employed the reels I would tend to continuously draw the film past the exposure window. As a matter of fact, however, this is not permitted because of a clamping device C which is made to intermittently press against the film near the exposure window and hold it against movement.

This pressure of the film against the exposure window does not result in damage to the film because the continuous pulling of the feed mechanism, l, is effective in bending over the long and very flexible spring device, r, which about takes up the slack above the exposure window. The effect of putting the small spring, r, under tension is to draw the film upward past the exposure window as soon as the pressure is released at the pressure device, C. It is thus to be noted that there are independent feed reels and take-up reels and apparatus for securing a definite and constant amount of film to the take-up feel; also the provision of a loop of slack film against which the pull of the intermittently acting spring, r, is

290

brought to bear for the bringing of a fraction of the sensitive film before the exposure window.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the diagram of the Marey French patent of 1890.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 17.

Mr. Church: I object to it as not a correct representation of the mechanism of the Marey patent.

293

Q14. In your opinion, is the Defendants' Exhibit 17, a correct diagrammatic representation of the Marey French patent of 1890? A. Yes.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence a copy of the French patent to Marey, including the specification and drawings, being patent No. 231,209 of June 29, 1893.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 18.

Mr. Jeffery: I also offer in evidence a translation of the said Marey patent.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 19.

294

It is stipulated, subject to correction, that this translation is a correct translation of the said Marey patent No. 231,209 of June 29, 1893.

Q15. Have you read, examined, and do you believe you understand the device set forth in the drawings and specification of this Marey patent, Defendants' Exhibit 18? A. Yes.

Q16. Will you please explain this device as briefly as may be consistent with a clear description? A. This Marey patent of 1893, describes a photographic camera or its reverse, a photographic

projector, for moving pictures. The reversibility of the apparatus is indicated in the patent, where it says:

"The reversibility of this apparatus can easily be seen, if a strip carrying positive images lighted from the rear, are made to pass through the focus of the objective."

In this apparatus it is arranged that the film is automatically stopped at each exposure period, and that the film follows in the apparatus the path indicated by the mixed line, A, C, D, E, F, G, H, B of Figure 2.

In order to most clearly follow out the course of the film and the general nature of the apparatus that is disclosed in the Marey patent of 1893, I have had prepared a diagram which I now produce, showing such an apparatus. As will be seen from this diagram two reels are provided, one of which is adapted to support the bulk of the flexible film before exposure, and the other which is designed to support the bulk of the film after ex-Independent of these reels, and operating to feed forward, is a continuously rotating feed device, J, which draws the film steadily and continuously from the delivery reel, a, and in this way forms a loop of slack film. The take-up reel, B, is positively driven and draws upon the film, tending to pull it past the exposure opening. order to secure the necessary intermittent action of the film at the exposure window, an intermittently acting pressure device, L, L-2, is provided with means to press the film against the casing K, at proper intervals, and hold the film against movement. Should no protection be afforded to the film between this clamping device and the take-

296

up reel, B, the action of that reel in pulling upon the film would tend to rupture the film; but there has been provided a flexible spring arm, N, which will be deflected under the pull of the reel, B, when the film is held against movement at the exposure window, and the winding up operation is thus permitted without damage or danger to the film. At the same time, as soon as the pressure of the device, L-2, is released and the film is free, the resiliency of the spring arm, N, will tend to snap, or jerk the film upward the necessary distance to expose a fresh section of film for photo-

graphic or exposure purposes.

It is thus seen that in this Marey French patent of 1893, there are the reels for holding the bulk of the film before and after exposure, the provision of constantly operating devices, one of which is entirely independent of the delivery reel, and also means for automatically moving the film forward past the exposure window, the pull of that feed being upon a loop of slack film rather than upon the bulk of the film, with its heavy weight, as carried by the delivery reel, a.

300

299

It is thus to be noted that in the Marey French patent of 1890, the art is taught that the film may be fed to the take-up reel by a pair of continuously operating feed devices, whereas the Marey French patent of 1893 teaches the art that the film may be also fed forward from the delivery reel by a pair of continuously operating feed devices. In both of these patents there is a provision of a loop of slack film against which the pull of the intermittent feed device is brought to bear so that the film is protected against rupture.

It is also to be noted that Fig. 6 of this Marey French patent shows a shutter with three wings.

The protection of the film against tearing is thus stated in the specification:

"From thence the film travels upon the flexible blade N, fixed to the pillar n; the purpose of this flexible blade is to give a certain amount of play to the film, so that it cannot tear under the action of the traction caused by the receiving column which turns when the fixing device maintains the column during the posing time. In fact, if this flexible blade did not exist, it is obvious that the film being maintained at D-2, and drawn through the rotation of the receiving coil B, would tear at each picture."

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the diagram of the Marey French patent of 1893. Marked Defendants' Exhibit No. 20.

Mr. Church: I object to it as not being a correct representation of the mechanism of the patent.

Q17. In your opinion is the diagram, Defendants' Exhibit No. 20, a correct diagrammatic representation of the device set forth in the said Marey patent of 1893? A. Yes.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the Edison patent No. 491,993, dated February 21, 1893.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 21.

Mr. Jeffery: This patent is introduced for the purpose of showing the state of the art.

I also offer in evidence the patent to Edison, No. 493,426, dated March 14, 1893.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 22.

302

Mr. Jeffery: I also offer in evidence the patent to Edison, No. 589,168, dated August 31, 1897.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 23.

Mr. Church: These are both, I think, pleaded.

Mr. Jeffery: Those are both pleaded, I believe.

305

Q18. Have you read and do you understand the Edison patents Nos. 491,993, 493,426 and 589,168? A. Yes.

Q19. Will you please describe and explain as briefly as may be possible the device shown in the specification and drawings of the three Edison patents, Defendants' Exhibits Nos. 21, 22 and 23, so far as they may have any relevancy to, or any bearing on the Latham patent in suit? A. For convenience I refer first to Edison patent 493,426, which is for apparatus for exhibiting photographs of moving objects. Two methods of exhibiting moving pictures are disclosed in this patent, one being by means of a so-called "peephole machine" or kinetoscope and the other being the projection of the image upon a screen in the usual manner of projectors. The pictures to be exhibited are formed upon a long and continuous strip of photographic film in the usual and well-known manner. character of the film is said in this patent to be as set forth in the Edison application, Serial No. 403,534, which, as a matter of fact, resulted in the other Edison patent in the question, No. 589,168. In other words, the film may be a film with perforated edges, and, as a matter of fact, such perforations are diagrammatically expressed in Fig. 1 of this Edison patent, No. 493,426. At the same

time, I do not understand that this patent is limited to a film with perforated edges, but that it was contemplated that a film with plain edges may be also employed. The specification of the Edison patent, No. 493,426, also refers to the Edison application, Serial No. 403,535, which, as a matter of fact, is an application upon which was based the third Edison patent, referred to in question, No. 491,993. The Edison patent, 493,426 has this to say as to the means for moving this film (see page 1, line 98):

308

"The means for advancing the film and for operating the shutter to expose the pictures may be the same in all particulars as in the apparatus for taking pictures described in my application, Serial No. 403,535, filed August 24th, 1891."

If reference be made to this Edison patent 491,-993, Serial No. 493,535, it will be seen that such patent contemplates the employment of an intermittent sprocket wheel, 19, for co-operation with the spaced holes in the sides of the film, for feeding the film forward.

309

If reference be made to the Edison patent 589, 168, it will be seen that the movement of the tapefilm may be continuous or intermittent, but that the intermittent movement of the film is preferable, and that it is also preferable that the periods of rest of the film shall be longer than the periods of movement (see page 1, line 33). This patent describes and illustrates the film with its evenly spaced perforation 4, in Fig. 7, of its drawings. The specification of patent 589,168 indicates at line 44, page 1, that the patentee had

"been able to take, with a single camera and a tape-film, as many as forty-six photographs 311

per second, each having a size measured lengthwise of the tape of one inch, and I have also been able to hold the tape at rest for ninetenths of the time."

In other words, Mr. Edison asserts that with the apparatus of this patent he had been actually able to attain not only a very high rate of exposure of forty-six per second, but that he was able to do this with a period of movement, only one-tenth of the total elapsed time. It is thus to be seen that Mr. Edison contributed to the art the definite idea that either of two forms of film, or either of two forms of feeding mechanism, might be employed in photographic cameras or photographic projectors or photographic kinetoscopes. In other words, if one uses plain film one may use therewith a friction feed. On the other hand, if one employs a film with perforated edges, one may use therewith a sprocket feed. The art was definitely instructed that the selection of one form of feed or the other form of feed was merely a matter of choice on the part of the user and a matter of preference.

312

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the patent to Mayer No. 525,991 of 1894. This patent is offered for the purpose of showing the prior state of the art.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 24.

Q20. Have you read and do you understand this Mayer patent Defendants' Exhibit No. 24? A. Yes.

Q21. Please explain the apparatus shown and described in the drawings and specifications of that patent, Defendants' Exhibit 24. A. Without going into the details of the device, it may be sufficient to

state that this Mayer patent shows a means for continuously supplying the film to a slack loop against which the pull of an intermittent feed device would be brought to bear. In the patent drawings the continuously operative feed device is the reel, A, driven from the main shaft, while the intermittingly acting device is the reel, B, giving intermittent movement by a reciprocating frame, co-operating with teeth of the reel. The loop of slack film is clearly indicated as present in connection with the reel, A, and as to this the specification says, line 24, page 2:

314

"The latter, moreover is connected by gear-"ings with reel, A, in order to unwind the "sensitized paper somewhat more rapidly "than the same is wound on reel B, in order to "prevent tearing."

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the patent to Gray, No. 540,545, dated June 4, 1895. Marked Defendants' Exhibit 25.

Q22. Have you read and examined and do you understand the Gray patent Defendants' Exhibit No. 25? A. Yes.

313

Q23. Please explain and describe the device which is shown in the drawings and specifications of this patent, Defendants' Exhibit No. 25. A. While this Gray patent, 540,545 is entitled, "Series Photographic Camera," it definitely shows the application of the apparatus to projecting purposes as well as to the taking of photographs. In either case, a single lens is used and photographs are taken upon a film of double width; that is, the film is sufficiently wide to accommodate two pictures side by side, only one of which is used at a time for projecting purposes. The mechanism is

such as to permit movements only half as fast as would be required if the film was of single width only. The parts are so assembled as to arrange for the projection of a picture first from one side of the film and then from the other side of the film. In order that there may be proper correlation of these pictures with the time of exposure, a mirror is interposed in the optical axis and arranged at such an angle as to utilize a picture lying in a plane at right angles to the optical axis at one time and then (the mirror being rotatable and covering but half of a circle) permitting the light to pass through the opening in the mirror frame to another portion of the film in the direct line of the optical axis. In order that first one side of the film may be utilized and then the other, means are provided for shifting the film transversely across the photographic box in its course from one position to another.

It is to be noted that the bulk of the film before exposure (I^1) is carried upon a roller, the shaft of which is movable in the slot of a carrying frame, and this roller is definitely pressed to the left by a suitable spring q^1 . At the same time, the bulk of the film, after exposure (J) is carried upon a roller similarly mounted and actuated by the spring q.

In frictional contact with the film, J^1 is a positively driven frictional feed roller, n^1 which tends to unroll the film J^1 and form a loop of slack film. Against this loop of slack film is brought to bear the intermittent pull of a toothed feeding device v which engages with evenly spaced holes in the edges of the film. It is thus seen that the continuous feed device n^1 forms a supply of slack film, and that an intermittently acting device falls upon this loop

318

of slack film and forms a second loop of slack film. Against this second loop of slack film is brought to bear the action of a second intermittently operating feeding device v, which intermittently pulls the film upward and supplies it (through the slack section) to the continuously operating feed device n which is in frictional contact with the surface of the roll of film J.

It is to be noted that the instruction of the patent is that when used as a projector, two sources of light shall be employed, these being arc lamps, so arranged with reference to the revolving mirror and the optical axis as to permit first one and then the other to become effective in throwing light upon the screen, and in this manner utilizing the positive picture first on one side of the intermittently moving film and then upon the other.

Fig. 2 of the Gray patent indicates the transference of the wide film from one side of the photographic box to the other, and also illustrates the fact that the first intermittently acting device pulls upon the film when it is in one position or plane with reference to the optical axis, while the other intermittent feed device moves it when it is in another plane with reference to such axis.

The operation of the intermittent feed is indicated at line 55, page 2, of the specification:

"To the shafts s, s, are secured cranks u, u¹ operatively connected with rods v, v¹ which are supported at their free ends, the ends of the tines of the fork being bent at right angles and beveled, to form hooks, w, for engagement with the film d which is provided at its upper and lower edges with perforations x for receiving the hooks w, at the ends of the forks.

320

The forked rods, v, v^1 are arranged to act on the portions of the film held by the guides C, C^1 , and are pressed forward against the film by springs y, secured to a fixed portion of the apparatus. The hooks w are thus arranged to reciprocate in planes at right angles. They are also geared so as to work in alternation."

The use of the two lights with the apparatus, when used as a projector, is indicated at line 93, page 2. A reference to the moving of the two portions of the film in alternation along the two focal planes by a step by step movement, is also referred to at line 41, page 1, and is described in detail later on in the specification. It seems unnecessary to quote those portions.

It is thus seen that the Gray patent discloses the use of a perforated film which is intermittently and positively moved forward by an intermittent toothed feed mechanism; that the pull of the intermittent feed is brought to bear upon a loop of slack film, formed by the continuous feeding of the film from the delivery roll; also that the intermittent feeding device produces slack loops of film, which in turn are taken up by the continuously operating feeding mechanism n in feeding the film to the take-up roll I.

In this connection I have had prepared a diagrammatic expression of the apparatus of this Gray patent 540,545, in which I have shown for purposes of simplicity only one of the intermittent feed devices w. This diagram shows the delivery roll of film I' from which the film is fed by the continuously operating feed mechanism n^1 , to form a loop of slack film; the intermittently acting toothed feed device w acts upon holes in the film,

323

and pulls against the loop of slack film above mentioned, and draws the film past the optical axis of the apparatus; in doing this it forms a second loop of slack film, which is drawn against by the continuously acting feed device n, feeding the film to the take-up roll or bulk of exposed film.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the drawing of the Gray patent No. 540,545, produced by the witness.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 26.

Mr. Church: I object to it as an incorrect representation of the mechanism of the Gray patent.

Q24. In your opinion, is Defendants' Exhibit No. 26 a correct diagrammatic representation of the mechanism shown and described in the said Gray patent? A. Yes.

Q25. Mr. Hammer, have you carefully examined the record in the suit of the Motion Picture Patents Company against the Independent Moving Picture Company of America on this Latham patent in suit, No. 707,934? A. Yes.

Q26. Are you able to describe the intermittent movement of the defendants' camera, which was alleged in that suit to be an infringement? A. Yes.

Q27. How did that device for intermittent movement in that camera compare with the device w of the drawing of the Gray patent, Defendants' Exhibit 26? A. It was very similar; as a matter of fact they were almost identical. In the defendants' camera of that former suit (known as the Warwick camera), there was a reciprocating fork with two teeth or prongs substantially like the device w, of

326

329

the Gray patent, this fork being upwardly moved and downwardly drawn by a suitable cam mechanism, and in the course of that movement, reaching up and taking hold of holes in the side of the film that was being exposed, and intermittently drawing that film down past the exposure window in a manner similar to that illustrated and described in the Gray patent.

It is stipulated by counsel for the respective parties that the Edison patent No. 589,168, being Defendants' Exhibit No. 23, was applied for by filing the application in the Patent Office on August 24, 1891.

Adjourned to to-morrow, December 23rd, 1915, at 10:00 A. M.

New York, Thursday, December 23, 1915, 10:30 A. M.

Trial resumed.

330

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the French patent to Joly No. 249,875, dated August 26, 1895.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 27.

I also offer in evidence a translation of the said Joly patent.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 28.

I also offer in evidence United States Letters Patent No. 569,875 to said Joly, dated October 20, 1896.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 29.

EDWIN A. HAMMER resumes the stand.

Direct Examination by Mr. Jeffery (continued):

Q28. Have you read and do you understand the French and United States Letters Patent to A. M. Joly which have just been offered in evidence? A. Yes.

Q29. Please explain and describe the devices shown in the said French Patent to Joly, No. 249,875 and also that shown in the said United States Patent to Joly, No. 569,875, so far as the said United States Patent may be pertinent or may assist in your explanation of the French pat-A. The Joly machine is one which is shown in the two patents referred to as a camera, although it is also said to be adapted for use in making animated projections. For example, the specification of the French patent says: "The film unwinds, as I have explained above, and by placing behind the apparatus a sufficient source of light equipped with a reflector and a condenser the picture which is on the film can be thrown on the screen."

The apparatus is one in which two reels are provided, one of which is adapted to support the bulk of the film before exposure, and the other of which is adapted to support the bulk of the film after exposure; the former is lettered J in the drawings and the latter R. The film is fed from the delivery reel through the action of a continuously operating sprocket roller H, the teeth of which engage with spaced holes in the edges of the film in the manner indicated and set forth in the Edison patent to which reference has already been

332

made. This construction is indicated in the French specification where it says:

"On the shaft of the wheel G is mounted a "roller H, fitted with two circumferential "rows of teeth which fit into the holes pro"vided all along the edges of the film I."

This first continuous feeding sprocket is positively driven through appropriate gearing as indicated by the specification where it says:

335

"The shaft E carries a pinion F, which con-"trols the gear wheel G through the agency "of the gear wheels G¹ and G-2."

The specification provides that after leaving the first continuous sprocket feed device the film shall originally have been made into a loop of slack film before being placed back of the exposure window, so that the intermittent pull upon the film shall not be brought to bear upon the delivery wheel J, with its heavy weight of film, but upon the loop of slack film thus formed; it also indicates that in the normal operation of the apparatus this loop of slack film upon which the intermittent feed works is maintained. For example the specification says:

336

"Before beginning the operation at the time "when the film is on the apparatus a loop is "formed by hand between the roller H and "the rollers K and K¹. As the amount of film "which winds upon the spool R is equal to "that which unwinds from the spool J, this "loop will remain the same during the whole "time that the apparatus is in operation. It

"follows that since the roller P does not touch "the taut film, the latter is not in danger of "tearing."

Adjacent to the lower or take-up reel R of the Joly apparatus is a second continuously operating sprocket feed mechanism P, similar to the feeding mechanism H above described. The Joly apparatus states that this roller P is a toothed roller and that it is positively driven through appropriate gears. For example,

338

"From this frame the film passes between "two rollers OO' over the toothed roller P, over "the roller Q, and is wound up on the spool R. "The shaft E carries a pinion S which, by "means of the wheel S' drives the wheel T "mounted on the shaft with the roller P."

It is thus seen that there is a continuous sprocket feed mechanism for drawing the film from the delivery wheel J and a second continuously operating and positively driven sprocket feed mechanism for supplying the film to the take-up reel. One sprocket feed supplying the film to the take-up reel at the same rate at which the other is drawing it from the delivery reel.

330

Intermediate the two continuously operating sprocket wheels is an intermittent feed device comprising a frame N, which oscillates about a pivot and at intervals presses against the film and forces the film down past the exposure window, this movement or effort upon the film being imposed upon the loop of slack film above the exposure window and not upon the bulk of the film which is carried by the delivery reel J.

Co-ordinated with this intermittent feed mechanism is a stop device e which at appropriate times

presses against the film so as to definitely interrupt the passage of the film by the exposure window. As the specification says, "When the film is stopped one of the openings provided in the shutter presents itself between the dark room and the objective, the film then receives an impression at the moment when it is stopped."

It is thus seen that when the stop device e is drawn back from the film so as to leave it free the intermittent feed device will be pressed against the film and some of the loop of slack film near the continuous feed device H will be drawn down past the exposure window.

In this way a second loop of slack is formed at the intermittent feed device and it is upon this loose film that the continuous feed device P draws in continuing the feeding of the film to the take-up reel R while the film is at rest before the exposure window.

As the specification of the French patent says:

"As the shaft E continues to rotate the "frame N will move back again. The loop it "had formed on moving forward will no longer "be stretched, and the roller P will be enabled "to let down the film forming such loop."

As indicating the disclosure by the Joly French patent and the relief of strain upon the film due to the formation of the loops of slack in spite of the material weight and inertia of the long films which are employed the specification says:

"Owing to the system which controls the "movement of the film, films of very great "length and consequently great weight may "be used. The frame N which produces a

341

"movement of the film need not act directly "on the spool since there is always a certain "length of film unwound beforehand. This "frame, therefore, need not itself cause the "rotation of the spool."

In order to illustrate in the simplest possible way the general course of the film in its passage through the Joly apparatus I have had prepared, and now produce a diagrammatic expression of such apparatus. On this diagram the two spools upon which the bulk of the film is mounted are indicated at J for the delivery spool and at R for the take-up spool. It will be seen that in leaving the delivery spool, or reel J, the film passes around the continuously operating sprocket feed mechanism H, which draws the film from the spool J and in that manner maintains the loop of slack film shown on the diagram. The film then passes by the exposure window L and by the stop device e, which is effective in arresting the movement of the film in the manner already indicated. From the exposure window the film passes by the idler rollers M and O, between which oscillates the frame or intermittent feed mechanism indicated As seen on the diagram the righthand and lefthand movement of this device N tends to force out the film at this point into a second loop. low the intermittent feed device is the second continuously operating sprocket feed mechanism P which draws upon the loop of slack film formed by the intermittent feed device and feeds such film continuously and regularly to the take-up reel R.

From this description it will be seen that the Joly French patent discloses a projector or a camera mechanism in which the film is arrested at

344

347

the moment of exposure and in which the interval of rest is greater than the interval of movement. It also appears that the Joly apparatus embraces positively driven continuously operating sprocket feed mechanisms H and P for drawing the film steadily, regularly and continuously from the delivery reel J and delivering it continuously and regularly to the take-up reel R; there is also the intermittently acting feed mechanism interpolated between the two continuous feed mechanisms and at one side of the exposure window, for drawing upon the loop of slack film formed by the first of the continuously operating sprocket feed mechanisms and forming a second loop of slack upon which the second continuously operating sprocket feed mechanism P draws film for supplying to the take-up reel R.

These are the features which are disclosed in the Latham patent in suit, the only variation being the use of one form of intermittent feed mechanism for another form of intermittent feed mechanism well known at the time of the application for the French patent and the application for the patent in suit, and long before the latter date.

348

On this diagram, as on all of the similar diagrams which I have had prepared and which have been produced in the course of this deposition, I have placed reference numerals at the side of the reference letters of the several patents discussed, these reference numerals being placed in parentheses and serving to identify the particular features referred to on these diagrams, with corresponding parts or features of the drawings of the Latham patent in suit.

Q30. In your opinion is the diagram you have referred to of the Joly patent a correct diagram-

matic representation of the devices described and shown in said patent? A. Yes.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer the diagram of the Joly French patent No. 249,875 and United States patent No. 569,875 in evidence.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 30.

Mr. Church: Objected to by counsel for the complainant as not a correct representation of the mechanism of the Joly patent.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the United States Letters Patent to Armat, No. 673,992, dated May 14, 1901.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 31.

It is stipulated that the application for the said Armat patent was filed in the United States Patent Office on February 19, 1896.

Q31. Have you read and do you understand and have you examined the nature of the device or devices shown and described in the said Armat patent No. 673,992? A. Yes.

Q32. Please describe and explain the said devices shown in said patent. A. Armat's patent referred to in the question is specifically for a projector device for exhibiting moving pictures. It provides for the use of a long and consequently heavy film, or strip, for the pictures and also provides two reels Q and Q¹ one of which is designed to support the bulk of the film before exposure, while the other is designed to support the bulk of the film after exposure.

The apparatus also embraces a continuously operating sprocket feed mechanism E for drawing the film steadily and uniformly and continuously

350

353

from the delivery reel Q and also a continuously operating sprocket feed mechanism for feeding the film at the same rate to the take-up reel Q¹. Between these two continuously operating sprocket feed mechanisms is the exposure window and also a positively driven intermittently acting feeding mechanism for drawing the film past the exposure window at appropriate times.

It will be seen that the apparatus is so designed as to supply a loop of slack film between the exposure window and the first continuously operating sprocket feed mechanism E, so that the action of the intermittent feed will be upon this loop of slack film rather than upon the taut film or upon the bulk of the film carried by the supporting or delivery reel Q. Of course, the intermittent operation of the intermittently acting device H is designed and will result in the formation of a second loop of slack film upon which the second continuously operating sprocket feed mechanism E-2 draws for its supply of film. In this manner the film is protected against injury in passing through the apparatus.

354

One of the objects of the Armat invention is stated at page 1, line 26, as follows:

"Another object is to provide means by "which a continuous or endless strip of film "forming the picture carrying surface may be "operated so as to successively place the ob"jects thereon in position for reproduction "without liability to injury from unnecessary "strain or wear thereon, and without the "knocking and jarring of the mechanism which "is incident to the means heretofore proposed."

Attention is called to the fact that a continuous film is to be differentiated from an endless strip of film, the Armat patent showing how either may be utilized.

Another object of the Armat patent is said to be (page 1, line 39):

"For intermittently releasing the film so as "to permit it to move a sufficient distance to "expose a picture at each successive movement "and also to provide continuously operated "mechanism for moving the film, and means "for intermittently moving it so as to successively place the pictures in the field of illumination for reproduction."

356

The Armat patent calls attention to the fact that one of the shortcomings in every apparatus known has been in the employment of shutters having but a small opening so that the period of darkness much exceeds the period of illumination, the consequence being that the extended dark period makes a very marked impression upon the eye and there is a very material flicker of the picture, with the marked diminution in illumination of the screen resulting. He says at page 2, line 30:

357

"In the case of my invention the conditions "are quite different, and the results produced "are therefore more satisfactory than and "superior to anything of the kind heretofore "obtained, for the reason that the picture is "held a much longer time than is required to "remove it and substitute another in its stead, "thus prolonging the period of view or illumination very greatly as compared with the "period of interruption or change " * *."

He says further relative to this matter on page 2, line 64:

"This I accomplish by moving the film or "other picture-carrying surface intermittently "in such manner that the interval of exposure "and illumination of the picture shall exceed "the interval of time required to effect the "change * * *."

That the continuously operating feed mechan-359 isms are provided with teeth is indicated in the specification at page 3, line 11, as follows:

> "The drums or spools E and E-2 are prefer-"ably provided with peripheral teeth or pro-"jections adapted to engage perforations in "the film so as to properly guide and hold it "against slipping."

That these continuously operating feed mechanisms are positively driven is indicated by the sentence next to the one above quoted:

"These spools may have their shafts jour-"naled in any suitable support or standard "and may be geared together by a sprocket "chain or otherwise, so as to rotate in unison, "being so timed that each spool will rotate "the same number of times in the same space "of time."

That the operation of the continuously operating sprocket feed mechanism A furnishes a loop of slack film is indicated in the specification page 3, line 31, as follows:

"Owing to its rigidity or stiffness the film "D will be caused to be moved or be carried

"upwardly or outwardly a short distance away "from the drum E and its point of contact "with the spring E⁴, so as to provide constant "slack in the film at this point, and then with "a return bend it may pass in a substantially "straight line through the tension and guid-"ing device E¹ and thence to the drum E-2."

The correlation between the continuously moving feeding devices and the intermittently moving feeding devices is indicated in the specification page 5, line 7, as follows:

362

"This operation will be repeated in regular "sequence, the film being caused to move over "the surface of the drums E and E-2 continu-"ously, while that portion thereof which lies "between the two drums is intermittently "moved forward just far enough to expose a "picture at each move, the film advancing "mechanism being also continuously driven, "but adapted to only intermittently advance "the film, the interval of illumination of the "picture being made to exceed the interval of "movement or change preferably very greatly "or in the ratio of about 1 to 10."

363

In concluding his general description of the operation of the apparatus described, the patentee says at page 5, line 29:

"I thus provide means for operating the "film so that it may be moved the proper dis"tance for exposing successive pictures with"out liability to injury thereto, and whereby "the knocking and jolting of machinery inci"dent to the necessarily rapid movement of "the parts may be effectually prevented."

It may be noted that in connection with the continuous feed mechanisms and the intermittent feed mechanism, the patentee provides a stop device or pressure device which is brought to bear against the film at the time the exposure of the film is to be made, thus arresting the movement of the film. This feature is indicated at line 21 of page 3 of the specification.

365

It is to be noted that while Armat discloses continuously operating sprocket feed mechanisms, his preferred method for securing intermittent movement of the film was through the use of a "beater" device rather than a toothed device, because he specifically wished to avoid at that point the additional strain which would be brought upon the holes in the film if he employed teeth on that feature of his apparatus. His specification indicates a full knowledge of the use of a toothed intermittent feeding device and his preference for some other, though equivalent form, for such a means for securing intermittent movement of the film. I call attention particularly to that portion of the specification found on page 4 beginning at line 29:

366

"This roller is preferably provided with a "suitable covering and may have reduced ends, "as shown in Fig. 8 so that it may engage the "surface of the film between the perforations "in order to prevent enlarging or otherwise "distorting the perforations."

He says in order to prevent enlarging or otherwise distorting the perforations.

In other words, to avoid the use of a form of intermittent feed mechanism with which he was familiar Armat deliberately reduced the ends of the intermittent feed rollers so that the effect of the rollers was brought to bear upon the surface of the film between the perforations rather than upon the perforations themselves which would have been the case had he employed teeth on those rollers for securing the intermittent movement.

Fig. 13 of the Armat patent shows the general arrangement of apparatus suggested for use when the film is a long strip or band instead of an endless strip.

In order to indicate with clearness the general course of the film through the apparatus of the Armat patent I have had prepared, and now produce, a diagrammatic expression of such apparatus and its general action upon the film. In this diagram it will be seen that reels Q and Q1 are provided, one for maintaining the bulk of the film before exposure, while the other supports the bulk of the film after exposure. On this diagram the general course of the film is upwards and it will be seen that there is a continuously operated sprocket mechanism E, which continuously and regularly and uniformly draws the film from the supply reel Q and serves to form a loop of slack film. It also indicates at the upper part of the diagram that there is a continuously operating sprocket feed mechanism E-2, which serves to supply film to the take-up reel Q1 regularly and uniformly and steadily. Between these two continuously operating sprocket feed mechanisms is an intermittent feed mechanism H designed to move the film past the exposure window f4 at appropriate times.

A stop device E¹ is also indicated for holding the film at the exposure window under sufficient friction so that the intermittent feed device H will 368

only draw a predetermined amount of slack past the exposure window for purposes of exhibition.

On this diagram I have also indicated reference numerals which correspond to those parts of the apparatus of the patent in suit to which the Armat devices bear relationship.

It is thus clear that the Armat patent certainly shows and teaches everything that is shown and taught by the Latham patent in suit, including the possibility of the use of a sprocket feeding device for the intermittent feed, though there is indicated also the preference for a device which does not have teeth so as to avoid the additional wear upon the holes of the film which would follow the use of teeth at such a time and place.

Q33. In your opinion is this diagram of the Armat patent which you have produced a correct diagramatic representation of the devices shown and described in that patent? A. Yes.

Mr. Jefferey: I offer in evidence the diagram of the Armat patent No. 673,992 produced by the witness.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 32.

Mr. Church: I object to that as not a faithful representation of the mechanism of the Armat patent.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the Casler patent No. 666,495.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 33.

It is stipulated that the application for the said Casler patent was filed in the United States Patent Office on February 26th, 1896.

It is further stipulated that the application for the said Casler patent No. 666,495, Defendants' Exhibit 33, was placed in interference with Messrs. Armat and Latham,

371

said interference proceeding being the one which has been heretofore referred to.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the patent to Latham No. 600,113 dated March 1st, 1898.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 34.

This patent is offered for the purpose of showing some statements of Latham therein contained and not as an anticipation.

Mr. Church: That is objected to as incompetent. The statements of the said Latham patent can have no effect upon the interpretation of the patent granted to him on a previously made application.

Mr. Jeffery: Pursuant to a stipulation entered into between counsel for the respective parties dated July 16th, 1915, by virtue of which it is agreed that certain depositions taken in the suit of the Motion Picture Patents Company against the Independent Moving Pictures Company of America heretofore tried in this Court may be offered in evidence with the same force and effect as if they had been given in this case, along with the exhibits thereto produced and subject to objections as if here offered for the first time, I produce and offer in evidence a printed book containing the depositions of certain witnesses named in the index printed in the front of said book and also containing certain exhibits listed in said index.

I introduce this book at this time because some of the depositions which it contains relate to the manufacture and use prior to the application for the patent in suit of a camera known as the Chinnock Camera. 374

I now place this printed book on the record without reading the depositions in full to the Court, it being agreed that that course may also be taken with respect to the depositions which may be offered by the complainant subject to the said stipulation.

As part of the defendants' proof of the existence of the Chinnock Camera at the dates referred to in the testimony I offer the Chinnock agreement of May 25th, 1895, in evidence.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 35.

I also offer in evidence agreement between Chinnock and Hough and Werner dated May 3rd, 1895.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 36.

I also offer in evidence the Hough letter of January 15th, 1895.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 37.

I offer also in evidence the certificate of incorporation of the Maltby Manufacturing Company dated August 28th, 1895.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 38.

I also offer in evidence the affidavit of Joseph F. McCoy dated May 5th, 1911.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 39.

I also offer in evidence the Chinnock Camera referred to in the testimony of the witnesses whose testimony is printed in this said volume.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 40.

I also offer in evidence five photographs of the said Chinnock Camera.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 41-A, 41-B, 41-C, 41-D and 41-E.

I also offer in evidence the receipt book of the American Kinetoscope Company re-

377

ferred to in said depositions printed in said volume.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 42.

Q34. Please describe the Chinnock Camera, Defendants' Exhibit 40? A. The mechanism of this exhibit comprises two reels, one to support the bulk of the film before exposure and the other for supporting the bulk of the film after exposure, together with feeding devices for drawing the film continuously from the supply reel, means for intermittently moving the film past the exposure window, and means for taking up the film and winding it upon the take-up reel.

The various operative parts are positively connected through suitable gearing so as to be operative from a single drive shaft.

The film itself is about two inches in width and is unperforated, and the feeding mechanisms therefore are adapted to move the film forward by frictional contact therewith.

The film is drawn from the supply reel at a uniform rate and through the continuous rotation of the feeding mechanism, and in this way forms a 381 loop of slack on which the intermittent feed mechanism draws. As a consequence of this construction the film is relieved from strain and tearing or rupturing the film is obviated because the pull is not upon a large mass of film having considerable weight and inertia but upon a short section of slack film. In other words, the Chinnock Camera provides against the breaking of its film or strip of delicate material in a manner comparable with that employed in the prior printing press art to which attention has been called and in which the same problem was presented.

After leaving the continuous feed mechanism the film passes by the exposure window and past a stop mechanism which is designed to press against the film at appropriate intervals and hold it against forward movement when it is desired that the film shall be arrested for purposes of exposure.

This stop device is arranged to act synchronously with the intermittent feed rollers so as to secure the desired intermittent forward movement of the film. It is to be noted that the rollers for feeding the film past the exposure window rotate continuously and are of larger diameter than the continuous feed rollers and therefore have a greater peripheral speed; their use with the intermittently actuated stop device however prevents these rollers from actually forcing the film forward continuously, there being a slippage provided for at this point when the stop mechanism is acting to arrest the forward movement of the film.

The rollers are cut away at their central portions so as to relieve the film of wear at the part where the picture has been taken, the friction being exerted in all of the rollers at the edges of the film.

In connection with the intermittent feed mechanism there is a supplementary device in the form of a pivoted frame which acts to draw down upon the film when it is released by the automatic stop device and form or take up the slack which is fed forward by the intermittent feed mechanism. The take-up reel is driven by belt from the main mechanism of the apparatus and draws directly upon the loop of slack film formed by the intermittent feed mechanism and its supplementary hinged frame.

In order to illustrate clearly the general course of the film through the Chinnock camera and the

383

general relationship of the parts I have had prepared and now produce a diagram illustrating these features.

On this diagram I have placed letters of reference similar to those found on the drawing of the patent in suit and relating to the same general features. In this diagram the course of the film is downward and is shown as being drawn from the delivery reel 22 by the continuously operated and positively driven feed device 39 forming the first loop of slack 21a. From this point the film passes by the exposure window 56 and the stop devices a c and between the feed rollers d. On the shaft with the right hand roller D is a cam b which serves to intermittently release the stop mechanism a c. From this intermittent feed mechanism the film passes around the spring controlled frame 46 and forms in this way the second slack in the film which is fed by the intermittent feed mechanism and thence the film is taken by the take-up reel 24.

It is thus seen that in the Chinnock camera, the same general problem was faced and solved that was faced by the patentee of the patent in suit, and the solution is the same in that it provides a continuous feeding of the film from the supply reel for the release of strain at that point and the formation of a loop of slack film which is drawn upon by the intermittent feed mechanism, the latter forming a second loop of slack film upon which the draft is made in supplying the film to the take-up reel.

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence the diagram of the Chinnock camera produced by the witness.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 43.

386

Mr. Church: The diagram is objected to as an inaccurate representation of the mechanism of the Chinnock camera.

Q35. In your opinion, is that diagram, Defendants' Exhibit 43 an accurate and correct diagrammatic representation of the mechanism of the Chinnock camera? A. It is.

Q36. Have you examined the photographs of the Chinnock camera which have been offered in evidence? A. Yes.

389

Q37. Did you examine the photographs of the Chinnock camera which were in the record of the suit of the Motion Picture Patents Company versus the Independent Film Manufacturing Company? A. Yes.

It is stipulated that the photographs of the Chinnock machine, Defendants' Exhibits Nos. 41-A, '41-B, 41-C, 41-D, 41E are copies of the photographs of the Chinnock camera which were in evidence in the suit of the Motion Picture Patents Company versus Independent Film Manufacturing Company on the Latham patent in suit.

390

Q38. Do you find that any part of the Chinnock camera is missing on the Defendants' Exhibit 40, which has been introduced here this morning? If so, please describe what it is. A. Yes; I find that the transverse bar supporting the stop-pad a of my diagram, Defendants' Exhibit No. 43, is missing; this appearing, however, very clearly in the photographs, Defendants' Exhibits 41-A, 41-B and 41-C of the Chinnock camera, which are also in evidence.

Q39. Will you be kind enough to mark in ink on one of the said photographs in the printed volume which has been produced here and is part of the record in this case, the part of the machine which you have just described as missing, so that it may be clearly apparent on the record just what that is? A. The part I refer to is already marked with a white cross on Defendants' Exhibit No. 41-A, it being understood that this frame thus marked also includes the transverse bar from which it is supported.

392

Mr. Jeffery: I offer in evidence a certified copy of the file wrapper and contents of the Latham patent in suit, No. 707,934.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 44.

Q40. Mr. Hammer, you are familiar with the motion picture projecting machines which are widely used in this country, are you not? A. Yes.

Q41. And you have been for some time? A. Yes.

Q42. Will you please state whether on such machines the continuous positively driven sprocket which is shown in the Latham patent in suit is used to obtain accuracy of registration for practical commercial purposes? A. No, I should say that it was not. The fact is, as has already been testified by another witness, it is the practice in such projecting machines to have a supplementary device, known generally as a framing device, for securing the proper registration of the film with the exposure opening. The function of the continuously operating sprocket feed mechanism is to feed the film forward, hole by hole, or picture by picture, irrespective of the conditions of the perfo-

395

rations and irrespective of repairs that may have been made in the film, or independent of the splices that are frequently found in such film, and in order to compensate for variations in the position of pictures with reference to the exposure opening, it is necessary and desirable that means may be employed for compensating for any variation for those or any other cases that may appear, and enable the operator to compensate for those variations during the actual exhibition of the pictures; and it is probably within the experience and observation of almost anyone who has ever attended an exhibition of moving pictures, that at times the pictures will be thrown on the screen out of proper relation to the exposure window; in other words, the pictures are not properly framed, and it will be observed that under those conditions, the operator will make an adjustment which restores the proper relationship between the picture and the frame within which it appears on the screen. This framing mechanism differs in different projecting machines, but is to be found on all of them. so far as I have observed, and is entirely distinct from the continuously operated sprocket feed mechanism to which reference has been made in the question, and secures the proper registration of the pictures independently of the continuous feeding of the picture.

396

Q43. The Nicholas Power Company, in this city, is one of the largest manufacturers of projecting machines in this country, is it not? A. Yes.

Q44. Do you know whether or not Mr. Nicholas Power, the president of that company, has a patent on a framing device of the character you have just described? A. He has.

Q45. And is that used on the machines manufactured by the Nicholas Power Company? A. It is.

Q46. Was that patent in litigation, to your knowledge, against the C. R. Baird Company within the last year? A. It was.

Q47. And it was sustained by Judge' Mayer in an opinion in this court? A. It was.

Q48. Do you remember the number of that patent? A. I do not.

Q49. Now, Mr. Hammer, assuming a motion picture machine to be similar to that described in the patent in suit, except that it is made for use as a camera, and has a shutter with two small peripheral openings; in your opinion could such a device be operated as a projecting machine? Please give your reasons for any opinion you may express on that point? A. It could not. It is wholly unadapted for such use. The reasons are quite plain. In such a camera as is contemplated by the question, it will be understood that the small shutter openings are designed and adapted to secure a practically instantaneous exposure of the object which is being photographed. This is essential in such a camera, because the moving object will have covered such a range of movement during a long exposure as to give a blurred photographic effect. In other words, in order to secure sharp definition in a photograph of an object in motion, it is necessary that the exposure period should be extremely short. Under such circumstances, the use of such a mechanism and such a shutter would absolutely preclude the possibility of the successful and commercial use of such a device for projecting purposes, irrespective of anything else.

398

Cross Examination by Mr. Church:

XQ50. Mr. Hammer, which of the structures of the prior art which you refer to in your testimony do you regard as the closest or nearest approximation in structure of the Latham patent in suit? A. Without hesitation I should say that the closest approximation was found in the Armat patent, to which reference has been made, although that does not fully express a feeling which I have toward the disclosures of the art to a person skilled in the art at the time of the application of the Latham patent in suit.

XQ51. Assuming that the invention disclosed in the Armat patent shall be held not to have been prior in point of time to the invention of Latham as embodied in the patent in suit, what would you regard as the next closest approximation in the prior art to the Latham structure, disclosed in the patent in suit? A. In answering this question, I would like to have the date which counsel has in mind beyond which or forward of which I am supposed to consider this hypothetical situation.

XQ52. I think the question can be answered as it lies. A. I do not agree with counsel.

XQ53. Well, then, you cannot answer it? A. I cannot answer the question under those circumstances.

XQ54. Assuming that the Armat invention shall not be held to be a part of the prior art, and that the date of the Latham invention shall be held to be the date of the application of the Latham patent, namely, June 1st, 1896, what structure of the art prior to that date would you regard as the closest approximation of the Latham patent in suit? A. I do not see the ground for any

401

such assumption, inasmuch as the date of application of the Armat patent is prior to June 1st, 1896, the date of application for the Latham patent.

XQ55. Please answer my last question, eliminating from consideration the Armat patent? A. I think without any doubt that the Joly French patent, for example, shows substantially everything, and teaches substantially everything that is disclosed in the patent in suit, in view of the state of this art at the date of the patent, which is prior to the date of application for the patent in suit. The art was so full and so explicit and so well understood at that period that the general question of the equivalency of movement, the equivalency of devices, the equivalency and identity of results and general means provided for the securing of such result, makes the conclusion that I have stated inevitable in my mind.

XQ56. Assuming that the Latham invention shall be held to have anticipated the date of the Joly patent, what structure of the prior art would you consider the nearest approximation to the structure of the Latham patent? A. I would here repeat the inquiry and request for further information regarding the date beyond which my inquiry should extend.

XQ57. The date of the Joly patent, August 26th, 1895? A. I should say very definitely that the work of Gray, taken in the light of the state of the art and the date of the Gray application or Gray invention, was a full disclosure of means for the protection of a delicate strip of film or photographic material in passing through a photographic device adapted for use in connection with moving pictures.

404

XQ58. Is there any patent of the prior art to which you have referred that shows either a camera or a projecting machine embodying the following combination of distinct instrumentality, to wit, the combination with devices adapted to support the bulk of the flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positively driven toothed rotary devices located between and entirely disconnected from said supporting device and at opposite sides of the exposure window, said toothed devices being adapted to carry and feed the flexible film by engagement of their teeth. with equally spaced holes made in the edges of the film, and to respectively produce and take up slack in the film, and an intermittently acting rotary feeding device also provided with teeth, which engaged with the holes in the film, whereby the film is intermittently fed across the exposure opening? A. Yes. It being understood that for the purposes of disclosure, a toothed intermittent feeding device is found in its equivalent form, as shown in the Armat patent.

408

Mr. Church: Answer objected to as irresponsive and question repeated.

XQ59. Can you not answer the question without qualification?

Mr. Jeffery: I want to enter my protest that this seems to be a violation of the rule of this Court as to the interpretation of claims.

A. My previous answer is direct and conclusive, to my mind, because the Armat patent not only illustrates a device in which all of the features mentioned in the question are present with the exception of a toothed intermittent feed, but such patent discloses that toothed intermittent feeds are contemplated as among the possibilities and as equivalent structures, and are simply considered as of less practical advantage than a friction device or "beater," to accomplish the identical result, with less strain, than if teeth were employed.

XQ60. Please point out specifically in the Armat patent any statement to the effect that Armat ever contemplated the employment of an intermittently acting rotary feeding device provided with teeth, instead of the beater device that is shown? Please do not refer to something in the patent that does not answer my question, but something that does. A. I call attention to the portion of the Armat specification, already quoted by me in my direct testimony here, on page 4 and beginning at line 29, as follows:

"This roller is preferable with a suitable "covering, and may have reduced ends as "shown in Fig. 8, so that it may engage the "surface of the film between the perforations "in order to prevent enlarging or otherwise "distorting the perforations."

It is to be understood that at the time this statement was made by Mr. Armat, the toothed intermittent feed for films with spaced perforations at their lateral edges was well known, and had been in use for years.

XQ61. Have you now referred to the only description in the Armat patent of the use contemplated by him of a rotary toothed intermittent

410

feeding device? A. I should say that the Armat patent described in this statement is a device which he prefers to one having teeth for a similar purpose.

XQ62. Does not Armat in his patent show in Fig. 2, one form of beater device, and in Fig. 9 another form of beater device, and in Fig. 10 another form of beater device, and in Fig. 11 another form of beater device, making four forms of beater devices, that he contemplated using as his intermediate feeding mechanism? A. Yes. And all of those are adapated to engage the surface of the film between the perforations in order to avoid enlarging or otherwise distorting the perforations, and it is also to be noted that out of ten claims of the Armat patent which mention an intermittent feed, only one of them relates to any one of these specific devices to which the question calls attention. All of the other nine claims are couched broadly for "means," which would include not only the four specific devices which are illustrated in the patent drawings, but also such a form of intermittent feeding device as is illustrated and described, for example, in the Latham patent in suit.

414

Mr. Church: All of the last portion of the witness's answer is objected to as irresponsive, and as composed of argumentative and volunteered statements.

Mr. Jeffery: I have no more questions of Mr. Hammer. I offer in evidence a certified copy of the decision of the Examiners in Chief of the United States Patent Office, dated October 17th, 1899, in the matter of Interference No. 18,461, between Latham, Casler and Armat.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 45.

Mr. Jeffery: I also offer in evidence a certified copy of the decision of the Acting Commissioner of the United States Patent Office, dated February 5th, 1900, in said Interference proceeding.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 46.

Mr. Jeffery: I also offer in evidence a certified copy of the opinion of the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia on appeal from the said decision of the Commissioner of Patents in said Interference proceeding, No. 18,461, said decision being dated January 8th, 1901, as appears by the certificate affixed thereto.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 47.

It is stipulated that the copies of the decisions, Exhibits Nos. 45, 46 and 47, which are printed in the book "Complainant's Stipulationed Depositions and Exhibits," hereafter to be produced by it on its behalf, are true and correct copies of said decisions.

Mr. Jeffery: I now also call attention to the depositions of the witnesses named in the index of the book of depositions in the suit of the Motion Picture Patents Company versus the Independent Motion Picture Company heretofore referred to, in connection with matters other than that of the Chinnock camera, and in connection with those depositions I offer in evidence the following exhibits:

Baltimore Sun article, October 3, 1895.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 48.

Mr. Jeffery: Dyer Interview in Show World, of April 4, 1908.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 49.

.

416

Stipulation.

IN THE

DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES, .

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-

PANY,

419

Complainant,

VS.

Universal Film Manufacturing
Co., et al.,
Defendants.

In Equity No. 12-194. On Latham Patent No. 707,934.

STIPULATION.

between the parties hereto that either party may, at the trial of this cause, read into the record any portions of any depositions taken in the suit of Motion Picture Patents Company vs. Independent Moving Pictures Company of America, heretofore tried in the U. S. District Court, Southern District of New York, Equity No. 5-167, including the exhibits referred to in such portions, and the exhibits offered at pages 629 and 630 of the record on appeal in said suit, with the same force and effect as if such depositions had been given and such exhibits produced in this cause, provided, however, that

this stipulation does not extend to the testimony of the witnesses Main, Waterman, Armat, Lowe, Freeman and Smith, nor to the depositions of Otway Latham and Gray Latham in an interference proceeding before the United States Patent Office, entitled Latham vs. Casler vs. Armat, which were offered in evidence at page 220 of said record on appeal.

IT IS ALSO STIPULATED AND AGREED that the same stipulation will be made in this cause by complainant as to the use of the so-called Armat machine at the Atlanta exposition in 1895, which was made at page 1370 of said record on appeal.

422

Dated, New York, N. Y., July 16th, 1915.

GEORGE F. SCULL, Solicitor for Complainant.

WETMORE & JENNER, Solicitors for Defendants.

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Complainant,

against

In Equity No. 5-167.

425

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURES COMPANY OF AMERICA,

Defendant.

Proofs for final hearing on behalf of the defendant, taken before N. Curtis Lammond, Notary Public, acting as Special Examiner by consent, in accordance with the 67th Rule of the Supreme Court, as amended, at the office of H. N. Low, Room 612, Ouray Building, Washington, D. C., on the 17th day of January, 1911, at 10 A. M.

426

Present—John W. Munday, Esq., Counsel for Defendant.

PARKER W. PAGE, Esq., Counsel for Complainant.

And thereupon, CHARLES F. JENKINS, a witness on behalf of defendant, was produced, and being sworn, testified as follows:

Direct Examination by Mr. John W. Munday:

Q1. What is your name, your age, and your residence?

A. Charles F. Jenkins, 42 years, 1808 Park Road, Washington, D. C.

Q2. What is your business, Mr. Jenkins?

A. At present and for several years past, I have been an inventor.

Q3. What connection, if any, do you have and have you had, with the art and practice of moving pictures?

A. I have been more or less actively engaged in this art off and on since 1890, rather more in the nature of an experimenter than as largely a manufacturer of apparatus and films used in this art.

Q4. What is your ability as to reading drawings of patents, and what experience have you had, if any, in that respect?

A. I am able to make mechanical, that is shop, drawings, and also able to make Patent Office drawings, and believe I am able to correctly interpret them, and have examined a great many patents and their accompanying drawings.

Q5. I wish you would give a brief history of your connection with the moving picture art, from the time you first entered that field.

A. My activity in this line began in 1890 and 1891, when some sketches were made for a mechanism to be used first as a camera to produce a series of related pictures on a band or ribbon. The first actual machine was made some time in 1892. This was more or less successfully used, and upon the showing made I was able to secure some financial backing for further experimentation. Another apparatus was built in 1893. The first application was filed on January 17, 1894. In June of 1894 an exhibition was given of pictures projected on a large canvas to some friends. In the fall of 1894, public exhibition for a fee was given.

428

432

These exhibitions were seen by a gentleman, Mr. Thomas Armat, who was introduced to me by Prof. Benton Bliss of this city. Some few months later Mr. Armat and I entered into a contract arrangement, by which he was to finance the construction of certain of my apparatus, the immediate object being the production of suitable machines for exhibit at Atlanta, Georgia, at the Exposition held in that City in the fall of 1895. A disagreement having arisen between us to the wisdom of prosecuting a sole application in place of the joint application for certain mechanisms, we later compromised the arrangement, resulting in his acquiring the entire title to the joint application mentioned, since which time I have followed my own initiative in such work as I have done in this art.

Q6. What was this "first actual machine" like, which you say was made some time in 1892?

A. It was a box-like affair containing a mechanism for giving intermittent motion to the film, supported in the end of the box.

Q7. Do you mean that it was a camera for taking pictures on a film?

A. Yes, sir, it was a camera for this purpose.

Q8. Is that camera still in existence?

A. No, sir, it has long since been lost.

Q9. You state that "another apparatus was built in 1893." What was that?

A. That was also a camera; but was capable and was changed by the enlarging of the shutter-opening, or rather the substitution of a shutter having a larger opening, and with the addition of an oil lamp for the exhibition of pictures previously made therein.

Q10. Is that 1893 apparatus still in existence? A. No, sir; parts of it, principally the beater device for giving intermittent motion to the film, was taken out of this camera and later used in a camera projector of improved construction.

Q11. Have you a drawing of that machine?

A. I don't think I have a drawing, but I have a photograph of it.

Q12. You say that in the fall of 1894, public exhibition was given. Who gave this public exhibition, where was it given, and what kind of apparatus was used?

A. The exhibition was given by me in a building in this city known as Convention Hall, during the Pure Food Exposition given by the grocers of this city, as I recollect it, and the mechanism was a peep-hole machine, or a machine one looked into to see the pictures and was made in accordance with the principles disclosed in patent No. 536,569, issued to me in 1895.

Q13. Coming down to the exhibit at Atlanta, Georgia, in the fall of 1895, who gave that exhibition, and what kind of an apparatus was used?

A. That exhibition was given by Mr. Armat and myself, and the apparatus was one in which a perforated film was used, drawn downward passed the exposure-window intermittently, by means of an eccentrically located pin or roller mounted thereon to give it the desired intermittent movement. The machine was equipped also with the usual lenses and light or lamp used in magic-lanterns or stereopticons and was driven by an electric motor.

Q14. Was that a peep-hole machine or was it one which threw the pictures on a screen?

A. This was a projecting machine, and the screen employed was approximately twelve feet wide.

Q15. Did you use a perforated film with that machine?

434

A. Yes, sir.

Q16. Where did you get that film?

A. Some of them I had previously made; others, and my recollection is that the bulk of them were such as were used in the Edison Kinetoscope or peep-hole machine which was then being marketed, having, as I recollect it, been on exhibition in this City for possibly six months, or possibly a little longer.

437

Q17. In that Atlanta exhibition machine exhibited by you and Mr. Armat, please state whether or not there were devices for supporting the bulk of a flexible film before and after exposure, combined with feeding mechanism located between the devices for supporting film and separate and distinct therefrom, one of said feeding mechanisms being constructed to uniformly feed the film and produce a pre-determined supply of slack, and the other adapted to intermittently feed the slack across the exposure window.

Mr. Page: Objected to as leading.

438

A. The machine mentioned had devices for supporting the bulk of flexible films before and after exposure; it had in combination a feeding mechanism located between said supporting devices and separate therefrom; the feeding mechanism which gave the film its intermittent movement across the picture window was an eccentrically located roller which bore evenly on the full width of the film for the brief interval of movement and left a slack during the period of exposure, which slack was taken up meantime by the continuously rotating sprocket. A spring arm with a pin thereon over which the film passed from the upper roll or supply created a variable slack above the picture window, the elas-

ticity of the arm insuring a gentle pull on the film as it was drawn from the upper roll.

Q18. Then, as a matter of fact, in this machine at Atlanta you did have between the two supporting reels or devices for supporting the bulk of the film, feeding mechanism separate and distinct from the supporting rolls, is that right?

Mr. Page: Objected to as leading.

A. Yes, sir.

Q19. State whether or not slack was produced in the film, and this slack fed across the exposure window?

Mr. Page: Objected to as leading.

A. Yes, sir, slack was so produced and fed across the window.

Q20. Is there any well known camera in use at the present time among moving picture people that resembles this Atlanta machine of yours? And if so, what is it called?

A. Yes, sir; the camera known as the Gaumont camera has exactly this method of feeding the film intermittently, and other features of generally similar character.

Q21. State whether or not you have been engaged since 1895 in the manufacture of cameras of this general type?

A. I have made a number of cameras since that date, employing this beater movement.

Q22. Have you examined this patent to W. Latham, No. 707,934, the patent in suit, and do you understand the same?

A. Yes, sir; I have examined it, and believe I understand it.

440

Q23. Mr. Latham intimates, inferentially, in this patent that he secures "accurate registration of the successive pictures with the axis of the projecting lens." Is it possible with that apparatus to secure accurate registration of the kind mentioned?

A. No, sir; I do not think so.

Q24. Please give your reasons for believing that that machine cannot be employed and operated to secure accurate registration of the successive pictures with the axis of the projecting lens?

443

A. My experience has taught me that absolute accuracy of register of the film at this point is an impossibility. Mr. Latham employs perforated film and sprocketed wheels to feed it intermittently, and I have never seen, have never made, and from my experiments and experience am absolutely convinced that a machine cannot be made which will feed a perforated film throughout the entire length of a considerable sized roll with absolute accuracy of register in the axis of the lens, that is, at the exposure window. My opinion is that the principal reason why this is impossible is because of the uneven fit, the impossibility of obtaining an accurate fit of the sprockets in the perforations. The sprockets are always cut, and of necessity should be cut with sides or contacting faces, faces contacting with the film, with a gear contour. The necessity for this is that the sprockets are located on a circular surface while the film approaches the teeth tangent to this circular surface and in a straight line. Obviously, therefore, the stepping into and out of the perforations of the film is in an arc, and to prevent the striking of the top of the tooth on the film, the tooth is pointed, as explained above. If, therefore, the film should be caught at the base of the tooth or sprocket it will be pulled down

slightly farther than it would if caught more nearly at the top of the tooth. This in a measure accounts for the jumpy movement on the screen of projected pictures from perforated film. Celluloid film swells and shrinks with weather conditions and also in the process of development. I think it will be easily understood, therefore, that if a standard perforated ribbon shrinks or swells, that is lengthens, either by reason of development or of dampness in the air, there will be difficulty in making it fit any given size sprocket wheel. This is recognized in the art as practiced to-day with perforated film, and to accommodate it the perforations are made larger than the sectional area of the base of the tooth or sprocket. It will also be obvious, therefore, that there is an opportunity for the film to move over the smooth surface of the sprocket wheel at least the distance equal to the difference between the size of the sprocket and the size of the perforation in the film. In a constantly moved film this latter difficulty is not encountered, certainly not to the extent that it is in the intermittently moved film, for in the intermittently moved film there is a tendency for the film to run ahead slightly after the feeding sprocket has actually stopped. This is also recognized as a defect in this system, and it is the custom of those skilled in the art to employ what are known as tension springs in an attempt to instantly stop the film as soon as the feeding sprocket stops. It is conceded that this movement is but slight, though in some make of machines when feeding some known make of film, this difference is very considerable. It must not be forgotten, however, that even the slightest inaccuracy of register is magnified on the screen in exact proportion to the magnification; for example, suppose we

446

have a three-inch focus lens and a projection of 100 feet. The error, in such case, will be magnified 400 times, and, as I pointed out above, accounts for the jumpy pictures on the screen.

Q25. Would it be possible to produce anything but jumpy pictures with the apparatus of the Latham patent in suit, as the same is constructed?

A. It would not.

Q26. Dismissing from the mind for the moment the Latham patent, which is for a Projecting Machine, and turning our attention to cameras, do you know any means for producing a series of equal spaced photographs on a continuous flexible film?

A. Yes, sir. The most accurately spaced pictures are those made on unperforated film. This spacing is in my opinion absolutely as near accurate as human mechanisms can be made. The variation if it exists is unmeasurable and because the reproduced pictures, reproduced on the canvas, do not jump or otherwise vibrate, even though magnified 400 times, as explained above, I think positively and conclusively proves this to be true.

Q27. Please explain by what means one is able to produce moving pictures equally spaced, as you have stated in the last answer. Please describe such a mechanism.

A. There are a number of mechanisms which accomplish this, both in intermittent and constantly running film, but I take it your question relates to intermittently fed film. For example, two rollers which, at certain parts of their circumference touch each other and for a certain other part do not touch each other, would, although they were rotated continuously, feed the film intermittently, the film passing down between them, because the film would be gripped by the two longer radii co-acting and

449

would be released between the shorter radii. Another method is to intermittently rotate two smooth rollers which constantly grip the film. Still another very successful method is to draw the film down between two rollers by the grip of the rollers on the film, one of the rollers being fixedly mounted eccentrically to its axis of rotation.

Q28. Can you take a series of pictures of moving articles on a continuous film which is perforated and operated by sprockets and have the pictures equi-distant from each other?

A. I have never seen results of this kind, nor have I ever been able to produce a film of this character, namely, a perforated film having pictures thereon equi-spaced.

Q29. Have you read the deposition of Mr. H. N. Low in this cause?

A. Yes, sir.

Q30. Did you note any inaccuracies of statement with respect to the prior art patents or the patent in suit, made by Mr. Low?

A. I did not.

Q31. Do you agree or disagree with Mr. Low's conclusions as expressed in his deposition?

A. I quite heartily agree with his conclusions.

Q32. Referring to Cross-Q9 of Mr. Low's deposition and his answer, I will ask you the same question that was asked Mr. Low, namely, Would there be any diffused light interfering with the operation of the camera shown in the patent No. 540,545 to R. D. Gray?

A. I am quite positive from my experience in building cameras that there would be no diffusion to interfere with the production of clear, discrete unfogged pictures. In my own camera I have found it unnecessary to put a shield to prevent this very

452

thing, the only caution necessary being to keep the film, other than at the point of exposure, out of the direct light coming through the lens.

Q33. I have intended in all my questions in this deposition to ask you only about photographs of moving objects for reproduction of motion pictures. My attention is now called by my colleague to the fact that some of my questions and some of your answers do not distinctly specify that the pictures referred to are pictures of moving objects. Will you please state how you understood my various questions and what you meant to answer in this respect?

A. I have understood all your questions to refer only to motion picture photography and motion picture apparatus, and my answers have been made with that understanding.

Adjourned until Wednesday morning, January 18th, 1911, at 10 A. M.

456

January 18, 1911.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Parties present as before.

Witness Charles F. Jenkins, continuing:

Q34. Have you some photographic enlargements of motion picture films which represent the character of spacing between the pictures produced by sprocket operated cameras working with perforated films, and the positive grip cameras working with unperforated films.

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. I have. They are here. This one is an enlargement from perforated negative film, and this one from unperforated negative film.

The samples produced by the witness are offered in evidence and marked, respectively, "Defendant's Exhibit Enlargement of Perforated Film," and "Defendant's Exhibit Enlargement of Unperforated Film."

Mr. Page: The Exhibits are objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

Q35. Mr. Jenkins, are those fair samples of the work ordinarily done by the two kinds of cameras?

Mr. Page: Objected to as immaterial and irrelevant.

A. Yes, sir; they are.

Q36. Did you ever exhibit your early apparatus for motion picture production, and describe the same to the members of the Franklin Institute?

A. Yes, sir; I gave an exhibition of the apparatus before the Franklin Institute at a session of its regular meetings, and the matter was referred to a committee for detailed investigation—the usual detailed investigation under such circumstances.

Q37. When was this?

A. I am not sure as to the exact date, but my recollection is that it was in the winter of 1896-97. I remember that after the committee had reached its conclusion, and published the usual invitation for the expression of opposition to their conclusions there was opposition expressed and that

458

462

some months elapsed, how many I don't remember, before they reached their final conclusion and recommended to the institute an award in recognition of merit brought out in the invention.

Q38. When was that award made?

A. That award was made in 1898—the early part of 1898, as I remember it.

Q39. Please state what the award was, and to whom?

A. The award was in the nature of a gold medal known as the Elliott-Cresson medal, the highest award which the institute ever gives, I believe, and was accompanied by a report of the findings of the committee. The award was to me.

Q40. I wish you would give some further details of the exhibition that you made at the Atlantic Exposition, in the fall of 1895. Thus, was the exhibition a moving picture exhibition?

A. It was, yes, sir.

Q41. How were the moving pictures shown?

A. On a large canvas screen, about 12 feet wide, as I recollect it, by means of a moving picture projecting machine employing a long strip of film, or rather several of them, the light employed being an arc lamp.

Q42. Was this moving picture representation a successful or an unsuccessful one?

A. The exhibition, itself, was a very successful one, the equal in every respect of exhibitions at the present time.

Q43. What was the character of the exhibition? Was it to the public and free, or was it to the public and paid admission, or how?

A. It was a public exhibition, paid admission, and I think the price of admission was twenty-five cents.

Q44. Now, please give me some details of the mechanism of the exhibiting machine which you used there. You say a film or films were used. How were these films supported in the exhibiting machine?

A. The films were, as I recollect it, each wound on a small bobbin, that is, each particular series of pictures or subject was wound on its separate spool or bobbin. These spools were placed on a pin or stationary support located above the feeding mechanism. This mechanism was of such a character as to produce a slack between the upper roll of film and the intermittent feeding mechanism, and a slack below the intermittent feeding mechanism from which latter position it was carried to a receiving spool upon which it was re-wound, the spool being the same in general character as the original spool from which the film was drawn.

Q45. Please explain the make of the intermittent feeding mechanism which fed this film intermittently back past the exposure window from one slack or loop; to the other?

A. This consisted of an eccentrically located roller, that is, a roller located eccentrically on the face of a revolving disk.

Q46. Was this machine practically the same as what is known as the Gaumont camera, as method of handling the film?

A. Yes, sir.

Q47. What became of this exhibiting machine that you had down at Atlanta, and which you have just described?

A. To intelligently answer this, I should like to say that we had three exhibiting machines, two of which were alternately in use, the third being a reserve machine. That these machines were made

464

as copies from an exhibiting machine I had previously built, the three machines referred to, however, having been paid for, that is, the construction of them was paid for by Mr. Armat. Our exhibiting building at the Exposition was located near an old plantation show, and when this latter caught fire from open gasolene torches, as I understood at the time, the fire was communicated to our own building which Mr. Armat told me was burned to the ground, he having been able to save one or more of these machines, as I recollect it, although possibly I am wrong in this and that nothing was saved. I was in Washington at the time, and this report was brought to me by Mr. Armat, although I think he telegraphed me at the time. If these machines were saved, Mr. Armat probably brought them away with him. I never saw them again. I was employed at the time in the United States Life Saving Service, head offices being located in this city. I had been granted leave to assist in establishing this exhibition at Atlanta, and after our discouraging fire I went back to work. So far as I was concerned, the only exhibiting machine I had left then was one I had where I lived on East Capitol Street of this City.

468

Q48. What was that exhibiting machine like, that you had on East Capitol St. in this City, where you lived and which was the only one you had left after the fire?

A. This machine was one of which the three built and taken to Atlanta were copies. I presume, therefore, that the description above is sufficient.

Q49. What became of this machine? State how it went out of your possession, if it did.

A. It was taken away from my house forcibly by possibly a writ of replevin or some legal process. I was away at my place of employment at the time, and as this was my first experience in any legal controversy, matters were not as clear to me then as they possibly are now. In other words, I was a good deal agitated, as was also the landlady with whom I lived, for as clearly as I could understand from her the parties who came there got past the front door by a ruse and finding out in some way, possibly by adroit questioning, that my room was the front room, second floor, they went there and finding the door locked, broke it open and took this machine away with them. The landlady did not know any of the parties, as I recollect her description of it, and all ever I knew of it was the suit which came up a little later, in which Mr. Daniels, a real estate partner of Mr. Armat, was present with his attorney. At any rate I never saw the machine again, but I have been told that this machine was taken to New York, showed to Mr. Edison by Mr. Armat, and that the same was exhibited at Koster & Bial's Theatre, New York.

Q50. Please state whether or not at this time, when as you were informed, your machine was taken away from your room forcibly and went into the hands of Mr. Edison,—please state whether or not up to that time Mr. Edison had made any public exhibitions of moving picture apparatus which threw the picture upon a screen in the man-

ner your machine did.

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. This exhibition at Koster & Bial's was, in the public press heralded as the first public exhibition of Edison's projecting machine and was known and heralded as the Edison Vitascope, and I am con-

470

fident in my own mind that this was the first public exhibition that was ever made of moving pictures on a large canvas under the name of Edison's machine. I am aware that Mr. Dickson in a pamphlet published by himself and his sister, say that he exhibited to Mr. Edison on his return from Paris pictures projected on a canvas, but he also explains that these were very indistinct and made from a continuously running moving picture band. system or method of exhibiting motion pictures is absolutely worthless, being simply Mr. Dickson's construction of what is known as the Edison Kinetoscope or peep-hole machine, the only machine which, as far as I am aware, Mr. Edison ever publicly exhibited. This is as a projector absolutely of no value and was abandoned by them, as was also an attempt made by Mr. Latham with a similar construction, at Atlanta at the same time Mr. Armat and I were there. Mr. Latham had this machine in a store, as I recollect it, down town in the City proper and not out on the Fair Grounds. Mr. Latham saw our exhibition and also invited us down to see his.

474

Mr. Page: Answer objected to as irrelevant and immaterial, as largely hearsay and secondary evidence, and as volunteered.

Q51. You speak of a Mr. Latham being at the Atlanta Exposition, was that the Woodville Latham of the patent in suit?

A. I am informed it was, and so believe.

Q52. Do you say that Mr. Latham was at Atlanta exhibiting a machine, a moving picture machine, in a store down town, at the same time you were exhibiting your moving picture machine at the Atlanta Exposition?

A. Yes, sir.

Q53. Did Mr. Latham see your machine?

A. Not while I was in Atlanta, although I think that Mr. Armat told me that Mr. Latham saw it.

Mr. Page: Objected to as hearsay.

Q54. Did you see Mr. Latham's machine that he was exhibiting in a store in Atlanta?

A. No, sir, not the actual film-feeding mechanism, but that was unnecessary to tell me what it was, for any one skilled in the art knew from the results or lack of them the method employed in feeding the film. I had no curiosity to see it, that is the filmfeeding mechanism proper. The remainder of the machine I did see, and remember distinctly the method of securing current therefor, for Mr. Latham explained to me that he required a very high power of light and I remember distinctly also that because they used alternating current in that part of the City and because his machine required direct current he was obliged to install an alternatingdirect-current rotary generator to secure the current he required. All this I saw, as well as having had it explained to me by Mr. Latham. The results on the canvas bore out his explanation so that I think I thoroughly understood what he was driving at and the troubles he encountered.

Q55. Please describe, so far as you are able from what you saw of it, the character of the machine he was exhibiting at Atlanta?

A. I have explained the method of producing the current. The machine in which this current was used to illuminate and feed the film was as follows: A large spool for film was located at the lower part of the machine; a similar large spool was located

476

at the upper part of the machine; between these two spools which were well separated, a feature that struck me at the time, were certain rollers for advancing the film past an exposure window; in front of this exposure window rotated a rather large disk shutter, the purpose of which was to give brief exposure to each picture as it came into axial line with the projecting lens located in front of, and the condensing lenses which were located back of the exposure window; the arc lamp which furnished the light being also located in this same axial line. The film was drawn continuously from one reel to the other, continuously past the exposure window, which I knew by reason not only of the lack of light and sharpness of the picture on the screen but by reason of the very narrow opening in the shutter for giving the required brief exposure to the pictures on the film.

Q56. Do you mean that you knew from the character of the pictures thrown by Mr. Latham's machine on the screen, and by the nature of the shutter opening, and by the lack of light on the screen that Mr. Latham was operating with a film that was in continuous motion without stopping in that

machine?

480

A. Yes, sir.

Q57. He was then using or attempting to use for projecting purposes practically the same machine that Edison employed as a peep-hole machine or kinetoscope. Is that right?

Mr. Page: Objected to as suggestive and leading.

A. Yes, sir; that is right. In reference to my answer to Question 51, in which I say that the Mr.

Latham I saw at Atlanta was the Woodville Latham of the patent in suit, I wish now to add that I have just been informed that Woodville Latham at that time was an old man, and that he had some sons. The man I saw at Atlanta was a middle-aged man with dark hair, and I may be mistaken about his being Mr. Woodville Latham of that patent.

Cross examination waived.

Signature waived.

482

Defendant's counsel offers in evidence, as showing the prior art, the Letters Patent No. 233,882, to R. T. Smith, for Paper Perforating Machine, dated November 2, 1880; also Letters Patent No. 223,866, to the same man and for the same subject, dated January 27, 1880.

Certificate waived.

Adjourned until further notice.

UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Complainant,

VS.

Patent No. 707,934. Latham.

In Equity.

No. 5-167.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURES COMPANY OF AMERICA,

Defendant.

Testimony taken on behalf of defendant before John A. Shields, Esq., Standing Examiner, pursuant to notice, at the offices of Kenyon & Kenyon, 49 Wall Street, New York, N. Y., beginning at 11 A. M., Feb. 16th, 1911.

Present:

- 486 PARKER W. PAGE, Esq., for Complainant.
 - J. W. MUNDAY, Esq., and RICHARD EYRE, Esq., for Defendant.

BAXTER MORTON, a witness subpænaed on behalf of defendant, being duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. Please state your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Baxter Morton; age, 35; Borough of Manhattan, New York City; occupation, lawyer and manufacturer.

Q2. Have you appeared here to-day in response to a subpœna served upon you?

A. Yes, I have.

Q3. What are you a manufacturer of?

A. Motion picture projecting machines.

Q4. Under your own name, or under what name?

A. I am vice-president and general manager of the Nicholas Power Co., which company manufactures motion picture projecting machines known as Power's Cameragraphs.

Q5. How long have you been connected with the manufacture of the Power's Cameragraph?

A. In my present capacity I have been connected with the manufacture of these machines since August 1st, 1907. Previous to that time I had acted as patent counsel for Mr. Nicholas Power, from the summer of 1904 down to that date and had acted in an advisory capacity in regard to the commercial and manufacturing end of Mr. Power's business, as well as handling his patent business.

Q6. I understand that these Power's projecting machines employ an intermittently moving band. If I am right will you please describe the mechanism by which that band is moved intermittently through the machine?

A. The band or film which bears the picture is moved through a Power's Cameragraph by three toothed sprockets arranged one above the other which engage perforations formed in the band, the topmost sprocket is constantly rotated and therefore moves the film constantly and uniformly. The sprocket next in order is rotated intermittently by what is commonly known as a Geneva stop move-

488

ment, by means of which the sprocket is given a quarter revolution at each action of the Geneva stop movement. The lowermost sprocket is rotated constantly like the topmost sprocket and advances the film constantly and uniformly.

Q7. At what position relative to these three sprockets is the lens opening of the projector?

A. The lens opening of the projecting machine is located between the top sprocket and the middle or intermittent sprocket.

Q8. Where are the main supply and delivery reels located?

A. The travel of the film is downward through the machine and the supply reel is therefore placed above the machine. The delivery or take-up reel is usually placed below the machine, but is sometimes placed in front of it.

Q9. In the operation of this Power's Cameragraph are there any slacks or loops formed anywhere in the band or film and if so where are they and how are they produced?

A. Two loops or slacks are formed in the band of the film, one loop commonly called the upper loop is formed between the upper or feed sprocket, and the intermittent sprocket, the other or lower loop is formed between the intermittent sprocket and the lower or take-up sprocket.

Q10. How are the three sprockets you have referred to driven, that is, how do they receive their power?

A. The primary source of power for the machine is usually a crank turned by hand, the shaft upon which the crank is mounted being geared by continuously operating gears to the upper and lower sprocket shaft and being geared through a Geneva stop motion or its equivalent to the intermittently revolving sprocket.

Q11. If the machine has a film guide near the lens opening, what is the location of the upper loop or slack with relation to this film guide?

A. The opening through which light passes to the lens is about two inches above the intermittent sprocket. The film guiding devices are arranged to hold the film flat as it passes this opening, and the loop above the intermittent sprocket is formed between the upper or feed sprocket and these guiding devices.

Q12. Are you familiar with the Latham patent in suit No. 707,934, a copy of which I now hand you?

A. I have had occasion to examine this patent casually some time ago and am moderately familiar with its contents.

Q13. In what way, if any, does the Power's Cameragraph differ in its details for producing the movement of the film or band from the mechanism shown in the Latham patent?

A. The mechanism shown in the Latham patent comprises two continuously driven sprockets with an intermittently moving sprocket between them. To this extent it is precisely similar to the mechanism used in Power's Cameragraph. The arrangement of the gearing for imparting motion to the several sprockets is different in construction but apparently substantially identical in operation with the arrangement employed in Power's Cameragraph.

Q14. Will you kindly read claims 1, 3, 5 and 8 of this patent and see if either of them describes the Latham structure any more perfectly than the Power's Cameragraph structure?

A. I have read the claims mentioned and find that they describe the mechanism of the Power's

494

Cameragraph as accurately as they do that shown in the Latham patent.

Q15. How long have these Power's Cameragraphs such as you have described in answer to preceding questions been on the market?

A. To my personal knowledge, since the summer of 1904.

Q16. Was it a new business then?

A. Mr. Nicholas Power entered into the business of dealing in and repairing moving picture projecting machines some time in the year 1899.

Not very long after this he began to manufacture moving picture projecting machines. I don't know the date at which he began this manufacture.

Q17. But do you know that it was before 1902?

A. It was as early as 1902, but I cannot be positive that it was before that year.

Q18. Are these Power's Cameragraphs licensed under the Latham patent in suit, and if so how long have they been so licensed?

A. They have been licensed since February, 1909, under this patent.

Q19. During the period prior to February, 1909, do you know whether any suit was commenced against the Nicholas Power Co. or Power for infringement of this Latham patent?

A. No suit for infringement of this patent was ever brought against Mr. Power or the Nicholas Power Co.

Q20. Or so far as you know against any dealer in or user of the Power's Cameragraph?

A. Not before the present suit. I mention the present suit because I believe the defendant uses the Power's Cameragraph to display its films to its customers.

Q21. Do you know whether the Nicholas Power Co. or Mr. Power were either of them threatened

497

with suit for infringement of this Latham patent, or notified by the owner of the patent that either of them were infringing the same?

A. I know that neither Mr. Power nor the Nicholas Power Co. has been notified that either was infringing the patent in suit since the summer of 1904, when I became Mr. Power's patent counsel. I have reason to believe that neither Mr. Power nor the company has ever been notified of such infringement or threatened with suit for such infringement.

Q22. When a license was given the Nicholas Power Co. in Feb., 1909, was any payment or consideration of any kind given by the Nicholas Power Co. to apply to any claims for past infringement of the Latham patent in suit?

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. No payment or other consideration was given for any past infringement at the time the Nicholas Power Co. was licensed under the patent in suit.

Q23. Was the license that you then obtained specific to the Latham patent alone or to a number of patents?

Mr. Page: Same objection.

A. The license enumerated a considerable number of patents under all of which the Nicholas Power Co. was licensed to operate under on precisely the same terms.

Q24. Were there any terms relating particularly to the Latham patent, or did the terms of the license relate *en masse* to the whole group?

500

Mr. Page: Same objection.

A. The license provided for a specific royalty on each Power's machine without any reference to any particular patent.

Q25. Can you remember approximately how many patents were involved in this license?

Mr. Page: Same objection.

A. I think the number was thirteen.

Q26. During the period that you have been connected with this business and prior to your receiving a license, what, if any other, projecting machines were on the market which employed the continuously revolving feed sprocket separate and distinct from the supply roll and the intermittently operated sprocket, the film guide near the exposure window, the mechanism acting to produce a slack or loop between the continuously operating sprocket and the film guide?

A. Such machines as are described in your question have been made ever since my connection with the moving picture business by the Edison Manufacturing Co., the Enterprise Optical Manufacturing Co. and S. Lubin, of Philadelphia. these the Selig Polyscope Co. of Chicago and the Viascope Manufacturing Co. of the same place made projecting machines having a continuously moving feed sprocket and a reciprocating claw mechanism below the exposure window which imparted an intermittent movement to the film. Schneider of New York also made a few projecting machines having both the intermittently moving sprocket and the continuously rotating feed sprocket. There were other machines of this type made by the Vitagraph Co. of America, but I am

of the impression that they were used only by the maker and were not offered on the market for sale.

Q27. Are you familiar enough with the construction of the various machines mentioned in your last answer to say whether they are each accurately and exactly described by the language of claim 1 of the Latham patent?

A. All of the machines mentioned in my last answer are accurately described by the language of claim 1 of the patent in suit.

Q28. Prior to the taking of the license by your company did you ever hear of any suits or threats of suits against anyone for the alleged infringement of the Latham patent?

A. No.

Direct examination closed.

Cross Examination by .Mr. Page:

XQ29. The use of the two continuously rotating sprockets to form a loop on each side of the intermittently moving feed mechanism for the film is a very important and desirable feature in machines of this kind is it not?

507

506

Mr. Eyre: The question is objected to as improper cross examination and counsel is notified that he is making the witness his own.

Mr. Page: Counsel for complainant of course does not accede to any such proposition?

A. The use of two sprockets or other devices on opposite sides of the intermittently moving feed

mechanism for the film is an important and desirable feature in moving picture projecting machines as equipped at this time.

XQ30. Manufacturers of such machines since 1904 have found it necessary, have they not, to provide for this feature in projecting machines in which there is a positive engagement between the film and the feed mechanism?

Mr. Eyre: Same objection and notice.

A. I don't know exactly what you mean to include under the terms "this feature," but assuming that you mean a provision of mechanism for forming a loop or slack in the film above the intermittent feeding mechanism, I would say that manufacturers of projecting machines have not found it necessary to provide this feature though they have found mechanism of this character to be very useful and convenient.

XQ31. How many moving picture machines, either cameras or projecting machines, were manufactured and put on the market to your knowledge by Eberhardt Schneider prior to Feb., 1903, and which involved the construction and mode of operation of the Latham patent in suit?

A. I personally saw only about a dozen such machines made by Eberhardt Schneider prior to the date mentioned.

XQ32. Do you know whether Mr. Power ever had any communications with the American Mutoscope and Biograph Co. or its officers looking to an agreement to manufacture projecting machines or cameras. I refer to a date prior to Feb. 25th, 1909?

A. I don't know of any negotiations between Mr. Power and the American Mutoscope & Biograph Co. to manufacture projecting machines or cameras on a contract basis, by which I mean an agreement to manufacture a certain quantity of these machines, but I do know that Mr. Power of the Nicholas Power Co. have supplied a considerable number of projecting machines to the American Mutoscope & Biograph Co. extending over practically the entire period since Mr. Power began to manufacture projecting machines.

XQ33. Does your familiarity with the litigation during the last ten years under patents for moving picture apparatus enable you to state that during the greater portion of that period the American Mutoscope and Biograph Co. at least up to some time in 1909 were involved in very active litigation?

A. Yes.

XQ34. What is the Enterprise Optical Manufacturing Co.?

A. This is an Illinois corporation, the principal business of which is the manufacture and sale of moving picture projecting machines and accessories.

XQ35. How long had they been in this business prior to Feb., 1909?

A. To my knowledge at least five years before that, but I believe that they had been in the business for a number of years before I became acquainted with their operations.

XQ36. Is this the concern that advertises largely small or cheap outfits for amateur exhibitors?

A. They did up to about two years ago.

XQ37. Do you know how long the Viascope Co. of Chicago has been in the business of manufacturing and selling projecting machines like those of the Latham patent in suit?

A. I think this concern began the manufacture

512

of such machines about four years ago, though it may have been earlier.

XQ38. Will you please answer the same question with reference to the Selig Polyscope Co. of Chicago?

A. I think that the Selig Polyscope Co. of Chicago has been making such machines for at least seven years.

Cross examination closed.

515

516

Deposition closed.

Signature waived.

HERBERT L. MILES, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Herbert L. Miles; age 40; 601 West 125th St.; office manager.

Q2. Have you ever been connected with the moving picture business and if so for how long and under what circumstances?

A. Yes, 13 years, as a manufacturer of films, owner and manager of moving picture film exchanges and dealer in films, moving picture projecting machines and all accessories.

Q3. During the period prior to Dec., 1908, in what way did you carry on any business in projecting machines?

A. We purchased them as jobbers and as exhibitors. I have also been an exhibitor of moving pictures, owning some 22 theatres.

Q4. When did you begin this buying and selling of projecting machines?

A. 1900.

Q5. Under your own name, if not under what name?

A. Under the name of Miles Brothers.

Q6. That is, you were one of the partners?

A. Yes.

Q7. And how long did the business continue as a partnership?

A. Until Dec., 1907.

Q8. And then under what name did it continue and for how long under that name?

A. Miles Brothers, Incorporated, until May, 1910.

Q9. What projecting machines did Miles Brothers buy and sell while they were in business and what projecting machines were used by your theatres?

A. Power's Cameragraph, made by the Nicholas Power Co., formerly N. Power, the Edison projector, two different models, made by the Edison Mfg. Co., Orange, N. J. The Lubin Cineograph made by the Lubin Mfg. Co. or S. Lubin, Phila. The Polyscope made by the Selig Polyscope Co., of Chicago, Ill. The Bioscope made by the Warwick Trading Co., London, England, and then other machines as they came out from time to time, for example, the Dressler machine, Pathe Freres, Gaumont, etc. In the theatres controlled by us we used exclusively the Power's and the Edison machines.

Q10. Will you please state, so far as you can

519

recollect it, as to each of these machines, when you first began dealing in them and how long you continued to deal with them?

A. The Edison machine was the first one we purchased about '99 as an exhibitor, then the Lubin shortly after that, and then the Power's machine when they first started to manufacture a commercial machine in considerable quantities. Power's machine I think was in 1902 or '03. Selig Polyscope we had handled before the Power's machine. I rented a lot from the Biograph Co. in 1901 over their present studio at 11 East 14th Street, and I recollect distinctly of having at that loft for displaying purposes a Selig Polyscope, two models of the Edison machine, a Lubin machine and an optograph manufactured by the Enterprise Optical Co. which I failed to mention in the list of machines before as handled by us. We vacated that loft and moved directly across the street in 1902, the latter end, or the beginning of 1903. We handled these machines together with the other makes mentioned, continuously up to May, 1910. the Edison and Power's make predominating in our sales.

522

521

Q11. Will you give a general idea of the volume of your business in projecting machines in this period beginning 1900?

A. In 1906 and 1907, we had a standing order with the Power's Company for the delivery of five complete machines daily, besides which we were selling Edison machines as may have been demanded by our customers. The demand in this country for machines at that time was greater than the supply.

Q12. Give me the best approximation you can as to the number of projecting machines sold by your firm from 1900 to 1908, both inclusive?

A. I would say approximately 3,500 to 4,000 machines.

Q13. Were you familiar with the construction of each of these machines whereby the film was fed from the supply reel, the feed being intermittent with respect to the exposure window?

A. Yes.

Q14. In the Latham patent in suit the film is drawn from the supply reel by a continuously and uniformly rotating sprocket engaging perforations in the film and is intermittently moved across the exposure window by a separate intermittently moving feeding mechanism, there being a slack between the constantly rotating sprocket and the exposure window, and it also being a fact that the continuously rotating sprocket is separate and distinct from the supply reel. These feeding mechanisms are positively moved by being connected through gearing with a manually rotated Will you state whether what I have just shaft. stated as to the Latham patent in suit is, or is not true, as to each of the various projecting machines you have above referred to?

A. Yes.

Q15. Were you or your firm ever sued under the Latham patent in suit?

A. No.

Q16. Were you or your firm ever threatened with suit under the Latham patent in suit or notified that you were infringing the claims?

A. No.

Q17. Did you have any license of any kind under the patent in suit?

A. No.

Q18. When did you first hear of any one having been sued or of any suit being threatened or of

524

any notice of infringement being given with relation to the Latham patent in suit?

A. 1908 or thereabouts against the Biograph Co. This was some shop talk which I heard at the Biograph Company's plant among their employees on 14th Street.

Q19. Did you ever sell any of the before mentioned projecting machines to the American Mutoscope & Biograph Co.?

A. My recollection is that the first Power's machine the Biograph Co. ever used, I negotiated the purchase of it from the Power's Co. or Nicholas Power. After that they bought quite a number direct.

Direct examination closed.

Cross Examination by Mr. Page:

XQ20. Have you ever manufactured yourself or been connected with any firm engaged in the manufacture of projecting machines?

A. Yes. Miles Bros. in 1907 equipped a complete manufacturing plant at 259 Fifth Avenue, at a cost of some \$20,000 and had a pay roll of \$900, engaged for the express purpose of manufacturing moving picture projecting machines. We turned out also about 100 projectors. The business of manufacturing these machines was discontinued on the death of my brother, who was the machinist of the firm. He died Jan. 1st, 1908.

XQ21. With that exception your business in connection with projecting machines and cameras has been either that of an exhibitor or a jobber, has it not?

A. Yes.

527

XQ22. Of how many companies during the period from 1902 to 1908 did you handle the product, either films, projecting machines, cameras, or other moving picture accessories?

A. In addition to those already mentioned we handled films of the American Mutoscope & Biograph Co., the Vitagraph Co., G. Melies, and some foreign companies.

XQ23. Did you sell or assist in leasing or renting any of the films manufactured by the American Mutoscope & Biograph Co. during the year 1908?

A. I could not tell that without consulting some records. There was a reorganization of the trade occurring just about that time and I don't recollect whether we were buying from the Biograph Co. or not.

XQ24. Did you continue to deal in the film manufactured by the Biograph Co. up to the time when that company was being identified with the Motion Picture Patents Co.?

A. No. There was a period of some months when we did not buy their product, not being allowed to do so by Edison license agreement.

XQ25. Were you ever approached with offers or propositions of a license under patents owned by the Motion Picture Patents Co.?

A. Yes, we had a license from them, from Feb., 1909, to May, 1910.

XQ26. Didn't that license include the Latham patent in suit here?

A. That I cannot recollect, but a copy of the agreement would indicate whether that is so or not.

XQ27. Have you a copy of that license agreement?

A. I think so. The Patents Co. has a duplicate copy.

530

533

XQ28. Did the Patents Co. ever make more than one license with you?

A. One for each office. We had three offices at that time,

XQ29. Under what name did you appear as licensee?

A. Miles Brothers, Incorporated.

XQ30. I infer from your testimony, Mr. Miles, that you have had a very extended experience with motion picture machines, particularly those for projecting pictures. That is a fair deduction from your testimony and a fair statement of the fact, is it not?

A. Yes.

XQ31. Is it not a fact that substantially all of the machines which handle long lengths of celluloid film and feed the same with considerable rapidity past an exposure window or gate, employ two independent feed mechanisms, one continuously operating and the other operating intermittently on the slack film produced by the continuous feed mechanism. In other words, have not the machines which have come under your observation all answered to the description of the Latham machine given by counsel for the defendant in Q14.

534

A. I answered that question yes, and the same answer to this one.

Cross examination closed.

Re-direct Examination by Mr. Eyre:

RDQ32. You have been asked as to a license agreement that Miles Brothers, Incorporated, entered into with the Motion Picture Patents Co. Was any consideration paid by Miles Brothers.

Incorporated, for this license other than promises to pay royalty in the future?

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. We paid no royalties as jobbers or in exchange and that is the only contract that I have referred to in my answer to Mr. Page's question.

RDQ33. What consideration did you have to pay for this license?

A. No monetary consideration. Simply leased films under the agreement under certain conditions, stated therein.

RDQ34. Did you have to make any payment of any kind of any alleged past infringement of the Latham patent or any other patent?

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. None whatever.

RDQ35. Do you remember whether this agreement gave a license under a considerable number of patents or not?

A. My recollection is that there was quite a number of patent numbers contained in the heading of the agreement.

Direct examination closed.

Deposition closed.

Signature waived by consent.

Adjourned to February 17th, 1911, 11 A. M.

536

540

New York, N. Y., Feb. 17, 1911, 11 A. M.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present: Counsel as before.

EDWIN S. PORTER, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to question by Mr. Eyre:

539 Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Edwin S. Porter; age 40; manufacturer of motion pictures; residence, City.

Q2. Have you ever been employed with the Edison Mfg. Co., and if so for how long?

A. I was employed with the Edison Mfg. Co. from 1900 to Nov. of 1909.

Q3. During that time what opportunity did you have to become familiar with the projecting machines manufactured by or for that company?

A. I was engaged with the Edison Co. to design and improve any projecting machine or moving picture machinery, and was consulted almost constantly in regards to same.

Q4. At any time while you were with the Edison Mfg. Co. did that company manufacture a projecting machine having a feed mechanism for the film carrying the pictures including a sprocket engaging perforation in the film and continuously rotating to draw the film continuously and uniformly from the supply reel and producing a slack or loop between the sprocket and the exposure window, and a second sprocket wheel on the opposite side of the exposure window intermittently operated

so as to intermittently draw upon such slack or loop, the two sprockets being operated by gearing from a manually rotated shaft?

A. They did.

Q5. How early to your knowledge did that company manufacture projecting machines having the features mentioned in my last question?

A. Approximately, in fact I am positive from 1898.

Q6. And how long did they continue to manufacture such machines?

A. To the present date, that is with various improvements, not affecting the loop.

Q7. Did the Edison Mfg. Co. while you were employed with them manufacture any projecting machine except such as employed the features set out in my fourth question?

A. They manufactured no machines except of

that type.

Q8. While you were with that company did you ever hear of there being a Latham patent for projecting machines?

A. I had heard of such a patent.

Q9. What did you know as to whether these machines were manufactured by the Edison Mfg. Co. under the protection of the Latham patent or in defiance of it?

A. It was generally understood that they had no license to use the Latham patent.

Direct examination closed.

Cross Examination by Mr. Page:

XQ10. When did you say you entered the employ of the Edison Co.?

A. 1900, a few days before Thanksgiving, 1900.

542

545

XQ11. Have you any personal knowledge of the operations of that company prior to that date?

A. Not personal. I am very well acquainted with Mr. Gilmore, the general manager, and Mr. James H. White, the manager of the moving picture department.

XQ12. Please explain more in detail what was the nature of your position with this company?

A. I was engaged by the Edison Mfg. Co. to improve and redesign moving picture cameras, projecting machines and perforators. Shortly after I went with them they put me in charge of the taking of the negative moving picture subjects, and at the same time I was called upon during the nine years I was with them to make improvements on the projector, camera and perforator.

XQ13. You were employed by the company in the capacity of a machinist were you not?

A. Before I went with the Edison Co. I had built and designed a moving picture projecting machine and was operating the same at the Eden Musee. Mr. White, also Mr. Gilmore, recognized the superiority of my machine over theirs and they engaged me more as a technical man to improve their machines.

546

XQ14. Did you ever attend any of the meetings of the directors or managers of the Edison Co. and take any part in the conduct of the business of that company?

A. I was on a committee which included about eight or ten of the officials and heads of different departments to pass upon the marketing or rather the censorship of moving pictures prior to putting them on the market. This being the only committee that I was on. I have often been called upon and consulted with Mr. Scull, Mr. Wilson and Mr. Edi-

son in regards to improvements on machines and methods of manufacturing of moving pictures.

> Mr. Page: In view of the cross examination of the witness from which it appears that his testimony is mainly hearsay, it is objected to on that ground.

> > Cross examination closed.

Deposition closed.

548

549

Signature waived by consent.

ALBERT E. SMITH, a witness subpænaed on behalf of the defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Albert E. Smith, age 35; residence, Brooklyn, N. Y.; occupation, General Manager of the Vitagraph Co.

Q2. How long have you been with the Vitagraph Co.?

A. Since 1897.

Q3. You are familiar, are you not, with the projecting machines manufactured and sold since that time by the Vitagraph Co.?

A. I am. Not manufactured and sold; the Vitagraph Co. never sold anything.

Q4. What does the Vitagraph Co. do with the machines it manufactures—uses them, leases them, or both?

A. It uses them for its own exhibition.

Q5. During this period has the Vitagraph Co. manufactured projecting machines and used them, which machines employed for feeding the film a continuously rotating sprocket engaging perforations in the film, separate and distinct from the main supply roll, and forming a loop or slack between the sprocket and the exposure window and also an intermittently operated sprocket drawing upon the loop or slack to feed the film past the exposure window, the two sprockets being operated by gearing from a manually rotated shaft?

551

A. Yes.

Q6. Did all the projecting machines manufactured by the Vitagraph Co. after you became connected with that company employ the features I have set out in my last question?

A. Yes.

Q7. Do you know whether these machines were manufactured by the Vitagraph Co. prior to the latter part of 1908 under the protection of the Latham patent 707,934, copy of which I hand you, or whether they were manufactured in defiance of any alleged rights under said patent?

552

A. We have a license to manufacture granted us by the Patent Company but I am not sure of the date of the license.

Q8. Prior to the license you obtained from the Motion Picture Patents Co. did you have any license under that patent?

A. No.

Q9. When you took that license, or when your company took that license, was any consideration given by your company for a release for any claim for past alleged infringement of the Latham patent?

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. I have no recollection of the terms of the contract.

Q10. Don't you as a matter of fact recall that your company did pay nothing under that contract unless it was in the form of an agreement to pay future royalties?

Mr. Page: Same objection.

A. At that time we turned over to the Patents Co. several patents of our own, but whether that was for the privilege of getting this license or not, I could not say.

Q11. Your company became interested in the Patents Co. at that time, did it not?

Mr. Page: Same objection.

A. I do not know what you would call interested. Q12. Do you also recall that when you obtained the license from the Patents Co. it was a license covering a number of patents and not differentiating in any way between the Latham patent and any others.

Mr. Page: Same objection.

A. Yes, I think so.

Q13. You remember that this license agreement was not prior to 1908, do you not?

A. I could not be sure of the date.

Q14. Yes, but approximately?

A. Approximately.

Q15. It was not as early as 1907, was it?

A. I don't think so.

Direct examination closed.

Deposition closed.

Signature waived by consent.

554

558

New York, N. Y., February 27, 1911.

11 o'clock.

Met pursuant to agreement.

Present:

PARKER W. PAGE, Esq., Counsel for Complainant. ALAN D. KENYON, Esq., Counsel for Defendant.

FRANK L. DYER, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being duly sworn, deposes and says in answer to questions by Mr. Kenyon as follows:

557 Q1. Please state your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Frank L. Dyer; age 40; residence Montclair, N. J. I am a lawyer by profession, but have not practiced actively for the past three years. I am president of the National Phonograph Co. and the chief executive officer of the various corporations that are owned and controlled by Thomas A. Edison with the exception of the Edison Portland Cement Co. I am president of the Motion Picture Patents Co., the complainant herein.

Q2. How long have you been president of the Motion Picture Patents Co.?

A. Since December 18th, 1908.

Q3. Prior to December, 1908, have you been connected with any company in any capacity which company was interested in the motion pictures business?

A. I have been vice-president of the Edison Mfg. Co. since June, 1908, and have acted as counsel for that company in patent matters since November, 1897; the Edison Mfg. Co., among other things, is engaged in the manufacture of motion pictures and projecting machines.

Q4. In your connection with the Edison Mfg. Co., had you been familiar with the projecting machines that it had placed on the market prior to

Dec., 1908?

A. Yes, sir.

Q5. For how long a period?

A. I am not able to state definitely, but my recollection is that the company was making projecting machines in November, 1897, when I first became connected with it.

Q6. And you were familiar, were you, with the projecting machines that it put on the market down to December, 1908?

A. In a general way, yes, sir.

Q7. You knew the general construction of the machines that they were putting out on the market at that time?

A. Yes, sir.

Q8. I show you the issue of the publication "The Show World," dated April 4, 1908, and call your attention to an article on page 11, under the heading. "Edison Counsel Talks of Moving Picture War." I notice that this article headed as above and also "Orange, N. J., March 28th" purports to give a statement of Frank L. Dyer, general counsel for the Edison Mfg. Co., to a Show World representative. Are you the Frank L. Dyer who gave this interview with the representative of the Show World as set forth in the article to which I have called your attention?

558c

558b

A. I am undoubtedly the Frank L. Dyer referred to, but I am not able to say whether the article in question is a correct interview or not.

Q9. You gave an interview to a representative of this paper, did you not at or about this time?

A. I think so.

Q10. Is the account of this interview substantially correct?

A. Yes. My recollection is that at that time the two conflicting interests in the motion picture field (the Edison and Biograph Companies) spent a good deal of time in talking about their patents in the trade papers and this article appears to be one

of the numerous articles that appeared in the trade press relating to these matters. I cannot say that the opinions that were expressed in an article of this kind would be as carefully considered as they might be. A good deal of the talk was largely for advertising purposes; the Biograph People pretended to sneer at our patents and it was human nature for us to sneer at theirs.

Mr. Kenyon: All but the first word objected to as irresponsive, immaterial, volunteered and incompetent.

558e

- Q11. I notice that in this article you say, among other things, "The Latham patent was granted August 26th, 1902, and according to the people who are now affirming its validity it has been infringed by every one since that time." What concerns did you refer to by "infringed by every one since that time"?
- A. The various manufacturers of moving pictures in this country who I assumed made use of cameras involving the Latham invention and the manufacturers of projecting machines including principally the Edison Company, S. Lubin of Philadelphia, the Motiongraph Co. of Chicago, and the Power's Co. of New York.

558f

- Q12. Up to this time had any suits been brought on the Latham patent that is involved in this suit No. 707,934?
- A. I am not able to say. There has been no suit brought against the Edison Co. that I know of.
- Q13. As counsel for that company you would have known if any suit had been brought against them?
 - A. Yes, sir.
- Q. 14. Do you remember attending a meeting of representatives of the Edison Mfg. Co. at the Auditorium Annex in Chicago, in March, 1908?

A. I remember a visit I made to Chicago in the spring of 1908, and I think it was in March.

Q14. You made similar public statements at that meeting to reporters with reference to the Latham patent, did you not? I mean similar or of the same general character as those contained in published interviews of yours in the Show World of April 4th, 1908?

Mr. Page: Objected to as wholly irrelevant and immaterial.

560

A. I am not able to say but it is not unlikely, because at that time we were just starting the licensee association under the Edison patents and naturally were disposed to minimize the value of any other patents.

Direct examination closed.

Defendant's counsel offers in evidence the article referred to by the witness published in The Show World of April 4, 1908, and it is marked "Defendant's Exhibit, Dyer Interview and Show World of April 4, 1908."

561

Signature waived.

No cross examination.

Deposition closed.

New York, N. Y., March 29th, 1911. 11 A. M.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present: Counsel as before.

THOMAS H. BLAIR, a witness called on behalf of the defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows, in answers to questions by Mr. Eyre:

563

564

- Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?
- A. Thomas H. Blair; 53; manufacturer, Northboro, Mass.
- Q2. Have you ever been connected with the photographic business, and if so, during what period?
- A. I commenced in the business of photography in 1874 and 1875, was a professional photographer until the year '79, and then entered upon the manufacture of photographic apparatus particularly for amateur use. I have continued in that business until the year 1900. Had been for eight or nine years previous to 1900 a manufacturer of photographic rollable film and other photographic supplies and appliances for using the same.

Q3. Have you ever originated and patented any cameras for taking moving pictures?

A. Yes. Several.

Q4. Will you please state in a general way what patents you have taken out in moving pictures?

A. I am the patentee of the British patent No. 13,284 of 1896, also of the British 17,505, 1896, and the U. S. patent No. 611,231, Sept. 27th, '98, and others.

- Q5. Referring to the United States patent 611,-231, and the British patent 17,505 of 1906, which seems to show precisely the same camera, please state whether you ever actually constructed the camera shown in these patents?
- A. I did, or rather, workmen carrying out my instructions and perfecting mechanical devices. I am not a mechanic. I do not do the work myself.
- Q6. When was it that you had this camera constructed?
- A. The year 1896, commencing about in May and finishing the same in July. I wish to add that the building of this camera was a matter of evolution, there being several preceding cameras so that it is difficult to definitely fix the date of commencing its construction.
- Q7. What did you supply to your patent agents to enable them to make the drawings of your English patent 17,505 of '96?
- A. The identical camera which I afterwards used for practical work and which I have with me.
- Q8. Is this the camera on the table that you are referring to?

A. It is.

Defendant's counsel states that this is the private property of the witness and he does not desire to part with it even during the progress of this suit and it is considered unnecessary to proffer the same in evidence, but complainant's counsel may take the freest opportunity to inspect it and compare it with the drawings of the patents referred to.

Q9. How soon after you constructed this particular camera did you use it practically, that is, for anything but a mere experimental purpose?

566

A. During the month of August, 1896, was my first use.

Q10. And how long did you use it practically?

A. Five or six months.

Q11. Have you any of the film that you can produce with moving pictures thereon which you then made on this camera?

A. I have and produce it.

569

The witness produces a film of considerable size and now cuts off a short length of it.

Defendant's counsel offers in evidence the short length of film just cut off from the roll by the witness and offers the same in evidence as "Defendant's Exhibit, Moving Picture Film of Blair Camera."

Defendant's counsel offers in evidence copy of the English patent to Blair, here-tofore referred to and the same is marked "Defendant's Exhibit, Blair English patent 17,505 of 1896."

570

Q12. At the time that you constructed the camera which you have produced, what did you know as to the prior art of moving picture cameras or projectors?

A. Not very much. I was acquainted with the Le Prince patent. (The witness looked into his bag, examined papers therein and produced the Le Prince patent.) Which I find is dated January 10th, 1888, No. 376,247. Also the Donisthorpe and Crofts British patent and one or two others which I cannot now remember, all of them British patents. I was familiar with articles published in the Photographic Journals regarding the work on this

line by Marey. I cannot recall the details at the present time.

Q13. Had you at that time any knowledge by patents or publications of the work of Joly Latham, Armat, Jenkins, Edison, Casler, or Gray in moving picture cameras or projectors?

A. I am not certain about Joly, but I am certain that I knew nothing whatever about the work of the remaining parties named except that I was acquainted with the Edison Kinetoscope, which was not a projecting machine, nor a camera.

Q14. Was the Edison Kinetoscope as you knew of it a device using an intermittently moving film or a device using a continuously moving film?

A. Continuously moving film employing an endless band.

Q15. How long did you know of this Edison Kinetoscope?

A. I cannot remember definitely but I am of the opinion that it was at least two or three years.

Q16. Do you remember in a general way how the film in that kinetoscope was fed?

A. I do not remember sufficiently to explain, except that it moved continuously, employed a revolving shutter, moving in a direction opposite to that which the film moved.

Q17. What if any familiarity did you have with the film used in the Edison Kinetoscope?

A. I was very well acquainted with it, being in the business of manufacturing photographic rollable film and the companies bearing my name had supplied Mr. Edison with film cut the width of the film that was used in the kinetoscope. We did not perforate same, however.

Q18. Do you know whether or not the film used in these kinetoscopes was a perforated film?

572

576

A. I do know it was.

Q19. Do you know why it was perforated?

A. It was perforated to act as a sprocket chain in giving it a definite motion similar to the perforated metallic ribbons shown in the Le Prince patent.

Direct examination closed.

Cross Examination:

575 XQ20. Will you run film which you have produced through the camera which also is produced here in order that the operation of the camera may be observed?

A. The film that I have offered in evidence was made some fifteen years ago and has become so dried and shrunk that it does not fit the sprockets properly, the shrinkage having drawn the sprocket holes in the film closer together in both directions. It is not possible therefore to comply with this request and have the film operate perfectly. I am particularly sure that the film exhibited was made on this identical camera and the same machine used for projecting the pictures on this same film on the screen by aid of a lantern. This film has been projected a number of times.

THOMAS H. BLAIR.

New York, N. Y., March 31st, 1911, 11 A. M.

Met pursuant to agreement. Present counsel as before.

ROBERT D. GRAY, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being first duly affirmed, testifies as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Robert D. Gray, 53 years; Ridgewood, N. J.; lens maker.

Q2. I show you a copy of United States patent to Robert D. Gray, of New York City, issued June 4th, 1895, No. 540,545, for Series Photographic Camera, and ask you whether you are or are not the same Robert D. Gray?

A. I am the same.

Q3. Do you know from what the drawings of this patent were prepared?

A. From my own ideas.

Q4. And what did you do to explain your own ideas to your patent attorney?

A. I furnished them with sketches and a written description and verbal explanation in addition.

Q5. How did the sketches which you furnished them compare with the drawings shown in the patent?

A. They were the same as I remember. Changes were required to meet the rules of the Patent Office.

Q6. Did your sketches show all the different features of construction that are shown in the patent drawings?

> Mr. Page: Objected to as leading. Mr. Eyre: Question withdrawn.

578

Q7. Will you state what different features of construction shown in the patent drawings were shown on the sketches you submitted to your attorney?

Mr. Page: Same objection.

A. No difference that I remember. With one exception. The drawing of the sketch of the two carbons showing the source of light was added to my sketch.

581

Q8. You are referring now to the two carbons shown in Fig. 5 of your patent, are you?

A. Yes.

Q9. Do you know what became of the sketches that you have referred to?

A. They were left with Munn & Co.

Q10. Do you know whether or not they are in existence today?

A. I do not.

Q11. What assistance did you have from the work of anybody else in moving picture cameras or projectors in devising the feeding mechanism shown in your patent?

582

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

- A. I had no assistance except the general knowledge of what was required in improvements of such machines.
- Q12. You have said that except for the arc lights shown in Fig. 5 your sketches showed every feature of construction shown in the drawings of the patent. Will you state a little bit more fully and in your own words just what you can recollect as to the kind and number of sketches shown your attor-

neys and just how much in detail the various mechanisms were shown on these sketches?

A. As I remember it I sketched about all that were used in the application. Details such as gears, cogs, were probably not shown in my sketches.

Q13. Do you recollect whether or not on your sketches you showed the roller n' and the similar roller referred to in the specification as n, although the drawing does not show the reference letter properly applied, and which rollers bear on the surface of the film of the two reels?

A. Why yes, they must have.

Q14. What did you provide these for?

A. For measuring off the required length of film for one picture.

Q15. I do not find any claims in your patent to the feeding mechanism, that is to the various parts of the feeding mechanism, including the continuously moving rolls n and n^1 . Do you recollect why such claims were not made?

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. I considered that the common practice and therefore adopted it.

Q16. That is, with what you knew of mechanisms you did not suppose that would be a patentable thing, is that what you mean?

Mr. Page: Same objection, and also objected to as leading and suggestive.

A. That is what I mean.

Q17. How long before you took your sketches to your attorneys, Munn & Co., was it that you had thought of the feeding mechanism with the inter-

584

mittently moving device and the two continuously moving devices and had made sketches showing the idea?

A. I would say about two months.

Q18. At the time that you filed your application for a patent had you seen any moving picture camera or any description of a moving picture camera?

A. Yes.

Q19. What camera?

587

A. If you refer to a taking camera, I had not seen one. I had seen a kinetoscope. That is the only one that I know the name of.

Q20. Are you referring to the machine that is known as the Edison kinetoscope?

A. Yes.

Q21. And was there nothing else in the way of either a camera for taking moving pictures or a projector for projecting moving pictures that you had known about at that time?

A. Of course, I had seen machines used experimentally perhaps, but not in public exhibition. I knew they flickered and the object of my invention was to prevent the flicker.

588

Q22. Will you state anything you may now remember of any machines of this kind that you may have seen used experimentally—I mean before you made your application for a patent?

A. Well, I have no memory of any particular machine that I could name or where I saw it. I was in Berlin, I am not sure about the dates, I think it was in 1895, and saw exhibitions of moving pictures there. But cannot say where my ideas really originated.

Q23. Are you or not sure whether you recollect definitely that what you saw in Berlin was before

or after the date of your application, March 9th, 1895?

A. I am not sure.

Q24. Did you ever meet one Latham in anything connected with moving picture apparatus?

A. No.

Q25. Did you, before you filed your application for patent, know or hear anything with reference to any camera built by him?

A. No.

Direct examination closed.

590

591

Cross Examination by Mr. Page:

XQ26. Have you ever taken out any other patents for photographic apparatus beside this one?

A. Yes.

XQ27. Was one of these patents for a camera?

A. Yes.

XQ28. Was it prior to this one that you have been examining to-day?

A. Yes. Two or three, prior to that.

XQ29. Did those cameras ever meet with any practical success?

A. Yes. XQ30. Did you sell those patents or try to sell them to any one?

A. Yes.

XQ31. To whom?

A. Carl P. Stirn. I understood that his brother who manufactured one of them on a royalty in Germany netted \$50,000 on it. That was the concealed camera.

XQ32. Were you a photographer or in the business of manufacturing photographic instruments in 1895?

A. I was manufacturing photographic lenses.

XQ33. Did you not at one time manufacture or make experimentally a camera which did not prove a success practically?

A. No. Of course, I have invented things that were not a success, but the two that I had patented were used successfully, sold successfully.

XQ34. They were patented in this country, were they not?

A. Yes.

593

Cross examination closed. Deposition closed.

Signature waived by consent.

FREDERICK C. BEACH, being duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occu-594 pation?

A. Frederick C. Beach; 63; Stratford, Conn.; patent attorney.

Q2. You are one of the firm of Munn & Co., are you not, Mr. Beach?

A. Yes, sir.

Q3. How long have you been a member of the firm of Munn & Co.?

A. Since December 31st, 1895.

Q4. And before that were you connected with Munn & Co., and if so, how long?

A. Yes, sir. I am connected with it since 1877.

Q5. I hand you a copy of patent to Gray, 540,-545, dated June 4th, 1895, and filed in the Patent

Office March 9th, 1895, and ask you whether you have any means for determining who prepared that application and when it was brought to Munn & Co. by the inventor?

A. The application was prepared by Mr. George M. Hopkins and the record on our book shows that it was received on February 23rd, 1895.

Q6. Are you the one who is in responsible charge of these books?

A. I am.

Q7. Will you please produce your book showing the entries with reference to this Gray application and read upon the record such parts of this record as show what was done prior to the filing of the application?

A. On page 611 of the record under date of Feb. 23rd, 1895, it is recorded that Robert D. Gray paid eash \$25 as the first fee. On March 6th, 1895, it is recorded that the second fee of thirty dollars, \$30, was paid. On April 19, 1895, the application was recorded as having been first rejected. April 16th, 1895, the word "pro" indicates that the case had been amended and sent to Washington. On May 3rd, 1895, it had been amended and sent to Washington a second time. On May 9th, 1895, it is stated the application was allowed, and on May 10th, 1895, the final government fee of \$20 was paid. The Serial Number of the application is shown on the record as 541,135, and the number of the patent as shown on the record is 540,545.

Q8. Will you state if you know whether the man who actually kept this book at that time is alive or not?

A. He is not.

Q9. Was it the regular and established method of conducting your business at that time to enter

596

every application in your books in the same way as this Gray application was entered?

A. It was.

Q10. Following this regular and established custom what would be the date at which Munn & Co. received the information from the inventor necessary to prepare the drawings?

A. The date of the Book, Feb. 23d, 1895.

Q11. Is Mr. Hopkins to whom you have referred alive or dead?

599 A. He is dead.

Q12. Are the papers in the application file of Gray and the application itself in existence?

A. They are not.

Q13. Will you please state why they are not in existence, if you know?

A. It is our custom not to retain the correspondence and files more than ten years.

Q14. So that they have been destroyed in accordance with that custom?

A. Yes.

600

Q15. Who made the drawings for the Gray application?

A. Herbert Walker.

Direct examination closed.

Cross Examination by Mr. Page:

XQ16. Aside from the items which you have read from this book and the information there disclosed, you know nothing whatever about the circumstances attending the filing of the application for this patent, do you?

A. I do not.

XQ17. You therefore know nothing as to what

information Mr. Gray imparted to any one connected with your firm or when he imparted that information, do you?

A. I do not.

Deposition closed. Signature waived by consent.

HERBERT WALKER, being duly sworn, deposes and says, in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre, as follows:

602

603

- Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?
- A. Herbert Walker; 54; draftsman by occupation; Tenafly, New Jersey.
- Q2. With whom are you connected as a draftsman and for how long?
- A. I am connected with Munn & Co., and I have been in their employ since 1889.
- Q3. Please look at the copy of patent to Gray, 540,545, which I hand you, and state whether you recognize these drawings?

A. I recognize these drawings as having made them.

Q4. State what you recollect as to how you obtained the necessary information to make these drawings?

A. I remember sketches having been brought to me from which these drawings were made.

Q5. Do you remember whether or not those were sketches made by some one connected with Munn & Co., or whether they were made by the inventor and his representatives?

A. To the best of my recollection they were sketches made by some one not connected with Munn & Co. I have no recollection of sketches made by any one connected with the office.

Q6. Did you from those sketches receive all the information necessary to enable you to make those drawings?

A. I have a recollection of conferring with Mr. Hopkins about the drawings while I was making them.

605

Q7. Have you any further recollection, if so, so state it, as to what was shown on these sketches that you worked from?

A. No; since the time I have no recollection. Could not state anything clearly.

Direct examination closed.

Cross-examination waived.

Signature waived by consent.

606

Defendant's counsel offer in evidence the French patent to Marey, No. 231,209, dated June 29th, 1893, also French to Carpentier, No. 246,246, dated March 30th, 1895, with certificate of addition, dated April 27th, 1895; also United States patent to Casler, No. 669,495, the application for which was filed Feb. 26th, 1896, and the same are marked respectively "Defendant's Exhibit, Marey French Patent 231,209"; "Defendant's Exhibit, Carpentier French patent 246,246," and "Defendant's Exhibit, U. S. Casler patent 666,495."

It is stipulated and agreed, subject to correction, that the effective date of the Carpentier patent is between the 11th and 19th day of April, 1895, and that the effective date of the certificate of addition is between the 22nd and 28th of August, 1895, and that for the purposes of this case the Marey patent may be considered as having an effective date of 1893. It is further stipulated and agreed that the Casler patent last put in evidence was the one the application for which was in the interference involving the application for the Latham patent in suit and the application for Armat patent 673, 992.

608

Defendant's counsel produced and shows to complainant's counsel a book of clippings containing what appears to be a news article in the Baltimore Sun of October 3, 1895, and it is agreed that a typewritten copy may be made of this and offered in evidence and, subject to correct, that such typewritten copy may be accepted with the same force and effect as if a duly proved copy of the Baltimore Sun of said date were offered in evidence with the article in question contained in it. In accordance with the stipulation defendant's counsel offers in evidence a typewritten copy of said clipping, and the same is marked "Defendant's Exhibit, Baltimore Sun, Article of October 3, 1895."

609

Defendant rests.

UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY, Complainant,

VS.

On Latham Patent No. 707,934.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURES 611 COMPANY OF AMERICA,

Defendant.

Further testimony taken on behalf of defendant pursuant to an order of court to be entered to-day permitting the re-opening of the case before John A. SHIELDS, a Standing Examiner of this Court at the offices of Kenyon & Kenyon, 49 Wall Street. beginning at 11 A. M., Tuesday, May 9th, 1911.

Present: 612

PARKER W. PAGE, Esq., counsel for Complainant. RICHARD EYRE, Esq., representing Kenvon & Kenyon, counsel for Defendant.

CHARLES E. CHINNOCK, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Charles E. Chinnock; 66 years; residence 157 Sixth Avenue, Brooklyn, N. Y.; occupation, electrical instruments.

Q2. Will you please state your present occupation a little more fully?

A. I am manufacturing and selling inventions of my own of the omnigraph. It is an instrument teaching and perfecting those interested in telegraphy. I have been in this business for ten years.

Q3. Have you ever been connected with the moving picture business?

A. I have.

Q4. Will you please state briefly and simply in a general way what your connection with that business was and during what period?

A. In the spring of 1894 I saw an Edison kinetoscope. It occurred to me then that it would be a very good business for me to take hold of in view of the fact that I had just abandoned or given up In the summer I met a Mr. Maltby, a friend of mine, and he stated to me that he had a machine shop and that he made models of machines of different kinds and he would like me to give him some work. I told him that later on I probably would have something in his line, having in my mind the moving picture business. He then gave me the address of the machine shop, Columbia Heights, near Fulton Ferry. Before going away for the summer at Madison, N. J., I visited Mr. Maltby's shop to see if he was fitted up properly to manufacture or make a model. Shortly after June or July I went to Madison for the summer. I immediately started in making drawings and sketches of an apparatus for taking pictures with the idea of showing them in a kinetoscope that I had partially figured out. I left Madison some

615

time in September, although I had visited New York once or twice a week before I left Madison permanently. In Sept., the latter part, possibly the early part, but certainly before October, I showed my sketches and drawings to Mr. Maltby and asked him to start in with the work and to give me a competent man and also arrange to have this man helped so as to expedite work. Within two months after I brought the drawings to the Maltby shop I had a finished camera, tested and ready to take pictures. I sent this camera to the home of a Mr. Milliken at East New York. It remained there possibly two days, my idea being to take a subject at his house. I looked over the ground very carefully and found the place was too well built up to give me the proper room and the proper light. I then hunted up a small deserted shanty or shack a short distance from this house and within two or three days of that date I took a set of pictures, consisting of a boxing bout, the principals being Mr. James Lehey and Mr. Robert Moore. These pictures were taken the latter part of November or the beginning of December, positively before Christmas, 1894. The pictures were a success in every sense of the word and I showed them in motion on a temporary kinetoscope. Probably 40 people saw these pictures before Christmas day or including Christmas day, 1894. Sometime in December I sold a camera. In the beginning of 1895 I started making kinetoscopes and also additional cameras. In '95 my brother came in as a partner in the business. We then started and put kinetoscopes on the market and they proved a wonderful success. About May, '95, I had finished two other cameras. Our business increased very rapidly during '95, but in '96, the beginning of '96 it started to

617

fall off; lack of subjects, lack of interest on the part of the public, dissatisfaction on the part of my brother, the advent of the Mutoscope, caused us to give up the business, probably in the beginning of '97 or the latter part of '96.

Q5. What became of the camera that you had made at the Maltby shop in the fall of '94?

A. It was brought to my house, 157 Sixth Avenue, some time in '95, probably the latter part, since then it was delivered to Kenyon & Kenyon.

Q6. And from the time it went to your house until the time it was delivered to us, where was it?

A. In the cellar of my house, 157 Sixth Avenue, Brooklyn.

Q7. When did you deliver it to us, or our representative?

A. I think it was April 15th, 1911. It was delivered at my office and a week later it was removed from my office to 49 Wall Street, Kenyon & Kenyou.

Q8. You have referred to being at Madison in the summer of 1894, were you at Madison any other summer?

A. I was not.

Q9. With whom, at Madison, so far as you can remember did you converse about your idea of making a moving picture machine or show the drawings you were making?

A. I was somewhat secretive about showing this invention to strangers, but I did show the drawings and partially explained them to my brother, Mr. E. Chinnock, who visited Madison in August, 1894, to my son, Mr. A. L. Chinnock, to my immediate family, and to some of my relatives who were up there at the time. I cannot now recall any others.

620

Q10. Who, if anyone else besides yourself, made any drawings for this machine?

A. I do not know of any one other than myself excepting later on Mr. Maltby or some of his workmen might have made little sketches as the best way to make a certain cam, a certain arm, which usually takes place when you are having a model made in a shop. I have a recollection of talking to my brother, F. R. Chinnock, the one who later on became a partner in the business, telling him in a general way that I had a picture machine and also a kinetoscope with a view to having him know what I was doing. I also mentioned this to a brother-in-law of mine, Mr. James Lahey, who then lived at Madison.

Q11. There is a mechanism or piece of apparatus on the table before you, is this the machine that you turned over to us last month?

A. It is.

Q12. You have stated that work on this machine began in the Maltby shop in September, 1894. Please state how you fix this date?

A. I fix it by the time I left Madison for Brooklyn, my home.

Q13. Can you recall how soon it was after you returned to Brooklyn that the work at the Maltby shop commenced?

A. I returned to Brooklyn on the beginning of September; I visited Malthy's shop immediately after my return. I have a distinct recollection of that because that was the only business I had to attend to.

Q14. Can you now recall the name of the workman who was selected by Mr. Maltby to take up this work for you?

A. A Mr. Pearson.

623

Q15. When did you last see him or talk to him?

A. Ten or twelve years ago.

Q16. How much of Pearson's time from day to day and how much of your time was devoted to the making of this first machine after you had started at it in September, 1894?

A. All of Mr. Pearson's time and about all my time, and the time of one or two helpers that Mr. Pearson had.

Q17. How frequently were you actually in the Maltby shop during the making of this machine?

A. First off four or five hours a day, later on twice a day, and just about the time the instrument was finished, all the time.

Q18. What, if you know, has become of the drawings that you made at Madison and brought to the Maltby shop?

A. I endeavored to find the drawings and others have helped me, but up to date I haven't been able to find a scrap.

Q19. State, so far as you can now recollect, how fully those drawings showed the proposed machine and so far as you can recollect, what they showed?

A. The drawings showed just so far as the machine was capable of taking pictures, just as it is now before me. It certainly showed the reel for holding the film, the rollers for moving the film steadily off the reel, the gate or clamp for holding the film while the picture was being taken, the take-up reel, the cam, the gears and the general parts that make the machine complete. The little spring that is used to keep a steady strain on the film was not shown that I can recollect now. The size of the spring, the size of the rocker arm, the driving pulley, several minor details I would not be positive were on the drawings. I am absolutely

626

certain that the machine as a machine followed the drawing exactly, and my best proof of that is the fact that the machine worked the very first time we tried it.

Q20. You refer to the little spring that is used to keep a steady strain on the film. Please point this out on the machine on the table.

A. It is this spring that I now have my finger on.

The witness puts his finger on the arm engaging the top of the film near the bottom of the machine.

> Counsel for defendant offers the machine that has been identified by the witness in evidence and the same is marked "Defendant's Exhibit Chinnock Camera."

> Mr. Page: The exhibit is objected to as irrelevant and immaterial to the issues of this case and the testimony heretofore given with regard to it is objected to for the same reason. In order not to encumber the record with objections complainant's counsel asks that all testimony to be given with reference to this exhibit may be regarded as subject to the same objection of irrelevancy and immateriality.

Counsel for defendant agrees that the objection may be considered as repeated by counsel for complainant to further testimony given with reference to this exhibit.

Q21. You have spoken of this machine being completed within two months and tested and ready to take pictures. What were these tests and where did they take place?

A. The tests took place in Mr. Maltby's shop and

629

for the purpose of testing it I used paper, cut to the right width with different thicknesses. thousands of feet of this paper, registered it, using all speeds from ten a second up to thirty a second; during these tests I discovered that occasionally the paper would break. A number of the men witnessed these tests, particularly Mr. Pearson, and a suggestion was made that a little spring to keep a steady strain on it; that spring was put in and we would then run the paper off without any damage to the paper, without any break and practically perfect registering. The registering was so good that we actually measured it with a micrometer. also secured some film and put some film on and tested it. All these tests were completed the latter part of November, 1894.

Q22. How do you fix this time?

A. I fix it with the time I started it, the rapidity with which the machine was completed or worked at, the time that I took the pictures, the time that I received an order for a camera, by the fact that it was positively finished before Christmas, 1894. the weather and the fact that I told others that it was finished.

Q23. Will you please now compare "Defendant's Exhibit Chinnock Camera" with the camera that you took pictures with in 1894, that is, with this camera as it was in 1894, and point out any changes, if any, that have been made since, or specify any parts that were on the camera then that may not be there now?

A. I can't see anything on the camera marked Defendant's Exhibit, that wasn't on it when I took the pictures, excepting that there are one or two things missing that were on when the pictures were taken. One of the articles missing, or two, is the 632

shutter. Another is the cover that went over the whole machine excepting the driving pulley. Another is the lens. Another is a second pulley for connecting with the pulley that is now on the machine, and I wish to add that when I said one or two, I meant, generally speaking that there were certain parts, there might be more than one or two, in other words, I meant a number of parts.

Q24. Please describe the shutter that was originally on the camera and where it was carried and

635 how it operated.

A. There is a shaft on the exhibit held in position by two uprights and geared by beveled gear directly to the driving shaft. On this shaft there is a threaded end suitable for holding a nut and it did hold a nut with a threaded washer for clamping the shutters in position. When I say shutter, I use it in the singular sense, when in reality there were two shutters having openings so that they would come exactly opposite one another and were arranged so that you could increase or diminish the amount of light allowed to strike the film per second. I haven't the shutter before me, but my recollection is, in fact I feel almost certain that it had four openings and that one complete revolution would take four pictures.

Q25. What was the shape and size of the shutter?

A. The shutter was round and the size of the shutter was sufficient to completely cover the opening shown in the exhibit for holding the lens. About

twelve inches in diameter.

Q26. Will you now please describe the feeding mechanism of this camera, and how such mechanism operated when you used to use it to take pictures?

A. There was a reel on the upper part of the

camera capable of holding about 200 feet of film, positively 100 feet. This film passed from the reel through a pair of rollers, sufficiently tight to move the film without showing any lost motion. The film then passed in front of the opening for taking the picture, and then passed between two rollers that had a larger diameter and traveled at a faster speed. from there it passed through or under the spring designed to keep a steady tension on the film to a take-up reel that was connected by a belt with the driving mechanism, and was frictionally turned so that it would steadily take up the film without There is a gate with an opening in damaging it. it sufficiently large that corresponded with the size of the pictures. This gate was clamped in by a cam or moved out by a cam and would spring in at certain intervals and hold the film a certain length of time; while these pictures were taken the film was being drawn off the reel and it would then be held while the picture was taken and the film would form a loop or a length which would correspond with the length of the picture. In other words, if you took twelve pictures the twelve pictures would measure twelve inches, or twelve inches and a fraction, whatever the length of the pictures would be. If the pictures were two inches, twelve pictures would make it twenty-four inches.

Q27. How long, in fact, were the pictures that you took at that time?

A. One inch.

Q28. In what way, if any, do the different reels and rolls and cam, etc., that you have described in connection with this operation of the feeding mechanism differ in the exhibit that we now have in the case from the corresponding parts in the camera as completed in 1894?

A. They do not differ at all.

638

Q29. You have spoken of this camera being taken, as soon as it was completed, to the house of one Milliken where it stayed for a few days. Who was he?

A. He was one of Mr. Maltby's workmen, or a man who was working in Mr. Maltby's shop.

Q30. How long is it since you have seen or had any communication with him?

A. At least fifteen years.

Q31. Where and when did you develop the pictures that you took in 1894 of the Lahey-Moore boxing bout?

A. At my home, 157 Sixth Avenue, Brooklyn.

Q32. After you developed these pictures, what did you do with them?

A. In developing them they were cut in lengths of about 12 inches, each length numbered. We then printed or obtained positives on paper, these papers were numbered to correspond with the film or sections of the film. These pictures were then pasted on a strip of canvas so that they were consecutively connected, they were then put on revolving drum and the kinetoscope effect was obtained by the usual way by the peep-hole and movement of the pictures.

642

641

Q33. Why did you cut these into lengths?

A. Simply for convenience. I did not have the facilities for developing a length of film 25 feet, we did not have facilities for printing on a strip of paper 25 feet long, and we had to adapt ourselves to the room we had.

Q34. Was this cutting into strips done with any reference to any inequality of distance between pictures?

A. They were cut just exactly as they came off the machine, in other words, the pictures themselves was the guide. Q35. What I want to get at is whether you in your cutting ever divided the film at particular places to compensate for irregularity between successive pictures or whether you always cut every 12 pictures simply as an arbitrary rule?

A. We took probably positively a half dozen subjects with that machine that is before me and in no case did we ever measure a single piece of film other than by the registering of the machine or the picture itself.

Q36. You have referred at times to having done certain things certainly before Christmas of 1894, why do you fix that date?

A. For 25 years we have, or I have had a family gathering at my home numbering from 26 up to 30. This particular Christmas, 1894, at least 20 of that gathering positively came; saw the pictures that I had taken previous to December, 1894, of two relatives of the family, one a brother-in-law of mine, and the other a nephew, Mr. Robert Moore, and furthermore these pictures were shown to a Mr. Walter Isaacs somewhere in December and on the strength of these pictures he gave me an order for a camera.

Q37. Whom did Mr. Isaacs represent in the matter of this order?

A. Mr. Hough of London.

Q38. Did you thereafter hear from Mr. Hough himself with reference to that order?

A. I did.

Q39. State the circumstances.

A. Some time in January, 1895, I received a letter from Mr. Hough requesting me to forward the picture machine or camera ordered by him, and finding fault because I hadn't.

Q40. Is this the letter you refer to?

644

A. Yes, sir; that is the letter.

Q41. Did you receive this in the ordinary course through the mails?

A. I did.

Defendant's counsel offers in evidence the letter just identified by the witness and the same is marked "Defendant's Exhibit, Hough Letter, Jan. 15, 1895."

647 Q42. Where, if you can recollect, did you obtain the film that you used in testing the camera at the Maltby shop and afterwards in taking the Lahey-Moore boxing bout pictures?

A. I tried to locate the place where I got this film but up to the present time I am unable to do so.

Q43. Do you recall where you got any film thereafter and if so state so far as you can recall the circumstances of that purchase and just what you did purchase?

A. As soon as I was satisfied with the working of the camera I ordered a quantity of film some time in January, 1895, the beginning of January. I might have asked for information of film in quantities, before January, but I did order film through a Mr. Charles Smith, a photographer, Park Row, N. Y., believing that he could do much better than I could from the Eastman Co., Rochester, N. Y. I received this film some time in the beginning of January, and used it at a laboratory which we had fitted up at 1721 St. Mark's Avenue, East New York, Brooklyn, N. Y.

Q44. Do you recollect approximately what you paid net for this film.

A. I do. Between 50 and 60 dollars.

Q45. I now hand you a photograph and ask you to state whether you can recognize the subject of this photograph and whether you can identify any of the persons shown therein.

A. This is evidently a photograph of Mr. Maltby's shop. I only recognize the shop in a general way. I recognize positively Mr. Maltby, whom I have marked in red ink with the numeral 1. I recognize a Mr. Hollman, whom I have marked 2 in red ink. I recognize Mr. Milliken, whom I have marked in red ink 3. I am unable to recognize any of the others, although they may have been there.

650

651

Defendant's counsel offers in evidence the photograph just identified, and the same is marked "Defendant's Exhibit, Photograph Maltby Shop."

Recess.

Q46. Who was the Mr. Hollman, you recognized in the photograph?

A. He was one of the partners of the Maltby Mfg. Co. or Maltby Machine Works.

Q47. At the time the camera was made?

A. At the time the camera was made.

Q48. Is the Milliken whom you identified in the photograph the one to whose house your camera was taken immediately after completion?

A. He was one of the workmen at the time the camera was made. He is.

Q49. You have spoken of your interview with Mr. Isaacs and the sale of camera at that time. When was this camera delivered?

A. June, 1895.

Q50. Will you please state any further circumstances leading up to the delivery of that camera in June, 1895?

A. Some time in December, 1894, either Mr. Walter Isaacs visited me or wrote me, the result of which caused us to have an interview. I visited his home and showed him some pictures that I had taken of Robt. Moore and James Lahey, and about four or five days later he visited my home and gave me an order for a camera at a price, and as I remember he did not state at that interview who this camera was for. I received a letter through the mail in the beginning of January from the party I have already mentioned, Mr. Hough, calling on me to deliver this camera. Some time in May I received a visit from Mr. Hough and Mr. Werner, and I also think that Mr. Isaacs was present, and a contract was drawn up after they had satisfied themselves that I really could take pictures and had a satisfactory camera, as this camera had already taken pictures of Mr. Hough and Mr. Werner in a scuffle on a stage, and these pictures had been shown them and tested, they gave me an order for two cameras and ten kinetoscopes and paid me \$1,-000 cash on account.

654

653

Q51. I hand you a paper and ask you whether you can identify it; if so, what it is?

A. I do identify it as being the paper I referred to in my previous answer.

Q52. Do you know in whose handwriting the body of this paper is in?

A. I do. It is my son's, A. L. Chinnock.

Q53. Is it your signature that appears at the end?

A. It is.

Q54. When was this paper signed by you and by the others whose signatures appear thereon?

A. The 3rd day of May, 1895.

Q55. Did you see the other signatures attached to the paper at the time?

A. I did.

Q56. Please state whom you saw sign this paper?

A. James E. Hough, Michael Werner, J. W. Lahey, Walter Isaacs. I am not so positive about Walter Isaacs, although I feel quite sure he was there.

Defendant's counsel offers in evidence the paper produced by the witness and the same is marked "Defendant's Exhibit, Agreement between Chinnock & Hough & Werner."

Q57. At the time this agreement was signed had you made or commenced any other cameras besides "Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera"?

A. I had not so far as I can recollect.

Q58. You have stated that a camera was delivered to Hough in June. Was the other photographic machine or camera required by this contract delivered?

A. It was.

Q59. To whom was that delivered and when? A. That was delivered to Mr. Michael Werner

A. That was delivered to Mr. Michael Werner about the same date, within a day or two, possibly the same date.

Q60. Where was Hough and Werner at that time?

A. In New York. Mr. Werner was at an uptown hotel. I cannot remember at this moment the name. Mr. Hough I did not see at the time the camera was delivered. It may have been delivered to Pitt and Scott for Mr. Hough. I made a mis-

656

take just now in stating that Mr. Hough was in New York. My recollections are that the camera for Mr. Hough was delivered to Messrs. Pitt & Scott and that he at the time was in London. When I stated Mr. Hough and Mr. Werner were both in New York at that time, it had reference to the time the contract was made. The camera was delivered to Mr. Werner in person or his representative and \$150 was collected at the time it was delivered. Mr. Werner's camera was carried over to New York by Mr. James Lahey and delivered, I feel quite certain, to Mr. Werner in person or to a representative of his.

659

Q61. Were you informed at the time where these gentlemen resided and where they expected to use the camera?

A. I was.

Q62. Please state what your information was in these respects?

A. I understood from Mr. Hough that the camera that he purchased was to be used in England and the camera that Mr. Werner purchased was to be used in France. I also understood from them that they had been making great efforts to get a camera and had failed.

660

Q63. How closely did the camera that you sold Werner and Hough resemble your first camera?

A. They were identical with a few minor changes, one of them being an interior cam, that is to say, a cam that moves the rock arm governing the gate that held the film instead of having the cam move the arm one way and the spring the other.

Q64. That is, in these two cameras the clamping and unclamping were both done by the cam instead of having a cam doing the unclamping and the spring doing the clamping as in the exhibit.

A. That is the only material difference.

· Q65. Did you have in the other cameras the same two reels, two sets of positively driven rolls at opposite sides of the gate or clamp and the loop formed above the clamp, as shown in the exhibit?

Mr. Page: Objected to as leading.

A. They did.

Q66. When and where were these two cameras made?

A. At the Maltby shop, between the beginning of '95 and the date of delivery. They were started immediately after the order was received and they were rushed through in the shortest possible time as I was under contract to deliver them at a certain date. My recollection is that it took about three weeks to complete them.

Q67. Did you make and deliver the ten kinetoscopes called for by the contract?

A. I made them, but I did not deliver them.

Q68. When did you first complete one of your kinetoscopes?

A. I think I had a complete kinetoscope about March, 1895; this kinetoscope was the duplicate, or was a sample from which all other kinetoscopes were made. I had a rough skeleton that I had rigged up myself, partly in '94, November, but a complete model I fix the date at March, '95.

Q69. Where did you make your kinetoscopes in '95?

A. In the Maltby's machine works.

Q70. You have spoken of taking pictures at St. Marks Avenue, East New York, Brooklyn. What was this place?

A. It was a one story building, situated in the

662

rear of a house about 25 feet by 60, possibly 50, and was fitted up with a stage on the roof with a fence around it with a small house for use when we had the camera in position, and was also fitted up with appliances for developing, printing and testing the camera, kinetoscopes and in fact it was the laboratory complete and also a stage suitable for taking subjects.

Q71. When did you arrange to get this place, and when did you fit it up in the way you have described?

665

A. We had secured the place the latter part of 1894, or it might have been the early part of '95; we fitted it up immediately and took subjects in January, '95, and went into the manufacture of kinetoscope subjects.

Q72. Do you recall any of the subjects of the pictures taken at the St. Marks Avenue place in the first half of 1895?

A. I do. Ruth Dennis, Claffin Sisters, they were professional dancers; May Jewell, two professional boxers, cock fight, Werner & Hough, the couchee couchee, and some others that I cannot just at this moment recall.

666

Q73. When did you get your kinetoscopes on the market and how did you market them?

A. The first kinetoscopes that I have any positive recollection of regarding commercial use was put in Val Schmidt, a saloon on Fulton street, near the bridge, Brooklyn; in three days this instrument took in \$40. The next two that I am positive about were two that we placed at Canarsie, a summer resort. These two were in June, '95. These machines took in \$40 or \$50 in an afternoon. We placed one in Gerkens, a cafe, corner of Church and Courtlandt streets. In '95

we put out a large number of kinetoscopes. I can't recall just where they were placed. I think I have a record of quite a number of them in writing.

Q74. Is this book which I now hand you the record you refer to, and if so state what it is and who kept it?

A. This is the record I refer to, and shows some of the instruments that were in use in the early part of '95 up to the date shown in here. It is a receipt book showing the amount collected. When we first put kinetoscopes out we did not have a book of this kind. We only discovered the necessity of this afterwards. This book was carried around by Mr. James W. Lahey, and writing, as far as I am able to judge, is his, and I identify it as being a book that I have seen many times.

668

Defendant's counsel offers the book in evidence and the same is marked "Defendant's Exhibit, North American Kinetoscope Co. Receipt Book."

Q75. I see that these receipts are marked as being from the N. Am. Kin. Co. or similar abbreviations. What did such abbreviations stand for?

A. North American Kinetoscope Co.

Q76. What was the North American Kineto-scope?

A. It was a partnership consisting of myself and F. R. Chinnock, my brother.

Q77. I now hand you what appears to be a typewritten agreement, can you identify the same; if so, what is it?

A. It is an agreement between my brother and myself, and it is the terms upon which we both

672

agree to carry on the business of the North American Kinetoscope Co.

Q78. When was this agreement signed by yourself and your brother?

A. The 25th day of May, 1895.

Defendant's counsel offers in evidence the agreement in question and the same is marked "Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Agreement."

671 Q79. Was this date the first connection your brother had with you in this business?

A. It was not.

Q80. Please state how long he had had any connection with you in this business and what that connection was.

A. I had talked the matter over with him several

months before and continued to talk the matter over until the date of the agreement. In fact, he had made an advance of \$500 before this agreement was signed. He had seen the pictures and had seen the kinetoscope and was familiar with what I was doing several months before this date, May 25th, 1895. And on the strength of what I had done and what I was doing he went in with me.

Q81. Up to the time when you had completed the other two cameras, the ones for Hough and Werner, what other camera, if any, except Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera, had you used for taking pictures for your commercial kinetoscopes?

A. No other.

Q82. How long did you continue to use Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera, for taking pictures for your business?

A. Certainly up to July, 1895, and possibly longer.

Q83. When did you have other cameras for use in your business?

A. Not until 1896, although it is barely possible that I might have had another one the latter part of 1895.

Q84. Were you taking pictures in 1895 after July, do you know?

A. We were.

Q85. Are you able to state what camera you were using for that?

A. Using the same camera.

Q86. That is, "Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera"?

A. Yes.

Q87. Whom do you recall as being present when you took the Lahey-Moore pictures in 1894?

A. Mr. James Lahey, Robert Moore, myself, and I have heard since that there were a number of others. There was a house quite near and I remember quite a number looking at us while we were manipulating this subject, whether you would consider them present or not I do not know.

If they were present, there were a number of others. My mind was so positively concentrated on this first attempt that I did not even know until afterwards that a policeman was present, or that a policeman had been investigating what we were deing and stated that he did not know but that we were counterfeiters. I had told quite a number that I was going to take pictures and I had told them where I was going to take pictures. I have a dim recollection that my brother promised to be out there, Mr. F. R. Chinnock, and one or two others promised or said they would be out there.

Q88. Prior to this development of your camera

675

had you ever made any inventions and obtained patents in other arts, and if so, to what extent?

A. I have taken out a number of patents, principally in the electrical line, one of them being a chronometer time lock used by the Government and banks, a spinning jenny for suspending cables, a telephone transmitter, switchboards for the telephone exchanges, a special call for telephones, telephone switchboard, electric light ammeter for central stations, telephone cable and a number of others that I cannot at this minute recall.

677

Direct examination closed.

Cross Examination by Mr. Page:

Cross examination subject to objection.

XQ89. Will you please describe the kinetoscopes in which you exhibited the pictures that you took in 1894 or 1895?

678

A. The kinetoscope was modeled after the plan of the kinetoscope that I saw as a boy with the exception that my kinetoscope had photographs, whereas the others that I refer to were simply My kinetoscope consisted of a drum mounted on a shaft, the shaft having a groove cut longitudinally from end to end and a cross reversed groove cut from end to end that forced the drum to travel from end to end and then back again to the original position. On this drum was wound a canvas having on the face of it the photographs. The canvas was laid out by a straight edge before the pictures were mounted or pasted on this canvas so that the pictures corresponded to the groove cut in this shaft, that is to say, No. 1 picture would run spirally around this drum and would be an inch wide and the groove in the shaft was an inch wide, consequently when the drum started to revolve and the peep hole revolved in the reverse direction each picture would come before the eye just as they were taken on the canvas and would show perfect movement of the subjects. As soon as the last picture was shown the light was extinguished automatically and the drum returned to its original position.

XQ90. I gather from your description that you had a drum which was rotated around a shaft and was moved longitudinally along the shaft by engagement with a spiral groove cut in the shaft, is that correct?

A. That is correct.

XQ91. And was there some device equivalent to a shutter that cut off the pictures from view except at the moment when each particular picture came opposite to a peep hole.

A. There was,

XQ92. By the simultaneous rotation and longitudinal advancement of the drum the pictures mounted spirally on the drum were brought successively opposite to a peep hole and at that instant were exposed to view, is that correct?

A. That is correct.

XQ93. What was the diameter of these drums?

A. About 18 inches.

XQ94. And what was the length of the drum or the space on the drums occupied by the pictures?

A. 50 feet of film an inch wide, each picture an inch long.

XQ95. That would make the length of the drum or the portion which was covered by the pictures about how many inches?

A. About 18 inches or two feet. I do not know

680

683

just exactly. I am figuring it out by a mental process. I can verify it. Generally it was sufficient to show 50 feet of film, the pictures one inch wide and an inch long.

XQ96. The light was produced by what source?

A. Electric light.

XQ97. And it was burning continuously during the forward movement of the drum but intercepted by the shutter?

A. Intercepted by the shutter.

XQ98. Was the shutter in the form of a cylinder, or how was it arranged?

A. In form of a cylinder, a duplicate of the drum, only larger in diameter, and very much narrower in width, the width being sufficient to cover the eye so that it would be possible only to see one picture at a time looking at it naturally.

XQ99. This shutter revolved at the same rate of speed as the drum, did it not?

A. It did. Making allowances for the difference in diameter.

XQ100. What was the width of the canvas strip on which the pictures were mounted?

684 A. About 15 inches, possibly 18.

XQ101. And were the pictures pasted on this canvas in a spiral line?

A. They were.

XQ102. Was the canvas mounted or pasted to the drum before the pictures were mounted on it?

A. It was not.

Counsel for defendant in view of the cross-examination thus far deems it possible that counsel for complainant may be able to produce one of the Chinnock kinetoscopes and if he can it is requested that he do so.

Counsel for Complainant replies that he does not know where defendant's counsel got such an impression, for not only is counsel for complainant unable to produce such a device but he is trying to find out what that device was if it ever existed.

XQ103. Was it mounted on a temporary drum or form before the pictures were pasted on it?

A. It was not.

XQ104. Won't you please tell the court how it was that you got the pictures on it in spiral lines so that when it was finally mounted on a drum they would be brought successively before the peephole?

A. The piece of canvas the proper length, a little

wider than the pictures, a little wider than the total number of pictures that was to go on it, was soaked in water, dried and went through a regular shrinking process. We had a special board made true on its edges and the ends at right angles specially prepared so that it was practically water proof, this canvas was tacked on this board, a pencil line drawn longitudinally another peucil line parallel with this line the right distance apart, a pencil line drawn at right angles, another pencil line parallel with this the right distance lengthwise. With a pair of dividers the exact width of the strip that we intended to paste on, we made dots on this line that was at right angles to the line that was longitudinal so that this line was divided off into the necessary number of equal parts, each part corresponding with the width of the picture. The same number of divisions plus

one was laid off on the line parallel with this line that I have referred to above, that is the distance 686

that one strip of the drum would occupy. A straight line was placed on one dot and then touched the dot below excepting that it was one inch out of right angles so as to make the proper spiral. A sufficient number of these lines were drawn on this canvas to correspond to the number of strips that would go around the drum. No. 1 pictures on No. 1 strip was then pasted on this line, then No. 2 strip, No. 3 strip, No. 4 strip, until the line was filled up with pictures. This continued until all the subjects was pasted on this canvas. The canvas was then taken off and metal ends put on each end of this strip of canvas and these metal ends were placed on the drum so that it brought the pictures close together and formed an exact duplicate spirally wound on this drum to correspond with the spirally cut groove on the shaft of the kinetoscope proper. Of course it is understood that the first or skeleton kinetoscope that I had made and had shown pictures on did not go through this whole process as described by me.

690

689

XQ105. Then as I understand it the strips of pictures were pasted diagonally in a flat canvas strip of exactly the number of inches of the circumference of the drum and this canvas strip after receiving the pictures was laid around and secured to the drum so that the end of the first strip of papers registered with the beginning of the second strip and so on, thus forming a continuous spiral strip of the successive pictures, is that correct?

A. That is correct.

XQ106. The pictures, I mean the positives or prints, were on strips of paper about one inch wide?

A. That is correct.

XQ107. And what was the width of the spaces if any between the successive pictures?

A. Hardly perceptible.

XQ108. That is to say, there was no perceptible portions of the original film which were unexposed?

A. The intention was to have the pictures join. Occasionally there might be a picture that had a fraction of space between it, but that was compensated for by the next picture which would lap just that much as we had lost before. That of course was occasioned by the mechanism of the camera.

XQ109. After you had exposed a strip of film in the camera into what lengths did you cut up the film before developing? I am referring now to the photographs which you took in the latter part of '94 and the early part of '95?

A. About a foot.

XQ110. Was this practice continued in your later work?

A. It was.

XQ111. Did you cut the strip of film before it was immersed in the developing bath?

A. I did.

XQ112. Did you cut it in equal lengths?

A. I did so far as the pictures guided me and my recollection is that they were of equal lengths. In other words they were not measured, excepting by the registering of the instrument.

XQ113. How could you tell where to cut the film; what register marks did you have?

A. The picture itself, even the picture lapped it showed a hair.

XQ114. Do you mean it showed before it was developed?

A. Certainly. If you study the Chinnock Ex-

692

hibit you will see that it registers on the film itself, where you can cut it, and as regards the mark of the picture, I had for the moment forgotten that fact. The only way of cutting with my system was by the registering of the instrument as it shows on the side of the film, not where the picture is taken, but after the picture is developed then it shows even though the picture has lapped a hair, and the registering does not in any way affect the picture.

695

Adjourned to 11 o'clock.

New York, N. Y., May 10th, 11 A. M.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present: Counsel as before.

Continuation of Cross Examination of Witness Chinnock by Mr. Page:

696

XQ115. Will you now explain with reference to the Chinnock Exhibit how you were enabled to cut up the film after it had been exposed before the pictures had been developed without cutting through the pictures?

A. The lower rollers have a tendency to pull the film down all the time, and the only time that the lower rollers do not pull the film down is when the film is held by the gate that is operated by the cam, at that moment the rollers slide on the outside edges of the film and will make on a new film or on any film a mark that will be discerned if carefully looked for. Knowing the distance between the picture and mark, it is a very simple matter to cut be-

tween pictures and to cut it into equal lengths without having the developer touch the film. So many marks meant so many pictures.

XQ116. These marks made by the lower rollers are all at exactly equal distances from one another, are they not?

A. If the machine turns steadily and is in proper order they are.

XQ117. But the pictures themselves may show a slight space between them and overlap at the other side to compensate for the space, may they not?

A. The space shown between the pictures is governed entirely by the gate that is clamped by the cam. And as I said before, if the machine is in proper order and is turned at a regular speed there will be no space shown at all unless at such times

XQ118. What do you mean by not moving regularly?

when the film is not moving regularly.

A. The apparatus not working as it is intended to work and made to work, being turned unsteadily, proper tension between the lower roller not fust what it should be.

XQ119. In an affidavit which you have made in this case you state that the tension between the upper rollers was made strong so that there would be a uniform feeding of the film under this heavy pressure between the rollers even though a film had to be fed which had portions where two lengths were spliced together. Will you explain that statement a little more fully?

A. The only way that I can explain that now is assuming that the rollers might force it together or would take out any little buckles or inequalities to make flat surface and wouldn't feed one side of the 698

film more than the other. In other words, the idea is to have the roller so tight that it will feed regularly, notwithstanding that the film might vary or there might be any little irregularity in the film.

XQ120. Do you mean that a pair of friction rollers drawn together by heavy pressure of the tension spring would feed at the same rate films of different thicknesses?

A. Do you mean by that that the film would vary in thickness or that it is the same thickness all the way along or that it is thick in one place and thin in another?

XQ121. To save questions I will ask you to consider each of the cases which you mention and to answer the question with that understanding?

A. If the film is of varying thickness a roller such as you have described would not feed as far as I know at this present moment exactly the same for every fraction of an inch. If the film was of uniform thickness it would feed uniformly although it is possible that it would creep a little.

XQ122. Why did you make the spring pressing the lower rollers together lighter than the spring pressing the upper rollers together?

A. So as not to damage the film.

XQ123. Why are the lower rolls made of larger diameter than the upper rolls and why are they driven at a higher peripheral speed?

A. They have to pull a certain amount of film down, the amount that has been reeled off by the upper rolls, and they have less time to pull it down in, consequently they must be very much larger in diameter and driven at the same speed, or they must be reasonably large in diameter and driven at a greater speed.

XQ124. Do you know what the relative periph-

701

eral speeds of the upper and lower pair of rolls is?

A. I do not. That can easily be ascertained. I did know, but I have forgotten.

XQ125. Do you remember that the ratio is about 9 to 4?

A. I do not.

XQ126. You have stated that in some tests of this device before the tension spring was introduced between the lower rolls and the take-up reel, the strip of paper or film which you ran through the machine was sometimes torn. Where did this tearing or breaking occur?

704

A. Between the take-up roll and where the spring bore down on the film or paper.

XQ127. You mean that the paper before the spring was introduced was torn close to the take-up reel?

A. Between the take-up reel and the lower rolls, and it was also torn even with the take-up spring on until we had it just right.

XQ128. Is the tension of the spring between the take-up reel and the lower rolls varied by the diameter of the take-up reel, that is to say, as more or less film is wound on the take-up reel, is the spring subjected to greater or less tension?

705

A. As the spring is used, it necessarily has more tension as it is pulled up by the film and has a minimum amount of tension when it is in its normal position without having any pressure on it. The moment there is any pressure on it the tension increases.

XQ129. Is this tension varied by the varying leverage of the take-up roll as film accumulates on it?

A. It is 16 or 17 years ago when that was made. At this minute it is absolutely impossible for me to tell you in detail just how that tension spring worked with that film and with that reel. I am perfectly willing to run off a film to take the exhibit with me or to do it in your presence and describe everything that that tension spring did. The general answer I would say it worked perfectly.

XQ130. The tension between the lower rolls must never be so great as to pull the film through the upper rolls, must it?

707

A. The tension of the lower spring must be sufficient and was sufficient in actual practice to compensate for the loss in creep.

XQ131. I shall have to ask you to explain your answer a little more fully?

A. The results that I got from this camera proved to me conclusively that the film as a whole did not lose in length as regards the number of pictures taken on that predetermined length. I account for that by the fact that when the loop was formed and when the film is released after a picture had been photographed the frictional rollers pulled it down with a rush and actually aided the upper feed rollers, that is the actual practice of the Chinnock camera now on exhibit.

708

XQ132. When you say that the lower rollers did compensate for the creep where was the creep, between the upper rollers?

A. Between the upper rollers.

XQ133. Do you mean that a little more of the film passed through these rollers than the circumferential portion of the upper rollers in contact with the film?

A. I mean that it was aided and the result proved that a little more must have passed because it is a well known fact that a film or paper of any substance passed between rollers cannot gain if everything is equal, that there is what they call a fractional loss caused by creep. I don't know whether that is the proper technical term, but that is the way I understand it. Therefore, ordinarily in running off 50 feet of film there would be a fractional loss if it were not for the fact that the film must have been helped by the lower rollers and the sharp and sudden snap tending to pull the film through the upper rollers. In other words the lower rollers helped the upper rollers.

XQ134. The tension of the spring between the take-up reel and the lower rollers is never sufficient to pull the film through the lower rollers when the cam operated gate releases the film, is it?

A. In actual operation, and when the machine is operated at between 20 and 30 a second, this lower spring made some very rapid gyrations. In fact, I have seen it receive a blow from the paper sufficient to spring it up and it would come down with a blow. That might have a tendency, and probably did, to move the lower rollers a fraction or take up the loss in the gearing of the instrument.

XQ135. What was the greatest length of film that you ever ran through this camera in taking pictures of objects in motion in one operation?

A. 50 feet. I run paper through it very much longer.

XQ136. This film is or was approximately two inches in width?

A. It was.

XQ137. After you had developed the pictures on the film what was done with the unexposed edges, were they trimmed off?

A. They were not.

XQ138. Then, when you obtained positive prints,

710

were these trimmed down to the width of one inch? A. They were.

XQ139. Did you ever experience any trouble with the film passing off from the surface of the feeding rolls and getting between the gearing?

A. I have no recollection in actual practice of having that trouble. I have, though, in the testing of the machine or camera in putting the film in position, have it catch in the gear, which I have remedied by simply putting it down through or in line. I have also made failures with the film. that is to say, when the friction roll was not just right I have spoiled film.

XQ140. Did you ever experience any difficulty in keeping the film accurately running between the rolls when, by reason of any inequalities in the thickness of the film, a portion of it tended to travel faster or slower than another portion?

A. I have noticed that; my best recollection at this minute is that I had noticed it and attributed it to the working of the instrument, not being properly adjusted or not being turned properly. I cannot say that I ever figured it out as being 714 owing to the inequality of the film.

I have never actually calipered the film to find out whether it varied in thickness as to its length or varied in thickness as to width. In fact I never came across a piece of film that I knew was spliced, although I have learned since that they do splice film, and they do it so well that they cannot be detected by the naked eve.

XQ141. Have you any specimens of the film or positive prints of the film that were photographed by means of this camera?

A. For the last three weeks I have made diligent search for a piece of that film and for a strip of

the pictures, particularly the Lahey-Moore bout. I even went so far as to send Mr. Lahey out to East New York, where our laboratory was, and had him interview a Mrs. Steffen who occupied the house on the front part of the lot where the laboratory was situated. She stated that the place was let to a clothing manufacturer and just before he occupied the place all the stuff that had remained in that laboratory after we had given it up was gathered, placed in a lot and was burned, and shortly after the laboratory was burned. six months ago Mr. James Lahey had some of this film of the boxing bout between himself and Robert Moore. I am quite sure that there would be little difficulty in finding one of the strips containing the photographs. Within two years the kinetoscope was on exhibition at Coney Island at the Iron Pier. I can't say just which one now, and after 15 or 16 years was actually working.

716

XQ142. You have stated that you used this exhibit camera up to July, 1895, and possibly longer. Why did you discontinue its use?

A. My anxiety to improve it.

XQ143. That is to say you made a better one?

A. Tried to make a better one?

XQ144. Did you succeed?

A. To be frank I don't think I did, excepting as to appearance.

XQ145. When did you make this better appearing camera?

Q. Between May or June, possibly July, 1895, and the latter part of 1895. At this moment I cannot fix the date within a month or even two months; by being given some time, I think I could make it closer than two months.

XQ146. After you had made that camera, what

did you do with this one which is now in evidence?

A. Sent this one to my house; just why I sent it there I couldn't state; by a little trouble I could locate the time when it arrived at my home.

XQ147. How long did you continue to take pictures with the other or new camera that you made in 1895?

A. Up to the middle of 1896. Possibly longer, but not longer than the latter part of '96.

XQ148. Did you ever apply for a patent on this or any other motion picture camera?

A. No, sir.

XQ149. Did you apply for a patent on your kinetoscope?

A. No, sir.

XQ150. In your affidavit filed in this case you state in referring to the addition of the spring arm between the lower rolls and the take-up reel as follows:

"The provision, therefore, of this lower loop or slack controlled by the spring arm was very helpful."

Just what did you mean by that expression?

A. The reel necessarily weighs so much, off hand, I should say a pound. This reel was revolved by a belt and was frictionally connected on the shaft so that if you stopped the reel, the machine would still run, that is the friction would allow it to operate. By having three or four, maybe a dozen convolutions of paper or film on this reel, the take-up would work very nicely, but the weight of this film or paper increased and also the diameter and of course it took more power to revolve it

719

and as the film was held while the picture was being taken, it might stop the reel short for a moment or a fraction of a second and quite a loop would gather between the lower rolls and take-up The take-up reel would then, owing to the friction, start to revolve and would get quite a momentum on and this momentum was sufficient to jerk things and in some cases would break the film. This take-up spring was suggested by somebody, or it might have occurred to me, at this moment I cannot say. However, we put it on, and after several experiments as to tension, position, shape, it completely and positively cured the trouble. So much so that the first film that I ran off in actual operation was commercially perfect with the pictures on.

722

XQ151. Did you always operate this camera yourself in taking photographs of moving objects?

A. I did not.

XQ152. Who, besides yourself, used it for obtaining pictures?

A. In the beginning I was my own operator and my own photographer. As soon as we occupied our laboratory and had it fitted up we hired a professional photographer and sometimes I operated the machine and sometimes he did. Just what proportions I couldn't say, but I recollect one case in particular where he operated it, focused it and made a fizzle of a very expensive subject. While the film so far as registering was perfect or commercially perfect, he had failed to properly focus the subject and it was more or less blurred. The film was developed, mounted and used to a limited extent.

XQ153. You bought your film for use in this camera in 50-foot lengths, did you not?

A. I did, excepting the first two or three films that I used.

XQ154. At what average rate did you take the pictures that you used for exhibition in your kinetoscope?

A. Around 20 a second. Although I feel quite positive that some of the films were run off at a greater speed, possibly 25. And some of them may have been run off at a less speed than 20, but we never had a film, I state this now positively, that showed the slightest indication of a jerky motion.

725 XQ155. Did you always operate the camera by hand?

A. Always. Of course you are talking about this camera and duplicate cameras like this.

Mr. Page: Yes.

Direct examination closed.

Re-direct Examination by Mr. Eyre:

RDQ156. Have you ever examined a copy of the Latham patent involved in this suit?

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant, immaterial and as not re-direct examination.

A. I never have.

RDQ157. Have you read any of the affidavits given on behalf of defendant and relating to this camera?

A. I have not.

RDQ158. Have you seen or communicated with anybody that was connected with the Maltby shop within the last few years?

A. I have not. Of course, I met Mr. Edge in here the other day by accident. I simply said, "How do you do" to him.

RDQ159. Have you seen or communicated with Mr. Charles Smith, the photographer, in the last few years?

A. I have not.

RDQ160. When you found the machine in your cellar, did it then have the film in it that is there now?

A. It did.

RDQ161. Do you know whether or not this is a part of a film that you bought through Smith?

A. I do not.

RDQ162. Do you know how long the film now in the machine has remained therein?

A. At least 13 years, if not 14.

Re-direct examination closed.

CHARLES E. CHINNOCK.

729

728

CHARLES W. SMITH, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre.

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Charles W. Smith; age, 60; residence, 9th Avenue, corner Kalb, Brooklyn; occupation, mercantile photographer.

Q2. How long have you been in the business of mercantile photography?

A. Since 1890.

731

732

- Q3. During the time that you have been in this business, did you ever purchase any film such as the film that is used in connection with the moving picture business?
 - A. Only that purchased for Mr. Chinnock.
 - Q4. What do you recall about that purchase?
- A. That he came in and asked me to get it for him from Eastman's people, thinking possibly that I might, being in the business, I suppose, be able to make better terms. I don't know that I did.
 - Q5. What Mr. Chinnock do you refer to?
- A. I don't remember his first name. I only know him as Mr. Chinnock.
- Q6. He is the Mr. Chinnock who was in this room when you came in?

A. Yes.

It is stipulated that he is the Mr. Chinnock who has previously testified in this case.

Q7. When, as nearly as you can recall, did you make this purchase for Mr. Chinnock?

A. That I cannot remember exactly. I do not remember the exact date. It might have been in '93, it might have been in '95, the early part of the year I should say.

Q8. That is, all you can remember is that it was probably the early part of the year and that it was sixteen or eighteen years ago?

- A. Yes.
- Q9. How is it that you never purchased any such film for yourself?
- A. I had no occasion to. I do not do that kind of business.
- Q10. What do you remember as to the quantity of film purchased, or its character or cost?

A. Somewhere in the neighborhood of \$50. I paid for it and he paid me.

Q11. What do you recall as to how long it was after you gave the order that you received the film and delivered it to Mr. Chinnock?

A. I could not say, but I would not think over a week.

Q12. The Eastman people to whom you have referred are the Eastman Company of Rochester, New York?

A. Yes.

734

Direct examination closed.

Mr. Page: Deposition objected to as irrelevant and immaterial and cross-examination waived.

Counsel for defendant states that as the affidavits on the motion to reopen show, this deposition is connected with the case, not only by the previous deposition of Chinnock, but by a deposition to be obtained from the Eastman Kodak Company.

Mr. Page: Notwithstanding the statement of counsel, the deposition is objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

735

Signature waived by consent.

Adjourned to May 11th, 1911, at 11 A. M.

New York, N. Y., May 11th, 1911. 11 A. M.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present: Counsel as before.

CHARLES O. PEARSON, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

737 Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

> A. Charles O. Pearson; 47; 320 East 5th Street, Brooklyn; machinist.

> Q2. You are treasurer of the Berggman & Pearson Machine Co., of 221 Canal Street, New York City?

A. Yes.

Q3. Were you ever employed by the Maltby Mfg. Co. of Brooklyn?

A. Yes.

Q4. When were you employed by that company?
 A. I started in for Maltby Mfg. Co. about September or October, 1894, and I worked for them

for something less than a year.

Q5. How do you fix September or October, 1894, as the time when you commenced this work?

A. Because I was working for Pneumatic Torpedo & Construction Co. from about November 1st, 1893, up to that time.

Q6. Is there anything that enables you to definitely fix in your mind the particular years that you were doing work for these two companies, and if so, what?

A. Yes, I remember distinctly that I was out in Hempstead, Long Island, in the bicycle business during the summer of 1893, and about October I left there and I was out of work for a couple of weeks also before I got the position with the Pneumatic Torpedo & Construction Co.

Q7. What caused you to give up the bicycle business at that time?

A. I gave that up because I could not see enough business to keep me there during the winter.

Q8. What fixes the year as '93 as the one in which you gave up this business?

A. Because I remember that it was a hard year and hard to get work. And besides I bought a house in Buffalo Avenue at about the same time.

Q9. What was the first work, so far as you can remember, that you did for the Maltby Mfg. Co.?

A. The first work that I done for the Maltby Mfg. Co. was on a camera for Mr. Chinnock.

Q10. Just when, as near as you can place it, did you begin this work?..

A. To my best recollection, between October 1st and November 1st.

Q11. How steadily was the work on this camera carried on?

A. The work on the first camera was carried right along until the camera was completed.

Q12. What did you work from?

.A. From sketches made by Mr. Chinnock himself.

Q13. When you were building the camera, what, if any, help did you have from Mr. Chinnock?

A. Well, he was supervising the work almost daily.

Q14. What proportion of your time was spent on this camera while it was being made?

A. Practically all the time.

Q15. What help did you have from others in the shop?

740

743

- A. I had some help to make up detailed parts, just how much I cannot say.
- Q16. How long did it take you to complete the camera?
- A. I should say about two months, to my best recollection.
- Q17. Were any tests made of this camera in the shop after it was completed, and if so, what do you recollect about them?
- A. Yes. We were doing some tests, first with paper strips, to see how the camera registered, and later on Mr. Chinnock brought in some films that we run through without taking any pictures.
- Q18. Did you build any later cameras for Mr. Chinnock while you were at this shop?
- A. Yes, we later on built two, but there was an interval between the first and the two later ones; just how long that was I do not remember, probably three or four months.
- Q19. Do you recall anything as to how much alike the later cameras and the earlier camera were?
- A. The last cameras were, as far as I remember, exact duplicates of the first with the exception of the cam operating the clamping device, which was actuated in the first camera by a spring and on the last two it was positively controlled by the cam.
 - Q20. Please look at the apparatus on the desk here before you and state what you can identify about it.
 - A. Well, I can remember almost every detail that I see on this camera with the exception of the driving pulley. It seems to me that we had a crank instead of the driving pulley.

The witness' attention was called to Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera.

Q21. What camera is this that you are identifying?

A. I identify this as being the first camera that I built.

Mr. Page: The answer of the witness and all of his previous testimony, which it now appears relates to this Chinnock camera, is objected to as irrelevant and immaterial, and it is agreed that the same objection shall apply to any further testimony to be given with regard to the same.

746

Defendant's counsel, however, states that he would be glad to be advised as to just what is the specific intent of the objection, in order that he may avoid any question that might be technical. The prior knowledge and use of the Chinnock camera has been included in the answer by an amendment, and presumably therefore it is part of the issue under the pleadings.

747

Mr. Page: The specific objection is that the camera in evidence is irrelevant and immaterial to any of the issues in this case, and if that objection be sound it is presumable that the testimony with regard to how or when it was made and by whom it was made is equally irrelevant and immaterial.

Q22. You have stated that you remember almost every detail on this camera with the exception of the driving pulley. Will you please describe the feeding mechanism of this camera as you recollect it to have been present in the 1891 camera and specifying how that feeding mechanism acted at that time with your tests with paper and film?

A. The film runs down from a reel mounted on top of the camera, between two feeding rollers over a frame in between the clamp, and it runs back to a lower pair of feeding rollers which travels faster than the upper rolls so that while the clamp held the film tight a loop was formed on the top and when the clamp is released the loop was taken up by the lower rollers, and then it was fed on to another reel mounted on the lower part of the camera.

749

Q23. What do you recollect as to how the reel mounted on the lower part of the camera was driven?

A. By a small round belt that would slip and only take up the film as it was fed.

Q24. You gave your last answer without looking at the exhibit. Will you now look at the exhibit and see whether in addition to the belt there is a friction driving mechanism for the lower reel, and if so state whether you can recollect that friction drive?

A. Yes, I do remember the friction device. I also remember the shaft mounted on one side of the camera and run by bevel gears which carried large shutters and these shutters made in two parts so that the aperture could be adjusted for short or long exposures.

750

Q25. I call your attention to an arm that presses down on the film by spring pressure near the bottom of the camera. Do you remember anything as to this?

A. Yes, I remember that that arm is placed there for the purpose of giving flexibility to the feed of the film.

Q26. When did you leave the Maltby shop?

A. I left the Maltby shop in the latter part of the

summer of 1895, just the exact time I can't remember.

Q27. How many of these cameras had been completed before you left the shop?

A. There was three cameras completed while I was there, and I understood that one of those cameras was going to Paris, the other was going to London and the first one was to remain here.

Q28. Did you ever see any pictures taken by this first camera?

A. Yes, I do. Some time in the spring of '95 I was invited by Mr. Chinnock to come up to his place in East New York on a Sunday morning when he had rigged up to take some pictures of some girls dancing on a roof.

Q29. Tell us as far as you can recollect how this place was fitted up?

A. The place was fitted up with some kind of a little extension built on the roof where the machine was operated and at the other end of the roof behind the performers was a screen fixed of canvas or muslin.

Q30. Was this Sunday the first knowledge that you had that Chinnock had been taking pictures with this camera?

A. No. I had seen pictures that Chinnock brought down to the shop before that time which he claimed were taken by the camera.

Q31. Do you remember what street this place was on in East New York?

A. I am not sure, but I think it was on St. Marks Avenue, or in that neighborhood.

Q32. Did you make any kinetoscopes for Chinnock?

A. Yes, I made first one model kinetoscope and later on we made one lot of eight, if I am not mistaken. 752

Q33. I show you a photograph and ask you whether you can recognize the same?

Showing witness Defendant's Exhibit, Photograph Maltby Shop.

A. Yes. I remember Mr. Hollman, standing under No. 2 in red ink. I remember Mr. John Milliken, which is marked No. 3, marked in red ink on his chest. I also see Mr. Maltby standing with his back up against a post. That is No. 1 in red ink. I remember one or two faces, but do not remember their names.

Q34. Do you remember the room showed in this photograph?

A. Yes, I remember the room. I remember this room as being Maltby's shop.

Q35. Before to-day when did you last see or have any communication with Mr. Chinnock?

A. From the time I left Maltby's place I do not remember of having met Mr. Chinnock until one time I met him on the street, in Beekman Street, about in the neighborhood of Nassau Street, that was about nine years ago.

Q36. And that is the last time you saw him until to-day?

A. Until to-day.

Q37. When have you last seen or communicated with Mr. Maltby?

A. I saw Mr. Maltby about a year after I left the shop. At that time he had a bicycle store and a shop at corner of Fulton and Clinton Streets. I bought a bicycle from him and that is the last time I seen him.

Q38. Do you find anything in this Defendant's Exhibit Chinnock Camera which has been altered since you first completed it?

755

A. No, I do not see any alterations that I can remember.

Q39. Do you remember whether there was any cover for the mechanism when it left the shop?

A. Mr. Chinnock, I believe, had a cabinet made of wood in which he placed the camera, but I can not remember any details of that.

Direct examination closed.

Cross Examination by Mr. Page, subject to objection:

758

XQ40. Did you ever operate this camera yourself for the taking of photographs?

A. No, I did not, except in some preliminary test to see how the camera spaced the pictures of film.

XQ41. In these preliminary tests did you vary the adjustments of the springs controlling the pressure between the two rolls?

A. No, not that I can remember. The spacing was correct as far as I remember from the first trials. I think I remember that we had to slacken some springs as they showed a tendency to partly tear the film at the first trials.

759

XQ42. I did not ask you anything about the spacing, why did you tell me about that in your last answer?

A. Well, I only told you or answered the question as I thought it was proper.

XQ43. You have talked over this camera and the facts connected with it with defendant's counsel more or less during the last three or four weeks, have you not?

A. I have only been up in this place once before to-day.

XQ44. That was when you signed your affidavit? A. That is it.

XQ45. Did you discuss with Mr. Chinnock or defendant's counsel to-day the matter of spacing of the pictures of this camera?

A. No, only that I mentioned that I thought the spacing was 3/4 of an inch and Mr. Chinnock said he thought it was one inch.

XQ46. I mean the question of the evenness or regularity of the spacing, was that the subject of discussion?

761

A. We did not discuss this point, neither this morning nor the other time I was up here, with the exception that Mr. Chinnock remarked this morning, "do you remember how beautifully the spacing was at the first time"?

XQ47. When you made your preliminary tests with this instrument did you adjust the pressure of the lower rolls so that it would be just efficient to pull the film through the clamp when the latter was released?

A. Yes.

XQ48. And you adjusted the upper rolls so that the pressure between them was very much greater?

A. Yes.

XQ49. Did you ever operate this instrument without the spring arm which is now present in it between the lower rolls and the take-up reel?

A. Not that I can remember.

XQ50. Did you make that spring and attach it to the camera?

A. Yes, I believe I did.

XQ51. You do not remember when you did this, do you?

A. No particular time except when the camera was made.

Cross-examination closed.

Re-direct Examination by Mr. Eyre:

RDQ52. You have been asked in cross-examination about conversations you have had with Chinnock and with us. How long before Mr. Page came into the room had you been here this morning?

A. I should say ten minutes.

RDQ53. And that ten minutes was the only communication as I understand you that you have had with Mr. Chinnock since you saw him in the street about nine years ago?

A. Yes.

RDQ54. You made an affidavit on April 28th. When did you first have anybody talk to you about the subject-matter of that affidavit?

A. I think it was the preceding day or the 27th. When the gentleman that you sent was up in my place.

RDQ55. Do you recall how the affidavit that you executed on the following day was prepared?

A. Only that you asked questions and I answered them about the same as I have done to-day.

RDQ56. Do you recollect whether or not the affidavit substantially as it was executed was dictated while you were with me?

A. There was no dictation except that you asked questions and I answered.

RDQ57. Don't you remember that I dictated the affidavit in collaboration with you to my stenographer?

A. Sure.

RDQ58. From that day, April 28th, until this morning have you met and talked with anybody connected with or interested in the case, except for such questions as I have asked you on the telephone?

A. Nobody at all, only that you called me up on

764

the 'phone yesterday and arranged to meet me here this morning.

RDQ59. You have said that you could not tell the particular time when you put this spring arm on, that is the spring arm bearing against the lower part of the film at the lower part of the camera, except that was when you made the camera. Do you mean by that that it was made during the two months that it took you to make the camera?

767

Mr. Page: Objected to as leading.

A. I cannot positively remember whether that spring was put on in the first place or after some trials.

RDQ60. You recollect whether or not it was on the machine when it was first taken away from the Maltby shop?

Mr. Page: Same objection.

A. Yes, it was.

RDQ61. Do you remember when in testing the feeding mechanism with paper anything was done to ascertain how accurately the mechanism was feeding, if so, what?

A. Yes, I remember that when we passed the paper through we took a lead pencil or a scriber and drew lines across the paper which we measured up to see how it was registering.

RDQ62. Do you remember whether or not there were any marks made on the paper by the machine itself, if so, what?

A. No other marks except that when we first tried it I remember that the tension on the lower feeding rollers was a little too strong, so that it

had a tendency to tear the paper and we subsequently weakened the spring.

RDQ63. Have you been paid anything for your affidavit or for this testimony, or have you been given any promises of any kind?

A. Not a cent so far. No promises.

Deposition closed.
Signature waived by consent.

770

HARRY C. LOHMAN, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Harry C. Lohman; 362 Weirfield Street, Brooklyn; 39; machinist.

Q2. You say you are a machinist, are you employed by some one or operating your own shop?

A. Operating my own shop.

Q3. When did you first see a moving picture camera?

A. At the Maltby Mfg. Company's shop.

Q4. What connection did you then have with the Maltby Mfg. Co.'s shop?

A. I was employed there as a tool maker and also a draftsman.

Q5. Where was the shop located?

A. 18 Columbia Heights, Brooklyn.

Q6. When did you enter the employ of the Maltby shop?

A. About the latter part of July or the fore part of August, 1894.

773

- Q7. What condition was this moving picture camera when you first saw it there?
 - A. They were just starting to build it.
- Q8. How long after you went to work there did they begin this work on the camera?
- A. About a month and a half or two months, I should judge.
- Q9. Who was the camera being made for, do you know?
 - A. A Mr. Chinnock, a Mr. Charles Chinnock.
- Q10. Who, if you recollect, was doing the work on the camera?
 - A. Charles Pearson.
- Q11. Do you recollect anything as to how it came that Pearson was put on the job?
 - A. He was hired for that purpose.
- Q12. How steadily was the work of building this camera carried on?
- A. They stayed to work on the camera until it was completed.
- Q13. During that time how much was Mr. Chinnock in the shop?
 - A. He was there all the time.
- Q14. What is your recollection as to how long was taken in the building of this camera?
 - A. About a month and a half or two months.
- Q15. What do you recollect as to any testing of the camera in the shop?
- A. They made tests there with rolls of paper, to test out the mechanism as I remember.
- Q16. Where were you working before you went to the Maltby shop?
 - A. William A. Force & Company.
- Q17. How long a time was there between your employment with Force and your employment with Maltby?

A. Not more than a day.

Q18. What was the nature of your work with the Force Co.?

A. Tool maker.

Q19. Do you remember what was done with this Chinnock camera after it was completed and tested?

A. It was taken to East New York to a man named John A. Milliken.

Q20. Who was he?

A. He did machine work of his with the Maltby Co. He hired shop room there.

Q21. Do you remember any other work done for Chinnock at the Maltby shop?

A. Only the kinetoscopes built afterwards, and I believe they made two other machines, two other cameras, I do not remember how many kinetoscopes they made, I think it was 3 or 6.

Q22. Did you work on any of these cameras or kinetoscopes yourself?

A. I do not remember whether I made any of the parts of the camera, but I did make some of the parts of kinetoscopes.

Q23. Please look at the apparatus on the desk here (Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera), and state whether or not you recognize it?

A. Yes. I recognize the machine.

Q24. What is it?

A. A camera for making pictures, making a series of pictures, a number of pictures per minute.

Q25. Have you seen this camera before? If so, state when you saw it.

A. Yes. I saw it in the course of construction and after it was completed at the Malthy shop.

Mr. Page: The testimony of this witness directed to showing the time of construc-

776

tion and other facts connected with the defendant's exhibit Chinnock Camera, is objected to as irrelevant and immaterial, and such objection will be continued to further testimony for the like purpose without repeating the objection on the record.

Q26. How did the different cameras made for Chinnock at the Maltby shop compare with each other, so far as you can recall?

A. They were all about the same.

779

Q27. Is the Defendant's Exhibit Chinnock Camera that you see before you complete with all the parts that you remember to have seen in the original camera?

A. No, there was a cover of some kind and there was a wheel in front of the lens.

Q28. Please examine the photograph I now show you and state whether you can recognize the same, and if so, what place it shows and what people there are in it that you can identify?

780

A. Frank D. Maltby is marked 1 in red ink. Henry Hollman 2, John A. Milliken 3, Jack Miller 4, and John Thomson 5, and Walter Blackburn 6, and Herbert Barnes 7, and Howard Edge 8. The figures 4 to 8 I have myself added.

The Witness was shown Defendant's Exhibit Photograph Maltby's Shop.

Q29. Do you recall anything as to the taking of this photograph?

A. I was there, but I am not in the picture.

Q30. How is it that you are not in the picture?

A. I was hiding.

Q31. When was this picture taken?

A. In 1894. I can't tell just exactly the month. Q32. Do you know how it is that Pearson is not shown in the picture?

A. Pearson was not there at that time.

Q33. You mean that he had not yet entered the employ of Maltby?

A. That is right.

Q34. Did you ever see any of the pictures taken with Chinnock's first camera?

A. I saw a film, a picture of a dancing girl. He promised me other pictures, but I never got them.

Q35. Do you remember when you first saw pictures taken on this machine?

A. I couldn't tell the time.

Q36. When did you first hear anything about the fact that the facts and dates of the Chinnock camera were being looked up?

A. Last Saturday, about four o'clock.

Q37. Since then, have you talked with anybody familiar with the matter except the representative sent from this office and myself?

A. No.

Q38. How long is it since you have talked to Chinnock or anyone connected with him, or anyone connected with the Maltby shop about the Chinnock camera?

A. Not in the last ten or twelve years.

Direct examination closed.

Cross Examination by Mr. Page, subject to objection:

XQ39. Did you examine the Chinnock camera when it was in the Maltby shop with sufficient care to enable you now to identify the specific parts of 782

this apparatus on the table as being present in the camera at that time?

A. I do not quite understand the question. examined the camera sufficient enough not to know its detailed parts, but to know that it is one of the cameras that was built at that time. Particularly the side plates I remember.

XQ40. This camera has a large pulley wheel mounted on one of the shafts. Was that on the camera when you saw it?

A. I don't think so. 785

XQ41. This instrument also has two small rolls pressed together by a spring at the upper part of the frame through which the film passes. Were those two rolls in the camera when you saw it in the Maltby shop?

A. That I can't recall.

XQ42. This instrument also has a bar carried by two arms which are held by spring pressure against the film between the take-up reel and the lower. feed rollers. Was that device in the camera when you saw it in the Maltby shop?

A. Yes, that was on it. 786

XQ43. When did you first see that device on the camera?

A. This device was the suggestion of a Mr. Hollman to Mr. Chinnock, I believe.

XQ44. That was put on some time after the camera was built, wasn't it?

A. It was one of the last things put on.

XQ45. This instrument on the table has a pair of feed rolls held together by spring pressure and of somewhat larger diameter than the upper feed Was this pair of larger feed rolls on the camera when you saw it in the Maltby shop?

A. The whole machine looks just about the same as it did then with the exception of a covering and wheel on the front of the machine, with the exception of the side wheel.

XQ46. Is it not a fact that the most you can say about this camera is that its general appearance is so similar to the camera which you saw in the Maltby shop that it is your present belief that this is the camera which was made by Pearson in the shops some time in the latter part of 1894?

A. It is.

Cross-examination closed.

788

Re-direct Examination:

RDQ47. Who was Mr. Hollman?

A. Mr. Hollman was a member of the firm of the Maltby Mfg. Co.

RDQ48. You say that this spring arm device at the lower part of the camera was, you believe, a suggestion of Mr. Hollman to Mr. Chinnock?

A. Mr. Hollman claims to have suggested that to him. I have always believed it that way.

RDQ49. That is, Mr. Hollman made the claim at the time you and he were in the shop together?

A. Yes. He blew about it as the fellows say.

789

Deposition closed.

Signature waived by consent.

ROBERT T. MOORE, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Robert T. Moore, 36 years old, lineman by occupation, Medina, N. Y. Q2. Have you ever seen a machine for taking photographs of moving objects?

A. Only the one I saw the day I was out there with James Lahey boxing.

Q3. Whose camera was that?

A. Mr. Chinnock's.

Q4. And where was it?

A. It was out in East New York where we went, out near Manhattan Crossing.

Q5. Why were you and James Lahey boxing that day?

791

792

A. Out in the open.

Q6. And why were you boxing?

A. In front of this machine, experimenting with it, I suppose.

Q7. Who was operating the machine while you and Lahey were boxing?

A. Mr. Chinnock.

Q8. That is Charles E. Chinnock?

A. Yes.

Q9. Who asked you to go there?

A. Mr. Chinnock.

Q10. Where were you working at that time?

A. At Zipp's Casino, Elm Place, Brooklyn, next to the Grand Opera House.

Q11. Did you ever see the pictures afterwards that were taken on that day?

A. I saw them after he had developed them.

Q12. What did they look like, these pictures?

A. They looked like a photograph, only they were moving when he had them in the box of some kind.

Q13. Did you see them before they were put in the box and after they were developed?

A. I seen him develop some of them.

Q14. What did they look like?

A. They look like long strips. He had them in a pan, a pan of liquid.

Q15. Where did you see them developed?

A. In his house, 157 Sixth Avenue, Brooklyn, top floor.

Q16. When was it that these pictures of you and Lahey boxing were taken?

A. About the middle of November in 1894.

Q17. How do you fix this date?

A. I remember because I was working in the Casino that winter.

Q18. When did you stop working in the Casino?

A. I should judge it was between Christmas and New Years, '94, when I went away.

Q19. Where did you go when you left the Casino?

A. I went to Buffalo first.

Q20. How long did you stay away from Brooklyn?

A. Nine years that time.

Q21. How positively do you recollect that you left the Casino before New Year's, '95?

A. I know that I went away, to Buffalo that winter.

Q22. While you were still at Zipp's Casino, did you do anything to assist Mr. Chinnock's work in this line?

A. I tried to get the Claffin Sisters for him at one time. I never did any work for him.

Q23. Were the Claffin Sisters at the Casino at that time?

A. They used to dance there regularly, not what you would call steady, they danced there three or four times a season.

Q24. And do you mean that you tried to get them to dance before Mr. Chinnock's camera for him?

794

A. I told him I could get them. A man that was advertising agent there said that he could get them for him.

Q25. What do you remember about the appearance of the camera with which Chinnock took pictures of yourself and Lahey?

A. That machine there looks like the machine. It seems to me there was a big disk or something in front of it that kept going around. (Witness points to Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera.)

797

798

Mr. Page: Deposition objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

Cross examination waived.

Adjourned to May 12th, 1911, at 11 A. M.

Signature waived by consent.

New York, N. Y., May 12th, 1911, 11 A. M.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present: Counsel as before.

HERBERT C. BARNES, a witness called on behalf of the defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Herbert C. Barnes; 33; Ardmore, Pennsylvania; head tool designer of the Standard Roller Bearing Co., of Philadelphia.

Q2. Have you ever been acquainted with one Frank D. Maltby?

A. Yes, sir.

- Q3. You worked for him?
- A. I did.
- Q4. When was that?
- A. From the summer of 1893 until some time in the summer of 1895.
- Q5. Will you please state how you fix these dates in your mind?
- A. I know that I began in 1893 because I left the Brooklyn Polytechnic Institute in June of that year, and I continued in the employ of Mr. Maltby a little more than two years.
- Q6. How immediately after leaving the school did you go into this shop?
 - A. On the following Monday.
- Q7. What generally was the character of your work with Maltby?
- A. Such work as would ordinarily be assigned to a youth in a small machine shop, doing simple operations on the machine, and errand work.
- Q8. While you were at that shop did you see anything done in the way of moving-picture apparatus?
 - A. I did.
- Q9. What was the first work that you recall seeing done in that line?
- A. Mr. Maltry gave me a brass casting which he instructed me to plane on both sides. I did this work according to his instructions.
 - Q10. What vas this easting for?
- A. It was for a side frame for a camera for one Mr. Chinnock.
- Q11. Do you recall who else was working on that camera?
- A. I remember that soon after this one Charles Pearson did a considerable amount of work on the camera.
- Q12. How closely can you fix the date when you did this planing work on the casting?

800

- A. It was some time in the latter part of the summer or fall of 1894.
 - Q13. Did you see this camera completed?
- A. I saw it so far completed that pictures were taken with it.
- · Q14. Do you mean that you saw the pictures being taken?
- A, No. I saw pictures which I was told were taken with the camera and which I have every reason to believe were taken with the camera.

803

- Q15. At the time you saw these pictures was the camera in the Maltby shop or had it been taken away?
 - A. It had been taken away.
- Q16. Will you please state as near as you can when you saw these pictures?
- A. It was before cold weather of the winter of 1894.
- Q17. Will you please describe what you remember of the appearance of the pictures and the paper or film on which they were?

A. They were on a film of paper in a single roll on a strip possibly twelve inches or more long.

804 The figure in the picture was that of a dancing girl or woman.

Q18. Did you ever see any of the pictures exhibited in any way, if so, how?

- A. I am unable to state positively that the pictures which I saw in a kinetoscope were actually taken with the Chinnock camera.
- Q19. Whose kinetoscope was it that you saw pictures in?
- A. My recollection of the kinetoscope is one which I saw at the Eden Musee in New York.
- Q20. Will you please look at the apparatus on the desk (Defendant's Exhibit Chinnock Camera)

and state whether there is anything about this that you can identify, and if so, what it is?

A. I remember very clearly the shape of the two side frames and the general position of the paper on the roll. I remember this front spacing member at the top which connects the two frames. am quite certain that I remember these two bevel gears which were obtained by Mr. Maltby in New York, and submitted to Mr. Chinnock for his approval. I temember seeing the mechanics at work on the machine in their efforts to protect the action of the rolls in controlling the movement of the paper. I remember that for a time the paper prior to the perfection of the mechanism was under limited control until a device was appended to give it a more regular motion. This refers to the action of the paper after the photographic action had taken place.

Q21. When you speak of the photographic action taking place, do you mean that any photographic action had actually taken place in the Maltby shop, or are you simply referring to the point where it was expected to take place?

A. I referred to the continued action of the machine in its performance of its several functions, the photographic action meaning the operation of those parts which produce the impression on the film. This part of the operation occurred during the passage of the film from the roll on which it was placed in the machine to the roll on which it was wound before it was taken from the machine.

Q22. Did you ever see the machine until to-day after the time that it was taken away from the Malthy shop before the cold weather of '94 and '95?

A. No.

806

Q23. Do you remember any part or parts on the original machine that are not now on the exhibit?

A. I remember two disks of thin steel or other thin metal which were adjusted in some fashion to regulate the amount of light which reached the lens while the instrument was in use.

Q24. Was the lens on the machine when it was at the shop, do you remember?

A. I do not clearly remember having seen the lens on the machine.

809

Q25. Do you remember any other work being done for Chinnock in relation to this art besides this particular camera?

A I remember that the Maltby Mfg. Co. made for Mr. Chinnock several machines to exhibit the moving pictures which were taken with the camera, these machines I believe Mr. Chinnock called kinetoscopes.

Q26. Do you remember whether or not there were any other cameras like this made?

A. I believe that there were, I cannot state definitely how many.

810

Q27. You have referred to planing a casting for this work; is the casting in question on the exhibit?

A. This smaller of the two side frames is entirely similar to the one which I planed.

Q27½. How much was Mr. Chinnock around the shop when making the first camera?

A. He spent much of his time there, as I remember.

Q28. I hand you a photograph, Defendant's Exhibit Photograph Maltby's Shop, and ask you what you can recognize as to the shop therein shown, and also to identify any of the persons shown therein by number, if you can do so?

A. The photograph which you handed me is a photograph of the machine shop of the Maltby Mfg. Co., 18 Columbia Heights, Brooklyn, as it was at that time. I identify positively Fig. No. 1 as Frank Maltby, No. 2 as William A. Hollman, No. 3 as John Milliken, No. 4 as Jack Miller. I am unable to give the name of No. 5. No. 6 commonly known as Walter Blackburn, although I believe his name to have been something like Walter Blackbrough. No. 7 as myself, No. 8 as Howard Edge. The man whom I now mark in red ink, No. 9, as Clarence Graves, and the man whom I now mark with red ink No. 10 as Curtis Adams.

812

Q29. Do you remember the names of any other men that worked in that shop during any part of the period from the summer of '94 to the summer of '95, and if so, please state their names?

A. I remember Charles Pearson, who for a part of that time was the foreman of the machine shop, and Harry Lohman, who was a skilled mechanic.

Q30. How about a man by the name of William Edge? Do you remember him?

A. I do.

Q31. Was he working there at that time?

813

A. He was.

Q32. Do you remember any one by the name of Thompson?

A. George Thompson, I do.

Q33. Would you say that No. 5 might be George Thompson?

A. I do not recognize No. 5 as being Thompson.

Q34. When did you first hear that this Chinnock camera was a matter of interest in any litigation or controversy?

A. At some time within the last ten days.

Q35. You heard of this through a representative

of our office who called on you at Philadelphia at your place of business, is that correct?

A. That is correct.

Q36. Outside of his interview with you and your interview with me this morning, whom have you communicated with who is in any way interested in the controversy or who was in any way connected with your work?

A. I have communicated with no one.

815

Direct examination closed.

Mr. Page: The entire deposition is objected to as irrelevant and immaterial to any of the issues in controversy in this suit.

Cross Examination subject to objection:

XQ37. You have said that you have reason to believe that the pictures that you saw of the dancing girl were taken on the camera for which you planed the side plate. What were your reasons for this belief?

816

A. The fact that the pictures were brought into the machine shop by persons interested in the camera at a time when it would have been entirely possible for them to have been taken with the camera, the fact that I was told that they were taken with the camera and the further fact that all the persons who were engaged in making the camera displayed a keen interest in the pictures and that all apparently believed that the pictures had been taken with the Chinnock camera.

Mr. Page: In view of the witness's answer his testimony with regard to the taking the pictures by the Chinnock camera-is ob-

jected to as hearsay in addition to the objections heretofore made.

Mr. Eyre: Counsel for complainant evidently understands the purpose of the testimony, which is taken to show date of completion of the camera which the witness recalls was a time prior to the date when he saw the pictures.

Mr. Page: Notwithstanding the remarks of counsel for defendant the objection is adhered to.

816

XQ38. At what date in the year 1894 did cold weather begin?

A. I do not know.

Cross examination closed. Deposition closed.

Signature waived by consent.

WILLIAM EDGE, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

- Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?
- A. William Edge, 49; occupation at the present time manufacturing machinery; 34 North 11th Street, Newark, N. J.
 - Q2. You are proprietor of your own shop?
 - A. Yes.
- Q3. Were you ever employed with the Maltby Mfg. Co., if so, when?
 - A. I was. From some time in '93 to '97.

- Q4. While you were working with the Maltby Mfg. Co. was any work being done in that shop relating to moving pictures apparatus that you can recall?
 - A. There was.
 - Q5. Who was that work being done for?
 - A. Mr. Chinnock.
- Q6. Who was doing the actual work on the camera, as far as you can remember?
- A. I can remember Mr. Pearson, Mr. Korbel and Herbert Barnes.
- 821 Q7. Who was doing most of that work?
 - A. I think that Pearson practically had charge of it.
 - Q8. Can you fix the time when this work was done?
 - A. It was some time in '94, I don't know just what part of the year now.
 - Q9. Do you remember who were the proprietors of the shop at the time this work was done?
 - A. I think Mr. Maltby and Mr. Hollman were partners at that time.
 - Q10. Was Pearson employed there when you first went to work with the Maltby shop?
 - A. No; nearly a year later before Pearson came there.
 - Q11. Do you remember what the first work was that Mr. Pearson did when he came to the shop?
 - A. His first work was on the picture machine.
 - Q12. That is, this work for Chinnock?
 - A. Yes.

- Q13. How continuously did Pearson work on this machine?
- A. He was on it, I think, all the time until it was finished.
- Q14. How much was Mr. Chinnock there while this work was going on?

A. He was there every day.

Q15. How long did they take to complete the machine?

A. It must have been close on to two months.

Q16. Please examine the apparatus, Defendant's Exhibit Chinnock Camera, on the table before you and state what, if anything, you can say as to what this apparatus is?

A. Why, I recognize the shaft on which the shutter was screwed and I remember distinctly the movement of the paper there and the breaking of the paper during the first experiments.

Q17. How does the general appearance of this apparatus compare with your recollection of the appearance of the first Chinnock camera?

A. Exactly my recollection of it.

Q18. You have spoken of some tests with paper. Did you see these tests made?

A. Yes, I stood behind them and watched them running the paper and noticed that they had considerable difficulty with the breaking of the paper. As I remember it, they tried first with rolls of paper before they tried it with the film.

Q19. You have spoken of recognizing the shaft on which the shutter was screwed. What, if anything, do you recall as to the shutter that was on that shaft?

A. I only recall that it was a tin shutter about 12 or 14 inches in diameter.

Q20. What is it that you remember about the movement of the paper?

A. I remember the loop more distinctly than anything else. The loop formed up there just before the movement that stopped the pictures.

Q21. That is, you mean between this upper reel and the clamp?

824

A. Yes.

Q22. Just what do you mean by saying the movement that stopped the pictures?

A. The device that stopped the film the pictures being taken,

. Q23. Do you remember whether there was any other moving picture work done for Chinnock besides this?

A. Yes, there were two other machines finished after this.

827

Q24. Were there any machines made for showing pictures?

A. Yes, there were a number of kinetoscopes made; I don't recall just how many, 20 or 25, something like that.

Q25. Was the work on the other cameras and on the kinetoscope begun before or after the first camera was completed and taken from the shop? A. After.

Q26. Will you please examine the photograph I now hand you, Defendant's Exhibit, Photograph Maltby's Shop, and state whether you can recognize the room shown therein and also identify by number any of the persons shown therein that you can recognize?

828

A. I recognize the room. This was the shop of Maltby and Hollman at that time. I recognize No. 2, 3 and 4, 5, 6, 7 and No. 1, No. 9, No. 8.

Q27. Please state who these persons are, beginning with No. 1.

A. No. 1, Mr. Maltby; No. 2 is Mr. Hollman; No. 3 is Mr. Milliken; No. 4, Mr. Miller; No. 5 is Mr. Thompson; No. 6 is Mr. Blackburn, No. 7 is Herbert Barnes, No. 8 is Howard Edge and No. 9 I don't remember his name. No. 10 I can't place.

Q28. Do you remember a thing about taking this photograph?

A. No, I don't remember.

Q29. Do you know, however, whether you were working with Maltby at the time this was taken?

A. Yes, I was there at that time.

Q30. Where was the Maltby shop at the time that this Chinnock camera was made?

A. It was on the corner of Furman St. and Columbia Heights, Brooklyn.

Q31. After that did Maltby move his shop, and if so, about when and to what place?

A. He moved to 17 Vandewater Street, New York. I think it was late in '95.

Q32. What is your recollection as to the length of time before the shop was moved that this first Chinnock camera was completed?

A. It was just about a year, I think.

Q33. Have you talked to anybody familiar with the Chinnock camera except myself and a representative that we sent you recently?

A. No.

Direct examination closed.

Mr. Page: The deposition is objected to as being irrelevant and immaterial to any of the issues of this case and as purely cumulative testimony in regard to irrevelant and immaterial matters.

Mr. Eyre: The suggestion that the testimony is cumulative in its character is substantially correct. The burden of proof is upon the defendant, and such depositions as the present will not be continued after complainant's counsel is willing to admit, if he should become willing to make such an

830

.31

833

admission, that the Chinnock camera, as already testified to by the witnesses, was completed and taking pictures not later than the end of 1894. Otherwise it is the intention to take sufficient testimony to make this in lubitably proven.

Mr. Fage: I think that defendant's counsel is, or should be, best advised as to how to conduct his case. I do not see, however, that if he pursues an objectionable course in doing so that this places complainant's counsel under any obligation to admit any facts which defendant's counsel desires to prove.

Mr. Eyre: I do not mean to suggest any obligation on the part of complainant's counsel to make any admissions whatsoever, but on matters occurring 17 years ago, cumulative evidence is reasonable and it is reasonable to suppose that when the objection is made that evidence is cumulative it implies that proofs have been sufficient to establish the fact and therefore that an admission would simply save time and expense to both sides.

834

Cross Examination, subject to objection:

XQ34. Do you remember when the first tests were made with this machine with the paper strip that it was difficult to prevent the paper from breaking?

A. I do.

Cross-examination closed.

Deposition closed.

Signature waived by consent.

Adjourned to May 15, 1911, at 11 A. M.

New York, N. Y., May 15th, 1911, 11 A. M.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present: Counsel as before.

JAMES W. LAHEY, a witness called on behalf of the defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. James W. Lahey; 52; 790 President Street, Brooklyn: I am connected with the Federation of Churches as the expert census taker.

Q2. You know Charles E. Chinnock?

A. Yes, sir.

Q3. Were you ever connected with him in a moving picture business?

A. Yes, sir.

Q4. What was your first connection with him in that business?

A. In taking photographs of a boxing match.

Q5. What did you have to do with that?

A. I was one of the boxers.

Q6. Who was the other?

A. Mr. Moore, Charles T. Moore, I believe.

Q7. Where was it that these pictures were taken?

A. In East New York. It was Crescent St. Station, Kings Co. elevated road, and then we walked several blocks, I don't know what street it was. was in an old unoccupied house that we had rented for that purpose, of testing the machine.

Q8. Who took the pictures of you and Moore boxing?

836

839

840

A. Mr. Charles E. Chinnock.

Q9. Where were you and Moore and where was Chinnock and the camera?

A. Mr. Chinnock was inside of the house, inside of the window, and Moore and I were out in the open about 10 feet or so from the camera.

Q10. When did this occur?

A. That was in the fall of '94.

Q11. Where had you been in the summer of 1894?

A. In Convent, N. J.

Q12. When did you return from Convent?

A. About the 1st of October.

Q13. How long after that was it that the boxing bout was photographed?

A. Probably a month or six weeks after it. It might have been the latter part of November or in December.

Q14. Did you spend any other summers at Convent?

A. No, sir.

Q15. What do you know about the developing of the pictures of the boxing bout?

A. I was with Mr. Chinnock when they were developed. They were developed at his residence at 167 Sixth Ave.; we had a rear room on the top floor, and from that rear room there were two small rooms or a passage; they had a sink in each one and a closet in the back, a wardrobe.

Q16. What, if anything, did he do with the film before developing it?

A. It was cut in strips.

Q17. Will you please explain that a little more clearly?

A. The film was in a continuous length and before we developed it we cut it in strips, say about 12 or 13 inches long, in order to develop it in the pans that we had. As we cut it each one was numbered with a sharp instrument so that we would know just where it belonged.

Q18. Did he cut the film crosswise and lengthwise or only crosswise?

A. It was crosswise.

Q19. About how wide was the film?

A. About probably an inch and a half, it might be only an inch and a quarter.

Q20. What sort of results were obtained?

A. They were good pictures.

Q21. How soon did you see those pictures?

A. I saw them right after they were developed, before we left the room. I held them up to the light.

Q22. And how soon was this after the pictures were taken?

A. The very same day, the very same night. They were developed that evening.

Q23. Do you remember anything about Mr. Chinnock's showing the pictures to others?

A. After we printed them, yes. We showed them to numerous people. Every one that had been to his house. And we had the pictures at the Christmas gathering he had at the house that year. And every one saw the pictures and commented on the different pictures of Mr. Moore and myself.

Q24. That is, the Christmas holidays of '94, you are referring to?

A. The Christmas of '94, yes.

Q25. What was done with the camera afterwards, if you recall?

A. After we used it at this house it was taken either to Mr. Chinnock's house, or down to the Maltby shop. I think it was taken to Mr. Chinnock's house. We only hired that house just to

842

try it there. We had no idea of using it continually.

But I don't remember taking that machine to Mr. Chinnock's house from that shanty. It might have been taken by somebody else, but I don't remember taking it myself.

Q26. Did you ever see the same camera after it was taking pictures?

A. Yes.

Q27. Where was that?

845

A. In the St. Marks Avenue shop that we hired there near Rockaway Avenue, in the rear of a little house. I have forgotten the number.

Q28. Do you remember when you hired this house?

A. I don't recollect the exact date. I don't know whether it was in January, I think possibly it was in January; it might have been in the latter part of December. I can't recollect positively.

Q29. That is January, 1895, or the latter part of December, '94?

A. Yes, sir.

846

Q30. How was this St. Marks Avenue place fitted up?

A. There was a skylight in the roof. It was only a one-story building. We had a carpenter remove the skylight and build a pair of stairs from the floor of the shop to the roof, and had the skylight arranged so that it could run on rollers so that we could just push it over. And then we had a fence built around the roof to afford us privacy in taking pictures, and a platform for the subject which we wanted to take, and right across from the platform we had a small house built. It was light-proof and we put the machine in there. We put the film on there and after the pictures were taken, took it off

and we moved it downstairs to a dark room which we had built in one corner of the shop with several porcelain sinks for the different solutions, baths and running water, and so on. And there is where we developed the pictures.

Q31. How soon after you rented this St. Marks Avenue studio did you begin taking pictures there?

A. We began right away, as soon as we had it fitted up. There were plumbers there and we had the dark room built and the platform and the background on the roof and we had to have a cover for the back-ground, a large piece of cloth that was sewed together, and hooks to hang it up.

Q32. About how long was it that it took to fit this up?

A. Probably two weeks.

Q33. Do you remember anything as to the first large quantity of film that Chinnock obtained?

A. I don't remember the date. But he told me that he had ordered immediately after the trial some film, a lot of it.

Q34. Do you remember whether the first lot of film, that is, substantial quantity, was received before or after you got into the St. Marks Avenue place?

A. I think it was received after we got into the St. Marks Avenue place, but it was received before we were ready to take the pictures.

Q35. How soon after you received that quantity of film did you begin taking pictures with it?

A. Just as soon as the things were in readiness on the roof. I couldn't tell just exactly how long.

Q36. Did you ever see the pictures of your boxing bout with Moore shown in a machine to show life in motion?

A. Yes, sir.

848

Q37. What sort of a machine was that?

A. We called it a kinetoscope.

Q38. When did you first see these pictures in a kinetoscope?

A. Early in '95. As soon as we had the machine built. I saw the picture on a crude machine that we built ourselves at Mr. Chinnock's house, that is, a drum, we were experimenting for a long time to get the size of a drum that was best to use to put the pictures on.

851

Q39. Did you see these pictures on a crude machine before or after you went to the St. Marks Avenue studio?

A. Before; long before.

Q40. When did you first have a completed kinetoscope at the St. Marks Avenue shop?

A. We had a completed kinetoscope some time before we put them on exhibition outside of the shop. We had one machine complete in the shop some time before they were put on exhibition, as there was delay in waiting for cases for the machines, and of course we did not care to put the machines on exhibition until we had them covered.

S52

Q41. When did you get these kinetoscopes our on exhibition?

A. In '95, in the summer of '95. We had some at Carnarsie, and we had one at Val Smith's hotel in Brooklyn. The first was at Carnarsie. Carnarsie Park they called it then.

Q42. What subjects do you recall as being photographed at St. Marks Avenue before you put out any of these kinetoscopes on exhibition?

A. There were the Clafflin Sisters. We took them in two or three different dances, single and double, and there was a boxing bout of McDermot and somebody else, I can't recall his name. There was

a dancer there, May Jewell, and there was Ruth St. Dennis, and shortly after opening at Carnarsie we had the coochee coochee dance. I don't remember the names of the performers.

Q43. How much time did it take after you had taken the subject and developed it before you could get the positives properly fixed in the kinetoscope?

A. They had to be printed, after developing, and then mounted on this strip of prepared paper that we had. I presume that it would take two days, if we had the right kind of weather.

Q44. What do you remember about the construction and operation of the camera that took the various pictures you have referred to?

A. I was only occasionally in Maltby's shop, but I remember seeing Mr. Chinnock have the drawings of it at home and every day he was down at Maltby's shop for a long while, but I had no business that took me down there, and therefore very seldom visited there.

Q45. What I meant to ask was what do you recall about the mechanical parts of the camera and its appearance and the way it fed the film?

A. As I recollect it, it of course had the film running through the different rollers, and after each picture was taken there would be a slack or a buckle or loose part of the film there. It would not be drawn tight. After each picture the film was loose. And I recollect asking Mr. Chinnock why that was, and he said to be ready for the next picture.

Q46. When Mr. Chinnock was taking pictures with this camera what, if anything, did he do while the pictures were being taken?

A. He turned the crank that worked the film.

Q47. Please examine the mechanism on the desk before you, Defendant's Exhibit Chinnock Camera, 854

and state what you can say as to whether or not you have seen this before.

A. Yes, I have seen it before, dozens of times.

Q48. What is it?

A. A picture machine, a machine for taking pictures.

Q49. And where have you seen it before?

A. I seen it in that house where we took the first pictures, I seen it in Mr. Chinnock's house, I seen it in Maltby's shop, I seen it in St. Marks Avenue shop.

857

Q50. In other words you recognize it as the camera about which you are now testifying?

A. Yes, sir. I seen it also in Mr. Chinnock's cellar.

Q51. When was that?

A. I saw it there after Mr. Chinnock went out of the business.

I had occasion to go down there to look for a trunk that I was going to get for my sister, to borrow for her.

Q52. How long ago is that?

A. About two years ago.

858

Q53. When did Mr. Chinnock go out of business?

A. I can't remember exactly. About 10 years ago. I wouldn't be positive about that. I was

ago. I wouldn't be positive about that. I was with him nearly all the time; it is more than 10 years.

Q54. Think it over and see if you can place when you left there?

A. About 15 years ago.

Q55. About 1896?

A. Yes.

O56. At the time you took part in the boxing bout with Moore, do you remember any policeman present?

A. After we had taken the picture, I remember a

policeman coming in and asking—he wanted to see what we were doing there, and in speaking to some neighbor, some woman, she said that he thought that we were coiners. I asked her what they meant by the word coiner, and she said counterfeiter, so I presume he came in to investigate; that was what brought him in there.

Q57. I hand you a small book and ask you whether or not you are able to identify it.

A. This is a receipt book that I used in making the collections from the different stores where we had machines, kinetoscopes, placed. That was worked on a commission basis, and I, making the collection, would make out the receipt. Here is one here: Val Schmidt, \$3.70, is the commission on \$12.25; we gave him 30%, the total amount of the machine. I would get some of the parties in the store to sign the receipt. All these are receipts that I can state in my writing except the signatures. Of course this is only one book that Mr. Chinnock happened to save out of the collections that I used to make. These are all in my writing, except the signatures, of course.

The book shown the witness is Defendant's Exhibit North American Kinetoscope Company Receipt Book.

Q58. At what dates did you fill out these receipts?

A. The first one November 25th, 1895. December 2nd. They were all filled out at the dates shown on the receipts.

Q59. Was this the first receipt book that you used in this work?

A. I don't think so. That was only one of many. I would have a new book every time that I collected

860

863

from the machine and would turn in the receipts with the book. Take a new book every time I went around.

Q60. How long was it before Mr. Chinnock used any other camera than this particular one in his business?

A. It was a long while. He built three more machines. It was a good time while the other three machines were being built.

Q61. Do you remember what these other machines were being built for?

A. Yes. He disposed of two of them, I believe, to be shipped abroad.

Q62. I hand you a paper, Defendant's Exhibit, Agreement between Chinnock and Hough and Werner, and ask you whether or not it is your signature attached thereto as a witness?

A. Yes, sir; it is.

Q63. Do you know Frank R. Chinnock?

A. Yes, sir.

Q64. Do you remember whether he had anything to do with the kinetoscope business that you have been referring to?

864

A. Yes, sir.

Q65. When did he begin to have anything to do with it?

A. I don't remember it. It was not until after the business was fairly started.

Q66. Do you know where any pictures taken with this original Chinnock camera can be found?

A. I do not. I tried to locate some and found out that after we had left the shop or studio that the old place was cleaned out and made a bonfire of everything that was left there by the neighbors that lived in front of it. I found that out recently. Of course, there were thousands of pieces of film

there that we left after us and never expected to use again; I mean of the used pictures.

Direct examination closed.

Mr. Page: Deposition objected to as irrelevant and immaterial with respect to any question involved in this cause.

Cross-examination waived.

Signature waived by consent.

It is stipulated and agreed between counsel that Charles W. Congdon, if called as a witness herein would testify that in the spring of 1895 he bought the interest of William A. Hollman in the business of the Maltby Mfg. Co., a machine shop located at 18 Columbia Heights, Brooklyn, N. Y.; that some time thereafter the company was incorporated to continue the business and that still later the business was abandoned; that for many years he retained possession of all the books and records of the Maltby Mfg. Co., including the books and record relating to the years 1894 and 1895; that he recently at the request of a representative of Messrs. Kenyon & Kenyon made a careful search of the old books and papers, but could not find any old book or records relating to the business of the Maltby Mfg. Co.; that about a year or so ago he was overhauling his old books and papers and destroyed such of them as he deemed of no value, and that he believed that all the Maltby Mfg. Co.'s books and papers were destroyed at that time.

It is agreed that the foregoing stipulation may have the same force and effect as if the said ('ongdon had been duly called, sworn 866

and examined on behalf of the defendant herein.

Mr. Page: The testimony is objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

WILLIAM A. HOLLMAN, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

869

- Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?
- A. William A. Hollman; 67 last October; 65 Lafayette Street, Brooklyn, N. Y.; electrical machinist, New York Navy Yard.
- Q2. Were you ever in business with one Frank D. Maltby?
- A. I was from the fore part of June, '93, until the latter part of March, 1895.
- Q3. Have you anything that aids your recollection as to the time when you were no longer in business with him?

- A. It was the last part of March, 1895, or the fore part of April, 1895. Yes. I have got a bank book here that shows the deposit I made within a day or two of the separation of our partnership, liquidation, I might call it.
- Q4. Whom did you receive the money from for the deposit in question?
- A. Whether it was Mr. Congdon, my successor, or a broker, either one of the two I received the check for my interest in my business.
- Q5. That is you were bought out by Mr. Congdon and received a check from him or his agent?
 - A. That is it. I did.

Q6. Will you read from your deposit-book what this entry is that you refer to?

A. January, 1894, a balance of \$59.76; Feb. 29, '94, \$36; deposit March 14th, 1894, \$18; May 17, 1894, \$36; June 30, 1894, \$30; Sept. 6th, same year, \$30 Dec. 4, 1894, \$25; Feb. 12th, that must have been '95, \$20; balance left Feb. 13th, 1895, \$43.70; March 30th of '95, \$416.25; May 15th, 1895, \$46; Oct. 30th, '95, balance, \$54.63; Nov. 6th, the same year, \$24; Dec. 12, 1895, \$40; Dec. 18, 1895, \$45; Jan., '96, \$50; Feb. 13, '96, \$69; April 17, \$10. I won't read any further.

Q7. Which of these entries that you have read is the one that relates to your sale to Congdon?

A. March 30th, 1895, \$416.25. I am sure of that. I never had that much money in a year or two.

It is stipulated that the bank book produced by the witness is a deposit book of the Manufacturers' Bank of Brooklyn, showing the account with "W. A. Hollman" and that the witness has correctly read the various entries in the book that appear between the dates referred to in his answer, and that this stipulation may be taken with the same force and effect as if the deposit book itself were offered in evidence.

Q8. After you sold out your interests in the Maltby business to Mr. Congdon, did you have anything further to do with the Maltby shop?

A. I did not.

Q9. While you were connected with the Maltby shop was anything being done there in connection with a moving picture machine?

872

A. There was because it was not finished when I left there.

Q10. What was being done while you were there?

A. They were about finishing the machine as I remember now.

Q11. Was there one machine or more?

A. One is all that I know as being built at that time. Why I am so positive is that after it was finished he asked me as well as my wife to come up to see it operated at his house at Sixth Avenue where he lived at that time, and called it my machine on account of the extension that I put on, or suggested to him on the paper film, more of a joke than anything else.

Q12. When was it that you suggested to him putting the tension on the film?

A. It must have been the early part of '95 before I left, before I sold out, because I don't remember doing anything after that.

Q13. While you were still at the shop, were there any tests made with the machine?

A. I think there was, but I won't be positive. In fact he showed me some difficulty he had in the breaking of the film, and that's why I suggested the releasing the tension of the paper film from the supply roll, can't call it anything else, to the receiving roll-running so fast, you see, it was liable to snap especially as the delivering roll was large, any one knows that paper is quite solid and heavy when it is rolled up close on a spool, hence it bothered him in manipulating the machine without breaking once in a while, which annoyed him very much-and he came into the office very downhearted after consulting with my partner, Mr. Maltby, and not getting any relief to overcome the breaking he appealed to me, saying, "Mr. Hollman, what do you know about this?" I thought he was joking

876

and answered him, "Not much," as I did not know what he really meant. After explaining to me what his troubles were, I suggested the relieving spring; after trying it, it seemed to raise his ideas wonderfully and thanked me for it.

Q14. Who have you been referring to?

A. Mr. Chinnock, as he was the party in trouble, trying to get the machine to work. If I could remember the date of the invitation that he extended to Mrs. Hollman and myself to see the machine work, which could not have been very long after my selling interest in the Maltby Machine Co., but to tell any sane man as simple as it was it was valuable in that place.

878

Q15. Do you remember the machine itself well enough to identify it?

A. I am afraid not at present. The reason is that after selling out the strain having been put on me as the financial end of the partnership was so great, that when I was released from that I went into brain fever inside of three or four months which has hurt my capacity for recollection very much.

879

Q16. Outside of that one suggestion, what did you have to do with the constructing of that machine?

A. As far as I can remember is to look after the financial part of it, the mechanical part of it is the relieving spring, as I said before, that is about all, as Mr. Maltby had the entire supervision of the manufacturing part of it.

Q17. Will you look at the machine now on the table and see if there is anything about this machine, Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera, that you recognize?

A. Nothing only the supply and receiving rolls

and the relieving device, so far as I remember now, relieving the tension of the paper as it is rolled from one spool to the other.

Q18. The relieving spring you refer to is the one which you are now handling?

A. Yes, sir. It was I suggested it to him.

Witness refers to the spring arm near the bottom of the machine bearing on the film.

Q19. How frequently did Mr. Chinnock come to the shop while the camera was being constructed?

A. I should say every day, steady as clock work. Q20. When you went to see the pictures with Mrs. Hollman, how were the pictures shown to you?

A. Through a machine, a glass on top of the machine, in a regular case, so that we saw them as they were delivered from the printing machine.

Q21. As you looked through the glass did you see the appearance of moving objects in the pictures?

A. I did, but being interested mostly in the suggestion that I gave him I watched that more than anything else. Mrs. Hollman was interested in what she saw on the paper, the pictures, more than I was. I wasn't interested in the picture part. I could not tell you now what the pictures were, but my eyes were on the film to see that it did not break, that is all.

Q22. It has been testified to that Chinnock had two kinds of machines, one to take the pictures and another to show them. Are you sure that the machine you saw at his house to show them was not a different machine from what the taking machine was?

A. I don't remember.

Q23. The fact is that beyond your recollection that Chinnock was having a moving picture machine made while you and Maltby were together and that you suggested the relieving spring for that machine, your memory about the machine is not very clear; is that correct?

A. Outside of that, no.

Direct examination closed.

Mr. Page: Entire deposition objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

Cross-examination waived.

884

Signature waived by consent.

ALVAH L. CHINNOCK, a witness called on behalf of the defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

885

A. Alvah L. Chinnock; 157 Sixth Avenue, Brooklyn, N. Y.; sales nan, L. Hecht & Co., Fifth Avenue Building, New York City; age, 35.

Q2. What was your first knowledge of the producing of what are now known as motion pictures?

A. In the summer of 1894.

Q3. What did you learn about it that summer?

A. I was spending the summer at Madison, N. J., with my family, which included my father. At that time he was working on drawings which he told me were for the purpose of producing a machine or a camera which would take pictures at a great number a second. I was with my father every day and

can positively say that I saw him working on these drawings during July and August of that summer.

Q4. Did you spend any other summer at Madison except the summer of '94'

A. No, sir.

Q5. How do you fix this as the summer of '94?

A. I attended college at the Polytechnic Institute at Brooklyn. I did not finish my course at the Polytechnic and left in the spring of 1894. After leaving college I was associated with my father prior to the time of our going to Madison, which was some time in the latter part of June, to the best of my recollection. Naturally, a man can place a date very readily where it concerns his leaving college as it would naturally be impressed on his memory.

Q6. When did you return from Madison to Brooklyn?

A. Some time in the early part of September, possibly in the middle of September, not later than September, 1894.

Q7. What was the next thing you knew or heard about this camera after you returned to Madison?

A. My father told me that he had made arrangements to have the camera made. I know that almost every day, in fact, every day, he was in touch with the Maltby Manufacturing Company, whom my father told me was making his camera for him.

Q8. Did you see the camera completed?

A. Yes, sir.

Q9. When did you see it completed?

A. The camera was not at the house at that time and I saw the pictures which were taken by the camera some time during December, 1894—at any rate, positively before Christmas of the same year.

887

Q10. What, if you remember, was the subject of those pictures?

A. The first picture that I had ever seen taken with my father's camera was a so-called boxing bout between two amateurs, James W. Lahey and Robert T. Moore.

Q11. What did these pictures look like?

A. They showed the boxing bout in motion and was natural in the movements. They had the impression of life and of what are known as moving pictures of to-day.

Q12. How did you look at the pictures in order to see them give the impression of life motion?

A. My father had arranged what would be known now as a kinetoscope on the third floor of our house, had it covered over and had arranged a peep-hole at the top. The machine was turned and when the machine was turned it showed the result which I mentioned in my former answer.

Q13. Did you see any of these pictures before they were put into this kinetoscope?

A. Yes, sir.

Q14. What was their general appearance then?

A. As I remember them I should say they were a little more than an inch square. My father had printed them in strips I should say anywhere from a foot to a foot and a half long. These pictures had been developed and printed at my home, 167 Sixth Avenue, Brooklyn, on the third floor.

Q15. How do you fix it as positively prior to Christmas of '94 that you saw these Lahey-Moore pictures?

A. It has been our custom to hold a family gathering at our home every Christmas Day. This has been held with very few exceptions since 1894. I remember distinctly at this gathering that my

890

father showed the pictures in motion on his improvised kinetoscope to a number that were at the gathering.

Q16. After your father commenced at the drawings at Madison, did he have any other occupation than this one of developing moving pictures during the rest of that year?

. A. No, sir.

Q17. What is your father's name?

A. Charles E. Chinnock.

Q18. Please examine the paper I now hand you
—Defendant's Exhibit, Agreement between Chinnock, Hough and Werner—and state if you know
in whose handwriting the body of this agreement
is?

A. It is in my own handwriting.

Q19. When did you write this, if you know?

A. May 3d, 1895.

Q20. Had you ever heard anything before this as to your father's intending to sell any camera or cameras?

A. Yes, sir.

Q21. How long before, and what had you heard?

A. I cannot place the date exactly, but it was considerably before this that my father returned home one evening and told me that he had sold the camera machine for export. I should say, to the best of my knowledge now, that it was from three to six months prior to May, 1895.

Q22. What else prior to this agreement of May 3 had you known of in connection with the development of your father's moving picture business?

A. My father told me that the pictures were so successful that he had decided to go into the business commercially and manufacture kinetoscopes for exhibition purposes and for the sale of same.

Q23. Did he have any place of business for this work before the signing of that agreement?

A. Yes, sir; he had hired a shack or a shanty or house, whatever you might call it, in East New York—I think on St. Marks Avenue—had built a stage in the open and had rigged up some kind of a house for the camera with the end of the camera pointing towards the stage to take these pictures. I also remember a number of subjects that he had taken out there. I also remember producing one subject for him, a girl who did a dance, a skirt dance. I also remember seeing these pictures developed and printed.

895

Q24. Please examine the apparatus on the desk. Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera, and state what, if anything, you know about it?

A. To the best of my knowledge, knowing very little about mechanics, I would swear that that is the original camera machine with which my father took the pictures of James H. Lahey and Robert T. Moore. I also can swear positive that this is the machine that has been in the cellar of our house for at least 14 or 15 years.

897

Q25. During that 14 or 15 years, what have you understood from your father that this machine was?

A. The original camera that would take a number of pictures per second and would produce motion or moving pictures.

Q26. By the original camera you mean the camera that took the Lahey-Moore pictures?

A. Yes, sir.

Direct examination closed.

Mr. Page: Deposition objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

Cross examination waived.

Signature waived by consent.

899

Defendant's counsel offers in evidence a duly certified copy from the office of the Secretary of State of the State of New York, of the Certificate of Incorporation of the Maltby Manufacturing Company, the certificate to the same showing that the original Certificate of Incorporation was filed and recorded in the office of the Secretary of State on September 6th, 1895, and the same is marked "Defendant's Exhibit Certificate of Incorporation, Maltby Manufacturing Company."

(

Mr. Page: Exhibit objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

Adjourned subject to notice.

New York, N. Y., May 18th, 1911, 2 P. M.

Met pursuant to notice.

Present: Counsel as before.

JOHN A. MILLIKEN, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre, as follows:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. John A. Milliken; age, 51; occupation, machinist; residence, Bayonne City, New Jersey.

Q2. During your work as machinist did you ever do any work in the shop of the Maltby Mfg. Co. of Brooklyn?

A. I did.

Q3. During what period did you do work there?

A. From the spring of '94 to the spring of '95.

Q4. During the time you were there who owned the Malthy Mfg. Co.?

A. Maltby and Hollman.

Q5. Was Congdon a part owner during any of the time?

A. In the spring of '95 I think he bought Mr. Hollman out.

Q6. How long after Congdon bought him out were you there?

A. I visited the firm a number of times, how many I couldn't say. I was very friendly with Mr. Maltby. I knew him a great many years.

Q7. While you were at the Maltby shop did you ever see any work done for one Charles E. Chinnock?

A. Yes.

Q8. What was the first work you saw done for him?

A. He was building a machine that had two side frames, there were a number of different rollers and gear wheels in it for feeding some kind of a paper. After the machine was further advanced Mr. Chinnock one day asked me if I knew what the machine was for and I told him that I thought it was some kind of a picture-taking machine. He said "yes." Why I remember the machine so well is, that two years previously I was building a machine for printing tickets which had a feeding mechanism something similar, and as this machine of Mr. Chinnock's had a peculiar stop movement for stopping the feeding of the paper it interested me very much. Therefore I paid a little more attention to the machine and its construction.

Q9. Do you remember just what it was about that stop movement that you noted especially?

902

A. He had a stop movement that worked from a cam; I should describe it as a finger. There was a cam that operated this finger in connection with a friction on the feed rolls. When the cam operated and pressed this finger down on the platen it held the paper and prevented the paper from moving. That would make a friction; would act on the rollers. That would prevent the rollers from operating.

905

Q10. Just what is it that you mean by saying that friction roller would be prevented from operating?

A. Without the finger the paper would continuously feed, but when the finger is applied to the paper, why the friction slips or stops the roller.

Q11. Do you remember what was first done with this machine when it was finished?

A. I was living out in the suburbs of Brooklyn, St. Nicholas Avenue near Atlantic, and Mr. Chinnock wanted some place where he could take these pictures outdoors, and I suggested that he take the machine up to my house and they could there operate it. In fact, I think I carried the machine out myself.

906

Q12. How long did it stay at your house?

A. I think in the neighborhood of a week or two, if I am not mistaken; it might be more or a little less.

Q13. Did you ever see it after that?

A. Yes, I think I have, down at the shop.

Q14. How nearly can you place the time when this machine was taken to your house?

A. Well, it was—I know it was before cold weather, as I saw some of the films, I think, in a kinetoscope which was built later by Mr. Chinnock. That was in the winter I saw those.

Q15. Which winter do you refer to?

A. '94.

Q16. That is the winter of 1894 and '95?

A. Yes.

Q17. What was the subject of the first pictures Mr. Chinnock showed you?

A. I think it was a boxing match.

Q18. Did you know who the boxers were?

A. No, I never heard it mentioned who they were.

Q19. Will you please examine this machine on the table before you and state whether you can identify it?

908

A. Yes, that's the identical machine.

Witness is shown Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera.

Q20. Are all the parts of the original camera on this machine?

A. No.

Q21. What parts do you recollect that are not on the machine?

A. There was a revolving shutter here with holes 909 in at, a disk.

Q22. Anything else missing?

A. The case is missing, the lens.

Q23. Will you please point out the stop movement and rolls that you were referring to awhile ago?

A. Stop movement here (indicating arm at the back of the clamp or platen). Cam here (indicating the cam on the outside of the side plate).

Q24. Which friction rollers were you referring to awhile ago?

A. I was referring to these rolls here, these top rolls.

911

Q25. Do you remember who was working on this camera while it was at Maltby's shop?

A. I think it was a man named Pearson or Peterson; something of that name.

Q26. Will you please look at this photograph, Defendant's Exhibit, Photograph Maltby Shop, and state whether you can identify it, and if so, which of the persons therein you recognize, refer-

ring to them by number?

A. I identify the picture. One is Maltby; two is Hollman; three is Milliken, myself; four is Miller; five I don't recognize; six is Walter Blackburn; seven is Howard Barnes; eight is Howard Edge, I think, and nine is Greeves or Graves; ten I don't remember his name.

Q27. When have you last seen Chinnock or Malt-

by?

A. The last time I saw Mr. Chinnock I think it was the summer of '95. Maltby I have seen within the last six or seven years.

Q28. Have you talked with anybody familiar with this case recently except the man who came to see you representing us?

912

A. No.

Q29. At the time Chinnock was working on this camera in the Maltby shop, what were you doing?

A. I was building glass cutters and also an automatic water column.

Q30. Did you begin this glass cutter work before or after the time the camera was being made?

A. At the time the camera was being made.

Q31. Who was that work being done for?

A. Myself.

Q32. Is there any way of fixing the date when those glass cutters were made?

A. Yes, I believe there is. I sold some of the goods to Montgomery & Co., I think, 105 Fulton

Street; also a firm by the name of Wells, Curtan & Co. They moved, I believe, in the summer of '95 to Newburgh, and I think the firm's name is changed, Wells being out of the firm, and I don't know the present name.

Direct examination closed.

Mr. Page: The deposition objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

Cross-examination subject to objection.

XQ33. Did you ever operate this camera?

A. In taking pictures, do I understand you?

914

Mr. Page: Yes.

A. No.

XQ34. Did you examine its construction carefully after it was finished?

A. Yes.

XQ35. Are you able to state now that it is in the same condition and contains the same parts that it had when you took it to your house?

A. Except in the parts that are not there, that I mention are not there.

XQ36. Are you sure that the lower pair of larger rolls were in that machine when you took it to your house?

A. I can state positively, yes, that all the rolls that are in there now, as far as my recollections go, are the same that were in there when I saw the machine operating with the roll of paper.

XQ37. Where did you see it operating with the roll of paper?

A. In Maltby's shop.

XQ38. You remember that when they were trying the machine with the rolls of paper the paper

was often torn between the lower reel and the clamping device operated by the paper?

A. No, I can't say that I do remember it being torn, that is after the machine was finished.

XQ39. What do you mean by after the machine was finished?

A. When the machine was ready for trial.

XQ40. Do you remember whether at that time there was in the machine a spring actuated arm bearing on the film or paper between the take-up reel and the lower pair of feed rolls?

917

A. I don't quite understand that question.

XQ41. At the time when, as you say, the machine was ready for trial, was there in this machine a bar carried by two arms riveted to the side plates of the machine and held against the strip of paper by a spring and bearing against the paper at a point between the lower winding reel and the clamp operated by the cam?

A. Yes, it was there.

XQ42. Please see if that device is now present in the machine?

918

A. Here it is here, connected with the cam here, connected with the two side plates.

Counsel for complainant notes that the witness indicates the clamp for the film operated by the cam.

XQ43. The part to which you refer in your answer was not the part that I had in mind in asking my question. What I wish to know is whether there was in the machine when you took it to your house any device below the lower friction rolls that was held by spring pressure against the film or paper before it reached the winding-up reel.

A. I would have to refresh my memory on that question. It is a number of years since I have seen the machine, and I would have to examine it a little more closely.

XQ44. When you stated that this is the identical machine that you took to your house, with the exception that it does not contain the shutter and the cover, you did not mean that you were positive that all of the details of this machine as it stands now were present in it at the time referred to, did you?

A. I mean to say that this, as near as I can remember, is identically the same machine in all the parts excepting those that I have previously mentioned.

XQ45. But now you have just stated that without an examination of the machine or refreshing your recollection you could not state whether there was any spring-actuated device bearing on the film between the lower feed rolls and the wind-up reel, and it is true, is it not, that you do not remember such a device or that you do not now remember whether it was in the machine or not when you took it to your house?

A. I do remember of an actuating device, as I have previously stated, actuated from a cam to hold the paper or film for a certain interval if that is what you are referring to, yes, it was there.

XQ46. But you do not remember any other device that was pressed against the paper continuously by a spring, do you?

A. I would have to look at the machine and examine it before giving an answer to that question.

XQ47. Please look at the machine and state if you remember whether this spring-actuated bar was present in the machine when you carried the machine over to your house. This bar bears on

920

923

924

the film between the wind-up reel and the lower feed roll.

A. Yes, I remember it.

XQ48. Do you remember that that was in the machine when you took it over to your house?

A. Yes.

XQ49. Did you take the cover off of the machine after it went to your house so that you could see this spring-actuated arm?

A. No.

XQ50. Then how do you know that this arm was in the machine at that time?

A. I saw the machine assembled and tried out, not once, but I can safely say, fifty times, and I was in a position where I could see every part of the machine made and put together, also every trial of every movement in the machine.

XQ51. When the clamp operated by the finger and the cam arrested the movement of the paper strip, did the paper slip through the upper feed rolls or did the latter stop?

A. I believe the feed rolls stopped, as the feed

rolls were driven by friction.

XQ52, When the paper strip was arrested did the lower friction rolls which I now have my finger on—these just below the clamp—did they stop also?

A. I can only remember the general principles on which these rolls operated.

Cross-examination closed.

Re-direct Examination by Mr. Eyre:

RDQ53. I am going to turn the main shaft of the machine and I want you to watch it and watch how the different sets of rollers turn, and then say whether in view of what you see here you think that the rollers each constantly turned in the machine as you saw it in 1894.

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial. The witness has clearly shown even after examining the machine that he has no recollection of the operation, but being presumably a skilled mechanic he would of course be able to describe the operation when he sees it, and the value of his answer as evidence of recollection is not at all apparent, although his testimony as an expert might be instructive.

Mr. Eyre: In view of the statement just made, showing the agreement of counsel for complainant that the witness' recollection of the details of the feeding mechanism are incorrect, and showing therefore that he is not relying upon the witness' recollection to raise any question as to there being some different operation of the feeding mechanism at that time, the question is withdrawn.

Deposition closed.

Signature waived by consent.

Counsel for defendant offers in evidence copy of an affidavit of Joseph F. McCoy, which copy was served upon defendant's counsel at the hearing on motion to reopen this case and used on said motion by complainant in opposition and the same is marked "Defendant's Exhibit, McCoy Affidavit," it being agreed that this copy may be used with the same force and effect as the original affidavit.

Defendant's counsel also produces five photographs of the camera, "Defendant's

926

Exhibit, Chinnock Camera," and it is agreed that if C. W. Smith were recalled as a witness on behalf of the defendant he would testify that these five photographs were accurate photographs, properly taken by him of "Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera," and that the photographs were taken on Monday, April 24th, 1911, and it is further agreed that the foregoing stipulation may be taken with the same force and effect as if the said Smith had been duly recalled and had thus testified.

929

Defendant's counsel offers the five photographs in evidence as "Defendant's Exhibits, Photographs Nos. 1 to 5, Chinnock Camera."

Mr. Page: The above exhibits objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

Adjourned subject to notice.

930

New York, N. Y., May 20th, 1911. 11 A. M.

Met pursuant to notice.

Present—John C. Kerr, Esq., for Complainant.
RICHARD EYRE, Esq., representing Kenyon & Kenyon, for Defendant.

HOWARD H. EDGE, a witness called on behalf of defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Howard H. Edge; residence, Woonsocket, R. I.; occupation, superintendent of the Taft Pierce Mfg. Co.; age, 39.

Q2. Were you ever employed in the shop of the Maltby Manufacturing Co. of Brooklyn, N. Y.?

A. I was.

Q3. Will you please state what your period or periods of employment were with that company?

A. I was employed by the Maltby Mfg. Co. in two different periods. I first entered their employ in the fall, early fall, either August or September, in 1893. I remained with that company about one year. I then left their employ and went to work with the Garvin Machine Co., New York City, that being September or October, 1894, and I was with the Garvin Co. until about March, 1895, and then went to work for the International Postal Supply Co., of Brooklyn, and was with them several months and returned to the Maltby Co.

Q4. You were away from the Maltby Co., then, from about the early fall of '94 for about a year, is that it?

A. About a year or fourteen months, yes, sir.

Q5. In what month and year were you married? A. January, 1895.

Q6. Can you place certainly where you were working at that time?

A. I was with the Garvin Co., because I remember that the boys put some old shoes in my bag. I remember that.

Q7. Have you any definite recollection as to your having been working with the Garvin Co. for some months at that time?

A. Yes, sir. I know what I was working on at the Garvin Co. I went in their tool rooms under instructions. I was working on tools for making bicycle parts,—hub tools and other tools.

932

Q8. Have you any recollection of a man in the Maltby shop by the name of Charles Pearson?

A. Not any definite recollection. I believe I heard his name mentioned, but I do not believe I would know him and I would not be sure that I could identify him.

Q9. Did you ever see any moving picture ma-

chinery being made in the Maltby shop?

A. I remember Mr. Chinnock being there and having some work done, but I have no knowledge of ever being assigned to that work.

935

Q10. I show you a machine on the desk called Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera, and ask you whether you can identify it or not?

A. I would not say positively that I could, although I am inclined to believe that there was some such machine there during one of the periods that I was employed there. I know Mr. Chinnock's name. It was an unusual name and I remember that name being mentioned there.

936

Mr. Kerr: In view of the last answer of the witness, the testimony which he may give with reference to the Chinnock Camera, including the last answer, is objected to as immaterial and irrelevant and it is requested that this objection should stand to all testimony with reference to this machine which the witness may hereafter give.

Mr. Eyre: That is entirely satisfactory, but it may be noted that this witness has been called simply because he has been referred to in the testimony and is shown on Defendant's Exhibit, Photograph Maltby Shop, and his testimony is more or less negative in character as it appears that he was the only one so far produced and shown in

that photograph who cannot identify the exhibit, and it also appear. from his testimony that he was not at the Maltby shop at the time the witnesses say the exhibit was made.

Q11. Please examine Defendant's Exhibit, Photograph Maltby Shop, which I hand you and state whether you recognize the same, and if so, which of the persons appearing thereon you can identify?

Please identify by number.

A. I recognize the picture as being that of the Maltby shop, as I have one of the same pictures, or I had one at the time. I identify the persons shown on the picture as follows: 1 is Frank Maltby; 2 Mr. Hollman; 3 is Mr. Milliken; 4 is Jack Miller; 5, I recognize the face, but I have forgotten the name; 6 is Walter Blackburn. He went by the name of Blackburn—the boys knew him as Blackburn, but his name is Blackbrough. 7 is Herbert Barnes; 8 myself; 9 is Clarence Graves, and 10 is Curtis Adams.

Direct examination closed.

939

938

Mr. Kerr: The objection above noted is here repeated to the whole deposition of the witness. I do not care to cross-examine.

Deposition closed.

Signature waived by consent.

Adjourned subject to new notice.

UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY

V8.

In Equity.
On Latham
Patent
No. 707,934.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURES
941 COMPANY OF AMERICA.

Testimony taken on behalf of defendant before Charles F. McKenzie, a Notary Public, acting as Special Examiner by consent, at the Post Tavern, Battle Creek, Michigan, beginning at 10:30 A. M., Tuesday, May 23, 1911.

Met pursuant to agreement.

Present—Parker W. Page, Esq., Counsel for Complaint.

RICHARD EYRE, Esq., representing Kenyon & Kenyon, Counsel for Defendant.

942

FRANK D. MALTBY, a witness called on behalf of the defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows, in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Frank B. Maltby; 56; Battle Creek, Michigan; mechanical engineer.

Q2. You are the proprietor of the Maltby Engineering Works, of Battle Creek?

A. Yes, sir.

Q3. Were you ever doing business, either alone or with others, in Brooklyn, N. Y., under the name of Maltby Mfg. Co.?

A. Yes.

Q4. When did you begin that business and when did you end it?

A. Some time in the spring of 1883. I think it was May.

Q5. When did you end it?

A. Continued for about 3 years.

Q6. Who was connected with you in the owner-ship of that business, at first?

A. William A. Hollman.

Q7. How long did you and he continue together?

A. About 2 years, we separated some time in March, '95, I bought him out.

Q8. After that how was the business run?

A. Same name, only by taking in Mr. Congdon, he took Mr. Hollman's place.

Q9. Was the company ever incorporated; if so, when?

A. After Mr. Congdon took hold with me, under the laws of the State of New York.

Q10. Where was this business located?

A. Columbia Heights, I think it was number 18 Columbia Heights, I am not sure about the number, Brooklyn, N. Y.

Q11. During the carrying on of this business at this place did you ever do any work for one Charles E. Chinnock?

A. I did.

Q12. And what was the character of this work?

A. I built him a camera for rapid picture taking.

Q13. Anything else?

944

947

A. Later we took a contract for kinetoscopes.

Q14. When and under what circumstances did your first conversation with Chinnock, as to this matter, occur?

A. Why, I met Chinnock one day while crossing the Brooklyn Ferry, and in conversation learned that he was living in Jersey. I asked him why he didn't live in the United States, and he says, "That's all right, I've got something that I want to talk to you about"; I said, "That's all right, let's hear it." He then asked me if I had a good shop for doing fine work. I told him I had, to come up and see me. That is about all at that time I remember now.

Q15. When was that?

A. That was some time in the summer of '93—no, it must have been some time in the summer of '94. Because we had been started in the manufacturing and making of machines for some little time.

Q16. Did he say then what sort of work he was going to have done?

A. No, he did not, he said he would let me know later.

948

Q17. What was the next conversation you had on this matter?

A. To the best of my recollection he came into my shop one day, during the middle of the summer with some drawings, and asked if I could give him a good man, to make a machine that he wanted to build. He seemed to be a little reticent at first, explaining what it was, but after he got it started, I said to him, "I know what you're making," he says "What is it?". I said "You're making a picture machine." "Well," he says, "keep it to yourself;" and that is about all; that is after we got to work on it.

Q18. What do you recollect as to the general nature of the drawings that he showed you—as to how complete they were?

A. They were complete enough for a Mr. Pearson, whom I employed, to go ahead and build the camera under the supervision of Mr. Chinnock.

Q19. When did you start Mr. Pearson at this work?

A. I should think somewhere in the neighborhood of September or October, '94. I know it was not later than October, '94.

Q20. Had you had Pearson in your employ before he started on this work?

A. I could not just say when Mr. Pearson came to work for me, but it was a short time, if at all, before he started on Mr. Chinnock's work.

Q21. How much of Pearson's time was devoted on his camera after he got started on it?

A. All of his time.

Q22. And how much was Chinnock around the shop?

A. The majority of the time.

Q23. How long did it take before the camera was completed?

A. I should think about two months, I am not sure.

Q24. What, if any, tests were made in the shop, of this camera?

A. Chinnock made a test with paper, to see if he was getting registration and positive stopping; I do not remember much about it, for I had turned Mr. Pearson over to Chinnock to do his work, and outside of a natural curiosity to see how the machine was going on, I did not interfere with it.

Q25. What do you now recollect about the mechanism of that camera and its operation?

950

A. That it was a combination of mechanical devices to operate a strip of paper so that it might be fed and stopped before a photographic lens, said lens being alternately exposed and shut out from the light by a revolving shutter, said shutter being operated by suitable gearing so that all movements of paper and shutter were synchronized.

Q26. You remember what was the power to be

applied to move the paper and lens?

A. The reel of paper was mounted loosely on a spindle, then passed through a pair of feed rolls, then passed over the stop-plate when it was again controlled by feed rolls, then onto a receiving reel which was controlled by a friction movement.

Q27. Was there, if you remember, any loose portions of the paper, or loops formed?

A. There was a loop formed between the delivery reel and the stop-plate, also a certain amount of slack between the stop-plate and receiving reel; said slack was taken up by a spring arm, which was the suggestion of Mr. Hollman, and of which he felt very proud.

Q28. Have you any recollection of the general appearance of the machine?

A. Why, yes, I have a general recollection of it, made up from heavy brass plates, and the usual amount of gearing—some of the gearing Mr. Chinnock picked up. I recollect his buying and bringing over a pair of bevel gears which he said he purchased on Fulton Street, New York.

Q29. Please look at the apparatus on the table here (Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera) and state whether or not you can identify it?

A. I would be willing to stake my mechanical reputation on the apparatus being the same, as constructed in my shop in '94. A small circum-

953

stance which occurred was this: Mr. Chinnock came to me and said, "Mr. Maltby, I want some light pulley put on the drive shaft, I don't care whether it is a round or flat belt." I gave him a pulley that looks identically like this one, and said to him, "This won't cost you anything, as one of the arms are cracked."

Q30. Are you able to find the crack on the pulley of this machine?

A. Down near the bulb somewheres—there it is (indicating) that appears to be the pulley.

Q31. Do you recognize the other portions of the camera?

A. In a general way, yes.

Q32. Will you please point out, if you find them present, the various parts that you have already referred to, viz.: the beveled gears Chinnock bought, the shutter, the spring arm controlling the slack that was suggested by Hollman, the supply reel and receiving reel, the friction movement for the latter, the stop-plate and the stop-movement therefor, and the two pairs of friction rolls that you referred to?

A. Those are the bevel gears (indicating) shown at "A" on Defendant's Exhibit Photograph 2, Chinnock Camera. The shutter is not present on this machine, but was mounted on the shaft of the bevel gear and had narrow slits in it that were revolved in front of the lens which was screwed on the face of the machine at this point (indicating point marked "B" on Defendant's Exhibit Photograph No. 4, Chinnock Camera). This shutter was a subject of consultation between Chinnock and myself one day, when I said to him, "Supposing these slits are not right in width?" and he said, "Oh, I'll fix that all right;" and some time later he

956

959

said he had put on a double shutter which could be moved so as to open or close the slits. Here is the spring arm here (indicating the double arm with spring tension connected by a bar bearing on the film near the bottom of the machine). This is the supply reel, and this is the receiving reel (indicating respectively the top and bottom reels). Here is the set of friction rolls right here (pointing to feed rolls just below the supply reel). There was another set below the stop-plate to take the paper away (pointing to rolls just below the stop-plate). The friction movement for the receiving reel is here, driven by the belt (indicating the mechanism on the shaft of the lower reel and the belt). Here is the stop-plate, and that is the movement actuated by this cam (indicating the plate between the two sets of friction rolls and the arm pressing on the back of the plate, and the spring and cam controlling the shaft carrying that arm).

Q33. Was this camera completed, and out of the shop before Hollman left?

Mr. Page: Objected to that question as leading.

A. It was completed in the fall of '94.

Q34. Were you ever shown any pictures said to have been made on that camera?

A. Yes, at one time, I had three sets of pictures; one was a boxing scene, another was a series of pictures of Fatima, Egyptian Muscle Dancer, also a blacksmith shop scene.

Q35. How early were you shown the first of these?

A. Some time late in the fall, possibly it was close to mid-winter, I don't remember exactly.

Q36. You remember anything as to who were the subjects for the boxing scene?

A. I do not remember.

Q37. Did you ever make any other cameras for Chinnock?

A. To the best of my recollection, we made one or more cameras, some time in the early spring of 95.

Q38. Have you any means of identifying this particular exhibit shown you as the first, rather than a later camera?

A. Nothing except that the work is in more of a crude state.

Q39. Do you mean that you recollect that the later camera were better finished in detail?

A. They were.

Q40. How many kinetoscopes did you make for Chinnock?

A. I think we had a contract for about 50 machines, I am uncertain as to quantity. The quantity was so large, however, that I was obliged to rent another floor directly below the shop.

Q41. When were these kinetoscopes made?

A. Some time during the spring and summer of '95. They may have been begun in the latter part of the winter of '95.

Q42. That is, you mean they may have been begun in the latter part of the winter of '94 and '95?

A. Yes, sir.

Q43. I now show you a photograph, marked in this case as Defendant's Exhibit, Photograph Maltby's Shop, and ask you if you recognize the same as the Columbia Heights shop, and also ask you to state which of the persons therein you recognize?

A. No. 1 is myself; No. 2 is my former partner,

962

Mr. Hollman; No. 3 is John Milliken; No. 4, 1 would know his name if I would hear it, I don't remember it myself; No. 5, I don't recollect his name; No. 6, I don't recollect the name; No. 7 was a young apprentice, first name Herbert, just for the minute I don't recollect his name—Herbert Barnes, my wife's cousin; No. 8 was Howard Edge; No. 9 was a young apprentice by the name of Graves; No. 10, I don't remember the name. I have since though of No. 4— Miller. This picture is a portion of the shop, looking towards Columbia Heights.

965

Recess.

Q44. Do you remember Walter Blackburn, or Blackbrough?

A. Blackburn, that is his name. That is him, No. 6.

Q45. Do you remember Curtis Adams?

A. Curtis Adams, the only one that could possibly be him is this little chap over here—if there is anybody that could be Curtis Adams, would be No. 10; I am not sure of him.

966

Q46. Besides those on the photograph, did William Edge, Charles O. Pearson, Harry C. Lohman, and George Thompson work for you at that shop?

A. You don't say when; at the time the photograph was taken, you mean? Or what time?

Q47. At or about the time that Chinnock's camera was being made?

A. I am a little in doubt as to when Thompson came with me, he would know more about whether he was there at that time than I would; to the best of my knowledge they were there, I know that Lohman was.

Cross Examination by Mr. Page:

Mr. Page: It appearing that the testimony given by this witness is purely cumulative evidence of irrelevant and immaterial facts, it is objected to, for that reason and as being a mere padding of the record with immaterial and irrelevant testimony. Cross-examination is subject to the above objection.

XQ48. You have stated that you had three sets of pictures, which you understand were taken by Mr. Chinnock's camera or cameras; in what form were those pictures?

A. The first picture that I saw—first set of pictures was a boxing scene, with about a dozen pictures; the strip was about an inch wide. This set of pictures was handed me by Mr. Chinnock, with the remark, "This is some of our first work." The later pictures that I received were of the same general nature, with the exception of the subjects.

XQ49. That is, these pictures were positive prints on paper strips about an inch wide, and 12 inches long?

A. I don't know, there were about a dozen pictures, I don't know what the length was, I didn't measure them.

XQ50. Do you know who mounted the pictures on the cylinders of the kinetoscopes that you made for Mr. Chinnock?

A. It was done by Mr. Chinnock or someone with him, I don't remember; I saw him assembling one.

XQ51. Was this work done at your shop?

A. Do you refer to the mounting of the pictures?

968

972

XQ52. Yes.

A. In this one instance, yes.

XQ53. But in the other cases, this work was not done under your observation, was it?

A. It was not under my observation. And I am not sure whether it was done in the shop or outside of it.

XQ54. Can you recall anyone who was assisting Mr. Chinnock in this work of mounting the pictures?

A. I cannot.

971 XQ55. Did you know F. R. Chinnock, a brother of Charles E. Chinnock?

A. I have met him and been introduced to him. But never had much to do with him.

XQ56. Did he have, to your knowledge, anything to do with the making of the kinetoscopes, or the using of the Chinnock cameras, for taking pictures for these kinetoscopes?

A. I do not know.

XQ57. Have you any data or records in your possession which have assisted you in fixing the various dates for the incidents about which you have testified; or have you been relying entirely on your recollection?

A. It is all a question of memory, with the exception of things I have pointed out on the machine shown to me.

XQ58. You have stated that the drawings that Mr. Chinnock showed you some time during the middle of the summer of 1894, were complete enough for Pearson to go ahead and build a camera, under the supervision of Mr. Chinnock; is that answer a mere conclusion on your part, that these drawings were sufficient for that purpose, or did you examine them sufficiently yourself to know that they were?

A. I only made a cursory glance examination of the drawings, as it was understood that I was to turn them over to Mr. Pearson, and that Mr. Pearson follow the drawings more or less in the construction of the machine.

XQ59. Then I am right in assuming that your answer to Q18 was not based on positive information, but was a conclusion on your part that these drawings were complete, am I not? (Question and answer shown witness.)

A. I think the results will answer for themselves.

974

Mr. Page: Answer objected to as not responsive.

XQ60. Of course you do not know, do you, just how much information Pearson got from these drawings, and how much he got from Mr. Chinnock to enable him to construct the first camera?

A. I recollect one day in particular when there was some uncertainty about the stop motion and cam which actuated the same, Mr. Chinnock said to Pearson, "You had better follow the drawings, as that has been carefully worked out."

975

Mr. Page: Answer is objected to as not responsive.

Mr. Eyre: Complainant's counsel must have found the answer too responsive.

Mr. Page: I call attention to the purely gratuitous character of this remark.

XQ61. I am only asking you for your best information and recollection, and not for opinions or conclusions; and my question was: Do you know how much information Pearson obtained from Chinnock, or, as a matter of fact, how closely he

actually did follow the original drawings in making the first camera?

A. I couldn't tell you.

XQ62. Can you give the Court any further details from recollection of the tests which Mr. Chinnock made with his first camera? Anything that you may recall about the kind of paper he used, the number or lengths of the tests, or the results?

A. No; only in a general way that such tests were made, and that he used paper to test the registration of the different parts of the machine.

XQ63. Do you know whether he changed the machine at all after these tests?

A. Not to any extent, some minor details; one being the arm that Mr. Hollman suggested.

XQ64. One of the witnesses, I think Mr. Hollman, has stated that Mr. Chinnock came to you for information or help in preventing the tearing of the paper by the machine before the spring arm was adopted; but that you failed to give him any relief; do you recall that circumstance?

A. I do not.

XQ65. Do you recall in what respects the later cameras differed from the first camera constructed?

A. They were intended to be duplicates, with perhaps a little more elaboration in the method of finishing them up. As Mr. Chinnock asked me if I was ready to take extra machines to build on contract, and I asked him if they were to be like the old ones, and he said, "Yes, with some few minor details."

XQ66. Did you ever operate one of these Chinnock cameras, either for testing its registration or for taking pictures?

A. I did not. I simply saw the results.

XQ67. Did you ever hear Mr. Chinnock, or any

977

of those associated with him in the taking and mounting of the pictures, make the statement that the spacing between the pictures was irregular?

A. I never did.

XQ68. Did you ever hear them make the statement that the alignment of the pictures in the strips was imperfect? Owing to the tendency of the film to shift sidewise between the friction rollers?

A. The only thing that I ever heard relating to this question that you have asked me, Mr. Chinnock cautioned Mr. Pearson that he must make the rollers of the same diameter from end to end, and that the two sets of rollers must be absolutely in line and parallel to each other.

XQ69. Do you know, as a matter of fact, that one of the principal difficulties that was encountered in the making of the kinetoscopes was due to the fact that the pictures in the strips were not evenly spaced and were also out of alignment?

A. In answer to that question would say that I examined one of the kinetoscopes that had been completed and ready for shipment to Coney Island, and tested it by putting in a nickel, and that the action was very satisfactory; the pictures seemed to move cleanly and truly in line.

XQ70. But you do not know whether the pictures in that kinetoscope had been cut up and adjusted both for spacing and alignment, do you?

A. I know that they looked like one continuous strip from one end of the cylinder to the other, and I doubt the practicability of anyone taking a crooked strip, badly spaced and out of line, and producing the result that I saw.

XQ71. Did you examine the strip of pictures on the cylinder of this kinetoscope to ascertain 980

whether or not it had been cut up into short sections?

A. I did not, as I had no occasion to do so.

Re-direct Examination:

RDQ72. When you first saw the pictures of the boxing contest, what did you observe as to the character of the photographs and their registration on the strip?

983

A. The photographs seemed to be very clear and distinct; in fact, I might say they were clear and distinct, and the strip appeared to be straight, and as far as the naked eye could discern, without proper measuring instruments, they were equally spaced.

RDQ73. What is the last that you have known as to the books and other records of the Maltby Mfg. Co.?

A. The winter of '95 and '96. Possibly I may be mistaken, possibly in the winter of '97, early in the fall. There is one method of ascertaining exactly by going to the National Accidental Policy Company of New York, who paid me money for an accident. By getting that data I could tell when I last saw the books.

984

RDQ731/2. Do you know what became of them then?

A. I do not—no—except that Mr. Congdon took possession of them.

Re-cross Examination:

RXQ74. You have used the expression in your last preceding answers "The fall," referring to a season; do you mean by using this expression any time up to a period "close to midwinter," as you

stated in answer to Q35? (Q35 and answer shown witness.)

A. I mean just exactly what I said in the answer; I couldn't put it any other way, except to state it would be late fall or early winter, that is what I intended to convey.

RXQ75. You mean, you intended to convey that in answer to Q35?

A. I intended to convey that it was late fall and possibly early winter, I couldn't exactly state; a question of one or two months, one way or the other.

986

Deposition closed, and signature waived by consent.

It is agreed that the Notary need not certify the foregoing deposition, but that the original may be kept in the custody of defendant's counsel and filed with the Clerk of the Court.

Adjourned to the office of Mundy, Evarts, Adcock & Clark, Chicago, Ill., at 10:30 A. M., Wednesday, May 24th, 1911.

UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT, SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-

VS.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURES COMPANY OF AMERICA. In Equity. On Latham Patent No. 707,934.

989

Testimony taken on behalf of defendant before Pearl Abrams, a Notary Public, acting as Special Examiner by consent, at the office of Mundy, Evarts, Adcock & Clarke, 907 Marquette Building, Chicago, Illinois, beginning 10:30 A. M. Wednesday morning, May 24th, 1911.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present—Parker W. Page, Esq., Counsel for Complainant.

RICHARD EYRE, Esq., representing Kenyon & Kenyon, Counsel for Defendant.

990

GEORGE S. THOMPSON, a witness called on behalf of the defendant, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows, in answer to questions by Mr. Eyre:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. George S. Thompson; age, 47 years; 2118 South Springfield Avenue, Chicago. I am foreman of the cable press department of the Western Electric Company.

992

- Q2. Were you ever employed with the Maltby Manufacturing Company of Brooklyn, New York?
 - A. Yes.
- Q3. What was that Company and where was it located?
 - A. A partnership.
 - Q4. Where was it located?
 - A. At Doughty Street and Columbia Heights.
 - Q5. Who were the partners?
- A. There was Frank Maltby and William Hollman.
- Q6. What period of time was it that you worked there?
- A. I worked there from the latter part of August, 1893, and over a period of about a year and a half.
- Q7. Was Mr. Hollman still a partner when you left?
 - A. He was.
 - Q8. After you left, did you visit the shop again?
 - A. No, I never visited the shop afterward.
- Q9. Did you see anything of Mr. Hollman after that?
 - A. Yes.
- Q10. Did you know anything about his selling out his interest in the shop?
 - A. Yes, he told me about it.
- Q11. And how long was that after you left their employ?
 - A. Several months, I couldn't say positively.
- Q12. Did you know of this at the very time he sold out, or later?
 - A. It was previous to his having sold out.
- Q13. That is, it was previous to his selling out that he told you he was about to sell out?
 - A. Yes.
 - Q14. While you were with the Maltby shop, did

you see any work being done on moving picture apparatus?

A. Yes.

Q15. Who was that being done for?

A. A Mr. Chinnock.

Q16. When was that work being done?

A. Why they were working during the latter part of my employment with the Company.

Q17. Please state what you recall as to the character of this apparatus?

995

A. It was a machine to take pictures in a continuous strip or a film. The machine operated as follows: This film was in the form of a spool or bobbin, and unwound from this spool onto another one. There was an intermittent movement, the film would move and then stop and then continue. The machine movement was produced by a crank on the side of the machine. That perforated disk they had there, rotated in front of an eye, and there were a number of holes in the disk. Further than that I don't recall much about it.

996

- Q18. Please examine the apparatus in evidence herein, as "Defendant's Exhibit, Chinnock Camera," and state whether you can recognize the same?
- A. I would say that this is the identical machine that I have attempted to describe that was made by the Maltby Co.

Q19. Where was the disk with holes in it carried, if you remember?

A. Right in the front, connected with the shaft here (witness pointing to the screw thread on the front of the horizontal shaft), and passing in front of this eye here (pointing to the circular hole in the front of the machine).

Q20. Have you any recollection about how this shaft was driven?

- A. The movement was communicated to a pair of beveled pinions or gears.
- Q21. Do you remember whether there were any tests of this apparatus in the Maltby shop?
- A. The machine had been tried by unwinding the film of paper from one bobbin to another and noting the different movements.
 - Q22. Do you remember Howard Edge?
 - A. I do.
- Q23. Were you at his wedding, and if so, when was that?
 - A. I was at his wedding January 21st, 1895.
- Q24. Was he working with Maltby at that particular time?
 - A. He was.
- Q25. Do you remember his working for the Garvin Co.?
- A. Yes, he left the employ of the Maltby Co., to go with the Garvin Co.
- Q26. Are you sure that he was not with the Garvin Co, at the time he was married?
 - A. I think he was with the Garvin Co.
- Q27. And where were you working at that time?
 - A. With Louis Weiss, to my recollection.
- Q28. I show you a photograph, and ask you whether you recognize the same, and if so, what it is?
 - A. This is the Maltby Mfg. Co.
- Q29. Do you remember whether you were there when that photograph was taken?
- A. I was in their employ when that photograph was taken.
- Q30. Please identify any of the persons thereon that you recognize?
 - A. No. 1, Mr. Maltby; No. 2, Mr. Hollman; No.

998

3, Mr. Milliken; No. 4, Mr. Miller; No. 6, Mr. Blackbrough; No. 7, Mr. Herbert Barnes; No. 8, Mr. Howard Edge; No. 9, Mr. Graves, and No. 10, Mr. Adams.

Q31. One or two of the witnesses thought that No. 5 was yourself. What do you recall about No. 5?

A. Well, as having been personally acquainted with him at one time, but not recalling his name at present.

1001

Q32. Do you remember who was doing the main part of the work on this Chinnock camera?

A. He was a short stout man, and from appearance. I would say he was a Swede.

Q33. Do you remember any men by the name of Lohman and William Edge, working with Maltby, while you were there?

A. I do.

Q34. Do I understand that the man who was working on the Chinnock camera, was neither Lohman, William Edge, nor any of the men on this photograph?

A. Neither of those you mention, nor any of those on the photograph.

Mr. Page: The deposition is objected to as irrelevant and immaterial, and as purely cumulative evidence of wholly irrelevant and immaterial circumstances.

Cross-examination waived.

Signature waived by consent.

Deposition closed.

Defendants rest.

REBUTTAL PROOFS.

HARRY NORTON MARVIN, recalled in rebuttal on behalf of the complainant.

Direct Examination by Mr. Church:

Q160. Mr. Marvin, have you examined, and are you familiar with the evidence that has been offered in this case respecting the so-called Chinnock camera, and if so state whether or not you understand the construction of that so-called camera? A. I am familiar with the evidence that has been given, and I understand the construction of the camera.

1004

Q161. Will you please describe in your own words what you understand to be the structure of the Chinnock camera, so far as relates to the means therein for supporting and moving film? A. The Chinnock device for handling film comprised two supports for the bulk of the film, located, one at the upper part, and one at the lower part of the machine. Between these supports was located an intermittently operating feeding device adapted to move the film intermittently, not positively and regularly, but variably. This intermittent feeding device consisted first in a clamping member adapted to intermittently clamp the film firmly and prevent its movement. The next element comprised a pair of frictional rollers running at a relatively high speed between which the film was The function of these continuously acring friction feed rollers was to draw a quantity of film through the clamping device when the clamping device was released. Below the continuously running friction rollers was the frictionally driven take-up reel running at a speed designed to main-

tain a constant drag upon the film. This is the structure of the early Chinnock device, according to the testimony, and the intermittent feed of the film was accomplished by the co-operation of these two elements in the following manner. When the clamping device held the film, the continuously running friction rollers revolved against the surface of the film, straining the film as much as the friction between the rollers determined. And the take-up reel exercised a supplementary drag upon the film. The combined drag of the take-up reel and of the continuously running friction wheel being positively resisted by the clamping device, the film normally remained stationary below the continuously running reels and for a short distance above the clamp including the space occupied by the exposure window. When the clamp was released, the continuously running feed rollers pulled down film through the clamp and past the exposure window, being assisted in this operation by the tug of the frictionally driven take-up reel. The movement of the film through the clamping device and exposure window continued until the clamp again operated to pinch the film, when the film was again subjected to the strain of the continuously running feed rollers and the frictionally operated take-up reel. In a later modification of the Chinnock device, according to the testimony, a spring actuated arm was introduced between the continuously running feed rollers and the frictionally operated take-up reel. The function of this spring actuated arm appeared to be to equalize the drag of the take-up reel upon the film between the takeup reel and the continuously running feed rollers. With this modification of the structure, the drag upon the film during the time that the clamp was

1007

pinching it, consisted of the sum of the drag of the continuously running feed rollers, plus the drag of the take-up reel, as determined through the spring actuated arm, which tended to deflect the pull of the film from a straight line between the feed rollers and the take-up reel. According to the testimony, the effect of this spring actuated arm was to reduce the tendency of the film to be torn apart between the clamp and the take-up reel, when the clamp was holding the film tight, and when the film was subjected to the strains above indicated.

1010

Above the intermittent feeding device and between the exposure window and supply reel were located an additional pair of friction feed rollers. These rollers revolved at a lower peripheral speed than the intermittently acting feed rollers before described; and their function appears to have been to measure out during each cycle of operation of the machine a quantity of film approximate to that necessary to replace the quantity of film exposed at the exposure window during the time the film was When the clamping device was released. the continuously running feed rollers below the clamp, acting in connection with the spring actuated arm and the frictionally driven take-up reel, pulled down film that had been fed from the upper friction rolls during the time that the clamp was holding the film taut, through the upper feed rollers, the film at this instant being strained taut between the upper feed rollers and the lower feed The action of the upper feed rollers in feeding the film from the supply reel was supplemented and augmented by additional strain due to the operation of the continuously running feed rollers and the action of the frictionally driven take-

1013

up reel. This action continued until the clamp operated again to pinch the film and hold it. the continued operation of the machine, therefore, the film was intermittently advanced past the exposure window with a more or less irregular movement. There was not at any time any positive engagement of any of the operating devices with the film. The film used was presumably unperforated, because there were no teeth anywhere in the mechanism adapted to co-operate with any sprocket holes in the film, no means of any form for positive engagement of the film being designated. It will be noted that the amount of movement of the film through the cycle of operation was dependent upon the sum of a number of variable quantities, comprising, in the first place, the resistance of the mass of the film upon the supply reel to rotation; secondly, the frictional pressure of the upper feeding rollers upon the film; thirdly, the firmness of the grip of the intermittently acting feeding device; fourthly, the frictional pressure of the continuously operating feed rollers upon the film; fifthly, the stiffness of the spring actuating the spring actuated arm: and sixthly, the frictional drag of the take-up reel, all acting upon a substance of variable thickness and having variable surface friction.

1014

It will be noticed that the organization of this machine was such as to indicate that it was not intended to handle film in such a manner as to relieve the film from tension or strain during operation. The whole operation of the structure was based upon subjecting the film to strain and tension. It will be seen, further, that there was in the machine no means for insuring the regular presentation at the exposure window of successive, equally spaced portions of film. It is apparent that the machine

might be used with some degree of success for the purpose of moving the film so that there may be photographed upon it a succession of unevenly spaced photographs, provided the machine was so adjusted that the strains to which the film was subjected did not break the film during the process; but it is obvious that the machine could not be used for moving film for the purpose of bringing before the exposure window a series of photographs arranged lengthwise on the film, for the purpose of motion picture projection. It is apparent that the mechanism could not be used for the latter purpose because there is no means indicated for insuring the proper register of the successive photographs with the exposure window, a result absolutely necessary where pictures are to be projected on a screen, because without such means, successively projected pictures would not occupy the same position upon the screen.

1016

Therefore, in the case of unevenly spaced pictures, successive pictures would appear to dance upon the screen in such a manner as to obliterate the picture, and in the case of evenly spaced pictures, this result would be supplemented by a continual creep of the pictures, either up or down the screen, as the errors of movement of the film were accumulated in successive exposures. It will be noted further, in considering this Chinnock structure, that its organization would not permit the use of two feed wheels adapted to positively engage a perforated film.

1017

In order to make this point clear, let us imagine that the upper pair of feed rollers that draw film from the upper supply reel were provided with sprocket teeth that would engage the perforations in the film, and that all other parts of the machinery were left unmodified; with such construction it is obvious that with the sprocket teeth bearing upon the slender parts of the film that lie between adjacent sprocket holes, these slender parts would have to sustain the entire strain caused by the friction drag of the continually rotating friction wheels, supplemented by the drag of the takeup reel as transmitted through the spring arm at the moment when all of the surplus film had been taken up and when the film was jerked taut by the intermittently acting devices against the upper toothed feed roll. This strain would invariably result in tearing out the sprocket holes of the film, if not on the occasion of the first time the film was run through the machine, then, certainly after a few repetitions of its use.

Let us suppose now that, in the second instance, the machine remained exactly as it was originally, except that the quickly running lower feed wheels located below the clamp were provided with sprocket teeth that engaged the film. In this case, it is perfectly evident that when the clamp seized the film and stopped it from moving, the continued revolution of the sprocket wheels must inevitably immediately tear out the sprocket holes in the film.

Let us finally suppose that both sets of feed rollers were equipped with sprocket feeds. Then, it is obvious that both of the results before indicated would occur simultaneously and to an increased degree. It is evident, therefore, that the construction of the Chinnock machine renders it fundamentally incapable of being operated with positively acting toothed feed wheels. It will be noticed as another feature of this machine that the intermittently operating feed wheels located below the clamp have nothing whatever to do with

1020

measuring the quantity of film that is advanced past the exposure window at each cycle of the operation, the quantity of film so advanced being determined, as before stated, by the feed of the upper feed rollers, modified by the drag of the upper supply reel and the drag of the lower feed wheels and the lower take-up reel and the tension of the clamp.

Q162. Have you examined and do you understand the construction and operation of the apparatus disclosed in the French patent to Marey of 1890, Defendants' Exhibit No. 15? A. I have and I do.

1022

Q163. Will you please compare the structure of that Marey patent with the structure of the Latham patent in suit, and point out any similarities or differences that occur to you as pertinent? A. The Marey French patent of 1890 embodies a mechanism for supporting and moving a quantity of film. The structure embodies first, two supports for the bulk of the film, a fixed support adapted to hold the supply of film before it has been used, and a frictionally rotated support adapted to receive the film after it has passed through the machine. Between these two supports is an exposare window, and between the exposure window and the take-up support or reel is a pair of continuously running frictional rollers, between which the film passes and by which it is pinched and fed. Adjacent to the exposure window is a clamping device adapted and geared to intermittently clamp the film and hold it stationary, and between the clamping device and the frictional feed rollers before described, is a spring arm or tension device. The operation of the machine is as follows: As the parts revolve, the frictional feed rollers draw

film from the supply reel through the exposure window and through the clamping device and around the tension member and deliver it to the take-up reel, the frictional revolution of which winds the film up as it comes from the supply When the intermittently operating clamp acts, it seizes the film near the exposure window and holds it stationary, while the take-up reel continues to feed film forward by stretching it around the tension member and deflecting the tension member, thus exposing the film to strain. When the pressure plate is released, the combined action of the tension member, the continuous feed rollers and the frictionally driven take-up reel pulls quickly forward a more or less indefinite quantity of film from the supply reel through the exposure window, the tension member during this process returning apparently to its approximately original position. The clamping member then acts again and clamps the film, the motion of which is thereby arrested, and this cycle is continued indefinitely. During the interval when the film is at rest in the exposure window, a photographic image may be registered on the film, and thus a series of photographs of an object in motion may be impressed upon successive portions of the film with more or less irregularity. This device is not capable of being used for motion picture projection by the projection of a series of photographs of successive phases of moving objects arranged in succession along the film, because no means are provided for insuring accurate registration of successive images at the exposure window. The film at all times is exposed to severe strain and tension.

Q164. Have you examined and do you understand the structure set forth and shown in the

1025

Marey French patent of 1893, being Defendants' Exhibit No. 18? A. I have and I do.

Q165. Will you please describe briefly the structure of that patent, as you understand it? A. The Marey patent of 1893 discloses a structure suitable for supporting and moving a body of film. The structure of this Marey patent of 1893 only differs from the structure of the Marey patent of 1890 in that the continuously running feed rollers, which in the patent of 1890, are located between the clamping device and the take-up reel, in the patent of 1893 are located between the supply reel and the clamping device. The operation of the device is as follows:

1028

Assume that the clamping device is operating and holding the film stationary, adjacent to the exposure window, the frictionally driven take-up reel is then rotating and winding up film by drawing it taut against the clamping device and deflecting the spring arm or tension device located between the clamp and the take-up reel. time, the continuously running frictional feed rollers are drawing off film from the supply roller, which film is accumulating in the form of slack between these frictional rollers and the clamping device. When the clamping device is released, the combined operation of the frictionally driven takeup reel and the spring tension device, is to drag the film quickly through the clamp and exposure window and draw it taut against the frictional feed rollers, and the film continues to feed through the clamp and exposure window, with such speed as the frictionally driven feed rollers and the supply reel permit; the film at this instant being taut throughout its whole length from the supply reel to the take-up reel and exposed to more or less

severe tension between the take-up reel and the frictional feed rollers. The motion of the film is again arrested by the action of the clamp and the operation repeated indefinitely. The mechanism may possibly be used for obtaining a series of photographs of moving objects upon a film by making photographic impressions at the exposure window during the period when the film is stationary. The structure, however, is not adapted to be used for motion picture projection by projecting a series of motion pictures arranged upon that film, because there is no means indicated for bringing each successive picture into accurate registration before the exposure window. The feed of the film being largely dependent upon the combination of a number of simultaneously acting variable forces, namely, the frictional drag of the take-up reel, the varying tension of the take-up spring, the varying frictional gripping contact of the clamp, the varying frictional feed and the continuously running feed rollers, the inertia of the supply reel and the varying thickness of the film and the frictional condition of the surface of the If the continuously operating feed rollers film. in this device were replaced by sprocket wheels engaging holes in the edges of the film, the remainder of the structure remaining unchanged, the result would doubtless be to tear out or injure the bridges between the sprocket holes in the film at the time the grip was released and the film was jerked forward by the combined action of the frictionally driven take-up reel and the spring tension device, which at that time would jerk the film suddenly against the sprocket teeth. In the device in this patent there are no positively acting toothed feeding wheels for withdrawing the film from the supply reel and delivering the film to the winding

1031

reel, no slack portion of the film between the film feeding wheel and the delivery reel and no positively acting toothed intermittent wheels, acting intermittently to feed the slack portions of the film.

Recess until 1:45.

After recess at 2:00 P. M.

HARRY NORTON MARVIN, resumes the 1034 stand.

Direct Examination by Mr. Church (continued):

Q166. Have you examined and do you understand the construction and operation of the structure shown in the Gray patent of 1895, Defendants' Exhibit 25, and if so, please explain the same? A. I have and I do. The Gray patent of 1895 discloses a structure for supporting and moving a quantity of film. The structure consists of two supports for the bulk of the film, one a fixed support adapted to receive and hold the film before use and the other a fixed support adapted to receive and hold the film after use. Adjacent to the rolls of film upon the two supports, and coacting therewith, are positively driven frictional contact rollers bearing against the rolls of film, and operating to respectively wind the film off from the supply reel and wind the film onto the receiving reel by co-acting with the respective rolls of film and their supports.

Between these two supports for the film are arranged two similar intermittently acting feeding devices, each comprising a pair of hooks traveling

back and forth along the film with a reciprocating motion and intended to be adapted to move the film by the engagement of their teeth with the perforations in the film.

These two intermittently acting feeding devices are designed to operate alternately, one feeding while the other is not feeding. It is evidently the intention of the patentee to indicate that, by the action of these two intermittently acting feeding devices, that portion of the film between the supports will be intermittently advanced. Adjacent the hooks of each intermittently acting feeding device is an exposure window at which the film is apparently supposed to be held stationary for a portion of the time including that part of the time when the hooks are returning from one stroke in order to engage with the succeeding set of holes in the film.

The action of the device is supposed to be as follows: The effect of the positively driven continuously rotating frictional feed roller that bears against the supply roll of film unwinds the film and provides an indefinite amount of slack film in advance of the first intermittently acting feeding device.

The intermittently acting feeding device engages the holes of the film and pulls the film downward, or away from the supply reel intermittently while the second intermittently acting feeding device engages the film behind the first intermittent device and pulls forward at each operation a quantity of film equal to that previously pulled forward by the other intermittently acting feeding device.

The positively driven frictional roller that bears against the take-up reel of film revolves the roll and winds onto it the film supplied by the second intermittently operating feed device.

1037

The patent indicates a proposed method by which this structure may be employed for the purpose of photographing upon successive portions of the film a succession of images and moving objects. These objects are photographed in two series, one series being photographed upon the film at one exposure window and the other series being photographed upon the film at the other exposure window, the path of the film being deflected between the two windows so that these series of photographs form two sequences of images arranged lengthwise upon the film side by side.

1040

It is apparent that this device could not be successfully used for manipulating a body of film of considerable magnitude such as is necessary to use in the commercial projection of motion pictures because the feeding of the frictional rollers in contact with the rolls of film with the supply and takeup supports, would be so uncertain in its operation that one of two results would happen. In the first place, considering the action of the supply reel, the frictional feed from this reel would be either too little, in which case the film would be torn by the action of the hooks in their effort to pull downward the film against the drag of the entire mass of film upon the supply reel, or else the feed would be too great, in which case the film would accumulate in a loop between the window and the supply reel and thus eventually clog the machine and become tangled and break.

1041

Second, in case of the take-up reel, the feed would be either too much, in which case the film would be drawn taut and out of register when the reciprocating hooks were returning for another grip, and the hooks would therefore not engage in the succeeding holes of the film and the machine would cease to operate, or else the feed would be too little, in which case slack film would accumulate and become tangled and clog the machine, either of which results would be fatal to the satisfactory operation of the machine for projection.

The drawings of the patent do not appear to have been made from an operative model for the following reasons: First, no provision is indicated for protecting the sensitized film from the action of light other than that forming the image at the exposure window and, secondly, because no means are indicated for withdrawing the reciprocating hooks from the perforations at the end of a stroke so that they may return for engagement in the successive holes. In order to cure this defect, it would be necessary either to provide means not shown for withdrawing the hooks from the perforations in the film at the end of the stroke or for putting sufficient tension upon the film at the end of the stroke so that the beveled hooks would rise out of the holes. No such means are shown.

But whether the Gray device could be made to operate or not, it certainly does not show positively acting toothed feeding wheels for withdrawing the film from the film supply reel, or delivering the film to a winding reel, or any slack portion of the film between two such film feeding wheels, nor a toothed intermediate wheel acting intermittently to feed the slack portion of the film positively.

Q167. Have you examined and do you understand the British patent to Greene and Evans of 1889, being Defendants' Exhibit 12, and if you do, will you please briefly describe your understanding of the mechanism therein shown? A. I have and I do. The Greene and Evans patent embodies a mechanism for supporting and moving a quantity

1043

of film. The structure embraces two supports for the bulk of the film, a fixed support adapted to hold the supply of film before it has been used and a frictional rotating support adapted to receive the film after it has passed through the machine. Between these two supports is an exposure window. Adjacent to the fixed support for the supply of unused film is located a frictional roller adapted to give frictional contact with the reel of film upon the fixed support, and by frictional contact to rotate this reel of film so as to feed the film off from the reel.

1046

The patent discloses two methods of mounting and driving this frictional feed roller, one method constituting an intermittent frictional drive and the other a continuous positive drive. Beyond the exposure window there is an intermittently acting spring driven roller having toothed projections adapted to nip the film frictionally, but not to per-The operation of the device is as follows: The rotation of the main shaft operates to wind up the spring drive on the intermittently acting spring driven feed device and at the same time pay off an indefinite quantity of film from the supply reel. In the meantime, the frictionally driven take-up reel is pulling the film taut between the intermittently acting feed device and itself. When the intermittently acting spring driven feeding device operates, it pulls through the exposure window a certain amount of film, taking up all, or a part, of the slack film that has been fed over from the supply reel, and possibly straining the film taut against the supply reel. This action continues until the intermittently acting spring driven feed device has made a complete revolution. In the meantime the frictionally driven take-up reel starts to

wind up the slack film supplied by the intermittently acting spring driven feeding device and continues to act until all of the film advanced by the intermittent device has been taken up with a jerk, again straining the film.

This device may be employed for obtaining a series of photographs of moving objects arranged in sequence along the film by making suitable photographic exposures at the exposure window during the period when the film is at rest. This device would not produce uniformly spaced pictures and could not be used for motion picture projection by the projection of a series of photographs of successive phases of moving objects arranged in succession along the film, since no means are indicated for insuring accurate registration of successive images at the exposure window.

The operation of this device would expose the film to a succession of more or less severe jerks or strains.

Q168. There are three patents relating to the manipulation of a web of paper in a printing press, which have been offered by the defendants, namely, the patent to Kidder of 1880, marked Defendants' Exhibit 5, the patent to Eckerson of 1890, being Defendants' Exhibit 6, and the patent to Cox of November 14th, 1893, being Defendants' Exhibit 7. State whether you have examined these patents and are familiar with the structures therein disclosed? A. I have examined them and am familiar with the structures therein disclosed.

Q169. Will you please give us a description of the relevant parts of those structures, taking up each patent in turn? A. These patents all relate to printing presses, a class of machinery quite distinct from the mechanism employed in the motion picture art. These printing presses are ordi-

1049

narily bulky machines comparatively slow acting, and the necessity for microscopic registration that exists in this motion picture apparatus is entirely absent in printing presses.

United States patent to Kidder of 1880 discloses supports for the bulk of a roll of paper suitable for receiving impressions in a printing press. Between these supports there is provided a frictional intermittent feed that feeds the paper along by a frictional engagement with an intermittent mo-Between the supply reel and this intermittent feeding device is indicated a frictional feeding device comprised of two small rollers running frictional contact with each other, between which it is arranged that the paper shall pass and by rotation of which it is assumed that the paper will be constantly drawn from the supply reel and This friction feeding device, from fed forward. its nature, cannot feed the paper uniformly and positively, as a certain amount of slippage is bound to occur that will vary from time to time. In fact, in the patent, adjustment devices are provided by means of which the operator may from time to time modify or correct the quantity of paper fed forward from the delivery reel so that the operator obviously may, by personal attention, maintain a suitable amount of slack paper between the delivery reel and the intermittent feed.

Means are also indicated for modifying from time to time, as the machine operates, the quantity of slack paper between the intermittent frictional feed and the take-up reel. But the take-up reelicself acts to wind up the paper, and no device independent of the take-up reel is indicated for taking up slack paper and delivering it to a take-up reel.

1052

The device is not intended to be used for perforated paper, nor would it operate continuously and automatically if any of the feed rollers were provided with teeth that engaged with holes cut into the paper.

United States patent to Eckerson of 1890 indicates also a printing machine mechanism. In this machine a supply of paper in the form of a roll is carried on a support, from which support it is drawn with an intermittent motion by means of frictional feed rollers that revolve with an intermittent motion and whose function it is to supply an indefinite quantity of slack paper, which, after passing through a frictional drag, is supposed to be acted upon by an intermittently acting feeding After the paper passes through the machine it may be cut into sheets or rolled upon a frictionally driven reel after passing through a frictional tension device, the purpose of which is apparently to equalize the drag of the frictional take-up reel upon the intermittent feeding device.

The mechanism here disclosed is obviously not adapted to the manipulation of a perforated sheet of paper by engagement with the perforations and could not be so adapted by the substitution of toothed wheels for the smooth frictional rollers employed for the reasons stated in the testimony

on the Kidder patent.

United States Patent to Cox of 1893 also discloses a printing machine mechanism. The entire structure and operation of this device is so absolutely different from the mechanism of the patent in suit and so obviously could not be employed for the purpose of moving a motion picture film for the purpose of projection that more detailed criticism seems unnecessary.

1055

Q170. Have you read and do you understand the patent to Thomas Armat, No. 673,992 of May 14, 1901, Defendants' Exhibit 31, and if so will you please describe the structure therein represented so far as it relates to the means for sustaining and feeding the film, and after you have done that, will you please compare it with the structure of the Latham patent in suit and state the result of that comparison? A. I have and I do. United States Patent to Armat of 1901 indicates a mechanism for supporting and moving a body of flexible film for the purposes of motion picture projection. The mechanism comprises supports for the film before and after exposure, the film before exposure being mounted upon a fixed support and after exposure being received upon a frictionally rotated support.

Between the supports of the film are located two continuously rotating toothed drums, the teeth of which are adapted to engage with holes cut in the edges of the film. The film passes from the supply reel partly around the upper continuously rotating toothed feeding wheel and thence across an exposure window, and then partly around the lower continuously rotating toothed feeding wheel from which it passes to the receiving reel. Between the two continuous feeding wheels and below the exposure window, is located a disc having thereon an eccentrically placed pin constituting a cam so arranged that by its revolution it shall press against the film and distort the path of the film from the exposure window to the take-up reel during a part of the revolution of the eccentric pin.

The operation of the machine is as follows: Assuming that the eccentric pin is not in contact with the film, the upper feeding reel is drawing film

1058

from the supply reel and delivering it in the form of a loop above the exposure window. The lower feeding wheel is taking up the slack from below the exposure window and delivering it to the takeup reel.

As the eccentric pin revolves it strikes against the film between the exposure window and the lower feeding roller and as it continues to revolve the eccentric pin draws down film through the exposure window. The eccentric pin by its continued revolution intermittently draws down successive portions of the film through the exposure window. the film at the time of its being drawn being made taut between the exposure window and the lower feeding wheel. It will be noted that this structure differs from the structure of the patent in suit in that the intermittent feed of the slack portion of the film is accomplished by the frictional contact of the eccentric pin or cam with the surface of the film. and not by the engagement of the teeth of an intermittently rotating member.

This structure could obviously be used for motion picture projections by projecting a series of pictures arranged upon a strip, but it is not as well adapted to that purpose as the structure shown in the patent in suit.

The exact amount of film drawn down by each revolution of the eccentric roller, or beater, as it is commonly called, depends upon the frictional tension upon that portion of the film that lies between the two continuously operating feeding rollers. The Armat structure indicates two tension members, one of which is supposed to be intermittently relieved during the time when the beater is drawing down the film. The film by the action of this device, in consequence of the rapidity with which it must operate, is drawn down rapidly, and if

1061

the tension in the tension devices is arranged very lightly so that little friction is given to the film, the film is likely to overrun by its momentum. If, on the contrary, the tension is excessive, the film is likely to be stretched between the continuously running feed wheel below the window and the window itself where the tension device is located.

Varying conditions of the surface of the film operate to increase these errors so that the device, while capable of giving a motion picture exhibition, is not as well suited to the conditions of practical use as the mechanism disclosed in the Latham patent. Great nicety of adjustment, great care in maintaining adjustments, are necessary in the structures of the class disclosed by the Armat patent.

1064

Q171. What would be the result of the repeated use of a motion picture film in a projecting machine such as disclosed in the Armat patent as contrasted with the result of the repeated use of the same film when used in an apparatus constructed in accordance with the disclosures of the Latham patent in suit? A. The result of the repeated use of a motion picture film in a structure like that disclosed in the Armat patent would be to wear out and destroy the film very much more quickly than it would be worn out or destroyed by the repeated use in a structure like that shown in the The beater roller that Latham patent in suit. draws down the film intermittently in the Armat patent rubs against the surface of the film and the effect of its repeated action is to scratch the surface of the film and, in projection, these scratches seriously mar the projecting picture so that eventually the picture is practically destroyed. effect of the scratches that appear on the picture is like an apparent rainstorm which is a result very

familiar to those who have witnessed motion picture exhibitions.

In order, apparently, to protect the part of the film where the perforations are made, the inventor indicates in Fig. 8 that the ends of the roller that would ordinarily rub against the film in line with the perforations may be cut away so as to relieve this portion of the film from wear and tear of the blows and rubbing action of the beater. But this remedy would serve to intensify the destructive action of the beater upon the picture bearing surface of the film.

1067

Q172. In what way? A. By scratching it and defacing it.

Q173. Are there on the market projecting machines constructed in accordance with this Armat patent of which you have any knowledge? A. Not to my knowledge.

Q174. At the present day, would it be regarded as a practical device as contrasted with the device constructed as shown in the Latham patent in suit, I mean, commercially practicable? A. I should not consider it so.

1068

Q175. Do you find in this Armat patent any description or indication that Armat ever intended to use an intermittent toothed feeding device in the place of his beater? A. I do not.

Q176. Do you find in the patent any disclosure of modifications of the beater device, and if so, how many? A. I find in the patent a disclosure of several modifications of the beater construction, namely, those indicated in Figs. 9, 10 and 11 of the patent which are additional to the structure indicated in Fig. 2 of the patent.

Q177. Would you regard it as a forward or backward step of the art to now employ a device such as is shown in the Armat patent with this beater arrangement as contrasted with the positive toothed feeding arrangement of the Latham patent in suit? A. The use of the beater device of the Armat patent would, in my opinion, certainly be a step backward in the art and if universally so adopted would result in serious detriment to the art.

Q178. Turning now to the Joly French patent, No. 249,875, Exhibit 27, dated August 26th, 1895, the construction of the device shown in that patplease state whether you have read and understand ent? A. I have and I do.

1070

Q179. Will you give a brief description of the material parts of the mechanism of that patent that are adapted to sustain and feed the film? As the drawing of the corresponding United States patent to Joly, No. 569,875, Defendants' Exhibit 29, is somewhat clearer than the drawing of the French patent, I will ask you to have that before you in making your answer. A. The patent to Joly to which you have referred discloses a mechanism for handling a quantity of flexible film comprising two supports for the bulk of the film, a fixed support for receiving the film before exposure and a frictionally driven take-up support for receiving the film after exposure, and two continuously operating rotary-toothed feeding reels, one designed to draw film from the upper support and deliver it into a form of a loop above an exposure window. Below the exposure window is a reciprocating device, the operation of which tends to distort the path of the film below the exposure Below this reciprocating device is another continuously running toothed-feeding device engaging holes in the film, that delivers film con-

tinuously to the lower friction take-up reel. The reciprocating device located below the exposure window operates to intermittently feed the film across the exposure window in a manner substantially the same as that indicated in the Armat patent to which I have just referred. The general plan of operation of the Joly apparatus in respect to the movement of the film is substantially the same as that of the Armat patent above referred to.

1073

Q180. And does Joly, in either his French or in his United States patent, suggest the use of a toothed intermittent feeding device instead of his beater arrangement? A. He does not.

Q181. In the United States patent to Joly, No. 569,875, an alternative form of intermittent feeding device is apparently described. I refer to page 2 of the patent, lines 85 to 89, inclusive. Will you read on the record that description and state what you understand it to refer to? A. The statement appearing in the specification is as follows:

1074

"The frame N can (without departing from "the invention) be replaced by an eccentric "roller which will communicate to the film the "same movement as the frame."

I understand this to be a suggestion that the reciprocating, or oscillating frame, through which the film passes below the exposure window, and the oscillation of which serves to deflect the course of the film and thus draw it through the exposure window, may be replaced by an eccentric roller, the revolution of which will produce upon the film the same effect as the oscillating frame, the two structures being substantially identical in their operation.

Q182. Have you examined the Casler patent, No. 466,495, being Defendant's Exhibit 33, and if you have, do you understand the construction and operation of the apparatus therein disclosed? A. I have and I do.

Q183. Will you please make a brief description of so much of that apparatus as relates to the support and feeding of the film and then make a comparison of it with the apparatus of the Latham patent in suit, and state the result of such comparison? A. The Casler patent of 1901 discloses a mechanism for supporting and feeding a quantity of flexible film. This apparatus is designed to handle unperforated film. It comprises an upper and a lower support for the bulk of the film, between which supports is located an exposure winlow. Adjacent to the exposure window is an intermittently operated clamp adapted to pinch the film and prevent its movement. Between the supports are two continuously operating frictional feed wheels, one located adjacent to the upper support and adapted to draw film continuously from the upper support, the other being located adjacent to the lower support and adapted to continuously deliver the film to the lower support. these two sets of continuously operating feed wheels is another set of continuously operating friction rollers, between which the film passes, and by which the film is gripped. The operation of the machine is as follows: The revolution of the upper friction feeding rollers draws the film from the supply reel and delivers it in the form of a loop above the exposure window where the film is clamped fast by the intermittently acting clamp. In the meantime the continuous feed rollers lecated below the exposure window are revolving

1076

and straining the film taut between the clamp and themselves. And the lower continuously feeding friction roller is taking up the slack film that exists between the continuously running feed rollers below the exposure window and itself and delivering film to the frictionally driven take-up reel.

When the clamp at the window operates and releases the film, it is drawn downward rapidly across the exposure window by the continuously running friction rollers located below the window. These rollers run at a higher peripheral velocity than do the other continuously feeding rollers, so that by their operation they pull out slack that has accumulated above the exposure window and strain the film taut against the upper feed rollers. They then continue to pull down the film as rapidly as it is delivered by the upper feed rollers until the intermittently acting clamp again seizes the film and stops its motion.

In this patent, means are indicated by which the relative rotation of the feed wheels and the operation of the clamp may be varied from time to time by the operator in order that the successive variations in the pitch of the successive pictures may be corrected so that the creep of the film before the exposure window may be avoided, thus enabling the operator to maintain the successive pictures continuously in registration before the exposure window.

This structure differs from the structure of the Latham patent in suit in that it discloses no toothed rotary feeding device that engages with holes in the edges of the film separate and distinct from the supports, and that feeds the film positive-

1079

ly and regularly, and no rotary toothed intermittently acting feeding devices.

This device of the Casler patent is adapted to be used in projecting a series of pictures on a film by means of the continual manipulation of the operator, but it is not adapted to automatically project a series of motion pictures, because no means are indicated for automatically maintaining the presentation of successive pictures in register at the exposure window.

Q184. Without asking you specifically to describe the structures disclosed by the following patents offered in evidence by the defendant, namely, the Le Prince patent No. 376,247, Defendants' Exhibit 11; the Edison patent No. 491,993, Defendants' Exhibit 21; the Edison patent No. 493,426, Defendants' Exhibit 22; the Edison patent No. 589,168, Defendants' Exhibit 23; the Mayer patent No. 525,991, Defendants' Exhibit 24, and the Latham patent No. 600,113, Defendants' Exhibit 34, I will ask you whether you are familiar with those patents and the structures therein described, and whether or not the structures of any of those patents embody the combination of toothed feeding wheels for drawing from independent supports and delivering film to independent supports, and an intermediate toothed feeding wheel for causing an intermittent feed of a slack portion of the film between the toothed feeding devices? A. I am familiar with those patents and none of them disclose a mechanism embodying the elements that you have described.

Q185. Taken as a whole, what improvement or advantage, if any, does the structure of the Latham patent in suit present over any individual structure shown in any individual patent or structure 1082

of the prior art to which your attention has been directed?

Mr. Jeffery: I object unless the question will be limited to the structure which is described in claim 7 in suit.

Mr. Church: The witness may limit his answer to that structure.

1085

A. The Latham patent in suit discloses a structure that is superior to any structure disclosed in any of the patents to which reference has been made, in the means for manipulating a body of flexible film of considerable bulk so as to feed it across an exposure window intermittently with positive quick movement without subjecting the film at any part, or at any time, to any severe tension or strain and to move the film intermittently across the exposure window in a manner uniform as to equally space perforations along the edges of the film, and independent of the linear dimension of the film as affecting the pitch of the perforations.

1086

This mechanism is further adapted to so move the film automatically and without the continued manipulation or adjustment of any part of the mechanism other than supplying of power by hand or otherwise to the main shaft.

Q186. What are the physical elements of this mechanism by which the result you speak of is attained? A. The physical elements are first two supports for the bulk of the film, a fixed support adapted to receive the film before use and a frictionally rotated support adapted to receive the film after use. Between these supports and entirely disconnected from them are two toothed rotary feed wheels adapted to continuously draw

film from the supply reel and deliver it to the take-up reel, and to respectively produce and take up slack film, and an intermittently acting rotary toothed feeding device located between the two continuously operating toothed feeding devices and adjacent to an exposure window, and adapted to feed the film across the exposure window with an intermittent motion; all of these feeding devices having teeth adapted to engage equally spaced perforations made in the edges of the film.

Q187. When in your testimony you have spoken of a maintained slack portion, or maintained loop, or loops, what do you mean, and how is the maintained slack or the maintained loops provided in the actual operation of the machine? A. By the maintained loops referred to in the description of this mechanism and its operation, is meant the quantity of slack film that exists between the upper pair of continuously running toothed feed wheels and the intermittently operating toothed feed wheel, and between the lower pair of continuously running toothed feed wheels and the intermittently operating toothed feed wheel. This slack or loop of film is adjusted by the operator when he threads the machine. It may be of any convenient magnitude.

After the machine has been threaded and the machine started in operation, the total quantity of the slack film between the two sets of continuously operating toothed feeding wheels never varies, but this slack portion is intermittently fed across the exposure window. The purpose of this loop, or slack portion of film above and below the exposure window is to relieve the film from strain under the action of the intermittent feeding device and establishes, with reference to the movement of the

1088

film, substantially the same condition that would exist were the film only a few inches in length instead of being possibly a thousand feet in length, as is customary in commercial practice.

But no matter how long the film and how large the bulk of film contained upon the supports, the total weight of film to be manipulated by the intermittent device consists always only in that slack portion which lies between the two continuously feeding devices.

1091

Q188. What is the function and purpose of the so-called framing device in a projecting machine? A. The framing device is a device which is added to the machine proper for the purpose of facilitating the handling of the machine by the operator. It will be noted in all of these devices to which reference has been made that there is what is called an exposure window, an exposure opening. When the device is used for the purpose of projection, the projection is made when the picture upon the film is held stationary in front of this window. It is obvious that if the picture is held in front of the window in such a way that the picture does not perfectly match the window, but that the dividing line between adjacent pictures appears at the window, this will be produced upon the screen where the projection is made, and instead of the screen showing one picture it will show parts of two pictures.

1092

It is obvious from a study of this mechanism as disclosed, for example, in the Latham structure, that when a perforated film having thereon a series of equally spaced pictures is threaded into this machine, the operator must exercise care in order to have the picture just match the exposure window. It is common practice, in fact universal practice, to have four perforations on each side of the film for each picture. When the operator fits the picture over the teeth of the sprocket wheels it is obvious that if he fits the film over the teeth of the intermittent sprocket wheel, which is then at rest, in such a way as to have one picture completely match the exposure window, the picture would be properly projected upon the screen. If, on the other hand, he should carelessly move the film along one or two holes so as to have parts of two pictures in the exposure window, the parts of two pictures would be projected on the screen and the result would be bad. Therefore the operator in threading up the machine must exercise care and place the film properly in register with the exposure window. But it frequently happens that several scenes of motion pictures of several hundred feet in length, or perhaps less, are spliced together, and it is obvious that when such pictures or films are spliced together by gluing, that in splicing them care must be exercised so as to maintain the register of successive pictures. If an error is made in splicing so that where two successive scenes are joined, adjacent pictures do not follow each other in proper sequence, then when such a film is passed through the projecting machine, when we arrive at the splice, the picture will get out of register with the exposure window.

Before framing devices were used, it was necessary for the operator in such a case, to stop the machine and re-thread it so as to bring the picture into proper register with the exposure window when he could continue again until he came to another break. It would also sometimes happen when machines were badly constructed, or badly worn, or a film was in bad condition, that

1094

sometimes a film would jump on the sprocket teeth and automatically get out of register. This occurred but seldom, but sometimes it did occur, and when it did occur it necessitated the stoppage of the exhibition for the purpose of again registering the picture with the exposure window.

In order to avoid that trouble, it has been customary to apply to the machine means for shifting the relative position of the exposure window with the film while the machine was running with-

out necessitating stopping the machine. This has been accomplished in a variety of ways but the device for accomplishing this is commonly known as a framing device. The framing device in no way modifies or affects the projection of the series of pictures on a film so long as the sequence of pictures is uninterrupted and the machine and film

ever to do with the successive registration of the successive pictures in the series. It is simply, as I have stated, a device to enable the operator to practically re-thread the machine, or accomplish the same result that could be accomplished by re-threading it, in order to bring the single picture in register with the exposure window without stopping the machine.

operate in a normal manner. It is only called into use when an abnormal condition arises and when it is necessary to correct an error that has arisen in the way I have described. It has nothing what-

Q189. Does the so-called framing device modify the action of the mechanism for supporting and feeding the film at all? A. Not the slightest degree.

Q190. What is the difference between the shutter commonly employed on projecting machines and the shutter commonly employed on a camera, a mo-

1097

tion picture camera? A. Well, in the case of a shutter employed on a projecting machine, the relative size of the opening of the shutter and the opaque part of the shutter is ordinarily fixed and is not adjustable; that is to say, in a projecting machine shutter, the opening may constitute fifty per cent, of the total circumference of the shutter, the other fifty per cent. being opaque. This open part may be divided into two or more subdivisions by the introduction of intermediate opaque parts, or may not, as the case may be. In the shutter for a camera, however, the opening is ordinarily made adjustable, so that the angular size of the opening may be varied from time to time according to the conditions under which objects are to be photographed. This shutter is commonly made adjustable from an opening of fifty per cent, down to a mere slit. Now, in practice, it is customary to use snutter openings varying from ten per cent. of the circumference up to fifty per cent. of the circumference, so that in making a picture of a slow moving object on a dark day, an operator would probably use a shutter opening of approximately fifty per cent., in which case the magnitude of the opening would be precisely the same as the magnitude of the opening in shutters commonly used in projecting machines. On the other hand, if the operator wanted to photograph a rapidly moving object in brilliant sunlight, he would be likely to reduce the shutter opening to about ten or fifteen per cent.

Q191. State whether or not there is any shrinkage or change of dimensions of a motion picture strip after it has been taken out of the motion picture camera and developed? A. There is. A motion picture negative, on being developed,

1100

shrinks considerably. The shrinkage, however, is variable, and depends to some extent upon the method of treatment in developing and in drying.

Q192. At what rate are motion pictures ordinarily taken and projected at the present time? A. About sixteen pictures per second.

Q193. What was the rate in 1895, for instance? A. In 1895?

Q194. 1895? A. In 1895, the practice was to run at a higher speed, upwards of thirty per second; sometimes forty per second in the Edison kinetoscope.

Q195. Mr. Marvin, have you had any practical experience in the operation of cameras or project ing machines, which used purely friction devices for manipulating the film strip? A. I have.

Q196. In cameras having such frictionally driven mechanism, are the pictures produced equally or unequally spaced? A. In frictionally driven cameras they are always unevenly spaced. I know that very extensive, very serious, efforts have been made under my direction to overcome that difficulty. But in spite of a variety of devices and the greatest possible refinement in the mechanism, I have never known it to be possible to produce a frictionally operated camera that would produce uniformly spaced pictures.

Q197. Where friction devices were employed in a camera and unequally spaced pictures resulted, what expedient, if any, was adopted to produce the positives that would be equally spaced? A. The process of producing equally spaced positives from unequally spaced negatives was a little involved. In the beginning, it involves the—

Q198. I do not ask you to go into all the details, but just state the result. A. I can tell it briefly, I think.

1104

Q199. Yes? A. In order to obtain uniformly spaced positives from irregularly spaced negatives, it was necessary to perforate the negative film with registry holes at the time the photographic exposure was made. These registry holes were subsequently used in a special printing machine to correct the irregularities in the spacing of the negative, and to print regularly spaced positives. These regularly spaced positives were then suitable to be

used in special projecting machines.

Q200. When you got your regularly spaced positives and used them in projecting machines, in which the film was frictionally driven, what then did you have to do to keep the pictures uniform in register with the exposure opening? A. In spite of the greatest efforts, we found it impossible to produce a frictionally feeding projecting machine to handle unperforated films that would maintain the successive pictures in register at the exposure window, for no matter how perfectly the machine was constructed and how perfect the spacing of the positive pictures upon the film, we found that the accumulating errors of registration would constantly operate to make the picture appear to crawl up or down on the screen. For example, supposing we should set the frictional feed device so as to feed the height of one picture as exactly as we could -but in practice we might find that it was feeding one-thousandth of an inch too much. thousandth of an inch would be negligible between adjacent pictures, but after we had progressed ten pictures it would amount to ten one-thousandths, and after we had fed a thousand pictures it would amount to an inch, which would be the total height of the picture. We found it impossible to so adjust the machine that it would continue to feed

1106

perfectly. The machine was, as you may express it, in a condition of unstable equilibrium. In order to correct this and to make it possible to use the frictionally driven machines with unperforated film, we resorted to the expedient of putting in a regulating device by which the feed of the machine could be constantly varied. Then, as the operator watched the picture upon the screen, when he found the picture beginning to creep up a little, he moved his handle down, and that changed the feed of the machine a trifle so that the picture would commence to travel down, and when it got down a little ways, he would move it up again, and then the picture would commence to travel up, so that the picture projected by a frictionally driven device of that kind always appeared to gradually seesaw up and down the screen a little, and could only be made approximately central by the continued vigilance of the operator. If he were to leave the machine for the fraction of a minute, the picture would creep entirely off.

1110

1109

Cross Examination by Mr. Jeffery:

XQ201. Mr. Marvin, a good deal of the testimony you gave here to-day with respect to the prior patents and the Chinnock machine was read from notes, was it not? A. Yes.

XQ202. And I take it you prepared those notes yourself? A. I did. I dictated them.

XQ203. They have not been revised since you dictated them by anyone except yourself? A. They have not been revised. Mr. Church read them over. In one or two cases he changed a word or two, grammatically; but the substance is the same identically as when I dictated them first.

XQ204. When did you dictate them first? A. I dictated them, I guess, about two weeks ago.

XQ205. That was before you had heard Mr. Hammer's description of these same devices of the machine? A. Oh, yes.

XQ206. Now, is it your opinion that the Latham device is adapted to be used on a camera? A. On a camera?

XQ207. Yes. A. Yes. What I understand you to mean by the Latham device—

XQ208. I mean the device shown in the Latham patent, and the device which you claim is set forth in the seventh claim of that patent? A. Yes, sir.

XQ209. You were familiar with the suit of your Company against the Independent Motion Picture Company, were you not? A. Generally familiar, yes, sir.

XQ210. You testified as a witness in that case?

A. I don't know whether I did or not. I am not sure. I want to be honest about it. I think probably I did.

XQ211. Yes, your name is here in the complainant's testimony, page 384? A. Yes.

XQ212. Do you remember that you testified in that case with respect to certain suits which you said had been brought by the American Mutascope and Biograph Company after its acquisition of the Latham patent against a number of concerns which you named? A. Yes.

XQ213. You said that some of the suits were for the use of infringing cameras, and some for the use of infringing projecting machines; is that right? A. Yes.

XQ214. And do you remember the device which in the suit against the Independent Company was claimed to be an infringement and was testified

1112

to by your expert as being an infringement? A. That was the—I think there were two, the Warwick—

XQ215. The Warwick camera was at least one of the devices claimed to infringe in that suit, was it not? A. Yes.

XQ216. And do you remember the intermittent device used in the Warwick camera? A. Yes.

XQ217. What was it? A. It was a reciprocating hook.

1115 XQ218. A reciprocating hook? A. Yes; for the intermittent movement.

XQ219. It was a hook which engaged in the holes of the film and pulled it along? A. Yes.

XY220. Are the feed rollers positively driven in the Chinnock machine? A. Yes, I believe they are positively driven.

XQ221. Now, what do you mean by "positive engagement" of the film in your reference to the Chinnock machine? You speak there of positive engagement of the film? A. Can you tell me whereabouts I refer to positive engagement? I may have referred to that as positive engagement of the clamping device. Show me the part of the answer to which you refer.

XQ222. I don't mean to say that you said that the film was positively engaged in the Chinnock camera, but in your reference to that machine and in your description of it you mentioned the words "positive engagement of the film." Now, what did you mean by that, "positive engagement of the film?" What is positive engagement of the film? A. Well, it is hard for me to answer that without knowing the particular expressions used, because in this description I have used the words positive

engagement to mean the engagement of sprocket

teeth with perforations in the film, but I may also have used the same expression with reference to a friction grip which seized upon the film and held it so that it could not be moved without tearing it to pieces.

XQ223. Would you think the term "positive engagement" would cover such a device as you have last mentioned? A. The friction grip?

XQ224. The friction grip, yes? A. Not in the sense'in which I have used the term when applied to the engagement of a film by teeth entering holes.

XQ225. That is the sense in which you used positive engagement when you referred to the Latham patent; is that correct? A. Yes, I think so. I might use that interchangeably, and I might not; I don't know.

XQ226. By that term "positive engagement," do you mean that the teeth of the sprocket enter the holes along the edges of the film for the purpose of positively advancing the film? A. In speaking of the Latham device, that is what I mean.

XQ227. That is what you mean? A. Yes.

XQ228. Now, in the Latham device do the teeth hold the film firmly and move it regularly, evenly and very rapidly? A. They do.

XQ229. Does the Green and Evans show an intermittent sprocket? A. I should not so consider it.

XQ230. Why not? A. Because in the description of that patent, I do not understand that the intermittently operating wheel has sprocket teeth designed to co-act with holes in a film.

XQ231. Well, does it have teeth? A. I understand that it has projections or teeth intended to bite into or against the surface of the film. That might be covered by a structure like a knurled

1118

structure. I do not understand that to be intended as a description of sprocket teeth, because I understand by sprocket teeth, teeth that are intended to co-act and co-operate with holes or links.

XQ232. Well, does the intermittent of the Green and Evans patent have projections with points? A. I understand that it does.

XQ233. And do you understand that that sprocket and those points or projections are of metal? A. I do.

1121

XQ234. Would those sharpened projections make holes in paper if the paper were drawn through as shown in that machine, that is, the Greene & Evans machine? A. Well, now, that would depend absolutely upon the structure of the particular device. If the points were sharp enough and long enough and if the tension was properly adjusted to accomplish that result, and the paper was the right quality, and all those things worked together, it might make holes in the paper. If any of them were a little different, it might not make holes in the paper. It might make small indentations; and finally, it might not make indentations, it might make a mark.

1122

XQ235. Well, if the sprocket and the paper were as shown in the diagrammatic representation of the Greene & Evans patent, Defendant's Exhibit No. 13, would those projections on the sprocket make holes in the paper, assuming the paper to be in place of the film? A. I do not consider that diagram a representation of anything that is shown in the Greene & Evans patent. For example, the teeth are shown projecting way through a line which is supposed to indicate paper film, or something like that, long before it comes in contact with the roller which it is supposed to be pressed by,

and the only pressure that could force a hole through there would be by having an enormous tension on that strip, and it has to cover five teeth before it comes in contact with the pressure roller. There is no indication of anything of that sort in the Greene and Evans patent. Such a strain could not perforate film. We found it necessary in a perforating machine, in perforating film, to have not a point merely, but a very sharp, keen cutting punch and die.

XQ236. I am asking you on this assumption that the strip, however, is paper, and not film. A. Well, to make a device as shown in that diagram that would perforate paper in advance of the pressure co-acting rolls, as indicated there, and make clean cut holes through it so that the whole body of the tooth came through, I think would be a very difficult matter. It would be hard to find a quality of paper so that it would not at least ride up part way on the teeth.

XQ237. Has the Armat patent, No. 673,992, continuous sprocket teeth? A. It has.

XQ238. As I understand you, the difference that you found between the Armat patent and the Latham patent in suit is that in the Armat patent there is no intermittent sprocket or its equivalent. Is that your contention? A. Well, of course, the action of the intermittent feed in the Armat patent is really substantially different from the action of the intermittent feed in the Latham patent. The intermittent feed in the Armat patent is obtained by means of the co-operation of that lower—or as it is marked on that diagram (Defendants' Exhibit 32) upper—continuously running feed roller and that eccentric roller. It is obvious that the eccentric roller would not do any-

1124

thing at all without co-operation of that feed roller. Now, that feed roller is also the feed roller that delivers film to the take-up reel. The structures are not different, as they are in the Latham structure. In the Latham structure we have an independent delivery feed to the take-up reel which is entirely independent of the intermittent motion which would go right on working if you took the intermittent motion away. And so in the Latham the intermittent motion would go right on working if you took away that continuous delivery roller; and that is not true of the Armat structure. It is a kind of composite thing, I imagine, he has got there.

1127 XQ239. Do you remember that in the suit of

your company against the Independent Moving Picture Company, Mr. Frank N. Waterman testified as an expert for the Motion Picture Patents Company? A. I think he did.

XQ240. Do you know Mr. Waterman? A. Well, I have met him.

XQ241. He has testified in a number of suits as expert for your company, has he not? A. Yes, I think he has.

XQ242. And he is a well known and highly regarded expert in this city, is he not? A. Yes, sir, I believe he is.

XQ243. Do you remember his testimony in that suit against the Independent Moving Picture Company? A. Well, I don't remember it offhand. I might remember some parts of it.

XQ244. Do you remember that Mr. Waterman was asked the following question in that case: "What patentees were you referring to when in your direct-examination you said that 'it appears from the issue date of his (Latham) invention.

all of the patentees of machines which can lay any claim to practical and commercial utility embodied his improvements in the machines shown in their patents," and that later he was asked: "Please take the trouble to ascertain who you were referring to by your reference to all of the patentees showing practical and commercial structures?" And in answer to that question he said, "So far as I am able to say at present I presume that I had reference to Joly patent 569,875, the Armat patent 673,992; I did not notice any others." Do you remember that he so testified? A. I think he did.

1130

XQ245. Do you remember that you testified in the Casler-Latham-Armat Interference? A. I believe I did.

XQ246. Do you remember testifying there with reference to the Casler camera as follows: "The film is moved rapidly with an intermittent motion, it is held taut at the point of exposure, and slack film is provided between the first feeding device and the tension device, so that the film may be intermittently started and moved with great rapidity without undue strain or wear upon the film." A. Yes.

1131

XQ247. This seventh claim upon which your company is now suing in this case was not in suit in the former case against the Independent Company, was it? A. I don't think it was.

XQ248. And this claim is confined to the teeth of the intermittent and of the continuous feed, is it not, with the other mechanisms stated in the claim, of course? A. Well, I know that the teeth are essential elements of the feeding device of this claim, but there is a lot to it besides teeth.

XQ249. Oh, yes, of course; but this claim differs from the other claims, does it not?

Mr. Church: Now,-

Mr. Jeffery: I will withdraw that. I wanted to bring his attention to another matter.

XQ250. Exactly what advantage, briefly stated, do you contend is present in having teeth both on the intermittent and on the continuous feed sprockets? A. Well, the teeth on those sprockets are part of the means for accomplishing the results that I understand that Latham was trying to accomplish, and they enabled him to maintain a constant and regular quantity of slack film for the intermittent operation and handling of his intermittent feeding device, and on the intermittent feeding device that enabled him to feed the film forward picture by picture, as determined by the perforations in the film, independent of any variation in the length of the film and it seems the teeth were effective means for carrying out the purposes he apparently had in mind, when co-operating, of course, with properly perforated film.

XQ251. Are there machines in the prior art, on 1134 which the claim of the Armat patent, No. 673,992, will read?

Mr. Church: Objected to as not proper cross-examination.

Mr. Jeffery: I will withdraw the question. If the phraseology is what you object to, I will put it in another form.

XQ252. Are there motion picture machines, or have there been such machines in use, which embodied the structure shown in the Armat patent, No. 673,992? A. There have been motion picture cameras in use involving the construction. I do

not recollect ever to have seen a motion picture projecting machine in use involving that construction. There may have been such.

XQ253. What is the function of the intermittent sprocket of a motion picture projecting machine? A. Well, the function of the intermittent sprocket of a motion picture projecting machine is to move the film intermittently.

XQ254. Now, do you remember the brief which was filed, and the argument which was made, on behalf of the Motion Picture Patents Company in the suit against the Independent Moving Picture Company, in the United States Circuit Court of Appeals of this Circuit? A. I suppose I read it once, but it was a long while ago. I don't remember much of it.

XQ255. Do you remember that it contained this statement: "The first commercial use of the invention by Latham followed immediately after its completion in the early part of 1895, was in connection with a camera, although he subsequently used it in projecting machines. It was shortly afterwards invented independently in France by M. J. H. Joly, who used it both in cameras and projectors, and still later, in the year 1895, in this country, by Thomas Armat, who used it exclusively in projecting machines"? A. Well, I don't actually remember it, but I presume that it did. I am willing to admit that it did.

XQ256. That was the position taken in that case on behalf of your company, was it not?

Mr. Church: I object to that as calling for opinion, and not evidence, and as misleading; the issues in the former case were quite different than the issues here.

1136

A. I don't think I am qualified to state exactly what opinion or what position our attorneys took in reference to all matters in that case.

XQ257. But you remember this statement was in the brief? A. I don't exactly remember it, but I will admit that it was in there.

Mr. Scull: In pursuance of the stipulation dated July 16, 1915, the complainant now offers the testimony of the witnesses named in the index of the exhibit book, "Complainant's Stipulated Depositions and Exhibits," and the exhibits referred to in said depositions are now offered on behalf of the complainant, as follows:

Lauste Deposition in Armat Interference. Marked Complainant's Exhibit L.

Mr. Jeffery: I object to it as incompetent; irrelevant and immaterial.

Mr. Scull: We offer Woodville Latham's Deposition in the Armat Interference.

Mr. Jeffery: Objected to as incompetent, irrelevant and immaterial, and on the ground that these depositions have no competency whatever in this suit.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit M.

Mr. Scull: Colt's Bills and Letters.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit N.

Mr. Scull: Clipping from "Chicago Inter-Ocean."

Marked Complainant's Exhibit O.

Mr. Scull: Eastman Kodak bill of February 18, 1895.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit P.

Mr. Scull: Eastman Kodak Company bill of April 5, 1895.

1139

Marked Complainant's Exhibit Q.

Mr. Scull: Eastman Kodak Company bill of April 27, 1895.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit R.

Mr. Scull: Eastman Letter.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit S.

Mr. Scull: Decision of Examiner of Interference in the Armat Interference.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit T.

Mr. Scull: Certified copies Latham Drawings.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit U.

Mr. Scull: Lauste Sketch.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit V.

Mr. Scull: Film of Griffo & Barnett Fight.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit W.

Mr. Scull: Otway Latham's Note of Experiment.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit X.

Mr. Scull: Clipping from "Sunday Mercury," May 5, 1895.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit Y.

Mr. Scull: Clipping from "New York Sun," April 22, 1895.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit Z.

Mr. Scull: Latham Exhibit No. 7, Armat Interference.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit AA.

Mr. Scull: Latham British patent (Johnson), 1896.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit BB.

Mr. Scull: Lauste Photograph.

Marked Complainant's Exhibit CC.

Mr. Jeffery: With permission of the plaintiff's counsel, I will now offer in evi-

1142

dence an exhibit which I have omitted to offer, pursuant to the stipulation of July 16, 1915, being a photograph of the feeding mechanism of the Atlanta machine.

Marked Defendants' Exhibit 50.

THOMAS ARMAT, a witness called on behalf of the complainant, being duly sworn, testifies as follows:

1145

Direct Examination by Mr. Church:

Q1. State your name, age, residence and occupation? A. Thomas Armat; 49; residence, Washington, D. C.; occupation, moving picture business and others.

Q2. Are you the Thomas Armat who was a party to the Interference, No. 18,461, in the Patent Office, between the applications of Armat, Latham and Casler? A. I am.

1146

Q3. It appears that during the giving of testimony for Mr. Latham a certain piece of apparatus was introduced in evidence which was identified as Latham Exhibit No. 12. Did you examine that exhibit with sufficient care to enable you to state now what it was or purported to be and what was its general construction? A. I examined the apparatus very carefully at the time it was put in evidence and I remember it quite distinctly. The apparatus was designed to be and was a camera for taking moving pictures. It was not provided with any lens or lenses at the time I saw it nor was it enclosed in the light-tight box that is a part of a camera. It contained, however, all the neces-

sary mechanism for intermittently moving a film, and combined in a general way all the elements illustrated in the Latham patent in suit. over the machine carefully to find, if possible, any defects of construction or lack of operativeness in the machine, but I was unable to discover any: on the contrary, I was struck with its mechanical perfection. The machine consisted of a means for supporting a reel of film before and after exposure, of a sprocket drum which was given an intermittent rotary motion, the teeth of the drum being designed to fit into the perforations of the film. the means for giving the drum its intermittent motion consisting of what is known as a "Geneva stop" and accurately illustrated at Fig. 5 of the Latham patent. The machine was provided with a continually revolving sprocket drum intended to draw the film from the supply reel and supply it in the form of a slack loop ahead of the exposure window so that it might be drawn down by intermittent motion by the action of the Geneva stop and its drum. The machine was also provided with another continuously rotating sprocket drum on the opposite side of the exposure window which was designed to maintain the slack or loop between the intermittently operating drum and the take-up reel. The apparatus I saw is very well illustrated. diagrammatically, at Fig. 6 in the Latham patent in suit. The difference being that in the camera I saw. the film was fed downward while in the apparatus illustrated in the patent the film is fed upward. There was no other substantial difference between the feed mechanism of the camera I saw and the feed mechanism illustrated in the patent.

1148

Cross Examination by Mr. Jeffery:

XQ4. Mr. Armat, do you remember that in the decision of the Examiner of Interference, in the Interference to which you were a party, with Mr. Latham and Mr. Casler, it was held as follows, with respect to Exhibit No. 12: "It is apparent from the testimony that the exhibit machine was designed and made primarily for the purpose of taking pictures and not for projecting pictures on a screen."

1151

Mr. Church: I object, the decision being the best evidence of its contents.

A. I recollect that that was the expression used in that decision.

XQ5. Do you remember that in that same decision it was also held as follows: "The machine as it stands to-day is not in condition for exhibiting pictures, but is arranged to be used as a camera, which is the use to which it has been put almost entirely. It now contains a circularly revolving shutter with but two small peripheral apertures, which renders it impossible to make the interval of pause and illumination exceed the interval of motion of the film?" A. Yes, I remember that that expression was also used, and that the statement was also made in the decision.

1152

XQ6. Do you remember that you testified as a witness for the Motion Picture Patents Company in the suit brought by it against the Independent Moving Picture Company of America? A. I do.

XQ7. In a suit on this same Latham patent? A. I do.

XQ8. Do you remember that you testified that you met Mr. Gray Latham, who saw one or more of

your exhibitions with your machine at the Atlanta Exposition? A. I do.

XQ9. Do you remember testifying that you saw Mr. Gray Latham looking at the machine through circular openings in the little camera through which the pictures were projected, standing at that time in such a position that he could see the machine as it was being operated? A. I do.

XQ10. Do you remember testifying that Mr. Gray Latham was also present at the first night's exhibition of the machine called the Edison Vitascope, at Koster & Bial's Theatre in New York? A. I do.

1154

XQ11. That is, the exhibition of your machine which was made at the Atlanta Exposition in the fall of 1895, is it not? A. You mean that that—

XQ12. At the time that Mr. Gray Latham was present? A. Yes.

XQ13. Do you remember also testifying with respect to moving picture projecting machines as follows, in that same case: "If the machine be constructed and designed to feed the film 'so that the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain or wear upon the film,' it would, in my opinion, be an embodiment of the Latham feeding mechanism?" A. I presume I so testified.

1155

XQ14. I will let you read this printed record, if you want to (handing record)? A. I do remember.

XQ15. You have been engaged ever since 1895, and were engaged previously to that, in the building and designing of motion picture machines; were you not? A. I have been, yes.

XQ16. And you testified as a witness in this Interference proceeding, I suppose? A. I did.

XQ17. In fact, you acted as your own attorney at

one stage of those proceedings, did you not? A. I did.

XQ18. And you became very familiar with the devices that were introduced as exhibits in that proceeding, and with all the developments of the machines made by yourself and Casler and Latham, involved in that proceeding, did you not? A. Yes, I became quite familiar with them all.

XQ19. Do you remember that you were asked the

.1157

following questions and gave the following answers in the suit of the Motion Picture Patents Company against the Independent Moving Picture Company: "O. So far as machines of the continuously moving film style are concerned, it would be your opinion, would it not, that in February, 1895, it was a mere matter of choice as distinguished from originality whether a sprocket feed or a friction feed were employed? A. As I understand your question, and if you are not concerned as to the results obtained, it was a matter of choice as stated in your question. Q. And, in your opinion, is, or is it not, the fact that at that date it was for camera constructors a mere matter of choice, as distinguished from originality, whether they would adopt a friction feed or a sprocket feed for their camera? A. To a limited few who had knowledge of the Edison method of taking pictures it was a matter of choice between *. Q. That is not what I two methods I understand that both continuousasked you. ly moving film projectors and intermittently moving film projectors had at least been suggested prior to that date and that in your opinion no projector of either type had been at all successful before that time." (That time, as I understand, being February, 1895). "In view, however, of prior suggested devices, what I want to

know is whether you think it would involve any originality merely to suggest an intermittent type of projector employing a sprocket or sprockets?

A. As I understand your question it would not."

A. I do.

HERMAN CASLER, a witness called on behalf of the complainant, in rebuttal, being duly sworn, testifies as follows:

1160

Direct Examination by Mr. Church:

Q1. Please state your name, age, residence and occupation? A. Name, Herman Casler; age, 48; occupation, manufacturer of machinery.

Q2. You were requested, were you not, to visit the factory and works of the Ansco Company at Binghamton, N. Y., that company being the successor of the Anthony & Scovill Company, for the purpose of searching for missing exhibits introduced in the Patent Office Interferences proceedings, known as the Latham-Armat-Casler Interference, known as No. 18,461, and particularly for an exhibit known as Exhibit No. 12, offered on behalf of Latham in that Interference, being a motion picture camera? A. I was.

1161

Q3. Please state the result of your investigation, who directed you to make it, where you got authority to make it, and if you did? A. I made this search on December 2, 1915, and was directed to do so by Mr. H. N. Marvin, and was given assistance in the work of the Ansco Company by Mr. Toplift, who is president or secretary of the company, I do not know which. Mr. Toplift piloted me to the various

buildings, and I made a thorough search for the model of a Latham camera, but was unable to find

any trace of it.

Q4. State how extensive your search was? A. Well, I searched from about nine in the morning until five or half-past five in the afternoon, about three-quarters of an hour for lunch, and I covered about fourteen buildings, from cellar to garret and attic.

1163

Q5. Give us some idea of what you did in your searching. You did not just walk through the buildings, I take it? A. I passed through the different buildings and the rooms in the buildings. and made a careful search of all nooks and corners where such a device might be stowed away and forgotten, and in making a search through their storehouse I was given permission to open any cases that I wished to open, and did open about eight or ten cases, which I found contained old records and relics from the offices of the Anthony & Scovill Company, but in no case did I find any models of machinery. The search was very thorough and I believe covered the grounds thoroughly.

1164

Q6. Did Mr. Toplift know for what you were in

quest? A. He did.

Q7. Did anyone assist you in the search? A. No one except Mr. Toplift, who accompanied me through the buildings; and in the warehouse they gave me an assistant to open the cases.

Q8. Did you report the result of your search?

A. I did.

Q9. To whom? A. To Mr. Marvin.

Cross Examination by Mr. Jeffery:

XQ10. Mr. Casler, you are the Herman Casler who was a party to the Interference known as Latham-Armat-Casler Interference, No. 18,461? A. Yes.

XQ11. Do you remember that in that proceeding there was introduced in evidence on your behalf testimony or evidence to show that one Eugene Lauste was the real inventor of the Latham machine, Exhibit No. 12, in that Interference?

Mr. Church: I object to that as not proper cross-examination.

A. I don't have any recollection of that evidence. XQ12. You do not remember anything about that? A. No.

XQ13. Do you remember whether or not at that time you believed that Lauste was the original inventor of that machine? A. I don't know as I formed any such opinion.

It is stipulated by counsel, and with the authority of the Court, that all physical and bulky exhibits are to be retained in the custody of the respective counsel who have offered them in evidence. Documentary exhibits are to be left with the Clerk.

It is stipulated and agreed that the complainant may withdraw the originals of Complainant's Exhibits B and C, the same being the original assignments from the Anthony & Scovill Company and from the E. & H. T. Authony Company, respectively, and substitute typewritten copies therefor.

1166

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURES PATENT COM-PANY,

Complainant,

VS.

In Equity No. 5-167.

1169 INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE COMPANY OF AMERICA,

Defendant.

Proofs for final hearing in rebuttal on behalf of the complainant, taken before Benjamin Barker, Esq., an Examiner of this Court in accordance with the 67th Rule of the Supreme Court as amended, at Room 132 of the Hotel Brevoort, Fifth Avenue and Eighth Street, New York City, on April 6th, 1911, at 11 a. m.

1170 Present—Parker W. Page, Esq., Counsel for Complainant;

Messrs, Kenyon & Kenyon (Mr. A. D. Kenyon) for Defendant.

EUGENE LAUSTE, a witness called on behalf of the complainant, having been first duly sworn, deposes as follows:

Mr. Kenyon: I have no objection to the testimony being taken stenographically, provided a copy of the direct is gotten out at once, and if I find it necessary, that it be

gotten out before the beginning of the cross-examination, and certainly before the close. I also wish to state that while the notice of taking this testimony has been very short, and that Mr. Eyre, who has had charge of the case heretofore for the defendant, is out West taking testimony in another case and cannot be here this week, we will nevertheless proceed and will do all we can to expedite the taking of the witness's testimony; but if it should become necessary before closing the cross-examination to have Mr. Eyre present we will insist in that case upon an adjournment until next week.

1172

By Mr. Page:

Q1. Where is your home and residence?

A. In London, England.

Q2. What is your age?

A. 54.

Q3. What is your occupation?

A. Experimental work.

Q4. Are you a skilled mechanic?

1173

A. I think so.

Q5. Have you lived in this country for any length of time?

A. Yes, from 1886 to 1897.

Q6. Since 1897 where have you lived?

A. I have lived in Paris and London.

Q7. How long have you been in this country on the present trip?

A. From Monday.

Q8. Did you ever know or do any work for a gentleman by the name of Woodville Latham?

A. Yes.

Q9. Were you ever employed by Mr. Latham?

A. I was employed by him, yes.

Q10. When did you enter his employ?

A. In 1894 (witness refers to paper which he hands to complainant's counsel).

Q11. You have handed me a telegram dated November 21, 1894. What is that?

A. Asking about what kind of tools I needed to stock the shop with.

Q12. Can you tell what part of the year 1894 it was that you went to work for Mr. Latham?

A. We started a very short time after that; that was in November; I think it was in the week after that.

Q13. To do what work were you employed by Mr. Latham?

A. Mr. Latham called me to his hotel, the Bartholdi and explained to me what he wanted for a new machine, for motion pictures; he asked me if I understand enough about machinery to do the work, and he explained to me what he wanted; I said yes; "Well," he said, "the first thing to do is to make a machine for experiment with the kinetoscope film, and see if you can't project that." That is what I did; I start the first machine in that, and one night I went with Mr. Otway Latham in Broadway in some place and saw some show, some kinetoscope show, and he gave me a piece of film from one of those machines; that was the one I used for experiment. After that we saw the thing was possible, and I start another machine with a larger film, to carry a larger film; but of course all the drawings I made were very rough drawings; and I showed them to Mr. Latham, to see does that suit him, before I started the machine; because Mr. Latham was not a mechanic and depend on me to

1176

do the work; and all what I do he approved all that, O. K. That was the first thing of course; after that we start a camera for taking pictures for I submit him the drawings too; but every one was very rough drawings; and after seeing the drawings he says "Go ahead," and I do the work; I do all the camera.

Q14. Why did you start to build this camera?

A. I started in December.

Q15. I say why did you start to build this camera?

A. For taking pictures.

Q16. Did you not have pictures, or could you not obtain pictures from other sources?

A. No, because Mr. Latham's idea was to get a larger film, a little bit wider; Edison too narrow.

Q17. When did you begin work on this camera?

A. In December.

Q18. In what year?

A. 1894.

Q19. Do you know when that camera was completed?

A. In the end of January, very near; something like that; I can't remember exactly; I remember we take a picture of an incandescent lamp in February about the 26th; but when the camera is finished you have to wait for the film because Mr. Latham gave the order in February, but between the camera's finishing and the taking pictures I had to make a punching machine for perforating the film; as soon as we received the film we punched the holes and we tried it in February. I think the 26th, or something like that; I can't remember exactly.

Mr. Kenyon: Objection is made to this entire line of examination on the ground that it appears to be new matter, and not

1178

proper rebuttal testimony; and notice is given that at the proper time motion will be made for leave to take testimony in reply

to this line and similar lines if persisted in.

Q20. Do you remember any of the incidents connected with the trying of this camera for photographing an incandescent light and if so will you tell what you remember about it?

Mr. Kenvon: The same objections once for 1181 all to this and similar lines.

> A. We find some trouble with the stop motion; and we have to make another one, something similar to the Maltese cross; and when the camera was in good order again we took a picture on the roof, a short time after that, of Mr. Latham, Mr. Gray Latham, Mr. Kleinert and myself and my son; and Mr. Otway Latham operated the camera; at that time the camera worked in good order.

Mr. Kenyon: The last part of the answer objected to as a matter of conclusion, and incompetent.

Q21. I referred in my question to the time when you photographed the incandescent lamp; where this was done?

> Mr. Kenyon: Objected to as leading and assuming facts not proven.

A. It must have been in March.

Q22. No; where; where was this done?

A. In Franklin Street on the roof, the Scott Building.

Q23. Who was present at the time that you photographed the incandescent lamp?

A. Mr. Otway Latham, Mr. Dixon, Mr. Kleinert and myself.

Q24. What time of day or night was it?

A. It was near 12 o'clock at night.

Q25. How long before this incandescent lamp was photographed was the camera in working order?

A. It was a month after; after we tried the lamp; it worked all right and we took that picture on the roof.

Q26. Do you mean that the picture on the roof was taken a month after the incandescent lamp was photographed?

A. Yes, about a month.

Q27. How far was the taking machine or camera completed at the time when you used it to photograph the incandescent lamp?

A. Oh, about a week after, I think.

Q28. I meant to ask you how near completion or working order was the camera?

A. That is what I said; a week after; that is what I said before; it worked in good order.

Q29. But if you photographed the incandescent lamp with the camera on February 26th it must have been in working condition at that time?

Mr. Kenyon: Objected to as grossly leading and as assuming a condition of facts not proved, and as incompetent and a conclusion of law.

A. Yes.

Q30. How long had it been in that shape before you took the picture of the incandescent lamp?

Objected to as leading.

1184

1187

1188

A. How long it had been in that shape before— I don't understand clearly that question. You mean if the camera worked in good order before taking the lamp? Is that what you mean?

Q31. No; I mean how long before you took the picture of the lamp was the camera in the same condition as it was when you photographed the lamp?

A. Oh, about the last of January.

Q32. If the camera was in that condition the last of January why did you not use it sooner?

Objected to as incompetent.

A. Because we have no film and the punching machine is not made yet.

Q33. Do you remember when you got the first film?

A. That was in February; I don't know the date. Q34. Do you know where the film came from that you used?

A. Eastman Kodak.

Q35. When that film was obtained what did you do with it?

A. We punched the holes with that new machine, with the new punching machine.

Q36. When was the punching machine made?

A. Well, I started as soon as the camera is finished; I suppose in February; it took me about a fortnight to do it.

Q37. Do you know what has become of the taking machine which you had at that time?

A. No, I don't know.

Q38. Have you ever seen it since?

A. Never; I start to do new ones after that; the same principle, but much stronger; I made that specially to take pictures in Mexico.

Q39. Now, this taking machine with which you photographed the incandescent lamp in February, 1895, can you tell us how it was made, and how it operated?

A. Well, of course I forget a little bit now, but I remember very near; I know I used a sprocket wheel to feed the film with the stop machine, Maltese cross stop machine, and some kind of adjustment for the Maltese cross to keep the picture from jarring, to keep the film—it locks when the film will stop; you must have some adjustment, don't get any play between the two wheels.

1190

Q40. How was the film fed through the taking machine?

A. By a sprocket wheel, a continuous sprocket wheel; and between the two sprockets a loop; one sprocket feeds all the time and another one stops it; intermittent sprocket, and the same thing on the bottom.

Q41. Was this device used for any purpose except taking pictures?

A. Oh, well, we used it for projecting too, but the machine was not meant for that.

Q42. Did you make any machines for projecting?

1191

Same objection to this entire line of examination.

A. Yes, I make one up continuous feed, a larger shutter and a very small opening; the same principle as the kinetoscope.

Q43. What did you make for Mr. Latham in the way of machines for either taking or projecting pictures after the pictures were taken of the swinging incandescent lamp, and the pictures were taken on the roof, of you and your son and others; what machines did you make after that?

Objected to as calling for a conclusion and as involving facts not proven and incompetent.

A. Well, of course I made the printing machine to make a positive.

Q44. Did you make any other machines for either

taking or projecting pictures?

A. We start five machines for projecting, and the first one finished we put on exhibition in Broadway.

1193

Q45. Do you know how many of them were finished?

A. Oh, we finished all five after.

Q46. I wish you would look at the drawings which I hand you and tell me what they illustrate or represent?

Objected to as it is shown that the witness is competent to testify.

A. This is a new machine projecting with continuous feeding (witness points to figure 1); and the next one is the copy of the camera, the same thing with stop machine; but made different for projecting.

Q47. Do you know from what these drawings were made?

A. Well, we have a workman at that time, Mr. Weit; he started drawing that machine, and when he do that machine I made the two new cameras; he take my advice with Mr. Latham for the shape of the machine, the mechanical part and everything; and some time after that Mr. Latham bring a draftsman to make the drawing for the patent.

Q48. Do you remember this draftsman's name?

A. I know he speaks French.

Q49. Was this drawing made from any machine which you had at the time?

Objected to as leading.

A. Well, from the part of the machine; the machine was not put all together; Mr. Weit and me showed all the parts of the machine to the draftsman, and explained to him all the mechanism.

Q50. You have said something about the mechanism shown in this drawing being the same as the camera?

A. Yes.

Q51. Will you explain more fully what you mean by that?

A. Well, because we use on that machine the Maltese cross to give a stop motion on the film exposed to the light; that is the only way to get more light on the screen; but the whole part of the machine was similar—well, exactly the same as the camera.

Q52. You mean that the parts of the machine shown in these drawings were the same as the corresponding parts of the camera?

A. Yes; the whole parts from here to here (indicating) is exactly the same; you see that is a feed roller (pointing to roller 46 in Figure 2); and this one is the stop motion (pointing to 50 in Figure 2); this one is continuous (pointing to roller 46); run by beveled gear (44) and 39 continuous too. Sprocket No. 50 is intermittent; now the shutter is on the front—a very small shutter on the front of the machine with the bellows to get the focus; on top of the camera we have two larger boxes to carry the film, one on top and one on the bottom; that is the only differences.

1196

1199

Counsel for Complainant offers in evidence the drawings referred to by the witness in the last question and the same are marked Complainant's Exhibit certified copies Latham drawings.

Q53. Now will you please tell us again, and give your answer carefully and slowly so that it can be all taken down, just what differences, if any, there were between the feed mechanism of the projecting machine shown in these Latham drawings in Figures 2, 3, 4 to 8, and the feed mechanism which you say you employed in the taking machine that was used for photographing the incandescent lamp on February 26th, 1895?

A. There is none different; only the shape of the machine.

Q54. Did you come to this country once before to testify about your work on this machine?

A. Yes.

Q55. Do you remember when that was?

A. In 1890, I think; yes, 1890; oh, I can tell you exactly (referring to paper) in 1899—no, in 1200—1898.

Q56. Did you mean to say 1890 or 1898?

A. 1898.

Q57. Did you say 1890?

A. No, I didn't say that; I said 1898; and after I said 1899; that was impossible, the camera wasn't made at that time, in 1890.

Q58. Have you read over recently the testimony which you gave about this machine in 1898?

Objected to as new matter.

A. Yes.

Complainant's Counsel offers in evidence a certified copy of deposition of Eugene Lauste in the Interference Latham vs. Casler vs. Armat and it is marked "Complainant's Exhibit Lauste deposition in Latham Casler Armat Interference."

Objected to as immaterial, irrelevant, incompetent, and as new matter.

Q59. Did you ever testify more than once before about this machine?

A. No, only once.

Q60. In that same proceeding a Mr. Netter testified that in May, 1895, he saw in your shop a partially completed machine like that illustrated in the Latham drawings which you have just examined. Was there any such machine in your shop at that time that Netter could have seen?

A. Yes, but I don't think that there was one finished; I don't remember.

Q61. What machine was that?

A. Well, that is this one, with the continuous motion; this one; continuous feeding (indicating Figure 1).

Q62. Did you have any contract or agreement with Mr. Latham about your work?

Objected to as calling for a conclusion.

A. I had no contract with Mr. Latham, but he give me wages to work for him and promise me some share in the company if I succeed, because he is not a mechanic, and he wanted somebody to help him on his invention. And that was what I do; I know all the mechanical part, and the rough sketch and drawings and show it to him before starting anything.

1202

Q63. Did Mr. Latham ever give you any shares of stock?

A. Yes, he give me shares, 200 shares; that is what he give me (handing paper to Counsel); that share he give to me after the pictures taken on the roof on Frankfort Street.

Witness produces a stock certificate which is handed to Counsel for Defendant for examination, for the purpose of cross examination; but it is not offered in evidence.

1205

Q64. Have you seen Mr. Woodville Latham since you worked for him in 1895?

A. The last time I saw him was—the last time I saw him was when I go to that testimony; he was present when I make my testimony; he was present then; and Mr. Gray Latham was present with his father.

Adjourned till to-morrow, April 7, 1911, at 10 A. M.

New York, April 7, 1911.

1206

Met pursuant to adjournment; parties present as before.

Direct-examination of EUGENE LAUSTE continued by Mr. Page:

Q65. I find in reading over the record that in answer to "Q19" you state when asked when the first camera was completed, "In the end of January, very near, something like that." In what year was that?

A. In 1895.

Q66. In reading over your questions and answers

22 to 32, there seems to be some misunderstanding either on your part or my own, and to clear it up I will ask you to tell us just what you now remember about the first trial or use of the taking machine, which you say was completed sometime in the latter part of January, 1895, when you and the others tried that machine at night in the Frankfort Street shop?

A. We experiment taking a photograph of the incandescent lamp with success; but the next day after we tried again with Mr. Otway; but Mr. Dickson the first night tried by hand and a day or two after we tried the camera with Mr. Otway, and we put a motor on it; and of course the speed was so high we broke a tooth of the stop machine; we had another made at once and replaced this one and the camera ran right again. Yesterday, as I say, we took a picture of Mr. Latham, myself, Mr. Kleinert and Mr. Gray Latham-I think I said a month after; I don't know, I forgot that. that picture we took very shortly after the camera was fixed again. This one I mean a month after was another between two Frenchmen fighting; that is the one I mean that we took the month after.

Q67. Was this incandescent lamp which you photographed in the shop standing still?

A. No, swinging; it is so long time ago that I must say it is hard to remember.

Cross-examination by Counsel for Defendant:

XQ68. You say that Mr. Latham called you to his hotel, the Bartholdi, and explained to you what he wanted for a new machine about motion pictures; he explained to you what he wanted; when did that interview take place?

1208

1212

A. I think it was in October; something like that.

XQ69. What year?

A. 1894.

XO70. In his room in the hotel?

A. In his room in the hotel.

XQ71. Who else was present?

A. Let me see; I think Mr. Otway Latham was there; yes, Mr. Otway.

XQ72. Are you sure of that?

A. Well, I can't say sure; but I think so; there was somebody with him; I think it was his son, Mr. Otway.

XQ73. How long did this talk last?

A. Oh, about an hour.

XQ74. And after that you went to work for him and made the machines that you have described?

A. That is right; but before that we went with Mr. Otway to find a place for a shop, and I don't know where we find a place; I don't know a place; because we had no money and we had to wait a month for it, and after that I got that telegram I showed you yesterday calling me again to his office; to his room; and he said, "Now I have got the money and we will start at once;" and I go out again with Mr. Otway and that is when we found a place in Frankfort Street.

XQ75. And then you went to work and made the machine you have described, and did all the work yourself?

A. Yes.

XQ76. You made all these rough drawings and sketches?

A. Yes, sketches.

XQ77. Did Mr. Latham make any sketches or drawings?

A. No; he don't make any; I make all the sketches myself, and I submit it to him.

XQ78. And when you submitted it to him what did he say?

A. Well, he said "I think it will be all right, because I am not a mechanic, and I depend on you for the success of the machines."

XQ79. At this time, when you had the talk with him at the Hotel Bartholdi what did he say to you; tell me what he said to you, as near as you can remember. If you don't remember his exact words tell as near as you can?

A. As near as possible yes; well he said he can't pay me very much; he would fix the price \$21 a week; but he promised me in case of success a share in the company; that is the only thing I remember.

XQ80. Did he say anything else?

A. Well, I forget now; it is too long ago.

XQ81. If he said anything else to you at that talk I want you to tell just what he said; all you can remember?

A. Well, I can't remember, only he says his son stay with me to see what I am doing in the shop.

XQ82. Anything else you remember?

A. I can't remember nothing else now.

XQ83. You said in your testimony yesterday that he explained to you what he wanted for a new machine for motion pictures?

A. Yes, of course.

XQ84. "And explained to me what he wanted." Now have you told me all that he said on that subject?

A. Well, he said he wanted a camera, a projecting machine, a punching machine and a printing machine: I have to design all the mechanical part and submit it to him, and see if I am right on it.

1214

XQ85. Did he say anything else on the subject that you remember?

A. No, I don't remember nothing else.

XQ86. What you have testified to is substantially a correct statement of what he said to you at this time, at this interview at the Hotel Bartholdi?

A. Yes, that is what he said; that is the only thing I remember now.

XQ87. Mr. Otway Latham he told you would work with you in the shop?

A. Yes.

XQ88. Did he work with you?

A. Oh no, not do any work; he is not a mechanic you know; he watched me all the time, what I am doing because he was very interested in my work.

XQ89. Did you have any one else in the shop to help you?

A. Yes, sometime after we start, Mr. Kleinert. XQ90. Did he help you with these machines, the taking machine and the projecting machine?

A. Very little on the camera, but more on the projecting machine.

XQ91. And those were all the helpers, on the machines, you had?

A. Yes.

XQ92. What was the first machine you made after you started to work at the Frankfort shop?

A. The first machine I made was a projecting machine; it was just for experiment with the kinetoscope film.

XQ93. What do you mean by the kinetoscope film?

A. Because the idea of Mr. Latham was to get a film wider and before starting the machine we experiment with a film; what you call the Edison standard film; and after we proved the demonstra-

1217

tion I start at once another one with a larger sprocket.

XQ94. Did you finish the projecting machine?

A. No; not exactly, because at that time Mr. Kleinert came with us and told Mr. Latham it would take a long time to finish it; better we make something similar exactly to the kinetoscope, and I started a pattern and we made a machine about like the kinetoscope; but used for projecting instead of looking in through a peep-hole.

XQ95. You have used the word "projecting" in your testimony a number of times. What do you mean by the word "projecting" or "project"?

A. Well, to use like a magic lantern enlarging the picture on a screen.

XQ96. Is the kinetoscope a projecting machine?

A. No, it is not.

XQ97. What did you mean by a kinetoscope film?

A. Well, that is a film used on the kinetoscope; a narrow film.

XQ98. What did you mean by the Edison standard film?

A. Well, that is—I don't know—that is an expression for the film; pretty near adopted all over now.

XQ99. Whose film?

A. Edison's; four perforations on each picture. XQ100. You are speaking of the film today, aren't you?

A. Well, the same as that before.

XQ101. What do you mean by that?

A. Well, because everybody adopted the Edison perforated now; and we do the same thing with that machine except a large film; but the same perforation.

1220

XQ102. What kind of film did you use in the experiments that you made at Frankfort Street with your taking machine and with the projecting machine?

A. The Eastman film; the Eastman Kodak film. XQ103. Did you use any other than the Eastman film?

A. No, I don't think so; there was only Eastman made the films at that time.

XQ104. Where did you get the Eastman films from?

1223

A. From Rochester; Mr. Latham bought them himself.

XQ105. Are those the only films that you used at Frankfort Street?

A. With the camera, yes; but when we started experimenting with the Edison film we got that film from some exhibition in Broadway, through Mr. Latham at a place in Broadway where they exhibited, it was a kinetoscope show; and Mr. Otway took the film from one of those machines and give to me for experiment.

XQ106. When was that?

1224 A. That was in December, 1894, the beginning of December.

XQ107. Did any one else bring you any film while you were at Frankfort Street?

A. No.

XQ108. Did Mr. Dickson get any for you?

A. No, I never got any from Mr. Dickson.

XQ109. You are sure of that, are you?

A. Oh, I am sure.

XQ110. Mr. Page showed you a copy of the testimony that you say you gave in 1898, in the interference of Casler vs. Latham vs. Armat. I now hold it in my hand?

A. Yes.

XQ111. You gave that testimony at that time?

A. Yes, with some rectifications, because the name of Mr. Casler was never mentioned to me; I don't know what I come there for; testimony; but I don't know what kind of testimony.

Defendant's Counsel: The last part of the answer is objected to as volunteered.

XQ112. But you did testify?

A. I testified, yes; I mentioned in that about the sprocket; I always say roller; it is a mistake.

XQ113. How do you know there is a mistake in this testimony?

A. Because I read it all over.

XQ114. When did you read it?

A. Why, I read that Tuesday; last Tuesday.

XQ115. Was this testimony that you gave in 1898 true?

A. Yes, it was true, except that rectification that I say now about Mr. Casler; I never heard his name; and the sprocket instead of the roller.

XQ116. Otherwise it is true, is it?

A. It is true.

XQ117. I don't quite understand you when you say that you made a mistake in saying "roller" when you meant "sprocket" in this testimony; I would like to have you explain?

A. When I made the camera I said the camera was finished in January; the camera is perfectly in good order; but when we tried the film with the swinging lamp we don't use any box for carrying the film at that time, and the film is pulled straight and the sprocket is so small that we pulled only one hole each time, the film. Now when we

1226

took a picture of Griffo-Barnett we used a box at that time; one on top and one on the bottom; well, the sprocket film gave too much pull; it was too much weight to carry; we had some tearing on the film, and there was an objection that Mr. Dickson put another roller to get more teeth in the sprocket; that is what I say at that time.

XQ118. As I understand you Mr. Dickson suggested putting in an additional roller; is that it?

A. That is right, yes.

1229

1230

XQ119. Can you tell or describe what roller there was in the camera?

A. Yes (witness asks for drawing and refers to Complainant's Exhibit Latham drawing). I think I have got about the same thing here; the film before goes straight like that (pointing from 24 in Fig. 6 down towards 58); and of course you get only one tooth. Now Mr. Dickson put another one on the camera, but not so far away; right here (pointing just about to the right hand upper corner of 46).

XQ120. You mean an extra roller was put in the place between 46 and 56 as shown on this Fig. 6?

A. That is it, yes.

XQ121. What kind of a roller was it?

A. A rubber roller.

XQ122. A smooth surface.

A. A smooth surface, with two grooves in the rubber to let pass the teeth.

XQ123. What did that roller do?

A. It gave more grip on the sprocket; instead of one tooth you get four; we never tear the film after that.

XQ124. Before that you did tear the film, did you?

A. Yes, sometimes; of course not always.

XQ124½. This Figure 6 that you have just been looking at in Complainant's Exhibit Latham drawing, is that a drawing of a camera or projecting machine?

A. A projecting machine.

XQ125. When was the first taking machine or camera completed; I mean the first one you made at Frankfort Street?

A. In January, in the end of January, 1895.

XQ126. When was the first projecting machine completed?

A. The first one was completed—let's see; the first one I think was in May or June, 1895.

XQ127. How do you know that the first camera was completed in the latter part of January, 1895?

A. Because I remember exactly; when the camera was finished I have to make a punching machine and Mr. Latham ordered films from Eastman Kodak, and when the punching machine is finished I perforated some film and we take that picture of the lamp on the 26th of February.

XQ128. That is the only reason you know that you completed the camera in the latter part of January, 1895?

A. Yes, because to make a punching machine takes a long time.

XQ129. How do you know that you took the picture of the swinging incandescent lamp on February 26th, 1895?

A. From that testimony; from my first testimony (referring to Complainant's Exhibit Lauste deposition).

XQ130. That is the only thing that enables you to fix the date now as February 26th, 1895?

A. Yes.

1232

XQ131. It is so long ago that you have no independent recollection, aside from this testimony, that it was February 26th, 1895; is that right?

A. Yes.

XQ132. When you gave this testimony in 1898, how did you know that it was February 26th, 1895, when you took the picture of the swinging lamp?

A. Well, at that time I recollect better the date than now; it is too long time now.

XQ133. Is that all you can say on that point? A. Yes.

1235

XQ134. Referring again to that first camera that you made, you say that later on Dickson suggested putting in this supplementary roller between 56 and 46 on Fig. 6?

A. Yes, that is right.

XQ135. Aside from that roller was there any other part of the camera that anybody suggested to you, or were they all your work?

A. No, not at all.

XQ136. You mean that all the rest of it was your work?

A. Yes.

1236

XQ137. You have spoken of a stop motion in this camera, and if I recollect rightly you spoke about some trouble with it. Did you have any trouble with the stop motion at any time?

A. Well, all I have is what I say; that the gear when it broke; that is the only trouble; that I have to make another gear and replace the broken one; but that don't change anything in the camera. It was just the same.

XQ138. Do you mean that there was no trouble at all with getting a stop motion after you went to work for Mr. Latham?

A. None at all.

XQ139. None at all?

A. No.

XQ140. Are you sure of that?

A. Perfectly sure.

XQ141. If in this deposition of yours, given in 1898, you had testified about trouble with the stop motion, what you said there would be true, would it not, rather than what you remember to-day?

A. I don't remember.

XQ142. Well, if you said in this testimony of yours that there was trouble with the stop motion, what you said about it was true?

A. Certainly, of course.

XQ143. Your memory was fresher then than it is now?

A. Yes, it is easy to find out if you have the bill from Mr. Pearce; we ordered one pair of gear stop motion and a few days after we ordered the same one; or I mean another pair similar; there was one tooth broken.

XQ144. Don't you recall Mr. Dickson suggesting a stop motion at the very beginning of your work, or near it?

A. Well, Mr. Latham spoke to me about something like that; he told me Mr. Dickson had got an idea, and we tried that idea, but that thing don't stand the speed; we gave her up.

XQ145. That is, Mr. Dickson's suggestion about the stop motion wasn't successful?

A. It was not successful.

XQ146. Whose suggestion was this about the stop motion; this stop motion that failed; who suggested it?

A. Oh, I did and Mr. Latham did; I tried it for him.

1238

XQ147. I am speaking now of a stop motion that you tried and didn't work?

A. That is it.

XQ148. Who suggested that stop motion?

A. Mr. Dickson; what Mr. Latham told me.

XQ149. You mean that Mr. Latham told you that it was Mr. Dickson's suggestion?

A. That is right.

XQ150. Was this stop motion of Mr. Dickson's the first stop motion you tried after you went to work for Mr. Latham at the Frankfort Street shop?

1241

A. Yes.

XQ151. How long were you at work over that stop motion of Dickson's?

A. Oh, a very short time.

XQ152. Then what stop motion was tried?

A. You mean after that?

XQ153. Yes; the next after that.

A. We find an idea on the catalogue of the Boston Gear Works; it is an internal gear; but the diameter was much too big for the camera, and we use that gear for the punching machine; and after that I designed a new Maitese cross and Mr. Pearce make it under my instructions.

1242

XQ154. Did you send for one of these internal gears of the Boston Gear Works?

A. Mr. Kleinert write for me.

XQ155. And one came?

A. And one came to the shop.

XQ156. About when was that?

A. Oh, a very short time afterwards.

XQ157. Well, when was that?

A. In the beginning of January.

XQ158. Did you try it in the camera?

A. No, it was impossible because we used sprocket one inch diameter in the camera and the

internal gear is something like three inches and a half.

XQ159. You did not use it because it was not of the right size?

A. That is right.

XQ160. And then you planned out the Maltese cross stop motion and had Mr. Pearce make it?

A. Yes; Pearce made it.

XQ161. Had you had any experience before this in stop motion?

A. Well, I got the idea from an old spring watch to stop winding too high; now I had the idea from that, but I made it much stronger, of course; and I think I have got the same thing in my house now.

XQ162. What I meant now was that before this time had you had any experience with machinery that had the stop motion?

A. Well, no.

XQ163. There was no stop motion that you know of in any motion picture camera or projector?

A. No, because no motion picture machines made at that time.

XQ164. What do you mean by "no motion picture machines made at that time?"

A. Because I never heard of any machinery of that kind.

XQ165. Do you mean a camera?

A. A camera or projector.

XQ166. You mean both a camera and a projector?

A. Yes.

XQ167. Didn't Edison have one when you were with him?

A. Well, he has got a camera to take pictures with, a film for the kinetoscope; but I never see

1244

machinery of the camera; I never see the inside; I don't know how he is working it.

XQ168. You only saw the outside of his camera?

A. I only saw the outside.

XQ169. And that was only used for taking pictures for the kinetoscope?

A. That is right.

XQ170. You saw it used for that purpose, I suppose?

A. Yes.

1247

XQ171. Didn't you ever operate the camera itself?

A. No.

XQ172. You had no experience then with motion picture cameras before you went to Mr. Latham?

A. None at all.

XQ173. Why did he employ you if you had had no experience with motion picture machinery?

A. Well, because my business was working in invention; the same as now; people come to see me and give me an idea and I develop the whole thing.

XQ174. That is your business now?

1248

A. In London, yes; and of course when I worked with Mr. Edison I worked for the chief electrician, and the chief electrician gave me an idea and I developed the idea for him.

XQ175. Had you had any experience with films while you were in Edison's employ?

A. No; that was not my department.

XQ176. You had nothing to do with the films he used?

A. Nothing at all.

XQ177. You saw them, I suppose, of course, frequently around the factory?

A. I just saw one time on the kinetoscope the machinery running; that was all I saw.

XQ178. Hadn't you seen films lying around?

A. No, because that was not my department; it was Mr. Dickson's department; I had nothing to do with that department.

XQ179. Where was your work done in the Edison factory?

A. In the machine shop.

XQ180. You have spoken of a kinetoscope film brought to you by Mr. Otway Latham?

A. Otway Latham, yes.

XQ181. Will you describe that film as best you can; I mean will you tell what it looked like, felt like, its color, how thick it was and how wide, as near as you can tell?

A. Well, it was no color; it was white and black; black and white; the size was 3/4 of an inch by 1 inch.

XQ182. How thick was the film, as near as you can tell?

A. Well, perhaps 1/64th or less; because at that time they were not regular, the films. Some parts very thin and some parts very thick on the same piece. It is very hard to tell.

XQ183. Do you mean 1/64th of an inch?

A. Yes.

XQ184. A pretty thick film, wasn't it?

A. No, that is too thick; it is much too thick, it is very hard to tell. There are so many differences; some is very thick and some very thin.

XQ185. Do you know what the average thickness of the motion picture films used commercially today is? If you don't know, just say so.

1250

1253

A. No, by my micrometer I can tell you.

XQ186. But you don't recall, yourself, what that thickness is?

A. No. I don't remember.

XQ187. Was this old kinetoscope film that Otway Latham brought you thicker or thinner than the ordinary motion picture films of today?

A. Oh yes, it was the first film; it was not perfect; now they have got some good films, perfect films all over.

XQ188. In what way was that film not perfect?

A. Because they had got no tools to do it.

XQ189. Well, as far as the film itself is concerned in what ways was it imperfect; I mean the old film of the kind Otway Latham brought you to the Frankfort shop?

A. That was different in the thickness on the same piece; different thickness.

XQ190. Anything else?

A. Nothing else.

XQ191. How about its color; what was it?

A. Black and white; no color.

XQ192. What was the color of this kinetoscope film before pictures were taken on it?

A. Why very pale green; the emulsion.

XQ193. Was it so you could see through it, or not?

A. No, it was opaque.

XQ194. Was that the kind Edison used when you were at the Edison factory?

A. Yes, I think so.

XQ195. I suppose you saw the exhibitions of the kinetoscope given at the Edison factory while there?

A. I saw just one.

XQ196. Weren't you at all interested in what Edison was doing?

A. I had nothing to do with that kinetoscope business.

XQ197. Did you not have any curiosity about it while you were there?

A. Of course, yes; but no chance, I had no chance.

XQ198. What do you mean by no chance?

A. Because I was working in the machine shop, and the kinetoscope was upstairs in the precision room; fine work; and of course I had nothing to do upstairs.

XQ199. You were interested in the film they were using, I suppose, weren't you?

A. No.

XQ200. Did you ever handle it while you were there or see a piece of it?

A. No, I don't think I see any of it only one time, the kinetoscope, the kinetoscope running; there was only one time I saw it.

XQ201. Where was this picture of the swinging incandescent lamp taken?

A. In Frankfort Street, in the Scott Building.

XQ202. In what part of the building?

A. On the third floor, in the shop.

XQ203. You have referred to another picture being taken on the roof of that building?

A. Yes.

XQ204. When was that picture taken?

A. Well, this one I have mentioned already; Mr. Latham, Mr. Gray Latham, Mr. Kleinert, and myself and my son; it was a very short time after the camera was repaired with the new gear; and sometime after that we take another picture of two Frenchmen fighting.

1256

XQ205. When was the picture on the roof taken?

A. Let me see; it must be the first day of March; yes, it must be the first day of March.

XQ206. What year?

A. 1895.

XQ207. How do you know it was the 1st day of March?

A. It was a short time after the camera was repaired, and another one of the two Frenchmen fighting was about two or three weeks afterwards.

XQ208. When did the camera break down?

A. Two days after we take the swinging lamp; we put too much speed on it, and one tooth broke.

XQ209. How do you know that it was the first of March when the picture was taken on the roof, and not the 1st of April for instance, or some other time along in the spring?

A. Because we take the picture of the lamp on the 26th of February, and you see you have a couple of days to make a new gear and put inside of the camera, a very short time; perhaps two

or three days after.

XQ210. What I mean is this; it is now a good many years ago since these things happened, and it is pretty hard to remember dates of the month, or the day of the month of things that only happened a year or two ago. Now what I want to know is how you now are able to say that the picture of the swinging lamp was taken on February 26th, 1895, rather than in March or April or some later date, and why you say the pictures on the roof were taken in March, 1895. Now if you can explain to me how you are enabled to fix those dates in your memory I wish you would do so?

1260

A. Why, because from my testimony I said a date, or something like that; now everything follows after that. But of course I can't say the date exactly.

XQ211. In short you are relying for these dates now upon the testimony you gave in 1898, are you not?

A. Yes, I think so. At that time I remember the date much better than now.

XQ212. How many machines did you make for Mr. Latham altogether, counting both cameras or taking machines and projecting machines; how many?

A. Why, there is 10.

XQ213. How many were cameras?

A. Three.

XQ214. And seven projecting machines?

A. Seven projecting machines; of course this one here has come after (referring to Complainant's Exhibit Latham Drawings).

XQ215. Of these three cameras that you made which one was used in taking the picture of the swinging lamp?

A. That was the only one.

XQ216. And was that same one used in taking the picture on the roof and the picture of the Griffo-Barnett fight?

A. Yes, and the same one used for the Niagara Falls; and the two new ones made after that were with me and Mr. Gray Latham to Mexico.

XQ217. And that first camera you haven't seen since you left the Frankfort shop?

A. I never see it again.

XQ218. Have you seen any of the three cameras since that time?

A. Well, when we moved to-from Frankfort

1262

1264

Street we moved to Beekman Street, and I don't know if I saw the first one, but the two new ones I know; I don't remember seeing the first one.

XQ219. When did you move to Beekman Street? A. Oh, I don't remember the date.

XQ220. When did you last see the other two cameras; the two new ones, as you call them?

A. Well, that was the time I left the place, because I don't go there any more.

XQ221. You mean the time you left Mr. Latham's employ?

1265

A. Yes.

XQ222. And when was that?

A. Oh, Mr. Latham left before me; there was new people altogether.

XQ223. Well, when did you leave?

A. I left in 1896, but I don't know the date, the month.

XQ224. You have in your testimony in two or three places referred to a continuous machine; what did you mean by a continuous machine?

A. That is a projecting machine.

1266

XQ225. Why did you call it a continuous machine?

A. Because we don't use any stop motion; the film run all the time.

XQ226. The film was a continuously moving film?

A. That is right.

XQ227. And that was the way with all the projecting machines you built for Mr. Latham, as I understand it?

A. That is right.

By Mr. Page. Q. These continuous film projecting machines were what you have referred to as the kinetoscope machines? A. That is not kinetoscope, but similar.

Q. After making those machines did you make any projecting machines with an intermittent feed? A. No, that is the one—this one here (referring to Complainant's Latham Drawings Fig. 1). I know we make one, but this one was never made (referring to Fig. 2); it is only a drawing, but it was never made.

XQ228. I read you Q14 to Q16 and your answers to them in your testimony given yesterday (reads to witness). How did you know that Edison's film was too narrow?

A. Well, this idea of Mr. Latham's; I can't explain his idea.

XQ228. Oh, it was Mr. Latham's idea that the Edison film was too narrow?

A. That is right.

XQ228b. Did he talk with you about it?

A. Yes, we decide altogether what size of film we must use for the camera, for projecting.

XQ229. Did you have some of the Edison film 1269 present at the talk?

A. Well, only that one that Mr. Otway brought to me.

XQ230. I mean when you were talking at the Hotel Bartholdi with Latham did you have any of the Edison film there?

A. Oh, no; not at all.

XQ231. When did you make the two new cameras that you have referred to?

A. I started to build the two new cameras in Beekman Street.

XQ232. When was that?

A. Well, I don't know the date now; I forget that.

XQ233. What was the year?

A. 1895.

XQ234. But you can't remember the month?

A. Oh, no.

XQ235. You spoke yesterday about Mr. Latham bringing a draftsman to make the drawings for the patent?

A. Yes, that was in Beekman Street.

1271 XQ236. Then you said the machine was not put all together; what did you mean by that?

A. Well, Mr. Weit was working on the machine and we got some parts made and it was not finished; Mr. Weit explained to the draftsman what he have to do; after that I have nothing to do with that new projecting; that was the end of my work on that. After the draftsman came in I got nothing to do.

XQ237. What I wanted to know was what you meant when you said the machine was not put all together?

A. We worked on the machine.

1272 XQ238. Doing what work?

A. Making the whole part, the whole business; the rollers, the sprocket and everything; shutter everything, worm gear; not complete to put all together.

XQ239. Which machine was this that you are referring to?

A. This one (indicating Complainant's Exhibit Latham Drawings Fig. 1); the continuous motion.

XQ240. You say that the first camera that you made you used not only for taking pictures, but for projecting too; but the machine was not meant

for that; what did you mean by "the machine was not meant for that"?

A. Well, because the camera is all covered to keep in darkness you know; and for the projecting it is different; it must be all open to get the light on the back, and the lense on the front; that is the only difference.

XQ241. When did you use this camera for projecting purposes?

A. We used that a very short time after we take that picture on the roof, because we use the film of that picture of Mr. Latham and me and my son, and we tried to project that.

XQ242. Did you succeed in projecting it?

A. Not much, because it was nothing fit for that; that had proved the possibility of the stop motion giving much better results for motion pictures.

XQ243. In this first camera you made, how many sprockets were there?

A. Four.

XQ244. And how many rollers were there; I mean without the teeth?

A. Four.

XQ245. That makes eight altogether?

A. Eight altogether.

XQ246. How many of these were above the lense opening?

A. Two on top and two on the bottom.

XQ247. Do you mean two sprockets above and two below?

A. And two below the place where the picture is taken; two above the place where the picture is taken, and two below.

XQ248. And how many of the rollers were above where the picture was taken?

1274

A. Well, we got one on each sprocket; and after that we get another one on top at the suggestion of Mr. Dickson, and that makes an extra roller.

XQ249. Did the film move upward or downward?

A. Downward.

XQ250. After the film left the supply reel on the top, what did it first pass over? I want you to tell me in detail all about these sprockets and rollers and how the film passed over them; now beginning with the film as it leaves the top reel, what did it run to first?

A. Well, from the first sprocket; the first sprocket is continuous.

XQ251. It ran to a sprocket that was continuously driven?

A. Yes, that is it.

XQ252. Then what did it go to next?

A. It goes to the second sprocket, the intermittent sprocket; between the two is a loop.

XQ253. Then where did the film go?

A. After that it passed from the gate or window, if you like, take the picture, and the bottom sprocket stop motion pulled down.

XQ254. After the gate it passed to the stop motion sprocket and that pulled it down?

A. That is right, yes.

XQ255. Was that sprocket continuously driven or intermittent?

A. Intermittent, and then it makes a loop again and the last sprocket feed continuously.

XQ256. And below the gate there was first an intermittent sprocket and then a continuous sprocket?

A. That is right.

1277

XQ257. You say there was also a loop; where did that loop come; between the two sprockets?

A. Between the two sprockets; that is right.

XQ258. Then the film went from the lowest sprocket to the final reel where it was stored?

A. Yes, and winding up by friction.

XQ259. Above the gate where was the loop; between what?

A. Above the gate? We have two loops, one on top and one on the bottom.

XQ260. I mean the one now that is above the gate where the picture is taken; between what sprockets and rollers is that loop?

A. Between the continuous and the stop motion, or the stop motion and the continuous.

XQ261. Do you mean between the first sprocket continuously driven and the intermittent sprocket below it, but above the gate; was the loop between those two?

A. Yes; but the stop motion is before the continuous; after the gate was the stop motion.

XQ262. I am speaking of above the gate?

A. Oh yes, above the gate.

XQ263. Now, then, if I understand you rightly, the loop was between the continuously moving sprocket that the film went to first and the intermittent sprocket a little below it?

A. Yes, the intermittent sprocket pulled the loop; the feeder makes another winding.

XQ264. How about the rollers; where were the four rollers placed?

A. On each sprocket, to keep the film on the teeth of the sprocket.

XQ265. How did the shutter of this first camera compare with the shutters shown in these drawings (Complainant's Exhibit Latham Drawings)? 1280

A. The shutter on the camera is very small.

XQ266. What was the size of this small shutter?

A. If I remember it, about 6 inches or something like that; 6 or 7 inches.

XQ267. You have testified that you had no contract with Mr. Latham?

A. No contract with Mr. Latham.

XQ268. But he gave you wages to work for him, and promised you some share in the company "if you succeed." What did you mean by that, "if you succeed"?

1283

A. If I succeed to carry out his idea.

XQ269. Do you mean that if you succeeded in making a machine that would work he would give the stock?

A. That is right.

XQ270. And that if you did not succeed you would not get the stock?

A. Of course.

XQ271. When did he give you this stock?

A. He give me that just a few days after we take that picture on the roof.

1284

Stock certificate is produced to Counsel for Defendant.

XQ272. This certificate is for 200 shares in the Lambda Company, is it not?

A. Yes.

XQ273. What company is that?

A. The company that Mr. Latham formed, but I can't explain nothing about that.

XQ274. Was it a company that he organized for this motion picture business of his?

A. Yes, that was the first company.

XQ275. You say the last time you saw Mr.

Woodville Latham was when you gave your testimony in 1898?

A. Yes.

XQ276. Where is he now, do you know?

A. I just heard a few days ago he has died, and his two sons, too.

XQ277. Do you mean that you have heard that all three are dead?

A. Yes.

XQ278. Will you let me see that telegram that you produced?

1286

It is produced to Counsel for the Defendant.

XQ279. You referred to a telegram sent you in November, 1894? That telegram is signed "Gray Latham," is it not, or at least his name appears at the bottom?

A. Yes, Gray Latham.

Adjourned till 1 P. M.

Met pursuant to adjournment as before.

XQ280. In this testimony that you gave in 1898 in the Latham vs. Castler vs. Interference, I notice that reference was made to a number of sketches that were put in as exhibits in that case. Where are those sketches?

1287

A. I don't know, I have had the rough sketch myself; I had my furniture in storage here and all the papers and everything is stole; I can't find anything.

XQ281. Have you looked for them?

A. Oh yes.

XQ282. And you can't find them?

A. I can't find nothing.

XQ283. Do you know what became of the

sketches that were offered in evidence in this 1898 testimony?

A. No, I don't know.

By Mr. Kenyon: I call upon Counsel for Complainant in this case to produce the exhibit sketches that are referred to in the deposition of Eugene Lauste offered in evidence by him, Complainant's Exhibit Lauste Deposition. From a quick glance at this testimony it would appear that a number of sketches were offered in evidence and referred to in his testimony. It is difficult, at least in some places, to understand the testimony without reference to those sketches. For this reason we call upon complainant to produce them.

Counsel for Complainant replies that he is probably much more anxious to produce these sketches than Defendant's Counsel is to have them; that every possible measure has been adopted to find them, but so far without success, the last information with regard to them being that they were all sent by the Clerk of the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia to Mr. Henry A. Seymour of Washington, D. C., who was at that time attorney for the Anthony & Scoville Company, assignees of the Latham application; that all of the exhibits were sent by Mr. Seymour in 1901 to the Anthony & Scovill Company, and that some years after that they were all destroyed. It is possible that some of the paper exhibits were not so destroyed, and efforts are now being made to ascertain definitely this fact.

1289

To date, however, no trace of any of the exhibits has been found beyond what is above stated.

XQ284. In this 1898 testimony of yours, and in your testimony given yesterday and to-day, there are some references to a picture being taken of a Griffo-Barnett fight. What was the date of that fight?

A. I don't know exactly; sometime, I think, in May, 1895.

XQ285. You can't fix it any closer than that?

A. It is easy to find out. The Police Gazette Journal make a report of that; if you get a copy we can find out.

XQ286. Was that a prize fight?

A. It was a prize fight for fun.

XQ287. I notice in your 1898 testimony you refer to an Eidoloscope film; what was that film?

A. That was the wider film.

XQ288. What was the Eidoloscope?

A. Well, the same as the Lambda transferred to the Eidoloscope Company.

XQ289. I mean what kind of a machine was it, the Eidoloscope?

A. It is just the same as the Lambda; the same machine.

XQ290. Was it a kinetoscope machine?

A. Projecting machine, or taking machine; which one do you mean?

XQ291. What I want to know is what kind of a machine the Eidoloscope is?

A. Just the same; nothing changed in the machine; it is only the name of the company; that is all.

XQ292. Describe the Eidoloscope machine.

1292

A. The Eidoloscope machine is a kinetoscope machine, but arranged for projecting.

XQ293. Otherwise it is just like the kinetoscope machine?

A. That is right, yes.

XQ294. In this Eidoloscope machine do you look through the peep-hole to see the pictures?

A. Oh no, no; it is projected on a screen.

XQ295. When you were getting up the first taking machine at the Frankfort shop, where did you get the idea of the loop?

1295

1296

A. The idea of the loop, I found that in some books.

XQ296. What books?

A. It looked like a catalogue; I don't know what book exactly; I don't know what kind of a machine, but I find something that looked like a loop, and that gave me the idea.

XQ297. Where did you see this catalogue?

A. Oh, when I worked for Edison; that was in 1891.

XQ298. Was it in his laboratory?

A. No, in the photographic room.

XQ299. That is, in Edison's photographic room?

A. Yes, in Edison's photographic room.

XQ300. Was it an American publication or a foreign publication?

A. It must be American, I think.

XQ301. Do you remember the name of the author?

A. Oh, nothing at all; just I found that on the table and I watched that book; I can't say anything more about that book.

XQ302. How large a book was it?

A. Oh, something like that (pointing to a book

on the table entitled Joscelyn Cheshire by Kennedy, Doubleday, Page & Company).

XQ303. This book looks like a novel of the ordinary size and seems to have between 300 and 400 pages?

A. Yes, I don't know how many pages, but this looked more like a catalogue; pretty near all advertisements inside.

XQ304. It was a bound book like this one, was it?

A. Yes.

XQ305. This book, I understand, is a 12-mo. book; it was about that size?

A. About that size.

XQ306. In your testimony given in 1898 you say that you saw Marey use a loop in a taking machine in 1888, in Paris?

A. Yes, that is another mistake in my testimony, because I said when I was in Paris I saw Mr. Marey himself, and Mr. Marey explained to me all his machines; and I found that he used a loop; just the same, but that was 1898.

XQ307. What time in 1898 was it?

A. Oh, well, in the summer time.

XQ308. What is Mr. Marey's full name?

A. E. J. Marey; I don't know what.

XQ309. Is he living?

A. He has died.

XQ310. When did he die?

A. 5 or 6 years ago.

XQ311. Did he show you his taking machine in which he had the loop?

A. Yes, and I have got a photograph of that machine, too, but it is in my house.

XQ312. Did you see him taking pictures with it?

A. No.

1298

XQ313. Did you see him project any pictures? A. Oh, he don't make any projections; only

scientific apparatus, for recording the motion.

XQ314. Did he show you any films taken?

A. Yes.

XQ315. What did they look like?

A. Oh, a very large film.

XQ316. How long a film did he have?

A. Perhaps a piece 50 feet long, or something like that.

1301

XQ317. And how large were the pictures?

A. About 3 inches, a very wide film, no perforations. Worked by—the stop motion was made by electro magnet part.

XQ318. When you made this first camera for Mr. Latham where did you get the idea of the carrying reels?

A. Well, that is my idea; a very simple thing too; must have something to carry a film.

XQ318. Did you get that from any book or any other source? A. Oh, no.

XQ319. You worked it out yourself?

A. Yes.

1302

XQ320. What is a sprocket wheel?

A. Why it looks like a drum with teeth.

XQ321. Did the first camera work any differently after you put in the supplementary sprocket suggested by Dickson from what it worked before?

A. Well, it was not a sprocket; it was a roll; it is not a sprocket; but the pull, the feeder is much better; but that don't change anything in the camera, it is just the same.

XQ322. What difference did it make in the working of the camera?

A. Well, the feeder is more steady; that is the only difference.

XQ323. Before you put that supplementary roller in did you have any trouble with the camera?

A. Very few.

XQ324. What troubles did you have?

A. Well, the pulling—there was only one tooth pulled the film, and if it pulled too heavy it would make a jar and tear the film, tear a hole.

XQ325. You had this trouble with the tearing of the film before you put that supplementary roller in, did you?

A. Well, very few, yes.

XQ326. Up to what time did you have that trouble?

A. Well, we have no trouble if you don't put too much film in.

XQ327. But if you put a big weight of film on you did have the trouble?

A. Yes.

XQ328. Did you have that trouble in the Griffo-Barnett fight?

A. Yes, that was what decide us to put the new roll.

XQ329. So you put that in after the Griffo-Barnett fight?

A. Yes.

XQ330. While you were working on the first camera or the first projecting machine at the Frankfort shop did Mr. Dickson bring you any film?

A. Never.

XQ331. I read you XQ210 and your answer in your 1898 testimony (reads to witness): What did

1304

1307

he mean by saying "It is very compromising for me"?

A. Because he was engaged for Mr. Edison, and he can't do any work for somebody else; and he was perfectly right.

XQ332. That was all he meant, so far as you know?

A. Yes.

XQ333. Before you put in this supplementary roller that Mr. Dickson suggested did the top reel pull direct from the loop or not?

A. Pulled right from the sprocket; what you call the feeding sprocket.

XQ333a. It did not pull direct from the loop?

A. Oh, no, no; that can't be.

XQ334. Did you ever have any trouble with that top loop, the one above the gate?

A. No.

XQ335. Is that so before you put in Dickson's supplementary roller?

A. Yes.

XQ336. You had trouble before that, did you?

A. No trouble at all; that is what I say; except if you put too heavy a reel, too much film; this is a very nice picture that we took up on the roof (producing photograph to Counsel). We took that all right with the machine without any trouble and the two Frenchmen fighting just the same; no trouble at all.

XQ337. Well that trouble was simply tearing the film on the top sprocket, wasn't it?

A. On the top sprocket.

XQ338. And that trouble had nothing to do with the top loop?

A. Oh, no.

XQ339. And do I understand you that before you put this supplementary roller on you had no trouble with the top loop at all?

A. None at all; we took the whole bull fight in Mexico without any trouble; and that was a very heavy reel at that time, because we had about 4,000 feet of film.

XQ340. I read you RXQ275 in your testimony of 1898, and your answer (reads to the witness): Why do you say that it was impossible to run the Edison film through that machine?

A. Because the film is too narrow to run through the sprocket.

XQ341. Was that the only reason?

A. That was the only reason; if we have a narrow sprocket to fit the Edison film it would run just the same.

XQ342. You came over to this country on this trip just to give your testimony, did you not?

A. Yes.

XQ343. And arrived here last Monday?

A. Last Monday.

XQ344. Who asked you to come?

A. Mr. Marvin.

XQ345. Do you know his full name?

A. No; I don't know it.

XQ346. What company is he connected with?

A. Now, it is the Picture Motion Company, or something like that.

XQ347. Of course he promised to pay your expenses?

A. Yes.

XQ348. What agreement did he make with about paying you for your expenses and time?

A. Well, to pay all my expenses, my fare, and £100 for my trouble.

1310

XQ349. Has that been paid yet?

A. No, not yet.

XQ350. But you of course expect it to be paid?

A. Yes.

XQ351. Has any promise been made to pay you any other money or give you anything else besides?

A. Nothing else.

Re-direct Examination by Counsel for Complainant:

1313 RDQ352 I understand that you have a photograph, or one of the pictures taken on the roof of the Frankfort Street shop in 1895. Will you produce it?

A. Here it is (producing photograph).

RDQ353. Please state what that photograph is?

A. It is only a foolish thing to try the camera.

RDQ354. I mean what is this photograph; one taken on the camera or an enlargement of it?

A. It was taken with the camera made by me; the first one.

RDQ355. Is this the size of the picture that was 1314 originally taken?

A. No, that is an enlargement.

RDQ356. This is an enlargement of one of the photographs on the film taken on the roof on the occasion to which you have testified before?

Objected to as leading.

A. Yes.

The photograph produced by the witness is offered in evidence and marked Complainant's Exhibit Lauste photograph.

RDQ357. You have stated in your testimony that the feeding mechanism of the first camera or taking machine which you say was tried on February 26th, 1895, was the same as the feeding mechanism illustrated in Figures 2 to 8 of the Latham Exhibit drawings. I gather from your testimony under cross-examination this morning that there were some differences between the feed mechanism of the camera and that shown in these drawings to which you have not heretofore referred. Will you now indicate what those differences are?

1316

A. I just find out something wrong in the drawing here, because this exactly is the camera I made (producing sketch); one, two, three, four sprockets that second sprocket is an intermittent sprocket; but the stop motion is fixed on the shaft of that sprocket (pointing to the third sprocket from the top); this one is connected with this one (referring to the two intermediate sprockets), by a steel belt; one strap here and one here and when it pulls the bottom one it pulls the top one, and when the bottom one stops the top one stops. The two feeder sprockets are run by beveled gear (referring to the top and bottom sprockets). And just when I looked at the drawing I found something wrong here because it puts the stop motion on the top one (referring to 50 in Complainant's If you take the Exhibit Latham Drawings). picture down we must show it down; but here the machine is just the reverse, to go up; it must be a mistake of the drafts.

1317

RDQ358. Would it make any difference in the operation of the camera whether the film moved up or down?

A. Well, that don't make any difference, of

course; if you use a projector in the same way; if you take the picture up you must reproduce it up; you take it down you must reproduce it down.

RDQ359. Well, in the first taking machine which you made, did the film move up or down?

A. Down; all the way down.

RDQ360. So that your first taking machine differed from these drawings in that respect?

A. Yes.

RDQ361. And it also differed in having two intermittent sprockets connected together by a steel belt?

A. By a steel belt, yes.

RDQ362. The upper sprocket being driven by the Maltese cross sprocket; is that right?

A. No; the top one and the bottom one is continuous; the top and the bottom sprockets are the feeders, and feeding continuously all the time; and this one (pointing to the second sprocket from the top and the third from the top) are intermittent sprockets, and this one (pointing to the third from the top) is the stop motion, and the loop between (pointing to the upper loop).

1320

1319

The sketch produced by the witness is offered in evidence and is marked Complainant's Exhibit Lauste Sketch of first taking machine.

Re-cross Examination by Defendant's Counsel:

RXQ363. This sketch shows a second loop near the bottom, does it not?

A. Yes; you get one here; when we get the loop at the top we have none at the bottom, and reversing; when we get the loop here (pointing to the bottom) then we have no loop at the top. RXQ364. It is evident, is it not, that these drawings, Complainant's Exhibit Latham Drawings, were not made from the first camera?

A. Very, very near, very near; except there were only three sprockets on the drawings and we used four.

RXQ365. Referring to this photograph that you have produced, which you say is an enlargement, who enlarged it?

A. I forget that.

RXQ366. Did you?

A. I think in Paris; oh, yes, I know now it was one of those chief electricians of the Casino of Paris; he was a photograph amateur.

RXQ367. What did he use to enlarge from?

A. From the small piece of film.

It is stipulated that the signature may be waived.

New York, April 10, 1911, 11 A. M.

Met pursuant to adjournment at the offices of Kerr, Page, Cooper & Hayward, 149 Broadway, New York City.

1323

1522

Present—Parker W. Page, Esq., Counsel for Complainant. Mr. Richard Eyre, Counsel for Defendant.

WILLIAM K. L. DICKSON, a witness called on behalf of the Complainant, having been first duly sworn, deposes in answer to interrogatories by Complainant's Counsel as follows:

Q1. Please state your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. William Kennedy Laurie Dickson, Consulting Engineer, 4 Denman Street, Piccadilly Circus, London. I am 49 years of age.

Q2. Have you ever known personally Mr. Woodville Latham?

A. Yes.

Q3. When did you first become acquainted with him?

A. In the early part of 1894.

Q4. What was Mr. Latham's business or occupation at the time you knew him?

1325

A. When I first became acquainted with him, he was interested in the purchase of Edison kinetoscopes and made such purchases from Mr. Edison at that time. It was in my province to exhibit the machines to purchasers and so I became acquainted with that gentleman and his sons.

Q5. Was Woodville Latham a scientific man?

Mr. Eyre: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. Yes.

1326

Q6. Did you ever have any other business relations with Mr. Latham in connection with moving picture apparatus other than that which you have stated in a preceding answer, and if so, will you please state fully what your relations with him were?

Mr. Eyre: Objected to as it appears to bring new matter into the case which is not proper rebuttal testimony and notice is given that at the proper time motion will be made for leave to take testimony in reply to this or any similar line of testimony or to expunge the same from the record, and it is agreed that this objection be made now once for all to any testimony of this character.

A. As a brief preamble, prior to answering these questions in full, I would like to say that a few days ago, I read for the first time Mr. Woodville Latham's testimony in an Interference in the Patent Office under the head of Woodville Latham vs. Thomas Armat and found same to my intense surprise, incomprehensibly vindictive. Had I known of this testimony nothing would have kept me from coming over and correcting such statements, as I hope now to do, hoping that this may not be out of place.

As stated before, I met Mr. Woodville Lathem for the first time in the early part of (to the best of my knowledge) 1894, when he came to the Edison Laboratory to purchase six or more kinetoscopes which he intended to use for exhibition purposes in New York. I found Mr. Latham to be a congenial spirit, owing to his scientific attainments and our friendship grew and throughout such acquaintanceship, we spent many evenings discussing the scientific questions of the day. One subject, however, was rigidly tabooed, namely, moving photography. Professor Latham, I believe, was a man of letters, Professor at a Virginia College or University, a lecturer in Physics. Shortly after my meeting him at the Edison Laboratory, I invited him to my home and to cut this testimony as short as possible, I will now give the salient points that I presume may be of interest in this testimony, namely, Mr. Woodville Latham, shortly after I had made his acquaintance, asked

1328

me to recommend him a good mechanician without stating what he wished him for. I recommended a late employee of Mr. Edison, whom I knew to be a thoroughly capable man in his line. A week or so later, Mr. Latham called at my house, thanked me for the recommendation, remarking that he was just the man he wanted, and then for the first time, disclosed that he wished to carry out some idea he had in moving photography. This rather took me aback and I told him that I should never have recommended anyone to him had I known for what purpose he wished to use this mechanician. However, the deed was done and there was nothing more to be said. Mr. Woodville Latham then did his best to persuade me to come and join forces with them. This I steadfastly declined owing to the fact that my position and interest with Mr. Edison were entirely satisfactory to me, and that the Latham proposition at that time was an unknown quantity. Sometime in October, 1894, Mr. Woodville Latham and his two sons, Messrs. Otway and Gray Latham, accepted an invitation to dine at my house, at 166 Cleveland Street, Orange, N. J., and after the guests had all left, Mr. Woodville Latham and his two sons made a proposition to me in the presence of my wife, which was untenable, which, however, was modified and to which I agreed heartily, namely, that as Mr. Woodville Latham was desirous of going into public exhibitions of the kinetoscope using same for projecting purposes, if on trial, it proved satisfactory, I should use my best endeavor to persuade Mr. Edison to give them the exclusive right for this special branch of the business, and that if I succeeded, I should have a substantial interest, subject, of course, to Mr. Edison's approval. I signed such

1331

a letter, which was approved of by my wife, whose sense of right and wrong naturally was of the highest order.

I immediately set to work and arranged to make a trial at Columbia College, with the courtesy and in the presence of the Professors and one or two other gentlemen, Woodville Latham and his sons being invited. All the commercial kinetoscopes, were in use but I was able with some parts of an obsolete machine to demonstrate and prove to my own satisfaction and that of Mr. Latham, and the others present, that if I succeeded in persuading Mr. Edison to make such a contract as previously stated, regarding the use of the Edison film and kinetoscopes possibly with slightly increased opening in the shutter, and as intensely concentrated light as possible, all would be well. The short film and mechanism were, of course, replaced in Mr. Edison's laboratory and the next morning I did my best to persuade Mr. Edison to grant these gentlemen this privilege. Mr. Edison, however, pointed out to me that he had already bound himself to Messrs, Raff & Gammon. I need not say that my disappointment was intense and I called on Mr. Woodville Latham to acquaint him of my failure. It was then I learned from this gentleman that they intended, therefore, to go into this whole business themselves and that he was going to carry out some ideas he had and construct machines to produce negatives and positives for projecting purposes. It is stated in the Woodville Latham-Armat testimony among other things, that I was This nonsensical, and for some in his employ. hidden purpose, vindictive remark, I must emphatically deny, and while I have the opportunity, wish

1334

to state that at no time was I ever in Mr. Woodville Latham's employ, nor gave him any suggestion or ideas in connection with moving photography. I note in the Woodville Latham testimony that there is a mention of a Dickson Stop Mechanism which was experimented on and failed. The truth of the matter was simply this: That during one of our many scientific discussions, he caught me napping and I asked him if he had seen a curious stopping device for actuating a clockwork, which I described not having the slightest intention at the time that he should use this for the work on which he was engaged. I was careful not to ask him what he was doing or what his mechanism was, as I wished my relations with him to remain purely social. Mr. Latham seemed to jump at the conclusion that this would be most useful. I, however, pointed out to him I fancied it would be far too slow for his purpose, and that I certainly did not wish him to bring me into this business unless I decided to leave Mr. Edison and join them, which at present I had not the remotest idea of doing. During the months of December, 1894, and January, 1895, I had several opportunities of visiting on invitation, a shop which they had in New York and saw that they were in full swing, making so-called modified kinetoscope projectors. At the same time, they were working on an apparatus for taking negatives. I particularly avoided examining same and cannot testify as to the construction of this same mentioned taking machine until I received an invitation from Mr. Woodville Latham to come over as quickly as possible as he had something particularly interesting to show me. On arriving on the scene, I found Mr. Otway Latham, Mr. Gray Latham, Mr. Eugene

1337

Lauste and another workman very much excited and they proceeded to show me every detail of the beforementioned taking machine. A short piece of film was tried and I was asked to develop same which I did. Mr. Otway Latham for some hidden reason, asked me to write a note dictating the words "To my friend Woodville Latham, Compliments of W. K. L. Dickson," etc. If his object was to compromise me, he very nearly did succeed and so I fell into the trap, for as previously stated, throughout all these proceedings, neither by word or action, did I have anything to do with their work. After this, I thought it best to have as little to do with them as possible, until I had made up my mind if I should join them or not. crisis came on April 2nd, 1895, when I was accused by an individual then in the employ of Mr. Edison, to the effect that my relations with Messrs. Latham were not honorable, etc. etc. That person had the pleasure of being confronted with Mr. Edison by me and asked to repeat the remarks he made to me. Mr. Edison's remark was, "I don't believe a d- word of it." I then insisted on Mr. Edison making his choice between the aforementioned person and myself, but either owing to Mr. Edison having contracted with this person, allotting to him full power or whatever it was, and the decision not being sufficiently whole-hearted, I lost my temper and resigned on the spot. The date, as previously given, was April 2, 1895. I then joined my own company, the Portable Electric Light & Power Company, and throughout the time I was engaged in this company, Messrs. Latham received from me occasional visits and towards May, I assisted in the taking of a glove contest on the roof of Madison Square Garden.

1340

1343

1344

Before closing this preamble, I might add, that I notice in the Latham testimony, that a certain amount of stock in the Lambda Company was given This is quite incorrect. The true facts of the case were these. Mr. Woodville Latham insisted in forcing this stock on me and which I as persistently refused, there being no quid pro quo, as long as I was engaged with Mr. Edison and not having done anything for the Latham Company. Until I left, I could not, of course, take something for noth-As I was still towards the last undecided. if I should join them or not, at the advice of my solicitor, Mr. Edmond Congar Brown, of New York, I sent Mr. Latham to him and learned after that Mr. Brown decided in my interest to hold such stock in trust, pending the time that I should decide to join them.

In conclusion, to this rather lengthy preamble, I am fortunately able, even although I learn with much regret, that the Messrs. Latham have passed on, to give an account of themselves elsewhere, that I have other witnesses who can substantiate all I have said in regard to the personal slander which I need not say, has very much upset me.

I take this opportunity of apologizing, at the same time thanking Counsel on both sides, for their kind indulgence.

> Counsel for defendant states that he is hardly in a position to accept the thanks of the witness as he feels that he must now object to the answer as being incompetent, as bringing in reference to testimony which has not been given in this case and which cannot be duplicated in this case, since it

appears that Latham, whose prior testimony in Interference was criticised, is dead. The answer is further objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

Recess.

After Recess.

Q7. You state in your last answer that you were employed by Mr. Edison in 1894 or 5. In what department were you at Mr. Edison's place?

1346

A. The Electrical Mining or Milling Department and the Moving Picture Photographic Department.

Q8. How much experience did you have with the apparatus and the processes practiced in the Moving Picture Department?

A. In 1887, Mr. Edison asked me if I understood photography. I replied I did, also the chemistry of photography. He then proposed to start a department in which I was to have exclusive charge developing his ideas in moving photography, which I did from that time on until I left him.

Q9. And you left him, as I understand it, April 2, 1895?

A. That is right.

Q10. You have also referred to seeing a camera or taking machine in Woodville Latham's shop. I wish you would now state in as much detail as you can the exact circumstances connected with the incident, giving as far as you are able, the dates when you first saw that machine sufficiently to understand its construction?

A. I received a letter of invitation from Mr. Woodville Latham a month or so before I left Mr. Edison in which letter Mr. Woodville Latham urged me to come over as soon as possible to see what they had accomplished. I found those present Mr. Otway Latham, Mr. Gray Latham and Mr. Eugene Lauste, a workman. There may have been others, but I do not remember, except that I understood Mr. Woodville Latham was not well on that evening, as I recall. In the centre of the room or shop the taking machine, which I was aware had been worked on for some time past, was apparently finished, judging before I was shown the interior by the general excitement of those present. With a flourish the cover was lifted displaying an upright mechanism composed, to me as first impression, of endless rollers, sprockets, etc. On examination and witnessing the run made by Mr. Eugene Lauste, Mr. Otway Latham assisting in threading a piece of (what appeared to be) spoilt film, I noticed that this piece of film was passed over a sprocket wheel, the film being held in place by a roller pressing against the sprocket wheel holding the film in position. From this sprocket a loop was formed and passed to a second sprocket, the film being similarly held in position by a roller, the film was next carried through a window gate. Below the window gate the film was passed over a sprocket wheel, the film held in position by another roller. From this sprocket wheel the film formed a loop and was placed over a fourth sprocket wheel again similarly held by a roller. I noticed that next to the lowest sprocket wheel, which I might count as the third sprocket wheel, was rigidly attached to a Maltese cross stopping device which I understood at the time was to be their method of stopping and starting the film. This third sprocket wheel was fast-

1349

ened in some way with the second sprocket wheel immediately above the gate and the two outside sprocket wheels 1 and 4 were similarly attached. After running through this short piece of black appearing film the box was taken into the dark room situated at the end of the shop, and Mr. Otway Latham and one other, presumably Mr. Eugene Lauste, threaded the machine with some sensitive unexposed film. This was brought out of the dark room and the question arose how to make a record on this film. I found, however, that it had been settled to photograph the filament of an incandescent lamp and someone present suggested swinging same during the exposure. I was asked to turn the handle, I stupidly did, and further adding to my stupidity by not being able to see through their purpose, developed for them a short piece of the exposed film in the previously mentioned dark room, tearing off a piece of about six inches long, the result being a sharply focused and clearly defined image of the carbon filament standing out in black relief against a more or less mottled background. Mr. Otway Latham wished his father, who was ill at the Bartholdi Hotel, to have that night the first sample and asked me to pin this to a piece of paper, he himself dictating the words which I remember perfectly to be "To my friend Woodville Latham, compliments of W. K. L. Dickson." I should not have remembered the exact date and hour of this note had not my memory been refreshed by reading Mr. Latham's testimony but I am absolutely certain that in every detail this event took place at midnight or thereabouts a month or more prior to leaving Mr. Edison, which date as we know was April 2, 1895.

1352

1355

Q11. Where was the shop where the above occurrences took place?

A. I can only remember it was a broken down looking place in Franklin Street, New York, the shop, however, seemed to be well equipped.

Q12. Will you describe a little more fully the location of this shop which you say was on Franklin Street?

A. I am afraid that that is more than my memory will assist me in at this late date, but owing to the circumstances connected with this to me more or less disagreeable business the name of Franklin Street is deeply impressed on my mind.

Q13. Was this in New York City?

A. New York City, yes.

Q14. Can you tell where that street was located with references to some central point say the City Hall?

A. I am afraid I cannot. It certainly was in the lower portion of New York.

Q15. Mr. Lauste has given testimony in this case. Where you present at the time that he gave his deposition?

1356

A. I was.

Q16. Lauste says that the Latham shop was on . Frankfort Street. Was he mistaken in this?

A. Mr. Lauste was quite right. It was certainly Frankfort, now that the matter is brought to me.

Q17. Did you in writing the note at Mr. Otway Latham's dictation attach any date to it?

A. I did, both date and hour.

Q18. Was the date which you wrote that of the day on which the experiment was tried?

A. Yes, about 10 minutes after the short piece had been developed, and in fact the piece of film

was lying on a piece of blotting paper at our side.

Q19. I show you now the sketch Mr. Lauste made at the time of giving his deposition in this case and which is in evidence as Complainant's Exhibit Lauste Sketch. Will you please state in what respects, if any, that sketch illustrates the construction of the feed mechanism of the camera as you saw it on this occasion at the Frankfort Street shop to which you have just testified?

A. The sketch I hold in my hand is undated and purporting to be a sketch made on the Hotel Brevoort letter head, the sketch representing a series of rollers and sprocket wheels and a side sketch of a Maltese cross stop motion. This I was aware had been drawn and put in evidence at the time of Lauste's testimony. The sketch appears substantially to be what I observed at the time but I do not recollect the exact mode of attaching the various sprocket wheels together and presume this was substantially what I saw with the exception of a roller which is drawn on the top of the first sprocket wheel. This I did not see at the midnight test.

Q20. Using this sketch as a matter of convenience, will you please state how the first and fourth, that is the upper and lower sprocket wheels in the taking machine as you saw it at the time of the midnight experiment were driven; that is to say, was their motion intermittent or continuous?

A. I am sorry I cannot help you very much in variant to this for I do not remember the exact method adopted at that time to run these said mentioned first and fourth sprockets. They were, however, working in unison continuously, not intermittently, and presumably belted or geared as shown in the sketch, which is quite likely.

1358

Q21. I did not mean to inquire as to the specific devices for driving them, but only as to the character of their motion, and as to this your answer is what?

A. That the first and fourth sprockets shown in the sketch and as seen by me at that time were running continuously and not intermittently.

Q22. And how was it with the second and third or the two intermediate sprockets, what was the character of their movements?

A. Intermittently running sprocket wheels.

Q23. Did you make any estimate at the time of the rate at which you operated this camera?

A. Yes, and in fact we had a lively discussion and I think my estimate was accepted, as being perhaps the only one present who could judge, though roughly, of the speed at which the picture was taken, which I estimated, considering how the machine was geared, to be about half the speed at which we ran the Edison kinetograph, which kinetograph was run about 40 to the second.

Q24. As to the conditions of operation and finish of the machine on the night in question, what have you to say?

A. I am afraid very little, if anything, but I never saw that machine again for some time after I had left Mr. Edison. The machine, however, appeared to be constructed on two uprights with the rollers and sprockets one above the other, the gate or film carrier being centralized between the four rollers, two sprockets above and two below.

Q25. Was the machine on the night when you first operated it in such condition that it could be used practically for the taking of moving pictures?

Objected to as calling for a mere conclusion and indefinite.

1361

A. I felt convinced and somewhat troubled that we had a serious competitor especially so on examining the consecutive views of the filament swaying lamp. I examined the film closely with a lens and found perfect definition, and except for a slight halation due to the intensity of the light filament, but I considered at the time that the machine would answer the purpose for which it was intended.

Q26. You have spoken of assisting in photographing a glove contest on the roof of the Madison Square Garden. Do you remember the names of the contestants in this contest?

A. I do. Griffo and Barnet.

Q27. Do you remember when this contest took place?

A. Shortly after I left Mr. Edison.

Q28. You do not recall the precise date?

A. I do not.

Q29. What machine did you use for taking these pictures?

A. The same that I tested on the lamp filament. Q30. You mean the machine you first used at the

Frankfort Street shop?

A. Yes.

Q31. Was the machine when you used it for photographing the Griffo and Barnet fight in the same condition as when you photographed with it the swinging incandescent lamp in the Frankfort Street shop?

A. Yes, but with the exception that I added, or suggested that they should add, a supplementary roller on the upper sprocket wheel. The effect of this roller I judged, would be to allow the film to have a better grip on the teeth of the sprocket

1364

wheel. In other words, I made this suggestion to obviate any possible tearing out of the perforations, as they were intending to use a very heavy film.

Q32. And this supplementary roller you think was in the machine when you photographed the Griffo and Barnet fight?

A. Yes. This roller I judged necessary and my suggestion was carried out a day or two before the fight, tested and proved efficient.

1367

Q33. You heard Lauste's testimony on this point and you do not agree with his recollection of it?

Objected to as improper, the witness should simply testify to his own recollection without reference to what Lauste may have said.

A. I recollect his testimony, being present, and would have corrected it at the time but naturally I should have been out of order. The roller was placed on the machine a day or two before the fight.

1368

Q34. Do you recall how much film you used in photographing the Griffo-Barnet fight.

A. Not from recollection as to the specific amount used, but it seemed to me it was a very large and heavy roll, sufficient to take several rounds or bouts.

Q35. Approximately how long was that film if you can state?

A. I am unable to state correctly the length as I did not measure it, but remember it took a very long time to reel it up in the dark room, the reel appearing to be seven or eight inches or perhaps more in diameter.

Q36. How did the width of film used in this machine compare with that manufactured by Edison for use in his kinetoscope?

A. It was considerably wider than the Edison kinetoscope film.

Q37. Have you preserved any specimen of that film and if so will you please produce it?

A. I have. I now hand you a film which I found among my film collection in London purporting to be a piece of film of the Griffo-Barnet fight taken on the roof of Madison Square; size without perforations inch and a half by three quarters of an inch, which I hand in evidence.

1370

Q38. That is to say, the size of the pictures is an inch and a half by three-quarters of an inch?

A. Yes.

Q39. Has this film been trimmed, that is to say, the edge cut off?

A. Yes.

Q40. Did it originally have perforations on each side?

A. Yes.

The piece of film produced by the witness is offered in evidence and marked Complainant's Exhibit Film of Griffo and Barnet fight.

1371

Q41. Do you know what became of this taking machine after it was used for photographing this Griffo and Barnet fight?

A. I do not. As I left very shortly after the taking of this picture, not being satisfied with Messrs. Latham methods as far as I was concerned, joining the Mutoscope and Biograph Company of which I became a member. The only explanation

1373

I can give why these gentlemen testified later in such a vindictive manner was perhaps due to my leaving them high and dry and joining the Biograph Company.

Q42. Have you had any experience in reading the drawings of patents illustrating mechanical devices?

A. Yes.

Q43. Please look at the patent to Latham which is here in suit and Complainant's Exhibit Latham Drawings which is a full sized reproduction of the original drawing of that patent, and consider particularly Figs. 2 and 6 of that patent, and state, as far as your present recollection will permit, how the taking machine which you used to photograph the swinging incandescent light in the Latham shop on Frankfort Street, and afterwards used to photograph the Griffo and Barnet fight, differed from or resembled the machine which is illustrated in the figures to which I have called your attention?

A. Fig. 2 purports to be a projecting kinetoscope. I cannot say very much about it although I know they were working on something of this order. Fig. 6 is called a projecting kinetoscope. Fig. 6 shows practically what I saw at that date as far as concerns the arrangement of sprockets and rollers illustrating an upper and lower loop, but this illustration 6 is not as I saw it at that time. For some reason or other the teeth are omitted on number 55 and the film did not pass over the roller set so far back as 56. This evidently was drawn sometime after, and the roller 56 which I devised is taken on 46, answering, however, almost the same purpose. In the machine that I tested at the time, the film came straight down. I notice in the

sketch, although indicated, the stop motion is not illustrated except in Figure 5 which naturally belongs to this apparatus of Fig. 6. While called a projecting kinetoscope naturally could also be called a taking machine.

Q44. Do you know what became of that taking machine which you used to photograph the Griffo and Barnet fight?

A. I haven't the remotest idea.

Q45. How long after you left Mr. Edison, April 2, 1895, were you associated in any way or negotiating with Mr. Latham and those interested with him?

1376

A. I do not remember being associated with the Lathams even after leaving Mr. Edison, except in a friendly way to give them a helping hand whenever I could, such as the taking of the Griffo-Barnet fight, for the simple reason that I soon became disgusted with their business methods as previously stated and sought other fields. Had they behaved as gentlemen I most likely should have thrown myself heart and soul into the work, taken up the stock held in trust by my solicitor and joined them in their work. It is fortunate, however, that I did not and therefore authorized my solicitor to return them the stock.

1377

Q46. Did you ever have any conversation with Mr. Woodville Latham after you left Mr. Edison on the subject of moving picture apparatus?

A. Yes.

Q47. What did you find as to the extent of his information on this subject?

A. I found him to be well conversant with the art as far as it went at that time and thought he was capable of originating new ideas and might arrive at some good work outside of what he had

already accomplished and even then hesitated if I should throw in my lot with him; his personality and that of his sons, however, knocked that on the head.

Answer objected to as incompetent being merely the opinion of the witness as to possible capacity of Latham to produce hypothetical results at some time.

Adjourned to Tuesday, April 11, 1911, at 11 o'clock A. M.

New York, April 11, 1911, 11 A. M.

Met pursuant to adjournment. Present: Counsel as before.

Examination of Mr. Dickson continued:

Q48. How long before you took the pictures of the swinging incandescent lamp in the Frankfort Street shop, had you any knowledge of the camera used on that occasion and what was the extent of that knowledge?

A. I am afraid I cannot be of very much use in giving you any description or exact dates, but to the best of my knowledge I was aware that a taking machine was in process of construction shortly after Christmas, or to be absolutely certain, we might say during the early part of January, 1895.

Q49. How did you obtain this knowledge?

A. I remember calling on Mr. Woodville Latham at the shop in Frankfort Street about that time.

Q50. Did you see this machine in the shop at that time?

A. I did, and Mr. Lauste was busy with same. I could not, of course, nor did I feel it right to examine any of the work, as long as I was not connected with them.

Q51. What kind of a man was Professor Woodville Latham? Please tell us anything that you know about the character of his attainments, ingenuity or the like, that you may have observed during your acquaintance with him?

1382

Objected to as incompetent. The making of a specific invention cannot be proved by evidence as to character and attainments.

A. I found in Mr. Woodville Latham a congenial spirit as stated before, in as far as scientific attainments were concerned. Our discussions were mostly based on general physics and what he himself had accomplished in his life in regard to what he termed "inventions" and various ideas he had: He spoke of different apparatus that he had invented, but, of course, I do not know if there were any patents. It struck me that he was highly theoretical and his anxiety was that I should join forces with him in this particular work he was then engaged on. This, of course, being out of the question, other subjects were more fully discussed and I must say I was much impressed, being perhaps a little younger at that time, with the amount of information he had acquired.

1383

Q52. Have you known Eugene Lauste for a long time?

A. Yes.

Q53. When did you first know him?

A. Eugene Lauste worked at Mr. Edison's laboratory for several years as mechanician, engaged in work of precision such as electrical apparatus for Mr. Edison and then left, seeking employment at the Edison Ore Milling Works at Odgen, New Jersey, which he found distasteful and remained out of employment some time. It was at that time that I recommended him as a skilled mechanic to Mr. Woodville Latham, he, Mr. Woodville Latham, not disclosing to me what he wished this mechanic to do for him, as already stated.

1385

Q54. Do you know whether Lauste, at the time he entered Mr. Woodville Latham's employ, had had any practical experience with moving picture apparatus?

A. None whatever. In fact, no one was permitted to come within the sanctum sanctorum of the moving picture department. I notice that in Mr. Lauste's testimony he states that he did see the exterior of a kinetoscope and I remember the circumstance very well. I issued a general invitation to everyone in the laboratory to view a scene, perhaps one of the first, if not the first, in a rough box-cabinet shaped kinetoscope, the subject being "horseshoeing."

1386

Q55. Did you ever impart to Mr. Latham directly or through any other source any of the features of construction which you found embodied in his camera when you examined the same at the Frankfort Street shop on the occasion of photographing the swinging incandescent lamp?

A. Decidedly and emphatically, no, neither by word or action.

Q56. Prior to the night when you photographed this swinging incandescent lamp at the Frankfort Street shop, had Mr. Latham ever expressed to you

any satisfaction or dissatisfaction with Lauste's work for him?

A. He expressed himself as being very well satisfied with Mr. Lauste and stated that the work was going on beautifully, or something to that effect.

Q57. What nationality is Lauste?

A. French born, a Parisian.

Q58. Does he speak English fluently?

Mr. Eyre: Objected to as incompetent, and as not the best evidence.

1388

A. No, in fact, it has always been a surprise to me why the English language was so difficult. The only explanation I can give is that his bump of languages must be represented by a cavity.

Q59. Did Mr. Latham ever give you any intimation of whether Lauste was carrying out his, Latham's ideas in the work that he was doing for him?

Mr. Eyre: Objected to as secondary evidence.

1389

A. Yes, he seemed to be always very pleased and thought that Mr. Lauste was a most capable mechanician and just the man he wanted (to quote his own words) to carry out his ideas.

Direct-examination closed.

Mr. Eyre: In view of the fact that the only apparent purpose for the testimony of this witness, and certainly the main purpose of his testimony is, to make an attempt to prove some early date of alleged invention

by Latham and in view of the further fact that the only testimony thus far adduced by the complainant, relating to the camera for taking machine to which the witness has referred, has been testimony to the effect that the alleged invention was made by Lauste and not by Latham, the right is reserved to call for the production of the witness for additional cross-examination in case further testimony should be offered tending to show the making of the alleged invention by Latham specially if it tends to show any disclosure of the invention by Latham to this witness; and the testimony of this witness is objected to as irrelevant and immaterial unless such further testimony be adduced.

1391

Counsel for Complainant replies that he perceives neither the point nor propriety of the above objections and states that all of the facts and knowledge in his possession with regard to the invention of the patent in suit by Latham is now in the possession of counsel for defendant, counsel defendant having yesterday stated that he had in his posession a copy of the Interference proceedings in the vs. Armat. Counsel of Latham case further states that Woodville Latham, his two sons, Otway and Gray Latham are dead and this fact will be duly proved. If there are any other living witnesses capable of testifying with regard to the making of this invention by Latham, Counsel for Complainant has no knowledge of their whereabouts, although a most diligent search has

been made to ascertain if there be any such witnesses. Having all the facts before him which counsel for Complainant knows of or believes to be pertinent, counsel for Defendant is at liberty to proceed in the usual course followed in such cases.

Cross-examination de bene esse:

XQ60. In giving the date, April 2nd, 1895, as the date when you left Edison, are you basing your statement upon your personal recollection?

A. No.

XQ61. What are you basing it on?

A. I have a copy in my possession of my resignation to Thomas A. Edison witnessed by my foreman, who was present at the time, the document reading in the usual form dated April 2nd, 1895, and witnessed; which document I can show, on demand.

XQ62. Did your resignation take effect at once?

A. At once although I had one or two interviews unofficially with Mr. Edison within the next day or two, in order to clear things up which I stated before was done to my and Mr. Edison's entire satisfaction.

XQ63. You moved your belongings from the Edison Laboratory that same day?

A. Oh, no.

XQ64. How long after?

A. There was no desperate hurry and my belongings were few, if any, with the exception of a few personal photographs that I had taken of my wife, sister, niece, dog, I forget if there was a cat picture; otherwise, I do not think there was anything else. These were removed within the next day or

1394

two, to my house, at 166 Cleveland Street, Orange, New Jersey.

XQ65. Did you go to the Edison Laboratory at all after the first week of April, 1895?

A. No, but to Mr. Edison's house on one occasion.

XQ66. After April 2nd, 1895, what occupation did you engage in and when did you begin?

A. I joined a small company which I formed with Mr. Llewellyn H. Johnson, which we termed the Portable Electric Light & Power Company.

XQ67. When was that company first formed?

A. It was more in the order of a partnership between that gentleman and myself, he, the financier, I, the technical adviser. This I acquainted Mr. Edison with and hoped even then if needed, would have his support. About that time however, I met my old friend of early Edisonian days, Mr. H. N. Marvin, and being thoroughly disgusted with the business methods of the Lathams, after taking the Griffo-Barnet fight I threw up both the matters and joined Mr. Marvin in a new moving photographic venture. This took place to the best of my recollection, about two months after I left Mr. Edison. Regarding the Portable Electric Light & Power Company so-called, we were more or less dependent upon the Chloride Accumulator Company for a specific kind of plate, which I had designed. Mr. Gibbs, the General Manager, came to my house, at Orange, New Jersey, and that of Mr. Johnson, to arrange for these plates and general contracts. Mr. Johnson was then allowed to carry this on, if he chose, when I joined, as stated before Mr. H. N. Marvin and his associates.

XQ68. My question was only as to when the

1397

Portable Electric Light & Power Company was formed, and I do not think you have told me yet.

A. I did state that it was a partnership more than a company, but for convenience sake, we called ourselves a company.

XQ69. Well, that does not tell me when the partnership which for convenience, was called a company, was formed?

A. I don't know that I can give any exact date. It was certainly within a week or ten days of my leaving Mr. Edison that Mr. Johnson and I arranged this so-called Company.

XQ70. Before or after?

A. After.

XQ71. What, if you know, has become of Mr. Johnson?

A. I haven't the remotest idea.

XQ72. What was the last that you know?

A. Sometime in that same year, 1895.

XQ73. What was his then location and occupation?

A. Mr. Llewellyn H. Johnson lived in East Orange and was connected with the Bicycle Helical Tube Company.

XQ74. What did you and Mr. Johnson using this company name, intend to do?

A. Portable storage battery lamps for mining purposes and general portable use under a patent which I took out at that time for a parabolic reflector and current controlling device.

XQ75. That was the only business you had in mind for that partnership?

A. That was the only business we had in mind. XQ76. Just what did the business methods of the Lathams have to do with your deciding to give up this partnership venture with Mr. Johnson?

1400

A. Neither the business methods, so-called, of the Lathams nor my relations with Mr. Johnson had anything to do with my decision to join an old and trusted friend namely, Mr. H. N. Marvin. I found, as stated before, with regard to the Johnson-Dickson combination, that as we depended almost entirely on very light plates for portable purposes to work in conjunction with my patent lamp we were disappointed that Mr. Gibbs could not produce a sufficiently light plate to give us the capacity required so we were forced to abandon that particular plate and look elsewhere. This took some time and we allowed the matter to drop pro tem, until such time as we could find a light plate. Meanwhile, I made several of these lamps which were used with the heavier battery provided by the Chloride Accumulator Company. As for the Lathams. I gave them such help as I deemed necessary. such as taking the same old picture, recited several times in this evidence and as I got to know them better it was quite clear to me that further association with them would be distasteful. Mr. Marvin and Mr. Edmond Congar Brown, my solicitor, were my business confidants and they agreed with me not to go too fast as far as binding myself to the said Lathams, and as stated before, I joined Mr. Marvin as a certainty and I have had nothing to regret since that decision. What has been done with my patent lamp, I do not know, I do not care. XQ77. You have stated (answer to XQ67)

1404

1403

XQ77. You have stated (answer to XQ67) "About that time, however, I met my old friend of early Edisonian days, Mr. H. N. Marvin, and being thoroughly disgusted with the business methods of the Lathams, after taking the Griffo-Barnet fight, I threw up both the matters and joined Mr. Marvin in a new moving photographic ven-

ture" I judge from your last answer that this quoted statement is not entirely correct or as you intended it.

A. I must confess I do not quite see what you are driving at. I certainly preferred to deal with a remunerative and agreeable business and the offer was such that I considered at the time it was best for me to accept Mr. Marvin's offer.

XQ78. How long did you continue associated with Mr. Marvin's Company?

A. Until the present date. The association still continues, under the heading of K. M. C. D. Syndicate.

XQ79. What relation, if any, has that company with the Biograph Company or the same company or predecessors under different names?

A. There was naturally no name given just at that time but shortly after we met together with two other friends of Mr. Marvin in Canastota, New York, to dub the syndicate, K. M. C. D. Again shortly after the Mutoscope Company was formed, followed by the title The Mutoscope & Biograph Company.

XQ80. And what is the present name of the concern with which you are connected?

A. To be more explicit, the K. M. C. D. was the parent syndicate in which we had our various interests allotted. All other companies throughout the world, under the head primarily of the Mutoscope Companies and later of the Mutoscope & Biograph Companies were owned or controlled by the parent K. M. C. D. syndicate.

Recess.

XQ81. When you say that the Portable Electric Light & Power Company was more of a partner-

1406

ship than a Company, do you mean that there were no company organization papers filed?

A. To the best of my knowledge, that is right. Nothing was filed.

XQ82. What, if anything, occurred after November, 1894, and prior to the time that you saw the pictures of the swinging incandescent lamp affecting the character of your relations, either with Mr. Edison or with the Lathams?

A. There was nothing that could have affected either my relations with Mr. Edison or with the Lathams, if looked at in the proper light.

XQ83. Did anything occur during that interval which made you feel any differently as to your duties or loyalty in connection with Mr. Edison?

A. Nothing.

XQ84. I have understood from your testimony that while you were at the Latham shop at times prior to the swinging light episode, you were careful in view of your connection with Mr. Edison, to avoid learning the details of what was being done in the Latham shop, but that at the time of the swinging light episode, you permitted all details of the camera to be shown and explained to you. If I have stated correctly, will you please explain why you were willing to examine this camera, etc. on the later occasion and not willing to learn what was going on on earlier occasions?

A. You have stated this quite correctly and the simple explanation is that the showing of the complete camera was forced on me and it was then or about that time that I was trying to make up my mind if I should go into the exhibition business or not. For that reason, I thought it wise to see what they had.

XQ85. Have you retained in your possession the

1410

letter that Mr. Latham wrote asking you to come over?

A. No, I have not.

XQ86. Did you destroy it and if so, when?

A. When I removed to England from my home in Orange, there was a general clean-up, of course, and presume all useless stuff was destroyed.

XQ87. Do you believe it was destroyed then?

A. Yes.

XQ88. How long had you had it in mind before the time that you saw the swinging incandescent lamp photographed that you might go into the exhibition business?

A. As explained some time back, it was my intention with Mr. Edison's approval, to go into or participate in the exhibition business, Edison manufacturing, Latham to have the right. This, as explained previously, could not be granted, owing to a contract Mr. Edison had made with Messrs. Raff & Gammon; after that I was quite undecided what to do. I did not enter into any agreement with the Lathams.

XQ89. At the time of the swinging lamp episode, you knew that if you should connect yourself with the Lathams, it would be as a competitor to Edison, did you not?

A. Quite so.

XQ90. You were at that time thinking that you might connect yourself with the Lathams, were you not?

A. Yes, though very doubtful.

XQ91. When you say, that because you were at that time trying to make up your mind whether or not you should go into the exhibition business, you therefore thought it wise to see what the Lathams had, you mean, do you not, that you were trying to

1412

make up your mind whether to go into the business with them?

A. Yes.

XQ92. How long had you been considering going into the business with the Lathams as competitors to Mr. Edison?

A. Hard to tell. Off and on, I suppose, for some months.

XQ93. Probably as early as the time that Mr. Edison declined to make any arrangement with the Lathams?

1415

A. No.

XQ94. How many visits did you pay to the Lathams' shop prior to the swinging light episode?

A. Difficult to say.

XQ95. For what purpose did you make these visits?

A. My visits to Mr. Woodville Latham at the

shop or at the Bartholdi Hotel or Mr. Woodville Latham's visit to my house were more or less social. In these visits the constant refrain was "Come with us, work with us. I will make your fortune." If the question is leading to, if I gave any instructions or was connected with them in any way as to giving ideas or assisting them, this may be dismissed once and for all, this not being the case.

XQ96. This constant refrain of the Lathams as to your coming with them related to moving picture business all through, did it not?

A. It did.

XQ97. After your first talk with Mr. Edison, suggesting a possible arrangement with the Lathams, when did you next talk with Mr. Edison about what the Lathams were doing?

A. There was no talk with Mr. Edison after that, for quite some time.

XQ98. "For quite some time" is very indefinite. Give me the best idea you can as to how long it was.

A. Possibly about two months or so before I left, in which I told him that we might have a competitor in the Lathams. I think Mr. Edison's answer was a shrug of the shoulders.

XQ99. Prior to April 2nd, 1895, did you tell Mr. Edison anything as to the camera you had seen and the picture of the swinging light?

A. No, decidedly not.

XQ100. When the Lathams forced you to look at this camera, they knew you were working for Edison. Did they ask you to promise to keep the information secret?

A. No.

XQ101. Who was the individual who accused you to Mr. Edison of having had dishonorable relations with the Lathams?

A. W. E. Gilmore.

XQ102. What was it that he said to Mr. Edison about you, so far as you know?

A. I do not know, except that I had some relation with them, inferring that there was something incorrect in those relations.

XQ103. Why didn't you tell Mr. Edison what you had seen at the Lathams' shop?

A. Had I done so, I think it would have been incorrect. I could only say, as I did, as stated previously, that we may have in these people a competitor.

XQ104. Wasn't it at least a reason for not telling him the fact that you were then thinking you might join the Lathams and it would be to you interest if such event occurred, not to have Edison

1418

know what had been done in the Lathams' shop any sooner than possible?

A. There is a good deal of truth in what you say but the thought of joining did not occur until some time after. I commenced to realize on the night of the lamp test when I was invited to see that they were seriously engaged, that I might join in the exhibition branch of the business which had been lost sight of by Edison in putting out the kinetoscopes.

1421

1422

XQ105. Do you mean by your last answer that it was some time after the night of the swinging light test that you first thought of joining the Lathams?

A. It was on the night of the test.

XQ106. It was on the night of the test that you first thought of joining the Lathams.

A. I first seriously thought of joining the Lathams.

XQ107. But, you had been thinking of joining them for several months—perhaps less seriously—had you not?

A. No, I cannot say that, if at all, feebly.

XQ108. Your visits to the Latham shop were generally in the evening, were they not?

A. Naturally.

XQ109. When you visited the shop, did you frequently talk to Lauste in French?

A. Occasionally, of course.

XQ110. How large a shop was it?

A. Not very large.

XQ111. Well, give me the best idea you can. .

A. I have very little recollection of the size, possibly about 12x15, or maybe more.

XQ112. Was it all one room?

A. There was a small dark room at one end.

XQ113. But there was no separate office?

A. Yes, there was a sleeping room, if I remember right which answered the purpose of, I presume, office, dining room and bedroom.

XQ114. That was where Lauste slept, wasn't it?

A. I believe so.

XQ115. What was the name of the street that was deeply impressed upon your mind?

A. Franklin or Frankfort.

XQ116. You are not sure which, are you?

A. Yes, quite sure, since I was reminded. It was not Franklin but Frankfort.

XQ117. What were the business actions of the Lathams that made you find it impossible or undesirable to make any definite connection with them?

A. In deference to the death of all three parties concerned, namely, Mr. Woodville Latham and his sons, Gray Latham and Otway Latham, I do not think it would be necessary, if you can do without the answer, to push this question further.

XQ118. I am sorry, but under the circumstances of the case, I do not feel like yielding to the reasons you give and must ask you to answer the question.

A. My idea that morals and business should go hand in hand decided me, and as these gentlemen were not leading the sort of life that I was brought up to believe in, it made me feel that the less I had to do with them, the better.

XQ119. Do I understand that your last answer has relation rather to the personal morals of the Lathams than to the business actions about which I asked?

A. I do.

XQ120. Please understand that I have not the

1424

1427

slightest desire to drag into this case the personal morals of anyone and have not asked you that. In your answer to Q45, you said, that you "soon became disgusted with their business methods." What business methods were there that you became disgusted with?

A. Nothing definite or no definite proposition was made as to our future relations, should I join.

XQ121. You have not answered my question, which asked, what the business methods were that you referred to in your answer to Q45 as having become disgusted with.

A. As stated in my last answer, no definite arrangement as to fees could be reached.

XQ122. And was this the business method that you were referring to as being disgusted with?

A. When I made that answer, it was principally coupled with an answer I made previously which was, as I understand now, not intended to be drawn from me by you.

XQ123. Then so far as the actual business acts of the Lathams were concerned, there was really nothing you were disgusted with?

1428 A. In addition to what I said, I didn't consider that they were businesslike.

XQ124. Didn't they make you any definite proposition with relation to how you would benefit by joining them?

A. I presume you mean in regard to the shares which they endeavored to force on me during my engagement with Edison with the distinct, to me, object of compromising me. This perhaps, may add something towards my meaning "disgusted with their business methods."

XQ125. When did they force this stock upon you?

A. Or tried to—to the best of my recollection, this was shortly after the memorable lamp test.

XQ126. Hadn't you had any previous agreement of any kind with the Lathams or any of them, either written or verbal?

A. None whatever, except the one mentioned in my preamble.

XQ127. Did that agreement set out a definite interest in the business for you?

A. No.

XQ128. Did the letter that you signed at your house in October, 1894, state that it was subject to Mr. Edison's approval?

1430

1431

A. The agreement, if it is desirable to call it so, was contained in two or three lines, to the effect that I would use my best endeavors to persuade Mr. Edison to give them the exclusive rights to use the Edison film for projecting purposes and that should I succeed, I should have a substantial interest from the proceeds of such exhibitions. At that time, there was no thought other than that Mr. Edison should supply these films.

XQ129. Did Mr. Brown hold the stock for you in trust by virtue of any trust agreement or other document which would specify the terms on which it would be delivered to you?

A. None whatever, to my knowledge, unless my legal adviser got them to do something of that kind, pending my decision.

XQ130. He took this stock before you left Edison, did he not?

A. Yes, to hold or to return, as the case might be.

XQ131. And how was that to be decided?

A. As already explained, if I found that the ex-

hibiting business would pay best, naturally I had the choice.

XQ132. Without your paying anything for it, and without having received any consideration from you, the Lathams had insisted upon giving Mr. Brown this stock in trust for you and you could have it delivered to you at any time you desired. Is that a correct statement?

A. No, quite incorrect. Mr. Brown's object was to hold the stock so as to insure my future the moment I left Mr. Edison. The Lathams' object, however, was to try and force the stock on me, for me to accept same during my sojourn with Edison, presumably to compromise me and force me to join them as quickly as possible. Had I accepted the stock, I should have had to join the Lathams before knowing if the business were good or bad.

XQ133. Which part of my statement is incorrect?

A. I mean that the incorrect part of this relates to my receiving stock without a quid pro quo. The stock was to be my remuneration for joining them and as I stated before, they tried to get me to take this stock before I had accomplished anything for them, their object being to get me to leave Mr. Edison forthwith.

XQ134. Didn't you authorize Mr. Brown to hold the stock for you?

A. Yes and rightly too.

XQ135. Then during the following month while Mr. Brown was holding this stock, which you could demand the delivery of at any time you continued working for Mr. Edison undecided whether to take the stock and leave him or whether to direct the return of the stock and stay with him. Have I got that much correct?

1433

A. Quite right.

XQ136. Then when you left Mr. Edison on April 2nd, 1895, how frequently were you at the Lathams' shop?

A. Whenever I thought fit to go to see how they were getting on and to give them such help as was necessary preparatory to the proposed Griffo-Barnet boxing match, which we all thought would give the best test of the capabilities of the machine in question.

XQ137. What, if any use, was made of the Griffo-Barnet film?

A. Mr. Latham and his sons hired a place on Broadway and used one of the kinetoscope projectors, inviting the public to witness the display.

XQ138. Were you there and saw it?

A. I was.

XQ139. The Griffo-Barnet film that you produced yesterday is a positive taken at some later time, from the negative which you took of the Griffo-Barnet fight. Is that right?

A. Yes.

XQ140. How did you know how fast to turn the handle of the taking machine the night of the swinging lamp experiment?

A. A piece of blank film was run through several times and the speed of turning the handle was judged in these preliminary tests, but in the tests made with the incandescent lamp the machine was turned by hand. The pictures taken of the Griffo-Barnet fight were run differently; to the best of my recollection, a small motor was attached to the camera and storage batteries used to drive same.

Adjourned to Wednesday, April 12, 1911, 11 a. m.

1436

New York, April 12, 1911, 11 a m.

Met pursuant to adjournment. Present—Counsel as before.

Cross-examination of MR. DICKSCN continued:

XQ141. What was the kinetoscope projector, such as you referred to in XQ137?

A. Briefly to describe the kinetoscope projector, in question 137, there was little or no difference between the Edison kinetoscope and what they were using, hence the name, with the exception that the film was considerably wider, the slot in the shutter enlarged as much as possible, so as to retain some degree of sharpness while the film ran continuously from one large spool above the gate to the lower reel. This was the projector which I had an opportunity of running or testing in their Broadway exhibiting place.

XQ142. Was it a peep-hole machine?

A. No.

1440 XQ143. That wasn't the same machine that was known as the eidoloscope, was it?

A. Yes.

XQ144. Did this machine project pictures on a screen?

A. Yes.

XQ145. How large were the pictures?

A. I should judge, to the best of my recollection, the pictures were projected 9 feet by 5, or a little less.

XQ146. Was any use ever made of the swinging light film?

A. None that I know of, unless it was kept as a record.

XQ147. I asked you in a previous question how frequently after April 2nd, 1895, you were at the Lathams' shop, and you said, "Whenever I thought fit to go." Please give me a little more tangible answer.

A. Being more or less undecided as to what I intended to do, and wishing to probe into the possibilities as described to me in such glowing colors, I went as often as I could, to be exact, which I believe, is what you wish to know; might say, to the best of my recollection once or twice a week, and sometimes daily at their exhibit on Broadway.

XQ148. Prior to April 2nd, 1895, and all during the time that you were visiting the Lathams' shop and also visiting Lathams at the Hotel Bartholdi, where were you living?

A. As stated in my preamble, you will find I mentioned 166 Cleveland Street, Orange, New Jersey.

XQ149. And it is your testimony that none of the visits prior to the night of the swinging light episode were made as matters of business, but purely for social purposes?

A. No. In my preamble I clearly stated that it was principally social, but with the object of trying to judge the best thing to do, to join them or not, in the exhibition business.

XQ150. When was it that the subject of photography as a matter of discussion between Latham and yourself was no longer rigidly tabooed?

A. The leading questions naturally placed by Mr. Latham tended always in the direction of

1442

moving photography, the matter nearest his heart, which to me being dangerous ground, by mutual consent was tabooed as much as possible. The general principles relating to light waves, general photography, as known to all and being common property, were discussed, of course, at length; but, as stated before neither by word or action was anything disclosed or discussed in relation to the work I had in hand for Mr. Edison, nor did I wish to know anything as to the minutiae or detailed construction of what they were doing. It was better so, until I had settled the momentous question of joining them or not.

1445

XQ151. But my question asked when the subject of photography as a matter of discussion between you was no longer "rigidly tabooed"?

A. The one exception to this rule I touched on some time back when we discussed a curious movement that I had noticed in an old clock which Mr. Latham jumped at and tried. This, however, as stated before, might be put down as a slip. The movement, of course, as stated at the time, would be very slow.

1446

XQ152. Question repeated.

A. I presume you mean when did I feel free to discuss fully moving photography as known in the art, with the exception always, of course, of what was kept sacredly to myself, namely: the work I had been engaged in for Mr. Edison, and would say that this occurred naturally immediately after the 2nd of April, 1895.

XQ153. You have spoken of the differences between the film of the Latham kinetoscope projector and the Edison kinetoscope. Wasn't there an additional difference, namely: that the film of the Latham device was transparent and that of the Edison kinetoscope opaque?

A. No; that could hardly be so, as a negative is never projected in both the Edison kinetoscope and the so-called Latham projecting kinetoscope positives or positive transparencies were used.

XQ154. In the Edison kinetoscope the observer looked directly upon the positive with a light on the other side of the positive, and the film was sufficiently opaque to prevent the light blinding or confusing the eye of the observer. Is that correct?

1448

A. Not exactly. In the kinetoscope Viewing Machine a small 4 or 5 candle power lamp was used, behind which a parabolic mirror was placed, the rays crossing at a point through a narrow slot in shutter, above which an endless band of positive pictures ran continuously These pictures were enlarged 21/2 diameters by a magnifying glass and the result appearing in a similar manner as an ordinary transparency held up to the light. the Latham projecting kinetoscope a more powerful light was used in the form of an arc lamp of nearly 3,000 candle power, and concentrated through a short focus condenser on to the picture or transparent positive film, thence through a projecting lens to the screen.

1449

XQ155. Then it is your testimony that the Edison kinetoscope employed a substantially perfectly transparent film?

A. Yes.

XQ156. All through its commercial history?

A. Yes.

XQ157. What was the construction of the "curious stopping device for actuating a clock-

1451

1452

work" which you described to Latham, and which he thought would be useful for the work on which he was then engaged?

A. It might be briefly described as a U-shaped pair of plungers, the ends cut off at right angles coming to a point. These plungers coming against a peg, pushed the peg downwards by a sliding action due to the angle of the plunger. One arm of the U-shaped plunger passing beyond the peg or series of pegs placed at equal distances locked the pegs in position, the second arm of the U-shaped plunger engaging the next peg as the other was released. I think, perhaps a rough sketch may be of some assistance, as I find it rather difficult to describe from memory. The fact is, this movement is too well known and can be found, I think, in any text book on clock mechanism.

XQ158. When you described this mechanism to Latham were you describing a mechanism which was in principle that of one of the feeding mechanisms that had been tried for cameras in Edison's laboratory?

A. No, decidedly not.

XQ159. None of the Edison cameras that had been tried had employed a feeding mechanism in which a reciprocating member having a surface inclined to the direction of its reciprocation had caused intermittent movement of the film by engaging something connected with the film by the inclined surface?

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial, and as an inquiry into matters in no way pertinent to the issues of the present case.

A. None whatever; in fact, it was entirely unfitted for any other purpose but for what it was intended, namely: the slow clock-escapement movement.

XQ160. At the time that you described this device to Latham you knew that he had in mind the making of cameras or projectors with intermittent moving films, did you not?

A. Yes; he so intimated he was going to or was, I forget which.

XQ161. Where were you when this interview took place?

A. To the best of my knowledge at the Hotel Bartholdi.

XQ162. At that time you were familiar with the work thus far done at Edison's laboratory, with cameras having an intermittently moved film, were you not?

Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. Yes.

XQ163. And by that time had such cameras been used for the commercial work of taking pictures for the Edison kinetoscope?

1455

1454

Same objection.

A. Yes.

XQ164. What was the construction of the feeding mechanism in the camera used in this commercial work?

Same objection.

A. Briefly, a horizontal continuously traveling disk containing one slot adjacent to a vertical three-toothed disk, one of the teeth resting on the first mentioned horizontal rotating disk slipped through said mentioned slot, giving an impulse to further mechanism controlling the film on a sprocket wheel. The three-toothed vertical disk was kept in tension in a forward direction while resting one of the teeth on the first mentioned horizontal slotted disk.

XQ165. Did the intermittently acting mechanism pull directly upon the film on the supply reel without any intermediate devices engaging the film?

A. Yes.

XQ166. This feeding mechanism that you have described was the only one used in cameras for taking pictures for the Edison kinetoscope prior to your leaving Edison, was it?

A. Yes.

XQ167. Do you recall making some experiments with Otway Latham at Columbia College?

A. Yes.

XQ168. Those experiments were made, well, before the end of 1894, were they not?

A. Yes.

XQ169. What were those experiments?

A. As stated before, the experiment I wished to try was to see if with a powerful arc lamp the kinetoscope could be used for projecting or not, and if so, then I could approach Mr. Edison for the rights of exhibition by projection in accordance with my agreement letter with Mr. Woodville Latham to the effect that I would use my best endeavors to persuade Mr. Edison to give us the right of using his film. We found the experiment, which was made openly, at Columbia College (that being my preference), to be sufficiently encour-

1457

aging for me to keep my agreement. The experiment simply consisted in running an old transparent film through an Edison kinetoscope in the form of a short endless band, the shutter hole being slightly enlarged so that we could get more light through. The picture projected was about 3 feet square. This was done in the presence of some of the Columbia College professors; Mr. Woodville Latham or Mr. Otway Latham, I forget which was present.

XQ170. Do you recall making a sketch or sketches of the stop mechanism or intermittent feeding mechanism for the Lathams?

A. No, I have no recollection and in fact, I can certify most positively that no such sketches were ever made by me at any time prior to my leaving Mr. Edison, unless perhaps I sketched out the clock stop motion already discussed.

XQ171. Can you say positively whether you did or did not sketch out such mechanism and leave the sketch with one of the Lathams or Mr. Lauste?

A. To the best of my recollection, I think it is quite likely that I did, as Mr. Woodville Latham was very anxious to try this device.

XQ172. You did know at the time, then, that Mr. Latham wanted to try this stop mechanism you suggested, in connection with his development of moving picture machines?

A. Yes, for he stated as much, that he wished to try it.

XQ173. Had Mr. Latham, prior to the first of November, 1894, repeatedly shown you drawings of a machine for projecting pictures, having intermittent movement of the film?

A. No.

XQ174. Had he shown you any such drawings at any time in 1894?

1460

1463

1464

A. To the best of my recollection, he stated that he had many sketches and devices but I positively refused to inspect same for obvious reasons.

XQ175. Was the Columbia College experiment one that lasted more than a single day?

A. It lasted for an hour or an hour and a half, possibly two hours, as we could not take up the time of the professors and attendants. It was only on one day.

XQ176. Do you know of any experiments made by Woodville Latham in October or September, 1834, in which part of the apparatus employed was furnished by you from the Laboratory of Mr. Edison?

A. None whatever, with the exception of the Columbia College test which I made.

RECESS.

XQ177. Mr. Lauste came to this country to give his testimony in this case at the same time that you did, did he not?

A. Yes.

XQ178. Was it you who arranged with him over there about coming?

A. No.

XQ179. When did you last see him on the other side?

A. At his house a week before leaving.

XQ180. And when last before that?

A. About a year and a half before.

XQ181. You came over on the same steamer?

A. Yes.

XQ182. You both knew that you were coming over to give testimony with reference to the work in Latham's shop? A. Yes.

XQ183. And am I to understand that the arrangements for Lauste coming over here had all been made entirely independently of you?

A. Yes.

XQ184. You do not fix the date of February 26, 1895, except by what you have read in a printed copy of Latham's previous testimony, do you?

A. No.

XQ185. Did you ever write a letter to Lauste asking him whether he remembered that you were the one who had suggested the loop in the film of the Latham camera?

1466

A. No, I have no such recollection.

XQ186. Can you say positively that you never wrote such a letter to him?

A. I can.

XQ187. Or any other, asking him whether he remembered your invention of any part of the Latham camera—or something to that general effect?

A. I have no recollection whatever of writing any letter on this subject.

1467

XQ188. In Complainant's Exhibit, Lauste Deposition, I find the following: "XQ136. Well, did Mr. Dickson speak to you about it? A. No; he wrote to me some time ago, and asked me if I remember that he is the inventor of the loop, and I said no, because I made the machine before he came." Can you say positively that there is no basis for this statement?

A. None whatever, I have no recollection of writing any such letter. I remember calling him up on the 'phone prior to going to his house and telling him that there was a case coming on which I learned from Mr. Koopman, also over 'phone,

that we might have to go out to America to testify as to the Latham inventions, and there was a question of a loop to be testified on.

XQ189. That was just shortly before you started to this country, the end of last month?

A. Yes.

XQ190. Had Lauste already heard of it, did he say?

A. Yes.

1469

XQ191. In your conversations with Lauste, beginning on that day over the telephone, and up to the time that he gave his testimony, what was said between you as to who had suggested the loop?

A. Mr. Lauste, in his cabin on board the "Baltic" talked on various things in connection with his old work and also touched on the loop, knowing as he did that that feature of the work seemed to be of importance and explained how he had first thought of it by seeing a loop in a certain book at some time or other, catalogue, I believe he said, of machinery, and that when they were experimenting Mr. Latham was very desirous of preventing the film from tearing and so this loop was added and a general talk of this kind. I wasn't particularly interested in all this. It was my part of the programme to remember what I did, what I saw and so on.

1470

XQ192. The testimony or the extract from testimony given by Lauste, which I read to you, was given in 1898, 13 years ago. Having this in mind, does it aid to refresh your recollection and modify it in any way after your having written such a letter?

A. No, I can only state what I remember and what I see and say to the best of my knowledge that I have no recollection whatever of writing such a letter.

XQ193. Was the feature of a loop between the exposure window and the supply roll a new one to you when you saw it at the swinging light episode?

A. Yes.

XQ194. Is it true that you told Mr. Lauste before Lauste had met Latham that you had a good situation for him in connection with a machine for projecting pictures and did you then give him a letter of introduction to Mr. Latham?

1472

A. Part right, part wrong. I gave Mr. Lauste a letter of introduction to Mr. Woodville Latham, not knowing or having the slightest clue that Mr. Latham was going into competition which on the face of it would have been to jeopardize my own interests. It was after I had given this introduction that Mr. Woodville Latham, in an interview, said that he had some good ideas in moving photography which he wished carried out. No mention was made in my letter of introduction as can plainly be seen, in regard to what class of work Mr. Latham wanted Mr. Lauste to do.

1473

XQ195. At the time you gave the letter to Lauste, did you know that the younger Lathams were engaged in business in connection with the employment of Edison kinetoscopes?

A. I knew the young Lathams had six or more machines on exhibition somewhere in New York and if I remember correctly, I simply inferred that they wished a good mechanic to look after and keep their machines in running order.

XQ196. Do you recall anything as to what the book was that you were using in the Edison Lab-

oratory and that Lauste referred to as being one that contained a showing of this loop?

A. I am afraid I cannot help you as I do not remember the book.

XQ197. Do you recall whether Lauste ever came to you while you were still with Edison to get what ideas you had for these moving picture machines?

A. I do.

XQ198. State the circumstances, please.

A. Mr. Lauste came over from New York unsolicited by me and told me he was instructed by Mr. Woodville Latham to see if I would help them in regard to some difficulty or something or other, presumably a stop motion of some kind. I remember distinctly and wish it quite clearly understood that in keeping with all I did at the time, I pointed out to Mr. Lauste that I could give him no assistance whatever in the art until I had made up my mind to join forces with them.

XQ199. Do you remember whether before the time of the swinging light pictures you many times told Lauste that you didn't like coming to the shop because it was compromising to you and that when you would leave Edison it would be all right, that you would come every day but until then you could not do it?

A. Quite right. I remember every word of it. XQ200. How long was that before the day when you told Mr. Edison that he would have to choose between Gilmore and yourself and upon his refusing to discharge Gilmore, the handing in of your resignation?

A. I haven't the remotest idea. What I said to Lauste did occur as stated, but when it occurred, I do not remember.

XQ201. Did the film pass upward or downward

1475

in the machine that took the swinging light photographs?

A. Downward.

XQ202. Did you know E. W. Kleinert?

A. Yes, I saw a man by that name at the Latham shop.

XQ203. Do you know anything about what has become of him?

A. No.

XQ204. Did you take a picture or help to take a picture with the same camera on the roof of the Scott building after the swinging light episode and before the picture of the Griffo-Barnet fight?

1478

A. No.

XQ205. Do you recollect a conference in New York between Otway Latham, yourself, your wife, Mr. Edmond Congar Brown and Mr. John Murray Mitchell?

A. I do.

XQ206. State the time when this conference occurred and also state what occurred at the conference.

A. I have no recollection of the date of conference but I remember it was in regard to the same old thing, to join or not to join and also in relation to, that if I would join them, I should have a certain amount of stock allotted to me. I think that was the purpose of the conference in question, but as for the stock, this stock was never transferred to me nor have I to this day seen a share certificate and it was only the other day that Mr. Lauste handed me for my inspection a share certificate under the heading of the Lamda Company.

XQ207. Wasn't it at this conference that it was agreed among all of you that a quarter of the stock of the Lamda Company be assigned to Mr.

Brown because you did not wish to make a contract in your name and so place yourself that the propriety of your actions might be questioned?

A. No. The stock at Mr. Edmond Congar Brown's suggestion, should be put in his name, for the sole reason that he wished to safeguard my interests in case I should join them, the business proving satisfactory. I know very little more about this, but I have no doubt Mr. Edmond Congar Brown could give you all the information you require.

1481

XQ208. You gave Mr. Brown a power of attorney to act for you in these matters, did you not?

A. I do not remember giving Mr. Brown a power of attorney. Mr. Brown was my legal adviser in many other matters and did this, if I remember right, as a friend.

XQ209. What was the object of having legal advisers for both sides present at this conference, if its only purpose was to discuss the advisability of your making a connection with Latham?

A. I give it up, presumably, however, to come to some definite understanding that if I did leave, I should be provided for.

1482

XQ210. I understand that before the supplementary roller on the upper sprocket wheel which you suggested was added, the film came straight down. Is this supplementary roller shown on the sketch Lauste made in this case?

A. Yes.

XQ211. It is the uppermost roller of the sketch, is it?

A. Yes.

XQ212. And before this, the film was only engaged by one tooth on the upper sprocket, is that right?

A. One or two teeth.

XQ213. And that put too much strain on these perforations and frequently resulted in tearing the films?

A. I remember running through a long piece of negative film, a few days prior to the Griffo-Barnet fight and it seemed to run very satisfactorily until there would be a little slack. When this was taken up a slight jerk would take place and on examination, I noticed a roughness in one or two of the perforations. This, however, did not depreciate in any way that I could see, the results. I, however, thought it advisable when trying this experiment over again, while placing my thumb further along towards the upper center of the sprocket wheel to place at this particular point a roller of rubber or some other soft material, I do not just remember which, grooved out on the sides to allow the sprocket teeth to enter. The result of this roller was simply to add a few more teeth as an additional precaution against any possible danger of roughness on the edge of the film perforation. I don't know if this was absolutely essential but it had its use.

XQ214. What do you know as to Latham's financial condition during the period about which you have testified?

A. I am afraid very little. I believe he found someone to join him in financing his work. This was a matter I had nothing to do with.

XQ215. The discussions between you relative to your joining the Lathams, did not bring out any expectations on Latham's part that you would financially contribute to the enterprise, did they?

A. No.

1484

XQ216. Did you and Latham ever discuss patenting the camera which you saw?

A. No, not to my recollection.

XQ217. Is there any other error that you can perceive in Lauste's sketch as a correct showing of the mechanism of the camera as it existed when it took the swinging light pictures, except the presence of the additional roller that you had suggested and the different path of the film produced thereby?

1487

A. The sketch handed me looks all right. The only thing I do not remember about it is just how the upper or No. 1 and No. 4 continuous running sprockets were joined together. I know, however, that these two sprockets can together and No. 2 and No. 3 sprockets were also joined, presumably as shown. I think on the whole that the sketch is quite what I saw at that time.

XQ218. What do the letters K. M. C. D. in the name of your syndicate indicate?

A. The letters K. M. C. D. indicate E. B. Koopman, H. N. Marvin, Herman Casler and W. K. L. Dickson.

1488

XQ219. At the time of the testimony in Latham vs. Casler vs. Armat, were you familiar with the fact that there was an interference pending and in a general way, the character of the invention involved therein?

A. I was aware that this case was going on in America but knew little or nothing what it was all about.

XQ220. What was the untenable proposition which Mr. Woodville Latham and his sons made to you in the presence of your wife at your house in Orange?

A. That I should that day leave Mr. Edison and

work with them in developing a taking machine on the lines of the Edison so-called kinetograph, not that I really think that Mr. Woodville Latham, to do him justice, wished me to divulge anything I had been doing for Mr. Edison but wished to have an apparatus under their control that they could make films for exhibition purposes. It was modified, of course, to what I have already stated, and in fact, it was the only thing to be done, namely, to get Mr. Edison to supply these films for this particular exhibition purposes.

XQ221. Please state all that you can remember that was contained in the letter which you received. and as a result of which you visited the shop and photographed the swinging light?

A. I cannot bind myself to the exact wording but the sense of the letter was to the effect that I should come at once, as they believed they had something fine and I must see it. It was a jubilant epistle and so I went.

XQ222. Didn't the letter mention that it was a camera they wanted to show you?

A. I do not think so. I do not think there was any description. I naturally knew or inferred that it was the camera; as stated before I was aware that they were working on such a device, although I had never seen it in detail. In fact, I purposely kept away at one of the visits from looking at the construction. Upon that evening, however, the whole thing was explained and shown me.

XQ223. Didn't you go over expecting to be shown a camera?

A. Naturally. The purport of the letter indicated that they wished to show me something fine or good, whatever the words were.

Adjourned to Friday, April 14, 1911, 10.30

A. M.

1490

1493

New York, April 14, 1911, 10.30 A. M.

Met pursuant to adjournment. Present: Counsel as before.

Cross-examination of MR. DICKSON continued:

XQ224. Did you ask the Lathams or any of them to choose the location for a shop as near as practicable to the ferry connecting with the trains for Orange or something to that effect?

A. No, decidedly not. This was proposed to me by Mr. Woodville Latham as being more convenient for me to come over and see their work and help them. This, of course, is another of those garbled and vindictive statements made in the testimony of that gentleman and which I am here to confute whenever I can.

XQ225. Before the night of the swinging light, did you see any efforts made to project pictures with a machine of the same general character as the machine used to take the pictures of the swinging light or with that same machine at the Frankfort Street shop?

A. No.

XQ226. Did you supply any film for that purpose or for any purpose in January or February, 1895, to the Lathams or anyone connected with them?

A. No, decidedly not.

XQ227. Did you find Otway Latham and Gray Latham or either of them skilled as mechanics?

A. No, but Mr. Otway appeared to be very handy.

XQ228. When you visited the Latham shop be-

fore the night of the swinging light pictures, was it quite a frequent occurrence that Mr. Woodville Latham would not be there?

A. As I went purely and alone on Mr. Woodville Latham's invitation, with possibly occasional invitations from Otway Latham, I would find the inviters always there, except on the night of the lamp test when Mr. Woodville Latham was ill, or indisposed.

XQ229. At the time of these various visits, do you know whether Mr. Otway Latham knew you were working with Mr. Edison upon photographic machines?

A. Decidedly, since he and his people bought kinetoscopes which they had on exhibition somewhere in the city.

XQ230. On April 2nd, 1895, did you consider Latham obligated to you in any way?

A. No, not in any way.

XQ231. How about any earlier period than that?

A. The same answer applies as naturally I could not charge them for erecting the Edison kinetoscopes at their exhibit as I was paid to do this by Edison.

XQ232. Did you meet Gray Latham and Otway Latham or either of them at any time at the Laboratory of Mr. Edison?

A. Yes, in the early part of 1894, they came to Mr. Edison's Laboratory to purchase some kinetoscopes for exhibition purposes. It was then that I met them for the first time and possibly three times after that during this deal.

XQ233. Did you ever tell either Gray Latham or Otway Latham at Edison's Laboratory that you 1496

were the real inventor of the kinetoscope, having suggested the idea to Edison?

A. To the best of my recollection, I hardly think even if I had been the inventor, so-called, would it have been policy to have made such a statement to utter strangers. I am confident, however, that this is another spiteful dab.

XQ234. Are you positive in your recollection that there is no basis whatever for any such statement as this?

1499

A. I can state emphatically that I have not the slightest recollection of any such conversation.

XQ235. Can you swear positively that you did not make any statement of this character to either of the Lathams at the Edison Laboratory?

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial, as, if the witness is testifying to the best of his recollection, it is quite immaterial how he answers this question.

A. As stated before, I have no recollection of making such a statement, and I am inclined to believe, to the best of my knowledge, the conversation did not take place or was turned and twisted for a purpose.

XQ236. You do recollect, however, do you not, that at the Edison Laboratory, you did express to one of the Lathams your displeasure at not having received the credit due you for the work in moving picture lines you had done with Edison?

A. This question is in keeping with the last and tends to show that there was some hidden object in making these various statements. I again, will most emphatically state that I have no recollection of such conversations especially with men that I knew nothing about.

XQ237. Do you remember whether or not in your conversation with Gray or Otway Latham at the Edison Laboratory you suggested or intimated that an association with them in the kinetoscope business would be more pleasing to you than association with Edison?

A. I think on the face of it, this would be utterly absurd, considering the number of years I had been so delightfully associated with Mr. Edison and that my work was so highly congenial to me in every respect. I was head of the electrical mining department as well as the head of the kinetoscopic and kinetographic moving picture department and this should be answer enough to show the ridiculous and I again use the word, vindictive nature of the series of statements.

XQ238. Do you remember that Otway Latham and Gray Latham asked you if you would be willing to join with them in their work and that after some hesitation you agreed that you would talk the matter over with your wife and give a definite answer at a later time?

A. Quite right. This, however, has been explained in previous answers and questions.

XQ239. Did you see any 1894 or 1895 drawings made by Lauste for cameras or projecting machines or parts thereof?

A. I saw several sketches lying around on table and bench, but was particularly careful not to inspect same, for obvious reasons.

XQ240. The reasons may be "obvious," but in all this deposition, I have been unable to find anything that explains why your reasons for not examining these drawings and apparatus in process of construction did not equally apply to prevent you when you received a letter from Otway Latham 1502

from which you understood that a moving picture camera had been completed, ready for your inspection, from visiting the shop and obtaining the exact information as to that camera. Do you desire to explain any further?

Counsel for complainant suggests that this may be due to a lack of perception on the part of Defendant's Counsel and not such an inference as others might draw from the testimony and therefore objects to all but the interrogative portion of the question as irrelevant and immaterial.

1505

1506

A. The matter is as simple as A B C, and I have endeavored throughout this testimony to various answers and questions to show that I was particularly careful as long as I was not associated with the Lathams, as a matter of honor, to probe and unduly examine into their work. The same thing applied to the fact that I was scrupulously careful not to divulge anything that was going on at Mr. Edison's laboratory and it was not until I was invited to see the completed camera on the night of the swinging lamp test that I commenced to see the possibility of joining the Lathams which even then was most uncertain. Although this machine was thoroughly explained and examined by me, I felt that even if I did not join I could, of course, not take any advantage of what I had seen. In conclusion, would add, as stated before, that this was forced on me.

XQ241. In your answer to XQ164 you described the feeding mechanism of the camera used in the commercial work for producing pictures for the Edison kinetoscope. Was the horizontal continuous travelling disc you speak of arranged like the disc 25 of the Edison Patent 12,037, except that it had one slot instead of six and was the vertical three toothed disc arranged like the disc 23 of that patent with relation thereto except that it had three teeth instead of six?

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial and as fishing for information, no way pertinent to the questions involved in this case.

1508

A. My explanation or description as given in my answer 164 is purely from memory, some 22 years ago, was broadly a description of the action of such a machine. What I described doubtless was sufficiently correct for the purpose and perhaps one of the modifications we made at that time. The patent drawing entitled "T. A. Edison Kinetoscope No. 12,037" shows such a modification and looks quite correct; showing more teeth on the vertical disc with a corresponding additional number of slots, in the traveling horizontal disc. The terms horizontal and vertical do not as closely apply to this drawing as in my rough description from memory, although the action is the same.

1509

XQ242. How long a film was used in the Edison kinetoscope?

A. In the first models, there was about between 25 and 30 feet and later 48 feet.

XQ243. 48 feet was the longest length of film used on the commercial kinetoscope?

A. Yes.

XQ244. And was the same length or a lesser length used on the camera when taking pictures for the kinetoscope?

1511

Mr. Page: The objection heretofore made to Counsel for Defendant using this case as a fishing excursion for information in no way necessary or relevant to the issues is objected to as a gross abuse of the privileges of cross-examination.

A. It depended somewhat on the subject and on some occasions two 24 foot lengths were used on several subjects and sometimes three subjects photographed and joined together to make up the required length averaging about 48 feet on the last models, or when the occasion required, a complete 48 length was used in the taking camera developed, printed, and the positive placed in the kinetoscope in the form of an endless band.

XQ245. How did the thickness of the film used in the kinetoscope compare with the thickness of the film used in kinetoscope projectors,—if you can, state the thickness of each.

Mr. Page: Same objection.

A. I am afraid this is rather too much of a task. My distinct remembrance, however, is that the film used in the camera was extremely thin, almost like paper but very tough. The positive, if I remember well, was somewhat thicker as used in the Edison kinetoscope. I had the pleasure of handing in a sample of the Griffo-Barnet positive film used by the Lathams in their projecting machine and I think that both the slow emulsion positive films used in the Edison kinetoscope and in the so-called Latham kinetoscope projector, were very much alike as to thickness.

XQ246. And as I understand you, the film used

in the camera was much thinner, that is, the Edison camera. Is that right?

A. Somewhat thinner, yes.

XQ247. Two thousandths of an inch thick or thinner?

A. I give it up, too difficult to remember such exact measurements after so many years. For that reason I made my answer comparative.

XQ248. How did the color of the film used in the Latham camera compare with that of Edison camera?

A. In your question, I presume you mean the unexposed film. Nearly all film used from that time to the present has a creamy delicately tinted greenish appearance.

XQ249. Has all the unexposed film from the beginning been of that color, do you know?

A. Yes.

Cross-examination closed.

Re-direct Examination by Mr. Page:

RDQ250. Have you any pecuniary interest in the 1515 outcome of this suit?

A. None whatever.

Re-cross Examination by Mr. Eyre:

RXQ251. Do you hold stock in the K. M. C. D. Syndicate?

A. I do not think it can be called holding stock. I have an interest or had an interest in this K. M. C. D. Syndicate, but having disposed of my holdings in all the subsidiary companies, including the American Biograph & Mutoscope Company, my interest therefore in the K. M. C. D. would naturally come to an end.

1518

RXQ252. Is the K. M. C. D. Syndicate an incorporated company?

A. No, it is still an agreement of partnership.

RXQ253. Do you mean that your present interest in the K. M. C. D. Syndicate is one of no value whatever?

A. Yes, unfortunately.

RXQ254. The K. M. C. D. Syndicate owns nothing of any kind, is that it?

A. For many years past, I have received nothing from the K. M. C. D. and with the exception of the K. M. C. D. Syndicate holding one or two side lines, which in fact do not know exactly what they are, anyway, nothing seems to have come of the side lines, I later, as stated before, sold out my shares in any company or companies which should have paid interest in a certain proportion to this quarter partnership, hence my explanation that

RXQ255. How recently did you sell out?

interest as far as I was concerned.

A. About three years ago or maybe more, I sold out my last holding, namely, the American Mutoscope & Biograph Company shares.

if I held no shares, there could be no division of

RXQ256. What arrangements were made with you as to coming over here to give this testimony?

A. A fee of £300, out of which I should pay my own expenses.

Deposition Closed.

W. K. L. DICKSON.

New York, April 25, 1911, 11 a. m.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present: Counsel as before.

WOODVILLE LATHAM, a witness called on behalf of the complainant, having been first duly sworn, deposes in answer to interrogatories by complainant's counsel as follows:

Q1. Please state your name, age, residence and occupation?

1520

A. Woodville Latham, 74 years of age, no occupation, residence 227 West 116th Street, New York.

Q2. Are you the patentee of U. S. patent 707,934, which is involved in this suit?

A. I am.

Q3. When the application for that patent was pending in the Patent Office, was it involved in interference?

A. My memory is not clear in that respect. My impression is that an interference was declared between myself and Mr. Armat and Mr. Casler and I was going on to say that it related to a projecting machine that did not include a stop movement, but since I began to answer the question I remember that the arresting device machine was the one that the interference was declared on.

Q4. Do you recall testifying as a witness in that interference?

A. Very well, sir.

Q5. I hand you a volume, entitled "Transcript of Record Court of Appeals, District of Columbia, Woodville Latham vs. Thomas Armat, Appeal from

the Commissioner of Patents." Are the two depositions of Woodville Latham in that record the depositions you gave in that case, as you now recall?

A. Yes, they are.

Q6. In this record there are also depositions of Otway Latham and Gray Latham. Who were Otway Latham and Gray Latham?

A. They were my sons.

Q7. Are either of these sons of yours now living?

1523 A. No. sir.

Complainant's Counsel offers in evidence the two depositions of Woodville Latham and the depositions of Otway Latham and Gray Latham, referred to in the preceding questions, and the same are marked "Complainant's Exhibit Latham Depositions in Armat Interference."

Defendant's Counsel objects to the introduction of these depositions of Otway Latham and Gray Latham as incompetent evidence in this case, entirely out of place. The depositions being given in interference proceedings entirely foreign to this suit, and the present defendant not having had any interest in said interference or an opportunity for cross-examination.

The depositions of Woodville Latham and the testimony now about to be given by the said Woodville Latham are objected to as improper rebuttal testimony, and notice is hereby given that at the proper time a motion will be made to the Court to strike these depositions from the record. It is

agreed that this objection to the present testimony of Woodville Latham will stand as to his whole testimony.

- Q8. Mr. Latham, were you ever interested or engaged in the manufacture or exhibition of pictures of moving objects now commonly known as moving pictures?
 - A. Certainly.
- Q9. When did you first become interested in such business?
- A. As a matter of money-making business, I became interested in the Fall of 1894 and January of 1895.
- Q10. Did you have at that time any factory or shop for the manufacture of moving picture apparatus?
 - A. Yes, I did.
 - Q11. Where was that shop?
- A. In a building on Frankfort Street, not far from the Sun and World buildings. My recollection is it was called the Scott building, and my recollection also is that its number was 35.
- Q12. What assistants did you have in this shop on Frankfort Street in the latter part of 1894 and the early part of 1895?
- A. I had a French mechanic by the name of Lauste and with him were employed one or more assistants.
- Q13. Do you remember the names of the assistants?
- A. I do not; and, upon reflection, I am not absolutely sure that it was there rather than at a place we occupied later that Lauste felt the need of assistants and requested me to employ them for him. They were young men, not mechanics, helpers, I suppose, would be a better term to use.

1526

Q14. Did you ever have in your employ a mechanic by the name of Emil W. Kleinert?

A. I did.

Q15. Do you remember when he first came to work for you?

A. Not very clearly. The date of his employment, of course, has escaped me, and I do not even remember at this moment whether he was employed when we were in the Frankfort Street shop or in another shop on Beekman Street, which we occupied a little later.

1529

Q16. Were any machines made in your shop on Frankfort Street for either projecting or for taking moving pictures?

A. Yes, sir.

Q17. Will you state what those machines were and for what purpose they were made?

A. Except mere temporary appliances for experimental purposes which were made from time to time, there was only one machine that I can recollect, and that was a machine suitable for use as a camera or as a projecting machine.

Q18. Do you know when that machine was built and finished?

1530

A. I think I shall have to make an explanation before answering that question. That word "finished" may mean in the mind of the questioner one thing or another. In the Frankfort shop the machine was so far finished that, as a matter of fact, a moving picture was photographed, and, as a matter of fact, a good many projections were made with it. We used at that time for projecting Mr. Edison's film, small pieces of which we had been able to get somehow—I do not remember just how—except we did not steal them. Of course, guides and the window opening had to be made of a size

to suit Mr. Edison's film, and that part of the machine at that time—I mean in the Frankfort shop—I regarded as temporary, because very early I had determined to project on the screen larger pictures, so that I would be enabled to use less strong objectives to get a picture on the screen of a given size.

Q19. Do you recall, or have you any memorandum, to fix the date when that machine was first used for taking photographs of a moving object?

A. I have a memorandum.

Q20. And what is that memorandum?

A. I and my two sons, Gray and Otway Latham, had two rooms in the Bartholdi Hotel, a large room and an adjoining, not connecting smaller room. I occupied the small room, usually retired early, and got up early and at the time I am going to speak of I had been for some days physically indisposed. Otherwise I should have been present in the shop to witness the experiment. periment was made by my son Otway Latham, whom, from the beginning, I had made shop manager, and Mr. William K. L. Dickson. At 5 o'clock on the morning of February 27, 1895, I found lying on the floor just inside of my door this note from my son, Otway Latham: "Experiment most suc-We took a picture. Machine is very fine. Works beautifully. Don't wake us up, as we did not reach the room until 3 a. m. (Signed) Otway."

Immediately I made this memorandum at the bottom of the beforementioned note: "Slipped under my door at 3 a. m., February 27, '95, and got by me at 5:30 a. m. (Signed) W. L."

I also received at the same time a note of congratulation from Mr. William K. L. Dickson. What has become of that note I don't know.

1532

Complainant's Counsel offers in evidence the note and memorandum produced by the witness, and the same is marked "Complainant's Exhibit, Otway Latham Note of Experiment."

Q21. In whose handwriting is the blue pencil portion of this note?

A. In the handwriting of my son, Otway Latham.

1535

Q22. Where has this memorandum been since you found it in your room at the Bartholdi Hotel?

A. It has been in my possession continuously ever since.

Q23. Can you describe from memory the construction of that machine which was used on the occasion referred to?

A. I am going to try to do it, and now, as I see it in the air, I see a reel loaded with some some film. I see that film passed over a sprocket wheel. The film has holes in it along the edges to fit the sprockets, so that the revolution of the sprocket wheel away from the reel would draw the film from the reel. Now, that sprocket in the machine I am trying to describe, turns continuously away from the reel and continuously, while the machine is in proper operation, unwinds the film from the reel. Some distance below the sprocket wheel I have just mentioned, vertically below it, is another sprocket wheel of exactly the same size, that is, the two wheels are as nearly the same size as my mechanics could make them. Now, suppose that were all of the machine and that a waste basket were on the floor in a vertical line under these two sprockets, and enough film had been withdrawn from the reel to wrap partially around the

upper sprocket and to pass vertically down and then to pass partly around the lower sprocket, and that you had two smoothers-idlers, the mechanics call them-pressing on the film at the place where the film is in contact with the sprocket wheels, for no other purpose than to keep the film on the two sprocket wheels. Now, suppose I had a crank attached to the lower sprocket wheel, I will say, and suppose the two sprocket wheel shafts were connected so that one could not revolve without causing the revolution of the other at the same ratenow remember that, according to the supposition, the film is taut between the two sprocket wheels, and if, therefore, we turn the crank it will remain so, provided the mechanical work has been properly done. Suppose I had a pinching device of some kind that I could apply to this portion of the film between the two sprockets and were to apply it strongly while someone is turning the crank, the strip would be instantly broken.

Suppose we go back and we bring the film into contact with the upper sprocket wheel and with the lower sprocket wheel also in the way already described, except in this case the strip between the two sprockets is not taut. In other words, a loop is left in the film between the sprockets. Now, if we again turn the crank, this loop will remain of just the length that it had in the beginning, provided the mechanical work has been properly done. Suppose, now, that I have an arrangement having disconnected the two sprocket wheels by which I can move and stop the lower sprocket wheel at intervals, and suppose I, in beginning another experiment, bring the film over the two sprocket wheels and arrest the lower sprocket wheel long enough for the continuously revolving upper

1538

sprocket wheel to make a loop of suitable length. Suppose, then, I start the lower sprocket wheel; as long as the lower sprocket wheel is running that loop would be maintained, of course, and if I again were to start the lower wheel, my loop would Suppose I geared together the two be enlarged. sprocket wheels once more, and suppose I have below the upper sprocket wheel a third sprocket wheel, and above the original lower sprocket wheel I have a fourth sprocket wheel, and suppose in threading the film I proceed as follows (of course, these two new sprocket wheels have pressing rollers like the original sprocket wheels); now, then, I will start at the reel, pass the film over the first sprocket on to the second sprocket, but I will leave a loop between the two; then I will pass it taut to the third sprocket, and from the third to the fourth sprocket with a loop of exactly the same size as the loop already mentioned between the two. Suppose these two sprocket wheels No. 2 and No. 3 are geared together and can be made to move or stop at regular intervals, and that the two outer sprocket wheels, No. 1 and No. 4, are geared together and move continuously at the same rate, and suppose for a moment that the sprocket wheels No. 2 and No. 3 also move, the effect of sprocket wheel No. 4 is, first, to take up the lower loop and any more of the films that may in the time be fed to it from sprocket wheel No. 2. Bear in mind the sprocket wheel No. 2 furnished first downward so much of the film as made the upper loop; suppose at the instant when the lower loop has been taken up by sprocket wheel No. 4 and the upper loop has passed down to take its place; now what we have before us is the film running taut from the reel to the upper sprocket, to sprocket No. 2, down to sprocket No. 3. Suppose between sprocket No. 2

1541

and sprocket No. 3 I have a window for the light to pass from the lamp through the lenses, the picture strip, to the screen, and that the window is open. A projection is made or a photograph is taken, depending upon the purpose for which you are using the machine. Suppose, now, I permit sprocket wheels 2 and 3 to revolve again. course 1 and 4 are revolving all the time, and suppose that just at the instant of the beginning of the movement of the strip this window is closed. and suppose that the movement is permitted only so long as to bring into the optical axis in front of the window exactly enough of the film for a picture to join the picture just now projected or taken. Suppose the window now to be opened. Obviously a second picture will be photographed or projected, as the case may be. By repeating this process, and with an arrangement for making these startings and stoppings and openings and closing automatic; and if, further, to avoid the chance of having the film pucker or get twisted at the window, it is made to pass at the window between two frames, velvet lined or otherwise, the openings in these frames being precisely of the size of the picture I am attempting to photograph or project. Suppose I have a means by which I can make these plates press against one another to a greater or lesser extent. Then you have before you an idea of the machine I mean.

1544

1545

Q24. Whose idea or conception was this machine?

A. I never in my life ran a reel press or a boring machine or a planer or any other of the machines that must be employed in making apparatus of this sort and necessarily when the idea came into my head just as much as it was in my head just now when I was trying to explain it to you, it was necessary for me to get the help of skilled mechanics.

Q25. Do you remember whether this machine which you have described was constructed so that the film moved upward or downward?

A. I do not, sir. I did not at that time regard it as material which way it ran, but a long time afterwards when we were exhibiting to the public picture strips of great length I observed in my own case, especially when I had become a little tired, a tendency to drop my eyes and it occurred to me that probably other people were like me and that a downward running film could be looked at comfortably for a longer time. I do not mean from the time 7 o'clock to the time 8 o'clock rather than to the time from 7 to half past 7 but within the extremely small fraction of a second during which a picture was visible when it was being projected by a continuously running machine. think there is absolutely no difference in the effect produced upon the eye between a downward running film and an upward running film in a machine that includes an arresting device.

Q26. Do you recall the first time when you saw this particular machine that was experimented with by your son Otway and W. K. L. Dickson on February 26th or February 27th, 1895, used for the taking of pictures of objects in motion?

A. We had moved our shop to very much larger quarters, that is, to 101 Beekman Street, than we had had in Frankfort Street but we had in the Beekman Street shop a great deal of machinery so that even small experimentations in the way of projecting could not be made in the shop but we were on one of the upper floors, I think the floornext to the top one. The building had a large

1547

flat roof and we took the machine to that roof to see how it would behave in photographing moving objects. I was present and as it proved afterwards, I was photographed though I had not intended to be. In front of the camera were my son, Gray Latham, Mr. Lauste, Mr. Lauste's son, a boy and Mr. Kleinert. My son Otway operated the machine.

Q27. Have you any recollection now how long a time elapsed after February 27th that these pictures were taken on the roof of the Frankfort Street building?

1550

A. I do not recollect. Not a great while, however. Some delays were necessary in order to secure two suitable men to box with one another. And I have a indistinct recollection that a punching machine that we had for punching the holes along the edges of the picture strip was inefficient on some account and that part of the delay was due to correcting the defect in punching machine for making or having made another one.

Q28. I hand you what purports to be an enlargement of one of the pictures of a film which is in evidence as one of the Complainant's Exhibits and marked "Lauste Exhibit Photograph." Do you know what that represents?

1551

A. That represents one of the pictures of a considerable series of pictures,—moving pictures, that is—that I have just referred to as having been taken on the roof of 101 Beekman Street. Please understand me not as swearing positively that this picture was taken on the roof of 101 Beekman Street. It may have been taken on the roof of the Scott Building on Frankfort Street. If the latter were the truth it was only shortly afterwards that we obtained the new and larger quarters on Beekman Street and this great distance in time

and with my mind meanwhile concerned with totally different matters, it would be surprising if I could speak very positively about the matters referred to. At this minute I remember that the likeness of Mr. Wiet does not appear in this picture and it would have appeared if Mr. Weit had then been in my employ. He was not in my employ when I was on Frankfort Street and I am rather inclined now to believe it was on the Frankfort Street roof this picture was taken.

1553

Q29. Was this taking machine that you have said was tested on February 26th or February 27th, 1895, afterwards used by you or under your directions for the production of moving picture films, and if so, to what extent?

A. Yes, almost exclusively, if not quite so.

Q30. For how long a period of time?

A. During my entire connection with one or another of the companies to which control of the business of photographing and projecting pictures of movement had been given by me.

Recess.

1554

Q31. Have you read over recently the testimony which you gave beginning December 4th, 1897, in the interference Latham vs. Armat?

A. Not fully. I have just glanced over a part of it. I think I read the whole of the direct testimony and a part of the cross-examination, very little of it.

Q32. The events about which you testified at that time were probably more clear in your recollection than they are now and I shall refer to your testimony in a series of questions which I shall put to you. In answer to Q15, you state that it was not until about the 1st of November that you began the construction of a machine in accordance with previous conception—previous except that, not

even then had you determined upon any one form of arresting device to the exclusion of others. Did you begin a construction of any machine before Lauste was employed by you to work on those machine's?

A. I had not only determined to make a machine but had reached a determination in a general way as to what that machine would be. You heard me describe an hour or so ago a machine. not believe that I ever looked into the inside of that machine a half a dozen times in my life and it is now about 16 years since I had any connection with the moving picture machine business, and yet when I was called on to describe the machine, I saw it as plainly in the air of the room before me as if it had been present in physical form. way, I saw my machine near about the summer To give this conception visible shape of 1894. it was necessary to have machinery, as I then thought, and to have one of the most skilled workmen; and to have a place to work in and for all these things, money was necessary and neither I nor my sons had that money. Later they got money from friends and relations in the South, enough to start with, at any rate, and we immediately set to work to provide what was necessary to enable us to make these machines. My recollection is that near about the first of November, 1894, we began actual work in the shop.

Q33. In answer to Q16, you state that about the first of January, 1895, you directed E. W. Kleinert, whom you had in your employ, as an assistant to Eugene Lauste, to order for you from the Boston Gear Works, an appliance known as a Geneva stop and you seem to have produced a bill from the Boston Gear Works, dated January 7th, 1895. Have you that bill in your possession now?

1556

A. I think not. I think it was offered as an exhibit at the time of the Interference suit.

Q34. Can you state from your present recollection any of the circumstances connected with that order of the Geneva stop from the Boston Gear Works?

A. Perfectly well, all of them. The fact was that I knew what that Geneva stop was. I had seen a cut of it, in an illustrated price list of the Boston Gear Works that I had previously written for. I took the cut to the shop, showed it to Mr. Lauste and Mr. Kleinert, discussed it with them and we agreed that the thing was worth a trial. It would have been impossible with the nicest instruments for measuring, for me to make such a description of that gear as ought to be sent to the manufacturers. Consequently I told Mr. Kleinert that he must make the proper measurements and write to the Boston Gear Works for precisely what was needed and to tell them to send the bill to me. Mr. Lauste was the chief mechanic employed by me, Mr. Kleinert, his assistant. I did not direct Mr. Lauste to write for this gear because of his only slight knowledge of the English language and because I had generally found it easier to make my conceptions clear to Mr. Kleinert than I could make them to Mr. Lauste. The gear sent for was received and tried and in Kleinert's opinion and in Lauste's opinion, and in my own, after they had explained to me its action, the gear was not accepted. Kleinert, however, told me that he could have the gear, the same in principle, but different in some respects, made in the establishment of Frederick Pearce, near us. One difference between the two gears was this-in both of them there was a driving wheel and a driven wheel. In the

Boston gear, the driven wheel was outside of the

1559



driving wheel. In the gear Kleinert had made, the driving wheel is on the outside. If the Boston gear had been used, the difference between the periods of rest and the periods of motion would, I think, have been less somewhat than was the case when the driving wheel was put on the outside. In both cases, the circumference of the driving wheel was occupied partly by cogs and that part of the circumference occupied by the cogs indicated the time of movement. The part of the circumference not occupied by the cogs, indicated the time of rest. Now the cogs on my driving wheel, as finally adopted, occupied a small part of the circumference of the driving wheel (I have forgotten exactly what part) and consequently, in using that machine, the time of rest of the picture strip was greatly in excess of the time of movement.

1562

Q35. Now, in answer to Q21 of your former deposition you state that an apparatus embodying the gear stop motion was completed and pictures taken with it. Was the gear stop motion in that completed machine the one you got from Boston or the one that was made for you by Pearce? What is your recollection as to that?

1563

A. I have no recollection regarding that, but I do know absolutely that in both gears the teeth on the driving wheel occupied much less than half of the circumference of the wheel and that consequently whether one gear or the other was used, the period of rest always considerably exceeded the time of motion.

Q36. Further in answer to Q21, you state that the first picture that was photographed with that machine was photographed on the night of February 26th-27th, 1895, and you submitted a piece of film with a statement in the handwriting of

your son Otway and a note from W. K. L. Dickson, in these words: "To my friend, Mr. Woodville Latham. Compliments of W. K. L. Dickson, February 26th-27th, 1895. Midnight." Do you know where that note and the strip of film are now?

A. I do not. My recollection is that they were put in as an exhibit.

Q37. Can you state from your recollection of the circumstance and from your knowledge of Mr. Dickson's handwriting, whether that note was written by him?

1565

A. I had not the slightest doubt about it when I received the note and if I had had doubts, it would have been removed subsequently by personal conversations between Mr. Dickson and myself not only about the exploit to which the note related but about the note itself and its time of delivery into my room while I was asleep.

Q38. Can you state whether the quotation in your answer to Q21 is a correct rendering of that note?

1566

A. I can't say that, sir, exactly. It was substantially that. I haven't any doubt myself that the words quoted were the very words used but I would not be willing to swear so because there is scarcely any precise wording that I would recollect accurately after so long an interval.

Q39. Further in your answer to Q21, you state as follows: "Subsequently, near about the first of March, photographs were taken with this machine on the roof of the Scott building, at 35 Frankfort Street, of Eugene Lauste, his son Emil Lauste, E. W. Kleinert, my son Grey Latham, and myself. My son Otway Latham operated the machine. All except myself of those who were photographed, were in active movement, dancing and scuffling

within the field of the machine. I sat smoking a pipe, and the photographs were afterwards exhibited on a screen to thousands of people in New York City, the smoke from my pipe plainly appearing upon the screen." Does that testimony refresh your recollection sufficiently to enable you to state whether the Lauste Exhibit photograph which you have examined is an enlargement of one of that series of pictures?

By Mr. Ward:

Question objected to as improper injection of former testimony into this record.

A. I think I have already answered that question half an hour ago, perhaps, except that I stated that I was not absolutely certain whether the picture was taken on the Frankfort Street roof or the Beekman Street roof.

Q40. In the same answer you then go on to tell about some photographs taken of a boxing contest between two prize fighters, Griffo and Barnet. Can you tell us from recollection anything about the photographing of that contest?

A. I suppose I can with the utmost truth tell you that I recollect everything about it except the date. My memory is not clear as to that. I was present from beginning to the end.

Q41. In connection with that same answer, you produced a clipping from the New York Mercury of May 5th, 1895. I hand you now a newspaper clipping pasted to a sheet entitled "Amet vs. Latham vs. Casler vs. Armat, Latham Exhibit No. 3, J. A. S. Com'r, Dec. 4th, 1897." Do you know whether that is the newspaper clipping which you produced on that occasion?

A. I don't know. In all probability, it was the

1568

same thing. I introduced a clipping from the Mercury, I remember very well, simply to show the date of the boxing match and it fixes the date at May 4th, 1895, because the date of the paper was May 5th, the day afterwards, but I paid very little attention to the wording of these publications. Most of them were absurdly complimentary, many of them, through ignorance, misstated the facts and I did not care a broken eggshell for what they wrote except as the publication of it might fix dates.

1571

The paper handed the witness is now offered in evidence by complainant's counsel and is marked "Complainant's Exhibit Sunday Mercury, May 5th, 1895."

By Mr. Ward:

The introduction of this alleged clipping is objected to for the obvious reason that the witness has distinctly stated that he did not know whether this clipping was the one introduced by him in his former testimony, neither the authenticity of the clipping as such nor the date on which it purports to have been printed having in any way been proven.

Counsel for complainant states that he is prepared to prove the genuineness and the date of the clipping in question and will do so in due time, but calls attention to the fact that Mr. Eyre agreed that these clippings, as the same are reproduced in the record of the Latham-Armat Interference, might be used without such formal proof.

and that he will not go to the trouble of establishing this fact unless it is insisted upon.

Adjourned to Wednesday, April 26, 1911, 11 a. m.

New York, April 27, 1911, 11 a. m.

Met pursuant to adjournment. Present—Counsel as before. 1574

Direct-examination of Mr. Latham (continued):

By Mr. Ward:

In view of the understanding between my associate having charge of this case and counsel for complainant, the objection to the admission of the clipping from the Sunday Mercury as an exhibit in this case is withdrawn, and it is agreed that this and further newspaper clippings of substantially that date which were heretofore introduced in evidence in the interference case may be introduced as exhibits in this case, subject to examination by defendant's counsel and to corrections.

1575

Q42. I hand you a clipping from the Sun of April 22, 1895, which was Exhibit No. 4 in the Latham vs. Armat Interference. Do you recollect anything about that clipping?

A. Yes, I recollect all about it. We had invited,

or my sons had at any rate, the representatives of the various newspapers to come to our Frankfort Street shop to witness the operation of our newly made machine. They all expressed their surprise and their admiration of the thing and left, but a little while afterwards the Sun representative returned to say that the Sun would like to know if I had any objection to his making a drawing of the machine for publication. I said certainly not. The next morning some account of the action of the machine was published in the Sun and a picture of it was made; also the Sun published an interview that was alleged to have been had the night before after the visit of these newspaper men to my shop, and one paragraph attributed to Mr. Edison was this, if they (meaning myself and son) exhibit this machine, improve on what I have done, and call it a kinetoscope it is all right. I will be glad of whatever improvements Mr. Latham may make.

1578

1577

"If they carry the machine around the country, calling it by some other name, that is a fraud and I shall prosecute whoever does it. I have applied for patents long ago." I immediately wrote to the Sun to express my surprise that that interview had been had and requested space in the Sun for a reply, which was given to me, and which I used.

The clipping handed the witness is offered in evidence by Complainant's Counsel and marked "Defendant's Exhibit Clipping from Sun April 22, 1895."

Q43. Do you recall whether you exhibited any moving pictures to the representatives of the press or others on the occasion referred to in this clipping?

A. Certainly it was the exhibition of the moving pictures by use of my machine that I had invited them to come to see.

Q44. What sort of projecting machine did you use on that occasion?

A. The same machine which was afterwards used with our own film rather than the Edison film for photographing the movement.

Q45. Did you have any projecting machines of your own make at the time when you first used your taking machine in February or March, 1895?

A. None except perhaps one or more temporary things that we had set up in the shop for purposes of experiment. The action of these, however, was never exhibited to anybody outside of the shop.

Q46. Did these have a continuous or an intermittent feed for the film?

A. Some one and some the other. Our object was to find out whether projection could be more advantageously made with a continuously running machine than with a machine including an arresting device.

Q47. I hand you now a copy of the British Patent No. 4841, of 1896. Are you the Woodville Latham named in that patent?

A. I am.

Q48. Did you ever build any machines like the machine illustrated in that patent, and if so, can you state when you built either that identical machine or any other embodying the same principles of construction and operation?

A. There are two questions in one here and I don't exactly know how to answer. Please read the question again and I will tell you when to stop. We built according to my recollection five machines substantially like the cut shown in the

1580

British Patent. I am uncertain whether we ever built a machine identically like for example, Fig. 1, of that patent. In Fig. 1 a bellows connection appears between the lantern and the condenser. I remember perfectly well that we tried that and came to the conclusion that it was either worthless or certainly not worth the money it cost, and my recollection is that in no one of the five machines referred to was the elaborate regulating device shown in the lower part of the figure included. It proved to be not of enough service to justify the expense of making it.

1583

Q49. Do you know whether any taking machines were made either by you or by the Anthonys under authority obtained from you like the first machine which was tried on February 26 and 27, 1895?

A. Yes, I know that other machines were made subsequently. They were machines with an arresting device different from the arresting device that I had used with the machine exhibited to the newspaper men, a device, however, which I had tried previously in the shop and discarded. I had nothing whatever to do with the making of these machines, that is nothing directly, but some while after the events referred to above, my son Otway Latham, knowing that I had an interest in these machines carrying sprocket wheels, notwithstanding the fact that the business had been in the hands of the Eideloscope Company, told me one day that E. & H. T. Anthony Company would send him to Mexico to take a lot of pictures if they could be assured that he had the right to deal with me. I at once said to him, I will arrange all that by transferring to you absolutely my entire interest in the sprocket wheel machine and now you

can go and make what arrangements you please with the Anthonys. He had been a very faithful assistant to me, had been the manager of the shop and I was glad of the opportunity to give him a chance to rehabilitate himself. The Anthonys had a number of machines made, how many I do not know, nor do I know where they were made. recollection is that they were considerably larger than my machine marked Exhibit No. 12 in the old interference. The arresting device consisted of a disk having a slot running from near the circumference to near the centre, and fastened into that slot was an arm perpendicular to the face of the disk. The machine was arranged to form a loop in the film and the revolution of this wheel bearing the pin was to tighten the loop and we could by moving the pin to one position or another with reference to the shaft of the wheel take up more or less of the loop that might be necessary. I had tried the same thing a long while before in the shop and he had superintended work on it as on the other plan. I was not satisfied with its action. He preferred it, however, I think because he wanted to save the Anthonys as much money as possible and, as I said, that was the stopping device he employed.

1587

1586

Q50. In giving your 1897 deposition you had an exhibit which was referred to as "The original machine," and as "Exhibit No. 12." What was that machine?

Objection is made to this manner of conducting the examination, namely, by quoting statements or mentioning statements in the former deposition, many of which in the past have been grossly leading questions,

instead of first asking the witness his recollection as to such matters and then if he is found to have no recollection on the subject allowing him to refresh his memory, by his former deposition. The witness may have found since that deposition that he was in error as to facts or circumstances therein testified to, and this is illustrated by the fact that in the rebuttal testimony at that time he was found to be mistaken on certain facts which he had testified to on his direct examination, as will appear from such deposition.

1589

A. My answer to that question would be simply a repetition of my answer to Q23 in this examination.

Q51. I did not mean to ask for a description of the machine, but to inquire as to what machine it was if you can now state?

1590

A. I made one machine and one machine only at first. Before completing that machine, a number of experiments had been tried in the shop with temporary appliances, for example, Mr. W. K. L. Dickson suggested an arresting device, to try which it was simply necessary to mount a revolving shaft bearing this sprocket wheel and to attach to this shaft the arresting device and to set the whole thing in motion so as to see whether the sprocket wheel would be stopped and started in a satisfactory way, but I certainly would not call that a machine. The first machine that I made with an arresting device and the only machine I ever made with an arresting device was the machine that was shown to the newspaper men and the machine that was referred to in the Interference suit between Armat and Latham as Exhibit No. 12.

That machine was the machine with which we took all the pictures that we subsequently exhibited, including a Bull Fight in Mexico and the Rapids at Niagara.

Q52. Have you seen that machine Exhibit No. 12 since you testified in that interference in 1897?

A. I have not, and had not expected to see it again because it had fallen into other and hostile hands, but Mr. Richard Anthony succeeded to my very great surprise, in buying the machine from the parties who had it. It was to some extent dismantled but the essential features of it remained, and it was brought to the room in the Post Office Building, I believe it was, Commissioner Shields' Office, and it was afterwards sent to Washington City as an exhibit. Since then I have known nothing in the world about it.

Q53. Do you recall the first time when you ordered any film from the Eastman Kodak Company?

A. Only in a very general way. This much I can say without hesitation, that it must have been shortly after the exhibition of the machine to the newspaper men, because we were thoroughly satisfied then that we had accomplished the object we set out to accomplish and one of those objects was to use a wider picture strip than Edison and perhaps others had been using. Eastman had to experiment to some extent before he could assure himself that he could make for me the kind of film I had called for, but I agreed to take at his own price a table of such film as he might make for me, about 2,000 feet of strip it would make when cut up, and he sent it to me and we found it just what we wanted. Then it became necessary to make a punching machine because a punch-

1592

ing machine suited to punch two lines of holes three-quarters of an inch apart had a very different punching wheel from one that was to punch two lines of holes something like $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches apart, is my recollection. These were necessary delays, not in making the invention but in being ready to make pictures for exhibition to the public and to make suitable projecting machines for showing those pictures on the screen.

1595

Q53½. Do you remember from whom you obtained the film that was used with the taking machine by your son Otway and Mr. Dickson on February 26-27, 1895?

A. At that time my two sons, Gray Latham and

Otway Latham, were using Edison's kinetoscope and with that kinetoscope they were using picture strips made by the Edison concern. I have an indistinct recollection that Mr. Dickson happened to have in his possession some of this strip. It was all of one width, all punched in exactly the same way, all of a thin and unsubstantial material, as I thought. At any rate it seemed to me not sufficiently strong for our purpose. Whether Mr. Dickson furnished the little strips that were used or my son took some piece of strip that he happened to have I do not know, but certainly I would not have countenanced any dishonest use of Mr. Edison's strip. Even at the time I am now talking about I had very little thought of making a business of photographing pictures. I started out with the idea that I would get Mr. Edison to farnish the pictures and that I would project, and as I tell you it was rather accidental that I discovered that this original machine as I still call it, could photograph a picture as well as it did, and we kept it afterwards, especially as some friction bad

developed between Mr. Edison and Mr. Dickson. We kept it for photographic purposes and used it for that purpose exclusively, and used a different style of machine for projecting the pictures, and we did this for the reason that the projecting machines we made and used were of simpler construction, much cheaper and because the wear and tear on the film would be less than it would be if in projecting we used what was then called the stop movement machine.

Q54. I am referring to the unexposed film with which you took the pictures of the swinging incandescent lamp. Do you remember where you got that film from?

A. I do not. I am quite sure, though I may be mistaken, that I had never up to that time got any new film from Eastman. I am quite sure that my son never could have got any of such blank material from Mr. Edison. If I had been right in my impression that the narrow film was used in that experimentation or exhibition to the newspaper men I feel perfectly assured that Mr. Dickson brought it from Edison's laboratory. I should never have made any special inquiry about it except to find out whether anything improper had been done by my son. If I had been on the ground, but as a matter of fact I was an invalid at the time confined largely to the house and hadn't been in the shop quite a considerable while.

Q55. In the prior interference you produced a bill from the Eastman Kodak Company dated February 18, 1895, for 12 rolls 2 inch Trausk film 25 feet long. I hand you a copy of that bill and ask you whether that recalls to your mind any circumstance different from those you have referred to in your last answer?

1598

1601

A. Understand, if you please, that the answers I have been giving heretofore as to the time in order in which certain things were done I have relied almost exclusively upon my memory, but these three bills in my hand, or copies of them, show me clearly that there was already in my shop some film sent by Eastman shortly, and that this film was thin film like that employed by Edison, and it was later that the bill of April 27th is obviously the bill for the whole table of films, thick film, which I referred to just now. Now, it would not take long for skillful workmen to mount wider sprocket wheels and to have a wider window for use of these short lengths of film. Understand that already we had made up our minds long before these circumstances I now dictate, we knew we would want a punching machine for a two-inch film, and I have no doubt that there was one in the shop. I know we made sprocket wheels in great number, so that I feel absolutely certain now in the face of the circumstances that the swinging electric lamp was photographed on the wider film. I cannot see the importance of the matter but it would be easy to settle it I think by tracing the exhibit in Washington and seeing whether it is on a 2 inch film or a 3/4 inch film.

1602

Q56. Did you ever order any film for taking pictures from any other concern than the Eastman Kodak Company?

A. Not that I remember. I do not remember having known of any other concern that made film at that time nor do I know of any concerns that make them now. In order that the truth may be reached as to all these minutiæ it is necessary to remember that our pecuniary resources were small at the time and that we were bound to econo-

mize, hence the first orders of films here were for small quantities and I remember perfectly well that I staggered a little bit when Eastman told me I would have to take a whole table making about 2,000 feet of 2 inch strip if he made it for me on special order.

Q57. Will you please look now at the certified copies of the drawings of the patent in this suit and particularly at Figs. 2, 6 and 7, and then state in what respects the feed mechanism of Exhibit No. 12 in the former interference resembled or differed from the feed mechanism shown in these figures?

A. I stated in my examination yesterday that I had probably not looked into that original machine a half a dozen times in all my life. I had given to the workmen orders to make a reel for holding the film and a sprocket wheel for withdrawing the

film from that reel. Whether the reel was exactly about the other portions of the apparatus as shown in this figure, or one side, or whether it contained a reel at all, I am sure I could not now say, because again and again I had made temporary devices in which the film was drawn from the box through a slot in that box. Substantially and in every single essential particular so far as my memory goes the feeding device was the same.

Q58. Do you remember the name of the draughtsman who made the drawings for this patent?

A. I do not remember that any draughtsman ever made the patent drawing for me except Mr. Raphael Netter and I remember clearly and distinctly that Mr. Netter never made for me a drawing of a machine to be sent to Washington until the machine had assumed bodily shape and all of the patent drawings made by him were copied from the machine standing before him. I did not know any-

1604

thing about patent matters then else I would have applied for a patent in the summer of '94 when I first saw this machine in the air, that is the way most of these patent applicants do, but I waited until I had made the machine, operated it and found that it would do what I had expected it to do before I sent it to Mr. Netter and my patent attorney Mr. J. E. M. Bowen, now dead, though he had been at one time Chief Examiner in the Patent Office, was well acquainted with patent matters, he never advised me of the risk I was running.

1607

Q59. Mr. Netter has testified that when he first saw the machine from which he made this patent office drawings it was in a partially assembled condition in your shop. If that be the fact, how do you account for it?

A. Simply enough. Mr. Netter is himself an accomplished man in all these lines, and, if when he came to the shop to make a drawing of the machine and some parts of it happened not to be in place but lying on the table, it was a matter of a few words to make him understand just exactly where the missing parts belonged.

1608

Q60. Do you know if the machine from which Netter made these drawings was the same machine that was tested by Otway Latham and Mr. Dickson on February 26-27, 1895, or whether it was one of the later machines that you have said were made?

A. Mr. Netter made the drawings from what I have again and again called the original machine. I don't know whether Mr. Netter ever made any drawings for my son and Mr. Anthony subsequently, but in all these drawings where my name and Mr. Netter's also appeared in the signatures it is

the machines that I myself had made that Mr. Netter made his drawings from.

Q61. Do you remember now, Mr. Latham, how long prior to the day when you received the blue penciled note in your son Otway's handwriting, and to which you had fixed the memorandum of February 27, 1895, your original machine Exhibit No. 12 in the former interference had been constructed so as to be capable of taking a series of

photographs of a moving object?

A. You will have to allow (you lawyers) that there are certain circumstances that are more convincing than any oral testimony. What is called circumstantial evidence is evidence that cannot possibly be explained except in one way, and not simply evidence that raises a suspicion. am as certain as I am that I am sitting here talking that that machine never was in condition to take successfully a picture of a swinging lamp or the picture of anything else in motion until that night of the 26th of February, 1895, because it is absolutely certain that I would have been notified of the fact by my son and because there would have been no earthly occasion for the slipping under my door on the morning of the 27th at 3 o'clock the note in blue pencil. I do not want to be misunderstood here in saying that the picture machine was not prior to the night of February 26, 1895, in condition to photograph pictures of movement, but that if it was there had been something lacking to enable us to do that sort of work, film perhaps, punching machine perhaps, but that on that night of February 26, 1895, my belief is the machine was first actually used to photograph a picture of movement. example, if Mr. Kleinert or Mr. Lauste should state

1610

1614

positively that the machine had for a considerable while been in suitable condition for photographing I should not consider that that testimony would be contradictory of what I have just said.

The second sentence of the answer is objected to in view of what precedes it, and the last sentence objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

1613 Q62. Do you recall now how long prior to February 27, 1895, this machine about which you have been talking was in actual process of construction?

A. What I remember in connection with this matter is that various obstacles such as the want of money prevented our starting out regularly to make a machine until about the 1st of November, 1894, some time was spent, how much I don't remember, in purchasing and setting up machinery, getting material, and so on, but I have the impression that it was early in January, when the orderly work began of making the machine and devices that were necessary to be used with the machine, punching machine, for example, printing machines, for another example, developing appliances, &c., &c.

Q63. Who paid Lauste his wages?

A. I as an individual paid his wages, because at this time the whole interest was mine and my two sons. I think I have already stated in this examination that it was my son who secured the money necessary to enable us to begin, but that money was immediately turned over by them to me and all bills were paid by me, and receipts were given to me for everything of consequence purchased.

Q64. Who gave to Lauste the instructions as to what he should do in the construction of this first machine which was used as you have stated for the first time to your knowledge on February 26th or 27th, 1895?

A. The remark I am about to make would astonish some people, but it is nevertheless true that though I have been a successful worker in a good many lines I have always been a diffident man and not disposed to put myself forward. Now Mr. W. K. L. Dickson had represented to my son that he had already invented such a machine and they came to me and told me what Dickson had said. My reply to them was that it was a matter of no consequence to me whether Mr. Dickson furnished the machine that we wanted or I furnished it, that I had interested myself in the matter as they knew, solely to benefit them and that I would prefer that they should get Dickson to direct Lauste, telling my youngest son, Otway Latham, however, that I wanted him to be present always in the interviews between Dickson and Lauste, to see exactly how the cat was jumping. Subsequently, as has been testified to by Mr. Dickson and others, some so-called experimentation was made at the laboratory (I was present once myself) with a view of finding out if my memory served me, simply what sort of objective would give the best light on the screen. On this occasion when I was present, I became satisfied that Mr. Dickson did not know the first principals of experimentation. Still I believe the statement that he had made to my son that he had up his sleeve, or rather over in Jersey at his residence a machine already made or at any rate a description of how it was to be made. I then ex-

1616

pressed my doubts to my sons as to the possibility of getting any real assistance along that line from Mr. Dickson. Later on, as has been testified to by somebody, Mr. Dickson's arresting device was tried in the shop and failed. Meanwhile Mr. Dickson had a good deal of conversation with Mr. Lauste in French in the presence of my son who did not know French, and this irritated my son and he came to me and complained of it and I told Dickson subsequently that I thought in all fairness he and Lauste ought not to confer about a matter of our interests in a language unknown to my son. Mr. Dickson's position with Mr. Edison was subordinate of course to that of Mr. Edison. Mr. Dickson himself had told me previously that he himself was the inventor of the Edison Kinetoscope but had no credit for it, and this and other remarks and actions of his led me to believe that Mr. Dickson would not be satisfied in any subordinate capacity where he had to take orders from gentlemen like my son and myself who in his estimation were utterly ignorant of the matters we had determined to employ ourselves with. The upshot of this was that I went to Mr. Lauste and told him thereafter, having previously consulted with my son, he must take his orders from me or from my son Otway and not from Mr. Dickson; that it was my son and myself who had the money to pay his wages and all other expenses and not Mr. Dickson and that I didn't want him to receive contradictory orders, that is one order from Mr. Dickson and the countermanding order from my son or from myself. Now Mr. Lauste's mental and spiritual make-up was very much like Mr. Dickson's. He was not satisfied unless he was the great high

1619

Tikoo of the establishment, and as I had already been modest with him, had deferred to him a good deal and hadn't seemed to be his master in matters which I knew he was better acquainted with than myself, he was pleased at my eliminating Dickson and at once told me in substance that Dickson was not only absolutely ignorant of these matters but that he had worried him by calling on him to do things that he knew would be simply a waste of time.

Q65. I meant rather by my question not who gave Lauste orders but who gave him the ideas that he was to work out?

A. I alone, either directly or through my son.

Answer objected to as indefinite.

Adjourned to April 27, 1911, at 11 a. m.

New York, April 27, 1911. 11 A. M.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

1623

1622

Present-Counsel as before.

Examination of Mr. Latham continued:

Q66. Do you remember whether the apparatus used for projecting the pictures on the occasion referred to in the Sun clipping of April 22, 1895, was a continuously or an intermittently film feeding device?

A. Well, my memory is refreshed by looking

at this drawing made by the Sun man. I recognize one of the supports which belonged to the continuously moving picture machine and not to the machine that has been called heretofore the original machine and is Exhibit No. 12.

Q67. I hand you now two bills or invoices from J. B. Colt & Co. and the letter from the same party which from their marks of identification appear to have been exhibits in the Latham vs. Armat Interference. Do you recall anything in connection with those exhibits?

1625

A. Well, I recall the circumstance that I bought these things from Colt and probably a good many more.

Q68. For what were these things intended and for what were they used?

A. They were intended for and were used with the projecting machines, that is, those that had no arresting device. I have not read these items over carefully and even if I were to do so I would not be able to say positively that some one of these things may not have been purchased for the photographing machine. I think all these were for the continuous moving machine. Many of them discarded afterwards and other things substituted.

1626

The papers referred to are offered in evidence by complainant's counsel and marked "Complainant's Exhibit Colt Bills and Letter."

By Mr. Ward: In view of the witness's answer and the items of the bill itself, the question and answer and the introduction of the exhibits objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

By Counsel for Complainant: Counsel

for defendant is reminded that the former deposition of this witness is in evidence and that the witness is open to cross-examination on such deposition.

Counsel for defendant wishes to state that he is aware of this fact but is also aware of the fact that the issues in Interference referred to, cover a somewhat different machine, in his opinion, from that of the patent in suit and that the prime object in that interference was to prove that the machine was a projecting machine and furthermore he is aware of the fact that the items on this bill show that they relate to a projecting machine.

1628

By Complainant's Counsel:

All of which is quite immaterial to the particular fact in question.

Complainant's Counsel now offers in evidence Latham Exhibit No. 7 from the Interference Latham vs. Armat, said exhibit being identified by the initials of James A. Shields, Commissioner, and the official stamp of the Patent Office.

1629

By Mr. Ward:

Exhibit objected to as not having been proven. It is obvious that the alleged initials of Commissioner Shields are not his initials, since the Court will take judicial notice of his signature. It is also obvious that the alleged official stamp is not the official stamp of the Patent Office and there

is nothing about it which the Court can take judicial notice of.

By Complainant's Counsel:

I am glad to know at this stage of the case that Defendant's Counsel is disposed to raise such trivial and immaterial objections but I shall take the precaution to establish by the testimony of Mr. Shields who acted as Examiner in the Interference that this Exhibit was one of the exhibits offered on behalf of Latham in the said Interference and is merely a blue print copy of the drawings of the Latham application which became the patent in suit.

By Mr. Ward:

Defendant's Counsel is perfectly willing to stipulate that these are blue prints of patent office drawings in suit with an effective date as early as the filing date of the patent. Beyond this, he does not consider the matter trivial and he thinks complainant should be put to his proofs thereon.

Q69. I hand you now a clipping from the Daily Inter Ocean of Chicago, dated June 10, 1895. Do you recollect anything about that clipping?

A. Yes, sir, I remember this. I think I know who wrote it. My recollection is that it was written by Howard Hackett who at that time was the Sporting Editor of the World in New York. He did not tell me so himself, but my recollection is that my son told me he wrote it. He was a friend of his and an acquaintance of mine.

1631

Q70. Was that clipping, so far as you know, ever in your possession?

A. Yes. I don't know whether this particular one was but I myself got from the Chicago Inter Ocean either this one or one exactly like it. Indeed, I got a number of copies of the paper and cut out this article to send to friends. I remember particularly in regard to it that I was disgusted at these allusions to me personally. The information, whether false or true, was not got from me, personally. I refused positively when newspaper reporters came to me, to give them any information whatever in regard to my prior life and doings. I told them it was a matter of no consequence and that the machine was the thing I wanted the public to look at and the picture.

1634

The clipping handed the witness is offered in evidence by Complainant's Counsel and marked "Complainant's Exhibit Clipping from Chicago Inter Ocean."

Direct Examination Closed.

et Examination Closed.

Cross-examination by Mr. Ward:

1635

XQ71. Prior to giving your present deposition and within a few days of giving the deposition you had examined the drawings of the patent in suit, had you not?

A. Well, yes, I made no very close examination. I looked at it sufficiently to satisfy myself. That was about all.

XQ72. And I believe you have testified that you had read over your direct deposition in the Interference case and a part of the cross-examination. Is this correct?

A. I do not remember having been asked that question on this examination but I have a copy of my testimony and the testimony of my witnesses and when Mr. Page first came to see me I told him so and the next day he came and asked me if I had read over the testimony and I told him that I had read my direct testimony cursorily, and a part of the testimony of my son Otway. At any rate, that was a fact.

XQ73. Have you also read any of the testimony given by W. K. L. Dickson and Eugene Lauste in this case?

A. I didn't read the testimony of those two men myself but it has been read to me. If I had wanted to remember either one of them I should have read them very carefully myself as I had the opportunity to do so, but I have been informed as to the general drift of their testimony and was curious to know generally what they said and it is only a part of that general matter that I remember.

XQ74. Were you shown a sketch made by Mr. Lauste and introduced in this case as Complainant's Exhibit Lauste Sketch?

A. I was shown the sketch but did not understand it, do not understand it now and never did understand any drawing that Lauste made; if my soul's salvation depended on it, I could not give the slightest idea now of what the sketch looks like. As a matter of fact, Lauste never made drawings for this work, didn't know how to do it.

XQ75. You remember though, do you not, this much about the sketch, namely, that it showed a pair of gear wheels feeding the film to form a loop above the gate or window and a second pair of sprockets below the gate or window, forming a second loop with some mechanism between the

1637

loops for intermittently moving the film. Now, in answering the question, I want you to understand that I am disregarding any specific mechanism or connecting gearing shown in the sketch.

A. If I saw and observed these things that you have mentioned and understood them, that would be one thing; but as a matter of fact, I did not understand what was shown me. I did not think the gentleman who showed it to me understood it and to me it was a matter of no consequence and that is the reason why I am so uncertain now as to what the drawings contained.

XQ76. Do you consider that your mind is as clear now as it used to be in 1895 as to understanding mechanical drawings?

A. I never understood a mechanical drawing of any pretension in my life. It would be utterly impossible for me to look at a mechanical drawing and be able to picture to myself what it represents. In my direction to Lauste, the little drawings I made were hardly worthy of the name. I never would have made them for an English speaking boy of fair intelligence of ten years of age but by words and little sketches when he couldn't understand my language, I got into his head generally what I wanted and that was about what I tried to describe in my direct testimony a day or so ago.

XQ77. And you could not have understood representations in such mechanical drawings in 1895?

A. Certainly not. Understand I said pretentious drawings.

XQ78. What do you mean by "pretentious," such as this sketch of Lauste?

A. Well, I see enough similarity here now to the machine I had constructed to be prepared to be-

1640

lieve that this was intended as a sketch of some of the parts of the machine. One thing on it, I instantly recognize. It is an intermittent gear that was finally adopted. There is in the drawing, socalled, of Lauste, no representation of the intermittent gear as a part of the machine except as he draws a line from the lower sprocket wheel to the intermittent gear which he has attempted to represent on the right. I recognize 4 gear wheels. I recognize a rod and beveled gear connection between the top gear wheel and the lower gear wheel and I observe what seem to be two idlers, pressing rollers, on the upper sprocket wheel and one on the sprocket wheel just below. ' Now, if this thing had been brought to me when the subject of these machines had not been talked about, and I had been asked what does that represent, I am sure I would not have connected it with my machine. Besides, this is not a working drawing, nor does it pretend to be a working drawing nor would it be a working drawing if every one of these 4 sprocket wheels were truly round, if the sprockets were all exactly the same height and even if means were shown by which these three pressing rollers were mounted and were kept in contact with the sprockets, it still would not be a working drawing. A working drawing does not usually look like the thing of which it is a working drawing. For example, on Monday morning, I believe it was, when Mr. Page first came to see me, I was looking over some papers I had and I took out some sheets which were working drawings and I looked at them, glanced at them and thought, of course, they were working drawings of the machine, the projecting or photographing machine, handed them to Mr.

1643

Page. He looked at them and said, "Why, these are the drawings of your bread machine." Well, he saw the label or recognized the drawings from a description I had previously given him of my bread machine. I do not know, but as soon as he told me they were working drawings of the bread machine, I remembered that I had never had but one set made. I remembered who made them and all about them, and I immediately rolled them up and threw them back in the box and have not looked at them since and have not seen them since and could not describe them.

1646

Complainant's Counsel notes that in giving his last answer, the witness examined Complainant's Exhibit Lauste Sketch.

XQ79. I understand from your last answer that you cannot read a working drawing any better if, as well, as assembled drawings. Is that correct?

A. I can make some approach to understanding assembled drawings, depending, of course, upon the simplicity or intricacy, but as I have already said, I have never been able to begin to understand the working of it until the draughtsman has pointed out this and that thing to my notice and even then, I was never able to understand the thing as a whole.

1647

XQ80. I hand you a copy of the record in the former interference containing drawings of patent 579,901. Referring to Fig. 9 of that patent, can you describe the operation or the use of the apparatus shown in that figure?

A. That is a mechanical device, called, I believe, a crank movement. It is an arrangement for converting rectangular movement into circular move-

ment or the reverse. I have now my attention drawn to another thing. Obviously, the arrangement pictured here is one for converting circular movement into rectangular movement and there seems to be a roller at the end of the rod which is made by this device to move in a straight line and to the left of that wheel there is another wheel represented seemingly of precisely the same size but the circumference of this second wheel is represented by a dotted line instead of a continuous one. Then I see a portion of what I at once infer intended to represent a band, and the inference I draw is that by a leftward movement of the rod with a wheel at the end of it, the object has been to push a portion of that band out of a vertical line.

1650

1649

XQ82. In answer to Q23, you give a very detailed explanation of the general principle of movement of the film of your machine as you remembered it, this description being given in answer to a question asking you to describe the machine from memory. Do you think that in view of the fact that you had recently examined the drawings of your patent and had recently read over the depositions of yourself and had had read to you the depositions of Dickson and Lauste and had seen the very clear and graphic sketch of Lauste, that your memory was considerably refreshed by this recent information?

A. I do not.

XQ83. You would have remembered that much of the machine had you been called on to describe it a month ago?

A. I think so.

XQ84. Referring to your answer to Q23, is that your recollection of the machine as finally com-

pleted or is it your recollection of what you had in mind as early as the summer of 1894?

A. It is both. Of course, with general notions in my mind in the summer of 1894, I was careful to have Mr. I auste include in the machine, what I told him to include, and my son, Otway Latham, was always on the ground to see and understand what Lauste was doing. Possibly, I ought to add that every single one of the elements that I had mentioned there is not essentially necessary, several of them can be omitted but I have a strong impression that when the so-called exhibit No. 12 was completed and made ready to take to Mexico, say, or to the Falls of Niagara or elsewhere, where pictures were photographed, that it included all the elements that are mentioned in answer to Q23.

XQ85. I am not referring just now to the elements which were eventually embodied in the machine but what I am trying to get at is, what part or how many of the elements enumerated in your answer to Q23 had you clearly in mind prior to say, November, 1894. You have just stated that you had general notions in your mind in the summer of 1894, and you have also stated that all of the elements that you had mentioned were not essential. Now, please state, with this understanding of the matter, what elements you consider unnecessary?

A. I think I used the expression in the previous answer "not absolutely necessary" but I could take that same Exhibit No. 12 or any other stop movement machine made by my sons and dispense absolutely with the loop furtherest from the delivery wheel, and could take just as good pictures as if two loops were formed. I could dispense with the receiving wheel and have a large box into which

1652

the film could drop, whether in projecting or in photographing. If in photographing, of course, the box would have to be light proof. In projecting pictures, that would not be necessary and even a receiving box would not be necessary. The picture strip after having served its purpose, could be run through on to the floor or from an upper room to a lower room through a slot. Now, these and various other arrangements, we made and tried, suggested sometimes by myself and sometimes by the workmen; but the original notion that I had in my mind when I undertook to make the machine was one I tried to describe in answer to Q23 and my impression was that no one of these elements was finally omitted.

1655

XQ86. Now, I want you to dismiss from your mind for the time being, anything relating to the final construction of the machine and confine yourself entirely to the period prior to the time you commenced building the machine. In fact, confine yourself to a time prior to the first of November, 1894. I wish to know what, if any, specific means you had in mind at this time for operating the film. With this understanding, please state what specific means, if any, you had in mind, for operating this film at this early period?

1656

A. I am compelled to answer that question at a little length. I had no occupation at that time and when my son Otway first inquired of me whether I thought I could make a machine and had got my answer and had told me that he was sure he and his brother, through friends in the South could get all the money necessary, I wrote a number of makers of arresting devices and I recollect more particularly that I wrote to the Boston Gear Works. They sent me their illustrated price list

and I found in it a number of devices, some of which appeared to me to be promising for our purposes and some not, but as no bodily shape had been given to my conception it was utterly impossible to do more than I have stated in my answer to Q23.

XQ87. You hadn't made any drawing of your proposed machine up to the time you commenced the construction of it, had you?

A. No, sir, I had made nothing of the kind, and never did make anything worthy to be called a drawing but sometimes I would find I could not convey my idea even to my son without making a little clumsy sketch to help my work and I have no doubt I made many of them, and tore them up as fast as they served their purpose.

XQ88. At what time did you make the sketches you referred to?

A. In answering that question, I would be glad to have you remember that it was shortly after my sons began to exhibit Edison pictures with the Edison kinetoscope on Nassau Street, from that time on, I thought of nothing else. I talked of nothing else scarcely. I dreamt about it and if there was not so much objection to the long answers I could tell precisely why I concluded very early that each one of the elements that I endeavored to describe in answer Q23 direct-examination, would be indispensable.

XQ89. Prior to the time you commenced the actual construction of the machine, did you have in mind the idea of forming the loop by continuously driven sprockets as distinguished from a general idea of forming a loop at some time with some suitable mechanism?

A. The first it occurred to me was, we are going

1658

to have very long strips and we must have the delivering reel to hold these strips, that if I drew the film from that reel that I would, of course, use a sprocket wheel because I was familiar in a general way with Edison's kinetoscope as described by my son. I knew that if I wanted to jerk the portion of that film sufficient to photograph a picture on or to bring into proper place, a picture on a strip which was to be projected that I would tear it and I saw at once that I must have the loop so that there would be no resistance to the sudden movement I was going to give it. Now, that put into my mind the motion that an arresting device of some sort would be necessary. If I had an arresting device above the window, I saw clearly that there would be no certainty of the film being held flat in its proper place at the window. If I had the arresting device below the window I would have made the loop below the window and there would be no loop above the window and the very next movement of the film so as to get a picture or a picture space in position would have led to the tearing of the film inevitably. Now, then, with this idea in my mind clearly, I must have a loop between the delivering reel and the window. The next thing which then came to my mind was this: The machine I am going to try to make must be a portable one, consequently I must have a receiving reel and I must arrange to have it constantly turning so as to take up the film or that portion of it that has already served its purpose. Now, both these reels, even when one of them, that is, the receiving reel, was empty, were too heavy to be stopped and started suddenly, so that I said, I think I shall have to have another loop made at the same time that the loop above the window is

1661

made, in order that the receiving reel may take up the used film by a continuous movement without danger of breaking. It is to be borne in mind that if I had a wheel loaded with film mounted so as to move freely on a shaft it requires a certain strength of pull on the film to make that wheel revolve because my leverage here is a distance from the outside of this reel full of film to the centre of the axis on which the reel is mounted, but that as more and more of the film is delivered from the delivering reel, my leverage gets less and less and the pull must be stronger and the strain on the holes of the film made by the sprockets would be greater and greater and it seemed to me that it would be necessary to introduce some device to avoid the chance of having the holes broken by the sprocket. These things, I said to myself, at the proper time will be presented to the workman and possibly he or he and I together or he and I with some outside assistance may meet any difficulty that seemed then to face us. Something similar might be said in connection with taking up the film on the receiving reel because here we have a reversal of the conditions applied to the upper reel. Here we have a leverage that is getting greater and greater, all of which convinced me, that it would be impossible to have the two reels geared together and so on and so on.

Adjourned to Friday, April 28th, 1911, 11 a. m.

1664

New York, April 28, 1911, 11 A. M.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present: Counsel as before.

Cross-examination of Mr. Latham continued:

XQ90. Is it your contention then that when one familiar with moving picture machines decides to draw the film from a reel on which it was rolled, that it would be obvious that a loop should be provided to keep the film from tearing?

The question is objected to as incompetent because it inquires of this witness an opinion which it is not made clear that he is competent to give, nor would this objection have any the less force if it were shown that he were.

A. I can only say that it seemed obvious to me at the time.

XQ91. This was the first thing that occurred to you when you determined to deliver the film from the reel, was it?

A. It is impossible for me to say whether it was the first, second or third thing.

XQ92. But it was obvious to you that the film would tear without such a loop?

Same objection as to the preceding question.

A. It seemed obvious to me.

XQ93. In your answer to XQ89 you stated that you originally had the idea of forming the loop

1667

with a sprocket, and in your answer to XQ86 you stated in substance that at the time prior to commencing building a machine that since no bodily shape had been given to my conception it was utterly impossible to do more than I have stated in my answer to Q23. Do I understand from this that prior to the commencement of work on the machine you had not determined upon any particular connecting gearing to drive your sprockets for moving the film?

A. I think I may say with perfect truth that I had determined everything to my complete satisfaction, except the arrangement for arresting the motion of the film.

XQ94. In your former deposition in XQ309 in answer to the question when did you conceive of the means which you would employ and make up your mind how the different parts of the appliance should be connected together so as to make them co-operative, you answered that "I will answer the last part of your question first. Questions touching the connections of the several leading parts of the apparatus together so as that they would work in co-operation, were left almost exclusively to the mechanic." * * * What I wish to know is what did you refer to as the connections of the leading parts which you left almost exclusively to the mechanic?

A. I can answer that by a simple illustration. The machine is to contain two sprocket wheels running together, the connection can be made by gearing or can be made by cords or belts.

XQ95. Did you sketch out and explain to Lauste that you wanted him to drive the sprockets forming the loop by any particular kind of gearing or did you leave this to him?

1670

A. I can't answer that question. Mechanics usually know the different methods of connecting two wheels, probably we discussed all of them and I left to his judgment the selection.

. XQ96. Did you leave it to his judgment as to whether or not the sprockets forming the loop should be driven from the delivery reel, that is geared to the delivery reel or driven independently and separate from the delivery reel?

A. That sprocket was never connected with the delivery reel. I am sure that neither Lauste nor I ever thought of such a thing as gearing these two things together.

XQ97. Did you leave it to Lauste to decide how the sprocket wheel should be driven?

A. The whole machine was driven by an electric motor or by hand, and no matter what driving force had been determined on if a dozen shafts had to be driven by that same force the force might be applied to any one of the dozen, provided the whole dozen shafts were geared together.

XQ98. You evidently did not understand what I wished to ascertain by the question. I wanted to know if you left it to Mr. Lauste to determine the gearing by which your main driving shaft should operate the sprocket forming the loop?

A. If it was a matter of mere mechanics, that is, a matter that a machinist of the first class is supposed to understand I would defer to his judgment. If Lauste had proposed to connect directly that upper sprocket wheel with the reel, I should have considered it a fool suggestion, but I would have explained to him why it was that the thing was impossible.

XQ99. Did he suggest the final connection

1673

shown in your Patent Office drawings for operating the sprocket?

A. I don't know.

XQ100. Did you ever suggest to him, that is, explain to him how you wanted these sprockets driven?

A. Beyond a doubt.

XQ101. How did you tell him that you wanted them driven?

A. I don't know what you mean by the word "how."

XQ102. What I mean is, what did you tell Mr. Lauste as to driving the sprockets?

A. I never would have assumed to direct Lauste to do anything within his province as a machinist, without first explaining to him the purpose I had in mind; having told him what purpose I wanted to accomplish I got his views and accepted them or not as I thought them good views or bad views on the subject.

XQ103. Did you consider it within his province as a skilled mechanic to decide that the sprocket wheels should be driven independently and separately of the reels?

A. No, it was not in his province, which was that of a skilled workman. It was a long time before he had the slightest conception of the machine as a whole.

XQ104. How then did he build the machine? You state that you never made anything like an assembled drawing by which he could build the machine and you state that as a matter of fact Lauste never made drawings for his work and didn't know how to do it?

A. Now the answer to that question is as easy as easy can be, and yet it can't be given in a word

1676

How to put it into few words I do not or two. know. I could say to Mr. Lauste we want supports for a lot of wheels and reels and we want a sprocket wheel here and another one here, and another one here and another one here, and I want two of these sprocket wheels geared together and I want the other two geared together, all of which is simple enough. He would naturally ask me how far apart and I would tell him about the distance apart I wanted it. Up to this point there was absolutely no necessity of saying anything to him about loops, but probable it is I went through the whole thing and told him what I expected the action of the upper pair of rollers to be and what I expected the action of the lower pair of rollers to be, and so on and so on, until gradually the purpose of the machine which he was utterly ignorant of in the beginning, began to dawn on him. Now at this distance I can't tell particularly when I said this thing and when I said that thing to Mr. Lauste but I tried to give him a general idea of the purposes I had in view and when my words failed to convey my thought to him I sometimes made a little rough sketch to help my words, and he did the same thing when he had unsuccessfully tried with words alone to convey to me some thought in his own mind.

1680

1679

XQ105. To what would you be referring when you would state a sprocket wheel here and another one there, &c.?

A. Do you mean to ask me what was in my mind or what I told Lauste?

XQ106. I mean to say were you referring to a drawing?

A. I was not. After giving him a word picture of what I wanted and helping with my word picture as far as possible with these little rough sketches I found I had done all that was necessary to enable him to go ahead a certain distance doing the kind of work which he was familiar with and that I was not familiar with because I was not a mechanic.

XQ107. Continuing in my endeavor to find out what parts of the machine you refer to as connections for the leading parts, I will refer specifically to certain features of your patent drawings. Referring to Fig. 2, did you consider supplying the pair of beveled wheels 32 apparently connecting the shutter to the other mechanism as connections which you left entirely to Mr. Lauste to provide?

A. The wheels you refer to are employed always to make a shaft turning in one plane produce a revolution of another shaft in a plane perpendicular to the first. It is such an exceedingly common device that I doubt very much whether we had half a dozen words about it. I might say the same thing in regard to the connection between the sprocket 46 and the sprocket 39. I certainly would not have left him with the privilege of putting in any other connection that I was acquainted with then or am acquainted with now.

XQ108. But he placed this well known connection in at his own suggestion, did he not?

A. I don't know. I thought I had answered that question a little while ago by saying that the connections were perfectly obvious to any first-class machinist who knew the object to be accomplished, but I doubt if we had half a dozen words about it. I may have said of course we will connect these by beveled gear connections or he may have said to me, of course we will connect these by beveled gear connections, but I do not know who said it first.

1682

XQ109. How about the short sleeve or extension from the left upright shown at the top of Fig. 2. Have you the same answer to make as to that?

A. I confess that I do not at this moment remember what the use of that piece was, unless it may have been used to keep the cord 26 perfectly parallel to that left part of the support next to which the sleeve appears in the drawing. Unless I could know certainly what the thing was intended for, I would not be in a position to say whether probably I suggested it or Lauste.

1685

XQ110. How about the sliding idler 62 shown in Fig. 3?

A. It is impossible for me to tell; the purpose of it is obvious.

XQ111. How about the adjustable screws 51, shown in Figs. 3 and 4?

A. I don't remember what that adjustment was intended for.

XQ112. These screws are intended to shift the shaft 34 on which one of the broken gears is carried back and forth in the eccentric bearing to vary its distance with respect to the other broken gear.

1686

A. As I understand, your question was whether that was suggested by me or by Lauste. The chances are 100 to 1 that was one of Lauste's suggestions. An examination of Fig. 5 will show that for a large part of the revolution of the broken gear wheel 47, no movement is produced in the connecting wheel 48 at all. Now, if those two wheels pressed each other too strongly necessarily, when the third part of wheel 47 was connected with the concave curved part of wheel 38, a movement of 48 would be produced, and as I understand you, this was to adjust these parts. I remember very well

when I first saw a cut of this Geneva sprocket that I was very doubtful as to whether there would be absolute rest of wheel 48 while the curved part of wheel 47 was in contact with it. That however was before we tried it. There may have been something to justify my fear and that screw connection may have been to obviate it, that is to increase or diminish the distance between the two wheels.

XQ113. And to overcome this objection did Mr. Lauste suggest that a suitable means such as the eccentric bearing and adjustable pins should be provided?

A. I can't remember at this distance who suggested that.

XQ114. Do you think the chances are 100 to 1 that he did?

A. My memory is not clear on that point. I am inclined to believe myself that as the manufacture progressed it was I that suggested objections to the running of such parts as did not seem to me to run properly, and that then Lauste suggested a way of obviating the difficulty, and dismantled the machine and made the alterations. That was the general system under which we worked, that when an object was to be accomplished by a mechanical device and I could not myself suggest the mechanical device, I would take suggestions from Lauste.

XQ115. You did not consider this feature any part of your invention, did you?

Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial and as incompetent to this extent that the answer of the witness calls for a knowledge of how much advantage he is entitled to take as an inventor of the suggestions of 1688

the skilled mechanic employed by him to carry out his ideas.

Objection is made to this manner of prompting the witness by such statements which properly belong in a brief and should not be introduced at such a point in cross-examination. If the inventor is not the person to know whether a particular feature was his invention or not, it is difficult to try to know who is.

1691

Counsel for complainant will please refrain from discussing the legal deductions to be drawn at this time.

Counsel for complainant: Counsel for defendant has evidently lost sight of the province and privileges of counsel in asking a question which involves a point of law and in overlooking the fact that complainant's counsel is here to preserve as far as possible the legal rights of the inventor and the owner of the patent, and to make timely objections to interrogatories which call in question those rights.

1692

Counsel for defendant: Counsel for defendant has no objection to timely objections of the proper character as embodied in the first line of the objection, but it is quite clear that the question asked is entirely proper and is not asked for any legal opinion whatsoever, but merely to determine what this inventor considered to be his invention as distinguished from features which an attorney may of his own opinion decide to place in an application as what he believes to be the invention of the inventor.

Complainant's Counsel: And for this rea-

son I object to the question as incompetent as well as irrelevant and immaterial and as an objection to the competency of the question has no force unless the reasons for such incompetency are stated, I exercised my prerogative in stating those reasons. The fault I think is with counsel's question and not with the character of the objection.

Defendant's Counsel: The record will show the obvious relevancy and materiality to the question as well as its competency.

1694

A. I did.

XQ116. Do you know it was the suggestion of Mr. Lauste?

Same objection.

A. Yes, even though it was a suggestion of Mr. Lauste, employed by me to accomplish for me the necessary purpose.

XQ117. Because you believed that anything suggested by Mr. Lauste while in your employment and working for you could be filed in an application by yourself as patentee?

1695

Same objection.

A. Certainly I would if Mr. Lauste was my employed workman and the thing suggested by him and made by him subsequently was suggested and made to accomplish one of my own purposes previously explained to him.

XQ118. But that is not the situation. You testified that there was difficulty with the gear and that Mr. Lauste suggested this means of avoiding the difficulty.

Same objection and the attention of the Court is called to this line of cross-examination which is merely drifting into subleties of law rather than matters of fact.

Counsel for defendant stands on the record to show the necessity of this line of cross-examination, and its obvious bearing on the issues.

1697

A. With due submission I declare that I did not testify that I had difficulty with the gear, but that in the beginning there was doubt in my mind as to whether this Geneva stop would work efficiently. I stated that my memory was not very clear as to what occurred at the time, but it is possible that upon mounting the Geneva stop and trying it my objection was found to have been well founded and that I determined to abandon the Maltese cross and to adopt some other device to answer the same purpose unless the difficulty that had shown itself could be corrected. Now, whether I suggested the precise means of correcting the difficulty or Lauste suggested it I do not remember, but in either case as on honest man I should not have hesitated to claim the invention as my own.

1698

XQ119. In your former testimony, Q35, you stated that you went to the shop one morning and found Lauste and Kleinert standing together looking at a catalogue of the Boston Gear Works and one of them directed your attention to cuts in the catalogue and asked you if you thought one of them would answer your purpose, whereupon you stated that you did and then directed that the broken gear therein shown be ordered at once, and in your answer to XQ309 you state that not until

the time of the purchase of that gear had I resolved upon any special appliance for producing the intermittent movement. Is this testimony correct?

A. Perfectly so, according to my recollection.

XQ120. Then, as I understand the facts from your former deposition and from your present deposition, you had in mind prior to the time at which Lauste or Kleinert pointed out this particular broken gear, the fact that you intended to employ such suitable means for producing stop and start motion of the film, but that you had not determined upon any particular construction to accomplish this. Is this correct?

1700

A. Perfectly so, and I would like to explain what seems to be an inconsistency between that statement as to Kleinert and Lauste in a statement that I made yesterday to the effect that I had found the illustration in the Boston Gear Works illustrated price list, and that I had called the matter to their attention. I have no doubt that the prior statement was the correct one, but I remember perfectly well that for a number of days, how long I can't say, Lauste and Kleinert at my request, had been racking their brains to find out something suitable for the purpose and that I had written to a number of manufacturing concerns, the Boston Gear Works among them, and had already received a copy of the Boston Gear Works publication and had gone to the shop to tell Kleinert and Lauste of my discovery and ask them what they thought of this Geneva stop. From the earlier testimony I gave it seems that they got the Jockey word, but that it was in the discussion the question arose in my mind whether it was going to work as efficiently as it was finally made to do.

XQ121. Prior to this time, as I understand your former deposition, Mr. Dickson had suggested a stop mechanism to you or your sons and you had held out to him an offer of a considerable block of stock of your company if he should succeed in producing a suitable stop device. Is this rorrect?

1703

A. No, sir, absolutely incorrect. I never had any money dealings with Mr. Dickson in my life. I undertook to make this machine for the benefit of my sons. That fact I constantly impressed on them, for a long while I refused positively to accept any of the stock for myself. Whatever arrangements were made with Mr. Dickson were made by them because they had the liberty to make them. I remember that one of my sons came to me and told me that Otway had agreed to give one-fourth of the interest to Dickson and told me he thought it was too much. I said, "Oh, well, it is a small matter and if he does for you what Otway says he can and will do, one-fourth of the stock is cheap enough."

1704

XQ122. Then the facts were that your sons had offered a fourth of the stock to Dickson if he would produce a successful intermittently moving machine. Is this correct?

A. That was my understanding at the time.

XQ123. And with this object in view Mr. Dickson tried to perfect a stop device for the proposed machine?

A. He did not try to perfect such a device but to use a device that skilled mechanics were perfectly familiar with and that had been used successfully for similar objects. He didn't claim to have invented a device, it was an old thing.

XQ124. But he was unable to either adapt from

another art a suitable stop device for moving picture machines or to construct a suitable one himself, is this correct?

Objected to as calling for secondary evidence.

A. I can't say anything about Mr. Dickson's abilities, but I know as a matter of fact that no other arresting device but this one was ever suggested by him to me directly or indirectly. And that I never saw or saw anybody else that had seen the machine that my son Otway had told me that Dickson told him he had already at his home in Jersey. I want to say in Mr. Dickson's behalf that he was a very enthusiastic man and was very apt to confound what he was perfectly confident he could do with what he had already done.

1706

XQ125. He failed, however, under this offer, to produce for your sons an operating stop device for these machines?

Objected to as containing a statement of testimony that does not appear to be correct.

1707

Adjourned to Saturday, April 29, 1911, 11 A. M.

New York, April 29, 1911.

Met pursuant to adjournment. Present: Counsel as before.

Cross-examination of Mr. Latham continued:

Counsel for defendant believes that the statement of the testimony in his question is a correct one, as he understands it, but in order that there may be no misunderstanding of his question and what he intends thereby, he will state the testimony more at length.

XQ126. In answer to XQ122, you stated in substance that it was your understanding at the time, that your sons had offered a fourth of the stock to Dickson if he would produce a successful intermittent machine, and in answer to Q51, you state that Mr. Dickson suggested an arresting device, and in your former deposition you have testified that the stop device was a failure. It is correct then, is it not, that notwithstanding this offer of a fourth of the stock held out to Dickson by your son, to produce an intermittent machine for them, he failed to produce for your sons such a machine and failed to produce a suitable stop device for them?

A. In the preamble to the question just put to me it is stated that I testified at some time that Mr. Dickson suggested an intermittent device. That is not the fact. The facts are these: The information I had from my sons was that they, in the presence of their lawyer and Mr. and Mrs. Dicksen and their lawyer, had closed the contract with Mr. Dickson, to give them and the machinist Lauste full descriptions of an efficient machine that he had already invented and desired it understood at the time, had already put into bodily shape. Instantly, I backed out from any interference in the shop whatever, and my son Otway came to me and told me that Mr. Dickson had insisted that prior to his giving to them the description of his invention or the embodiment of it, that he should be permitted to try a certain stopping device and my son told me he had granted Dickson

1709

that privilege. To answer your question, I will say that I know the stopping device failed and that I never had any information going to show that Mr. Dickson had given to my son either the description or the embodiment of an effective machine for photographing movement.

XQ127. To your knowledge, did he ever give them a satisfactory stop device?

A. Never.

XQ128. Do you know whether or not during this time and for some time preceding this time, that Mr. Dickson was engaged in developing moving picture apparatus for Mr. Edison?

A. I do not.

XQ129. He was employed by Mr. Edison, was he not?

A. I was so informed by my sons and subsequently by Mr. and Mrs. Dickson themselves.

XQ130. Did Dickson ever convey to you the idea that he at that time had knowledge of Mr. Edison's intermittent stop device?

A. Never.

XQ131. Then from the time of your conception of this machine, until the time that you ordered the Boston Gear Stop movement, you were "casting around" for a suitable stop mechanism that could be satisfactorily operated in moving picture machines?

A. That is the fact.

XQ132. It was by no means apparent to you, was it, that any particular stop mechanism used in other arts could be satisfactorily adapted to this peculiar art?

Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial and also as incompetent in that it does not

1712

inquire for a material fact but a mere opinion of belief upon the part of the witness.

A. I do not think I understand the question. If you mean to ask me if it was apparent to me, that is, if I knew beforehand, that it would be possible for me to find an arresting device used in some other machine for some other purpose than the one I had in view, my answer is it was not apparent but as I had failed in my imaginings to hit upon anything that seemed to me suitable, I tried to find out if in other connections a stopping device had been used that promised to answer my expectations.

1715

XQ133. Various well known stop mechanisms that had previously been used in other arts are entirely unsuited to this particular art, are they not?

Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial and as calling for an opinion and not a statement of fact.

1716

A. At least one of them, I found in practice to be so nearly absolutely suitable that I adopted it. Its use originally, I have been informed, was by Geneva watchmakers, to prevent the overwinding of a watch and so came to be called "Geneva stop."

XQ134. Is that the stop movement ordered from the Boston Gear Works?

A. Yes, substantially. It is to be called to your attention that the driving roller of the two is sometimes placed within the driven roll, the teeth of the driven roller being made on its concave side and my impression, now that I have thought about it a great deal, is that the stop first got from Bostom Gear Works was of this kind. It is also my recollection that their catalogue showed one called by the same name, "Geneva Stop," with the driving

roller outside of the driven roller. Now, which one of these forms was employed by the Geneva watchmakers, I am sure I do not know but I know that the form I finally adopted was the one of the form last mentioned. In principle, they are precisely the same.

XQ135. And in operation, identically the same?

A. I notice the meaning of the word "identically" carefully and I am inclined to think that if we had found that the first form mentioned above acted for our purposes with perfect satisfaction to us, we never would have adopted the second form because the first form occupied smaller space, and of course, we wanted to make the machine of as small bulk as possible.

XQ136. Is your memory refreshed as to the true reason why the substitution of one form for the other was made, if I state that it was found that on account of the size of the gear ordered from the Boston Gear Works it was not put in the machine, but was tried on a temporary device at which time it was broken, and that it was cheaper to make the latter type which was finally adopted?

A. No more refreshed than it was when I gave my last answer.

XQ137. Prior to February, 1895, did you know of or had you heard of Mr. C. Francis Jenkins or Mr. Thomas Armat?

Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. I did not.

XQ138. Did you ever hear of or see a machine claimed to be made by either of these parties?

Same objection.

1718

1721

1722

A. A long time, how long I am unable to say, but after my pictures had been publicly shown for pay to probably a hundred or more thousands of people here in the City of New York and elsewhere, I heard of a machine that Jenkins and Armat claimed to have invented and still later, if I remember correctly, Mr. Dickson invited me to go with him, which I did, to Koster & Bial's Theatre, where he said I would see the pictures projected on a screen by this machine. I would like to add, that just now, when I used the expression "If I remember correctly" it was meant to apply only to the question whether Mr. Dickson invited me or not. Mr. Dickson was at the theatre with me and I believe one or two of my sons were there also. I still think Mr. Dickson invited me but I am not certain about that.

XQ139. Did you ever hear of a Mr. Chinnock, prior to February, 1895?

Same objection.

A. I cannot recollect that I ever heard of him before in my life.

XQ140. Did you, prior to February, 1895, ever see or hear of a moving picture camera made by Mr. Chinnock?

Same objection.

A. It seems to me that my previous answer includes answer to this question. I will say, however, that I and my attorney did and have done prior to the date mentioned, as well as subsequently, endeavor to find out who in the world had attempted to do what I was trying and copies of a

multitude of patents from this country and abroad were sent to us. There is a shadow of possibility that a patent may have come into our hands in the name of the man you have mentioned represented as a patentee but I cannot possibly recall the name now.

By Complainant's Counsel:

My attention has just been called to my failure to formally offer in evidence British patent 4841 of 1896, referred to in Q47 of the deposition of this witness. I now offer the same in evidence and will request that it be marked "Complainant's Exhibit Latham British Patent, 1896."

1724

XQ141. In answer to Q51, you state that you made at first one machine and one machine only, that this machine had an arresting device, and that the only machine you ever made with an arresting device was the machine known as No. 12 in your former deposition, and you further state that before completing this machine, a number of experiments had been tried in the shop with a number of temporary appliances, such as the arresting device suggested by Mr. Dickson, and in answer to Q45, where you were asked, if you had any projecting machines of your own make when you first used your taking machine, Exhibit No. 12, you stated that you had none perhaps, one or more temporary things set up for experimental purposes and in answer to Q46, you state that some of these were the continuous and others of the intermittent feed. Now, in order to get this matter right, I wish to know if the machine referred to as Exhibit No.

1727

12 was the first machine you ever had embodying means for forming the loop, together with intermittent mechanism for moving the film.

A. It was, if temporary devices are not included in the word "machine."

XQ142. What do you mean by temporary devices? simply stop mechanisms geared to a sprocket to intermittently move a film?

A. I mean or meant nothing in the world about

the movement of films but if, for example, I wanted to try a certain stopping device, we could easily, with our appliances in shop, set up a shaft bearing a wheel that we wished to start and stop at intervals and to set up in connection with this wheel the stopping device we intended to employ. In no ease, so far as my memory serves me, was it necessary for us to go to the extent of projecting this intermittent movement on a screen to enable to make up our minds whether a stopping device was suitable or not, because in every case there was a visible exhibition to us, that is, in every case where the stopping device was rejected, a quivering of the shaft that we desired to be absolutely still

1728

XQ143. About how many of these stop devices do you think you tried at that time prior to the final assembling of machine No. 12?

during stopping periods. Other features that we intended or wished to incorporate in a machine which is known in this examination as Exhibit No.

A. I don't know.

12 were tried in a similar way.

XQ144. Have you any idea at all on the subject?

A. No more idea that I have of the number of people I met this morning coming to the case here where my testimony is taken.

XQ145. In your present deposition, in answer to Q54, you stated that you were an invalid at the time that the swinging lamp was photographed and that you were confined largely to the house and had not been to the shop quite a considerable while. How long prior to this time, February 26, had you been ill?

A. My recollection is, that the answer of mine given heretofore about my physical indisposition, did not contain the positive statement by me that that physical indisposition covered any particular period marked by a certain doing in the shop except the night of February 26th, when the picture of a vibrating electric lamp was photographed. So far as the balance of the sickness is concerned, it extended over a considerable while. My recollection is that I referred to that as possibly a reason, not certainly, why I could not give certain definite information such as had been inquired of me. At any rate, if I did not so refer to it, I ought to have done so, because it is utterly impossible at this distance to remember clearly about the sickness period in its relation to anything that went on in the shop, except the photographing of the swinging electric light.

XQ146. In my last question, I quoted your exact testimony but I do not think that your answer is inconsistent with that, since I did not state that your sickness had covered any particular period, but that you testified that you were absent at that time and you had testified that the absence had been for a considerable period and in your last answer you state you do not know positively what that period was. Then in your answer to Q64, you stated that you told your son that you would prefer they got Dickson to direct Lauste but that you

1730

wanted your son Otway to be present at the interviews between Lauste and Dickson to see exactly how the cat was jumping. I infer from this testimony that you were absent from the shop for days at a time during the construction of this machine, Exhibit No. 12, and that the matter was left largely to your son, Lauste and Dickson. Please state what the facts are, in regard to this.

A. In answer to the first paragraph of the preamble to that question, I want to say that so long as my sons were waiting on Dickson, to make a machine for them, I purposely kept away from the shop. This statement of mine about the cat's jumping applied solely, exclusively, to the time when I was keeping my hands off and my sons were waiting for Dickson to carry out what they told me he had obligated himself to do for them. It had nothing in the world to do with the structure or the use of so-called Exhibit No. 12. So far as my absences from the shop at any time during the construction of the so-called Exhibit No. 12 are concerned, it is utterly impossible for me at this time to make any definite statement.

1734

1733

Adjourned to Monday, May 1, 1911.

New York, May 1, 1911.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present: Counsel as before.

Cross-examination of Mr. Latham continued:

By Mr. Ward: In view of the fact that the prior depositions of Netter and Lauste, which have been introduced by counsel for complainant were in the form of certified copies, it was taken for granted by me that when counsel for complainant offered in evidence the former deposition of Woodville Latham, it would also be in the form of a certified copy of said Latham's deposition and of his deposition only, separate from any other deposition. Since adjournment, I have learned from counsel for complainant that he intends that the former testimony shall be in the form of an alleged printed copy which appears to be the transcript of the record from the Commissioner of Patents to the Court of Appeals. In view of this, and without waiving the former objections on the record, the introduction of this deposition is additionally objected to on the grounds, first, that it is an unauthenticated copy of what purports to be a printed copy of the former deposition; secondly, on the ground that it is bound with other and extraneous matter, entirely irrelevant and incompetent in this case and which is entirely out of place in this record. It is to be noted in this connection that the witness has stated that he has not read this deposition and even if he had, it would not entitle complainant's counsel of the use of it in evidence.

By Mr. Page: In view of this sudden and highly technical objection made by defendant's counsel, I desire to call attention to the fact that under an understanding with former counsel for the defendant, which has been lived up to until the present time, 1736

neither side has heretofore been required to make formal proof of either patents, publications or depositions, offered in evidence in uncertified form and no objection having been made to this when it was offered, the objection is not considered as timely. Attention is also called to the fact that because the depositions of this witness and the two depositions of Otway Latham and Grey Latham, which were offered in evidence. happened to be contained in a bound volume of the transcript of record, it is quite immaterial and does not constitute a valid ground of objection because the other matters bound up in the same book are not in any way in the case. Now, I put the question directly to defendant's counsel whether in view of the circumstances of the case, and in view of the fact that he or his associate have used this record for some weeks now as a basis for cross-examination and he or his associate has stated that he has a copy of it, whether he intends to stand on this objection and to put me to the wholly unnecessary trouble and inconvenience of having this record certified by the Commissioner of Patents. Upon this answer will depend my future attitude towards defendant's counsel in similar matters.

1740

1739

By Mr. Ward: I am not aware of the precise terms of the understanding referred to but I do know that while copies of patents and publications have been admitted in evidence without being certified, I am not aware of the fact that any former deposi-

tions have even been attempted to be introduced into the case without first being certified and I may state further that it was at the instruction of former counsel for defendant, referred to, that this objection is made. As to statements by complainant's counsel, as to our possession and use of the record referred to, I can say for my part that I have never had such a record in my hands before that I know of and certainly not this purported copy, nor have I ever seen or heard of a copy of the record being in possession of my associate, until just now mentioned and I do not believe that he is in possession of any such copy. I have had access to and charge of what I believe to be papers relating to this case in our office and I know that I went to the expense of expending something like \$300 to obtain a typewritten copy of certain of these depositions from the Patent Office, so that I believe complainant's counsel is mistaken in his assertions and in view of the premises, I will stand on the objection made.

1742

1743

By Mr. Page: Counsel for defendant is notified here that this action is taken as a violation of previous understanding and agreements and that hereafter complainant's counsel will insist on the strictest compliance with the rules in regard to the certification of all patents, publications and other documents offered or to be offered by him or by his firm as evidence in this or other cases, in which complainant's counsel appears as a representative of one of the parties contesting.

By Mr. Ward: Counsel for defendant wishes to state that he does not consider the present objection any violation of an agreement to admit patents and publication un-It also appears that complainant's counsel has not considered that depositions come within whatever agreement was made, as shown from the fact that heretofore as far as I am aware, he has always introduced such depositions in the form of certified copies which it seems he would hardly have gone to the expense of doing if he thought it unnecessary. It is further stated that in view of this, counsel for complainant is expected to live up to his agreement and counsel for defendant feels that he has a perfect right to continue to introduce uncertified copies of the patent and publications in evidence with the same legal effect as if they were certified copies.

1746

1745

By Complainant's Counsel: The remarks of counsel seem to be childless and absurd. I had no copies of any deposition in the former Latham-Armat Interference, when I ordered from the Patent Office certified copies of the depositions of Lauste and Netter, the former of which does not appear in the transcript of record to the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia. Having these depositions at hand, they were offered in evidence.

I desire further to state that my agreement with Mr. John W. Munday was that neither side should be called upon to make specific proof by certification of matters that were a mere form and where failure to so prove was a mere matter of inconvenience. Whether Mr. Eyre intended to observe this agreement I cannot say, but I do know that I have repeatedly mentioned the matter to him when asked to admit uncertified copies and have repeatedly expressed the willingness to relieve him of the necessity of proving such papers when such proof was purely a matter of inconvenience.

By Mr. Ward: It is thought my remarks should be judged by the facts on the record and not by what may have been exclusively within the personal knowledge of complainant's counsel.

1748

By Mr. Ward: I note that counsel for complainant has recovered and introduced in evidence a great many of the paper exhibits of the former Interference and he is asked if he can also produce the former Latham exhibit introduced as Lauste Sketch of First Operative Machine.

1749

By Complainant's Counsel: I believe I have now offered in evidence every exhibit of any kind that was used in the former Interference, that is, at the present time, in existence. The history of the other exhibits will be proved by competent testimony at the proper time. At present, I have no other of these exhibits and know nothing of them whatever.

XQ147. Mr. Latham, was original machine No. 12, as built, in the form of a camera or a projecting machine?

A. It was finally, when we had determined for sufficient reasons not to use it for exhibiting pic-

tures, of course it was rigged with a photographing objective rather than with a projecting one. I remember no other changes that were made. Of course, there were certain parts that were arranged to guard against extraneous light, when we were using the machine to make pictures. This was not necessary when we were using it to project pictures.

XQ148. Did it have a horizontal slideway and a condensing lens to be used as a projecting machine?

1751

A. I don't recollect about slideway, but in using the machine for projecting a condenser was necessary.

XQ149. In the original machine as completed in March or April, 1895, was the apparatus arranged horizontally as shown in Fig. 1 of your patent?

A. I do not understand the question. All such apparatus is arranged horizontally in a sense, or nearly so. If I were to assert positively that the slideway was not included, I would not fear contradiction. There was only small use made of it as a projecting machine. We very early determined not to use it as a projecting machine and it would have been a most senseless thing to equip it with expensive appliances that are necessary only in a projecting machine.

1752

XQ150. Did you have to alter any of the parts in changing it from a machine for taking pictures into a machine for projecting pictures or vice versa?

A. One of the greatest difficulties we had was in finding a perfectly satisfactory objective for projection. For instance, the lenses ordered from Colt were quickly discarded. From the establishment of Bausche & Lomb, I was privileged, without cost to me, to try any objective they made no matter how expensive. Now, my impression is, that while we were trying to get a suitable objective a photograph was made of that swinging light heretofore referred to. I think I have already stated that a lens suitable for projecting would almost certainly be unsuitable for photographing and vice versa. My recollection is that we had no serious difficulty in obtaining suitable photographic lenses.

XQ151. In Q60 of your present deposition, you have testified that Netter made the Patent Office drawings of the application of the patent in suit from original machine, No. 12, and Mr. Netter in his deposition has also testified to that effect. Do you feel certain that the application drawings were made from this original machine, as stated?

A. If I was understood to testify so, with reference to so-called exhibit No. 12, I was understood incorrectly because the application to which reference has been made in the question, was not made until after my connection with the business had been absolutely settled. I remember to have made a general statement to the effect that Mr. Netter made drawings not of my ideas but of machines after they had been constructed. At the time this application was put in, exhibit No. 12 was in no sense mine or under my control.

XQ152. I do not see the responsiveness of your answer to my question. In Q60, you were asked if you knew whether the machine from which Netter made these drawings was the same machine that was tested by your son and Dickson, on February 26. In answer, you replied, "Mr. Netter made the drawings from what I have again and again called

1754

the original machine." Is this correct, as far as your present recollection goes?

A. In answering the last question, I did not think I had been so definite even as my answer to Q60 would seem to indicate, but notwithstanding the fact that the drawings in the patent in suit contain a multitude of things that I am almost absolutely sure of were not contained in exhibit 12. I still insist and the Patent Office would insist beyond a shadow of a doubt, that the two drawings in the patent in suit and the exhibit No. 12 were in all essential particulars identically the same machine, not something like one another but each one containing every essential part necessary to be employed in producing intermittent movement of the film and in forming one or two loops to prevent rupture of the film and for other purposes. So far as whether the drawings were made from exhibit No. 12 or some other machine. I don't know.

1758

1757

XQ153. In your former deposition, Q288, you stated that the patent drawings (speaking of the patent now in suit) were made from a machine substantially after the pattern of the original machine. Do you recall anything in regard to that?

A. I should not hesitate to make the same answer now as I made then.

XQ154. In answer to Q17 and 51 of your present deposition, you state that you had made one machine and one machine only embodying the intermittent feed, and in your former deposition in answer to XQ47 and I believe elsewhere, you stated that you made two other machines in the Fall of 1895, substantially identical with the machine exhibit No. 12. What have you to say in regard to this?

A. I stick to that original answer, in the former deposition.

XQ155. Your former deposition is correct then in this respect notwithstanding your most positive assertion in your present deposition in answer to Q51, "I made one machine and one machine only at first. * * * The first machine that I made with an arresting device and the only machine that I ever made with an arresting device was the machine referred to as Exhibit No. 12.

A. If you will only re-read the answer of mine that you have just read and substitute for the word "made" the word "invented" you will get my answer as I intended it to be.

XQ156. It is not my function to substitute words in your deposition. Do you mean to be understood that the answer to Q51 is not correct as it now reads, but should be as indicated in your last answer?

A. I mean nothing of the sort. What I meant can be understood from a remark or two I am about to make. It is in evidence that I made, that is, mechanics in my employ made, subsequently two other machines to work together for a special purpose. Now, I say, that if these two other machines could be proved to have included a stopping device other than the Geneva stop, which nevertheless worked efficiently, the three machines could be properly spoken of as being substantially-mind I mean by substantially, in every necessary particular-as made after one pattern. A man who had secured a patent on a machine including the Geneva stop, certainly could not get a patent on another machine including every feature of the machine with the Geneva stop except another

1760

stopping device instead of the Geneva stop. He might get a patent on the new stopping arrangement but couldn't get a patent on the whole machine. I would beg the privilege of adding the general remark, I do not believe that the drawings exhibited in the patent in suit contain a single feature, even down to the horizontal rod, that I myself did not invent. I read over the description and examined all the drawings carefully this morning early for the first time, certainly since the patent application was made, and I made the examination with almost the only purpose of finding out if there was anything in the drawings that have not been made by a mechanic or by mechanics employed and paid by me.

XQ157. Mr. Latham, your remarks on patent law and the question of invention are not responsive, to say the least, to my question. It is not in your present deposition that you made any machine other than Exhibit No. 12, containing an intermittent stop. You have distinctly testified that you made only one machine having an intermittent stop. I simply want to know as a matter of fact if you did not have two other machines embodying a stop mechanism as formerly testified to.

A. I certainly must have misunderstood the question, to which it is said I declared that I had made only one stop movement machine. Some considerable while after that was made, it was reported that there was to be a prize fight in Texas between two noted prize fighters of the day, and one of my sons suggested that it would be a good thing if we were to go down there and photograph that prize fight. It was his opinion and mine at the time, that there was no other machine in existence than mine that could do such long work.

1764

We made these two machines to stand side by side on one table and they were connected electrically in such a way that if in the progress of the work of photographing with one of them it should happen to break down, the pressing of a button on the table would instantly start the other. Each machine carried, if my recollection serves me, an abundance of film for photographing a fight as long as the longest in duration that anybody imagined this Texas fight could be. As a matter of fact, the fight didn't come off. My son, Grey Latham, who had Lauste with him, then proceeded to the City of Mexico and photographed a bull fight specially arranged for him by President Diaz, to whom he had taken letters of introduction and the length of film photographed was about feet long, sent in dark boxes Mexico to New York. The boxes were opened by the Wells, Fargo Express Co. on the border and half of the film was ruined by the light admitted. The other half, about 2,500 feet, was shown to thousands and thousands of people in a building that stood on the ground where the St. James Building now stands.

1766

1767

Recess.

XQ158. In your former testimony, in answer to Q489, you stated that "it is true that a patent had been granted to Mr. Edison for such an appliance (speaking of a projecting machine) but that the drawing represents what is absolutely impossible in optics." Do you know whether or not that patent showed a machine with an intermittent or a continuous feed device?

A. I recollect nothing in the world about it, except that as you ask the question, I remember that I had on a number of occasions made similar remarks about Mr. Edison's patent and I am absolutely certain that I had answered the question as I am reported to have done. I should say, however, that I cannot at this moment recollect having ever seen a patent given to Mr. Edison or an application made by him for a patent on a machine including an arresting device.

1769

AQ159. You were familiar at this time, namely, in the fall of 1894, with Edison kinetoscope?

A. Not the inside of it. I am not sure at that time whether I had ever seen one of the kinetoscope exhibitions. My present impression is that I never saw the outside even, of this kinetoscope till my two sons began to use the kinetoscope in exhibiting pictures. Even then I had no curiosity to see into the machine because it was a continuously moving machine and I think I have said more than once that we never had any difficulty in constructing the projecting machines, except difficulty in getting suitable lamps and suitable objectives. Of course, I am speaking from memory.

1770

XQ160. As I understand it, your sons had these kinetoscopes which you mention in the summer of 1894, and as I understand it, it was at one of these exhibits that you decided that more than one person at a time should be able to see the pictures. Do I understand that you never saw these exhibits that your sons gave?

A. I don't know what your understanding was but I will tell you what the facts are. That a very few days after my sons began their exhibition at No. 83 Nassau Street, my conversation with my son Otway Latham, about making a projecting machine, was had and I have testified a few moments ago that even after I had agreed to make a projecting machine for my son, I did not look into Edison's machine to see how it was made, first, because it was not a projecting machine, and second, because I felt such entire confidence in my ability to keep my promise to my son, that I did not want even them to think, after I had kept my promise, that I was beholden to Mr. Edison or anybody else.

XQ161. Where did you get your information that the kinetoscope machines contained sprocket wheels?

A. From having had scraps of the broken film shown to me by my sons.

XQ162. Referring to your former answer to Q49, you would not have made the statement that the drawings of Edison's projecting machine represented what is impossible unless you had seen the patent, would you?

A. I was mistaken just now in saying that I had never seen a patent drawing of a machine including an arresting device made by Mr. Edison and purporting to be suitable for projecting The testimony I gave in pictures on a screen. 1897 was in matters where mere memory is concerned, more reliable, perhaps than my memory of things to-day, 16 or 17 years later is. said then of a patent application of Mr. Edison's that I had seen that it was impossible in optics, I said what I knew to be a fact and if I could see the same drawings to-day, I am absolutely sure that any physicist of respectability would endorse my opinion. The probability is that if a patent was subsequently given to Mr. Edison, it was based on drawings very different from what I saw.

1772

XQ163. In testifying in regard to the different elements of your machine as being suggested by you or by Lauste, you stated in answer to XQ103 that "It was a long time before he had the slightest conception of the machine as a whole," and in answer to Q104, in mentioning the probable manner of giving instructions to Lauste, you state that instructions were given in this way until gradually the purpose of the machine which he was utterly ignorant of in the beginning began to dawn on him. How long do you think it was after Lauste started actual work on your machine No. 12, before he had a full conception of the construction you had in mind?

1775

A. God only knows.

XQ164. Have you no idea at all?

A. Absolutely none at all, not any more than I have of how many wagons have passed this window in the last hour.

XQ165. In answer to XQ309 of your former deposition, you state that "I think I have also testified as to the circumstances under which for something like two months, namely the months of November and December, 1894, Mr. Dickson had been employed by my sons to construct such an apparatus as they desired" * * *; and you have testified in your present deposition, XQ146, that so long as your sons were waiting on Dickson to make a machine for them you purposely kept away from the shop. Is it a fact then, that while Dickson was having these experiments conducted or was conducting them himself during this period mentioned, you did not suggest any ideas of yours or supervise the construction of apparatus according to your ideas?

A. When I said I purposely kept away from the shop I did not intend it to be understood that I never went to the shop because I did go occasionally but I considered myself at that time merely an outsider. I knew Dickson intimately. even possible that I may have commented as friend to friend on the stopping device he was trying to make work, that was the only thing, according to my recollection, that he experimented with in the shop. Whether the period lasted two months or two weeks or two days, I do not know but any testimony as to length of time and sequence of events that I gave in 1897 was more apt to be reliable than anything I say from memory now.

1778

XQ166. Work on the construction of your machine, that is, work directed to the carrying out of your ideas as embodied in your original machine was then commenced after Dickson's experiments were concluded. Is this correct?

1779

A. According to my best recollection, it is very incorrect, because there were certain parts of the machine, the supports for example, that all of us knew would be used, whether one device or another should be adopted for arresting the movement of the film. Dickson did not always need Lauste's services. A good many parts of the machine were made outside and according to my best recollection, at the time when I took hold and Dickson withdrew, every part of the machine had been devised and settled upon and most of them probably had been made except the stopping device.

XQ167. How is it in answer to XQ146, you state that so long as your sons were waiting on Dickson

you purposely kept away from the shop and that you were keeping your hands off at this time and your sons were waiting for Dickson to carry out what your sons told you he had obligated himself

A. If what I said just now is true, that from the very beginning my son Otway Latham and myself had determined that certain parts of the machine

to do for them?

had to be made so and so, no matter what stopping device might be adopted, bear in mind that when Mr. Dickson began to experiment with a stopping device, I was already acquainted with it, that from the very beginning I was absolutely certain that it would fail to answer our purposes, that I so stated to my son Otway, that I said to him "Of course, Dickson has the privilege of using Lauste all the time he pleases but as a matter of fact he is doing a good deal of his experimentation according to what you tell me, without Lauste's assistance and it is of the highest importance that we shall waste as little time as possible. Therefore, my advice to you is.

1782

1781

vice or another stopping device he adopted. I do not myself believe, and he replied that he did not believe that Mr. Dickson had any machine over in Orange already devised or possibly made to answer the purposes we had in view. We did not believe that Dickson had deliberately lied but we were satisfied he had imagined impossibilities.

that you have Lauste make or ordered made outside all the parts of the machine that you and I know

are already decided on, whether one stopping de-

XQ168. In answer to present XQ74, you testified that Lauste never made mechanical drawings of his work and that he didn't know to do it. How is it that in your former deposition in answer to XQ141, in speaking of drawings of machines you

were then building, you stated that "prior to the time when the shop passed out of our control, I frequently saw such drawings in the possession of Eugene Lauste, the mechanic who made them."

A. I never in my life saw a mechanical drawing made by Lauste, that is, what a mechanic would call a mechanical drawing. The only thing in the shape of a drawing that could by any possibility have been claimed as his, were miserable little sketches which I made for him from time to time because he couldn't understand my English and which he made for himself, but at this time, when my connection with the business was broken, I had with me working with Lauste, a man by the name of Wiet who was a most accomplished mechanical draughtsman and he had a multitude of drawings, my recollection is, relating to my affairs which passed out of his possession precisely as my interests slipped into other hands. Any answer I have made heretofore about mechanical drawings referred to Wiet drawings, not to Lauste. Wiet told me that though he had worked in various shops in different parts of the world, he had never before come across a mechanic who like Lauste, did such superb work without the help of working drawings and it seemed strange to him that Lauste, in his apprentice days had not learned to make make working drawings and to work by them.

XQ169. In your former deposition, rebuttal Q17 referring to drawings which Lauste had made of original machine No. 12, you state that those drawings were made by Lauste under my direction a long while after the machine they represented had been constructed and used.* * * They were made

1784

* * * solely because I was afraid that the building in which the machine was kept for the most part might be destroyed by fire." Would you have asked a man who was only capable of making miserable little pencil sketches to make for you complete drawings, such as would perpetuate the construction of a completed machine of so great importance?

1787

A. I have never stated here or anywhere else that Mr. Lauste was incapable of making anything else or better than the "miserable little pencil sketches," nor have I stated here or anywhere else that within my knowledge Mr. Lauste ever did make for me either a working drawing or a mechanical drawing. What he did make at my suggestion was such a picture of the machine as would keep him in mind of what the machine was so that if the building should happen to burn up, he would be able to recall to mind just how the machine had been made. I did not expect him to make a drawing that I would understand but one that he would understand and my recollection is that he had to do a great deal of explaining to me before I could get anything like a description in my mind as I wanted him to preserve in his own.

1788

XQ170. Did you not consider this a mechanical drawing?

A. I certainly did not, and I doubt if a skilled mechanic who had no knowledge of what I had been doing could have known from Lauste's drawing, how to make Exhibit No. 12.

XQ171. I have previously shown you the sketch introduced in this case, marked Complainant's Exhibit Lauste Sketch. Do you not consider it a mechanical drawing?

A. No, and no mechanic would so consider it. That was intended by him some fifteen years after the machine had been constructed, to show some few of the essential features.

XQ172. Is this what you would term "a miserable pencil sketch?" (showing witness the "Lauste sketch" above mentioned).

A. According to my recollection this sketch is a more pretentious one than Lauste ever made for me or I ever made for him, in our efforts to understand one another, but in comparison with a mechanical drawing properly so-called or a working drawing, properly so-called, I wouldn't hesitate to characterize this as a miserable pencil sketch.

XQ173. Was the drawing Lauste made and which was introduced in your former interference a drawing more comprehensive than this?

A. My recollection is that it was greatly more comprehensive. Of course he introduced in it, as well as he could, every feature of the machine that he thought he might possibly forget and I have no doubt that Lauste himself would have been surprised if anybody had told him that if he and the building happened to be burned up together, that we would be utterly unable to produce the machine. At any rate I felt perfectly certain at the time that unless I kept the general features of the machine in mind, that Lauste's drawing would be of no assistance to me.

XQ174. In your former rebuttal dsposition in answer to Q22, you state that "The elaborateness of the drawing is a clear indication that it could not have been made in two hours by a sick man, sitting upon his couch" (to which I may say Lauste had never testified as to having so made the drawing) and in answer to Q25, you state: "Immediately after going to Beekman Street I pur-

1790

chased a fine drawing table and other appliances for the use of the draughtsman, and my belief is that these drawings and tracings were made some considerable while after our removal in the Beekman Street shop." And in answer to Q23, you state that the drawings were made up on two sheets of paper. In view of this do you still contend that those were not mechanical drawings?

1793

A. The drawing table and all the instruments for drawing were made on the request of Mr. Wiet for Mr. Wiet's use and were never within my knowledge used by Mr. Lauste. My recollection is that Mr. Lauste either did testify that he made these drawings as he lay propped up on one arm on his bed where he was sick. If he did not so testify, he certainly said so at the time, in presence of witnesses. Now, see the inevitable inference. Mr. Lauste never had a bed in Beekman Street. He did have a bed in the shop for himself and son in Frankfort Street. It is perfectly obvious that that drawing was made in Frankfort Street, and to me, at least, it is obvious, that it was a complete machine then except in so far that it lacked a suitable projecting lens.

1794

XQ175. Since you have quoted your impression of Mr. Lauste's testimony, I will state that notwithstanding the fact that you and your attorney, in the former deposition, put that interpretation upon it, Mr. Lauste did not testify that he made these drawings upon a sick couch but that the previous sketch which he claims to have made, I believe in November, was made on his couch, when indisposed. Did you not intend to convey the impression in answering Q25 of your former deposi-

tion, that the drawing showed that Lauste utilized your board and instruments in making them?

Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. It is doubtless a fair inference from my answer to Q25 of my former deposition. Prior to leaving the Frankfort Street shop, the question of Lauste's ability or inability to make mechanical drawings and working drawings had never come up. I only discovered what his abilities in that line were and what his practice was after I had gone to the Beekman Street place and had employed Wiet. Where I expected that Lauste would be able to use the drawing table or not, I am unable to remember, but I quickly found after I had got the drawing apparatus that he knew nothing about their use and to my recollection, he never did use the drawing appliances at all. All mechanical drawings, all working drawings were made by Wiet. The drawings that were made by Lauste, to save us from harm in case the building burned down, were made in the Frankfort Street shop, and I have not the slightest hesitation in swearing that Lauste apologized for the rudeness of the drawings by saying that he had made them in two hours as he was reclining on his sick bed, so that, as I said just now, the conclusion is obvious, unmistakable, that Exhibit No. 12 was so far completed in the Frankfort Street shop as that Lauste undertook to make a drawing of it that would save us from loss, in his opinion, in case of fire.

Adjourned to Thursday, May 4, 1911, at 11 A. M.

1796

New York, May 4, 1911.

Met pursuant to adjournment. Present: Counsel as before:

Cross-examination of Mr. Latham continued:

XQ176. In answer to my last question, when I asked if you did not intend to convey the impression that the instruments were used by Lauste, you stated that "it is a fair inference from my former deposition." Now, isn't it more than an inference? Did you not intend to be understood as so testifying?

A. What I can say is this: The drawing apparatus was purchased for the use of Mr. Wiet, after Mr. Wiet came into my employ. I think perhaps that in the previous answer I have too roundly stated Lauste's inability to use the drawing apparatus. I have no recollection that he ever did. There was never a suspicion in my mind at any time that Lauste used the drawing apparatus. When I said it was a fair inference I meant that it was an inference that people would make who did not know the circumstances. I certainly did not intend to convey the impression that the drawing instruments were used by Lauste because I never heard of his using these instruments, never saw him use them and had the impression that he did not know how to use them. Possibly, however, this impression was an erroneous one.

XQ177. Did you not in your former deposition, cite the fact of the purchase of these instruments while at the Beekman Street shop as showing that these drawings were made by Lauste after you had moved there?

1799

Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. I think not. I certainly did not intend to.

XQ178. Then what did you mean by the statement that "I purchased a fine drawing table and other appliances for the use of the draughtsman and my belief is that these drawings and tracings were made some considerable while after our removal in the Beekman Street shop."

A. I meant precisely what I said. The draughtsman referred to was a man by the name of Wiet and not a man by the name of Lauste.

XQ179. But you admitted that the drawings in question there were drawings made by Lauste.

Same objection.

A. I do not remember admitting any such thing. I only know this, that I directed Lauste to make some drawings for me, that he gave me some drawings afterwards and a blue print copy of them but my recollection as to the character of the drawings or the elaborateness of them is such or so slight, I should say, that I do not know whether I suspected Lauste of getting assistance in the work or not. If I have just spoken of them as Lauste drawings—as things made by Lauste—that must not be taken to indicate that at any time since I first became acquainted with Lauste I have believed in his ability to make working drawings as distinguished from a mere sketch of an object, like a tree or a house or a bush.

XQ180. Now that you say your memory has been refreshed by reading your former deposition as to these drawings, do you still contend that they were not mechanical drawings?

1802

A. I am bound most respectfully to deny that my memory has been refreshed, nor have I given it as anything but a vague impression that remains with me that it was nothing but a crude sketch of a machine already completed. If I had access to those drawings to-day and were to find that they could with any sort of propriety be called working drawings, I should certainly in the absence of other proof and Lauste's own words strongly doubt that he had made them without assistance, but as I am just as anxious as Defendant's Counsel that the whole truth shall appear, Mr. Wiet is living, I know him to be an honorable man, I would take Mr. Wiet's word at any time against vague impressions of things that occurred some years ago when he had the same opportunity or a better opportunity than I had of knowing who it was that made the drawings.

> Mr. Ward: In justice to myself, in view of the witness's denial that his memory has been refreshed, I feel duty bound to state that unless I was dreaming when the witness entered the room this morning, he stated that since adjournment he had read over former depositions and found the drawings more pretentious, parts lettered, etc., which he did not previously recall.

> The witness states there was absolutely nothing in that circumstance to refresh my memory as to what the drawings really were. There was the one circumstance that either on direct or cross-examination, Lauste was directed to take a drawing which I understood to be the drawing he claimed to have made on my order and to

1806

point out in that drawing what certain things represented and was told that whenever an inquiry was made of him as to a part of the drawing he should mark that point by a letter of the alphabet, and I don't know how I got the impression whether there or in some other of the papers I have read this morning, that some six or eight letters were used.

XQ181. In answer to XQ175 you state positively that these drawings were made in the first shop (Frankfort Street) and that you haven't the slightest hesitancy in swearing that Lauste apologized for their crudeness, saying he made them while sick in bed. Why are you so willing to testify and swear positively as to this?

A. I didn't say I was willing to swear they were made in the Frankfort Street shop. I said I was willing to swear that Lauste apologized for their crudeness or their defects by telling me that he had made them in two hours as he half reclined on his bed. Now, he had no bed in the Beekman Street building. He himself testified that he got out of bed where he had been sick and went to a table and made the drawings and I feel as sure today as I feel of anything that has occurred within my knowledge 16 years ago, that the drawings were made in the Frankfort Street shop where there were certainly no facilities for making drawings that could serve as a safe guide to a workman who wanted to reproduce a machine.

XQ182. Then, why in your former deposition, in answer to rebuttal Q25, did you state that these drawings and tracings were made some consider1808

able while after our removal in the Beekman Street shopt

A. If I so testified, it was either because my memory failed me or else because I drew improper inferences from the things that had been put into my mind and I think troubles of that sort occurred with me oftener than they would have occurred in this examination if counsel would make his questions not so long and not try to include so many things in them. My mind lacks the agility it once had.

1811

1812

XQ183. But Mr. Latham, the testimony I have just quoted is testimony given by you in 1899, when your mind apparently did not lack agility and when things were fresh in your memory as they obviously are not now.

A. I am in most cases much inclined to the conclusion or to the belief that anything I said in the Interference suit would be rather more trustworthy than what I might say to-day regarding the same matter, but I came to the examination to-day so thoroughly convinced, so absolutely sure that the drawings were made in the Frankfort Street shop that I do not think any evidence could be produced to change the impression I now have. I have heard this morning Mr. Lauste's testimony for Castler, that he got up from his bed in the Frankfort Street shop which somewhere else he declared I had purchased for his comfort, and that he had gone from that bed to a table in the room and had made the drawings at that table.

XQ184. Then you have such faith in Mr. Lauste's testimony that you accept it over your former deposition?

Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial and as calling for a wholly inconclusive opinion.

A. That, in my opinion, is not a just inference from what I have said.

XQ185. Your present flat contradiction of your former testimony is based, you have said, on reading Mr. Lauste's former deposition, is this not so?

The question objected to as an unfair statement of fact and as calling for an inconclusive and irrelevant answer. The testimony speaks for itself and I protest against Counsel placing upon it a construction to suit his own purpose.

1814

By Mr. Ward:

The record shows the flat contradictory character of the two depositions in this respect and I wish to know what the witness is basing his present belief on.

By Counsel for Complainant:

1815

I deny that the testimony does show a flat contradiction notwithstanding the view of it which Defendant's Counsel entertains and I suggest that Counsel confine himself to asking questions and refrain from stating alleged facts or conclusions particularly on controverted points.

A. I stand on the record.

XQ186. Is this all the answer you care to give?

A. Absolutely all.

XQ187. Mr. Latham, I think you are entirely mistaken about your belief that Mr. Lauste ever testified that he made these drawings in question while he was sick, but he did testify that he made other drawings earlier than this, I believe in December while sick and when in the Frankfort Street shop. Now, if I am correct, do you still positively believe that the drawings we have been discussing were made in the Frankfort Street shop?

1817

A. As Mr. Lauste, according to my direct testimony, as well as on cross-examination, never made for me or gave me but one drawing properly so-called, that is, the drawing of the machine known as Latham Exhibit No. 12, I inferred from reading Lauste's testimony this morning that the question put to him and answered by him could not by possibility refer to anything else but the drawing of Exhibit No. 12.

1818

XQ188. To put the question in another way, and avoid the contention as to how many drawings Lauste made, I will ask you if your statement in answer to XQ175 as to Lauste's apology for these drawings and their having being made while sick, is not based on your belief that the drawing in question is the one that Lauste testified to having made while sick?

A. I don't know what the drawing in question means. If Counsel means to ask me if my impression that Lauste in his testimony in the Interference case, to which reference has been made, referred to Exhibit 12, has had something to do or all to do with putting into my mind the thought that I had in regard to Lauste's apologizing to me, &c., I answer, in my opinion, no.

XQ189. I judge from your present deposition that you did not mean to convey the impression in your former testimony that Lauste could not make such an assembled drawing as would disclose any ideas he might have had, but that your contention was rather, that he could not make "working" or "mechanical" drawings in the strict sense of the term. Is this correct?

A. I think I can say, with the eye of Great God on me, that I never in my life, from my childhood up, have tried by making remarks or answering a question, to produce an impression other than what I thought the words I uttered necessarily would produce. I meant and have meant by everything I have said about Mr. Lauste's ability, that he never at any time during his connection with me, gave me the shadow of a reason to believe that he could make such a drawing (whether properly called a working drawing or not) as would enable a skilled workman to reproduce the machine after it had been completed.-That is-a workman not having already some general notion, at least, of what the machine was. For example, suppose Lauste had already made his drawing for me (which he did make on my order) shortly after Kleinert came into my employ and before Kleinert had had an opportunity to study the machine, and that immediately after this, the machine had got burnt up, my general impression is, that Mr. Kleinert, skilled mechanic as he is, would have been unable to reproduce the machine relying upon those drawings alone and not on information given him by Lauste, myself and my son, verbally.

XQ190. Is it a fact that when you asked Dickson to recommend a mechanic to you, you did not acquaint him with the purpose for which you wished the mechanic?

1820

A. I may have told him in a general way, I don't recollect. He had so little knowledge of such things that I think it would have been impossible for a considerable while after he came into my employ for me to give him a clear notion of what he was to do, except in parts. He had been recommended to me by Mr. Dickson as being nothing more than a man skillful with tools. Dickson never intimated to me in his life that Lauste was a man with such knowledge of the general principles underlying such apparatus as that he could make a machine suitable for photographing pictures after general directions given.

1823

XQ191. Who employed Lauste at first, you or Dickson?

A. I did, on Dickson's suggestion, who had told my son that he had a machine he had already made or fully conceived, and that Lauste was a mechanic so skilled that we could not get a better man for our purpose. It is to be borne in mind that when the shop was rented and machinery bought afterwards and all arrangements were made for manufacturing a machine we had in view, that the expectation of my sons and of myself was that Dickson would make the machine or have it made by Lauste and that I should never have the opportunity of posing as an inventor of any such thing.

1824

XQ192. Mr. Dickson states (barring the condenser experiment at Columbia College) "neither by word or action did I have anything to do with their work," referring to you and your sons? Is it true or not?

A. It is not true, and I should like to remind Counsel that at Columbia College, according to my best recollection, there was never any experiment with condensers, but with objectives rather. XQ193. Mr. Dickson states that when he disclosed his clock stop mechanism to you, he didn't have the slightest intention that you should use it for your work, and that while you seemed to jump at the conclusion that it would be most useful, he pointed out to you that he fancied it would be too slow. Is this true or not?

A. I do not know, but I do not believe a syllable of it.

XQ194. Mr. Dickson states, in speaking of your original machine No. 12, that he particularly avoided examining the same until he received an invitation from you to come over as quickly as possible and examine it, referring to the time of the swinging light episode. Is this true or not?

A. I do not know, but I do not believe a syllable of it. I should be glad to add here that it is very much against my disposition to speak ill of a man when the great ocean lies between us and when we will probably never come together again and when if we did, as young a man as he is, would not think of resenting an insult from a man as old as I am, by physical force, and ordinarily I think the course I am taking now in these answers that I have been giving would be cowardly on my part in the extreme, I cannot help believing that where these statements of Dickson's seem to conflict with statements of mine, that there has been some misunderstanding, somewhere, but I think it might be proved, if necessary, not only that Mr. Dickson from the beginning of the undertaking to the end of his connection with me made very frequent visits to me, not only to the shop, but to my room in the Bartholdi Hotel, and that he always came, according to his own admission, in fear that Edi1826

son somehow or other would discover what he was doing.

By Mr. Ward: Mr. Latham, I regret that this line of cross-examination is distasteful to you, but Mr. Dickson has made many statements which are inconsistent with your former disposition and which at least in some cases, seem unbelievable, and these statements were made by him believing that the lips of you and your sons were sealed and that there was no one to contradict his remarks. I simply wish to have you state whether or not these statements are true.

By Counsel for Complainant: All of this proceeding is very wide of the mark and totally unnecessary and irrelevant. The province of the cross-examiner is to ascertain facts and he is at full liberty to do so in the proper way. If there was or is personal animosity between this witness and Mr. Dickson, the Court is not concerned with that fact and it is hoped the cross-examination will be confined to properly ascertaining the correctness or incorrectness of statements made by Dickson without any reference to the understanding that he may have had in making them or the circumstances under which they were made.

By Counsel for Defendant: I think the remarks of Counsel for Complainant are entirely uncalled for in view of my understanding with him and I can assure him that my examination of this witness will be limited solely to ascertaining the truthful-

1829

ness of the facts testified to by Mr. Dickson which I believe it is my province to do.

XQ195. Is it true that you assisted in forcing stock of your company on Dickson which he persistently refused?

A. Absolutely no, it is not the fact. I never forced any stock on him and never gave him any stock, and never gave anybody stock for him, Congar Brown or anyone else, and I have so testified over and over again. I should like, however, to remark in reply to an expression used just now by Complainant's attorney, as to animosity between myself and Mr. Dickson. There was a time when I thought Dickson had not dealt with me very fairly and for awhile I was indignant. Since that time, I have never seen Dickson and I can say without the slightest hesitation that in my heart now, there is not one particle of animosity towards him.

XQ196. Is it a fact that Dickson was not aware of the construction of your camera while it was being built and that the showing of the complete camera was forced upon him?

A. I think I said just a very few minutes ago that such a statement was absolutely false. I say the same thing now, but what my sons did, I do not know, except from their testimony which is on record and from what they told me. It was they that had raised almost all the money that was employed in this enterprise. It was Otway Latham who some days after I had offered to direct the manufacture of such a machine as he and his brother wanted, came to me and told me that they could save me the trouble because Dickson had already at least devised, I understood at the time that he had made a machine that would accom-

1832

1835

plish the purpose, and that while he and his brother had not as yet secured from Dickson any positive promise that he would put in that device of his, they felt assured that Dickson was so dissatisfied with his position with Mr. Edison that he would eventually leave Mr. Edison and come to them. That Dickson had not refused to sever his connection with Mr. Edison but had said that he would have to consider the matter in all its value, but that meanwhile after a suitable shop had been secured as well as suitable machinery, he would come over, my impression is, he said two or three times a week, and direct Lauste. Now, of course under those circumstances, I did not feel like Still, when Mr. Dickson came to my meddling. private quarters, as he frequently did, in the course of general conversation, I think it more than likely, that I told him, as I had told my son, my notion of how the machine ought to be built. Now, if anybody will read Otway Latham's testimony given in the Interference suit, he will see again and again and again statements by Otway of what he did, and one would suppose very naturally, looking at that testimony, that he was the man of the concern that absolutely controlled me, his brother, Dickson and Lauste and the whole kit.

1836

Recess.

XQ197. Mr. Dickson has testified that during your visits to him and his visits to you, your constant refrain was "Come with us, work with us, I will make your fortune." What have you to say to that?

A. Well, I should say that if Mr. Dickson said these things, he was simply confounding me with my sons. I have never been one of those men who believes that there are certain fortunes in any enterprise such as we were involved in, all the importuning, if there was any, was done by my sons, and all know about their interviews with Mr. Dickson, except such as occurred when I happened to be present, came from their statements to me. I have no doubt they were extremely anxious to have Mr. Dickson's services as I was.

XQ198. Referring to a conversation between you and himself, Dickson states that "we discussed a curious movement that I had noticed in an old clock, which Mr. Latham jumped at and tried." This is not so, is it?

A. I have no recollection of it. It may be true. One would very naturally hit upon the escapement of a clock or watch as a thing promising to be thoroughly efficient as an arrester, in the movement of the film, but I don't remember if I tried it or not.

XQ199. This was not the stop movement that you testified Dickson himself had tested out in your laboratory?

A. Not according to my recollection. Something, however, on a similar principle in the escapement as a projection from one arm of a vibrating lever that drops between two teeth of an ordinary gear wheel. The gear wheel can't move as long as the point at the end of the lever was between two of its teeth. As soon as that point is lifted the gear wheel moves again, and so on. My recollection is that in the thing that Dickson tried, there was a gear wheel and a bar moving backwards and forwards perpendicular to the face of the wheel. This bar would move in one direction,

1838

get in between two of the teeth of the wheel and stop its revolution, and in moving in the opposite direction, get away from the gear wheel and so the gear wheel would resume its motion. I may be mistaken, but that is my impression.

XQ200. Then, is it correct that when Dickson recommended Lauste to you, Dickson knew that it was the intention of you and your sons to develop a moving picture camera and that he had stated that he had a machine or ideas of a machine which Lauste was to experiment on?

1841

Objected to as a double question calling for a mixed statement of opinion and fact.

A. The thing was disclosed to Mr. Dickson by my sons and they wanted Mr. Dickson to see me and I explained to him more fully what we proposed to do. My recollection is that Mr. Dickson never said to me anything about this machine of his that he was holding in reserve. All that I knew about that, I think, came from my sons. Lauste was not employed by me, at Mr. Dickson's suggestion to experiment on anything that Mr. Dickson had.

1842

XQ201. When was it that you explained to Dickson thoroughly what you wanted to do, at the time you employed Lauste?

A. My recollection is that it was long before the renting of a shop, buying of machinery and employment of Lauste. In other words, long before we had made a beginning.

XQ202. And Dickson knew at this time that you wanted to develop a camera?

A. I have already so stated.

XQ203. You have testified in answer to Q53 that Eastman had to experiment to some extent before

he could assure himself that he "could make for me the kind of film I had called for." Did you receive any letter from the Eastman Company in reply to your order?

A. I did.

XQ204. Have you got that letter now?

A. I have it, found it last night or this morning, I forget which, in one of two boxes I have containing all my papers. While I was searching for that drawing of Lauste on two sheets of brown paper of which so much had been said. I produce the letter herewith.

1844

The letter produced by the witness is offered in evidence and marked as exhibit Complainant's Exhibit Eastman letter. B. B. Exr.

XQ205. Why did you want the film thicker than the film used in the kinetoscope at that time?

A. For the very obvious reason that I thought it would be less apt to break, and this proved to be the fact. It will be observed that I ordered at the same time about 2000 feet of film of the same thickness as Edison's but wider, because I was in a hurry to use the machine with wide sprocket wheels which I judge now was then ready for the film. Experimentation previously had been made with small scraps of the film used in Edison's kinetoscope.

XQ206. You stated that you replied to Mr. Edison's interview in the newspaper clipping introduced in evidence, wherein he charged that you were infringing his rights and that he had such a machine as you had disclosed to newspaper men.

What was your reply?

A. In the first place, I shall have to deny flatly that I made any such statement. The record shows what I stated. I replied in substance that I did not think Mr. Edison would have made such a remark if he had remembered how indebted he was to other people for credit given to him for inventions of one kind or another but that as to his threat of a suit against me for fraud in the contingency mentioned, it was simply puerile.

Cross-examination closed.

1847

Re-direct Examination:

RDQ207. You expressed a desire during your cross-examination, a few days ago, to correct some statement that you had made in your previous testimony. Will you now make such a statement as you wish?

A. My recollection is that it was in reference to

a question whether projecting machines with continuously moving film had been constructed prior to the completion of exhibit 12 and that I stated that such projecting machines had not been completed prior to the completion of exhibit 12. Recalling a number of circumstances to my mind, I have convinced myself that I made a gross mistake. I am certain now that at least one machine was completed and that some four others were at least far on the way to completion at the time exhibit 12 was completed. It was impossible for work to be done on exhibit 12 continuously. Castings had to be made, for example, and these castings had to be planed and Lauste, while he was waiting for such parts to be ready to be used, would in many instances,

have been compelled to sit in the shop with his

hands in his lap, so that from the very beginning, my recollection now is, that work was done on the two kinds of machine pari passu.

RDQ208. Have you now read through your two depositions given in the Interference in 1897, between the application for your patent in suit and Armat to enable you to identify those depositions as they are contained in the printed book which is in evidence as the depositions which you gave in that Interference?

A. I have.

1850

Re-direct Examination closed.

Re-cross Examination by Mr. Ward:

RXQ209. Have you read through the depositions contained in this copy which I hand you (handing the witness record introduced in evidence by complainant's counsel, containing what purports to be depositions in Interference). I mean this very copy?

A. I would like to ask counsel within what period he refers to. Every syllable of it I have read more than once within the last 16 years or rather within the period which has elapsed since the publication was first made and came into my hands. Since the present examination of me as a witness began there are only certain portions which I felt a special interest in that I have read. If you mean this identical book that I hold in my hands, I reply that I do not think I ever read a single line. This is one of a number of volumes exactly like one another issued by the Patent Office and I have and have had one of these books since very shortly after they were published. You hand me an edition of

Shakespeare and say "have you ever read this book?" I would answer "Certainly" and then if the questioner were to try to prove me an untruthful man because he could show that that identical set of volumes could never have been in my hands, I should feel pretty much as I feel now about being pinned down to one particular one of probably a hundred books issued by the United States Government, any two of which are precisely alike.

1853

The latter part of the answer objected to as irrelevant, irresponsive, showing on its face that the witness does not know the circumstances of which he is testifying.

By Complainant's Counsel: Defendant's counsel having raised and insisted upon his objection that the copy of your former depositions contained in this book are not proved to have been depositions given by you in the previous interference, I will ask you at your leisure to read the depositions as printed in this identical book, properly identified by the Examiner and to state to the Examiner in a way that he may properly certify your answer the fact that you have read carefully these depositions and that you find them to be or not to be, as the case may turn out, correct copies of the depositions which you gave in that Interference and of which you state you have had printed copies ever since the testimony was given and printed. Will you kindly do this?

1854

A. I will, certainly.

By Mr. Ward:

The information asked of the witness is thought to be immaterial to the objection on the record.

Deposition Closed.

Signature waived.

Met pursuant to notice.

1856

New York, June 15, 1911.

Further testimony taken in reply on behalf of the complainant.

Present—S. M. WARD, Esq., Counsel for Defendant;

PARKER W. PAGE, Esq., Counsel for Complainant.

EMIL W. KLEINERT, a witness called on behalf of the complainant, having been first duly sworn, testifies in answer to interrogatories by complainant's counsel as follows:

1857

Q1. Please state your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Emil W. Kleinert, age 44, Cleveland, Ohio, superintendent of the Wilson Dress Hook company of Cleveland, Ohio.

Q2. Have you ever had any experience in the practical manufacture of tools or other apparatus?

A. I am a machinist by trade, and have worked as a machinist and tool maker since I was fourteen years of age.

- Q3. Did you ever do any work as a machinist for Woodville Latham, who was formerly a resident of New York City?
- A. I was employed by Mr. Latham in December of 1894, and worked at his factory at 35 Frankfort Street, New York City.
- Q4. Do you recall the date or the day of the month in December, 1894, when you first began to work at Mr. Latham's Frankfort Street shop?
 - A. It was on the 23rd of December, 1894.

1859

- Q5. Where had you been employed previous to that time?
- A. Previous to that time I was employed by Mr. Gray Latham at Boston, Mass.
- Q6. Do you recall the particular day when you came from Boston to New York to enter Mr. Woodville Latham's employ?
- A. I remember leaving Boston on the Sunday before Christmas.
- Q7. How long did you continue in Mr. Latham's employ in New York?
- A. As near as I can remember until October, 1895.

- Q8. What time of day did you leave Boston?
- A. I left Boston about noon.
- Q9. And how long was it after reaching New York that you went to work in Mr. Latham's shop?
- A. I went to work at Mr. Latham's shop the following morning.
- Q10. What was the force at work in Latham's shop when you went there?
- A. I found a man by the name of Lauste employed at that factory.
- Q11. Was he the only mechanic there at the time?

A. He was the only mechanic there at the time. Q12. What was he at work on when you came

there?

A. He was at work on a machine for taking photographs.

Q13. Was anyone else in or about the shop at that time?

A. Mr. Otway Latham was there.

Q14. Who was Mr. Otway Latham?

A. Mr. Otway Latham was a son of Mr. Woodville Latham.

Q15. What were Mr. Otway Latham's duties about the shop?

A. His duties were to look after the employees at the shop, also to buy stock, etc., as was used round the shop, and also carrying orders for Mr. Woodville Latham to the employees.

Q16. Now, will you please state what you recollect about the condition of the machine for taking pictures which Mr. Lauste was at work on, when you came to the shop and started work, and what particular work you started in on in connection with that apparatus?

A. I found the machine for taking pictures with the movement with which they were trying to obtain a stop for the film. From personal experience I found this movement not to be practical, and started to work on the projecting machine which had already been on the way.

Q17. What was the trouble with the stop movement which was in the machine which Lauste was at work on?

A. The trouble with the stop movement in that machine was that it did not give the required time to stop the vibration of the film.

1862

Q18. Did you ever know who had suggested or devised that particular stop movement?

A. I was told it was suggested by Mr. Dickson. Q19. Was that Mr. W. K. L. Dickson?

A. Yes, sir.

Q20. Was anything done that you know of in the way of further experiment with the stop motion for this machine? And if so, state what steps were taken, and when they were taken, as far as you can recall.

1865

A. After we found that we did not have the proper stop movement, we suggested several things. Among others an intermittent movement which we saw in the catalogue of the Boston Gear Works. Mr. Woodville Latham authorized me to order such gear if it was necessary for this machine.

Q21. Did you order such a gear, and if so, when was this done?

A. As near as I can remember, the gear was ordered in the latter part of December, 1894, and it was received in the early part of January, 1895.

Q22. Was this gear tried in the machine?

1866

A. This gear was tried in the machine immediately and finding that the size of the gear in connection with the large sprocket wheel wasn't the thing that we really wanted—

Q23. Then what did you do for an intermittent stop movement?

A. To overcome our difficulty, I decided to try a set of smaller gears. I went to the Pearce Company, New York City, and ordered a pair of gearing which I knew would be suitable for our purpose.

Q24. How did this gear differ from that which you got from the Boston Gear Works?

A. The Boston Gear Works gear was an inside gearing, whereas the Pearce gear was an outside.

Q25. Was there any difference in the diameters of the gear wheels in the two sets of gear?

A. There was. The gear of the Boston Gear Works had 14 stops to the revolution; whereas the smaller gear ordered from Pearce had only four stops to the revolution.

Q26. What, if anything, did you do with the gear that you got from Pearce?

A. I fitted the gear on to the proper shaftings and tried it out in the machine.

Q27. What was the result that you got from the use of this gear?

A. The result was satisfactory. We took a photograph of a lighted swinging incandescent lamp.

Q28. For what width of film was the machine that you found at the shop when you came there adapted?

A. The machine that I found as I came to the factory was adapted for what we then called the Edison Film. Mr. Woodville Latham decided that we should use wider films and we made the necessary changes in the sprocket wheels to accommodate a wider film.

Q29. Was the Pearce gear or stop motion used with the sprockets for the Edison film or with the sprockets for the wider film?

A. It was used with the sprockets for the wider film.

Q30. When, with reference to the time that Pearce was making the stop movement, were the wider sprockets made?

A. The wider sprockets were made before Pearce finished his gearing.

Q31. Do you recall now how long it was after you came to Latham's shop that the machine for 1868

1871

taking pictures was finally completed with the gear which you obtained from Pearce and the wider sprockets?

A. Why, it was practically completed on the 26th of February, as we took a perfect photograph on that night.

Q32. Tell what you recollect about the taking of that photograph.

A. It was around eleven o'clock that we took the photograph. We developed part of the negative that night. Mr. Dickson, Mr. Otway Latham, Mr. Lauste and myself were present. After the experiment and leaving the factory, Mr. Dickson, Mr. Otway Latham and myself went to a restaurant near the Bartholdi Hotel for something to eat. It was about three o'clock in the morning when I left Mr. Dickson and Mr. Otway Latham at the Bartholdi Hotel on Twenty-third Street. In the meantime, Mr. Dickson suggested that he would slip the photographs that were taken that night under Mr. Woodville Latham's door as a sort of surprise for the next morning, or rather that morning, when he should arise.

1872

Q33. Do you know anything about the subsequent history or use of that machine?

A. We took several photographs, one for instance of Mr. Lauste, Mr. Gray Latham, myself and a son of Mr. Lauste's, moving about. This photograph was taken on the roof of the factory at 35 Frankfort Street. Also in the early part of May a photograph was taken of a prize fight, as near as I can remember it was Griffo and Barnett. I remember Mr. White being the referee.

Q34. I hand you a photograph, which is an exhibit in this case, marked Complainant's Exhibit Lauste's photograph; state if you know what that represents.

A. I remember this photograph being taken with the machine on the roof of 35 Frankfort Street.

Q35. Will you now describe, as fully as you can from recollection, how that machine, which was used in taking this photograph, was constructed, and how it operated when film was passed through it for taking pictures.

A. Now, I remember having a roll of film on a reel on the top of the machine; this film was fed by a continuous sprocket wheel, supported with a rubber roll to carry the film on to another wheel, through a slide and the next sprocket wheel. feeding of the first sprocket wheel was to form a loop of this film, so as the intermittent gear would move the film, would allow it to take up the slack which was formed by the first sprocket wheel. The moving of the intermittent gear also the sprocket wheel attached to this gear would form another loop at the bottom of this machine, which was again taken care of by a sprocket wheel and rubber roll attached, so as not to allow any pull of the bottom reel, which was taking care of the film that passed through this machine.

Q36. How were the two sprockets at the top and bottom of the machine driven?

A. The two sprocket wheels—the one at top and bottom—were connected with the set of bevel gears; also connected with the main shaft, so as to allow a continuous movement, which was to form a loop at the top of the machine, at the same time to take up the loop at the bottom of the machine as it was forming as it passed through the slide.

Q37. I hand you now a pencil sketch, intended to represent a film feeding mechanism and I will ask you to state in what respects, if any, the 1874

mechanism illustrated in this sketch resembles or differs from the feeding mechanism in the picturetaking machine which you have just described?

Mr. Ward: Objected to as leading.

A. This sketch resembles the machine that has taken those photographs, including the intermittent gear as I ordered from the Pearce Company.

Q38. In this sketch there are two sprocket wheels shown on opposite sides of the exposure window, and the maker of the sketch described these two sprocket wheels as being connected by a steel belt and rotating in unison; how does that illustration and description accord with your recollection of the machine as it existed at the time when the Lauste Exhibit photograph was taken?

Mr. Ward: Objected to as leading.

A. The connections of the two sprocket wheels, as near as I remember, was at that time connected with a set of gearings, and we found that the sprockets on one wheel were interfering with our film in a way that it would injure the holes in the film and we decided to take these sprockets off—these sprockets on the sprocket wheel.

Complainant's counsel notes that the sketch referred to in the last preceding questions, is the pencil sketch made by Eugene Lauste, and offered in evidence as Complainant's Exhibit, Lauste Sketch.

Q39. Have you had any experience in the making or reading of mechanical drawings?

1877

A. I have had some experience in reading drawings, also in making.

Q40. I hand you now a copy of the patent in suit, and will ask you if you understand from the drawings and descriptions contained in that patent, the construction and operation of the machine illustrated therein?

A. I do, to some extent.

Q41. Now, will you indicate wherein the machine or rather the film-feeding mechanism of the machine illustrated in that patent resembles or differs from the machine which you assisted in constructing in Mr. Latham's shop and which was used for photographing the swinging incandescent lamp on the night of February 26, 1895?

A. I see a change of a roller, marked 56; that appears in a different position. Also a swinging arm, supporting two small rollers, marked 58-57 and 58; as well as a roller marked 54. There appears to be a few more minor changes of this drawing from the machine that was then in operation.

Q42. How much of the machine, which Lauste was working on when you came to the Latham shop, was altered or changed in construction to produce the complete machine which was used to photograph the swinging incandescent lamp on February 26, 1895?

A. The changes that were made from that machine in question was in changing the size of the sprocket wheels to accommodate a wider film, as well as the intermittent movement.

Q43. Were the bevel gears that drove the continuously rotating sprockets altered or changed in any way?

1880

Mr. Ward: Objected to as assuming that the gears were constructed.

A. The bevel gears were not changed in any way, but fitted on to the new shaftings of the new sprocket wheels.

Q44. Did you ever give testimony in any proceeding with regard to this Latham machine before to-day?

A. I have.

1833

Q45. Was that in an interference proceeding in the Patent Office, entitled Latham vs. Armat, a bound volume of the record of which I now hand you?

A. (Examining) Yes, sir.

Q46. At the time of giving your deposition in that case you were requested to examine and were questioned regarding a certain machine which was designated in that case as "Latham Exhibit 12." Do you remember seeing that machine at the time of giving your testimony?

A. I do remember.

Q47. What was that machine?

1884

A. I remember seeing that machine and recognized it as the same one that we took the photograph with on the roof of 35 Frankfort Street, also the Griffo and Barnet fight at Madison Square Roof Garden.

Q48. Have you seen that machine since giving your testimony in that case?

A. I have not.

Q49. While you were working on the machine for taking pictures in Latham's shop in the months of January and February, 1895, was Mr. Woodville Latham himself ever present in the shop?

A. Yes, sir; he spent a good deal of his time down at the factory.

Q50. Did he have anything to say about the construction of the machine, either to you or to Lauste?

A. He did. He very often suggested and made changes, whenever he thought them necessary.

Q51. Did you ever see Mr. W. K. L. Dickson in the Latham shop about that time?

A. I did. I saw him there several evenings.

Q52. Did Mr. Dickson, to your knowledge, make any suggestions or give any directions about the construction or development of the machine?

A. Mr. Dickson gave very few instructions about the development of the machine. His main business was the taking of the photographs and developing them and teaching us how to do that.

Q53. Had you ever done any work for Mr. Edison on his machines for taking photographs of objects in motion?

A. I have never been employed by Mr. Edison on his machines for taking photographs. I have been employed at the Edison Phonograph Works, as a tool-maker, also was foreman at the works, having charge of the construction of the Kinetoscopes.

Q54. You were familiar with the construction of the Edison Picture Taking Machine, were you not?

A. I was. Through accident, I found out the movement which Edison had used at that time on his picture taking machine.

Q55. Why did you not suggest to Mr. Latham that movement or adopt that movement in the construction of the Latham machine?

A. After I found out that Mr. Dickson was still at that time employed with Mr. Edison, Mr. Dick-

1886

1889

son and myself came to a perfect understanding that there should be nothing used that Mr. Edison had a claim on.

Q56. You mean that there should be nothing used in the construction of the Latham apparatus?

A. I mean that the stop movement that Mr. Edison was using should not be used on our machine—on the Latham machine.

Q57. What part did you understand that Mr. Woodville Latham had in the invention of the machine about which you have been testifying? Give your reasons for your answer.

A. As I understand, Mr. Woodville Latham gave direct orders, he also made sketches of experiments that were going on, at times when he couldn't come down himself to the shop he would send his son with instructions. We were employed by Mr. Woodville Latham to work for him. We received our pay from Mr. Latham. Those are the various reasons that I can give.

Recess.

1890 Q58. In the record of the interference, Latham vs. Armat, there is reproduced an exhibit which reads as follows:

"Boston Gear	Works,	31 I	Hartford	1 8	treet,
Boston, Mass.,	January	7,	1895.	Sol	d to
E. W. Kleinert,	35 Fran	kfort	, room	34,	New
York, N. Y.					

1 Tool Steel Intermittent 3 t 3/8 face.

1 " " 42 t "

made	to	order	\$15.75
Cr.			5.00

Rec'd Payment,
The Boston Gear Works,
by L. Burgess."

you recognize that as a copy of any bill made out to you? If so, what was it?

A. I do recognize the bill made out to me, 1 Tool Steel Intermittent 3 t, and the 1 Tool Steel Intermittent 42 t. I recognize this bill as being the one made out to me by the number of teeth that appear on this bill.

Q59. What was the original of this bill? What is this a copy of?

A. This bill is an exact copy of the order I gave to the Boston Gear Works.

Q60. Have you recently read over a copy of the deposition which you gave in Latham vs. Armat interference?

A. I have. And I refreshed my memory on the date that appears in the same.

(Direct-examination closed.)

1896

Cross-examination by Mr. Ward:

XQ61. Mr. Kleinert, you stated, I believe, that you entered Mr. Latham's employ between the 23rd and the 25th of December, and that you found a machine for taking pictures with the movement with which they were trying to obtain a stop for the film; now, as a matter of fact, was there at the time you entered the shop an assembled machine with any stop mechanism in it?

A. There was.

1895 XQ62. What machine was this?

A. It was a machine with the frame that was made out of iron screwed together; the shaft and sprocket wheels were on that frame—in that frame of the machine. The movement with which they were trying to obtain the stop was on the machine at that time.

XQ63. What do you mean by the sprocket wheels; what sprocket wheels were you referring to?

A. I am referring to a large sprocket wheel that was worked in connection with this movement.

XQ64. What was the purpose of this sprocket wheel?

A. The purpose of this sprocket wheel was to carry this film through a slide.

XQ65. Then you had a frame with a stop mechanism which drove a sprocket wheel to move a film intermittently, is that correct?

A. Yes, sir.

XQ66. Is that all there was to this machine?

A. There was more parts to this machine, such as small sprocket wheels and some gearing.

XQ67. And this stop mechanism operated all of these sprocket wheels?

A. I could not tell exactly whether it did operate all these sprocket wheels, for my entire effort was to get the proper stop with one large sprocket.

XQ68. Then all you are positive of is that there was a stop mechanism operating one sprocket wheel to move the film, and that the machine had other gearing which you do not recall the arrangement and operation of, is this correct?

A. I can recall the operation of these other gearing, as the same other gearing were used on the next frame that we made for the new sprocket wheel, or rather wider sprocket wheel.

XQ69. The only use to which this former frame and sprocket wheel was put was to test out the stop mechanism?

A. It could not have been because there were small sprocket wheels and gearings that must have been used in connection with this machine—that were there—and later on the only change that was made was in making sprocket wheels to accommodate the wider film, as well as the new stop movement.

XQ70. This stop mechanism you refer to, was that suggested by Mr. Dickson? Consisting of a reciprocating part?

A. I could not tell who it was that suggested it, for the reason that the stop movement was there and I was not in the employ of Mr. Latham previous to the time that I came here and did not know anything about it.

XQ71. This stop mechanism consisted of a reciprocating member moving back and forth in a slideway?

A. As near as I can remember it was,

XQ72. And is it your contention that the same frame in which this stop mechanism was assembled was the frame in which the Boston Gear was later assembled?

1898

A. Yes, sir.

XQ73. Was not this reciprocating stop mechanism quite different in construction and operation from the gear later on ordered from the Boston Gear Works?

A. It was quite different.

XQ74. How was it then that you could assemble both stop mechanisms in the same frame in connection with the same gearing?

A. In ordering the Boston gearing I designed it to fit inside of the sprocket wheel which was the larger wheel, and it only required the making of one bearing to fit the driving gear in the frame of this machine.

XQ75. You worked, did you not, for about two weeks on this stop mechanism—I mean the reciprocating stop mechanism, after entering the shop?

A. I did not work on the mechanism that was at the shop at the time I came. The experiments were made and the machine was shown to me; and as I understood, they could not go any further, because they did not obtain a perfect stop. I ordered this new gearing from the Boston Gear Works and in the meantime, before the arrival of this gear, I worked on the projecting machine, which took about two weeks' time.

XQ76. Did you not work on Dickson's stop device or experiment with it for a week or more after entering the shop?

A. I know of experimenting on this device of Dickson's for a few days. I might have experimented longer after ordering the gearing, which I do not remember.

XQ77. Did you find this stop device to be a failure?

A. I did.

1901

XQ78. Did you believe at that time that the success or failure of this taking machine depended upon the determination of a successful stop movement?

A. Yes, sir.

XQ79. And at this time you found that Mr. Latham had been unable to determine upon a successful stop movement?

A. I could not tell that Mr. Latham was unable to determine upon a successful stop movement, but as I suggested this Boston gearing, which I have used before in various machinery, I knew it would obtain a better stop movement than of any that was suggested from someone else.

XQ80. You or Mr. Lauste suggested this stop movement to Mr. Latham, did you not?

A. We did.

XQ81. You testified that you were formerly working for Mr. Edison and that you gained knowledge of the stop movement which he was using in his camera or attempting to use. Were you not also aware at that time of the difficulties which Mr. Edison's people were encountering in developing a rapid stop movement for his camera?

A. I didn't know of any difficulties that Mr. Edison had in obtaining a rapid stop movement.

XQ82. Did you know whether or not they considered the stop movement, to which you refer, practicable or impracticable?

A. Oh, I didn't know anything of the kind.

XQ83. What was the nature of the stop movement which you said you had knowledge of?

A. It was on the principle of a double ratchet.

XQ84. Did one of the wheels have slots in it through which another wheel at right angles thereto passed? 1904

A. I could not remember.

XQ85. The Edison stop device to which you refer is not that shown in Edison's patent 589,168?

A. No. sir.

XQ86. As I understand your testimony, further work on the taking machine of Mr. Latham's was held up after experimenting with Dickson's stop device, at least the completion of the machine was delayed until they could discover a stop device which would be suitable for the rapid movement in such machines, is this correct?

1907

A. It was to some extent.

XQ87. Isn't it entirely correct? Did you not testify in answer to XQ75, that they could not go any further because they did not obtain a perfect stop?

A. They could not take a perfect photograph for the reason that they didn't have a stop movement which would stop the quivering of the film in taking a photograph.

XQ88. Dickson's stop mechanism also jammed when driven at high speed and caused entirely too much vibration for any practical result, did it not?

1908

A. It did.

XQ89. Did you ever see any drawings or sketches that Lauste made of this taking machine or any parts thereof while you were in the employ of Mr. Latham?

A. I did not.

XQ90. Did you ever see any sketch Mr. Latham made?

A. I have and I have been to see Mr. Latham at the Bartholdi Hotel, where he made sketches himself, to be taken to the factory.

XQ91. What was the nature of these sketches, of the complete machine or simply suggestions of detail parts?

A. Suggestions of detail parts of the reproducing machine.

XQ92. You are referring now to the projection machine, are you not?

A. Yes, projecting machine I should have said. XQ93. Did you ever see any sketches of the taking machine which Mr. Latham made?

A. I do not remember.

XQ94. If you did not enter Mr. Latham's employ until the last of December, you cannot tell to what extent the design, organization and construction of the parts of the taking machine was left to Mr. Lauste, can you?

A. I could not, not being there.

XQ95. Mr. Latham, at the time you entered the shop, had great faith in Mr. Lauste's ability in designing and constructing such machinery, did he not?

A. I do not know of any of those affairs, how much faith he had in Mr. Lauste.

XQ96. Did you ever talk with Lauste about this taking machine which you and he were working on?

A. As far as working on and talking about the machine, we always have talked more or less about it, in trying to get it in proper working order.

XQ97. Did not Mr. Lauste give you to understand that this machine was his invention?

A. He did not.

XQ98. Did he ever tell you where the idea of forming the loop came from?

A. He did not.

XQ99. He never spoke to you one way or another in regard to the origin of the different features of the machine?

A. No, sir.

1910

1913

XQ100. Then you have no personal knowledge as to whether Mr. Latham or Mr. Lauste is the inventor of the machine, other than that you have assumed Mr. Latham was the inventor because the machine was being built in his factory and that he was paying the wages and you and Lauste were obeying his commands? Is this correct?

A. We were given direct orders from Mr. Latham -Mr. Lauste and myself-and for that reason I have always believed him to be the inventor of

that machine.

XQ101. You were getting direct orders in regard to the Boston stop mechanism after you obtained it too, were you not?

A. There wasn't much orders to be taken after we knew where this stop movement had to go. There was a place already provided for this movement.

XQ102. And upon embodying this stop movement in the machine it was found to be satisfactory, was it? The Boston stop movement?

A. It was found to be not satisfactory.

XQ103. Well, upon embodying the stop movement obtained from Pearce, was the machine 1914 found to be satisfactory?

A. Yes, sir.

XQ104. Now, the stop movement ordered from Boston and that ordered from Pearce were identical in principle and in the shape of the broken gearing, except that in the Boston gearing the driven wheel was larger and the teeth were on the inside of the rim of the wheel, whereas in the gear ordered from Pearce the driven gear was smaller in diameter and had the teeth cut on the outside of the periphery, is this correct?

A. It is not correct.

XQ105. Well, please state the difference between the two gears.

A. The driving gear of the Boston gear was smaller than the driven gear, whereas the gear ordered from Pearce were about the same diameter.

XQ106. Is that the only difference between them?

A. The difference between the Boston gearing and gearing from Pearce were that the Boston was an inside movement whereas the Pearce gearing was an outside movement.

XQ107. That is just what I stated, wasn't it? How do you remember so distinctly the day of the week and the date of the month on which you entered Mr. Latham's employ?

A. I remember distinctly the day of the week that I left Boston, the Sunday before Christmas, and the date by looking over the previous testimony.

XQ108. You read your previous testimony, then, before giving testimony in this case?

A. I had.

XQ109. Had you seen any of the exhibits in this case before giving your testimony, or the Latham patent in suit?

A. I had seen some of the exhibits.

XQ110. In the last two or three days? A. Yes, sir.

XQ111. Then your answer to Q35, wherein you are asked to describe from recollection, was really not given entirely from recollection, was it?

A. Yes, sir, it was, it was given entirely from recollection.

XQ112. The sketches which you saw and the patents which were shown you did not refresh your memory any?

1916

A. I recognize a few changes in the sketches I saw, also on the patent drawings.

XQ113. When you were testifying in the interference, referred to in your direct examination, you stated that the machine shown you at that time—known as Latham's machine, Exhibit No. 12—was the original machine with which the picture of the incandescent lamp was taken and you stated there that you could identify it by the peculiar gearing embodied therein. As a matter of fact, were not two other machines identical with this one with which you took the picture of the lamp, made by Mr. Latham in the fall of 1895?

A. There was no other machine ever made identically the same as the machine that took the photograph of that swinging lamp, so the machine that I saw and testified to was the very machine I worked on, for reasons that I recognized my own work on that machine.

XQ114. Didn't you work on the other two machines?

A. I did not.

XQ115. On the night of February 26th, when you took the picture of this incandescent lamp, were you using the wider film or the Edison film?

A. To my recollection we were using the wider film.

XQ116. Was the Griffo Barnet fight taken on the narrow or the wide film?

A. It was taken on the wide film.

XQ117. Now, at the time this picture of the Griffo Barnet fight was taken, had the extra sprockets been replaced by the smooth rubber rollers, to which you have referred?

A. There were never any smooth rolls replaced

with sprocket wheels. It was only the sprocket wheels taken out and the teeth or sprocket cut off.

XQ118. Didn't you say that rubber rollers were employed?

A. Yes, sir, rubber rollers were employed to hold the film against the sprocket wheels.

XQ119. Besides the sprocket wheel were the teeth cut off?

A. I believe they were.

XQ120. When were these rubber rollers first used?

A. I seen them there when I came to the factory, when I was first employed.

XQ121. What would be the necessity of the extra sprockets with or without teeth if you had a rubber roller pressing on the other sprocket wheel?

A. The sprocket to which I referred to was below the one on which the rubber roller pressed.

XQ122. Was this machine which was referred to in that interference of which you testified as Latham's machine No. 12, built as a camera or as a projecting machine?

A. It was built as a camera.

XQ123. Was it ever used to your knowledge as a projecting machine?

A. Yes, sir.

XQ124. Did that original machine have the horizontal slideways on it, shown in the patent in suit?

A. No, sir, that machine had no horizontal slideways. That machine I referred to was used for projecting only as an experiment, which we tried out as an experiment in the shop.

XQ125. Was the machine enclosed in a box?

A. The machine was enclosed, but we rigged it up for the experiment of projecting.

XQ126. You took it out of its box, did you, and placed it before a lamp?

1922

A. I do not exactly remember the experiment.

XQ127. Do you remember whether you succeeded in projecting pictures with it?

A. All that I remember was that the result was very unsatisfactory, and as we had a projecting machine at that time, didn't take up the matter any further.

XQ128. You had to disassemble and reassemble parts of this machine in changing it from a camera to a projecting machine, did you not?

1925

A. We did not make any changes whatever on that machine. We simply tried to project without making any changes.

XQ129. You never considered this machine as a projecting machine?

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. We did not.

. XQ130. At this time you were constructing some continuously moving film machines for projection purposes, were you not?

1926

A. We had already constructed machines for projecting, and merely tried this out for an experiment. These projecting machines were the continuous film machines.

XQ131. You built this original machine No. 12 for taking pictures to be used in your projecting machines, which were of the continuous feed type, and you regarded this machine, No. 12, as useful only in the taking of pictures, did you not?

Mr. Page: Objected to as a double question, both parts of which are immaterial.

A. I never regarded this machine as useless as a projecting machine.

XQ132. It was only intended to be used as a camera, was it not?

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. I know that we have only used it as a camera. XQ133. Did Mr. Dickson, upon his visits to the factory, and by his manner during said visits, give you the impression that he was making those visits against his desire and at the insistence of Mr. Latham without personal interest in the outcome of the machine under construction, or did he give you the impression of being very much interested in the outcome of the work and being anxious to promote it in any way he could?

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial.

A. He gave the impression or made the impression on me that he came there to help out Mr. Lauste, who was a discharged employee of the Thomas Edison and unable to obtain work anywhere.

XQ134. What makes you say that Mr. Lauste was discharged from Mr. Edison's employ?

A. He was discharged from the laboratory and went to work with the Edison Phonograph Works and was unable to hold his job.

XQ135. How do you know?

A. I was working there at that time.

XQ136. In the laboratory with Mr. Lauste?

A. At the phonograph works.

1928

XQ137. Were you working with Mr. Lauste in the same department?

A. I was working with Mr. Lauste in the same room.

XQ138. Did you know that Mr. Dickson had recommended Mr. Lauste to Mr. Latham, as just the man he needed to build this machine?

A. I did not know anything about it.

XQ139. Was Lauste under Dickson in Mr. Edison's laboratory?

A. No, 1 don't believe he was as far as my knowledge goes.

XQ140. Were you working under Mr. Dickson? A. I did not.

XQ141. Why do you say that Mr. Lauste was unable to get work?

A. I know that he had been out of work several months.

XQ142. Do you know that he was not sick during this time?

A. No, I could not answer that.

XQ143. I hand you complainant's exhibit, Lauste's sketch, do you consider that a fair sketch for a mechanic to make while sick and propped up in hed?

A. It is a hard thing for some mechanics to make free hand sketches, although I consider it a fair sketch for a man under those conditions.

XQ144. Would you say that a man who made that sketch while propped up in bed was incompetent of sketching out an assembled view of Machine No. 12, a part of which this machine represents?

A. I could not answer that question, it depends on the man.

1931

XQ145. As a mechanic, in observing the straight lines of the shafting in that sketch, the accuracy with which the sprocket teeth are spaced, the representation of the bevel gearing, and the relative proportion of the parts, would you not say that the sketch, made under the circumstances which are related, is indicative of a considerable turn for mechanical drafting on the part of the person who made it?

Mr. Page: Objected to as purely argumentative and as calling for an inconclusive deduction based on hypothesis.

1984

A. I can give no answer to that.

XQ146. Are you familiar with mechanical drawings, and illustrated sketches as this?

A. I am familiar with drawings, but very little with illustrated sketches as this.

XQ147. As a mechanic and one who has seen the machine which this sketch purports to represent, do you not consider the sketch a very clear and accurate representation of that machine, considering the circumstances under which it was made?

1935

A. I consider it a fairly good sketch.

Cross-examination closed.

Deposition closed.

Signature Waived.

1938

New York, July 6, 1911.

Met pursuant to notice.

Present—Parker W. Page, Esq., Counsel for Complainant. Samuel M. Ward, Esq., Counsel for De-

fendant.

FREDERICK A. ANTHONY, a witness called on behalf of the complainant, having been first duly sworn, testifies in answer to interrogatories by complainant's counsel as follows:

Q1. Please state your name, age, residence and

occupation?

A. Frederick A. Anthony, age 56 years; residence, Hackensack, N. J., occupation, broker.

Q2. Mr. Anthony, were you ever connected with a concern known as E. & H. T. Anthony & Company, a corporation doing business in this State?

A. Yes, I was.

Q3. Will you state briefly the period of your

connection with that company?

A. I became connected with E. & H. T. Anthony & Company in December, 1888. I was secretary and a director in the company at that time; in 1896, I became secretary and treasurer, and remained an officer and director in E. & H. T. Anthony & Company until the present time.

Q4. Did the E. & H. T. Anthony & Company undergo any reorganization or was it known subse-

quently by other names?

A. In the fall of 1901 a new company was organized known as the Anthony & Scovill Company. I was the first Vice-President and Treasurer and a Director of that company. It took over all the

assets and business of E. & H. T. Anthony & Company and the Scovill & Adams Company and the Monarch Paper Company. E. & H. T. Anthony & Company still however retained its legal existence.

Q5. Up to what time did you continue as an officer of the Anthony & Scovill Company?

A. I resigned in February, 1906.

Q6. After that date did you continue as a stockholder in the Company and were you familiar with its operations and conditions?

A. Yes, I remained a stockholder in the Company and attended the annual meetings; also saw the various officers of the Company from time to time and had conversations with them in regard to the Company and its condition.

Q7. While you were an officer of the E. & H. T. Anthony & Company did that company become interested in any invention or inventions of Woodville Latham pertaining to moving picture apparatus?

A. Yes.

Q8. Will you state generally what that interest was and how far the Company went in promoting such inventions?

A. I think it was in 1896 or 1897, that I first became acquainted with Mr. Woodville Latham and some time after we made a contract with him to assist him in getting his patent applications through the office, and we paid the expenses of the Interference suit with Castler & Armat. Mr. Latham assigned the patent that was in interference to us, and we were to pay him a royalty or give him some interest in the proceeds of the patent if we did anything with it, the exact details of that agreement I have fergotten.

1940

Q9. Up to the time when the patent which is involved in this suit, namely, No. 707,934, issued to the E. & H. T. Anthony & Company, what amount of money had your company expended in connection with this invention?

A. Before this patent was issued we had manufactured a machine that was called the Anthony ' Biopticon. We exhibited them at our show room 591 Broadway, New York City, and also sent one We also arranged for an exhibition of abroad. these moving pictures made by using this apparatus in an advertising scheme. We rented a place on Broadway about 29th or 30th Streets, threw the pictures on a screen that was visible to the public, showing the advertisements between the different pictures. We spent a further sum in having pictures made for exhibition purposes and these expenses amounted in all to something like \$11,000. We carried the patents on our books at a value of \$10,000.

Q10. After the patent was granted your Company in 1902, did you bring any suits for infringement under the patent, or take any other steps to enforce the Company's rights under it?

A. We did not bring any suit, but we notified the Mutoscope Company and the Edison Company that they were infringing, subsequently we met representatives of these companies and endeavored to arrange a combination of the different interests. I also called on Mr. Edison at Orange, talked with him about the patent, but he told me that he did not think there was a very great future for the moving picture business and none of us did at that time, and we failed to make any combination.

Q11. Why did your Company not bring suits for infringement of this Latham patent against

1943

users of apparatus embodying the invention covered by its claims?

A. In July, 1901, I and others made an agreement with the Goodwin Film & Camera Company under which we took the control of that company and agreed to manufacture film under the Goodwin patent, put it on the market and also to prosecute infringers of the patent as we might be advised by counsel. This film business was quite an important branch in the photographic trade and we were very anxious to get the film on the market. It was a business that was already developed and the returns from it promised to be much greater than anything in the moving picture line at that time. We therefore undertook to make films and we were not very successful in our efforts, so we conducted negotiations with Mr. Lefferts, President of the Celluloid Company, to make a film under the Goodwin patent for us. These negotiations lasted for some two or three months when we became convinced we could not make a satisfactory agreement and it would be necessary for us to manufacture the film ourselves. The factory that had been built by Goodwin in Newark was a very small affair and not large enough to carry on an extensive business. We could have started the business there but thought it would be more economical to build a larger plant and the Goodwin Company, of which I was President, started building a factory in Binghamton, New York, in the fall of 1901. The factory was completed in the spring of 1902, all during the year 1902 we were busily engaged in designing a machine for making films and learning how to make the support itself. We did not get into a position to put the film on the market until December of that

1946

year. We had also taken over other factories in the fall of 1901 when the new company was organized, and were busy perfecting the products of those factories during this year as well. When we were able to furnish the cartridge form of film to the public in December, 1902, we filed a suit against the Eastman Company for infringement under the Goodwin patent. Early in 1903 they brought a suit against us under the Turner patent. These two litigations were prosecuted and the Turner litigation was pressed especially so that our attorneys were wholly occupied with our affairs in these cases and could not very well undertake new litigation under other patents.

1949

Q12. What was the financial condition of the E. & H. T. Anthony Company and its successors in business, the Anthony & Scovill Company and the Ansco Company, during the years 1902 to and including 1908?

1950

A. The E. & H. T. Anthony Company were in good financial condition, but after the formation of the Anthony & Scovill Company in 1901, we were obliged to borrow very heavily from the banks, as it required a good deal of money to build the new factories and install the new machinery, advertise and put the new products on the market, so that we did not feel, in view of this condition and the fact that we were already engaged in expensive litigation, that we could afford to take up new litigation, and in 1903, about June of that year, I think, one of the banks where we were in the habit of borrowing refused to discount our paper and we were obliged to notify the other banks that held our paper that we would have to have an ex-This was granted, and a committee of tension.

three bankers was appointed to supervise our company; they employed a firm of accountants to attend to the details. The extension was only a temporary relief, because in a short time we had to begin paying \$5,000 a month on our extended notes, and after three months I notified the banks that we were making too much of a draft on our working capital and could not continue. Another meeting was held and the accountants advised that financial assistance be extended to us. the banks, however, were not willing to do so, and the notes which they held were taken over by the others that were willing to extend the assistance at a heavy discount. Money was then advanced us from time to time, secured by our accounts receivable. All our transactions were checked by the accountants and we were not allowed to issue a check or a note that was not countersigned by The committee of bankers insisted on expenses being reduced to a minimum and were anxious to have the litigations already under way stopped, and had it not been for the fact that if we abandoned the Turner litigation we would have been unable to furnish films for our cameras, and that if we abandoned the Goodwin litigation that canceled, contract would have been they would have refused to allow us to go on. saw Mr. Eastman and endeavored to arrange some compromise, but was not successful, so the litigations continued. This condition of affairs existed all through 1903, 1904 and 1905, and in the latter part of 1905 we did not have sufficient accounts receivable to cover the loans that were made, and there was more or less talk and consultations in regard to reorganizing the company. In

1952

December, 1905, I advised the bankers that I was not willing to remain with the company if they were going to attempt to run it as it was then being run, and I resigned in February, 1906. At the annual meeting in 1907 which I attended the statement furnished the stockholders showing that the company was not in any better condition than it had been, and in the summer of 1907 the Secretary, Mr. Lamoutte, called at my office in New York and wanted to know if I could not arrange to raise some money to take over the concern, as he thought unless something of the kind was done it would go to pieces. I told him I thought I could do so, but I did not wish to make a proposition, but that he could sound the people who controlled the company and find out if they would be willing to consider anything of the kind. He advised me that they were not disposed to do so, and the company was reorganized in the fall of 1907, and thereafter became known as the Ansco Company. At the annual meeting of the Ansco Company, held in March, 1908, a statement was submitted to the stockholders showing that the company had a very small amount of cash on hand, something less than a thousand dollars, so that during all these years none of the companies that had the Latham patent were in a position to maintain their rights under it.

1956

1955

Q13. You have stated that you approached other parties with a plan for forming some combination under the Latham patents. Was this for the purpose of exploiting the patents under some joint arrangement by which you could realize something from them?

A. We thought if we could put them into the hands of people who were not so occupied as we were that they could be made a source of profit to our company.

Q14. Were these efforts made during the period to which you have referred, namely, from 1902 to 1906 or 7?

A. No, it was in 1902, shortly after the patent was issued that we took it up actively, then after that time we were too busy with the other matters I have referred to.

Q15. Could your company from any resources at its command or under its control, have borne the expense of litigation under the Latham patent at any time subsequent to the date when the banks stopped your credit?

A. No.

Q16. The E. & H. T. Anthony & Company and its successors, the Anthony & Scovill Company and the Ansco Company up to the time of the annual meeting of 1908 to which you have referred were, so far as you are informed, in practically a state of bankruptcy, were they not?

A. The E. & H. T. Anthony Company was not, but the Anthony & Scovill Company were, the Ansco Company were not bankrupt but had no resources.

Q17. When you say the E. & H. T. Anthony & Company were not financially embarrassed, do you refer to the period before or after its business and assets had been turned over to the Anthony & Scovill Company?

A. Before.

Q18. And what was the date of the organization of the Anthony & Scovill Company when it took over the business of the E. & H. T. Anthony & Company?

1958

A. They assumed at that time the obligations that I and others had incurred under the Goodwin contract. That was in November, I think, of 1901.

Recess.

IT IS AGREED by counsel that the signature to the deposition of E. W. Kleinert heretofore taken in this cause may be waived.

Cross-examination by Mr. Ward:

1961

XQ19. In answer to Q8 you state that we paid the expenses of the interference referring to the Castler vs. Armat Latham Interference. Will you please state what company you are there referring to?

A. I believe it began while we were running under the name of E. & H. T. Anthony & Co. Probably some of those expenses were paid later by the Anthony & Scovill Company.

XQ20. Who finally took over all of Mr. Latham's interest in the patent, the E. & H. T. Anthony Company or the Anthony Scovill Company?

1962

A. The E. & H. T. Anthony Company took the title for the application from Mr. Latham.

XQ21. Is it a fact that this company received Mr. Latham's share of the application of the patent in suit in payment of certain notes amounting to about \$250 that this company held of Mr. Latham's?

A. I think that referred to the smooth roller patent, and that was the Anthony & Scovill Company.

XQ22. What do you mean by the smooth roller patent?

A. There were two patents, the one referred to in this suit was the one that controlled the loop idea and was used with a perforated film, the smooth roller did not use the perforated film.

XQ23. Are you positive that the transaction mentioned in my XQ21 did not relate to the patent in suit?

A. My recollection is that we made an agreement with Latham about that patent before it was issued. We did advance him some money, but I think it was more than \$250.

XQ24. If I should tell you that Mr. Latham has stated that the transaction referred to patent in suit, would it change your opinion in regard to this matter any?

A. I should think my recollection was as good as his.

XQ25. Did Mr. Latham ever receive anything from either of your companies as the result of the agreement which you have mentioned and under which you believed you took title to the patent?

A. Yes, we advanced him money at the time we made that arrangement.

XQ26. About how much?

A. My impression is that it was \$500 or \$1,000. XQ27. Did he ever get anything after this at all?

A. Not in connection with that patent.

XQ28. You stated in answer to Q10 that you notified the Mutoscope and the Edison Companies that they were infringing this patent in suit. Do you recall when and how this notice was given?

A. It was a short time after the patent was issued and in writing.

Mr. Ward: In view of the witness's answer the answer to Q10 is now objected to as secondary evidence. This objection being

1964

timely under agreement between counsel, counsel for defendant not being present at the direct examination.

XQ29. What was the answer from these companies to your threats of infringement?

A. The representatives of these companies met by an arrangement made through Mr. Phillips Abbot, who was our patent solicitor and we had several conferences with them at our office in New York. The suggestion was made at the time we notified them that arrangements might be made to pool the interests and as a result of that the conferences were held.

XQ30. That is, these threats contained also a suggestion that the interests might be pooled?

A. Yes.

XQ31. At this interview were you not unable to persuade the representatives of these companies that there was sufficient danger from this patent to warrant pooling on their part or ceasing infringing?

1968

1967

Mr. Page: Objected to as irrelevant and immaterial and as calling for a conclusion rather than a fact.

A. There were several interviews and the Mutoscope people were very much in favor of pooling the interests but Edison did not wish it, and I believe that at that time there was rather an unfriendly feeling between the Edison people and the Mutoscope people which made it difficult to bring them into an arrangement that would have them working together. XQ32. And these were the only threats you made against infringers of the patent in suit?

A. After that time I saw Mr. Edison personally and talked with him about patents. He told me that he did not believe in pooling the interests, that he did not think there was a very great future for the moving picture business. There was another party, I think, in Chicago, I have forgotten his name, who was infringing and I am under the impression that he wrote him.

XQ33. Did you know that Mr. Thomas Armat and Mr. C. Francis Jenkins were using a loop at this time?

1970

Counsel for complainant asks at what time.

Mr. Ward: I refer to the time at which you threatened the Edison and Mutoscope Companies.

Mr. Page: Question objected to as inferring a state of fact which is not shown existed and which is confidently believed from somewhat complete knowledge on the subject not to have existed. The Latham patent was granted in 1902, and the only evidence in this case with respect to the use by Thomas Armat refers to the years 1895, or possibly 1896.

Mr. Ward: Counsel for complainant replies that this is cross-examination, and does not believe that every fact cross-examined on has to be proved in this record.

A. I remember hearing that Armat had formed a corporation to manufacture these moving picture machines and I recall that there was a Mr. Jen-

kins who had something to do with the business at one time, but I do not recall that they ever amounted to anything or that they marketed their machines commercially.

XQ34. Is the party in Chicago to whom you referred Mr. George Klein?

A. I have forgotten his name.

XQ35. How long had the Anthony & Scovill Company taken over title to this patent in suit before it became interested in the Goodwin patent to which you have referred?

1973

A. It was at the same time.

XQ36. You took title to both patents at the same time?

A. Yes.

XQ37. And you commenced suit on the Goodwin patent about how long after this?

A. Just about a year.

XQ38. Why was it that you commenced suit on the Goodwin patent and not on the patent in suit, having previous to this time called attention of the Edison Company and Mutoscope Company to their infringement?

1974

A. The Godwin contract obliged us to begin suit against infringers and the film business was developed with a large demand for films and it was an article on which there was a large profit made. The moving picture business was not an important item to us, it had not been developed to its present proportions and was not at all vital to our business, whereas the films were because we could not get any films to supply our cameras unless we made them ourselves and it was more important to us to get the control of the manufacture of films than the control of the moving picture business.

XQ39. In other words, you regarded the machine

of the patent in suit as a rather unimportant component of your business at that time?

A. Yes. It was not at all necessary that we have a moving picture machine but it was very necessary that we should have a film to supply the dealers who bought their goods of us because the Eastman Company would not supply dealers with their films if they bought our cameras.

XQ40. The attention and energy of your company was concentrated on the Goodwin patent matters?

A. No, at the time that we formed the Anthony & Scovill Company we took over the business of the Columbia Paper Company which was a large concern manufacturing photographic papers located at Westfield, Massachusetts. That company manufactured raw paper from the rag, afterwards sensitized it, and cut it up for sale. They manufactured a gaslight paper known as Cyko, a platinum paper, backing paper and a cheap collodion paper and the necessary chemicals to use with them, so that we had that business to develop as well as the film business and we had built a factory in Binghamton the previous year for manufacturing collodion paper; all these articles were very necessary in our business so that we could supply a dealer with anything he wanted and make him independent of the Eastman Company.

XQ41. If your patent had been regarded by your company and the trade at that time as of considerable value, do you not believe that you could have arranged to bring suit against some of those infringers?

Mr. Page: Objected to as calling for a mere conclusion and not a fact.

Mr. Ward: Counsel for defendant is ask-

1976

1979

ing this witness for his belief as to what he would have done under certain facts, he having previously testified as to his opinion on different facts.

Mr. Page: Counsel for complainant submits that this does not obviate the objection. It is quite competent for the counsel to elicit facts and to argue from those facts or ask the Court to draw conclusions based upon them. It is not only irrelevant and immaterial what the witness's beliefs in the case may be but it is not competent to inquire into them in the absence of full knowledge of the facts on which they are based.

Mr. Ward: If counsel for complainant believes the question not to be proper, and seeks to save time he can instruct the witness not to answer the same, and let the Court decide the propriety of the question, rather than argue on the record. Counsel for the defendant believes he is in the proper bounds of cross-examination.

1980

A. We regarded the patent as of considerable value and would have brought suit under it but for that fact that we had two litigations under way and that our energies were directed so largely to bringing our new combinations into working order. We made no attempt to get any outside parties to bring suit as we had never asked any outside help of this kind.

XQ42. Did you try and interest outside capital in the Goodwin suits?

A. No.

XQ43. Neither the Anthony & Scovill Company nor the Ansco Company between the issuance of the patent in 1902, and the date at which you severed your connection with the Company, 1906, attempted to interest outside capital in the patent in suit with a view of suing infringers?

A. No, the only thing we attempted to do was to make a combination with the Mutoscope and the Edison people, we proposed to them that a company should be formed to take over the title of the patents belonging to these different parties and that that company should undertake their defence and manufacture the machines as we were not able to give the time to this ourselves.

1982

XQ44. In what year was this proposed pool that you speak of?

A. It was in 1902, a short time after the patent was issued.

XQ45. Do you know whether or not the Ansco Company between 1906, the date at which you severed your connection with the company and the date of the stockholders' meeting of 1908 to which you have referred, made any attempt to interest outside capital with an intention of bringing a suit on the patent in suit?

1983

A. The Ansco Company had not been formed when I left; it was not formed until October, 1907. The Anthony & Scovill Company from the middle of 1903 until the Ansco Company was formed was under the control of the committee of bankers who held the obligations of the company. They would not allow any further litigation to be commenced not would they bring in outside parties. They were assisting the company as they thought that it could get upon its feet again and when they found that it would be more desirable to reorganize, the new company was formed in 1907, and at the first meeting held in 1908, the new company did not

have very much cash and neither company was in a position to spend any money themselves on any litigation which could be avoided nor were they in a position that would induce outside people to put any money in their venture, so it was unnecessary to attempt to do something that would not be very likely to be successful. I might add that they did not make any effort to get any capital to conduct any litigation.

1985

Mr. Ward: All but the last sentence objected to as irresponsive.

XQ46. Do you know how long after you notified the Edison and Mutoscope Companies and the Chicago party that you spoke of, they continued to manufacture moving picture apparatus infringement of the patent in suit?

A. I think they kept right along until they were brought together by that combination called the Motion Picture Patents Company.

XQ47. Do you know what year it was?

A. I think it was last year that I heard of the formation of the company.

Cross-examination closed.

Deposition closed.

Adjourned to Friday, July 7, 1911, 11 a. m.

Signature waived.

New York, July 20, 1911, 11 a. m.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present—Counsel as before.

THOMAS W. STEPHENS, a witness called on behalf of complainant, having been first duly sworn, deposes as follows:

Q1. Please state your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Thomas W. Stephens, 44 years of age, banker, Montclair, New Jersey.

Q2. Are you connected in any way with the Ansco Company, and if so, how long have you held any official position in that Company?

A. I have been the President of the Ansco Company since its formation October 1, 1907.

Q3. Prior to that time, were you connected in any way with the Anthony & Scovill Company, predecessors of the Ansco Company?

A. I was President of the Anthony & Scovill Company.

Q4. Have you read the deposition of Frederick A. Anthony, a witness for complainant in this 1989 cause?

A. I have but very hurriedly.

Q5. Mr. Anthony states that he severed his connection with the Anthony & Scovill Company in February, 1906. Will you please state what was the financial condition of the Anthony & Scovill Company and its successor, the Ansco Company, from that date up to February, 1908, and the ability of these companies to carry on suits for infringement against infringers of the Latham patent, 707,-934, which is in suit in this case and which, as appears, was at that period owned by the companies named?

By Mr. Eyre:

Objected to as calling for a conclusion and opinion and as not the best evidence.

A. The financial condition of these companies at the time you indicate, was, to say the least, chaotic, and being closely in touch with the financial side of the business I can say without fear of contradiction that they had no money for the purpose named.

1991

Q6. How long was it after February, 1906, when Mr. Anthony resigned as an officer of the Anthony & Scovill Company that the financial condition described by him in his testimony existed as a bar to the prosecution of such suits for infringement?

By Mr. Eyre:

Objected to as improper, it not appearing that this witness has sufficiently examined Anthony's testimony to know just what Anthony testified on this subject or that he would agree with Mr. Anthony's statements. This witness should state the facts himself.

1992

A. That condition was in existence at the time this patent was disposed of and to my great regret, continued to exist for more than a year after. As I stated, in answering a previous question, I have paid close attention to the financial side of both of these companies since becoming President and as a lender of money to both companies, know full well what their financial condition was.

Q7. Do you know whether these companies, through you as an officer, or others ever made any efforts to dispose of the Latham patent in question

prior to its purchase by the Mutoscope Company, and if so, will you state what such efforts were?

By Mr. Eyre:

Objected to as secondary except in so far as it calls for the witness's own efforts.

A. Negotiations for the sale of this patent were conducted on behalf of these companies entirely by myself and in addition to the negotiations with the American Mutoscope & Biograph Company I negotiated on several occasions with Mr. Frank L. Dyer, representing the Edison Company. In fact, thought it much more likely that this patent would be sold to Mr. Dyer rather than to the American Mutoscope & Biograph Company. I might go further and say that the sale of this patent was a part of my plan to improve the financial condition of my companies.

Q8. Were you aware that the application for this Latham patent, while pending in the Patent Office, was involved in an Interference?

A. I was, but, of course, not until after it was all over.

Q9. Did you at any time make any efforts to find any of the exhibits which were used and filed on behalf of Latham in that Interference and if so, will you state what steps you took and what facts you ascertained with regard to these exhibits?

A. I caused repeated efforts to be made to find these exhibits, and after a most through investigation, learned that in cleaning up the storage department of one of our plants in Binghamton, the mechanical exhibits to which you refer, were inadvertently burned with a lot of junk, the accumu-

1994

lation of a number of years. There were certain paper exhibits which I was able to find in the files of the company which were turned over to counsel for complainant. I may state that I have been advised by at least two of my associate officers, that they distinctly remember seeing these exhibits on numerous occasions when passing through the department in which they were stored but that as they had been there so long, they were considered of no value.

1997

By Mr. Eyre:

The last portion of the answer is objected to as hearsay.

Direct-examination closed.

Cross-examination by Mr. Eyre:

XQ10. During the entire period you have referred to, your company was carrying on a patent suit brought by it for infringement of the Goodwin patent for photographic film, was it not?

1998

A. I think the Goodwin suit was begun in 1902, but I am not prepared to say that during all the period from the time of the issue of the Latham patent up to the time of its sale, we were engaged in prosecuting the Goodwin suit.

XQ11. Well, this Goodwin suit was being prosecuted at the expense of your company from 1902 on

to the present day?

A. Yes, for the reason that the Goodwin patent covers an article absolutely necessary and germane to our business, as without the sale of films the line would be incomplete and it would be next to impossible to conduct the business.

XQ12. Isn't it fair to say that when you testified that you could say, without fear of contradiction, that at no time did your company have money to spend upon a suit in the Latham patent, you in substance meant that considering the financial condition of the company and taking everything else into consideration, it would have been bad business judgment to divert any of the money the company had from other things to the conducting of such a suit?

A. I should not regard it in that light, for the reason that the company had no money whatever for the prosecution of these litigations except as it could borrow it, and as a large lender to the company I was unwilling to do anything more than to prosecute the Goodwin litigation upon which so much had already been spent and upon which so much depended.

XQ13. When did you make the search, or rather have it made, for the exhibits in the Latham Interference?

A. We began to search for everything we had bearing upon the Latham patents at the time I personally took up negotiations for the sale of the Latham patent which must have been at least a year to eighteen months prior to the date of sale.

XQ14. When did you succeed in finding the paper exhibits?

A. During the progress of the search, the actual time as nearly as I can locate it from memory being from 2 to $2\frac{1}{2}$ years ago, we found, as I recollect, from advices from my associate officers at Binghamton, stored away in some old boxes of papers, a number of foreign patents covering the Latham invention and correspondence relating

2000

2003

thereto, also the exhibits which were turned over to counsel, as before stated.

XQ15. When did you turn over these Interference exhibits to counsel?

A. I should say within the last six months.

XQ16. How did you turn them over by letter or personally?

A. I think on cleaning up my desk on one occasion, I found a lot of old papers which meant but little to me, bearing on the Latham patent, having disposed of it, and was about to throw them away but concluded before doing so to call up Mr. Kennedy, President of the Biograph Company, which I did, remembering that at the time his company had acquired this patent I had promised to give to him anything I might have bearing upon it. He asked me to turn these papers over to the company's patent counsel, and if I remember correctly, suggested that I send them to Mr. Page or that he would have Mr. Page call for them. any event, Mr. Page did call within a few days, at which time I think I gave him such papers bearing upon the case as he wanted.

2004

XQ17. Did you give him all the old Interference exhibits that you had found?

A. Yes.

XQ18. Prior to your calling up Mr. Kennedy you had not been asked by anyone connected with the present complainant or his counsel for any of the Latham Interference Exhibits or to make a search therefor had you?

A. I don't think so. I had gone over these papers in a casual way as one does with papers which accumulate, but as they meant little or nothing to me and our companies had parted with the

patents, I considered them of no value and expected they would some day find their way into the waste basket.

XQ19. If I understand you correctly, somewhere about 2 to $2\frac{1}{2}$ years ago, you searched for these exhibits and found the paper exhibits. Why didn't you turn them over with the sale of the patent?

A. At the time of the sale of the patent I remember saying to Mr. Kennedy that in view of the vicissitudes of the Anthony & Scoville Company and the fact that its general offices and business had been removed from No. 122 Fifth Avenue to Binghamton, necessitating the shipping of from 10 to 15 carloads of merchandise and equipment to say nothing of books of account and papers running back over a long period of years, it was quite likely that stored away somewhere in all this accumulation there might be papers bearing upon the Latham patent and that I would endeavor from time to time as we might run across them, to gather them together for him, if they were ever needed. Instructions were then given to my associates at Binghamton to be on the lookout for such papers, from which time, whenever anything bearing upon the case came to the surface, it was sent to me. hence the accumulation of these papers on my Occasionally when I would meet Mr. Kennedy I would remark that I was picking up odds and ends of papers bearing upon the Latham case and that they were accumulating on my desk. Doubtless it was the recollection of these conversations which prompted me to telephone him as I did, as about once in every so often I have a fit of cleaning up my desk, being a crank on that subject.

XQ20. But I understood that you found these

2006

2009

paper exhibits some years ago but did not call up Kennedy until within the last six months. Have I misunderstood your testimony, or, if not, why didn't you turn them over when you found them?

A. You apparently have not misunderstood my testimony as it seems to be perfectly clear, that when these papers came to me, I did not recognize them as exhibits. In fact, I do not know if I should know an exhibit if I saw it. In my previous statement, when referring to having caused to be made searches, I meant searches for anything having to do with the Latham matter but the exhibits or papers used in the Latham Interference were not specifically in my mind.

XQ21. Have you any means of ascertaining whether it was before or after April 6 of this year that you advised Mr. Page that you had these Interference exhibits?

A. I have not at the moment, but if there was correspondence between Mr. Page and myself that should show the dates.

XQ22. When were the mechanical exhibits burned?

2010 A

A. This clean up of stuff supposed to be of no value must have occurred shortly after the removal to Binghamton five or six years ago.

XQ22. So far as the legal title record of the patent in suit is concerned, it would seem that the application passed to the E. & H. T. Anthony & Company before the patent issued which was August 26, 1902, and that it did not pass to the Anthony & Scovill Company until February 5, 1908, the same day that the latter Company transferred the patent to American Mutoscope & Biograph Company. I understand, however, from the testimony that the Anthony & Scovill Company took over

the E. & H. T. Anthony & Company in 1901. Am I right in understanding that you have considered the matter as if the Anthony & Scovill Company had owned the patent or invention from the time it took over the E. & H. T. Anthony business?

A. Anthony & Scovill Company in 1901, became the owner of the stock of the E. & H. T. Anthony

Company.

XQ23. So that the Anthony & Scovill Company had full control and indirectly entire ownership of the Latham patent during its entire life up to February 5, 1908?

A. Yes.

Cross-examination closed.

Deposition closed.

Signature waived.

Recess.

2013

2012

PARKER W. PAGE, a witness on behalf of the complainant, having been first duly sworn, deposes as follows:

I am of mature age. I am a member of the firm of Kerr, Page, Cooper & Hayward, counsel for the complainant in this cause and I have had personal charge of the conduct of this case since its inception.

In view of certain of the proceedings in this case and statements made by me as counsel for complainant on the record, I make the following statement:

In the early spring of the present year, when the defendant had put in its testimony with regard to prior patents and publications, I took steps to secure proofs of the dates when the invention of the patent in suit had been made by Mr. Latham. For this purpose I went through the files of the interference Latham vs. Casler vs. Armat in the United States Patent Office and also employed a Mr. Hutchinson of Washington to examine the files of the appeal of this interference in the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia. I found nothing in the Patent Office files except testimony, stipulations, orders, &c., and Mr. Hutchinson reported to me that the records of the Court of Appeals showed that all of the exhibits which had been offered on behalf of Latham in the interference had been withdrawn after the decision of the case by Mr. Henry A. Seymour of Washington, D. C. I wrote to Mr. Seymour inquiring about this and was informed by him that he had shipped the exhibits in question to Mr. Phillips Abbott of New York. I had a conference with Mr. Abbott over the telephone about the matter and he asked me to write to him a definite statement as to what was wanted and on April 8, 1911, in compliance with this request, I wrote to Mr. Abbott, asking him to institute a search for the missing exhibits. This appears in a letter of April 8, 1911, which I find on page 417 of one of the letter books of my firm.

Mr. Abbott informed me by letter that he did not recall the incidents but sent me a copy of a letter from his files from which it appeared that the exhibits had been turned over to the Anthony & Scovill Company. I thereupon secured from Mr. H.

2015

N. Marvin a letter of introduction to Mr. Thomas W. Stephens of No. 2 Wall Street, New York City, who was connected with the Anthony & Scovill Company and called on that gentleman and asked him to have a search made for these exhibits. Mr. Stephens asked me to send him a statement of exactly what was wanted and this I did as appears from a copy of a letter signed by me on April 20, 1911, which I find on page 550 of the same firm letter book above referred to.

In the meantime, I had been carrying on investi-

gations through different parties in an endeavor to find some trace of Woodville Latham and his sons, Otway and Gray Latham. I think as early as the fall of 1910, I had employed a Mr. Raphael Netter of New York who was acquainted with Latham and had done some work for him to look him up, and after some weeks or months, Netter reported to me that Latham and his two sons, Otway and Gray, were all dead. As he could secure no legal proof of this fact, I employed on the recommendation of Mr. Marvin, a Mr. Edmond Congar Brown of New York City, who had formerly, as I understood it, acted as attorney or counsel for Mr. Latham. I requested Mr. Brown to ascertain all that he could about the Lathams and if he found that they were dead, to secure the proper evidence of that fact. Sometime after that, I think, in March or the early part of April, Mr. Brown reported to me that Woodville Latham was dead; that both of his sons, Otway and Gray Latham, were also dead but that he had a son employed in a drug house in New York and a sister whose address he gave me, living in Washington. I found upon personal inquiry that the son

supposed to be in the drug business, was also dead, and about the 20th of April, I sent Mr. S. S. Dun-

2018

2021

ham of this office to Washington to look up Mr. Latham's sister and to make arrangements to take her testimony with regard to the death of her brother and his two sons, Otway and Gray. Mr. Dunham returned to New York on April 22nd and reported having seen Mr. Latham's sister and having ascertained from her that her brother Woodville Latham was alive and in New York. I immediately went up to 116th Street where I found Mr. Latham living in a little room about 6 feet by 8, in an extremely feeble condition and wholly dependent upon charity. I immediately communicated this discovery to Mr. Stephens and to defendant's counsel and arranged with the latter to take Mr. Latham's testimony on April 25th.

On the morning of that day or a few days thereafter I called at Mr. Stephens' office before going up to attend to the taking of Mr. Latham's deposition and was handed by Mr. Stephens some newspaper clippings and copies of other papers which appeared to have been used as exhibits in the Latham-Casler-Armat-Interference and all of which I offered as exhibits in this cause.

2022

I make this statement for the purpose of showing that I assumed, as I had every reason to believe up to the 22nd day of April, 1911, that Mr. Latham and his two sons, Otway and Gray, were dead. The press copy book containing the correspondence to which I had referred is at the disposal of counsel for defendant.

Cross-examination by Mr. Eyre:

XQ1. I understand that the first step you took to look up the exhibits in the interference was to have Mr. Hutchinson look through the interference files and reports and that upon receiving his report, the next step was your letter to Mr. Seymour. Is that correct?

A. No, I personally made the search in the Patent Office and then when I found nothing there, I got Hutchinson to go to the Court of Appeals record and he reported to me after his examination that Seymour had withdrawn the exhibits. I then wrote to Seymour.

XQ2. When did you write to Seymour?

A. I wrote to Seymour on April 6, 1911, as appears from a press copy of a letter signed by me bearing that date and reproduced on page 386 of the letter book.

XQ3. I call your attention to the statement you made on the record on April 7th of this case following XQ283 of Lauste deposition and ask you if you do not want to make a somewhat further explanation than you have made in view of the fact that you had not written to Mr. Seymour or apparently to anyone else in the matter before April 6th.

A. I find the letter from Mr. Hutchinson under date of April 6th, 1911, in which he informs me that the exhibits were returned to Mr. Seymour of Washington some time during the year 1901. This was in reply to a letter of mine dated April 4, 1911, to Hutchinson, asking him to make a search for the exhibits and on April 6, 1911, I wrote to Seymour a letter containing the following statement: "My best information is that the exhibits or at least some of them were sent to the Anthony & Scovill Company or the Ansco Company as it was afterwards called, who owned at that time the Latham application." My recollection is that this information about the return of the exhibits to the Anthony

2024

& Scovill Company and their destruction was obtained in a conversation I had with Mr. Phillips Abbott who happened to be in my office some time before the dates named. I know that for some time prior to this I had been looking for these exhibits and had some correspondence with Mr. Marvin about them and I got this information either from Marvin or Abbott, I do not recall which. I only know that I had been looking for the exhibits for a long time prior to making arrangements to getting the witnesses Lauste and Dickson from Europe to testify on behalf of the complainant, and that I had been unsuccessful in locating any of them. I did not know that the Anthony & Scovill or the Ansco Company was in existence or anything more about it than that it was some company that at one time owned the Latham patents.

2027

Cross-examination closed.

Deposition closed.

Signature waived.

2028

Adjourned to Monday, July 31, 1911, at 11 A. M.

New York, August 18th, 1911.

Met pursuant to agreement.

Counsel same as before,

Complainant's counsel now offers in evidence a copy of the bill of the Boston Gear Works, reproduced on page 344 of this record, and the same is now "Complainant's Exhibit, Bill of Boston Gear Works, January 7, 1895, B.B., Ex'r."

It is stipulated and agreed that the said copy may be used in evidence with the same force and effect as the original, had the latter been produced and duly proved.

Complainant's counsel also offers in evidence a copy of the bill referred to in Q55 of the deposition of Woodville Latham herein, and the same is marked "Complainant's Exhibit, Eastman Kodak Company Bill of February 18, 1895, B.B., Ex'r."

It is stipulated and agreed that the said copy is a true copy of a bill sent by the Eastman Kodak Company to Woodville Latham on February 18, 1895, and that it may be used in evidence with the same force and effect as the original, had the latter been produced and duly proved.

Complainant's counsel also offers in evidence a copy of a bill from the Eastman Kodak Company to Woodville Latham, dated April 5, 1895, and the same is marked "Complainant's Exhibit, Eastman Kodak Company Bill of April 5, 1895, B.B., Ex'r."

It is stipulated and agreed that the said copy is a true copy of the bill sent by the Eastman Kodak Company to Woodville Latham on April 5, 1895, and that it may be used in evidence with the same force and effect as the original, had the latter been produced and duly proved.

2030

2032

Complainant's counsel also offers in evidence a copy of a bill from the Eastman Kodak Company to Woodville Latham, dated April 27, 1895, and the same is marked "Complainant's Exhibit, Eastman Kodak Company Bill of April 27, 1895, B.B., Ex'r."

It is stipulated and agreed that the said copy is a true copy of a bill sent by the Eastman Kodak Company to Woodville Latham on April 27, 1895, and that it may be used in evidence with the same force and effect as the original, had the latter been produced and duly proved.

2033

The objection heretofore made to Complainant's Exhibits, "Latham Depositions in Armat Interference," offered in connection with Q7 of the deposition of Woodville Latham, in so far only as such objection was based upon and applies to the fact that uncertified copies of the said depositions were offered, is hereby withdrawn, and it is agreed between counsel, all other objections to said exhibits being understood to remain in force, that the said copies so offered on behalf of complainant may, subject to correction at any time hereafter should error appear, be used in lieu of duly certified copies, and with the same evidential force and effect.

2034

Complainant's counsel now offers in evidence for the purpose of showing the issues involved and determined in the interference Latham vs. Armat, hereinbefore referred to, a certified copy of the decision of the Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia in said interference and the same is marked "Complainant's Exhibit, Decision of Court of Appeals in Armat Interference. B.B., Ex'r."

IN THE

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT,

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Plaintiff,

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTUR-ING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, AND PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY, INC.,

Defendants.

In Equity, No. 12-194. 2036

PETITION FOR REHEARING.

And now comes the plaintiff, Motion Picture Patents Company, by its counsel, and prays that a rehearing be granted in this cause for errors of law in the rulings of the Court at the trial, and alleges as specific ground therefor:

2037

FIRST.—That the Court erred, in matter of law, in holding, broadly, that where a patent-owner sells and delivers a machine embodying the invention covered by his patent, with a restriction as to its use, brought home to the purchaser at the time of the sale, such restriction is invalid and void and may be disregarded by the purchaser.

SECONDLY.—That the Court erred, in matter of law, in holding that when the plaintiff in this cause

licensed another to manufacture and sell a machine embodying the invention covered by the patent in suit, under the restriction, brought home to the purchaser at the time of sale, that the purchaser should have the right to use the machine only upon such terms as to royalty, etc., the plaintiff should impose, that such restriction is invalid and void, and that the purchaser, after the delivery of the machine to him, may use it without restriction and as he sees fit without being an infringer of the plantiff's rights under its patent.

2039

THIRDLY.—That the Court erred, in matter of law, in holding that the *test* of the patent-owner's loss of all right to restrict, at the time of sale, the use of a specimen of the machine sold by him embodying the invention of the patent was his inability to recapture such machine by an action of replevin.

Wherefore, your petitioner respectfully prays that a rehearing of the cause be granted and an opportunity be given to counsel for both sides to present oral arguments on the aforesaid points of law.

2040

And your petitioner will ever pray, etc.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,

By H. N. Marryin,

President.

We hereby certify that in our opinion the foregoing petition is well founded in point of law and in point of fact, and is not presented for delay.

> GEORGE F. SCULL, MELVILLE CHURCH, Counsel for Plaintiff.

STATEMENT OF FACTS.

I. The plaintiff, Motion Picture Patents Company as the owner of the Latham patent No. 707, 034, dated August 26, 1902, for Improvements in Projecting Machines (being the patent in suit), on June 20, 1912, granted to The Precision Machine Company, a license "to manufacture and sell" "motion picture exhibiting or projecting machines"

"under the restriction and condition that such exhibiting or projecting machines shall be used (1) solely for exhibiting or projecting motion pictures containing the inventions of reissued Letters Patent No. 12,192 leased by a licensee of the licensor while it owns said patents and (2) upon other terms to be fixed by the licensor and complied with by the user while the said machine is in use and while the licensor owns said patents (which other terms shall only be the payment of a royalty or rental to the licensor while in use)."

II. The license also provided that:

2043

"The licensee further covenants and agrees that the licensee will attach in a conspicuous place to each and every such exhibiting or projecting machine of the licensee's manufacture, sold by the licensee, except for export, after the date hereof, a plate showing plainly not only the dates of the letters patent under which the said machine is licensed, but also the following words and figures:

"Serial No.
Patented

No.

The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of reissued patent No. 12,192 leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company and complied by the user while it is in use and while the Motion Picture Patents Company owns said patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the right to use this machine."

III. The license further provided that the licensee should pay:

"On each such machine capable of exhibiting or projecting by transmitted light, motion pictures on film of a width greater than approximately one inch (1 in.), a royalty of five dollars (\$5.00)."

2046

2045

IV. The machine (Defendant's Exhibit No. 3, Simplex Machine) whose use is charged by the plaintiff to have been an infringement of plaintiff's patent, in suit, was made and sold by The Precision Machine Company under its license aforesaid and bears a plate upon which is inscribed the restrictions under which the machine may be used, in the exact words of the said license, the matter on the plate reading, in full, as follows:

MFR'S SERIAL NO. SPECIAL LICENSE NO. 3667

3556 Made

SIMPLEX

by THE PRECISION MACHINE CO.

PATENTED.

No. 578,185, March 2, 1897, No. 580,749, April 13, 1897, No. 586,953, July 20, 1897, No. 673,-329, April 30, 1901, No. 673,992, May 14, 1901, No. 707,934, Aug. 26, 1902, No. 722,382, March 10, 1903.

2048

The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of reissued patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company, and complied with by the user while it is in use and while the Motion Picture Patents Company owns said patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the right to use this machine.

2049

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS CO., New York, N. Y., U. S. A.

V. The said machine (Defendant's Exhibit No. 3, Simplex Machine), was purchased by defendant, Prague Amusement Company, with the said plate upon it bearing the dates and numbers of the patents under which it was licensed and the notice

of the restrictions under which the machine might be used.

VI. The defendant, Prague Amusement Company, in utter disregard of the said restrictions as to use, proceeded to use the said machine (1) in connection with motion pictures furnished by the defendants, Universal Film Mfg. Co., and Universal Film Exchange of New York, neither of which concerns was or is a licensee of Motion Picture Patents Company;* and (2) without compliance with the "other terms to be fixed by Motion Picture Patents Company," to-wit, "the payment of a royalty or rental to the licensor while in use," as provided in the license under which the machine was sold.

VII. Upon this state of facts, the Court, at the trial, ruled that the defendant, Prague Amusement Company, by its purchase of the machine put out by The Precision Machine Company, under the authority and license of the plaintiff as the owner of the patent, acquired the absolute right of property in and the legal possession to the machine and that all the restrictions as to the use of the machine attempted to be imposed by the plaintiff were invalid, void and of none effect; and, furthermore, that the test of the relinquishment, in point of law, of the plaintiff's dominion over the machine as patent-owner, was to be found in the fact that neither the plaintiff nor The Precision Machine

*Note.—We have not herein discussed the legality of the provision of the license restricting the use of the machine to a use in connection with motion pictures supplied by a licensee of the Patents Company, although such restriction is, we submit, valid under Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1; Bement vs. National Harrow Co., 186 U. S., 89, 95, and Heaton Pen. B. F. Co. vs. Eureka Specialty Co., 77 Fed., 288.

2051

Company, could, in the circumstances of the sale, recover back lawful possession of the machine by the action of replevin.

ARGUMENT.

I. The rulings of the Court, were, we respectfully submit, based upon the mistaken conception that the sale, by the owner of a patent of a specimen of the patented machine and the delivery of such machine into the possession of the purchaser necessarily transfers to the purchaser all of the patentowner's rights not only in the property and possession of the machine itself but also all his rights in his patent, so far as that particular machine is concerned.

2054

The error of the Court is based upon the assumption that the patent-owner's property rights in his patent and his property rights in a physical embodiment of the patented invention are identical. when, the fact is, they are quite distinct and separable and are constantly so treated by the law.

II. According to Blackstone, all property may 2055 be classed, largely, as hereditaments.

"Hereditaments then, to use the largest expression, are of two kinds, corporeal and incorporeal. Corporeal consist of such as affect the senses; such as may be seen and handled by the body; incorporeal are not the object of sensation, can neither be seen nor handled, are creatures of the mind, and exist only in contemplation."

Turning to more modern definitions, we find that:

"Property is again divided into corporeal and incorporeal. The former comprehends such property as is perceptible to the senses, as lands, houses, goods, merchandise and the like."

3 Bouvier's Law Dictionary, 2752; Rawle 3d Rev. (1914).

Again,-

2057

"Incorporeal Chattels. The incorporeal rights or interests growing out of personal property, such as copyrights and patent rights, stocks and personal annuities."

Ibid, Vol. 2, page 1528.

III. That the rights conferred by a patent are incorporeal rights has been judicially determined by the Supreme Court of the United States:

2058

"The privileges granted by letters patent are plainly an instance of an incorporeal kind of personal property which as personally, in the absence of context to the contrary, would go to the executor or administrator in trust for the next of kin."

> De la Vergne Machine Co. vs. Featherstone, 147 U. S., 209-222,—Fuller, C. J.

IV. In every sale made by the owner of a patent, or by one under his authority, of a machine embodying the patented invention, two distinct kinds of property are involved, that is to say, (1) cor-

poreal property or the physical machine itself, which is tangible and may be seen and handled; and (2) incorporeal property, or the owner's exclusive rights under the patent covering the machine, to-wit, the exclusive rights to make, to use and to sell the patented invention, which are intangible and may neither be seen or handled.

V. If a patent owner sells and delivers a specimen of the patented thing, as, for instance, a machine embodying the invention of the patent, without restriction as to use, the purchaser acquires, under such sale, the property and possession of the corporeal thing, the machine itself, and also, by implication, so much of the patent-owner's incorporeal right, i. e., the exclusive right of user, as will enable the purchaser to enjoy to the full the use of the corporeal thing purchased.

The law will imply no restriction as to use of the corporeal thing if the patent owner affirmatively imposes none.

VI. If, on the other hand, the patent owner sells a specimen of the corporeal patented thing, i. e., the machine embodying the invention of the patent, and, at the time of the sale, imposes, affirmatively, a positive restriction as to the use of the machine by the purchaser; or in other words, if the patent-owner restricts the use of his incorporeal property, i. e., the exclusive right of use secured to him by the patent—the purchaser, although he may properly be said to have the right of possession as well as the right of property in the machine itself—the corporeal thing—as such, acquires only so much of the patent-owner's incorporeal right—the exclusive right to use—as the

2060

patent-owner is pleased to grant him. In other words the purchaser acquires, not the unqualified use of the physical corporeal thing purchased, but only the restricted, qualified right of use of the same that the patent-owner has seen fit to part with.

2063

VII. It is no test that the purchaser, in the case last supposed, has acquired the unrestricted, unqualified right to the patent-owner's exclusive incorporeal right of user under the patent, that the patent-owner may not, by the writ of replevin, recapture and take again into his possession the physical machine sold to the purchaser, for the writ of replevin is only available to recover possession of corporeal, physical property, such as can be seized and handled by the sheriff, and is never available to secure the possession of intangible, incorporeal property, such as the "privileges" granted by letters patent," upon which the sheriff can not possibly lay his hands. (147 U. S., 209-222.)

2064

VIII. The right of property in and the right of possession to a corporeal specimen of the patented machine may well be in the purchaser of a patented machine sold with a restriction as to use, while the remainder of the patent-owner's exclusive incorporeal right of use may be retained by the patent-owner himself.

For instance, if the patent owner sells a machine for use only in a particular territory, or for a particular purpose, any use outside of the particular territory, or for a different purpose, will be an infringement of the patent-owner's retained right of use in all other places or for all other purposes.

In neither of the cases put, where the sale was accompanied by a limitation as to the place of use, or as to the purpose of use, would the patentowner be able to lawfully obtain possession of the machine sold, by writ of replevin, because, in each case, the purchaser would be in lawful possession of the corporeal machine, and have a perfect right of property therein and the right to use the same. despite the patent-owner, so long as the purchaser's use were confined to the territory prescribed, or to the purpose prescribed, by the patent-owner at the time of the sale*

2066

2067

In all of the above instances, where the right to make, or the right to use, or the right to sell is limited and circumscribed by the patent-owner, a making, or using, or selling, other than in the restricted and authorized way, is an infringement of the reserved incorporeal property right of the patent-owner, and

^{*}The existence of the patent-owners incorporeal exclusive rights to make, use and sell as things separate and distinct from any physical embodiment of the patented invention is recognized by the law in a variety of ways, as for instance,

⁽a) By the Statute itself, which provides:

[&]quot;Sec. 4898. Every patent or any interest therein shall be assignable in law by an instrument in writing, and the patentee or his assigns or legal representative may in like manner grant and convey an exclusive right under his patent to the whole or any specified part of the United States.

⁽b) By the fact that it has been held that the patent-owner may lawfully grant:

⁽¹⁾ The non-exclusive right to make, use and sell to a limitless number of individuals.

⁽²⁾ The right to make, use and sell at a specified place only.(3) The right to make and use, but not to sell.

⁽⁴⁾ The right to make and use for a specific purpose only, but not to sell.

⁽⁵⁾ The right to make and use at a specified place only, but not to sell.

⁽⁶⁾ The right to use only, but not to make or sell.

⁽⁷⁾ The right to use only at a specified place, but not to

make or sell.

(8) The right to use only for a specified purpose, but not to make or sell.

⁽⁹⁾ The right to use only for a specified purpose at a specified place, but not to make or sell.

⁽¹⁰⁾ The right to make, or to use, or to sell for a limited or specified time only.

IX. Again, the idea that a right of property in a machine embodying the invention covered by a patent, necessarily carries the right to use that machine, despite the patent-owner's exclusive incorporeal right of user conferred by the patent, is exploded when we contemplate what happens when a machine built without license and in infringement of the patent is found in the hands of a purchaser who is using the same, or, again, when we contemplate what happens when a machine in the hands of a purchaser who has the right to use it only at a specified place, but not to make or sell, is sold on execution by the sheriff in satisfaction of a judgment for debt. In these cases the title to the specific, physical corporeal machine is transferred to the purchaser, but he can not use it without infringement of the patentee's incorporeal rights. He may break up the machine and sell it for junk and pocket the proceeds, but, if he uses the machine, he is a tort feasor, violates the patentowner's rights, and may be enjoined and made to pay damages.

2069

2070

X. In his efforts to realize a profit from the exclusive privileges conferred by the patent, a patentowner may

 Make specimens of the patented machine and sell them outright, for a lump sum;

or

this reservation of right is not at all inconsistent with the right of property and the right of possession of the grantee, licensee or purchaser in and to the corporeal physical embodiments of the patented thing which he is authorized to have and to use in the authorized way, nor is it inconsistent with the patent-owner's lack of right to recapture from the grantee, licensee or purchaser, the said physical embodiments of the patented thing by the writ of replevin, because of his lack of right to the possession of such embodiments.

(2) He may make and sell machines and take payment for the same by way of royalty of so much per week, month or year.

If he himself does not manufacture and sell, he may authorize another to make and sell either (1) upon payment of a lump sum down; or (2) by way of royalty of so much per machine for the privilege; or he may authorize another to make and sell upon payment of a royalty of so much per machine, coupled with a restriction imposed upon every purchaser from him, that he use the machine only upon payment of a royalty to the patent-owner for the right to use.

In the case at bar, the Patents Company, as owner of the patents, has chosen to derive its compensation for the use of its patents wholly by way of royalties. Under its licensing system, it receives, from the licensed manufacturers of machines, a royalty of \$5 per machine made and sold, and from the exhibitors or users of such machines a further royalty of 50 cents per week per machine, for the use of the machines.

If it itself made and sold the machines it might, in accordance with settled practice, take its remuneration by way of a weekly royalty for use. Why may it not do the same thing where it licenses another to manufacture and sell for it and prescribes that the purchaser from the licensee may only use the machines under the same terms of royalty?*

2072

^{*}Leaving out of consideration the limitation as to the use of the machine with a particularly described film it will be noted that the plate on the machine distinctly states that the machine is only licensed for use webile other terms fixed by the Patents Company are complied with. In other words, the license to use conveyed to the purchaser on the purchase of the machine is concurrent with the payment of a royalty of 50 cents per week. When no royalty is paid no right to use exists.

XI. It is not, and can not be, denied that the purchaser from the licensed manufacturer obtains full title to the corporeal property in the machine purchased by him, nor that such machine can not be recaptured by the owner by the writ of replevin.

The machine is indubitably the property of the purchaser and the latter can not be deprived of the enjoyment of it, so long as it is used in the manner and under the restrictions prescribed, but when it is used in disregard of such restrictions and in a manner not authorized, its use becomes an infringing use and can be restrained.

2075

XII. It will thus be seen that while the plaintiff's system of selling with a restricted right of user, puts the legal title to the property in the corporeal, tangible thing sold, in the purchaser, and thereby prevents the recapture of that property by an action of replevin, it does not cause the plaintiff to part with all, but only with a part of the incorporeal right of exclusive use guaranteed by its patent; and that where the limited right of user is departed from by the purchaser, the latter, being without any right of use at all, save such as is expressly granted him, becomes as much of an infringer in respect of a use not permitted as if he had been accorded no right of use at all.

2076

XIII. It is respectfully submitted that this failure to keep in mind the distinction between the corporeal property of the purchaser in the machine itself and the separate, incorporeal right of the patent-owner in the *use* of the machine has lead the Court into the error of law complained of.

Counsel for plaintiff has been unable to find that this distinction between the corporeal and incorporeal rights involved in a sale of a patented article has ever before been presented to this Court and they therefore crave permission to present argument on the point at an oral hearing.

GEO F. SCULL,
MELVILLE CHURCH,
Counsel for Plaintiff.

December 29, 1915.

2078

Opinion.

DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTUR-ING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE and PRAGUE AMUSE-MENT COMPANY. 2079

Final hearing in Equity; action on Patent 707934.

GEORGE F. SCULL and MELVILLE CHURCH, Esqs., for Plaintiff;

OSCAR W. JEFFERY and EDMUND WETMORE, Esqs., for Defendants.

MEMORANDUM.

This decision is filed because the discussion at bar has not been preserved by the stenographer, and it seems advisable to put on file my reasons for decision in order that the decree may not be misleading.

The following facts appeared: Plaintiff is the owner by assignment, not only of the patent in suit, but of many other patents relating to what is commonly called the Moving Picture art.

2081

It entered into an agreement with the Precision Machine Company by which it gave the Machine Company "subject to the covenants, conditions and stipulations hereinafter expressed, the right and license * * * to manufacture and sell picture exhibiting or projecting machines embodying" the invention described in the patent in suit and many other patents. One of the covenants assumed by the Precision Company in respect of machines so sold was that it would "pay royalties as follows," viz.: \$5 on each machine of one type, and 3% of the "net retail selling price" on machines of other types.

2082

Under the contract this was the only royalty or remuneration collectible by the plaintiff herein from the Precision Company.

The latter company, however, further covenanted that every machine (of the type here presented) made by it "in the United States" should be "sold " " under the restriction and condition that such " " machine shall be used solely for exhibiting or projecting motion pictures containing the inventions of re-issued Letters Patent No. 12192, leased by a licensee of the (plaintiff herein) while it owns (the patent in suit), and upon other terms to be fixed by (the plaintiff herein) and com-

plied with by the user while the said machine is in use and while the (plaintiff owns the patent in suit),—which other terms shall only be the payment of a royalty or rental to the (plaintiff herein) while in use."

The Precision Company further agreed to attach on each machine so manufactured and sold, a plate showing the Letters Patent under which the said machine was licensed (including the patent in suit), and also the following legend:

"The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of Reissued Patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company and complied with by the user while it is in use and while the Motion Picture Patents Company owns said patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the right to use this machine."

2085

2084

Subsequent to the execution of this agreement Reissued Letters Patent 12,192 expired and the invention thereby covered became public property.

Subsequent to such expiration of said patent the defendant Universal Film Manufacturing Company made a reel of film which embodied the invention of said expired reissued Letters Patent. That film it sold to the defendant the Universal Film Exchange, which in turn furnished it for use to the defendant the Prague Amusement Company.

Also subsequent to the expiration of said re-

issued Letters Patent the 72nd Street Amusement Company was lawfully in possession of a machine suitable for exhibiting picture film made and sold by the Precision Machine Company embodying the invention of the patent in suit and bearing upon it a plate with the inscription hereinabove set forth.

The 72d Street Amusement Company had as between itself and the Precision Company bought and paid for said machine, and its possession and use thereof were, so far as the Court is informed, lawful and uncomplained of. On November 2d, 1914, the defendant Prague Amusement Company leased from the 72d Street Amusement Company certain property including said machine, and thereafter used said machine for the exhibition of the picture film hereinabove referred to as made by one defendant, sold to the second and leased to the third.

This act, viz.: the exhibition of said film through, with or by means of said machine, is the act of infringement complained of.

Being of opinion that the limitation on the use of a patented article sold in the manner above set forth is invalid, I have directed a decree to be entered dismissing the bill on that ground alone.

Briefly stated, my reasons for this opinion are that there is no distinction, logical or intelligible, to be drawn between a limitation upon the re-sale of a patented article and a limitation upon the use of a patented article contained in a condition subsequent to the contract of sale.

Referring to the decisions, it was my opinion that Bauer vs. O'Donnell is so inconsistent with Dick vs. Henry that the latter case can no longer be considered as stating the law. This belief I had intimated already in Great Atlantic & C. Co. vs. Cream of Wheat Co., 224 Fed. Rep., at page 559.

2087

The foregoing is a summary of what occurred at bar.

Subsequent to decision rendered, defendants offered a final decree for signature, and plaintiff moved for a re-argument.

The substance of the error said to have been committed is a failure to distinguish between the property in a corporeal thing, eg. a patented machine, and that incorporeal hereditament which is the use of the aforesaid corporeal substance, or the machine.

2090

That error (in the sense of belonging to the minority) may have been committed herein is quite likely, but the point has not been overlooked.

It remains my opinion:

- (1) That such attempted severance between corporeal and incorporeal property cannot be lawfully maintained under the patent laws,—nor asserted in an action on the patent,—whatever may be the ultimate limit of permitted contractual arrangements; and also
- (2) That the attempted reservation or severance here shown is specifically bad in that it attempts not only to confine the use of a machine once sold and delivered to a particular kind of film, but further seeks to render that use subject to any and every restriction or regulation which the patent owner may from time to time choose to make or vary.

2091

The re-argument is denied and decree signed.

Dec. 31, 1915,

C. M. HOUGH, U. S. D. J. 2092

Decree.

At a Stated Term of the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, held at the Court Rooms thereof in the Borough of Manhattan, City of New York, on the 31st day of December, 1915.

Present-Hon. CHARLES M. HOUGH,

District Judge.

2093

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Plaintiff.

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTUR-ING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE and PRAGUE AMUSE-MENT COMPANY,

Defendants.

2094

This cause came on to be heard at this Term and the parties hereto presented their evidence; and thereupon it appearing after argument by counsel that no infringement on the part of any defendant of the patent in suit herein had been shown, it was

ORDERED, ADJUDGED AND DECREED that the bill of complaint in the above entitled cause be. and the same hereby is dismissed, with costs to the defendants.

ÇHAS. M. HOUGH, U. S. D. J.

Petition for Appeal and Order 2095 Thereon.

IN THE DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Complainant,

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY,

Defendants.

In Equity No. 12-194 On Patent No. 707,934. 2096

2097

Motion Picture Patents Company, the complainant hereinabove named, considering itself aggrieved by the decree made and entered herein on the 31st day of December, 1915, hereby appeals from said decree to the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit for the reasons specified in the Assignment of Errors filed herewith, and it prays that this appeal may be allowed, and that a transcript of the record, proceedings and papers upon which said decree was made, duly authenticated, may be sent to the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit.

Dated, New York, January 4th, 1916.

GEORGE F. SCULL, Solicitor for Complainant-Appellant. A proper bond in the sum of Two hundred and fifty Dollars (\$250) as security for costs on appeal having been given by complainant-appellant, it is this day

ORDERED that the application be and the same hereby is allowed.

Dated, New York, January 6th, 1916.

2099

J. M. MAYER, U. S. Dist. Judge.

Assignment of Errors.

IN THE DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

2100

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Complainant,

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTUR-ING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COM-PANY,

Defendants.

In Equity No. 12-194. On Latham Patent No. 707,934.

Now comes the above named complainant, Motion Picture Patents Company, by its solicitor and presents, with the accompanying petition of appeal from the decree entered in this cause, the following assignment of errors:

- 1. That the Court erred in holding that no infringement on the part of any defendants of the patent in suit had been shown.
- That the Court erred in dismissing the complainant's bill of complaint.
- 3. That the Court erred in awarding costs to the defendants.
- 4. That the Court erred in holding that where the sale of a patented machine authorized by the patent owner is coupled with a restriction as to its use, such restriction is illegal and of no effect.
- 5. That the Court erred in holding that, on the sale, by, or with the authority of, a patent owner, of a machine embodying the invention of the patent, the corporeal property in the machine and the incorporeal property of the patent owner in the exclusive rights to make, use and sell conferred by the patent, necessarily pass to the purchaser of the machine.

2103

2102

 That the Court erred in holding that the restrictions as to use imposed by the complainant in this case on the sale of the machines authorized by the complainant to be sold were and are illegal and void.

WHEREFORE said complainant prays that the decree aforesaid may be reversed, and that a decree be directed to be entered in accordance with 2105

2106

the prayers of the bill of complaint with costs to complainant, and vacating and setting aside the decree of December 31, 1915.

Dated, New York, January 4th, 1916.

GEORGE F. SCULL, Solicitor for Complainant-Appellant.

Citation.

IN THE DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Complainant,

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTUR-ING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COM-PANY,

Defendants.

In Equity No. 12-194. On Latham Patent No. 707,934.

United States of America, ss.:

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company,

GREETING:

You are hereby cited and admonished to be and appear at a session of the United States Circuit

Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit to be holden in the Borough of Manhattan, New York City, New York, on the 4th day of February, 1916, pursuant to an appeal filed in the Clerk's office in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, wherein Motion Picture Patents Company is the appellant and you are the appellees, to show cause, if any there be, why said District Court for the Southern District of New York should not be directed to vacate the decree rendered against said appellant, and enter a decree in accordance with the prayers of the bill of complaint with costs to complainant.

2108

WITNESS the Honorable Charles M. Hough, United States District Judge, Southern District of New York, this 6th day of January, in the year of our Lord, one thousand nine hundred and sixteen and the independence of the United States of America, the one hundred and fortieth.

> J. M. MAYER, U. S. Judge.

2109

Service of this citation is hereby admitted this 7th day of January, 1916.

WETMORE & JENNER, Solicitors for Defendants. 2110

Order.

At a stated term of the United States
District Court for the Southern
District of New York, held in the
Post Office Building, Borough of
Manhattan, City and State of New
York, this 8th day of January,
1916.

Present-Hon. Julius M. Mayer, District Judge.

2111

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY, Complainant,

VS.

In Equity
No. 12-194.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY. Defendants.

2112

An appeal having been allowed in the above entitled case, it is, on the annexed consents and on motion of solicitor for complainant-appellant,

ORDERED that the provisions of Equity Rule 75 be, and the same hereby are, waived, and that the testimony of both parties may be printed in the form of question and answer in the Transcript on Appeal; and it is

FURTHER ORDERED that the Clerk of this Court shall certify as such Record and Transcript, all the following and no others, to wit: The pleadings, proofs, testimony and exhibits of both parties as submitted to the Court:

Petition for Rehearing;
Opinion of Judge Hough on final hearing;
Final decree of December 31, 1915;
Petition of Appeal and allowance thereof;
Assignment of Errors;
Citation;
This Order;
Praecipe;
Certificate of the Clerk:

2114

and it is

FURTHER ORDERED that the following paper exhibits need not be printed in the Transcript of Record, but may be treated as physical exhibits and produced at the argument of the appeal herein:

- Certificate attached to Complainant's Exhibit
 No. D;
- 2. Original text of French patent to Marey, 208,-617 of 1890, Defendants' Exhibit No. 15;

- 3. Original text of French patent to Marey, 231,-209 of 1893, Defendants' Exhibit No. 18;
- Original text of French patent to Joly, 249, 875 of 1896, Defendants' Exhibit No. 27;
- Receipt Book of American Kinetoscope Company, Defendants' Exhibit No. 42;
- Certificate of Commissioner of Patents on Defendants' Exhibit No. 45;

- 7. Certificate of Commissioner of Patents on Defendants' Exhibit No. 46;
- 8. Certificate of Commissioner of Patents on Defendants' Exhibit No. 47.

J. M. MAYER, U. S. Judge.

We hereby consent to the entry of the foregoing order.

2117

Dated January 8, 1916.

GEORGE F. SCULL, Solicitor for Complainant-Appellant.

WETMORE & JENNER, Solicitors for Defendants-Appellees.

IN THE DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES.

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY, Complainant-Appellant,

VS.

In Equity No. 12—194. 2120

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY, Defendants-Appellees.

TO THE CLERK OF THE DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK:

You are hereby requested to certify the Transcript of Record to be filed in the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, pursuant to an appeal allowed in the above entitled case on or about January 6th, 1916, and to include in said Transcript the following, and no others:

The pleadings, proofs, testimony and exhibits of both parties as submitted to the Court:

Petition for Rehearing; Opinion of Judge Hough on final hearing; Final decree of December 31, 1915;

Petition of Appeal and allowance thereof; Assignment of Errors; Citation; Order of January 8th, 1916; This Praecipe.

We hereby acknowledge service of a copy of the foregoing Praecipe this 11th day of January, 1916, and agree that the same embraces all of the papers and documents which defendants-appellees desire incorporated in the Transcript on Appeal.

2123

GEORGE F. SCULL, Solicitor for Complainant-Appellant.

WETMORE & JENNER, Solicitors for Defendants-Appellees. IN THE DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY, Complainant-Appellant,

VS.

In Equity No. 12—194. 2126

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY.

Defendants-Appellees.

It is hereby stipulated by and between counsel for the respective parties in the above entitled suit that the foregoing printed copy is a true transcript of the record as agreed on by the parties to the above cause and may be certified by the clerk as the transcript of record.

2127

Dated New York, N. Y., January 19th, 1916.

GEORGE F. SCULL, Solicitor for Complainant-Appellant.

WETMORE & JENNER, Solicitors for Defendants-Appellees. 2128

Certificate of the Clerk.

IN THE DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY, Complainant-Appellant,

2129

VS.

In Equity No. 12—194.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY, Defendants-Appellees.

2130

I, Alexander Gilchrist, Jr., Clerk of the District Court of the United States of America for the Southern District of New York, do hereby certify that the foregoing is a correct transcript of the record of the said District Court in the above entitled matter, as agreed on by the parties.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, I have caused the seal of the said Court to be hereunto affixed, at the City of New York, in the Southern District of New York, this 19th day of January, in the year of our Lord one thousand nine hundred and sixteen, and of the Independence of the United States the one hundred and fortieth.

ALEXANDER GILCHRIST, Jr., Clerk.





INDEX.

	PAGE
Bill of Complaint	1
Answer	10
Amendment to Answer	20
Stipulation in re Depositions From Former	
Case	140
COMPLAINANT'S TESTIMONY.	
PRIMA FACIE.	
Marvin, Harry Norton,	
Direct	25
Cross	33
Re-direct	50
Re-cross	60
the same of the sa	
REBUTTAL.	
Anthony, Frederick A.,	
Direct	646
Cross	654
Armat, Thomas,	
Direct	382
Cross	384
Casler, Herman,	
Direct	
Cross	388
Dickson, William K. L.,	
Direct	
Cross	
Re-direct	
Re-cross	505

		1	PAGE
Kleinert, Emil W.,			
	Direct		619
	. Cross		632
Latham, Woodville,			
	Direct		507
	Cross		545
	Re-direct		616
	Re-cross		617
Lauste, Eugene,			
	Direct		390
	Cross		403
	Re-direct		438
	Re-cross		440
Marvin, Harry Nort	on,		
	Direct		
	Cross	,	370
Page, Parker W.,			
	Direct		671
	Cross		674
Stephens, Thomas W	· ,		
	Direct		663
	Cross		666
Compla	INANT'S EXHIBITS.		
		Off. Page	Ptd.
Assignment, Anthor	ny & Co. to An-		
thony & Scovill	Co. (Exhibit B).	23	725
Assignment, Anthon	y & Scovili Co. to		
American Muto	scope & Biograph		
Co. (Exhibit C))	23	727
Assignment, Americ	ean Mutoscope &		
Biograph Co. to	o Motion Picture		
Patents Co. (E	xhibit D)	23	730
Stipulation as to	Structure of De-		
fendant Prague	Amusement Co.'s		
Machine and U	Jse Thereof, and		
as to Machine	of Armat Patent		
	chibit E)	24	734

en with men in a con-	Off. Page	Ptd. Page
Letter, Motion Picture Patents Co. to		
L. Bologino (Exhibit G)	58	745
Letter, Motion Picture Patents Co. to		
Universal Film Exchange of New		
York (Exhibit H)	58	746
Letter, Motion Picture Patents Co. to		
Universal Film Mfg. Co. (Exhib-		
it I)	58	748
Registry Receipt (Exhibit J)	59	751
Registry Return Receipt (Exhibit K)	59	758
Lauste Deposition in Latham vs. Ar-		
mat Interference (Exhibit L)	380	754
Latham Deposition in Latham vs. Ar-		
mat Interference (Exhibit M)	380	803
Colt Bills and Letters (Exhibit N)	380	1001
Clipping, Chicago Inter-Ocean (Ex-		
hibit 0)	380	1005
Eastman Kodak Co. Bill Feb. 18,		
1895 (Exhibit P)	380	1010
Eastman Kodak Co. Bill Apr. 5, 1895		
(Exhibit Q)	380	1011
Eastman Kodak Co. Bill Apr. 27,		
1895 (Exhibit R)	381	1012
Eastman Letter (Exhibit S)	381	1013
Decision, Examiner of Interferences,		
Latham vs. Armat Interference		
(Exhibit T)	381	1015
Film of Griffo & Barnett Fight (Ex-		
hibit W)	381	1041
Otway Latham's Note of Experiment		
(Exhibit X)	381	1043

	Off. Page	Ptd. Page
Clipping, Sunday Mercury (Exhib-		
it Y)	381	1045
Clipping, New York Sun (Exhibit Z)		1047
Lauste Photograph (Exhibit CC) Bill of Boston Gear Walks, Jan.	381	1071
7, 1895	677	631
Patent, U. S.:		
No. 707,934, Latham Patent in Suit (Exhibit A)	23	711
Patent, British:		
No. 4,841 of 1896, Johnson (Latham)		
(Exhibit BB)	381	1057
Drawings:		
Defendant, Prague Amusement Co.'s	0.4	505
Machine (Exhibit E) Certified Copy Latham Drawings	24	737
Used in Latham vs. Armat Inter-		
ference (Exhibit U)	381	1029
Lauste Sketch (Exhibit V)	381	1039
Latham Drawings, Latham Exhibit		
No. 7 of Latham vs. Armat Inter-		
ference (Exhibit AA)	381	1049
Physical:		
Sample Reel of Film Used on Defend-		
ant, Prague Amusement Co.'s Machine (Exhibit F)	24	

DEFENDANTS' TESTIMONY.

		PAGE
Barnes, Herbert C.,		
	Direct	266
	Cross	272
Beach, Frederick C.,		
	Direct	198
	Cross	200
Blair, Thomas H.,		
	Direct	188
	Cross	192
Bolognino, Lawrence	S.,	
	Direct	63
	Cross	63
Chinnock, Alvah L.,		
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	Direct	295
Chinnock, Charles E.,		
,,	Direct	204
	Cross	226
	Re-direct	242
Dyer. Frank L.,		
2.4.1.1.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.	Direct	186
Edge, Howard H.,		
	Direct	310
Edge, William,		
	Direct	273
	Cross	278
Gray, Robert D.,		
,	Direct	193
	Cross	197
Hammer, Edwin W.,		
,,	Direct	66
	Cross	134
Hollman, William A.		247
	Direct	290
		200

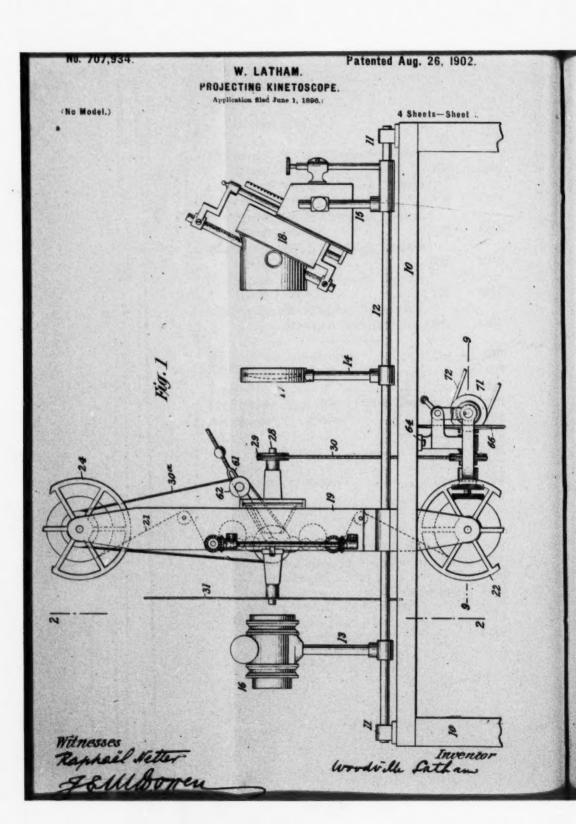
		PAGE
Jenkins, Charles F.,		
	Direct	142
Lahey, James W.,		
	Direct	279
Lohman, Harry C.,		
	Direct	257
	Cross	261
	Re-direct	263
Maltby, Frank D.,		
	Direct	314
	Cross	323
	Re-direct	328
	Re-cross	328
Miles, Herbert L.,		
	Direct	172
	Cross	176
	Re-direct	178
Milliken, John A.,		
	Direct	300
	Cross	305
	Re-direct	308
Moore, Robert T.,		
Can - Conseque	Direct	263
Morton, Baxter,		
	Direct	162
	Cross	169
Pearson, Charles O.,		. 21.
	Direct	246
	Cross	253
	Re-direct	255
Porter, Edwin S.,		
The state of the state of	Direct	180
	Cross	181
Smith, Albert E.,		
	Direct	183
Smith, Charles W.,		
	Direct	243

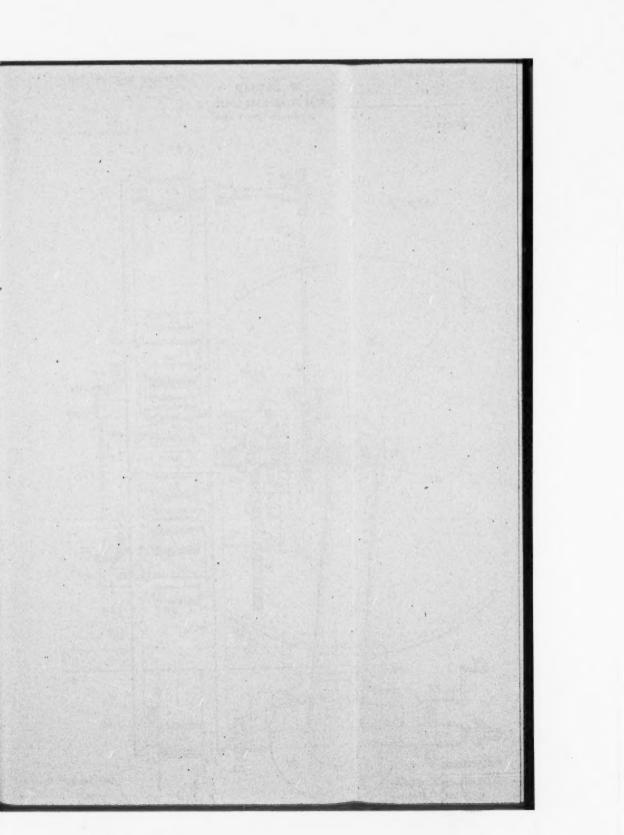
PAG	E
Thompson, George S.,	
Direct 33	0
Walker, Herbert,	
Direct 20	1
DEFENDANTS' EXHIBITS.	
License Notice (Bakiki to Page Page	ā.
Exhibit 1) 63 107	
License Agreement, Precision Ma-	
chine Co. and Motion Picture	
Patents Co. (Exhibit 2) 37 107	4
Decision, Dickinson, J., in U. S. vs.	
Motion Picture Patents Co., et al.	
(Exhibit 4) 47 108	9
Chinnock Agreement (Exhibit 35) 126 129	7
Chinnock-Hough-Werner Agreement	
(Exhibit 36))
Hough Letter of Jan. 15, 1895 (Ex-	
hibit 37)	1
Mfg Co (Erbibit 90)	
Affidavit of Joseph F. McCoy (Exhib-	2
it 20)	
Decision, Board of Examiners-in-)
Chief, Latham vs. Armat Inter-	
ference (Exhibit 45) 138 1437	,
Decision, Commissioner of Patents,	
Latham vs. Armat Interference	
(Exhibit 46)	2
Decision, Court of Appeals, Latham	,
vs. Armat Interference (Exhib-	
it 47) 139 1469	
Baltmore Sun Article (Exhibit 48) 139 1481	
Dyer Interview in Show World	
(Exhibit 49) 139 1487	,

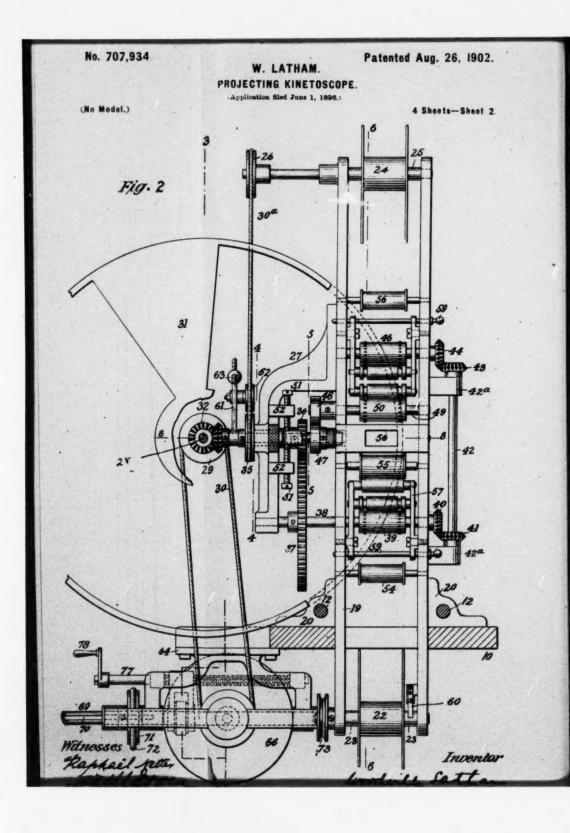
File Wrapper:		
	Off. Page	Ptd.
File Wrapper and Contents, Latham		
Patent No. 707,934, Patent in		
Suit (Exhibit 44)	131	1321
Patents, U. S.:		
No. 224,440, Kidder (Exhibit 5)	76	1112
No. 433,776, Eckerson (Exhibit 6)	76	1119
No. 508,814, Cox (Exhibit 7)	77	1134
No. 376,247, Le Prince (Exhibit 11)	86	1144
No. 491,993, Edison (Exhibit 21)	101	1196
No. 493,426, Edison (Exhibit 22)		1200
No. 589,168, Edison (Exhibit 23)		1212
No. 525,991, Mayer (Exhibit 24)		1221
No. 540,545, Gray (Exhibit 25)		1225
No. 569,875, Joly (Exhibit 29)		1244
No. 673,992, Armat (Exhibit 31)		1258
No. 666,495, Casler (Exhibit 33)		1274
No. 606,113, Latham (Exhibit 34)		1286
Patents, French:		
No. 208,617 of 1890, Marey (Exhib-		
it 15)		
Translation of No. 208,617, Marey	7	
(Exhibit 16)	. 95	1169
No. 231,209 of 1893, Marey (Ex		
hibit 18)	. 98	
Translation of No. 231,209, Mare	y	
(Exhibit 19)	. 98	1179
No. 249,875 of 1895, Joly (Ex	-	
hibit 27)	. 110	
Translation of No. 249,875, Joly		
(Exhibit 28)	. 110	1233

Patent, British:		
37 40404 4 4004	Off. Page	Ptd. Page
No. 10,131 of 1889, Greene & Evans		
(Exhibit 12)	89	1153
Drawings:		
Diagram of Kidder Patent No. 224,440		
(Exhibit 8)	80	1137
Diagram of Eckerson Patent No.		
433,776 (Exhibit 9)	83	1139
Diagram of Cox Patent No. 508,814		
(Exhibit 10)	86	1141
Diagram of Greene & Evans British		
Patent No. 10,131 of 1889 (Ex-		
hibit 13)	94	1165
Diagram No. 2 of Greene & Evans		
British Patent No. 10,131 of 1889		
(Exhibit 14)	94	1167
Diagram of Marey French Patent		
1890 (Exhibit 17)	98	1177
Diagram of Marey French Patent 1893		
(Exhibit 20)	101	1193
Diagram of Gray Patent No. 540,545		
(Exhibit 26)	109	1231
Diagram of Joly French Patent No.		
249,875 and U.S. Patent No.		
569,875 (Exhibit 30)	117	1255
Diagram of Armat Patent No. 673,992		
(Exhibit 32)	124	1271
Diagram of Chinnock Camera (Ex-		
hibit 43)	129	1319
Physical:		
Simplex Machine Used by the Prague		
Amusement Co. (Exhibit 3)	39	
Chinnock Camera (Exhibit 40)		
Receipt Book of American Kineto-		
scope Company (Exhibit 42)	126	

Photographs: Off. Ptd. Page Page Photograph No. 1, Chinnock Camera (Exhibit 41-A) 126 1309 Photograph No. 2, Chinnock Camera (Exhibit 41-B) 126 1311 Photograph No. 3, Chinnock Camera 1313 (Exhibit 41-C) 126 Photograph No. 4, Chinnock Camera 1315 (Exhibit 41-D) 126 Photograph No. 5, Chinnock Camera (Exhibit 41-E) 126 1317 Photograph of Feeding Mechanism, Atlantic Machine (Exhibit 50) . . 382 1491 Petition for Rehearing Opinion, Hough, D. J. 693 Decree Petition for Appeal and Order Thereon 699 Assignment of Errors 700 Citation 702 Order on Praecipe 704 Praecipe 707 Stipulation (re record) 708 Certificate ... Opinion of United States Circuit Court of Appeals. 1492 Decree of United States Circuit Court of Appeals 1498 Memorandum opinion on petition for rehearing. . 1510 Order denying petition for rehearing...... 1512 Clerk's certificate . . . Writ of certiorari and return.....









No. 707,934.

Patented Aug. 26, 1902.

W. LATHAM.

PROJECTING KINETOSCOPE.

Application filed June 1, 1896.)

(No Model.) 4 Sheets-Sheet 3. Fig. 4 Fig. 3 Fig. 5 10 -23 Witnesses: woodville Satha

No. 707,934.

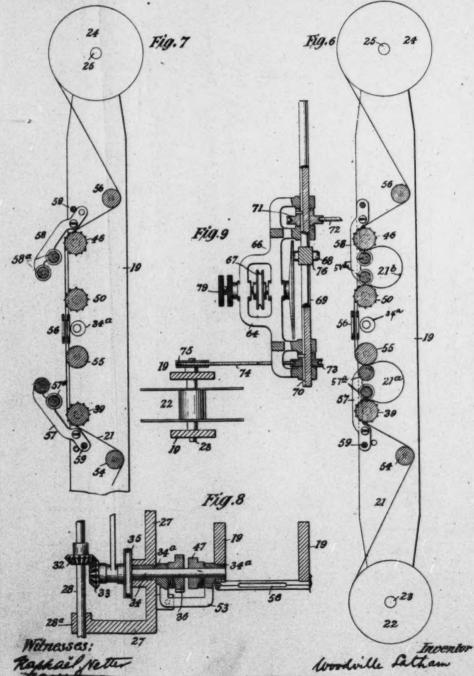
(No Model.)

Patented Aug. 26, 1902.

W. LATHAM.

PROJECTING KINETOSCOPE.

(Application filed June 1, 1896.)
4 Sheets—Sheet 4.



UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

WOODVILLE LATHAM, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR, BY MESNE ASSIGN-MENTS, TO E. & H. T. ANTHONY & CO., OF NEW YORK, N. Y., A COR-PORATION OF NEW YORK.

PROJECTING-KINETOSCOPE.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patenc No. 707,934, dated August 23, 1902. Application filed June 1, 1896. Serial No. 593,747. (No model.).

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, WOODVILLE LATHAM, a citizen of the United States, and a resident of New York, in the county and State of New 5 York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Projecting-Kinetoscopes, of which the following is a specification.

. The present invention has reference to apparatus for projecting successively and at 10 frequent intervals on a screen or other plane surface an extended series of photographs of moving objects, whereby the movement of the objects may be accurately exhibited.

The purpose of the invention is to provide 15 an apparatus capable of continuously projecting or exhibiting upon a suitable surface a great number of pictures taken from moving objects and arranged upon a strip or film of great length, whereby each picture in the 20 strip is brought to rest at the moment of projection, so that there is given to the eye an impression of objects in motion in a manner now well understood. In an apparatus organized so that the pic-

25 ture-bearing strip is caused to move continuously and uninterruptedly across the optical axis a light of very high intensity is necessary to give satisfactory results; but a light of such power is not required for satisfactory 30 projection by means of an apparatus embodying the principle of the present invention. The stoppage of each picture during its exposure permits the requisite quantity of light to pass through the condenser, the picture, 35 and the objective to the screen or plane sur-

face upon which the image is projected when the light employed is only of a moderatelyhigh power.

The invention therefore consists in an apparatus for projecting successively a large number of pictures of moving objects, embodying, among other things, means for bringing each picture to rest at the moment of projection, means for reducing the strain the 45 picture-film would otherwise suffer from the rapid interruption and renewal of its movement, and means for maintaining uniformity of movement of the film as it unwinds from the delivering-reel and as it winds upon the receiving-reel, all as set forth in the claims 50 at the end of this specification.

In the accompanying drawings, which form part of this description, one form of apparatus embodying the invention is illustrated.

In the drawings like features are designated 55 in the several figures by like numerals of refer-

Figure 1 is a side elevation of the apparatus. Fig. 2 is a cross-section on the line 2 2 of Fig. 1, partly broken away. Fig. 3 is a 60 section on broken line 3 3 of Fig. 2 looking toward the machine. Fig. 4 is a fragmentary section on line 4 4 of Fig. 2. Fig. 5 is a similar section on the line 5 5 of Fig. 2. Fig. 6 is a vertical section through the machine, show- 65. ing the slack in the film, taken on the line 66 of Fig. 2. Fig. 7 is a similar section showing the devices for pressing the film into contact with the guide-rollers and drums thrown out of action. Fig. 8 is a sectional view on the 70 line 8 8 of Fig. 2; and Fig. 9 is a section on the line 9 9 of Figs. 1 and 3 through the power-transmitting appliances, showing the relation of the parts when winding back the film to the delivering-reel.

The several parts of the apparatus may be mounted upon an optical bench (indicated in the drawings at 10) of any convenient design. At the ends of the bench 10 are the brackets 11, furnishing supports for the pair of longi- 80 tudinal rods 12, upon which are mounted the standards 13 14 15, said standards being bifurcated to connect with the rods 12. The standard 13 supports a projecting-lens or an ordinary objective 16, which may be readily 85 adjusted to bring it in proper relation to the picture being projected, and standard 14 supports the condensing lens or lenses 17, while the standard 15 supports the lamp 18, which in this instance is shown as a focusing are- 90 lamp. The lamp 18 is preferably adjustable on its support both vertically and laterally, and the standards for the condensing-lens and the lamp are so constructed that they may be adjusted longitudinally on the rods 95 12 so as to obtain the proper relative relation between the lamp and the condenser and the

condenser and the picture-strip. The mech-

anism for supporting and propelling the shutter and the picture-bearing strip is arranged above and below the optical bench 10 on standards 19, which extend vertically above 5 the bench and for a short distance beneath and are braced by the brackets 20, which also furnish bearings for the longitudinal rods 12, as seen in Fig. 2. The picture-bearing strip or film, which may be of any desired length of the machine, is indicated at 21 in the sevoral views. It is wound upon the deliveringreel 22, the shaft of which, 23, is journaled in the lower ends of the standards 19. The reis ceiving-reel 24 is similarly mounted at the top of standards 19, its shaft 25 having bearings in said standards and being extended at one side beyond the standard to receive a pulley 26 for the belt 30°, transmitting the so motion of the driving-shaft to the receiving-The function of these two reels is merely to support the bulk of the film while successive sections of it are subjected to the feeding and exposing mechanism. One of 25 the reels supplies the film for exposure, and the other coils up and takes care of the film after exposure. The picture-bearing strip 21 is conducted through and over its guiding and controlling mechanism, mounted in stand-30 ards 19, and secured to the hub of reel 24. The said strip when in the position it is caused to assume when the apparatus is projecting has two slack sections contiguous to the sprocketed feed-drums for the purposes 35 presently explained. To one side of the standards 19 there is fixed a bracket 27, in which the main shaft 28 is mounted in bearings 28*. At one end of this shaft 28 there is keyed a pulley 29 to receive 40 the driving-belt 30, and at its opposite end is fixed the hub of the shutter 31. On the main shaft 28. is keyed the bevel-gear 32, which meshes with a bevel-gear 33, fixed to the end of shaft 34, which revolves in bearings 34° in 45 bracket 27 and adjacent standard 19, the revolution of the shaft-28 being thereby transmitted to shaft 34. The shaft 34 has keyed to it a pulley 35, which receives the belt 30°, transmitting motion to the receiving - roel, 50 and it has also keyed to it the small gearwheel 36, which engages with the large gearwheel 37, keyed to shaft 38, having bearings in bracket 27 as well as in standards 19, said shaft carrying the toothed drum 39 and hav-55 ing keyed to its outer end a bevel-gear 40, which meshes with another bevel-gear 41, fixed to the upright shaft 42, supported in brackets 42° on standard 19, and having at its upper and a bevel-gear 43, which meshes with a like 60 genr 44 on the end of shaft 45, which carries a toothed drum 46 and has bearings in standards 19. By this mechanism the toothed drums 39 and 46 are caused to revolve continuously at a uniform rate when power is com-o5 municated to the main shaft 28. It is obvious

that other forms of gearing may be employed

to drive said toothed drums 39 and 46 in unison. Shaft 34 has also keyed to it broken gear 47, Fig. 5, which is adapted to engage with a broken gear 48, fixed to shaft 49, hav- 70 ing bearings and standards 19 and carrying a toothed drum 50. The gear 48 on the shaft of drum 50 is provided with a series of four toothed sections and a series of four plain sections, the surfaces of the latter being made 75 to conform to the toothless portion of the circumference of the broken gear 47, so that while the gear 47 revolves continuously it intermeshes with gear 48 only momentarily as it completes each revolution, moving the 80 gear 48 intermittently, and thus producing. momentary stoppage of the drum 50 once with each complete revolution of shaft 34. At the moment of stoppage of the drum 50 the smooth surfaces of the gears are in sliding contact 85 and remain so until the shaft 34 completing another revolution the teeth of the two gears again intermesh, revolving the drum 50 onefourth of a revolution, and so on continuously, said drum momentarily stopping as the 90 picture-bearing strip is moved through the apparatus the length of one picture, thus bringing each picture to rest at the moment of projection, and hence in a device of the construction described the period of rest of 95 the film is four times greater than its period To prevent any vibration of of movement. the picture at the moment of projection, the smooth surfaces of the broken gears 47 and 48 should preferably be held in close sliding 100 contact, and with this end in view the bearings 34° 34° (see Figs. 4, 5, and 8) of the shaft 34 are made eccentric, so that by means of the adjusting-screws 51 51, passing through lugs 52 on bracket 27 and bearing at their 105 points on opposite sides of the yoke 53, connected to or formed with said bearings, the shaft 34 may be slightly raised or lowered, as required. This mode of adjustment has been found in practice to be efficient and to satis- 110 factorily answer the purposes intended. Because of the rapid interruption and re-

Because of the rapid interruption and resumption of the movement of the picture-film it is necessary to provide means for reducing the strain on the same to prevent its being ruptured by the teeth of the sprocket-drum 50, which actuates or feeds the film intermittently by engaging in holes at its edges, and it is also necessary or desirable to provide means for maintaining uniformity of tension 120 of the film as it unwinds from the delivering-reel and winds upon the receiving-reel. The manner whereby these objects are effected

will now be described.

The numerals 54, 55, and 56 indicate rollers 125 for supporting and guiding the picture-bearing strip 21 and are arranged to freely revolve on fixed shafts supported in the standards 19. The picture-bearing strip or film 21, which has photographically produced upon it a series of pictures representing the successive stages or positions of the moving object or ob-

jects to be reproduced, is conducted from the ! delivering-reel 22 over the guide-roller 54, toothed or sprocketed drum 39, guide-roller 55, past exposure-window 56°, which is at-5 tached to the standards 19 in the line of the optical axis of the apparatus, toothed drums 50 and 46, and guide-roller 56 to the receivingreel 24, to the hub of which its end is secured. The strip or film is perforated at regular into tervals along its lateral edges to correspond exactly with the sprocket-like teeth arranged on the circumference of the drums 39, 46, and 50, near their ends, respectively.

In Fig. 6 the parts of the mechanism for is controlling and guiding the picture-bearing strip or film, as well as the strip itself, are in position for projecting, and in Fig. 7 the parts are shown in the position they are made to assume when the picture-bearing strip is be-20 ing wound back from the receiving to the de-

livering reel. To secure the necessary engagement between the picture-bearing strip 21 and the feeding-drums 39, 46, and 50, so that the strip 25 may be fed or moved with greater accuracy and certainty, the frames 57 and 58, pivoted, as shown, to the standards 19, are provided, and they are supplied with the freely-revolving rollers 57° and 58°. (See Fig. 7.) The 30 rollers 583, carried by frame 58, are adapted to cooperate with the toothed drums 46 and 30, and they have circumferentially near their ends grooves, as shown in Fig. 2, to receive the teeth or sprockets of said feed - drums 35 when the frame is fixed in the position it occupies when the apparatus is projecting, and the rollers 57° of frame 57, one of which cooperates with toothed drum 39, are similarly constructed for the same reason, the upper 40 roller 574, which coacts with the toothless guide-roller 55, being grooveless on its circumference. The frames 57 58 are held in the two positions which they are adapted to occupy, as in Fig. 6 when projecting or as in 45 Fig. 7 when the picture-bearing strip is released so as to be wound back from the upper to the lower reel by the removable rods which pass through suitable holes in the standards 19 and engage with the ends of the frames, 50 as shown in Figs. 6 and 7. When in the position shown in Fig. 6, the rollers carried by frame 57 are between the sprocket-drum 39 and the guide-roller 55, while the rollers carried by frame 58 are between the sprocket-55 drums 46 and 50. Within the planes occupied by the two sets of rollers 57° and 58° when the apparatus is adjusted for projecting-i. e., when in operation-the film or picture-bearing strip 21 is thrown out in the form 50 of a loop, as shown at 21° 21°, one of these slaca portions being at one time above window 56° and the other at another time above the same. The extent of each of said slack portions is preferably that of the height of a 65 picture or slightly more. It will be understood from the description that follows that the loops of slack below and above the ex- I very light, and consequently have very little

posure-window are alternately thrown out and then taken up by the operation of the sprocket-drums, respectively, and that they 70 produce and take up the slack by their own positive action entirely independent of the film-supporting reels at the extremes of the apparatus. In the operation of the machine the rollers 57* 58* hold the strip in proper 75 contact with the respective feed-drums and guide-roller 55, as will be understood from Fig. 6, and insure proper contact between the strip and the respective drums. The picture-bearing strip is carried through the ap- 8c paratus with great rapidity, and because of the rapid interruption and resumption of its movement it would not be possible for the strip to withstand the strain brought upon it for any considerable time if there were not 85 provision made for the slacks in the film, as just explained. The instant each picture of the strip is brought in the line of the optical axis the toothless surfaces of the broken gears 47 48 are in sliding contact, their re- 90 spective cogs being out of engagement, with the effect of causing stoppage of revolution of the toothed drum 50 and consequent momentary stoppage of the film between said toothed drum 50 and the toothless roller 55 95 beneath the optical axis; but the revolution of shaft 38 being continuous the toothed drums 39 and 46, which latter is positively geared from said shaft, as explained, also revolve continuously, taking up the slack 21b roo between toothed drums 46 and 50 and also replacing the slack 21s between toothed drum 39 and roller 55, thus restoring the slack 21°, to be again taken up when the broken gears 47 48 again momentarily intermesh. thus be seen that as the slack 21b is taken up at the moment of stoppage of the toothed drum 50 the slack 21" is simultaneously being restored, and this action is continuous and positive and independent of the other 110 parts of the machine while the operation of projection is going on. There is therefore but little, if any, additional strain on the film incident to the rapid interruption and resumption of its movement through the appa- 115

The construction and operation of the devices which produce and take up the loops of slack film and also those which intermittingly feed or, so to speak, "jerk" the film from 120 picture to picture across the exposure-window or axis of the lens form an exceedingly important part of this invention. It will be noted that they are entirely separate and distinct from the reels which support the 125 weight of the bulk of the film and which are consequently relatively heavy, so that the length and consequent weight of the film may be indefinitely extended without affecting the operation of the machine. The in- 130 termittingly-feeding devices, on the other hand, which comprise only the broken gear 48 and the feed-drum 50 with its shaft, are

inertia, and since also the small portion of the film which this part of the apparatus actuated has scarcely any weight these parts will instantly stop and start with great ra-5 pidity and with a minimum of strain or jar upon the mechanism and with the least po sible wear on the holes for the sprocket-teeth in the film, and in order that the slack may be formed and the intermittent movements 10 across the optical axis effected with accuracy and certainty it is desirable, although not essential, that the rollers which effect these movements be provided with the sprocket-teeth shown or their equivalent, so that they 15 may positively engage with the film and rositively move it without the possibility of any slipping, which is apt to occur when fric-tional contact alone is relied on, because such slipping will preclude proper registration be-20 tween the picture and the optical axis. In order that these parts may operate as described, it is essential that the loop of slack film be maintained at all times ready for the intermittingly-acting device and also that 25 the slack-manipulating and the intermittingly-moving devices be positively driven by mechanism which will absolutely insure the presence of the slack and the accurate movement of the film. The reason these parts and 30 their arrangement and method of operation are such important and valuable features of the invention is because their action is necessarily exceedingly rapid, and if the intermittingly-feeding mechanism were heavy, so 35 as to have much inertia, or if any considerable portion of the film or either of the reels which support it were stopped and started at each transition from picture to picture there would be such strain brought to bear on the 40 sprocket-holes in the film as would speedily tear it adjacent to such holes, thus ruining it and since these films are expensive, a good one being capable of making large profits for its owner, any means which will prolong their 45 life is of great value in this art Another feature peculiar to my invention and one which distinguishes it from certain other apparatus is the important fact that the intermitting feed devices and the slack-50 former being entirely separate and distinct from the other parts are alone relied upon for securing accurate registration of the successive pictures with the axis of the projecting-lens. The supply and coiling reels at 55 the extremes of the machine may operate with only substantial accuracy and still the results will be satisfactory, because they have nothing to do except to properly support and take care of the film, supplying it at one side 60 and taking it away at the other. The ihtermitting feed devices and the slack-producing devices, on the other hand, which lie between the two reels and immediately adjacent to

the exposure-window; control and manipu-

easy matter to accomplish exactness in operation when this part of the mechanism is separate and distinct from the other.

Uniformity of tension of the film as it unwinds from the delivering-reel, to prevent the film from buckling and insure its proper entrance to the apparatus, is secured by any suitable friction device applied to the shaft 75 23 of said reel. In the drawings is shown a metallic strap with an adjusting-screw for this purpose. This friction device is indithis purpose. cated by 60.

The rate of winding of the picture-bearing &c strip upon the receiving-reel is regulated by automatically controlling the revolution of the reel by means of the idler 61, which is shown loosely journaled on shaft 34. The idler is provided with a slot, as shown, in 85 which is adjustably fixed roller 62, and around this roller is passed the belt 30°. By adjusting roller 62 in the slot the pressure on the belt is varied. As the reel 24 becomes larger by the winding of the film thereon the idler 90 may be manipulated to loosen the belt 30° and to cause it to slip on pulley 26 of the This slipping is or may be a reel-shaft. continuous one from beginning to end of the operation of the machine, but it is such a 95 gentle slipping that no appreciable heat is produced and no appreciable wearing of the belt. The outer end of the idler is screwthreaded and provided with a weight 63, by means of which a nicer adjustment of the 100 pressure exerted by the idler is obtained. By this means the rate of revolution of the receiving-reel is automatically maintained in proper correspondence with that of the feed-drum 46.

The shutter 31, carried by the shaft 28, has but a small solid section. Its use is to cover the film during the interval of movement of each picture.

The power may be imparted to the main 110 shaft 28 through a friction regulating and controlling appliance attached to the bottom of the optical bench by means of the bracket 64. In this bracket is journaled the shaft 65. carrying at one end a friction-plate 66 and 115 having keyed to its opposite end a pulley 67, adapted to receive the belt 30, which passes over pulley 29 on the main shaft 28. The friction-plate 66 cooperates with a friction-roller 68, keyed to shaft 69, the said shaft having a 120 longitudinal groove 70 and being provided with pulley 71, receiving the belt 72 to the motor, and also with pulley 73, adapted to receive belt 74, (see Fig. 9,) which is made use of to transmit the power of the motor to 125 the delivering-reel when winding back the film from the receiving-reel, the shaft of said reel being provided with pulley 75 to receive said belt. The pulleys 71 and 73 are con-nected to shaft 60 by feathers entering the 130 groove of said shaft, as shown in Fig. 9, so 65 late that special and limited part of the film which is at that instant relied upon for the desired results, and it is a comparatively that while these pulleys cannot turn on the shaft the shaft can be moved through the hubs of the pulleys, which is done when ad707,984

justing the friction-roller 68 with relation to the friction-plate 66. The hub of the frictionroller is connected by an arm 76, having a screw-threaded sleeve through which passes screw-threaded shaft 77, supported in bracket 64 and idapted to be turned by crank 78 to permit the adjustment of the friction-roller toward or from the center of the friction-plate to increase or diminish the rate of speed of to the friction-plate shaft 65 in a manner well understood, the rate of speed of the main shaft 28, connected to the friction-plate shaft 65 through belt 30, being thus determined and regulated as desired. The pressure of the 15 friction-plate 66 against the friction-roller 68 is regulated by means of the milled-head screw 79, the point of which enters a depression in the end of the friction-plate shaft, as

shown in Fig. 3. In Fig. 9 the friction-speedregulating appliances are shown adjusted for winding back the film from the receiving and delivering reel, the friction-roller 68 having been shifted across the center of the frictionplate so as to reverse the revolution of the

25 shaft 65. When winding back the film, the pulleys 73 and 75 are connected by belt 74 and the frames 57 58 are swung back, as shown in Fig. 7, so as to relieve the film of all binding tension.

The reels may be of size suitable to carry any length of picture-bearing strip that may

be desired.

In operating the apparatus power is transmitted from the motor (not shown) by belt 72 35 and through friction-plate shaft by belt 30 to main shaft 28 of the apparatus. The operation of the gearing and the manner in which the teeth of the feed-drums engage the perforations in the edges of the picture-bearing 40 strip and move it from the delivering to the receiving reel and across the opening 56 in the line of the optical axis of the apparatus, with a momentary stoppage of the film crossing the optical axis as the central portion of 45 each picture is brought in the line of the optical axis, will all be understood from the preceding description. Whenever the central portion of a picture is in the line of the opti-cal axis and the picture comes to rest, the light 50 will pass simultaneously through the condensing-lens, through the picture, and through the objective outward to the screen or other plane surface. The light of course must be so adjusted as to cover the whole of the pic-55 ture. The pictures are projected successively with such great rapidity, each succeeding pic-ture showing a slightly-advanced stage of motion, that the effect on the eye of the observer is exactly the same as if a moving ob-

It is to be understood that many of the mere details of the apparatus herein described may be varied without departing from the principle of my invention—as, for example, 65 while the mechanism shown and described

60 ject or objects were being looked at directly.

manner that there is a real stoppage of the film as each picture is presented in the line of the optical axis is the form and character 70 preferred by me, it is obvious that the principle of the invention may be retained with differently-organized gearing and the employment of other appliances than those shown and described.

Having described my invention, I claim as

1. The combination with devices for supporting the bulk of a flexible film before and after exposure, of feeding mechanisms located so between the devices for supporting the film and separate and distinct therefrom, one of said feeding mechanisms being constructed to uniformly feed the film and produce a predetermined supply of slack, and the other sadapted to intermittently feed the slack across the exposure-window.

2. The combination with devices for supporting the bulk of the film before and after exposure, of feeding mechanisms located between the devices for supporting the film and separate and distinct therefrom, one of said feeding mechanisms being constructed to uniformly feed the film and produce a predetermined supply of slack, and the other adapted to intermittently feed the slack film across the exposure-window, and constructed also to cause the intervals of rest of the film to exceed its intervals of movement.

3. The combination with devices which support the bulk of the film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positively-driven devices separate and distinct from the film-supporting devices, located between them and at opposite sides of the exposure-window, and which respectively engage with and accurately and uniformly feed the film, and which respectively produce and take up slack in it, and an intermittently-acting device located between said last-named lio devices which intermittently moves the slack-ened part of the film across the exposure-window.

4. The combination with devices which support the bulk of a flexible strip or film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positively-driven devices separate and distinct from the film-supporting devices and which engage the film and accurately compel its movement, and which feed the film 120 by uniform and continuous rotary action, and an intermittently-acting device located between said last-named devices and which moves the slackened part of the film picture by picture across the exposure-window and 125 causes its period of rest to exceed its period of movement.

5. The combination with devices which support the bulk of a flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of 130 positively-driven devices separate and distinct from the film-supporting devices and leasted between them at apposite sides of the

and accurately insure its feeding, which lastnamed devices respectively produce and take up slack in the film, and an intermittently-acting device provided with teeth which engage 5 in holes in the film whereby it feeds the film

across the exposure-opening.

6. The combination with devices which support the bulk of a flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of to a positively-driven device entirely disconnected from the said film-supporting devices located between the film-supplying device and the exposure-window and which produces a loop of slack film, and an intermittently-act-15 ing device which engages with the film and feeds the slackened part of it across the exposure-window, and causes its period of rest

to exceed its period of movement.

7. The combination with devices adapted to so support the bulk of a flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positively-driven toothed rotary devices located between and entirely disconnected from said supporting devices and at opposite sides of the exposure-window, said toothed devices being adapted to carry and feed the flexible film by the engagement of their teeth with equally-spaced holes made in the edges of the film and to respectively produce and take up 30 slack in the film, and an intermittently-act ing rotary feeding device also provided with teeth which engage with the holes in the film, whereby the film is intermittently fed across the exposure-opening.

8. The combination with two reels which

support the bulk of a flexible film, one of which supplies it for exposure and the other receives in after exposure, of a positivelydriven device separate and distinct from the 40 said reels and located between the supplyreel and the exposure-window and which produces a loop of slack film, and an intermittently - acting device likewise positively

driven which moves the film picture by pic-45 ture into the optical axis at the exposure-window and causes each picture to remain mo-

mentarily at rest in the optical axis.

Andrew (

9. The combination with two rotary reels which support the bulk of a flexible film, one of which supplies the film for exposure and 50 the other coils it up after exposure, of two rotary feeding mechanisms located between said reels and separate and distinct from them, one constructed to feed the film intermittently and cause it to move picture by picture across the axis of the lens and to come to rest in said axis, the other constructed to feed the film continuously and uniformly and thus provide a constant supply of slack film and gearing positively connecting the said two feeding 60 mechanisms for maintaining a fixed relation between them.

10. The combination with two rotary reels adapted to support the bulk of a flexible film, one of which supplies the film for exposure 65 and the other receives it after exposure, of two toothed rotary feeding-rollers located between said film-supporting reels and separate and distinct therefrom and adapted to carry and feed the film by the engagement of their 70 teeth with equally-spaced holes in the edges of the film, actuating mechanism and connecting-gearing between said feeding-rollers which positively actuates one of the feedingrollers so as to feed the film intermittently and 75 cause its interval of rest to exceed its interval of motion and which positively actuates also the other feeding-roller continuously and thus provides a constant supply of slack

11. The combination with the main shaft provided with a broken gear mounted in eccentric bearings and a feed-drum whose shaft is provided with a broken gear which meshes with the first-named broken gear, of means 85 for adjusting said bearings to regulate the

contact between said gears.
Signed at New York, in the county and State of New York, this 25th day of May, 1896.

WOODVILLE LATHAM.

Witnesses:

J. E. M. BOWEN, ALEXIS C. SMITH.

Plaintiff's Exhibit B.

ASSIGNMENT.

WHEREAS, Woodville Latham of New York, in the County and State of New York, made application for letters patent of the United States on June 1st, 1896, for improvements in Projecting Kinetoscopes; and

WHEREAS, letters patent of the United States issued on said application to E. & H. T. Anthony & Co. of New York, a corporation organized under the laws of the State of New York, by virtue of an assignment in writing, duly executed, delivered and recorded in the United States Patent Office, which said letters patent are numbered 707,934, and bear date the 26th day of August, in the year 1902; and

WHEREAS, the said E. & H. T. Anthony & Co. is now sole owner of said patent and of all rights under the same; and

WHEREAS, The Anthony & Scovill Company, a corporation organized under the laws of the State of New York, is desirous of acquiring the entire in- 2175 terest in the same:

NOW, THEREFORE, to all whom it may concern, be it known that for and in consideration of the sum of ten dollars to the said E. & H. T. Authony & Co. in hand paid, and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt of which is hereby acknowledged, the said E. & H. T. Anthony & Co. has sold, assigned and transferred, and by these presents does sell, assign and transfer unto the said The Anthony & Scovill Company the whole right, title and interest in and to the said improvement in Projecting Kinetoscope and in and to the letters patent therefor aforesaid; the same to be held and enjoyed by the said The Anthony & Scovill Company for its own use and behoof, and for the use and behoof of its successors and assigns, to the full end of the term for which said letters patent are or may be granted, as fully and entirely as the same would have been held and enjoyed by the said E. & H. T. Anthony & Co. had this assignment and sale not been made.

2177

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF the said E. & H. T. Anthony & Co. has hereunto signed by the hand of its President duly authorized so to do, and caused its corporate seal to be affixed hereto this 5th day of February, 1908.

E. & H. T. ANTHONY & CO., By R. A. ANTHONY, President.

(Seal)

Attest:

C. B. STANBERRY.

Secy.

2178

State of New York, County of New York,

I, Walter L. Pate, a notary public in and for the County of New York, do hereby certify that Richard A. Anthony personally appeared before me and, being by me duly sworn, did depose and say that he is the President of the corporation E. & H. T. Anthony & Co., described in the writing above, and that said writing was signed by him by authority of said corporation and in its behalf, and the said

Richard A. Anthony acknowledged said writing to be the act and deed of said corporation.

Given under my hand and seal this 6th day of February, 1908.

WALTER L. PATE,
Notary Public,
Kings County.
Certificate filed in N. Y. County.

2180

Plaintiff's Exhibit C.

(Seal)

ASSIGNMENT.

WHEREAS, Woodville Latham of New York, in the County and State of New York, did obtain letters patent of the United States for an improvement in Apparatus for Photographing Objects in Motion and for Projecting Pictures, which letters patent are numbered 600,113, and bear date the 1st day of March, 1898, and

WHEREAS, said letters patent No. 600,113, and all right, title and interest therein and thereunder were assigned and transferred by an instrument in writing duly recorded in the United States Patent Office, to The Anthony & Scovill Company, a corporation organized under the laws of the State of New York, and

WHEREAS, Woodville Latham of New York, in the County and State of New York, made application for letters patent of the United States on June 1st, 1896, for improvements in Projecting Kinetoscopes, and

2181

2184

WHEREAS, letters patent of the United States, issued on said application to E. & H. T. Anthony & Co. of New York, a corporation organized under the laws of the State of New York, by virtue of an assignment in writing duly executed, delivered and recorded in the United States Patent Office, which said letters patent are numbered 707,934, and bear date the 26th day of August, in the year 1902, and

WHEREAS, said letters patent No. 707,934, and all right, title and interest therein and thereunder were assigned and transferred by an instrument in writing, of even date herewith, to the Anthony & Scovill Company, a corporation organized under the laws of the State of New York, and

WHEREAS, the American Mutoscope and Biograph Company, a corporation organized under the laws of the State of New Jersey, and having a place of business in the City, County and State of New York, is desirous of acquiring the entire interest in and under both the said letters patent:

NOW, THEREFORE to all whom it may concern, be it known that for and in consideration of the sum of ten dollars to the said The Anthony & Scovill Company in hand paid, receipt of which is hereby acknowledged, and for other good and valuable consideration, the said The Anthony & Scovill Company has sold, assigned and transferred, and by these presents does sell, assign and transfer unto the said American Mutoscope and Biograph Company the whole right, title and interest in and to the said improvement in Apparatus for Photographing Objects in Motion and for Pro-

jecting Pictures and said improvements in Projecting Kinetoscopes and in and to the said letters patent therefor; the same to be held and enjoyed by the said American Mutoscope & Biograph Company for its own use and behoof; and for the use and behoof of its successors and assigns, to the full end of the terms for which said letters patent are or may be granted, as fully and entirely as the same would have been held and enjoyed by the said The Anthony & Scovill Company had this assignment and sale not been made.

2186

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, The Anthony & Scovill Company has hereunto signed by the hand of its President, duly authorized so to do and caused to be affixed its corporate seal, this 5th day of February, 1908.

THE ANTHONY & SCOVILL CO.
THOMAS W. STEPHENS, Pt.

(Seal)

A. C. LAMONTLEY, Secretary.

2187

State of New York, County of New York,

I, Francis L. Noble, a notary public in and for the State of New York, and County of Kings, do hereby certify that Thomas W. Stephens personally appeared before me and being by me duly sworn did depose and say, that he is the President of The Anthony & Scovill Company, the corporation described in the writing above, bearing date the 5th day of February, 1908, and authorized by said corporation to execute and acknowledge deeds other writings of said corporation, and that the seal affixed to said writing is the corporate seal of said corporation, and that said writing was signed and sealed by him in behalf of said corporation, and the said Thomas W. Stephens acknowledged said writing to be the act and deed of said corporation.

Given under my hand and seal this 20th day of February, 1908.

2189

FRANCIS L. NOBLE, Notary Public, Kings Co., Certificate filed in N. Y. Co.

(Seal)

Plaintiff's Exhibit D.

ASSIGNMENT.

2190

WHEREAS, the AMERICAN MUTOSCOPE & BIOGRAPH COMPANY, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of New Jersey, and having an office in New York City, is possessed of the entire right, title and interest in and to the following named inventions and letters patent of the United States therefor, namely:

Patent No. 629,063, granted to American Mutoscope Company as assignee of Herman Casler, dated July 18th, 1899, for KINETOGRAPHIC CAMERA.

Patent No. 707,934, granted to E. & H. T. Anthony & Co., as assignee by mesne assignments of Woodville Latham, dated August 26, 1902, for PROJECTING KINETOSCOPE, and

Patent No. 722,382, granted to American Mutoscope & Biograph Company as assignee of John A. Pross, dated March 10, 1903, for ANIMATED PIC-TURE APPARATUS, and

WHEREAS, THE MOTION PICTURE PAT-ENTS COMPANY, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of New Jersey. having an office at Jersey City, in said State, desires to acquire the entire right, title and interest which the said American Mutoscope & Biograph Company has in and to the aforesaid inventions and in and to the aforesaid letters patent, and to acquire the right to sue for past infringement of the aforesaid letters patent.

2192

NOW, THEREFORE, THIS INDENTURE WITNESSETH that for and in consideration of the sum of one dollar, and of other good and valuable considerations, the receipt whereof is hereby acknowledged, the said American Mutoscope & Biograph Company, in and by these presents does, assign, transfer and set over unto the said Motion Picture Patents Company, and its successors in . 2193 business, the entire right, title and interest in and to the said inventions and the said letters patent of the United States, and the right to sue for and recover damages and profits for past infringement of the said letters patent and each of them, and all right, title and interest in and to any reissue or reissues, or extension or extensions, of said letters patent, the same to be held and enjoyed by the said Motion Picture Patents Company and its successors in business, to the full end of the term or terms for which the said letters patent of the United States are granted, reissued or extended, as fully and entirely as the same would have been held and en-

joyed by the said American Mutoscope & Biograph Company if this assignment and sale had not been made.

The American Mutoscope & Biograph Company hereby covenants that it has full right to convey the interest herein assigned, and that it has not executed and will not execute any agreement in conflict herewith.

2195

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the AMERICAN MUTOSCOPE & BIOGRAPH COMPANY, has caused its corporate seal to be affixed hereto and its name to be subscribed hereto by its President, this 30th day of December, 1908.

AMERICAN MUTOSCOPE &
BIOGRAPH COMPANY,
By J. J. KENNEDY,
President.

Attest:

H. H. BRUENNER, Secretary.

2196

AMERICAN MUTOSCOPE & BIOGRAPH CO., INCORPORATED 1896. NEW JERSEY.

State of New York, County of New York,

On this 12th day of January, 1909, before me personally came HERMAN H. BRUENNER, the Secretary of the AMERICAN MUTOSCOPE & BIOGRAPH COMPANY, with whom I am per-

sonally acquainted, who being by me duly sworn, deposed and said that he resides in the Borough of Brooklyn, City of New York, and is the Secretary of the AMERICAN MUTOSCOPE & BIOGRAPH COMPANY, the corporation described in and which executed the foregoing instrument; that he knows the corporate seal of the said company; that the seal affixed to the said instrument is said corporate seal and is so affixed by order of the Board of Directors of the said company; and that he attested the same by subscribing his name to the said instrument as Secretary of the said company by like order.

2198

HERMAN H. BRUENNER.

Sworn to and subscribed before me this 12th day of January, 1909.

CLINTON DEFOREST GANSE, Notary Public, New York Co., N. Y.

Certificate filed in New York County.

Plaintiff's Exhibit E.

IN THE

DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES.

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY.

Complainant,

VB.

2201

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTUR-ING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY, Defendants.

In Equity No. 12-194. On Latham Patent No. 707,934.

Stipulation.

IT IS HEREBY STIPULATED AND AGREED by and between the solicitors for the respective parties, as follows:

- (1) That Printed Patent Office copies of United States Letters Patent and blue books or other printed copies of Letters Patent granted by foreign countries may be offered in evidence by either party hereto with the same force and effect as the originals or copies thereof duly certified by the United States Commissioner of Patents, subject to correction should error appear.
- (2) That the moving picture projecting machine described and illustrated in United States patent to Thomas Armat No. 673,992, May 14th, 1901, and particularly, in Figs. 2 and 13 of said patent, correctly illustrates and describes a ma-

chine which was publicly exhibited by Thomas Armat at the Atlanta Exposition at Atlanta, Georgia, during the months of September and October, 1895; that the said machine was originally constructed for said Thomas Armat and Charles Francis Jenkins of Washington, D. C., without the sprocket wheel designated by the letter E in the said patent No. 673,992, but with a pivoted spring-actuated arm bearing on the under side of the film between the exposure opening and the tension device and the roll of unexposed film, substantially as shown in Defendants' Exhibit, "Photograph of Feeding Mechanism-Atlanta Machine," and that such machine as thus constructed was sent to Atlanta, Georgia, on or about September 5th, 1895, and that subsequent to its arrival at the latter place, this machine was modified by Mr. Armat by the introduction of a sprocket wheel such as is designated by the letter E in the patent No. 673,992 in place of the spring-actuated arm of the said exhibit, and that the application for said United States Patent No. 673,992 was filed on February 19, 1896.

(3) That the Prague Amusement Company, Inc., defendant herein, is engaged in business in the exhibition of motion pictures in New York City, and that it conducts a motion picture theatre known as the 72nd Street Playhouse, at No. 350 East 72nd Street, in the Borough of Manhattan, City of New York; that at said 72nd Street Playhouse, said Prague Amusement Company uses one or more motion picture projecting machines commonly known as the "Simplex," and made and sold by the Precision Machine Company, Inc., the construction of which machines is correctly represented in the annexed four sheets of drawings, subject to correction, however, should error appear.

2204

(4) That the Universal Film Exchange of New York, defendant herein, is engaged in the business of buying motion pictures and leasing them to exhibitors thereof; that Universal Film Manufacturing Company, defendant herein, is engaged in New York City and elsewhere in the United States, in the business of making and selling motion picture films, and that in the course of such business it sells motion picture films produced by it to said Universal Film Exchange of New York; that subsequent to March 4th, 1915, and prior to March 17th, 1915, it sold to said Universal Film Exchange of New York a copy of a certain motion picture entitled "The Five Pound Note" under the brand name of "Imp-Universal" and a copy of a certain motion picture entitled "Refugees" under the brand name of "Joker-Universal"; that said copies of said motion pictures "The Five Pound Note" and "Refugees" were supplied by said Universal Film Exchange of New York to said Prague Amusement Company on March 17th, 1915, for use upon its said Simplex machines, and that said motion pictures were so used on that date by said Prague Amusement Company at said 72nd Street Playhouse by feeding said copies through its said machines, and thus causing said photographs to be projected on a screen in said 72nd Street Playhouse.

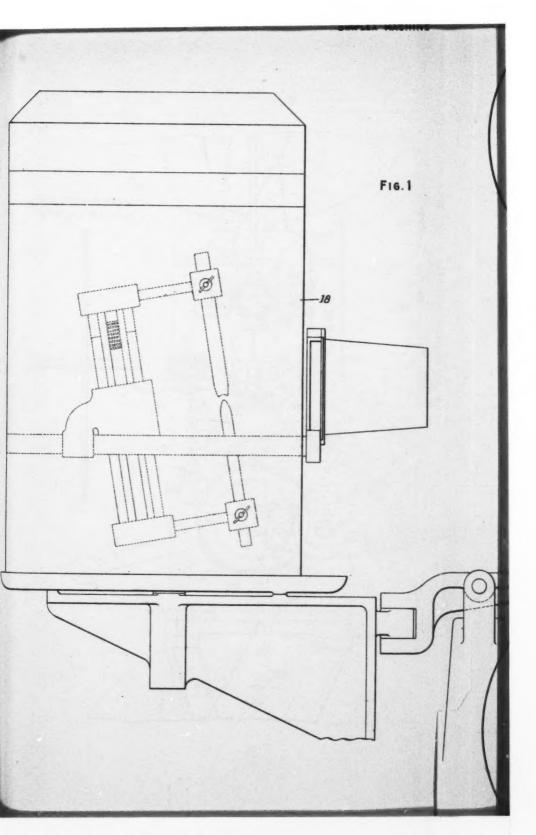
2208

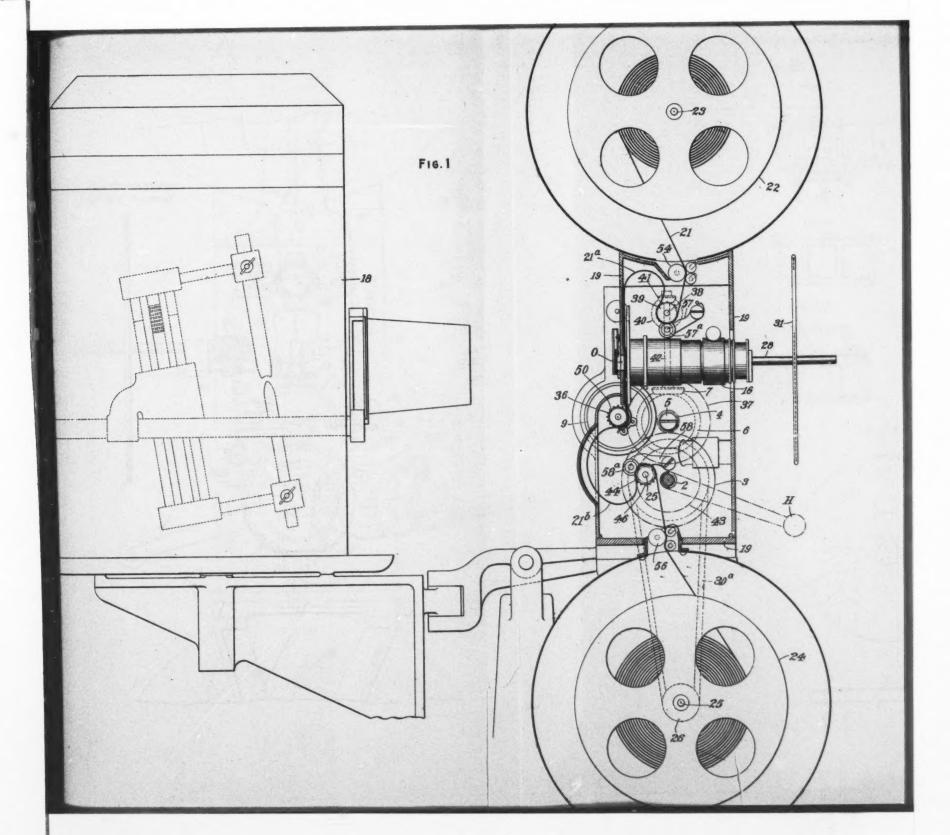
2207

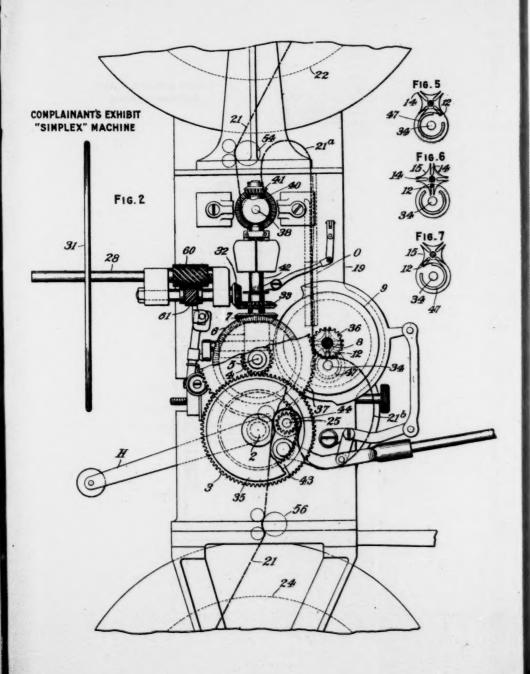
Dated, New York, N. Y., December 14, 1915.

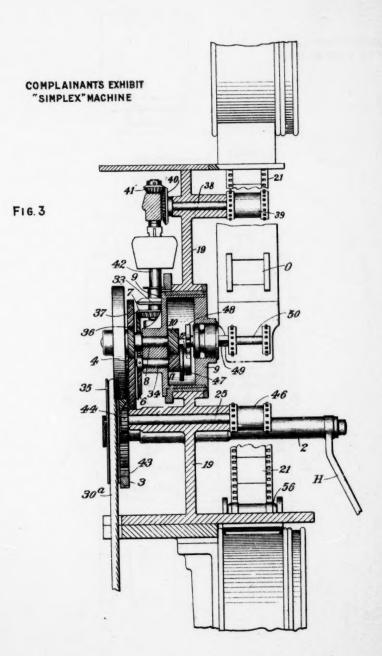
GEORGE F. SCULL, Solicitor for Complainant.

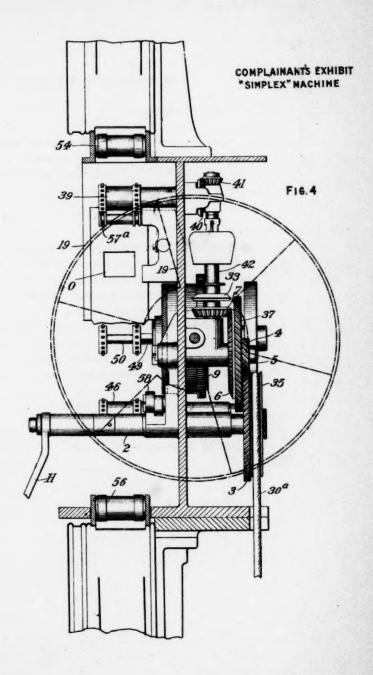
WETMORE & JENNER, Solicitors for Defendants.











January 18, 1915.

72nd Street Amusement Company, Mr. L. Bologino, 350 East 72nd Street, New York City.

Gentlemen:

We are informed that you are using without our license at the above address one or more motion picture projecting machines embodying the inventions of United States Letters Patent No. 707,934 (Latham), dated August 26, 1902, owned by us. Such use constitutes an infringement of said patent and makes you liable to a suit for an injunction and an accounting of profits and damages, and we hereby notify you to desist from such infringement.

2234

Very truly yours,

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, By George F. Scull.

GFS-DP

2237

Plaintiff's Exhibit H.

January 18, 1915.

Universal Film Exchange of New York, 1600 Broadway, New York City.

Gentlemen:

We are informed that at the following places one or more motion picture projecting machines embodying the inventions of United States Letters Patent No. 707,934 (Latham), dated August 26, 1902, are being used without license from us as owners of said patent:

Family Theatre, 117 East 125th Street, New York City.

Washington Theatre, 1803 Amsterdam Avenue, New York City.

Manhattan Theatre, 1059 Manhattan Avenue, New York City.

72nd Street Playhouse, 350 East 72nd Street, New York City.

Varieties Theatre, 112 Third Avenue, New York City.

Bunny Theatre, 2067 Fulton Street, Brooklyn. 2238 New York.

Eden Theatre, 409-11 Fifth Avenue, Brooklyn, New York.

59th Street Theatre, 313 West 59th Street, New York City.

Empire Theatre, 2363 Eighth Avenue, New York City.

Little Bijou Theatre, 11 Park Row, New York City.

Movies Theatre, 248 West 14th Street, New York City.

Comedy Theatre, 46 East 14th Street, New York City.

Colonial Theatre, 791 Westchester Avenue, New York City.

Ascher's Colonial Theatre, 481 Willis Avenue, New York City.

Keeney's Third Avenue Theatre, 445 Third Avenue, New York City.

Bryant Theatre, 223 West 42nd Street, New York City.

Grand Palace Theatre, 305-7 Market Street, Newark, New Jersey.

Royal Theatre, 490 Broad Street, Newark, New Jersey.

Academy Theatre, 342 Central Avenue, Jersey City, New Jersey.

Star Theatre, 445 Central Avenue, Jersey City, New Jersey.

Washington Show, 137 Main Street, Paterson, New Jersey.

Home Theatre, 38 North Main Street, Paterson, New Jersey.

Plaza Theatre, 400½ Springfield Avenue, Newark, New Jersey.

Red Star Theatre, 405 Bergenline Avenue, Union Hill, New Jersey.

We are informed also that you are supplying motion picture films for use on such machines and are thereby aiding and contributing to such infringing use of said machines. We hereby notify you to cease such supply; otherwise we will be obliged to enforce our rights by a suit asking for an injunction and an accounting of profits and damages.

Very truly yours,

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, By G. F. S.

GFS-DP

2240

Plaintiff's Exhibit I.

March 3, 1915.

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, 1600 Broadway, New York City.

Gentlemen:

We are informed that at the following places one or more motion picture projecting machines embodying the inventions of United States Letters Patent No. 707,934 (Latham), dated August 28, 1902, are being used without license from us as owners of said patent:

Family Theatre, 117 East 125th Street, New York City.

Washington Theatre, 1803 Amsterdam Avenue, New York City.

72nd Street Playhouse, 350 East 72nd Street, New York City.

Varieties Theatre, 112 Third Avenue, New York City.

2244 Bunny Theatre, 2067 Fulton Street, Brooklyn, New York.

Empire Theatre, 2363 Eighth Avenue, New York City.

Little Bijou Theatre, 11 Park Row, New York City.

Movies Theatre, 248 West 14th Street, New York City.

Comedy Theatre, 46 East 14th Street, New York City.

Ascher's Colonial Theatre, 481 Willis Avenue, New York City. Keeney's Third Avenue Theatre, 445 Third Avenue, New York City.

Bryant Theatre, 223 West 42nd Street, New York City.

Grand Palace Theatre, 305-7 Market Street, Newark, New Jersey.

Royal Theatre, 490 Broad Street, Newark, New Jersey.

Academy Theatre, 342 Central Avenue, Jersey City, New Jersey.

Washington Show, 137 Main Street, Paterson, New Jersey.

Plaza Theatre, 400½ Springfield Avenue, Newark, New Jersey.

Red Star Theatre, 405 Bergenline Avenue, Union Hill, New Jersey.

We are informed also that motion picture films for use on such machines are being supplied by the Universal Film Exchange of New York, Inc., and that you are supplying to the Universal Film Exchange of New York, Inc., the motion picture films which it is supplying for use on such machines, and you are thereby aiding and contributing to such infringing use of such machines.

We hereby notify you to cease such supply; otherwise we will be obliged to enforce our rights by a suit asking for an injunction and an accounting of profits and damages.

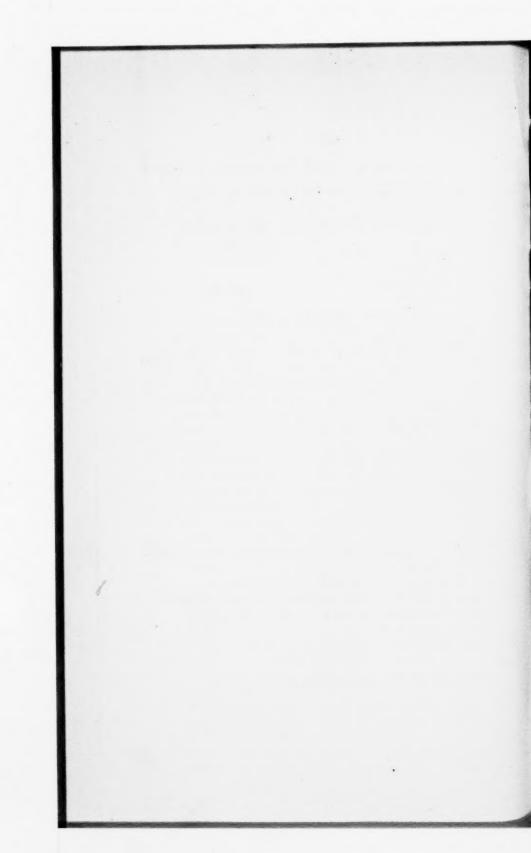
Very truly yours,

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,

By S.

GFS-DP

2247



a total of	Acres, 1	nieka 1000			to, isolusive, isolusive			
NAME OF ADJUSTICS.		AND POST-OFFICE AND	DETEN.	REGISTRY NUMBER	GLAR.		-	
Telkon	318 90	(graf		19530	Ru	uned !	was all.	
tool for	120-7	1046	.	1	+	10 4	7, t,	
and ilmans	100	and and	77	3	1			
Carrie la	Time!		26	4	1			
Low the and call	26 116	2/11		J	7			
17 Styl Ray	Cealth	176 34	1.4	6	1		***************************************	
grussy Tost to	Section 1	16 21	4)	12			
Marquer	791	Mark.	doglar	20 1	3	wit	· Cine	
want	-481	Min		7	i	7	Lecio	
Janene	772	1	1	40		and	deceiv	
1 your	1	1	X IN	1 2		4		
1 Than	Trans VIII	11/2	A A A	3	41		****************	
Harton	140	1		4	17			
4 careto	128	1160	4	1	2-2	-5		
othensku	1100	the 1	dan	- 1	23 64	NE	bi 0	
mich luns	4 748	20-74)	24	1	5	
112 cery	100	-		t	15	7 .	- 0	
a ser zer	11/2	1		5	16	5.5	-	
Hamis	200	41,1	<i>y</i>	27	*	- 2	4 A	
3 a Roman	10	1	77		13	B		
Tolong Ide	and of	DEVE	16	ن	12	8		
an leave	Pale	JUAN.	219	1	26			
I mark 1	Bor	>	-//	-	31 3	MY A	Level	
Richarde	a Itela	-3 /	11	6	(35)	Pertur	ed word	
Misig & Allen	neutral	AU		2	33			
Justoma	n	200		2 1	24			
110 colox	nen	avo	-n/	g	40			
/ //				********			MISTE OF	
						(3)	JAN Z	
Dad.	e of Bill	Total of		Register	red Pi	econ-A	19	

Plaintiff's Exhibit K.

2257

POST OFFICE DEPARTMENT

Official Business

Original Reg. No. 19550

Return To

M P P Co.

(Name of sender.)

Street and Number, or Post Office Box

80 5 Av

NEW YORK,

NEW YORK.

Penalty for Private Use To

Avoid Payment of Postage, \$300. Post Office

stamp

Jan. 19, 1915

6 P. M.

The postmaster who delivers the registered article must see that this card is properly signed, legibly postmarked, and mailed to the sender, without envelope or postage.

2258

REGISTRY RETURN RECEIPT.

Form 1548.

1915 Jan 20 A M 10

Received from the postmaster registered article, the original number of which appears on the reverse side of this card.

Date of Delivery 1/19/15.........191....

(To be filled in by person signing receipt.)

L. Bologino,

When delivery is made to an agent of the addressee, both addressee's name and agent's signature must appear in this receipt.

(Signature or name of addressee.)

C. Vysehrad (Signature of addressee's agent.)

Registered matter, the delivery of which has not been restricted by the sender or the addressee, is deliverable to any responsible person who customarily receives the ordinary mail of the addressee. (See Sec. 935, P. L. and R.)

When the above receipt has been properly signed, it must be postmarked with the name of delivering office and actual date of delivery and mailed to its address, without envelope or postage.

Complainant's Exhibit L.

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS Co.,
Complainant,

2261

VS.

In Equity No. 5-167.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE

COMPANY OF AMERICA,

Defendant.

COMPLAINANT'S EXHIBIT.

Lauste Deposition in Armat Interference.

2262

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA,

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR,

United States Patent Office.

To all to whom these presents shall come, GREETING:

THIS IS TO CERTIFY, that the annexed is a true copy from the Records of this Office of the

Testimony of Eugene Lauste on behalf of Casler, received June 15, 1898, in the matter of

LATHAM

vs.

CASLER

VS.

ARMAT.

Interference Number 18,461.

SUBJECT MATTER:

2264

Apparatus for Projecting on a Screen Pictures of Moving Objects.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand and caused the seal of the Patent Office to be affixed at the City of Washington, this 5th day of April, in the year of our Lord one (Seal) thousand nine hundred and eleven and of the Independence of the United States of America the one hundred 2265 and thirty-fifth.

F. A. TENNANT. Assistant Commissioner of Patents. 2267

New York, April 29th, 1898; 10 a.m.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present—E. M. Marble, Esq., Atty. for Casler; J. E. M. Bowen, Esq., Atty. for Latham. No one appearing for Armat.

EUGENE LAUSTE, a witness called on behalf of Herman Casler, being first duly sworn, testifies as follows in answer to interrogatories propounded by Mr. Marble:

Q1. Please state your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Eugene Lauste; age, 41; residence, Paris, France; and occupation, electrician and operator of the Biograph Company.

Q2. You say that your residence is in Paris, France; state whether you ever lived in the United States?

A. Yes, about eleven years.

Q3. Where were you born?

2268 A. In Paris, France.

Q4. When did you come to this country first?

A. In 1886, I think.

Q5. Where were you living in 1894, 1895 and 1896?

A. Well, in 1894 I lived at 35 Frankfort Street, New York City; in 1895, in Brooklyn; in 1896, in New York.

Q6. Do you know Mr. Woodville Latham?

A. I know him, yes.

Q7. When did you make his acquaintance?

A. In September, 1894.

- Q8. Where did you first meet Mr. Woodville Latham?
 - A. In Twenty-first Street, New York City.
- Q9. State how you came to meet Mr. Latham there?
 - A. By Mr. Dickson.
 - Q10. What Mr. Dickson?
 - A. William Laurie Kennedy Dickson.
- Q11. How long have you known this Mr. Dickson?
 - A. For about six years.
 - Q12. Where did you make his acquaintance?
 - A. At Edison's Laboratory.
 - Q13. Where is that?
 - A. At Orange, New Jersey.
- Q14. You say you met Mr. Woodville Latham by Mr. Dickson. Why do you say that?
- A. Mr. Dickson told me that he had something good for me in way of a situation in connection with a machine for projecting pictures.
- Q15. I wish you could state all the conversation you had with Mr. Dickson, to which you refer in your last answer?
- A. Well, Mr. Dickson said that Mr. Latham would explain everything to me about that business.
- Q16. State whether you had a letter of introduction to Mr. Latham from Mr. Dickson?
- A. Yes, I got a letter from Mr. Dickson, to Mr. Latham.
- Q17. Did you hand this letter from Mr. Dickson to Mr. Latham when you called on him?
 - A. Yes.
- Q18. If you can, I wish you would state what Mr. Latham said to you on this first call that you made on him?
 - A. Well, he explained to me his idea of a machine

for projecting pictures, and if I understand the machine I was to build a machine for that. said yes. Mr. Latham said, I don't understand the mechanic part, but if you will build a machine and have good success with it I will give you a good situation. Well, I said, anything in the way of mechanics I can make, because I am well acquainted with mechanics. Then Mr. Latham said we want to first experiment with the projecting machine, and if you have success we will build the taking machine after. Mr. Latham asked me what kind of tools I needed for the shop. I explained to him that I wanted a lathe and drill press, and grindstone and all the small tools he can give me. Mr. Latham says, the first thing to do is to get the work shop, and I am going out with Mr. Otway Latham to find the shop. We found a place, I don't remember where, and everything was stopped afterwards, we did not do anything for about four weeks, then Mr. Latham called me again, and said, I have money now to start the business, and we found another place in Frankfort Street. Now, Mr. Latham told me he would not come many times to the shop but would leave me alone to work at the machine, and only Mr. Otway would stay in the shop with me to see what I would do. Mr. Latham gave me \$20,000 shares for the idea of the machine. I started working the 4th of October, 1894, in the shop in Frank-

2274

2273

fort Street.

Q19. When you say in your last answer, "He explained to me his idea of a machine for projecting pictures," do you mean to be understood that he told you how the machine was to be constructed?

Objected to as leading, the proper form of inquiry would be "What did Mr. Latham say to you about his idea?"

A. No. He said to me that his son had seen an exhibition of the kinetoscope and he wanted to make an exhibition on a screen, and asked me if I can build a similar machine to the kinetoscope, but for projecting. And his son showed me in a place on Broadway a kinetoscope. After that I started working on the first machine, and we used a kinetoscope film on this machine for experimenting. Now, that machine did not suit Mr. Latham and I started another one.

Q20. State whether Mr. Latham ever showed to you a sketch or drawing of what he thought would make a projecting machine for exhibiting pictures on a screen?

A. I never got a sketch from him. I made the first one.

Q21. When did you make this sketch?

A. On the fifth or sixth of October.

Q22. What did you do with it?

A. I started the machine from it.

Q23. State whether you showed that sketch to anybody?

A. Well, Mr. Woodville Latham and Mr. Otway Latham saw it. I showed it to them.

Q24. When was it you showed this sketch to Mr. Woodville Latham and Mr. Otway Latham?

A. About the fifth or sixth of October, or somewhere about that time, 1894.

Q25. Where were you when you made that sketch?

A. At Frankfort Street, in the shop.

Q26. Where is the sketch now, if you know?

A. Well, I have that sketch home, but I don't know if I can find it.

Q27. Have you made any search for it?

A. Not exactly, I will find out to-day.

2276

Q28. Have you tried to find it?

A. Yes, but my furniture is in storage and it gives me a great deal of trouble to find anything.

Q29. When did you try to find it?

A. Yesterday, the 28th of April.

Q30. Can you make a sketch like that sketch which you made, as you have stated, and showed to Mr. Woodville Latham and Mr. Otway Latham?

A. Yes.

Q31. Please make such a sketch?

A. I have made the sketch and here produce it.

2279

The sketch made and produced by the witness is offered in evidence and marked "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 1."

Mr. Bowen: The offering and receiving in evidence of the sketch "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 1," which the witness has just made, is objected to on the ground that it is in the nature of secondary evidence and hence, clearly incompetent. At the hearing of this case, a motion will be made to exclude it from consideration.

2280

Q32. I wish you would take this sketch which you have produced, and state what the different parts therein represented illustrate to you; that is, what are they? And you may mark those different parts with letters, A, B, C, etc.

The question is objected to as incompetent and counsel for Latham wishes to state now on the record in order to save repeating objections, that the same objection is to apply to all testimony of this witness relating to this sketch.

A. A represents a shutter; B, an electric motor; C, the frame, D, a window; E, a sprocket wheel;

F, rollers; and G, gear connecting the sprocket with the motor.

Q33. When you made this sketch you have spoken of and showed it to Mr. Woodville Latham and Mr. Otway Latham, what, if anything, did you say to them about it?

A. I said that it was something similar to the kinetoscope, with a motor attachment on the same machine. This machine was never used because the motor was too small and had not enough power, and I started another machine, a new one. At that time Mr. Kleinert came, and he objected that the machine would take too long to finish.

Q34. At this time that you showed that sketch to Mr. Woodville Latham and Mr. Otway Latham, did you tell them what the different parts of the sketch represented, and how it would operate?

A. Yes, and he said, I trust you, you go ahead. Q35. Who said that?

A. Mr. Woodville Latham.

Q36. When did you commence work on this machine which you have mentioned?

A. About the seventh or eighth of October, 1894. Q37. Was that machine ever completed?

A. No.

Q38. State whether you ever made any machine for Mr. Latham, and what kind of a machine it was—I mean the first machine?

A. The first machine was a projecting machine and was made from the drawing.

Q39. What drawing?

A. This one I made just now.

Q40. Do you mean this sketch, or the one you showed to Mr. Woodville Latham and Mr. Otway Latham, as you have testified?

A. Well, the sketch I showed to Mr. Latham.

2282

Q41. When was that machine completed?

A. In December, 1894.

Q42. In the machine that you first completed, what was used to carry the pictures?

A. A kinetoscope film.

Q43. How was that film to be moved?

A. By an electric motor, continuously, without stopping.

Q44. What use, if any, was made of that machine?

2285

A. I did not use this one; I started a new one. Q45. Do you mean in your last answer, the machine which you say was completed, you think, in December, 1894?

A. No, I don't mean this one.

Q46. You have testified that you made a machine and it was completed in December, 1894, and that it was intended to be used with a kinetoscope film. Now, was any use at all made of that machine after it was completed? Did you test it or try it, to see what it would do?

A. Yes, we tried it, and after this experiment we started a new machine, a new style, a larger film.

2286

Q47. You have testified to having made a sketch, and to have shown it to Mr. Woodville Latham and Mr. Otway Latham, about the fifth or sixth of October, 1894; state whether you ever made any other sketch or drawings in connection with your work for Mr. Latham?

A. Yes, I made some other sketch.

Q48. When did you make that other sketch? A. In December, 1894.

Mr. Bowen: The testimony as to this other sketch is objected to as secondary, the best evidence being the sketch itself if it were made.

Q49. State whether you showed that sketch to anybody or not—this second sketch.

A. Yes; I think Kleinert saw that sketch. Kleinert gave many pieces of machinery for use on this machine, he brought them in.

Q50. State whether you showed this second sketch to Mr. Woodville Latham?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as leading and suggestive.

A. Yes, I showed it to him.

Q51. Where is that sketch, if you know? I mean this second sketch?

A. Well, the second sketch I don't know, but after the machine was made I made a new sketch and had a blue-print, and Mr. Woodville Latham took that sketch with him, and I never saw it again

Q52. Then from your last answer I understand that you made a third sketch or drawing from which a blue-print was taken. Where is this sketch or drawing, if you know?

A. I don't know; Mr. Latham took it.

Mr. Bowen: The same objection is made regarding this alleged third sketch and blueprint as was made to the testimony having reference to this alleged second sketch.

Q53. I want to know, Mr. Lauste, if you know, where this sketch or drawing is which you made after the machine was completed, and from which a blue-print was made?

A. I don't know.

Q54. Do you mean that you gave this third sketch, the one made after the machine was completed, to Mr. Woodville Latham?

2288

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as leading and suggestive.

A. Yes, Mr. Woodville Latham took it from the bench, and when I asked him where it was, he said he took it home.

Q55. State whether you wrote your name, or put any dates on any of these sketches which you have mentioned?

A. Yes, I put my name, but I don't know if I put the date, I am not sure.

Q56. Did you put your name on each of the sketches?

A. Well, I guess so.

Q57. What did you put your name on the sketches for?

A. In case they should be used sometime—for testimony or something like that.

Q58. Please describe what was shown on the second sketch which you made and which you gave to Mr. Woodville Latham?

A. I showed the complete machine with objective, condenser and an arc lamp.

Q59. Why did you make the third sketch, if the second one showed the complete machine?

A. Because Mr. Latham asked me for it.

Q60. Why did you make a blue-print of this third sketch—or a tracing?

A. I made a blue-print because I wanted to keep one for myself and give one to Mr. Latham.

> Counsel for Casler requests Mr. Woodville Latham, who is now present, and his counsel, Mr. Bowen, to produce these sketches which the witness says he made and gave to Mr. Latham.

2231

Mr. Bowen: Counsel for Latham replies that he has never seen the alleged sketches and he is satisfied that they are not in Mr. Latham's possession, and this denial will be made in the regular way when an opportunity is given to put in testimony in rebuttal to this remarkable testimony which is being given to-day.

Q61. Can you make a sketch like the second one which you made and gave to Mr. Latham?

A. Well, yes, near, not exactly. We used that drawing for two purposes. First, for continuous motion and second elliptical gear, for alternating motion, slow or fast.

Q62. Please make a sketch as nearly as you can like the second sketch you made and gave to Mr. Latham?

A. I have made the sketch and here produce it.

The sketch produced by the witness is offered in evidence by counsel for Casler and the same is marked "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 2."

Mr. Bowen: The offering and receiving in evidence of the drawing marked "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 2" is objected to on the ground that it is secondary in character and not the best evidence. Its exclusion from the evidence will be urged at the hearing.

Q63. I notice that you have put letters near to the parts of the apparatus which you have illustrated in "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 2." Were the letters on the sketch which you made and gave to Mr. Woodville Latham?

A. No.

2294

Q64. State whether at any time you explained the second sketch you made, and which you have now reproduced, to Mr. Latham; that is, told him what the parts were, and how they operated?

Mr. Bowen: Question objected to and all testimony having reference to this sketch, or the reproduced sketch, is objected to on the ground that it is incompetent as calling for secondary evidence.

2297

A. I explained it to Mr. Latham, but I don't remember the date; it was shortly after Mr. Kleinert came. This machine was built with different pieces used in the kinetoscope brought by Mr. Kleinert.

Q65. State whether you explained this second sketch you made to Mr. Woodville Latham so that he understood it?

A. Well, I explained it to Mr. Kleinert and him both.

Q66. You have testified that you made a third sketch after the machine was completed, which Mr. Woodville Latham took away with him. You have produced a sketch which you have stated off the record is like the third sketch which you made. Please examine this sketch—the third sketch—which I now hand you, and say whether it is like or unlike in all particulars or any particular the third sketch which you made after the first machine was completed?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as calling for secondary evidence and also because the sketch which the witness has just made and to which the question relates is immaterial and irrelevant so far as the issue of this

interference is concerned, and this objection is intended to apply to all of the testimony of this witness relating to this sketch.

A. Yes, it is the same.

(Recess.)

Counsel for Casler offers in evidence the sketch made and produced by the witness as a reproduction of the third sketch made by him after the machine was completed, and the same is marked "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 3."

2300

The offering and receipt in evidence of the sketch "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 3" is objected to on the ground that it is not the best evidence, being secondary in its nature and, moreover, the machine which it illustrates is not the machine of this issue, for which reason the sketch is immaterial and irrelevant.

2301

Q67. State whether or not this "Sketch No. 3," marked "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 3," correctly represents the first machine, as it is called in this record, which you made for Mr. Woodville Latham?

Mr. Bowen: This question and all others that may be asked concerning the sketch inquired about, objected to as incompetent.

A. This Sketch No. 3 refers to a machine with continuous motion using elliptical gear for varying the speed.

Q68. Who designed and invented the machine represented on these three sketches which you have produced, and now marked "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketches Nos. 1, 2 and 3?"

A. Well, I did the sketching, but there is no invention in it, because it is a copy of the kinetoscope. The only invention I done was in the taking machine.

2303

Q69. In your last answer you mention a "taking machine." During the taking of the testimony in behalf of Mr. Woodville Latham a machine was produced and offered in evidence and marked "Latham's Exhibit No. 12." This machine was sometimes spoken of by Mr. Bowen and Mr. Woodville Latham as the "original machine," or the "first machine," and was, as it appears in the evidence, made for a taking machine or camera. The testimony shows that its construction was commenced sometime in December, 1894, and that you worked on that machine, and later on had as an assistant Mr. E. W. Kleinert. Please state whether you worked upon and assisted in constructing a machine such as is referred to in this question?

2304

Counsel for Latham denies that the first or original machine which is in this case as "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," was referred to in the testimony on behalf of Latham as a "camera." It was claimed to be the first or original machine constructed that embodied a stop-motion mechanism, and it is the machine upon which this witness Lauste worked under the direction of Mr. Latham and in his pay.

A. Yes, I started the drawing, and the pattern, and I built all the machine. I had some pieces

made by Pierce in John Street, and workmen from Pierce—a tool-maker—assisted me in making the gearing, bushing, and I stayed in the shop all the week giving my instructions to the men working, because I had no drawings made for each piece, and I watched the men working so they would do what I wanted.

Q70. Who designed and invented that machine?

A. I did. I made the drawing in two hours, and I started the pattern immediately, the same day.

Q71. What kind of movement was it intended that this machine should give to the picture-carrying film?

A. There was a stop motion by using gear in the form of a Maltese cross, like a watch; that was the principle of the invention.

Q72. State whether this stop which you have mentioned in your last answer, gave to the film a continuous movement or an intermittent movement?

A. An intermittent movement.

Q73. What was this machine that you have said had the intermittent movement, made to do; that is, what was the object of building that machine?

A. To take pictures; forty a second.

Q74. State what use, if you know, this machine was ever put to; what they did with it?

A. For taking pictures for use on the eidoloscope projecting machine.

Q75. Where was this machine used for taking pictures to be used on a projecting machine?

A. In the shop.

Q76. Anywhere else?

A. Yes, we used it on the roof of the Madison Square Garden to take a prize fight.

Q77. Who were the fighters?

A. Griffo and Barnett.

2306

Q78. When was this machine so used on the Madison Square Garden for taking pictures?

A. I don't know. I think it was March or April.

Q79. State whether it was used on the roof of the building where your shop was for taking pictures?

A. Yes. We used it, too, on the Police Gazette Building.

Q80. Where did you sleep from the time that you commenced to work for Mr. Latham on for several months?

:2309

A. I slept in the shop.

Q81. You mean the shop where this machine was made that you have been testifying about?

A. Yes.

Q82. When did you commence to sleep there?

A. I think it was the fifth of October, 1894.

Q83. How long did you continue to sleep there?

A. I think I left one month before moving for Beekman Street.

Q84. When did you move to Beekman Street?

A. I don't remember.

Q85. Do you know Mr. W. K. L. Dickson?

2310

A. Yes, I know him.

Q86. Did this Mr. Dickson associate himself with Mr. Latham and his sons at any time?

A. Yes, sometime in April, 1895.

Q87. Did Mr. Dickson come with Mr. Latham and his sons before or after they moved to Beekman Street?

A. He came before we moved. And he left, too, before we moved to Beekman Street.

Q88. State whether you were still sleeping in the shop where this machine, "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," was made by you at the time Mr. Dickson came

and associated himself with Mr. Latham and his sons in business?

A. Yes.

Q89. State whether this machine "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," about which you have testified, was ever used as a projecting machine?

A. No. We make only experiment with it, but it did not do, it did not work.

Q90. Where did you make these experiments?

A. In the developing room in Frankfort Street, the same place.

Q91. Do you mean the same place where the machine was constructed?

A. No, not the same place, but the same building, because we had three rooms.

Q92. How many experiments did you try with it?

A. Only one time.

Q93. Why would it not do for a projecting machine?

A. Because the machine was not made for projecting; it was meant for taking.

Q94. What was there about the machine, or the films used, which made it impossible to use this machine, "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," for projecting pictures on the screen?

A. Because of the shrinkage of the film. The taking machine used an unexposed film, and after developing, the film shank and don't fit the sprocket.

Q95. What don't fit the sprocket?

A. The film—the holes don't fit the teeth on the sprocket.

Q96. While you had this machine, "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," at 35 Frankfort Street, state

2312

whether you saw it every day and every night it was there?

A. Yes, every day I saw it in the shop.

Q97. When it was taken over to 101 Beekman Street, did you go with it?

A. Oh, yes, I did not carry the stuff myself, but I went with the wage by time and watched everything.

Q98. How long did you stay in the employ of the company or people who owned this machine, "Latham's Exhibit No. 12?"

2315 A. Two years and one month.

Q99. Do you mean to be understood as swearing that this machine, "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," was never used as a projecting machine, and could not be used as a projecting machine from the time you made it until you last saw it?

A. Yes.

Q100. You have mentioned a stop that was used in this machine for giving the film an intermittent movement. How did you come to use that stop, which is sometimes called the Geneva stop, in that machine?

A. Well, I know I have to stop the film for every picture taken and I know the Maltese cross is the best motion for that purpose, and I found the drawing in a catalogue of the Boston Gear Works, and Mr. Kleinert wrote for me to get information for me about the size, because I can't make the calculation myself, it is too much computation.

Q101. Why did Mr. Kleinert write to the Boston Gear Works? Why did you not write yourself?

A. Because I cannot write good English. I was afraid people cannot understand me.

Q102. Do you mean to be understood that Mr. Woodville Latham did not direct you to use this

Maltese cross stop, as you call it, in that machine?

A. I spoke to Mr. Latham, and he said that is a good scheme, a good idea.

Q103. In the issue of this interference, a slack or loop is made necessary in the film by the tension device. Where did you get the idea of having such a slack or loop in the film?

A. From a book I saw at Edison's Laboratory. And I asked Mr. Latham to get me that book, I don't know the name. Mr. Dickson was using that book. Mr. Latham never found that book. The same as me, I looked all over, but never found it.

Q104. When was it you saw this book in Edison's Laboratory, that suggested the idea of a slack or loop in the film?

A. In 1890 or 1891, I am not sure.

Q105. How came you to be in Edison's Laboratory?

A. When I left Paris, I went right to Mr. Edison, I had a recommendation to him.

Q106. Did you work for him?

A. Yes, about seven years.

Q107. When did you leave Mr. Edison's employ?

A. The 30th of March, 1892.

Q108. Have you any book which has in it a cut or picture like that cut or picture of the machine you saw in this book in Edison's Laboratory?

A. No, I can't find the book. But I found in Paris that Professor Marey uses the loop in his first taking machine in 1888.

Q109. Where did you get the idea of using reels to carry the film with? One to receive the film and the other to carry it until it is pulled through the machine?

A. Why, that is my own idea.

2318

Q110. Did you get the suggestion from any book?

A. Oh, no, no, no.

Q111. It appears in the testimony that Mr. Kleinert assisted you in the building of this machine marked "Latham's Exhibit No. 12." What work did Mr. Kleinert do on that machine, if you remember?

A. The only work he do is in turning the sprocket.

Q112. Who supervised the making of the parts for that machine which were made at Pierce's shop?

A. I did.

2321

Q113. Do you mean to be understood that Mr. Woodville Latham did not direct you how to make or suggest to you how to make any part of the machine marked "Latham's Exhibit No. 12?"

A. No, not anything.

Q114. In whose employ are you when you are in Paris?

A. Mr. Geangean, manufacturer of electrical works.

Q115. Did Mr. Otway Latham suggest the way of building or forming any part or parts of the machine marked "Latham's Exhibit No. 12?"

2322

A. Sometimes he give me some idea, but it don't do, it don't work. He is not mechanical.

Q116. State whether you made any sketch or drawing illustrating the machine which you made for Mr. Latham, and which now is "Latham's Exhibit No. 12?"

A. Yes, I made two different views, and I have two blueprints, too, of each view.

Q117. Where are these sketches, if you know?

. A. Well, Mr. Latham took them with the blueprint of the projecting machine.

Q118. Have you ever seen them since?

A. Never.

Q119. Can you make sketches like those sketches were which you made to illustrate the taking machine which you built for Mr. Woodville Latham?

A. Yes.

Q120. Please make them?

A. I have made the sketches and now produce them.

The sketches produced by the witness are offered in evidence and marked "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketches No. 4."

The offering and receipt in evidence of the exhibit "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketches No. 4," objected to as incompetent and immaterial, and also because they are secondary and not primary evidence.

Q121. What does this sketch near the left edge of the sheet on which these sketches are made, represent?

A. It represents the Maltese cross stop-motion, four turns to one.

Q122. When did you make the sketches of which "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketches No. 4" are a reproduction?

A. The last of November or the first of December, 1894.

Q123. State whether you showed these sketches you made at the time stated to anyone, and if so, to whom?

A. I showed them to Mr. Woodville Latham, Mr. Otway, Mr. Kleinert.

Q124. When you showed the sketches, of which exhibit the Sketches No. 4 are a reproduction, to Mr. Woodville Latham, state whether you explained said sketches to him?

2324

A. Yes, I explained them to him.

Q125. Did he seem to understand the sketches from your explanation?

A. I guess so, he told me to go ahead.

Q126. How large a sheet of paper were these sketches that are represented by "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketches No. 4" made upon?

A. Eighteen inches by a foot was the size of the paper, but the drawing was natural size.

Recess until 8 p. m.

2327

8 o'clock p. m.

The witness states that he wishes to make a correction: In the drawing Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 4, is the single omission I make. In the first one I used a worm in place of the three gear.

Q127. You mean that you so represented it in the drawings of which these are a reproduction?

A. Yes, in the first drawing I used a worm.

Cross-examination by Mr. Bowen, without waiving objections:

XQ128. You have done in your lifetime a good deal of fine work as a mechanic, have you not?

A. Yes.

XQ129. And wherever you have been employed, particular work, or work requiring much skill, has been entrusted to you, is that so?

A. Oh, yes.

XQ130. When did you arrive from Paris?

A. This time I left Liverpool the 20th of April, and I arrived here Wednesday, the 27th.

XQ131. Did you come to testify in this case?

A. The only thing I know, Mr. Koopman sent me here, and said, you want to see Mr. Marvin and he will explain to you what he wants you for.

XQ132. Is Mr. Koopman in Paris?

A. No, in London.

XQ133. What kind of work were you doing in Paris?

A. I operated the biograph, at the Casino, in Paris.

XQ134. When did you last see Mr. Dickson? I mean W. K. L. Dickson?

A. About five months ago.

XQ135. Did you talk with him about the work that you did at the Latham shop?

A. No, I never spoke about it.

XQ136. Well, did Mr. Dickson speak to you about it?

A. No; he wrote to me some time ago and asked me if I remember that he is the inventor of the loop, and I said, No, because I made the machine before he came.

XQ137. Before he came where?

A. With the Eidoloscope Co.—or with Mr. Latham.

XQ138. Do you mean that before Mr. Dickson came to Latham about this business you had made a machine at the Latham shops having a loop?

A. Oh, yes; the first machine I made I used the loop. However, Mr. Dickson made one suggestion, a supplementary sprocket.

XQ139. When did Mr. Diekson make the suggestion about this sprocket?—the date, I mean?

2330

A. The date I don't know, I can't remember the date. But when we take pictures, we tear the film, and after that Mr. Dickson put on the supplementary sprocket the machine worked better.

XQ140. The machine you mention was what machine? the taking machine? that you built at the Latham shop?

A. Yes, that is the one.

XQ141. And is that machine shown in this sketch "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 4?" I mean is the machine shown in said sketch the machine to which Mr. Dickson added his sprocket that you mentioned?

A. Yes; it is marked by the letter E on the sketch.

XQ142. Mr. Dickson told you to put this sprocket on after the machine was finished, or before?

A. After the machine was completed he made that suggestion to Mr. Otway Latham; and Mr. Otway Latham told Mr. Kleinert to do the jobto put the sprocket on, and Mr. Kleinert said that is impossible. And then Mr. Otway asked me if I can do that, and I said Yes. And I do the work.

XQ143. Mr. Otway Latham was the manager of 2334 the shop, was he not?

A. There was no manager in the shop.

XQ144. Did he give you instructions; that is, order you to do this or that?

A. No, he did not give me any orders.

XQ145. What was he in the shop for, then; do vou know?

A. Just for watching the shop and for watching me.

XQ146. He was almost always there, was he not? and took much interest in the work?

A. Oh, yes.

XQ147. Mr. Dickson would sometimes come to the Frankfort shop where the machine was being built, I believe?

A. Yes, I seen him a few times.

XQ148. Did he have particular days for coming?

A. No, he don't like coming to the shop, he don't work for the company at that time, he worked for Mr. Edison. And Mr. Dickson told me that Mr. Latham wanted him in the company.

XQ149. Before you commenced to work for the Lathams, Mr. Dickson you and talked with you and told you the kind of work you were to do in the shop?

A. Well, I go to Mr. Dickson by order of Mr. Latham to get some ideas from him, but I never got any idea.

XQ150. I mean to ask if Mr. Dickson got the job for you with the Lathams?

A. Yes, he did.

XQ151. Did Dickson tell you at that time that a shop in a quiet place was to be found so that the work to be done would not be known by anybody?

A. No; Mr. Latham said that—Mr. Woodville Latham.

XQ152. If I should tell you that at the time you went to work for the Lathams on this experimenting, Mr. Dickson had written a letter in which he said that he had arranged everything with you, that a quiet shop was to be found, close to the ferry if possible, and that great caution should be taken to keep matters quiet, would you think that true?

Mr. Marble: Question objected to as not cross-examination, and also as purely speculative.

2336

A. No, I never got letters like that. But Mr. Otway said that maybe Mr. Dickson come here sometime. We want to get a place near the ferry, because if he comes here he don't have much time.

XQ153. You have testified that you slept in the Frankfort Street shop while the machine was being made; did not Mr. Dickson arrange with you to do that?

A. Oh, no.

XQ154. Will you swear that he did not arrange with you to go to work for the Lathams and leave your family in Newark and live in the Frankfort Street shop to do the work on these machines?

A. No, that is wrong. I swear that is wrong. I asked Mr. Latham if I might sleep in the shop because I have to work very late at night and I have all my furniture in storage in Newark. And Mr. Latham said Yes, and he buy me the bed and the pillow.

XQ155. Please state what was the first work you did in the Frankfort shop on these machines?

A. Projecting machine for experiment with the kinetoscope film,—the standard film.

XQ156. Will you please explain something new about the idea of Mr. Dickson for getting a stop motion in the taking machine; the witnesses in this case having testified that there was a great deal of experiment made by you in the Frankfort shop on that idea of Mr. Dickson's?

Question objected to as not cross-examination.

A. We tried a stop motion, Mr. Dickson's idea, but were only a few days experimenting. I said when I saw the drawing that the thing would not

2339

2340 -

work, because we needed too much speed and it was no good far that, it was good for a slow motion. That is all I do for Mr. Dickson, that was all the experiment.

XQ157. Please explain a little about the Dickson idea; what he tried to do.

Same objection.

A. Well, I don't know. He talked all the time with Mr. Otway Latham.

XQ158. What did you try for Mr. Dickson?

2342

Same objection.

A. It was a stop motion something similar to the escapement of a watch.

XQ159. Well, at any rate, you thought it would not work just as you thought and so expressed yourself at that time that Mr. Dickson was no mechanic; is that so?

Same objection, and also because it is another hit at Dickson.

2343

A. Yes.

XQ160. Please state at what date or month this idea of Mr. Dickson's was tried in the Frankfort shop?

Same objection.

A. It was a few days before I started the first camera; it was in December—I am not sure.

XQ161. You were present, I believe, when the first taking machine was used on the roof of the

2345

2346

Frankfort Street building. Who operated the machine at that time?

A. Mr. Otway Latham. I fixed it all ready for him, I fixed the films and he run the machine. Mr. Kleinert used it, too; Mr. Otway Latham, Mr. Kleinert and me used the machine.

XQ162. What was the picture you took on the Frankfort Street roof?

A. We took Mr. Woodville Latham, Mr. Kleinert, Mr. Gray Latham, me and my son.

XQ163. When did you leave the Latham shop or the Eidoloscope Company's shop, I mean when did you stop work there for good?

A. November 2, 1896.

XQ164. What did you do then?

A. I went to the American Biograph.

XQ165. That company is the same as the American Mutoscope Company?

A. Yes, that is the same, the American Mutoscope and Biograph Company.

XQ166. Who got you that job?

A. I asked Mr. Dickson, and Mr. Dickson recommended me to Mr. Koopman.

XQ167. Did you know a Mr. Weit who worked at the same place, the American Mutoscope Company?

A. Yes.

XQ168. What did you do—what kind of work, at the American Mutoscope Company?

A. Operator.

XQ169. When you went to work for the Lathams at the Frankfort Street shop, with whom did you arrange for pay? Who was to pay you?

A. Mr. Woodville Latham.

XQ170. Did he pay you all that he agreed to pay you for work on those machines?

A. Yes.

XQ171. Did he increase your pay after you had been there some time?

A. Yes; when the new company started.

XQ172. How much a week did he pay you?

A. Twenty-one dollars a week when I started.

XQ173. Please explain what kind of work you did when you were employed at the Edison Laboratory?

A. All kinds of work; instrument maker, electrician, machinist, pattern maker, everything.

XQ174. Did you know E. W. Kleinert at that time?

A. No.

XQ175. Did you know that he worked at Edison's place at the same time you did?

A. No, he don't work the same time.

XQ176. You, however, knew Mr. W. K. L. Dickson, who was employed there at the same time?

A. Yes.

XQ177. You have testified that Mr. Woodville Latham gave you \$20,000 in stock. Are you quite sure that he gave it to you, or did the company give it to you?

A. Mr. Woodville Latham.

XQ178. What did he give it to you for?

A. For bringing out the idea of the projecting machine.

XQ179. You have spoken of getting work done at Pierce's in John Street. Did you get any work done for these machines at Pierce's without permission of Mr. Woodville Latham or Mr. Otway Latham?

A. I went to Mr. Pierce's with Mr. Woodville Latham, and he said to Mr. Pierce, Do all work that I give to him.

2348

XQ180. It was not Mr. Otway Latham, was it, that you went there with you?

A. The first time it was Mr. Woodville Latham. Afterwards Mr. Otway come, too.

XQ181. You have testified that at one time you went to Pierce's to have some work done and you were there about a week watching the workmen. Is that correct?

A. That is correct.

XQ182. You did not take drawings to the Pierce's of what you wanted, though you were well able to make drawings; is that so?

A. I never bring a drawing; I would make some calculation with the tool maker.

XQ183. You have testified that you tried the taking machine to project pictures with it; that you made one trial only; do you know that Mr. Otway Latham never tried that machine in the developing room?

A. I can't say. When I was working in the shop and he was in the dark room I can't see him.

XQ184. So that machine may have been used for projecting pictures of moving objects without your knowing of it?

A. It could not be used. You could not pass a film. If the machine were made properly for the film it might work all right, but this machine you could not use.

XQ185. When you tried the machine to project, did you use film with pictures taken by the same machine, or did you use Edison's film?

A. With a film taken by that machine, because a kinetoscope film can't go in that machine.

XQ186. Why?

A. The Eidoloscope film is a little bit larger than the Edison film.

XQ187. The sprocket rollers had something to do with this, did they not?

A. Yes; the sprocket is wide, too.

XQ188. The sprocket rollers of this taking machine were made of size to take a wide film, wider than Edison's; is that so?

A. That is right.

XQ189. If special sprocket rollers were made and put in that taking machine, and these sprocket rollers were of size to take the Edison film, would the machine project then?

A. Yes; but you would have to change the principle of the machine then, and the shutter.

XQ190. In order that the Patent Office may be able to judge whether you really understand the theory and principle of machines of this kind, I wish you would explain fully your last answer; explain how that taking machine would have to be altered in principle, and what kind of change in the shutter would have to be made, such changes being necessary in your opinion because, instead of using a wide film, you make use of a somewhat narrower film?

A. I don't understand what you mean. If you have a film to fit the sprocket, the machine works. If you want to use the machine for projecting you have to use a bigger sprocket; the sprocket on that machine was very small, only one inch.

XQ191. What did you mean when you said that to use a narrow film, such as Edison's, for the wider film, which you call the Eidoloscope film, in that machine, that the principle would have to be changed?

A. Yes; the principle of the machine, the shape of the machines.

2354

XQ192. What change would you make in the shape of the machines in such a case?

A. Put a larger sprocket and a new shutter and a sprocket to fit the film.

XQ193. I understand that the sprockets on the sprocket roller would have to be so placed as to fit the holes in the edges of the film, but I do not understand why you should change the shutter. Please explain that; and what change you would make in the shutter when you used the Edison film or narrow film instead of the wider film?

2357

A. The shutter must be different. To take pictures and project pictures are two different things. You can work the machine just the same with the same shutter, but it is no good. In taking pictures there is a vibration of the film, and you have to make calculations for the opening in the shutter to give so much time to bring the film up and so much for the vibration to pass and so much for exposing it. When you project a picture you have to enlarge the opening in the shutter to give more light, and so much darkness to bring the film up.

2358

XQ194. Is it possible to project pictures with a machine having a stop motion without the use of a shutter?

A. Yes, but it is very bad for the eyes; it makes so much flickering.

XQ195. So that the conclusion of the matter is the machine which you have spoken of as the taking machine built by you for Professor Latham in the Frankfort Street shop can be used for projecting pictures if it is fitted with suitable sprocket rollers?

A. Yes, certainly.

XQ196. From your knowledge of this business, is it not a fact that in developing films sometimes

the developing process makes the film longer and sometimes shorter; is that so?

A. Yes.

XQ197. Now, supposing you should find among the Eidoloscope films a film that fit the sprockets of the machine, which you have spoken of as the taking machine, could not that taking machine be used to project the pictures of that film?

A. Yes, for experiment only; but if you were using the machine every day, the sprocket is too small, it has not enough grip and the films would tear very quick.

2360

Adjourned to Saturday, April 30, 1898, 10 a.m.

New York, April 30th, 1898, 10 a.m.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present, counsel as before.

Cross-examination of Mr. Lauste continued by Mr. Bowen:

XQ198. When you arrived in this country a day or two ago, you called to see Mr. Marvin, did you?

A. Yes.

XQ199. What did he say to you?

A. He said I was to go to see Mr. Marble and Mr. Marble would explain everything to me, about Mr. Latham's business.

XQ200. You understand, I suppose, that the object of your coming to this country was to give testimony to show that you, and not Professor Latham, was the real inventor of this stop-motion machine, which is the taking machine you have been speaking about; is that so?

A. No; I don't know that before.

XQ201. When you went to Europe on the biograph business, Mr. Dickson went with you, did he not?

A. Yes, we left New York at the same time, 12th of May, 1897.

XQ202. Who paid your expenses on that trip? A. The Mutoscope and Biograph Company.

XQ203. You were engaged by that Company, the American Mutoscope Company, were you, for that business?

2363

A. Yes.

XQ204. I believe that the work in the Frankfort Street shop was commenced by you in the fall, about October, 1894; is that so?

A. Yes.

XQ205. You have spoken of some experiments that you made to test the value of some ideas of Mr. Dickson. Those experiments were the first that you made after the shop was rented; is that so?

A. No, a long time after; in the summer; pretty nearly everything was done at that time.

XQ206. What was the first work you did in the 2364 Frankfort Street shop?

A. The projecting machine for using kinetoscope film for experiment.

XQ207. If Professor Latham, Mr. Otway Latham and others should testify that the first experiments made in the Frankfort Street shop were to test the Dickson ideas, would that be true?

A. No, Mr. Dickson was not there when we made the first experiment—projecting machine; but the first day we tried the taking machine he was there.

XQ208. When was that first trial made with the taking machine, to which you refer?

A. I can't tell exactly; I know it might have been in January or February, at 12 o'clock night.

XQ209. And do you mean to swear that up to that time,—January or February—1895—that Mr. Dickson had never been to the Frankfort Street shop to talk with you about the business you were at work upon?

A. Well, I saw Mr. Dickson a few times, but as to that business he never say anything to me. I do it all myself. He speaks with Mr. Woodville Latham, and Mr. Otway, and Mr. Gray, but he don't say anything to me.

XQ210. Then it is true, is it, that before the first trial of the taking machine, Mr. Dickson made visits to the Frankfort Street shop where you were at work?

A. Yes, I saw Mr. Dickson, and he told me many times that he don't like coming to the shop, because it is very compromising for him. And he said when I leave Edison's it is all right, I come every day; but before I can not do it.

XQ211. You were and are a warm friend of Mr. Dickson, is that so?

A. Well, yes.

XQ212. He would speak to you in French when he visited the shop; is that so?

A. Speak in French? Yes.

XQ213. Do you remember at any time that Mr. Dickson speaking to you in French, caused Mr. Kleinert to be angry?

A. No, I can't remember; too long a time ago. XQ214. Other things that occurred quite as far back you remember, however, now, perfectly; is that so?

A. Well, some, yes.

2366

XQ215. What was your relation with Mr. Kleinert; did you agree together? That is, get along well together?

A. Now, when Mr. Latham gave me Kleinert, he gave him to me to sweep the shop, drill some holes and run out and buy the stuff or anything I need; but Kleinert don't do anything—don't do much in the shop. I found, say, after two months, he don't do any work and sleep all day in my bed. And I explained everything to Mr. Latham what he do—nothing, and Mr. Latham discharge him.

2369

XQ216. You did not like Kleinert, did you?

A. Yes, I liked him; there was nothing bad with him I could find.

XQ217. When did Mr. Latham discharge him? And if you know, where did Kleinert go then?

A. I don't know the date of the discharging; but he went to Waterbury.

XQ218. Can't you state when that was?

A. No, I can't remember.

XQ219. Was it a month, or two months, or more after he came to the shop to work from Boston?

A. I think it was more than two months—I am not sure.

2370

XQ220. Kleinert has testified in this case that he ordered the gear for the stop motion from the Boston Gear Works by the order and upon the direction of Professor Latham. Did he tell the truth?

Question objected to as misleading and an inaccurate statement of Kleinert's testimony.

A. When I explained to Mr. Woodville Latham the idea of the stop motion like the Maltese cross, why, Mr. Woodville Latham said we will adopt this idea and give order to the Boston Gear Works. And Mr. Kleinert wrote the letter for me because I cannot write good English.

XQ221. The experiments in the Frankfort Street shop extended over considerable time; did they not?

A. Well, yes, I guess so; a couple of months.

XQ222. Will you state whether there was any projecting machine completed in the shop before the completion of the taking machine?

A. Yes, we have five—not finished—but one finished, one worked.

XQ223. Do you remember the exhibition of pictures of moving objects that was given down here on Broadway, in April, 1895?

A. Yes.

XQ224. Well, now, is it not a fact that up to within a day or two of the opening of that exhibition, not one of those projecting machines was fully finished?

A. Yes, fully finished. We experimented every day in Frankfort Street with that machine, the same machine, we used on Broadway. Maybe what you mean by not finished, we had to make some rheostat, some connections; we made that in Broadway.

XQ225. How long before the exhibition of April, 1895, in Broadway, was this one projecting machine finished?

A. It may be a week, or two weeks. We experimented with that machine every day.

XQ226. Now, it appears plain that the taking machine was in course of construction before any of the projecting machines were fully finished. Is that so?

Question objected to as misleading and an incorrect statement of this testimony. 2372

A. We had one made finished for use with the kinetoscope film; and after that we stopped for the new style wide film, and I started both the taking and projecting machine the same time.

XQ227. And you did most of the work on the taking machine because you were regarded by Professor Latham and his associates as a skilled mechanic; is that so?

A. Yes.

XQ228. Please look at "Casler's Exhibits Lauste Sketches 2 and 3" and state what difference there is between the gearing of the two machines thereon represented?

A. On Sketch No. 3 I have substituted the elliptical gear for the circular gear, shown on Sheet 2. I have represented the gear by a figure on the left hand sides of these sheets.

XQ229. Are there any other differences between the two machines shown on these Exhibits 2 and 3?

A. That is the only difference.

XQ230. You have stated that you made the drawing of the taking machine in two hours and started the pattern the same day. When was this?

A. I think it was December, 1894—but I am not sure of it. I am sick in the bed at that time, and I get up and take a piece of paper and made the drawing.

XQ231. Was the drawing which you claim to have made at that time of the taking machine in all respects like the drawing which you made here yesterday and which is marked "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 4?"

A. Yes, except the three gear was replaced by a worm; it was the same thing.

XQ232. What did the worm do, or what was it

intended to do in that alleged original drawing?

A. For reducing the speed from the main shaft to the sprocket E. And the three gears reduces the speed, too; it is the same thing.

XQ233. Please look again at Sketch 4 which you state is like the original drawing which you made in December, 1894, and state whether you notice on that sketch any other features that were not on the original drawing; and I call your attention particularly to the stop-motion gear?

A. It is the same. I made another gear before, a larger one, and I can't remember what we used that for.

XQ234. You made that larger gear?

A. Oh, no; I got the idea from the Catalogue of the Boston Gear Works and we give the order to the Boston Gear Works.

XQ235. Was this larger gear obtained by you or received at the shops, before you made the original drawing of which you say Sketch 4 is a copy?

A. Yes, we ordered that gear before that time.

XQ236. And in the original drawing of which Sketch 4 is a copy, and which you got out of a sick bed to make, there was shown, I understand you to say, the stop-motion gear shown on Sketch 4 at the left?

A. Yes.

XQ237. And this drawing, of which Sketch 4 you state is a copy, was made by you in December, 1894; is that true?

A. Yes—I can't say sure. I think it was December; I can't remember the date.

XQ238. I didn't ask you for the date. I want to know what month and year that drawing was made by you, as alleged?

2378

A. It is the same thing—I don't remember. December, 1894, or January. I can't tell exactly.

XQ239. You perhaps can tell whether you made the drawing, of which Sketch 4 is claimed to be a copy, before or after the taking machine was constructed?

A. Yes; I make a drawing before and I make one after.

XQ240. Did you make the drawing like Sketch 4 before the construction of the taking machine? A. Yes; with the worm in place of the gear.

XQ241. That was the only difference?

A. The only difference. XQ242. You have stated that the first projecting machine that you made had a motor on the top, and is shown in "Casler's Exhibit Sketch 1." That you afterwards commenced to build another projecting machine which is shown in "Casler's Exhibit Sketch 2." You have testified this morning that you commenced the making of this second projecting machine at the same time that you commenced the work on the taking machine which is supposed to be represented in "Casler's Exhibit Sketch 4." Now, state what month and year you commenced the making of projecting machine shown on Sketch 2, which was the second projecting machine started, and commenced the making of the taking machine, begun, as you say, at the same time?

A. I started the pattern for the projecting first; and after the projecting I started the taking machine; and a month or year—December or January—a short time after Kleinert come. Between the machines shown on Sketches 1 and 2 I started another one. But when Kleinert come he objected there was too much work on it and said better make

2382

something similar to the kinetoscope. We could put in the worms and gear from the kinetoscope shop and we could build it quicker with that.

XQ243. In answer to question 73 you state that the taking machine, referred to in this case, was made for the purpose of taking pictures "forty a second." Is it necessary, in your opinion, that a machine for taking pictures of moving objects should be so constructed that the pictures would have to be taken forty a second?

A. Yes; you can take less if you want; fifteen or twenty, but you get flickering.

XQ244. In a taking machine of this character, the number of pictures taken per second depends upon what in the operation of the machine?

A. Upon the stop-motion. The speed.

XQ245. In your direct-examination I notice that you made no reference to Mr. Dickson's ideas that you first experimented on when you commenced to work for the Lathams. What was your reason for this?

Question objected to as not cross-examination and as immaterial and irrelevant.

A. Of course, Mr. Dickson did not say anything, he did not have any idea.

Cross-examination closed.

Recess until 2 p. m.

2 p. m.

Re-direct Examination by Mr. Marble, without waiving objections.

RDQ246. In your cross-examination you mention the fact that Mr. Dickson added a sprocket

2384

to the machine which you had made for Mr. Latham for taking pictures. Is that sprocket represented in the sketches which you made and which has been marked "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 4?"

A. Mr. Dickson had nothing to do with the sprocket. I don't understand.

RDQ247. You have said in your cross-examination that Mr. Dickson suggested a supplementary sprocket. And what I want to know is whether that supplementary sprocket is represented on the sketch you made as a reproduction of a drawing which Mr. Latham took away and which has been marked in this case "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 4?"

A. Yes, it is represented by the letter E1.

RDQ248. You have testified in effect that you put on to that machine which you built for Mr. Latham this sprocket which Mr. Dickson suggested. And you say that the machine worked better after it was put on. What do you mean by that?

A. Well, I mean by that that the top reel working by friction, and before pulled the film direct from the loop and after that the second sprocket put in, the main loop is free of pulling, and all friction pulled the second loop on top. Sometimes the second loop would jump, but the first loop is all right it keeps still.

RDQ249. After you had put on this supplementary sprocket, the film was not torn so much in passing through the machine? Is that so?

A. Yes.

RDQ250. Can you tell us about when it was that Mr. Dickson made this suggestion when that sprocket was put on the machine?

2387

A. I guess that was after we take the picture of Griffo & Barnet; I can't be sure.

RDQ251. It was along in the spring or summer of 1895, was it not, that he made that suggestion?

Objected to as leading.

A. In the spring.

RDQ252. Before you put that sprocket on the machine, were the films torn in passing through the machine?

A. Well, they would tear sometimes.

RDQ253. This tearing of the film interfered with the taking of pictures, I suppose; how was that?

A. You can't get any picture if the films tear. RDQ254. State whether Mr. Woodville Latham suggested any means for preventing the tearing of the films when you were taking pictures?

A. I don't remember any.

RDQ255. During your cross-examination, you were inquired of about Mr. Otway Latham, and his presence at the shop. Did Mr. Otway Latham do anything while he was at the shop except stand around and look on?

A. That is all he did, except when the machine was done, the projecting machine was done, he used the machine for projecting, for experimenting.

RDQ256. What projecting machine do you re-

A. The first one with the kinetoscope film in. RDQ257. That was a different machine from the taking machine, was it not?

A. Yes, sir.

RDQ258. You were asked on cross-examination, as well as on direct-examination, about your sleep-

2390

ing in the shop where this taking machine now "Latham's Exhibit No. 12" was constructed. Where did you get your meals?

A. In the shop too. My son cooked for me. RDQ259. Didn't you go out of the shop or building where the shop was at all?

A. No, I never go out of it, except across the street to get the stuff.

RDQ260. You have testified that this taking machine or camera could not be used for a projecting machine and have given your reasons why. Could Mr. Otway Latham make this machine work where you could not as a projecting machine?

Objected to as incompetent.

A. No. I suppose if he do that he is smart. RDQ261. How is the dark room situated with respect to what you term the shop?

A. They are just across a very small hall from each other.

RDQ262. How large was this dark room?

A. About ten feet wide and twenty-five or thirty feet deep.

2394

2393

RDQ263. You were in a position, were you not, to know, and did know when this taking machine was used from the time that it was finished until November 2, 1896, when you left the employ of the Eidoloscope Company?

A. Yes.

RDQ264. You say you are forty-one years old. How long have you been working as a mechanic?

A. About twenty-three years.

RDQ265. Prior to your going to work for Mr. Latham, had you ever worked upon or constructed a machine so complex as a projecting machine, or a taking machine?

A. Oh, yes.

RDQ266. Please name some of the machines you had worked upon or constructed before you went to work for Mr. Latham?

Objected to as not re-direct examination.

A. Well, for Mr. Edison I make some electrical instruments, very fine work and I make a slot machine, my own idea, too; and I make money with it too. And I make an engraving machine for a watch case. I make too a gasoline engine; if I say everything I won't have enough paper.

RDQ267. From the time that you put the supplementary sprocket on this machine, up to the time you last saw said machine, I mean the machine you made for Mr. Latham, now "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," were there any changes made in the sprocket or shutter?

A. No.

RDQ268. Was there ever any change made in that machine from the time you constructed it up to the time you put on this supplementary sprocket suggested by Mr. Dickson?

A. No, no change.

RDQ270. The company that exhibits biographs in London and Paris, is a different company, is it not, from the company which is located in this city at 841 Broadway, New York?

A. Well, I guess so; there are different people, but it is impossible for me to tell.

RDQ271. How long have you been in the employ of the London Company?

A. Nearly a year. Since last May.

RDQ272. I thought I had already asked you, but I do not find that I have, who invented the

2396

machine or apparatus shown on the sketch "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 4?"

Objected to as not proper re-direct examination.

A. Why, I did, but I never did anything without letting Mr. Latham know.

Re-cross Examination by Mr. Bowen:

et was placed on "Latham Exhibit No. 12" after the Griffo-Barnett boxing match was photographed. State whether you witnessed the taking of that picture, and if so, was it not successfully taken and without the film breaking?

Question objected to as incorrectly stating what the witness has testified to.

A. Yes, I saw the picture taken. We got quite a good picture; we had breaks and would have to stop and take the picture again.

RXQ274. You swear positively, do you, that you were present on the Madison Square Roof and witnessed the taking of the Griffo-Barnett fight by the Latham taking machine "Exhibit No. 12," the first machine?

A. Yes, Mr. Dickson take the picture himself. RXQ275. You have spoken of no changes having been made at any time from the finishing of the taking machine to the time you last saw it, except the addition of the supplementary sprocket. Please state whether you ever knew of the Edison film being run through that machine for any purpose at any time?

2399

Objected to as not re-cross examination.

A. No, you can't do it; impossible.

RXQ276. Do you remember that any time the Edison film was run through the taking machine in question before the machine was used for the first time for taking pictures?

A. No, we used an eidoloscope film; that is impossible.

RXQ277. You have stated with some degree of positiveness that no changes were ever made except one in the taking machine from the time it was finished until you left the employment of the Eidoloscope Company, November 2, 1896. Do you remember that in the spring or summer of 1895 Mr. Otway Latham carried the machine in question—the taking machine—to Mexico, and was gone some time with it, and you remained here?

A. No, I never heard that Mr. Otway went to Mexico. I went with Mr. Gray to Mexico and we took a bull fight and the Mexican drill; that is all. I think if Mr. Otway went to Mexico I would know something about it, but the machine never went out of the shop. I knew he went to Niagara Falls.

RXQ278. When Mr. Otway went to Niagara Falls did he take the taking machine with him?

A. Yes, and he went with Mr. Weit.

RXQ279. You stayed in New York when Mr. Otway Latham went to Niagara Falls?

A. No, I was in Mexico at that time.

RXQ280. And you went to Mexico with Gray Latham, I believe you carried with you two machines, that were like the first taking machine?

A. Two new ones made especially for that bull fight.

RXQ281. Two new ones like the first machine? A. Yes, more strong, much better.

2402

2404

RXQ282. You say you were in Mexico when Mr. Otway Latham carried the first taking machine to Niagara Falls. How do you know that he carried it to Niagara Falls?

Objected to as not re-cross examination.

A. Why, because he told me, and Mr. Weit told me.

RXQ283. What year was that visit made to Niagara Falls, and you were in Mexico?

2405

Same objection.

A. 1895. I forget which month.

Examination of witness closed.

EUGENE LAUSTE.

Complainant's Exhibit M.

2407

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS Co., Complainant,

VS.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE Co. OF AMERICA,

Defendant.

In Equity, No. 5-167.

2408

COMPLAINANT'S EXHIBIT.

Woodville Latham's Deposition in Armat Interference.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

In the Matter

of

The Interference between the Applications of Edward H. Amet, filed Oct. 22d, 1896, Woodville Latham, filed June 1st, 1896, Herman Casler, filed Feb. 26th, 1896, and Thomas Armat, filed Feb. 19, 1896.

Subject: Apparatus for Projecting on a Screen Pictures of Moving Objects. Before the Commissioner

Interference No. 18,461.

of Patents.

Depositions of witnesses examined on behalf of Woodville Latham, pursuant to the annexed notice, before John A. Shields, Esq., United States 2410

Commissioner, at his office in the Post Office Building, in the City of New York, on Saturday, the 4th day of December, 1897 (the place of examination of witnesses having been changed by consent).

Present—J. E. M. Bowen, Esq., on behalf of Woodbury Latham.

E. M. Marble, Esq., on behalf of Herman Casler. Thomas Armat in person.

No appearance on behalf of Amet.

2411

WOODVILLE LATHAM, being first duly sworn, doth depose and say, in answer to interrogatories propounded to him by J. E. M. Bowen, his counsel, as follows:

Q1. What is your name, age, residence and occupation?

A. Woodville Latham; age, 60; residence, New York City; occupation, I am a chemist by profession.

2412

Counsel for Latham states that Mr. Dowell, representing Mr. Armat, requests that on account of his inability to be present this morning, his right to cross-examine the witnesses that may be examined be reserved and also his right of objection, to all of which counsel for Latham consents.

Q2. State if you are a party to this intereference proceeding?

A. I am.

Q3. The issue involved in this intereference is stated in the official letter of declaration of January 23, 1897, as follows:

"In a picture exhibiting apparatus for giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion, the combination with a picture carrying strip or film, a tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension device, whereby the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film."

2414

Please state whether or not the invention, as defined by said issue, was devised by you, and if so, state when you first conceived the same?

2415

A. An invention of that description was devised by me and I first conceived of the invention in a general way in July or August, 1894.

Q4. State the circumstances under which the subject matter of the invention was first brought to your attention?

A. Two of my sons were engaged at 83 Nassau Street in the business of exhibiting pictures by the use of the Edison Kinetoscope. A day or so after they began the exhibitions, one of my sons came to me and asked if I could not devise a machine for projecting the pictures upon a screen. He said

that a number of the spectators in his hearing had expressed a wish that something of that sort might be done, and subsequently I heard from spectators, myself, similar expressions. I said to my son that I had not the slightest doubt of my ability to do what he had suggested, and I immediately began to consider plans for the construction of such apparatus.

Q5. When was this, give the month and year?

A. It was in the summer of 1894. My impression is that it was in the month of July; it may have been in the month of August. I could satisfy myself as to this matter my finding out just when those kinetoscope exhibitions began at 83 Nassau Street.

Q6. State what you did toward developing the conception in the summer of 1894?

A. It seemed to me that nothing was necessary for the projection of pictures of movement upon a screen but the combination of a magic lantern with an appliance similar to Edison's Kinetoscope for running the picture strip continuously across the optical axis. But I was aware that it would be necessary to provide pictures for such apparatus and I did not believe that pictures could be photographed clearly on a continuously running strip. Immediately, therefore, I began to consider what device might be best for arresting the movement of the film intermittently. From time to time I made drawings of one device and another and showed them to my sons, but we had no money then for the manufacture of such apparatus as we contemplated, and it was not until about the first of November that we made arrangements for the construction of the machine. I think I ought to add here, however, that so early as September and con-

tinuously afterwards till November we exerted ourselves to provide means for the construction of the apparatus and that we secured the necessary means in time to begin operations about the first of November.

The answer is objected to as irresponsive.

Q7. You have stated that you made drawings in the summer of 1894. Please state the nature of such drawings and whether they were shown to any one and also state whether at that time you disclosed the invention to any one and name such person?

2420

Question is objected to because it calls for secondary testimony, the drawings themselves being the best testimony and their absence or loss not having been accounted for.

A. I have already stated that I made drawings illustrative of my notion as to how such apparatus might be constructed, that from time to time I showed those drawings to two of my sons. Their names are Gray Latham and Otway Latham. will state further that at a later time, but prior to the 1st of November, 1894, I repeatedly showed such drawings to W. K. L. Dickson. Of course the exhibition of the drawings was a disclosure of the invention. The drawings were illustrations of a machine for projecting pictures of movement upon a screen end for photographing such pictures by intermittent movement of the firm across the The period of movement being optical axis. greatly less than the period of pause and exposure.

Q8. What became of the drawings which you state you thus made?

A. They were of such an extremely simple sort and so easily reproduced that they were destroyed after they had been employed to convey my thought to the aforementioned gentlemen. Such working drawings as were made from the first of November on were left in my shop at 101 Beekman Street. The shop and its contents subsequently passed into the possession of a company calling itself the Eidoloscope Company. Where the drawings now are I am unable to say.

Q9. Please state briefly what arrangements you made, if any, previous to November, 1894, for developing the invention which you have stated

you had devised?

A. I have already stated that I exerted myself to provide the necessary pecuniary means. In the month of October, and possibly also in the month of September, a number of experiments were made by me and under my direction with the view of determining the conditions of successful projection of pictures of movement. The apparatus employed for this purpose was in part apparatus furnished by W. K. L. Dickson from the laboratory of Thomas A. Edison. I succeeded in securing from the South what money was required, purchased machinery, set it up in the shop, at 35 Frankfort Street, New York City, and employed a workman on the recommendation of Mr. W. K. L. Dickson. Mr. Dickson's assistance was in the beginning merely a friendly assistance without any arrangement for compensation to him. He had previously become well acquainted with my sons Gray Latham and Otway Latham, and his personal friendship for them was perhaps the influence that operated on him in the beginning, but subsequently, just when I am unable to remember, my sons agreed with

him that he should have for whatever services he might render, provided they resulted in the construction of thoroughly satisfactory apparatus for photographing, printing, developing and projecting pictures of movement one fourth of the stock of a company to be organized for the manufacture, sale and use of such appliances.

The answer is objected to as irresponsive and indefinite.

Q10. Now after having disclosed this invention to Mr. Dickson, and after having taken a shop for developing it, what did Mr. Dickson do toward developing the invention with reference to its embodiment in an apparatus, and state when?

The question is objected to because it calls for immaterial and irrelevant testimony, Mr. Dickson not being a party to this record, and not in any way interested in this case.

A. Mr. Dickson suggested an arresting device, and though I did not believe that it would operate effectively, and though it was not the belief of the mechanic, whom I had employed on Mr. Dickson's recommendation, that the device would be operative, it was constructed and tried. I failed utterly to accomplish its purpose in any satisfactory manner. During the months of November and December it was Mr. Dickson's habit to come over to the shop at 35 Frankfort Street from his home in Orange, N. J., one night in every week professedly to direct Eugene Lauste, the one mechanic in my employ, in his work of carrying into practice the

2426

aforementioned idea of Mr. Dickson for intermittently arresting the movement of the film. The manufacture of the device itself required only a few days. The remainder of the time was devoted by the mechanic to the construction of the other parts of the apparatus, about which there had never been any question.

Q11. State as briefly as you can the nature of this device suggested by Mr. Dickson?

Same objections.

2429

A. It was in the nature of two horizontally oscillating arms intended intermittently to pass between the teeth of the gear wheel belonging to the axis the drum carrying the film so as to check intermittently the revolution of that axis.

The answer is objected to as immaterial and irrelevant and indefinite.

Q12. Was this device which you have described embodied in your machine then under construction?

2430

Question objected to as leading.

A. I don't understand the question. I think possibly I may understand it. When the device had been made it was connected with a revolving gear wheel with the view of finding out whether or not the revolution of the gear wheel shaft could be checked at very short intervals without a vibration of the whole apparatus that would defeat the purposes for which it was being constructed.

Q13. State whether the experiment you have just

mentioned was satisfactory to yourself and Mr. Dickson?

Question objected to because it calls for immaterial and irrelevant testimony and for the conclusion of the witness and does not call for a statement as to what the device did do or could do, which is the only matter material to this case.

A. I rejected the device as unsatisfactory to me. My recollection is that Mr. Dickson was still persuaded that the device would operate if the mechanic were to construct it with greater care and skill.

2432

The answer is objected to as immaterial and irrelevant.

Q14. Where was the shop located where this experiment was made?

A. In what is known as the Scott building, at 35 Frankfort Street, New York City, on the fourth floor of that building.

2433

Q15. And in what month did the experiment take place?

Same objection.

A. I have already stated that in the month of October and possibly in the month of September, there was experimentation with the use of what I was told by Mr. Dickson was the original model of the Edison Kinetoscope. Such experimentation had for its object the determination of what intensity of light the projection of pictures of move-

ment required and what were the best forms of condenser to be employed, as well as what objective would be most suitable for the purpose in view. It was not until about the 1st of November that I began the construction of a machine in accordance with previous conception—previous except that, not even then had I determined upon any one form of arresting device to the exclusion of others.

The answer is objected to as irresponsive and indefinite.

2435

Q16. After having discarded Mr. Dickson's idea of an arresting device what did you next do and when toward the completion of that part of the machine?

A. About the 1st of January, 1895, I directed E.

W. Kleinert, whom I had had in my employ a month or more, as an assistant to Eugene Lauste, the mechanic heretofore mentioned, to order for me from the Boston Gear Works, Boston, Mass., an appliance known as the Geneva stop. It is a kind of broken gear. I submit a bill for that gearing. It is the gearing that I employed a few days after its receipt and that I finally adopted and retained. The device is represented at Fig. 5 of the drawings forming part of my application in this interference.

2436

The paper produced by the witness is objected to as indefinite and immaterial.

Counsel for Latham offers the bill referred to by the witness as an exhibit in the case and the same is marked "Latham's Exhibit No. 1, December 4, 1897, J. A. S., Com'r."

Q17. I notice that the bill Exhibit No. 1 is dated January 7, 1895. State when the gear in question was received at your shop?

A. To the best of my knowledge and belief it was received on the 8th of January, 1895, the day after it was shipped from Boston.

Q18. State whether the gear was embodied in the machine and by what workman?

A. It was, by the workman Eugene Lauste, with the assistance of the workman, E. W. Kleinert.

Q19. Now state whether or not the machine as provided with such gear operated satisfactorily so far as regards the intermittent motion.

2438

Question is objected to as leading and as calling simply for the opinion or conclusion of the witness; the proper inquiry would be what the thing did, how it worked.

A. I have already stated, as a matter of fact, that I did adopt and retain the device made for me in Boston, which I certainly would not have done if a device better in my estimation for the purpose in view had up to that time been suggested 2439 to me.

Answer is objected to as irresponsive.

Q20. Did this stop motion device operate satisfactorily when you first used it?

Same objection.

A. It did.

Q21. State whether the apparatus, as finally completed embodied the gear stop motion device that you have described, and state whether the apparatus was used for taking pictures and when?

Same objection.

A. It was satisfactory. The first picture that was photographed with the machine was photographed on the night of February 26-27, 1895. The photograph then made I submit with a statement attached in the handwriting of my son Otway Latham. "This is the carbon of an electric light," and with a note from Mr. W. K. L. Dickson also attached in these words: "To my friend, Mr. Woodville Latham. Compliments of W. K. L. February 26-27, 1895. Midnight." Dickson. This little strip of pictures with the two papers attached were brought to me at the Bartholdi Hotel the same night after I had retired, and was The photographs were thrown into my room. made by my son Otway Latham and Mr. W. K. L. Dickson working together in my employ and under my general direction. Subsequently, near about the first of March photographs were taken with this machine on the roof of the Scott Building, at 35 Frankfort Street of Eugene Lauste, his son Emile Lauste, E. W. Kleinert, my son Gray Latham and myself. My son Otway Latham, operated the machine. All except myself of those who were photographed were in active movement dancing and scuffling within the field of the machine. I sat smoking a pipe, and the photographs were afterwards exhibited on a screen to thousands of people in New York City, and smoke from my pipe plainly appearing upon the screen. With the same machine on May the 4th, 1895, photographs were taken on Madison Square Roof Garden of a boxing

2141

contest between the prize fighters Griffo and Bar-These pictures were also subsequently exhibited on a screen to a great many people in New York City. On May the 5th, 1895, the New York Mercury published, without my knowledge or consent, or suggestion in any way, a notice of the photographing just referred to, which I submit. On April the 21st at the shop heretofore referred to in the Scott building at 35 Frankfort Street a number of persons witnessed the projection upon a screen of the pictures of the Griffo-Barnett contest just referred to. Among them a reporter from the N. Y. Sun and an artist from the same paper. I submit an account of this exhibition published in the Sun of April 22, 1895, together with an account of an interview with Mr. Thomas A. Edison claimed to have been had by a representative of the Sun. From April the 21st a great many pictures were taken with the apparatus referred to.

2444

The answer is objected to as irresponsive and immaterial.

Counsel for Latham offers in evidence the strip of film and attached memoranda referred to in the witness's last answer and the same is marked "Latham's Exhibit No. 2, J. A. S., Com'r, December 4, 1897."

The offering and receipt of these exhibits is objected to as immaterial and irrelevant.

Counsel for Latham also offers in evidence the clipping of the New York Sunday Mercury of May 5, 1895, referred to by the witness and it is marked "Latham Exhibit No. 3, Dec. 4, 1897, J. A. S., Com'r."

The same objection is made to this exhibit as was made to the offering of the last.

Counsel for Latham also offers in evidence a clipping from the N. Y. Sun of April 22, 1895, referred to by the witness and the same is marked "Latham Ex. No. 4, J. A. S., Com'r, Dec. 4, 1897."

Same objection as to Exhibit No. 2.

Recess until 2 p. m.

2447

After recess.

Q22. Referring to Latham Exhibit No. 3 state whether or not the clipping comprising that exhibit was cut by yourself from the New York Sunday *Mercury* of May 5, 1895, and has been in your possession ever since?

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to as leading and also as it calls for immaterial and irrelevant testimony.

A. It has been in my possession since and my recollection is that I cut it from the paper myself. About this, however, I am not certain; in other words I am not willing to swear that it did appear in the New York Mercury of May the 5th.

Q23. Did you witness the fight on the Madison Square Garden roof which you state occurred May 4th, 1895, and was taken by your machine embodying the invention of this interference?

Same objection by Mr. Marble and also because the question is suggestive.

A. I did.

Q24. State whether or not the clipping Latham Exhibit No. 4 was cut by you from the New York Sun of April 22d, 1895?

Same objections.

A. It was cut from the Sun by me.

Q25. Now state whether or not the pictures exhibited by the machine mentioned in Exhibit No. 4 were taken on the first machine which you built embodying the stop motion mechanism of the issue of this interference concerning which you have tes- 2450 tified?

Same objections.

A. They were.

Q26. Please state whether the machine which was employed for projecting the pictures referred to in said Exhibit No. 4 was a stop motion machine?

Same objection.

A. It was not.

2451

Q27. Will you now state the difference between a taking and a projecting machine in this art as you understand the matter?

A. The difference is that in photographing pictures it is necessary to have the film at rest for a longer time than is necessary for a picture to produce an impression on the eye, so that while a machine with a continuously running film may be employed successfully to project pictures it is doubtful if such a machine could be employed in photographing pictures. The difference therefore is that the photographing machine includes some arrangement for intermittently stopping the movement of the film across the optical axis, whereas a machine for projecting may be either the same appliance organized for the purpose or the same appliance minus the arresting device.

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as irresponsive.

Q28. State whether or not the machine with which you state the pictures were taken that were projected by the machine described in Exhibit No. 4 could be employed to successfully project the pictures taken by it and whether or not it was ever so employed by you?

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to as leading and misleading.

A. It could be so employed, and was, as a matter of fact, so employed by me in the month of January or February, or both, 1895.

Q29. State where?

2454

Same objection.

A. In the Scott building, 35 Frankfort Street. New York City.

Q30. State who witnessed such projection by the machine in question?

Mr. Marble: Objected to as leading and immaterial.

A. The only person that I can remember with certainty is my son, Otway Latham. There were

other persons who saw the projection, but I am not able now to state positively who they were.

Q31. Will you now state why you reserved the machine concerning which you have been testifying as a taking machine and did not use it generally for projecting?

A. Because the life of a film used in a machine where the film is moved continuously is greatly longer than in a machine where the movement is intermittent. The films are expensive, and it was desirable to make them when employed for projection last as long as possible.

Q32. Where did you first give a public exhibition of a projecting machine using pictures of moving objects taken by the apparatus of which you have been testifying and which embodied the invention of this interference?

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to as leading and suggestive.

A. My answer depends upon what is meant by the word "public." On the night or afternoon of June the 21st, 1895, as I have already stated, an exhibition of such pictures was made and was witnessed by a number of gentlemen, newspaper representatives and others. The first exhibition, however, that was made for pay, and to which the public generally had access, was made at 156 Broadway, in a room provided for the purpose on May the 20th, 1895.

Q33. State whether or not the pictures of the Griffo and Barnett fight, of which you have testified, were exhibited at 156 Broadway at the time stated?

Same objection.

2456

A. They were, as were also the pictures previously exhibited in the Scott building, on April the 21st preceding.

Q34. Prof. Latham, do you regard yourself as an expert in the art to which this interference relates and in answering this question please state briefly whether your pursuits in the past were such as to qualify and equip you to successfully develop this ent?

velop this art?

A. I suppose I may fairly lay claim to special qualification by education and experience for understanding the conditions under which pictures of movement may be photographed and projected. I was educated at Columbian University, formerly Columbian College, Washington, D. C., and at the University of Virginia. My earliest tastes were for scientific subjects and the chief object of my college courses was to qualify me for the profession of civil engineering. During the late war I was executive officer of the Columbus, Georgia, arsenal, one of the largest in the South. I had the direction in large measure of the work of some twelve or fifteen hundred employees, skilled mechanics and others. I was selected without suggestion from myself or friends by the chief of ordnance of the confederate government shortly before the termination of the war to make arrangements for the construction of powder works in the neighborhood of Lynchburg, Virginia, for the supply of powder to Gen. Lee's army in anticipation of his being compelled to withdraw from before Richmond. Shortly after the war I was appointed by the Baltimore & Ohio Railroad to the position of resident engineer on the Pittsburgh and Chicago branch, which was then about to be put to contract. Circumstances forced me to decline to ac-

2459

cept that position. Subsequently I was professor of chemistry and physics for five years at the University of West Virginia. Later still I was professor of general and applied chemistry at the University of Mississippi. Questions concerning the manufacture of photographic and projecting apparatus are questions of mechanics, optics, chemistry, and, to some extent, of physiology, and these are such questions as I have been interested in theoretically and practically to considerable extent from my early boyhood.

Q35. To go back a step, I wish you would look at the letter which I hand you on the letter head of J. B. Colt & Co., and state whether or not you received that letter about the date it bears, December 18, 1894, and state the occasion for the letter having been written to you (handing witness letter)?

Mr. Marble: Objected to as leading.

A. I did receive the letter on or about December the 18th, 1894. It is a written memorandum of a verbal understanding that I had had with J. B. Colt & Company the day before. The understanding was that J. B. Colt & Company were to supply me with five projection lanterns and other things, at the earliest possible moment, certainly within thirty days. The lamps and the other articles mentioned were to be used with projection apparatus already made or so nearly completed as that I felt confident that they would be completed by the time I received the lamps.

Counsel for Latham offers the letter in question in evidence, and it is marked La-

2462

tham Exhibit No. 5, J. A. S., Com'r, December 4, 1897.

Mr. Marble: The offering and receipt of the exhibit is objected to as immaterial and irrelevant.

Q36. I now hand you a bill and statement, which please examine and state to what they relate, and whether you received the same on or about the dates they bear, namely, January 14th and February 1st, 1895 (handing witness paper)?

2465

A. They relate to the same matter that the last exhibit relates to, Exhibit No. 5, and the goods were received about January 14th or 15th, 1895, and were for five projection machines, which, to the best of my recollection, were then completed.

The bill and statement just referred to are introduced in evidence by counsel for Latham and marked Latham Exhibit No. 6, J. A. S., Com'r, December 4, 1897.

Q37. What was the name of the company which you organized to carry on the manufacture of your inventions in this line?

A. It was called the Lambda Company.

Q38. State whether or not the machinery and appliances in the shop that you have mentioned were turned over to said company?

Mr. Marble: Question objected to as leading.

A. They were.

Q381/2. State whether or not the original machine embodying the stop motion appliance form-

ing a feature of your application for patent involved in this interference was turned over to said company?

Mr. Marble: Question objected to as leading and suggestive.

A. It was.

Q39. Now, state whether, at that time, Mr. Dickson was connected with your company?

Mr. Marble: Objected to as immaterial and irrelevant.

2468

A. He was not precisely, though it was expected that he would become a member of the company. My sons and I were under promise to him that if the machinery which he claimed to be able to have constructed at once without experimentation should prove to be efficient we would give him as compensation for his services one-fourth of the stock of the company which we expected to form. The company was organized some time in December, 1894, and at that time Mr. Dickson had not complied with his promise because the device for interrupting the movement of the film had proved to be Later, however, sometime in the inoperative. month of January, I think, one-fourth of the stock of the company was assigned to Mr. Edmond Congar Brown, and this for the reason that when, after having had a number of verbal understandings with Mr. Dickson, and after having found that he had not come to the point of even beginning to do the things he had promised, an arrangement was made under which my son, Otway Latham, met Mr. Dickson and his wife at some place in New

York, not now known to me, in the presence of Mr. Edmond Congar Brown, Mr. Dickson's attorney, and Mr. John Murray Mitchell, attorney for myself and sons, at which meeting Mr. Edmond Congar Brown undertook that Mr. Dickson should do the things previously promised by him, and that the consideration for such service of one-fourth of the stock of the Lambda Company should be assigned to Mr. Brown rather than to Mr. Dickson. Mr. Dickson explained that as he was then in Mr. Edison's employ he did not wish, by entering into the contract directly, to place

2471 by entering into the contract directly, to place himself in a position where the propriety of his action might be questioned by Mr. Edison or others. Mr. Dickson declared that the devices he was able to construct and would construct for us were devices that he had invented at a time and place and under circumstances such as to give Mr. Edison no shadow of title to them.

Q40. Please state whether the Lambda Company continued to remain the owner of the equipment of the shop as purchased, and if not, what disposition was made of the same?

2472

Same objection.

A. The Lambda Company, after existing about a year, sold out to a company calling itself the Eidoloscope Company, with shops and offices at 101 Beekman Street, and the machine embracing the subject matter of this interference became the property of the said Eidoloscope Company. Whether that company is at present in existence or not I am unable to say, but I have reason to believe that the machine referred to is at this time in the shop at 101 Beekman Street, top floor.

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as irresponsive.

Q41. Who conducts the shop or place of business now at 101 Beekman Street?

A. I do not know of my own knowledge, but I am informed that it is conducted by parties who are manufacturing or at any rate who have something to do with the apparatus Mr. Armat claims to have invented.

Q42. State whether you have made any effort to ascertain the whereabouts of this original machine and what effort?

A. I have made no special effort but have made inquiry in one or two quarters, and the information I have received has led me to the conclusion just now stated that the machine is in the possession of the parties who now have the quarters at 101 Beekman Street, formerly occupied by the Eidoloscope Company and previously occupied by the Lambda Company. The machine was repeatedly employed by the Eidoloscope Company in photographing pictures and is a machine of superior construction. It is an extremely valuable machine and I regard it as certain that it has been preserved carefully.

Counsel for Casler in view of the statement of the witness in his last answer that he has made no effort to get the possession of the machine he has so frequently referred to in his testimony although he is certain it is in existence in the city of New York, at 101 Beekman Street, objects to all the testimony that the witness has given in relation to said machine as secondary and gives

2474

notice that he shall make a motion to strike all this testimony out of the record because it is not the best evidence according to the witness's testimony.

Q43. State whether you have at present any control over the machinery or equipment of the shop at 101 Beekman Street and whether you have any means of access to said shop?

2477

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to because it calls for incompetent testimony in view of the witness's last answer. A man who does not try to do anything rarely accomplishes anything.

A. I have no control whatever. I have no access to the shop; my relations with the members of the Eidoloscope Company who are reported to have entered into business relations with the parties who I am now informed have charge of the shop and the machinery referred to are decidedly hostile and a member of that company, Mr. P. B. Veiller, who is, I judge, from the appearance of his name upon the directory of the building at 101 Beekman Street, the man from whom it would be necessary for me to secure access to the machine is a man with whom I am not even on speaking terms. I should be glad to have the machine produced if there were any way in which I could force the present possessors of it to consent to its production.

2478

Q44. Will you make further inquiry and effort to ascertain the whereabouts of the machine in question, and endeavor to have it produced?

A. I should be glad to do so if I knew how to take one single step in that direction. Acquaint-

ances of mine have told me that under circumstances under which it was utterly impossible to imagine that their visits were for any other than honorable purposes they have been refused admittance to the shop and it is perfectly certain in my estimation that I, or anybody sent by me would not only be denied the privilege of producing the machine but be denied the privilege of entering upon their premises.

Counsel for Latham here states that he has been making an effort to locate the machine in question, has sent a competent man to the building 101 Beekman Street without being able to accomplish anything toward gaining the desired information and that he is still making effort to locate the machine and is considering what steps may be necessary to bring about its production, if it can be located. Every reasonable effort will be made to make the machine an exhibit in this case.

Q45. I hand you four blue prints of the drawings filed with your application for patent involved in this interference and I ask you to look at Figs. 2 and 4 and 5, particularly, and you may look at Figs. 6 and 7, and state whether the views in question correctly represent the original machine or such part of it as said views are intended to show?

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to as leading and further because the question does call for the best evidence in the case. And also because there is no proof that the papers handed the witness are blue prints of

2480

drawings filed with his application involved in this interference, said papers being without a certificate of identity or any other means of identification.

A. The blue prints and the figures referred to specifically represent correctly the substantial and essential features of the machine concerned in this interference. There are represented in Figs. 1, 2, and 3, friction appliances for regulating the force coming from the motor which do not necessarily 2483 belong to this machine and which are not necessary for any machine. In view of the objection made by the attorney for Casler, I state confidently and positively that the blue prints are an exact copy of the drawing sent to the patent office with the application in this case.

> Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as irresponsive.

Q46. I think I asked you whether the blue prints which you have examined or the figures specified correctly represent the original machine. Your answer does not seem to cover the ground. Please look at the preceding question and answer the question as now explained.

Same objections.

A. The blue prints and the figures referred to represent correctly the substantial and essential features of the machine originally constructed, but at the time at which application for patent was made two additional machines had been constructed, and while in every essential feature these machines were precisely what the first machine

was, there are some slight additions for convenience of manipulation or otherwise that were made in constructing the second and third machines. The additions that were made and as they are represented in the drawing have nothing whatever to do with the subject matter of the interference. The appliances for moving the film and for operating the shutter are the same in all three machines as is the appliance for intermittently interrupting the movement of the film across the optical axis.

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as irresponsive.

Q47. When were the two additional machines which you mentioned constructed?

A. My recollection is that they were constructed in the fall of 1895. I constructed them in expectation that they would be used in photographing the prize fight between Corbett and Fitzsimmons that was expected to occur in Texas, but which did not The two machines were made to stand come off. upon one table, and were arranged so that if one should on any account fail to operate there would be an electric notification of the fact, so that the second machine could pick up the work where the first left off. The second and third machines were not made because of any purpose of introducing improvements, but simply because the machine already on hand was constantly needed in New York and because I desired to be prepared to photograph the fight already referred to.

Q48. Where are these two additional machines that you have mentioned, if you know?

A. They became the property of the Eidoloscope Company, and for aught I know are to be found where the first machine is. 2487

Counsel for Latham offers in evidence the blue prints just referred to by the witness, and they are marked Latham Exhibit No. 7, J. A. S., Comm'r, December 4, 1897.

Mr. Marble: The offer and receipt of the exhibits is objected to as incompetent and secondary.

Q49. Who, in your opinion, was the originator of the first practical mode of projecting on a screen pictures of moving objects with the pictures printed upon a film of considerable length?

2489

2490

Mr. Marble: Question objected to as immaterial and irrelevant and calling the witness to speculate.

A. Prior to my exhibiting such pictures in New York in the spring of 1895, I had not been able to learn of any machine so constructed as that such exhibitions could be made with it and the publications that the newspapers in New York City and elsewhere made about it confirmed me in the opinion that I had accomplished what had not been accomplished before. The general public certainly had no knowledge of prior apparatus for doing such work. The Edison Kinetoscope was not a projecting machine and the public knew of nothing going to show that it had ever been combined with a magic lantern in a way to make the projection of the pictures possible. It is true that a patent had been granted Mr. Edison for such an appliance but the drawing represents what is absolutely impossible in optics and it is utterly impossible to project a picture with an appliance like that Mr. Edison secured a patent for.

Adjourned to Monday, December 6, 1897, at 10 a.m.

New York, December 6, 1897.

Met pursuant to adjournment. Present—Counsel and party as before.

Continuation of the Direct-examination of Woodville Latham:

By Mr. Bowen:

Counsel for Latham gives notice on the record of his purpose to call as a witness in this case W. K. L. Dickson, who it is now understood is in Europe.

2492

Q50. Since your examination on Saturday, state whether or not you have read over your testimony as taken down, and if you find anything therein which you desire to correct as erroneous?

A. I find on page 18 that I am reported to have used the expression June the 21st, 1895. I intended to say April 21, 1895. My reference was to an occasion referred to on page 13 in answer to Q21, where the proper date is given. The date was also properly given on page 19 in answer to Q33.

2493

Q51. Please state the date when you made the first purchase of film for use with the first machine concerning which you have testified?

A. I ordered the first film from the Eastman Kodak Company, of Rochester, N. Y., on February 12, 1895. It was shipped to me from Rochester on February 13, 1895, as appears from the bill. My recollection is that it was received the following day—that is February the 14th, 1895. The bill referred to I submit.

Prior to ordering this film I had experimented with the film of the Edison Kinetoscope, which

was five-eighths of an inch narrower than the film purchased by me of the Eastman Kodak Company.

Counsel for Latham offers the bill referred to by the witness in evidence, and it is marked "Latham Exhibit No. 8, Dec. 6, 1897, J. A. S., Com'r."

Mr. Marble: The offer and receipt in evidence of the exhibit is objected to as immaterial and irrelevant.

2495

Q52. What was the purpose of ordering the supply of film mentioned in Latham Exhibit No. 8?

A. It was to test finally the action of the machine which, at that time, had been completed, or which was so near completion as to justify the belief that the film could be used as soon as it should be received, for photographing pictures of movement.

Q53. State if you know, where the piece of film attached to Latham Exhibit No. 2 came from?

2496

A. It came from the Eastman Kodak Company, and was a part of the film mentioned in the bill just referred to. At that time so far as I knew and now believe, there was no film upon which pictures of moving objects had been photographed to be found in this country, except the film of the Edison Kinetoscope, which had a width of one and three-eighths inches, whereas the film purchased by me of the Eastman Kodak Company had a width of two inches.

Q54. I notice on the film, attached to Latham Exhibit No. 2, that it is perforated on both of its edges: State whether or not the film purchased

from the Eastman Company was provided with such perforations?

A. It was not, and I had to make a perforating machine before it was possible to use the film aforesaid. I further had to construct a covering for the machine before it was possible to use it as a photographing apparatus. This work was all completed, and the film was ready for use (some portion of the film, I should say) on February 26, 1895.

Q55. State briefly the reason for perforating the film on its edges?

A. The object of the perforation is to cause the roller, which feeds the film on one side of the optical axis and of the roller that takes up the film on the other side of the optical axis, to move forward in a revolution an exact number of pictures, or spaces for pictures, rather than an exact number of inches in length of the film. The arrangement of the apparatus is such that the sprocket rollers have a circumference suited to carrying forward in one revolution four pictures, and the device for drawing these pictures rapidly into place is so geared to the sprocket rollers that four movements are made by the rapidly moving device during one revolution of the sprocket roller. If the sprocket roller should in a revolution carry forward more or less than four pictures, on film sufficient for four pictures, the rapidly moving device would, in each of its actions, bring down more or less than a picture into the optical axis, or more or less than the exact length of film intended for a single picture. The sprocket wheel, therefore, whether it be employed in a machine for giving intermittent movement to the film, or in a machine through which the film is moved continuously across the optical axis, has with some propriety been called the registering device of such apparatus.

2498



Microcard Editions

An Indian Head Company

A Division of Information Handling Services

CARD 10

Q56. While on this subject of the construction of the machine, I wish to inquire, with a little more particularity, as to the devices embodied in the original machine, of which you have testified: Please refer to the blue prints (Latham Exhibit No. 7), and to Figs. 4 and 5 thereof, and state what said figures represent?

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to because the specification of the application fully describes Figures 4 and 5, and it is, therefore, the best evidence of their construction and operation. The witness cannot be permitted now to contradict the specification, or to state anything which would be contradictory thereof; and further,

Counsel for Latham states that Mr. Marble has misunderstood, or not understood, the purport of the question. The blue prints are not referred to in this question as a part of the Patent Office record, but simply as blue prints showing a taking and projecting machine, and the witness is asked to describe the construction shown in certain figures of the blue prints and to do this regardless of what may be embodied in the specification of his interfering application.

Counsel for Casler replies that he did not misunderstand the purport of the question, as the question is very plain and simple, and he insists upon his objection.

A. These figures are representations of the intermittent rapidly moving device, which was a part

2501

of the machine originally constructed by me for photographing and projecting pictures of objects in movement. Figure 5 shows the broken gear employed to give intermittent movement to the film, and Figure 4 shows how the device is geared to the shaft, carrying one of the constantly moving sprocket wheels, or drums.

Q57. In the interference issue an element thereof is recited as "means for intermittently moving
the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting
the movement so that the interval of pause and
illumination shall exceed the interval of motion":
State whether or not the mechanism shown in
Figures 4 and 5 of Latham Exhibit No. 7 is adapted
to perform that function, and then state the differences, if any, between the stop motion mechanism of the original machine, of which you have
testified, and the mechanism shown in Figures 4
and 5 of this exhibit?

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to as leading, and also because it calls for secondary testimony.

2505

2504

A. The mechanism shown in Figs. 4 and 5 is precisely that employed on the original machine. Referring to Fig. 5, it will be observed that the wheel 48—

Counsel for the witness interrupts the witness, and states that if he will read the question and answer it in the order in which the statements of the question are put, it will save time.

The Witness (continuing): Figs. 4 and 5 represent means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause, or period of pause it ought to be, and illumination shall exceed the interval, or period, rather, of motion. mechanism shown in Figs. 4 and 5 is adapted to There is no difference perform that function. between the stop motion mechanism of the original machine, of which I have testified, and the mechanism shown in Figs. 4 and 5 of this Exhibit.

2507

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as secondary, and because the witness, in his said answer, seeks to contradict the statements in his specification of his application involved in this interference.

The Witness (continuing): I should like to add

to my answer the following statement: By reference to Fig. 5 of the Exhibit, it will be seen that the shaft 49 is made to revolve intermittently by the revolution of the shaft 34. The shaft 49 carries a sprocket wheel; that sprocket wheel is made to move only when the teeth of the wheel 47 engage the teeth of the wheel 48; and, as the teeth of the wheel 47 occupy only a small part of the circumference of the wheel 47, it is obvious that the rest of the film will be longer than the move-

2508

Mr. Marble: Same objections as to the rest of his answer.

ment as the untoothed part of the wheel 47 is longer than the toothed part of said wheel.

Q58. The interference issue also contains an element described as "mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension device." Please state whether or not you find shown in Figs. 6 and 7 of Latham Exhibit 7, mechanism for effecting such object, and then state whether or not the original machine embodied mechanism for effecting such purpose, and also state in what respect the mechanism, shown in the figures mentioned of the blue print, differs from the mechanism for the purpose in question that was in the original machine, provided it was there?

2510

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to as leading, assuming, secondary and because its seeks to contradict the statement of the specification of the witness's application involved in this interference.

A. The figures 6 and 7 referred to, exhibit mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the said mechanism and said tension device. The mechanism is nothing more that the sprocket wheel numbered 39 in figures 6 and 7. That sprocket wheel revolves at the same rate as the sprocket wheel 46. If, in the beginning, the film is taut between the wheels 46 and 39, it will remain taut, but if, before the operation of the machine has begun, a loop is left in the film between the wheel 39 and the tension device 56, that loop will be intermittently taken up in whole or part by the movement of sprocket wheel 50 and will be re-established during the time during which the sprocket wheel 50 is at rest. In no respect does the mechanism, as shown in Figs. 6 and 7,

differ from the mechanism employed in the original device.

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as secondary.

Q59. State whether or not you find in Figures 6 and 7 of the exhibit blue print, a tension device eo-operating with the film?

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to because it calls for secondary evidence.

2513

A. I do. The expression "tension device" is not mine; I would call it rather a device for preventing the film from folding or puckering at the optical axis. It is marked 56 in Figs. 6 and 7, and consists of a hinged door, which can be shut and pressed against a plate with more or less force, so as to keep the film flat at the optical axis; both door and plate, of course, have apertures to admit light to the film, and both door and plate, on the inner sides, are cushioned with an elastic material of some sort to diminish the chance of damage to the film as it is dragged through the device.

2514

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as secondary, because it seeks to contradict the statement of the specification in the application of the witness involved in this interference.

Q60. State whether or not the original machine, of which you have testified, embraced any such device, or devices, as you have described in the preceding answer.

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to as leading and calling for secondary testimony.

A. It embraced precisely the same device and devices that I have described.

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as secondary.

Q61. Describe briefly the function and purpose of the rollers marked 57a and 58a carried by arms 57 and 58, as shown in Figs. 6 and 7 of the blue prints Latham Exhibit 7?

2516

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to because it calls for secondary testimony.

A. They are merely guide rollers and are not absolutely essential to the working of the apparatus, especially where the sprocket drums 39 and 46 are made of larger size. The special purpose of the two rollers 58a and the lower roller 57a, is to make the film embrace the sprocket drums 46, 50 and 39 more completely. The upper roller, 57a, serves no other purpose than to guide the film in a zig-zag way towards the tension device 56.

2517

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as secondary and because it seeks to contradict statements of the witness's specification forming part of his application involved in this interference.

Q62. You have stated that the first machine embodying the subject-matter of this interference was used primarily for taking pictures. Now state whether or not a taking machine for photographing objects in motion can be used to project the pictures taken by it?

A. Always, provided there is proper space for a suitable light and suitable condenser.

Q63. I hand you a strip of film, which please examine and state what it represents, and what you know about it?

A. This piece of film is a part of the series of pictures photographed on the Madison Square Garden roof on May 4, 1905. It represents a boxing match between two men by the names of Griffo and Barnett. The pictures were photographed in my presence and in the presence of a large number of people. The machine was operated by Otway Latham and W. K. L. Dickson working together. The film was originally two inches wide. I, myself, cut off the margins of the film so that I might use it in another machine of my construction.

Q64. When did you state the pictures were taken on the Madison Square Garden roof?

A. On May 4, 1895.

2520

2519

Counsel for Latham offers the strip of film referred to in answer to Q63, in evidence, and it is marked Latham Exhibit No. 9, Dec. 6, 1897, J. A. S., Com'r.

Mr. Marble: The offer and receipt of the exhibit is objected to as immaterial and irrelevant.

Q65. I hand you a clipping which purports to be cut from the Daily Inter-Ocean of Chicago of date, June 10, 1895, and ask whether or not you have seen it before and what you know about it?

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to because it calls for immaterial, irrelevant and secondary testimony.

A. The clipping contains a notice of the photographing, already referred to, done on Madison Square Garden roof May 4, 1895. I cut it myself from the Daily Inter-Ocean of Chicago, of June 10, 1895. The publication was made without my knowledge or consent. I do not know who instigated it.

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as

Counsel for Latham offers in evidence the clipping referred to in the last answer and it is marked Latham Exhibit 10, Dec. 6, 1897, J. A. S., Com'r.

Mr. Marble: The offering and receipt of the Exhibit No. 10 is objected to as immaterial and secondary and hearsay.

Counsel for Latham gives notice of his purpose to call as a witness on behalf of Latham, Mr. Thomas Armat, a party to this interference.

Direct-examination closed.

XQ104. In your direct testimony, you made statements about the original machine and two other machines for taking pictures slightly different from the original machine. These three machines were once owned by the Lambda Company, were they not, and sold by it to the Eidoloscope Company?

A. No, sir.

secondary.

2522

XQ105. Why do you say no, sir?

A. For the reason that at the time the transacaction was entered into with the Eidoloscope Company, the two machines last named belonged to myself and my sons. The Lambda Company had not purchased them of us. The shop and machinery for manufacturing purposes never belonged to the Lambda Company, except that the rooms and appliances for printing and developing the picture strips had become their property. I proposed to the directors of the Lambda Company that the Lambda Company should purchase of my sons and myself the machinery, other than that belonging to the developing rooms, but the directors declined to make the purchase, agreeing to have done by my sons and myself any future work that the Lambda Company might require. The two last made machines referred to were made under my individual order to the workman, and he was directed by me to make the machines precisely like the first one, and to mount them together on one table. When they were finished there was no difference between them and the first machine of more importance, than would be the difference between two chairs, one of which was a little more elaborately carved than the other.

2526

2525

XQ106. When did these two additional machines become the property of the Eidoloscope Company?

A. They became the property of the Eidoloscope Company at the time when the assets of the Lambda Company became the property of the Eidoloscope Company.

XQ107. Then the Eidoloscope Company had three taking or photographing machines and five projecting machines; is that correct? A. Yes, sir.

XQ108. You speak of five projecting machines; were those machines made like the machine described and illustrated and claimed in an application which you filed December 28, 1895?

A. They were not.

XQ109. They were continuous moving machines, were they not? I mean the film was continuously moving?

A. They were.

XQ110. When were those machines made, if you remember?

A. My recollection is that the construction began in November, 1894, and was continued from time to time till they were completed.

XQ111. When were they completed?

A. I am unable to say definitely.

XQ112. Give the date as near as you can?

A. I know positively that they were completed prior to the time of the contract with the Eidoloscope Company, and that at least one of them was completed prior to May, 1905.

XQ113. Who did the work in those five projecting machines?

A. Eugene Lauste and E. W. Kleinert.

XQ114. Did those gentlemen work under your supervision and direction?

A. They worked under the direct supervision of my son, Otway Latham, who was under my general direction.

XQ115. You were having these five projecting machines constructed during the spring, summer and fall of 1895, were you not?

A. I have already stated that I do not remember when they were finished. After they had been com-

2528

pleted alterations from time to time were made in such of them as happened to be in the shop. These alterations involved no change in the principle of construction, however. The plan for making these machines had been determined on definitely in the fall of 1894.

XQ116. You have testified that at least one of these machines was completed in May, 1895, and that they were all completed before the making of the contract between the directors of the Lambda Company and some gentlemen who proposed to get 2531 up the Eidoloscope Company, which was in January or February, 1896, according to your recollection. Now, is it not a fact that these five machines were in process of construction during the whole of the year 1895, or nearly so?

A. I did not intimate any such thing in my answer, and such was not the fact.

XQ117. When were they constructed?

A. I am unable to say more definitely than I have already said.

XQ118. When were the two additional photographing machines made?

A. My recollection is that they were begun either in the latter part of the summer or the early part of the fall of 1895. It may, however, have been

somewhat later. Certainly prior to the year 1896. XQ119. It is a fact, is it not, that during the year 1895 the Lambda Company was constructing under your general direction machines for taking pictures and machines for projecting pictures, and that these machines were not alike?

A. I have testified that I made one machine for photographing and projecting pictures of movement and five other machines suitable simply for pro-

jecting pictures; that these machines were sold to the Lambda Company and that the Lambda Company had not previously been engaged in the manufacture of anything, and that the Lambda Company through its directors had positively refused to have anything to do with the manufacturing of machines in the future; that the two additional machines, heretofore mentioned, for photographing and projecting pictures were made by me with the expectation that I would be able to sell them to the Lambda Company, but that the Lambda Company never purchased them, and that in the early part 2534 of the year 1896 I sold them to the Eidoloscope Company.

XQ120. If I understand your last answer in connection with your other answers, there was, during the year 1895, constructed by you, or under your general supervision, two photographing machines and five projecting machines, and that these machines were of different construction; is that 80?

A. I did not so testify.

XQ121. In your answer to XQ112, referring to the five machines for projecting pictures, you stated: "I know positively that they were completed prior to the time of the contract with the Eidoloscope Company, and that at least one of them was completed prior to May, 1895"; is that correct?

A. That is correct, sir.

XQ122. In your answer to XQ118, referring to the two additional photographing machines, you stated: "My recollection is that they were begun either in the latter part of the summer or the early part of the Fall of 1895. It may, however, have

been somewhat later. Certainly prior to the year 1896." Is that correct?

A. That is correct, sir.

XQ123. In view of your last two answers, why did you say, in answer to XQ120, "I did not so testify"?

A. Because I have not testified that the construction of the five machines occurred during the year 1895; I stated explicitly that, according to my best recollection, the construction began in November, 1894, and for aught I know the machines may have been all finished long before the first of May; I have mentioned the month of May simply because I desire to be clearly within the bounds of truth, as the time when at least one of the machines was completed, and for that reason that I remembered perfectly well that in the month of May projections on a screen were made with at least one of those five machines.

XQ124. Why did you first make application for a patent for a machine for projecting pictures on a screen with a constantly moving film?

2538

2537

Counsel for Latham objects to the question as it does not appear that Casler's attorney is rightfully in possession, if in possession, of any knowledge of such prior application. And the witness is instructed that he need not answer any questions concerning inventions for which he has applications pending at the Patent Office that are not involved in this interference, as such pending applications are matters between himself and the Patent Office, and he has a right to refuse to divulge anything concerning them in this proceeding.

Counsel for Casler states that he is in possession of a certified copy of an application filed by the witness December 28, 1895; that this application was properly applied for by one of the members of his firm, and is legitimately and legally in counsel's possession; that in this application referred to, there is described and illustrated a projecting machine with a continuously moving film in contradistinction from an intermittently moving film; that he has a right to test the memory of this witness on all subjects connected with the matter at issue in this interference and for the reasons of his actions, and that is all that this question ealls for. He, therefore, insists that the question be answered.

Counsel for Latham states that he understands that the certified copy which Mr. Marble holds in his hand is a certified copy of the file and contents of the Latham application of December 28, 1895, that has been declared to interfere on an entirely different feature of invention from that involved in the present interference with the application of Casler, that is involved in this interference. It is admitted that the certified copy is rightfully in possession of counsel, and no objection is made to the witness answering the question so far as it relates to the application of December 28, 1895, notwithstanding that the subject matter of that application is for an invention distinct from the invention of the application involved in this interference.

2540

A. I respectfully decline to answer the question for the reason, first, that it is an inquiry into my private business, and for the reason second, that the application, which has suggested the inquiry. is not in the hands of the attorney for Casler properly or legally for the purposes of this investi-

gation.

XQ125. Your counsel admits that this certified copy of your application of December 28, 1895, is "rightly in possession of counsel," and says that he has no objection "to the witness answering the question so far as it relates to the application of December 28, 1895, notwithstanding that the subject matter of that application was for an invention distinct from the invention of the application involved in the interference": Now, why do you decline for the reasons stated in your last answer, when your counsel says that counsel for Casler is rightfully in possession of the certified copy, and he has no objection to your answering the question?

2544

2543

A. My counsel did not say the attorney for Casler is rightfully in possession of the application of December 28, 1895, for the purposes of this investigation. A copy of that application could never have been obtained by the attorney for Casler acting simply in this case. He is also attorney for Casler in an interference case that concerns the application of December 28, 1895, and it is simply and solely because of his employment as attorney in this latter case that the Commissioner of Patents allowed him to have a copy of my application of December 28, 1895. I insist that these two cases of interference shall be tried separately, and I refuse positively notwithstanding the advice of my counsel to answer questions based on information coming to the attorney of Casler by virtue of his connection with another and a separate and distinct interference with which I am concerned.

> Counsel for Casler gives notice of a motion to strike the testimony of this witness from the record because he is recalcitrant and also reserves for the present the right to make a motion to the U. S. Circuit Court for the Southern District of New York to compel this witness to answer the question as by statute he is authorized to make this motion.

2546:

XQ126. You have testified that you are a party to this interference: Please state what the combination of elements is which form the issue of this interference?

A. The statement is made in the interference as to what the matter of interference is and it is word for word one of the claims found in Mr. Armat's application. It would be impossible for me to repeat it verbatim; it would be even impossible for me to repeat verbatim my own short claim No. 10, I believe it is, or Mr. Casler's claim No. 5; but as I have read these three claims, I find that to my apprehension they are precisely alike in one particular only and that is that they all three include a device for maintaining a loop on one side of the door or window through which projection is made.

XQ127. I did not ask you to repeat the issue of interference verbatim, but to state what the combination of elements is in the issue of the interference which you say you invented?

A. One of the elements included is for moving the film continuously. Another of the elements

is means for interrupting this continuous movement at short intervals at the optical axis, and the third means is one for maintaining a loop on one side of the window, or door, through which projection is made—that is on one side of the socalled tension device, and the fourth means is the tension device itself.

XQ128. Is that the best statement you can make as to your knowledge of the elements which form the combination of the issue of this interference?

2549

A. So various are the ways in which things may be expressed by words that a man may accurately express a thing at one time in one way and at another time in another way and the question which of those expressions is the better or whether any one of them is the best that could be made is a question that nobody can answer. I simply declare that in my apprehension I have made a general, but a thoroughly accurate statement of what are the points at issue. Whether it is the best I could make or not might depend upon how many hours I slept last night or to what extent the food I have eaten to-day has agreed with me.

2550

Adjourned to Tuesday, December 7, 1897, at 11 A. M.

2552

New York, December 7, 1897.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present—Counsel as before, the witness, except Mr. Armat.

Continuation of the cross-examination of Woodville Latham:

By Mr. Marble:

XQ129. Have you the contract made by you with the Lambda Company mentioned yesterday in your testimony?

A. As I stated yesterday my impression was that I had it, but I have made search and find that I was mistaken.

XQ130. Have you the charter of the Lambda Company?

A. I make the same answer that I made to the foregoing question.

XQ130. What search have you made for these papers?

A. Among my papers.

255**3**

XQ132. Many of the dates given in your testimony as to when things occurred are given simply from memory, are they not?

Mr. Armat appeared at this point.

A. I could not answer that question unless I knew what particular questions are referred to,

XQ133. Have you any data by which you can fix your alleged conception of the invention here in controversy in July or August, 1894?

A. I have.

XQ134. Have you thus far produced it?

A. My recollection is that it was mentioned early in my direct testimony.

XQ135. What is this date?

A. The fact that in July or August, 1894, my sons were making exhibitions of pictures of movement at 83 Nassau Street by the use of Edison's Kinetoscope, and that both they and I heard persons repeatedly express a desire that such apparatus might be provided. My recollection is perfectly distinct that at that time I conceived of the devices in a general way and stated my notion to my sons and subsequently, certainly I think as early as September or October, 1894, to W. K. L. Dickson, who was then in the employ of Mr. Thomas A. Edison.

XQ136. There is nothing in the case except your statement that your sons were running a place for the exhibition of the Kinetoscope at 83 Nassau Street, this city, in July or August, 1894, is there?

Counsel for Latham certainly intends, by witnesses that he shall call, to establish the fact of the exhibition at 83 Nassau Street in July or August, 1894, and will do so when opportunity offers itself.

2556

A. My answer to that question is to be found in the statement just made by my attorney.

XQ137. Is that all the answer you can make to the question?

A. It is the only answer I can properly make at this time.

XQ138. You mention in your testimony the making of some sketches in the summer or fall of 1894;

is it a fact that all of such sketches were thrown away by you?

A. I have already stated on my direct examination that sketches were made in September, 1894. My belief is that they were made, many of them prior to the date even, but they were sketches made in order to convey to others ideas that were in my own mind, and without exception, so far as I believe, they were destroyed, after they had served their purpose.

XQ139. Did you show these sketches which you claim to have made to any one except your son?

A. I showed them, as I think I have already stated, some of them at least, to Mr. W. K. L. Dickson, who at that time, was in intimate association with my sons and myself. Prior to the first of November my recollection is that I did not show the drawings to others than those I have just mentioned.

XQ140. Do you now remember distinctly what was shown on any of these sketches, to which you have referred?

A. So far as concerns the making of a machine for carrying the film continuously there never was any question as to its proper construction. The only difficulty as to machinery from the beginning was in selecting such an intermittent movement as would best answer the purpose in view. Nor was there any question as to the means of maintaining a loop at the proper place, nor was there any difficulty in at once devising a satisfactory device such as in this case has been called a tension device. I should correct the statement just made that there was only one question which was a difficult thing to solve at once. Another was this: How shall the

2558

receiving reel of a device for photographing and projecting pictures be connected with the other parts of the machinery so that its circumferential movement shall be uniform? The drawings that were made were, for the most part, simply drawings of a variety of intermittent arrangements previously employed in other connections. The only original device, or rather the only device that I did not know had been previously used for a variety of purposes, that was considered, was one which, in response to my suggestion, Mr. W. K. L. Dickson proposed. Even to this day no intermittent device, so far as I am aware, is in use that is utterly unobjectionable.

2561

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as irresponsive.

The Witness: I shall be glad to answer the question in a satisfactory way. I answered it according to my understanding of it.

2562

XQ141. Referring to direct question 8 you say, among other things, "such working drawings as were made from the 1st of November on were left in my shop at 101 Beekman Street." Do you remember distinctly what was shown on these so-called working drawings?

A. My statement ought to have been that so far as I knew, the drawings referred to were left in the shop that had belonged to me and my sons. Prior to the time when the shop passed out of our control, I frequently saw such drawings in the possession of Eugene Lauste, the mechanic, who made them. When he left the employment of my sons and myself, he accepted employment from those

into whose hands the shop and machinery passed. It is probable that he continued to keep the drawings as he had previously done, but of this I know nothing of my own knowledge. Mr. Lauste's practice was not to make complete drawings of a machine that he undertook the manufacture of, but to make such a drawing as he himself could understand of the parts of the machine that from time to time he intended to construct. I do not remember to have seen at any time a complete drawing of the machine as a whole until the drawings for the Patent Office, at Washington, D. C., had been made.

2564

XQ142. When were those Patent Office drawings made?

Mr. Bowen: I object to the question unless it is made to refer to the drawings of the machine involved in this interference.

A. The drawings of the machine involved in this interference were made by Mr. Raphael Netter, of New York City, at some time prior to the date of the application, but just how long before the application was put in I am unable to say. Mr. Netter is in this city and doubtless will be able to give the date.

2565

XQ143. From the certified copy which I have of your application involved in this interference, it appears on the certificate of the Commissioner of Patents that said application was filed June 1, 1896. Do you remember when it was filed?

Mr. Bowen: The question is objected to as incompetent as the evidence of the date of filing is a matter of official record and is now in possession of counsel for Casler, and moreover the way to prove the date of filing is well understood and the witness's evidence will be secondary in its nature.

A. There are some things the dates of the occurrence of which there may be special reason why a man taxes his memory with. When a man has had official record made of a date, he doesn't trouble himself ordinarily to bear such a date in memory. I would not, therefore, to-day be able to say with confidence just what day the application referred to was filed, but for an acknowledgment from the Patent Office in Washington.

XQ144. It appears in the record of the testimony in this case, a record dictated by your counsel, that your application involved in this interference—that is, the statement of date—was filed on June 1, 1896; are you satisfied that this is the correct date?

Mr. Bowen objects to the above question because of the use of the word "record" therein. The question as put clearly implies that the record of this testimony was dictated by myself. I suggest that where the word "record" occurs in the expression "a record dictated by your counsel" be altered to "statement," because, while I asked the witness the question referred to by Mr. Marble, that was all.

A. I have no reason to doubt the correctness of it.

2567

XQ145. Now, I wish to ask you to approximate as nearly as you can, how long before the filing of your application involved in this interference it was that these Patent Office drawings were made; was it a week, two weeks or a month?

A. I am utterly unable to say.

XQ146. I hand you a certified copy of the file and contents of your application involved in this interference, including the certified copy of the drawings, and ask you to examine said drawings, and then to state whether they are, so far as you know, correct copies of your drawings filed in your application involved in this interference?

2570

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as incompetent.

A. Yes, sir; so far as I know those are correct copies.

XQ147. Did you swear to your application involved in this interference?

A. My recollection is that I did, and I hardly think the Patent Office would have given any attention to the application otherwise.

XQ148. Before swearing to your application involved in this interference did you read it over, or have it read over to you until you thoroughly understood it?

A. I read it over myself and I thoroughly understood it.

XQ149. Again I hand you the certified copy of the file and the contents of your application involved in this interference, and ask you to examine the specification and claims thereof as originally filed, and see if you find in there a word or syllable or expression of any kind that the film is to be so moved "that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion"?

Mr. Bowen: The question is objected to, unless the alleged certified copy be made an exhibit in this case. Until it is made an exhibit it is denied for the purposes of this question, that it is a certified copy of the Latham application involved in this interference.

Counsel for Casler will so far humor counsel for Latham as to ask the Commissioner, or the gentleman acting in his stead, to mark for identification the certified copy tendered to the witness in XQ149. The identification to read as follows: "The certified copy of the file and contents of the application of Woodville Latham, filed June 1, 1896, Serial No. 593,747," and signing his name thereon.

2573

A. The original specification on file at Washington City will show for itself.

XQ150. Do you refuse to answer the question; that is cross-question 149?

A. It depends altogether upon whether I am to base answer to the question on the specification merely or upon the entire file, drawings included.

2574

XQ151. (XQ149 repeated.)

Mr. Bowen instructs the witness that he should endeavor to answer the question, and that in so doing he is at liberty to answer it in his own way, and, if he thinks proper, to answer it in connection with whatever it attached to the certificate of certification, including the drawings.

Counsel for Casler excepts to the instruction given by counsel for Latham to the witness because he instructs the witness to commit a bare-faced violation of his duty as a witness, and seeks to induce the witness not to answer the question as propounded.

Counsel for Casler gives notice that if the witness answers the question in accordance with the instruction of counsel for Latham, he will move to strike the witness's answer from the record.

Mr. Bowen denies that he has any intention of instructing the witness not to answer the question as propounded; on the contrary, he thinks the witness should answer the question, but counsel avails himself of his privilege to see that the witness is made acquainted with his rights as a witness.

2576

A. I have no absolutely certain information that what purports to be a certified copy of the file in my case of June 1, 1896, is such; but I will state first, that the question whether the pause of the film at the optical axis ought to be longer than its time of movement from the optical axis is a question depending largely upon how many pictures per second are to be photographed or projected. In photographing pictures, the proper pause must be only sufficient for a distinct impression to be made upon the film by the rays proceeding from the object photographed. How such pause shall be related in length to the time of movement depends upon nothing else than the number of pictures per second photographed. In projecting, the pause must be sufficient to make an impression upon the eye of the observer, and in projecting machines, as well as in photographing machines, the ratio of such pause to the intermittent movement will depend solely upon the number of pictures projected

in a second. As a matter of fact, the machine of mine, in interference in this case, is a machine which, as originally constructed, had an appliance exhibited in Fig. 5 of the drawings for making the pause several times longer than the time of movement, as I believe, I explained in my direct-examination. As I believe and did believe at the time of making the application that there is no scientific basis for a general claim of advantage coming of an arrangement for making the pause at all times and under all circumstances greater in duration than the time of movement. I did not put in a claim to any such thing in any application, nor is there mention of any such thing in the specification filed in Washington, June the 1st, 1896.

XQ152. In your last answer you mention Fig. 5 of the drawings as representing a device which you had in your first machine. Fig. 5 of your drawing represents a device, does it not, which you bought ready made and as known as the Geneva movement?

A. It is a device which I ordered to be made for me; it is not known as the Geneva movement, but as the Geneva stop, and was employed first, so far as I know, by the Swiss watchmakers a great many year ago not to produce intermittent movement, but to prevent the over-winding of watches.

XQ153. Prior to your attention being called to the kinetoscope, which was being exhibited by your sons at 83 Nassau Street, had you ever made a study of photography?

A. Yes, sir. The general principles of photography I began to study when I was about fifteen years of age, and one of the first books upon the principles of photography that I read was that of

2579

Dr. Draper, of New York, who, in the estimation of a great many well-informed people, is fairly to be considered as having first suggested the processes that have made modern photography a possibility. Many years before Mr. Edison's kinetoscope was produced, and before Anschutz, his predecessor, interested himself in making and projecting pictures of movement, I clearly understood the conditions under which objects in motion could be photographed.

XQ154. Prior to the time mentioned in the last question, had you ever made an application for a patent for an invention?

A. Never, except at one time as an assignee of an interest in a spring motor invented by others.

XQ155. Are you a mechanic?

A. Not by profession. My direct testimony has shown that my life has been passed in other pursuits.

XQ156. When did you first become acquainted with W. K. L. Dickson?

A. In the summer of 1894.

XQ157. Do you know where he was then employed?

A. He was then employed in the establishment of Mr. Thomas A. Edison.

XQ158. Did you learn from Mr. Dickson soon after your acquaintance with him that he was employed, and had been for some time before, on machines and apparatus for taking and projecting pictures on a screen?

A. I did.

XQ159. The Edison kinetoscope appeared in public sometime before you became acquainted with Mr. Dickson, did it not?

A. It did, and my information was that prior to

2582

the exhibition of the kinetoscope and prior to my coming to New York an instrument similar to the kinetoscope had been exhibited at Koster & Bial's Theatre, if I mistake not, on Sixth Avenue.

Adjourned to December 8, 1897, at 10 a. m.

New York, December 8, 1897.

2585

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present—Counsel as before, Mr. LATHAM and Mr. ARMAT.

Continuation of the cross-examination of WOOD-VILLE LATHAM:

By Mr. Marble:

XQ160. Did you consent to the arrangement which you say was made by your sons with Mr. Dickson that he should have one-fourth of the stock of the company to be organized for his services in connection with this apparatus which you had in consideration?

2586

A. At the time of the agreement between my sons and Mr. Dickson it was not my expectation to become a stockholder in any company my sons might be instrumental in organizing; hence my consent to the arrangement they made with Mr. Dickson was not asked. They told me, however, from time to time, of their interviews with Mr. Dickson and of what Mr. Dickson proposed to do for them; not only so, but I myself repeatedly heard Mr. Dickson make to them promises as to what he could and would do.

XQ161. Did you yourself talk with Mr. Dickson about your alleged invention and as to the construction of an apparatus to accomplish what you wished to accomplish?

A. I did.

XQ162. How many times, if you can remember?

A. These conversations occurred so very frequently that it is impossible for me to give their For a considerable period it was the custom of Mr. Dickson to come to my room at the Bartholdi Hotel at night from his home in Orange, New Jersey, once or twice a week to confer with me about the devices. During such visits there was a discussion between us as to the merits of his suggestions and the merits of mine. I think my attorney has at least one note written by Mr. Dickson to one of my sons in which he promises to confer with me in regard to matters connected with arrangements that were then being made for beginning the work of constructing apparatus for projection. I find that this was in the latter part of October, 1894.

XQ163. Since commencing your last answer you have examined what you understand to be the letter therein referred to, have you not?

A. Only very cursorily. I could not possibly give the entire contents of the communication.

XQ164. Will you please look at the letter again? Having done so, state wherein you find any statement of Mr. Dickson's that he was to confer with you in relation to his proposed efforts?

A. The last sentence of the communication is "Will talk over everything else I may think of with your father." The letter begins with "Dear Otway," and was written to my son, Otway Latham. The first sentence is, "I have discussed

2588

the matter very fully with Mr. Lauste, and we have come to a clear understanding what we shall lo in the future." That means that he had carried out a promise previously made to my sons to employ Mr. Lauste, at their expense, to do the mechanical work that was to be done, and that he had explained to Mr. Lauste the kind of work he wished Mr. Lauste to do. The letter goes on to say, "He will come to me for direction, and when I can will go to New York." At this time (that is, at the time of the writing of this letter) Mr. Dickson had entered into no written obligation to have made, or to superintend the making of, apparatus for projection of his own invention, but had promised verbally again and again to put my sons in the way of having such apparatus constructed. Up to that time there had been nothing to make my sons or me believe that Mr. Dickson was incapable of doing what he had promised. We had endeavored to induce him to disclose his device to us, but he had, by evasion or otherwise, invariably failed to do so. He had claimed that he was the real inventor of the Edison kinetoscope, and we had not, at that time, seen a book written by himself and his sister in which the credit of the invention was given to Mr. Edison. After seeing that book, and after considering how impossible it had been to bring Mr. Dickson to the point of promising in writing to provide the apparatus desired, I at least began to mistrust him strongly. I had received frequent invitations from himself and his wife to visit them at their home in Orange, New Jersey, and my recollection is that I did visit them in company with my son, Gray Latham, on the night of October the 19th, 1894. After dinner though there were several persons present besides

2591

Mr. and Mrs. Dickson, my son and myself, Mrs. Dickson invited my son and myself to come with her and Mr. Dickson to another room. She then said that she desired to talk and to have Mr. Dickson talk in my presence and to me about the matters that my sons and Mr. Dickson had so long been discussing. My recollection is the conversation was prolonged till near twelve o'clock, that night. I had stated that the matters between Mr. Dickson and my son were things that I personally had nothing to do with. Mrs. Dickson, however, and Mr. Dickson declared that they had confidence in my judgment and that they would like to have my opinion as to how far Mr. Dickson could do for my sons the things he had promised to do consistently with his duty to Mr. Edison, or, rather, in such a way as that Mr. Edison could not have ground for complaining of Mr. Dickson, and for discharging him from the position which he then ' held with Mr. Edison. The answer I gave him was substantially that it was impossible for me to express an opinion upon such a question unless I knew just what contract Mr. Dickson was under with Mr. Edison. I said distinctly that I did not believe my sons would be willing to ask Mr. Dickson to do any dishonorable thing, and that, as a matter of fact they had informed me that they had only been endeavoring to bind Mr. Dickson to a promise that he had voluntarily made to them so that they might use that promise in inducing some friends of theirs to contribute money towards the cost of manufacturing the apparatus. Both Mr. and Mrs. Dickson complimented me effusively on the wise and honorable spirit I had exhibited, but the upshot of the matter was simply that Mr. Dickson signed a promise that he would see to it that

2594

whatever strips of pictures might be required should be had by my sons. My understanding of the writing was that it was a veiled promise to make for my sons an apparatus for photographing pictures, but that whether he should do that or not, he would see to it that they should not lack pictures; that is, that he would arrange to supply them or have them supplied, with the Edison pictures. The sole purpose of my sons, at that time, was to provide themselves with the means of making public exhibitions of pictures of movement upon a screen, and it was not their expectation, primarily, at least, to go into the business of manufacturing for sale the necessary apparatus for such exhibitions. The promise at the end of the note to talk over everything else with me was obviously in response to what he knew to be my sons' desire, that they should not be subjected to expense in doing work that I did not approve of; and indeed, before the very first step was subsequently taken by the mechanic in the making of the arresting device sug-Mr. Dickson came to my gested by Mr. Dickson. room at the Bartholdi Hotel, made drawings of the device and asked my opinion of it. I strongly expressed a doubt of its efficiency, but expressed the opinion to my sons that it might be well to have the thing made and tried. It was made and tried and it failed, and when, sometime in January, the machine had been completed, as I recollect the date, it included not one single thing suggested by Mr. Dickson except what had been included in the Edison kinetoscope.

> Mr. Marble: All of the answer after the word "father" at the end of the quotation from the letter referred to in the question

2597

is objected to as irresponsive, volunteered and a plain and bald attempt to discredit a witness which counsel for Latham has given notice that he is to call in this case.

XQ165. How long did these conferences between yourself and Mr. Dickson continue?

A. I have already testified that in July or August, 1894, I endeavored to explain to two of my sons how such apparatus as they desired might be constructed. A short time after that they mentioned the matter to Mr. Dickson and my recollection is that in another short time Mr. Dickson's conferences with me began. They continued from that time to the time when Mr. Dickson severed his connection with the Lambda Company, a connection which began, if my recollection serves me, in the early part of May, 1895, and continued till some time in August of the same year.

XQ166. When was one-fourth of the stock of the Lambda Company issued to Mr. Brown for Mr. Dickson's benefit?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as immaterial.

2601

2600

A. My recollection is that the stock was issued to Mr. Brown in the early part of the year 1895. There is nothing on the stock certificates to indicate that the stock was issued in whole or part for Mr. Dickson's benefit. Other stock had been issued to other parties and the delay in issuing the stock to Mr. Brown arose from an objection made by one of my sons at least that Mr. Dickson had not complied with the promise he had made in such a way as to entitle him to so much of the stock of the company. My advice to them was to let the stock

be issued, because it was better to err on that side than the other, and that Mr. Dickson certainly had tried to perfect the devices for projecting and that his failure had arisen in my opinion, not because he had made the promise dishonestly, but because he had persuaded himself that appliances untried would certainly be effective.

XQ167. There was \$120,000 par value of stock of the Lambda Company issued to Mr. Brown in pursuance of the agreement mentioned in your answer to direct question 39 for Mr. Dickson's benefit, was there not?

2603

2604

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as immaterial and irrelevant.

A. There was issued to Mr. Brown one-fourth of the entire stock, namely, \$125,000 worth. Of that \$125,000 dollars' worth, \$5,000 was subsequently transferred by Mr. Brown, either directly or indirectly, I don't remember, to the mechanic, E. W. Kleinert, at the instance of my son, Gray Latham. Gray Latham and Otway Latham had previously given to the other mechanic, E. Lauste, \$20,000 in stock, and it was argued that it would be wise to make some gift of stock to E. W. Kleinert as well and that it would be just for the contribution to Kleinert to be made by Mr. Brown.

XQ168. This \$125,000, par value, of the stock of the Lambda Company was issued to Mr. Brown, was it not for the benefit of Mr. Dickson, and in pursuance of the arrangement that had been made with him about which you have testified and for the reason stated in your answer to Q39?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as immaterial.

A. My understanding was that it was issued to Mr. Brown for Mr. Dickson's benefit, and for the reason stated by me in my answer to XQ166.

XQ169. Please describe the apparatus which you say Mr. Dickson showed and explained to you referred to in your answer to Question 9?

A. There is no such apparatus that I can find mentioned in my answer to Question 9. The only apparatus mentioned in Question 9 is apparatus brought by W. K. L. Dickson, as I understood from the laboratory of Mr. Thomas A. Edison to one of the rooms in Columbia College. That apparatus is referred to in a letter, from W. K. L. Dickson to my son, of October 12, 1894, in these words: "I brought the old model, had much difficulty in getting it."

XQ170. In your answer to direct question 15 you say: "I have already stated that in the month of October, possibly in the month of September, there was experimentation with the use of what I was told by Mr. Dickson, was the original model of the Edison Kinetoscope." Was not the model thus mentioned, the one you experimented with as stated in your answer to direct question 9?

A. It was.

XQ171. Please describe this model with which you say you experimented in October, possibly in September, 1894, which Mr. Dickson told you was the original model of the Edison kinetoscope?

A. It is impossible at this instance for me to describe it minutely; it was simply sprocket machinery, such as appears in the Edison kinetoscope for moving the picture strip uniformly across the optical axis with a shutter to give momentary exposures of the pictures to the light. I have spoken of

2606

that experimentation as mine, because it was conducted by Mr. Dickson and one of my sons in pursuance of suggestions and general direction given The experimentation, so-called was conducted sometimes in my presence and sometimes not. It consisted in nothing more than the use of the appliance and picture strips brought by Mr. Dickson in connection with a variety of condensers and one or more electric lamps. My recollection is that one of the lamps used belonged to Columbia College, and that another one I had obtained from J. B. Colt & Company. Most of the condensers employed were provided by me. The trials made with these things are hardly worthy of the name experimentation because genuine experimentation is a process largely of elimination made systematically. I soon discovered that Mr. Dickson, without any sort of method, would try first one thing and then another, and that none of the results obtained were satisfactory. Mr. Dickson's explanation was that the light on the screen was deficient because of the circumstance that the film employed by Mr. Edison, some of which we had been using was not sufficiently translucent, but the conclusion that was forced upon me was that the fault was mainly with the condensers we had been employing and it was not until some months afterwards that we succeeded in making such projection as we believed would be satisfactory to the public by the use of a machine moving the film continuously across the optical axis.

XQ172. Can you tell what month it was that you succeeded in projecting a picture on the screen as stated in your last answer, you thought would be satisfactory to the public?

:2609

A. My expression "satisfactory to the public" cannot be properly understood without considering that at that time the purpose was simply and solely to devise an appliance by means of which pictures of objects in motion might be thrown upon a screen so vividly as to be seen distinctly by a very large number of people at once. My recollection is that with this machine for continuously moving the film across the optical axis fairly satisfactory projections were made as early as October, 1894. The one single objection to them was that the light was not sufficient. No fault in the machinery was discovered, but simply that the pictures were not sufficiently distinct to be seen clearly at a considerable distance.

2612

XQ173. If your last answer is correct, why did you say in your answer to XQ171, after describing what was done in September or October, 1894, "it was not until some months afterwards that we succeeded in making such projections as we believed would be satisfactory to the public by the use of a machine moving the film continuously across the optical axis?"

2613

A. I cannot see any inconsistency. If you will kindly point out the inconsistency you refer to, I will endeavor to explain it.

XQ174. In XQ171 you were asked to describe the model which you experimented with in October, possibly in September, 1894, which Mr. Dickson told you was the original model of the Edison kinetoscope. You answered that question by saying that you could not, at this distance, describe it minutely, and then you went on to tell of experiments which, you say, were conducted by Mr. Dickson and one of your sons sometimes in your

presence with this model, but you say near the end of your answer, "It was not until some months afterwards that we succeeded in making such projection as we believed would be satisfactory to the public by the use of a machine moving the films continuously across the optical axis;" and then in your next answer, XQ172, you say that in your recollection, "that with this machine for continuously moving the film across the optical axis fairly satisfactory projections were made as early as October, 1894;" now, do you still consider these answers consistent.

2615

A. Perfectly so, because a thing might be fairly satisfactory in appearance to a dozen people standing ten feet off and so satisfactory as to justify the confident belief that with slight alterations still better effects could be obtained and yet be utterly unsatisfactory to people at the distance of 50 feet. What I meant by satisfactory to the public was this, that it would be satisfactory to the entire body of spectators usually coming together in large theaters, or public halls. Even as late as July, 1895, Mr. Sandow was negotiating for the privilege of introducing the appliance into England, and objected that he could do nothing with it, or was not willing to undertake to introduce it into England, unless we could make the light on the screens better, and to-day, so far as I know, the one single valid objection to a machine moving the film continuously is that the light upon the screen is apt to be less than where the film is stopped at the moments of projection. Notwithstanding this one objection, it is the opinion to-day of some that all things considered, the machine that runs the film continuously is superior to the

machine that runs the film by intermittent movement.

XQ175. What did you mean in your answer to XQ171 by the words "it was not until some months afterwards," as there used and in the connection used?

A. I had observed in the aforementioned socalled experimentations that the more complicated and the more expensive the condenser employed was, the less good were the results. densers commonly employed in stereopticons are composed of two or more lenses mounted in con- 2618 nection with one another and I very early came to the conclusion that there was reason to expect very much better results than had been obtained if a single small lens should be employed as a condenser. For some while after results had been obtained by the use of condensers purchased of J. B. Colt & Company that were satisfactory or fairly so to my sons, I insisted that the proper plan was to throw away such combinations and to employ a single small lens. Strolling along the streets of New York, I think it was in the early part of March, 1895, I saw a small lens in a window of a store and bought it. Some days afterwards that lens was mounted and used and it was found that it gave a greatly superior light to what had been obtained by the use of the condensers bought of J. B. Colt & Company. This is what I meant by the words "it was not until some months afterwards."

XQ176. These experiments which were made in October, 1894, where you say "fairly satisfactory projections were made," were the experiments conducted by Mr. Dickson with the aid of your sons, were they not?

A. They were, as well as with the aid of myself, because without the appliances that I supplied him with he could not have made the experiments.

XQ177. In view of your last answer and the answer to XQ172, in which you say "fairly satisfactory projections were made as early as October, 1894," why do you say that Mr. Dickson didn't accomplish anything as he promised to do?

A. Mr. Dickson promised to furnish plans for

the construction of an apparatus which he said he positively knew would be thoroughly efficient in photographing and in projecting pictures of move-The so-called experimentation referred to consisted of nothing less than running a piece of film through what was said to be the original model of Edison's kinetoscope, and at the same time in placing this appliance in a position with reference to a screen on the one hand and a lamp and condenser on the other, with the view of seeing whether or not a light strong enough could be brought to bear upon the rapidly moving pictures to produce an appearance upon the screen to any The appliance for moving extent satisfactory. the film had in connection with it not the spools, around which the film is looped in the Edison kinetoscope; and short pieces of film were simply fed into the appliance and allowed to run through it between the light and the screen. Mr. Dickson, as far as I remember, did not himself think that such experimentation was even the beginning of a carrying out of his promise. The promise was to

machinery could be provided.

XQ178. Mr. Dickson was the only person who had anything to do with these experiments, who had had any experience before in the projection of

be carried out as soon as a shop and workmen and

2621

pictures on a screen that you had with you; is this not so?

A. As Professor of Physics it had been frequently my business to project still pictures with the ordinary magic lantern. Mr. Dickson had had no experience at that time in projecting pictures of movement; at least, he certainly never claimed to have had, and, so far as I know, nobody connected with the experimentation had had any such experience.

XQ179. Mr. Dickson continued to make these experiments, did he not, until 1895, and for several months thereafter?

A. I do not remember how long he continued them, but in his hands the experimentation resulted in nothing more than has been heretofore stated by me.

XQ180. He was certainly experimenting as late as February, 1895, was he not?

A. The experimentation referred to as having occurred in February, 1895, was experimentation of a totally different sort; it was experimentation to see whether or not the machine I had devised and had had constructed would photograph pictures of movement. The experimentation of the previous year had relation to the question whether or not a suitable light could be commanded for use with a machine carrying the film continuously; what has been called the experimentation of February, 1895, was simply the trial of a completed photographing machine, and the pictures taken at that time have already been submitted in this case.

XQ181. Was this agreement that you have spoken of several times with Mr. Dickson ever reduced to writing, or expressed in any written paper?

2624

A. My recollection is that after frequent efforts on the part of my sons to induce him to commit himself to writing, an arrangement was made under which Mr. and Mrs. Dickson met my son, Otway Latham, in the presence of Mr. Edmond Congar Brown and Mr. John Murray Mitchell, now member of Congress from New York City, and that at that meeting the agreement made by Mr. Dickson, or by Mr. Brown, acting for him, was reduced to writing. I do not know it of my own knowledge, but my understanding has been that the papers properly belonging to my sons have remained in the hands of Mr. John Murray Mitchell,

2627

XQ182. Can you get those papers as far as they relate to Mr. Dickson?

A. I am not a lawyer and I do not know how to proceed in a case of that sort. Mr. Mitchell might be summoned to testify as to that agreement, because he knows a great deal better what the terms of it were, and what Mr. Dickson's promises were, than I do.

XQ183. If it is a fact that in the fall of 1894, and prior to the time you commenced these experiments with the Edison model, you had made the invention that you now claim in projecting machines, and knew how it should be set up and operated, why did you want to have the invention made by Mr. Dickson and have him construct the apparatus and agree to give him one-fourth of the capital stock of your company for his services?

A. I have not stated at any time that I wanted to have the invention made by Mr. Dickson, or have him construct the apparatus, and I did not agree to give him anything, and entered into no sort of contract with him touching the stock of the Lambda Company. If at any time in referring to

these matters I have used the word "we," in speaking of the actions of my sons, it was done inadvertently. I was not present at the meeting referred to in the presence of Mr. Brown and Mr. Mitchell, and I was not present on any occasion when Mr. Dickson entered into any agreement with my sons except the one already referred to as having occurred, according to my recollection, at Mr. Dickson's house in Orange, N. J., on the night of October 19, 1894.

XQ184. You adopted this contract made by your sons with Mr. Dickson as if made by yourself, did you not?

A. I did not. I had no authority to adopt it or to reject it.

XQ185. You advised, did you not, the issuance to Mr. Dickson, or Mr. Brown for him, of one-fourth of the stock of the Lambda Company, to wit: \$125,000 par value?

A. At the time I gave that advice I had become a member of the Lambda Company, and I have already stated the circumstances under which the advice was given.

XQ186. The issuance and delivery of that \$125,000 in stock was simply the fulfillment, was it not, of the agreement which you say your sons made with Mr. Dickson?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as calling for hearsay testimony.

A. If I were to say yes to that question as it seems you desire me to say, it would be in direct contradiction of the explanation of the circumstances that I have already made in perfectly plain English. I consequently say most emphatically

2630

No, for the reason that both my sons and I were thoroughly satisfied at the time that neither Mr. Dickson nor Mr. Brown had complied with their promises.

XQ187. When did your relations with the people who now have, as you say you think, the three photographing machines and the five projecting machines about which you have testified, become so strained that you do not think that they would let you have the first machine or anyone that you might send for it?

A. I do not think that I have declared it as my belief that the five projecting machines are likely to be found at 101 Beekman street, but I did express it as my belief that the three machines for photographing purposes might be there. My relations with the Eidoloscope Company were broken in the early summer of 1896. One cause of the rupture was a demand from the Eidoloscope Company that I would turn over to them, as their property, the application for a patent, filed June 1, 1896, on the machine involved in this interference. Subsequently suit was brought by them in a Court of law in New York City to secure from me title to

the application and their suit failed.

XQ188. Was this demand of the Eidoloscope
Company on you for an application for a patent
on the machine about which you have testified,
made before or after June 1, 1896?

A. It could not have been made much before June the 1st, because the application was filed on June the 1st. Just exactly when the demand was first made, I do not know.

XQ189. Was there more than one demand made on you?

2633

A. The Eidoloscope Company was controlled by three or four men, who owned the majority of stock, and one or more of these men repeatedly made the demand of me. I do not remember that at any time, prior to the expulsion of my sons from the company, there was any formal demand made by the company through its directors. Indeed, I am not absolutely certain that a formal demand was ever sent to me. It was well known, however, to them all that I considered that they were demanding of me what I was under no legal or moral obligation to give to them and that I had persistently refused to accede to their wishes. Later they expelled me, and still later it was, I think, that they brought the suit against me I have just mentioned.

XQ190. When was it they expelled your sons?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as immaterial.

A. I do not remember exactly; my impression is they were expelled in June or July, 1896, and that very shortly afterwards they told me that my services were dispensed with.

XQ191. What do you mean by being expelled and your sons being expelled?

A. One of my sons was secretary of the Eidoloscope Company, as I was informed, under the charter. They deprived him of his office, whether legally or illegally, I do not know, and appointed another secretary. Both my sons and I myself had been paid stipulated salaries. What I meant by the expulsion of us all was, that our salaries were stopped, that our property was retained and that we no longer had any sort of connection with the Eidoloscope Company. We all believed, and do 2636

believe now, that our rights were grossly invaded and a suit was begun against the other members of the company, but for the want of funds we were unable to prosecute it. My recollection is that we were joined in that suit by some of the creditors of the Eidoloscope Company, or possibly by men whose claims against the Lambda Company the Eidoloscope Company had agreed to pay, but my recollection as to that is not clear.

XQ192. Were you and one of your sons direct-

ors in this company?

A. Only my youngest son, Otway Latham, was a director; he was secretary also, as I have stated. My other son and I had been urged by the men who afterwards became hostile to us to become charter members and directors of the company prior to its organization, but we declined to do so.

XQ193. What were you paid a salary for?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as immaterial.

A. It was understood that my services were to be of an advisory sort touching the scientific questions connected with the manufacture of the apparatus and the production of pictures.

XQ194. When did this bad feeling between you and the other members of this company first com-

mence?

A. That I am unable to say, sir.

XQ195. When did you last have access to the offices and place of business of the Eidoloscope Company?

A. My recollection is that I was last at their

place of business, some time in July, 1896.

XQ196. How did any of the members of that company know that you intended to make an ap-

2639

plication for a patent which you did make on June 1, 1896?

A. My recollection is that the president of the company, Mr. Lindley Vinton, rendered some assistance, or at any rate, made some suggestions touching the application. About this, however, I may be mistaken, and I may be confounding this application with a preceding application which Mr. Vinton had something to do with, and which was included in the decision of the Court against them and in my favor, which I just now referred to.

2642

XQ197. In what Court was that suit brought?

A. It is very easy for me to get definite information upon that matter, but I can only give you now impressions, as I did not attend the trial of the case. My recollection is that my attorney told me that Judge Beekman decided the case, and my impression also is that Judge Beekman was one of the Judges of the Supreme Court.

XQ198. Do you know how the case was entitled?

A. I do not, sir, but the gentleman who acted as my attorney in the case, Mr. Edwin T. Taliaferro, has an office in the building at 132 Nassau street.

XQ199. You have told us who made the drawings for your application involved in this case; where did he get the information with which to make those drawings, if you know?

A. I am glad of an opportunity to answer the question, because not only in this case, but in several other preceding cases of application, the drawings were made, not when the machine was a mere conception, but after it had been completed and tried and proved efficient.

XQ200. You have not answered my question and therefore I repeat it (XQ199 repeated)?

A. He got the information by seeing one or more of the three machines that had, up to that time, been completed of the one model.

XQ201. When did he see such machines, if you know?

A. I think that question has been asked me heretofore, and must make the same answer, that I do not remember.

XQ202. You are mistaken in thinking that question has been asked you before, but if you do not remember when he saw the machine or when he made the drawings, can you tell whether or not he saw one of these machines before they became the property of the Eidoloscope Company?

A. I cannot tell.

XQ203. If you had made this invention as you claim before December 28, 1895, why did you not make an application for a patent for this alleged invention instead of making the application for patent on the continuously moving film machine, which you filed on that date?

A. Prior to the organization of the Lambda Company, I succeeded in making pecuniary arrangements for one application and I chose to make that application on the machine for continuous movement of the film partly at least because I believed it was a better appliance for exhibiting the pictures. Not long after the application was sent in, the Lambda Company got possession of the other machine and its directors at their first meeting, if my recollection serves me, adopted a resolution to the effect that the Lambda Company would purchase of me any patents I might have applied for and any that I might obtain in the future, but the directors also resolved at that same meeting that in their opinion it was inexpedient

2646

for me at that time to apply for a patent for the other machine. The matter was allowed to rest (mainly, doubtless, because many other things engaged the attention of the members of the Lambda Company) until somewhile after the Eidoloscope Company came into possession of the assets of the Lambda Company and just what circumstances induced me finally to make application for a patent on the other machine, I cannot now recall. Wherever in this answer I have used the expression "other machine," my reference has been to the machine involved in this interference.

2648

XQ204. Do you know why the directors of the Lambda Company resolved that it was inexpedient for you to make application on the "other machine" at the time they passed that resolution?

A. I do not. Possibly one consideration may have influenced one of the voters and another consideration another. I do not recollect that any one of the directors mentioned the basis of his opinion.

XQ205. The Lambda Company was formed, according to your testimony, in December, 1894? When was this first meeting of the Board of Directors held, if you know?

2649

A. My recollection is it was held some two or three months afterwards, though I am not certain about that.

XQ206. Did the Secretary of the Lambda Company keep minutes of the meetings of the Board of Directors of the Lambda Company?

A. He did.

XQ207. Is that book of minutes in existence now?

A. I presume so, sir.

XQ208. You were the secretary of the company at the time of this first meeting of the Board of Directors, were you not?

A. I was.

XQ209. If the minutes which you made at that meeting are still in existence can you produce them?

A. I possibly may be able to produce them. When the property of the Lambda Company passed to the Eidoloscope Company, some of the papers of the Lambda Company, if my recollection serves me, were transferred to the directors of the Eidoloscope Company. All the papers of the Lambda Company that were not so transferred, or that were not put into the hands of Mr. Edwin T. Taliaferro, or other attorneys employed to look after the interests of the Lambda Company, have been preserved carefully by me and among the books and papers I preserved may be the minutes referred to. What my duty is or rather, what it would be, if I should discover that I have the minutes of the meetings of the directors of the Lambda Company, I do not know. Of course I hold myself responsible to the Lambda Company and I should not like to part with any property of the Lambda Company, otherwise than legally.

2652

2651

XQ210. All I desire is to fix the date of this first meeting of the Board of Directors of the Lambda Company and if you will bring the minutes of that meeting here, your counsel and myself can agree upon a statement of the date of the meeting without your parting with the paper or papers or books. With this understanding will you see if you can get the minutes giving the date of the first meeting of the Board of the Lambda Company and produce it here at out next session?

A. I will.

XQ211. All of the members constituting the Board of Directors of the Lambda Company had

seen the apparatus called by you the "other machine" and had seen what it would do before it passed the resolution that it would be inexpedient for you to have a patent taken on it?

A. My recollection is that every one of them had seen it, and knew that it was a machine to be used in the future solely for photographing pictures. To what other extent, if any, they were acquainted with the machine, I do not know, except so far as my sons and myself are concerned. All three of us were directors in the Lambda Company and of course we knew all about the machine.

2654

XQ212. How many directors were there of the Lambda Company at the time this resolution was passed that it was inexpedient to take a patent on the other machine so called; that is, how many of said directors were present?

Mr. Bowen: The question is objected to unless it is understood that after "inexpedient to take a patent" the words "at that time" are inserted, since that is what the witness has stated.

2655

A. I do not remember. I do remember, however, that the motion was made by Mr. W. L. Voight, a director from Cincinnati, Ohio. My recollection is that there were seven directors in all of the Lambda Company, but whether all of the seven were present at the meeting referred to, I do not remember.

XQ213. Then your sons, one or both and yourself voted for this resolution, did they, that it was inexpedient at that time to apply for a patent on the "other machine," so called?

A. It is altogether possible, but I do not remember. All questions involving the expenditure of money, at that time, I remember I was disposed to leave to the determination of those from whom most of the money for the enterprise had been obtained. My recollection is that Mr. Voight, the mover of the resolution, referred to, was one of the largest contributors, if not the largest of all.

XQ214. As I understand your answer to XQ203, the resolution passed by the Board of Directors was to the effect that they would purchase your patent, not that it would pay the expenses of the application that you might file or want to file? Is this correct?

2657

2658

A. Certainly; but the Directors of the Lambda Company were mutual friends and each understood the pecuniary condition of the other, and they all knew that I had no money at that time to spare for patent applications. If, instead of adopting the resolutions they did adopt, they had adopted one requesting me to apply for a patent I should have promptly replied that it was impossible for me to do so unless they advanced me the money for the purpose.

XQ215. In direct question 27, you were asked to state the difference between a taking and a projecting machine in this art as you understand the matter, and you gave answer to that question, but stated the functions performed. Now, will you please state the differences between the taking and projecting machines in construction?

Counsel for Latham objects to the question unless it is made more specific; that is, unless the witness is asked to explain the difference between some particular taking machine and some particular machine that

is adapted merely for projection.

Mr. Marble: The attention of the Commissioner of Patents is particularly called to direct question 27 propounded by counsel for Latham, which question the witness answered, and that in said question 27 there is no particular machine referred to such as now the counsel would like to have incorporated in the present question. Counsel for Casler says that the objection made by counsel for Latham sounds very much like coaching the witness.

Mr. Bowen states that he is much obliged to Mr. Marble for the compliment. The difference between direct question 27 and the question now asked the witness on cross-examination is, that the direct question did not call for a description of the construction of any machine, but simply for a definition of the two machines whereby they might be differentiated.

A. I will begin by endeavoring to give the necessary constituent parts of a machine for projecting pictures, by means of a continuously running film. The film may be in the form of an endless band; that is, its ends may be cemented together. As the film moves continuously in such machine, there must be a shutter to expose the pictures in succession to the light and to cut off the light between the times of exposure of any two pictures. There must be some device for feeding the film across the optical axis, and the devices heretofore employed for such purpose, so far as I know, are a pair of rollers, both of them smooth, or one of them with sprockets around its circumference. There must be at the optical axis an appliance for

2660

clamping the film lightly, so as to keep it flat at the times of exposure. There must be thrown upon the pictures a light of sufficient intensity, and on the opposite side of the film from the light there must be what is known as an objective. In such machines it is obviously necessary either to place the light within the endless band of the film or to place the light at one side and to use a mirror for reflecting it upon the film at the proper place.

2663

If the film is not in the form of an endless band, but is loaded upon a reel, that reel may be placed above the apparatus and the film be drawn across the optical axis and allowed to drop on the floor or into a box or other receptacle, or a second reel may be employed to receive the film after it has passed across the optical axis. Where such a second reel is employed it is necessary to have a device for making the circumferential movement of the film around the reel uniform; that is, a device by means of which the receiving reel is made to take up the film as fast as it runs through the rollers employed for dragging it across the optical axis. It is necessary that the exposures made by the shutter shall occur at proper times and that there shall be an exposure for each picture. The movement of the shutter, therefore, must bear a fixed relation to the length of film fed through the dragging rollers during one revolution of the shutter or between two consecutive exposures made by the shutter. Sprocket wheels were in the beginning employed for the most part for dragging the film across the optical axis, and for the reason that a definite number of sprockets on the circumference of the sprocket wheel were made to enter the same number of holes in each picture, so that if around each edge of the circumference of the wheel there were

sixteen sprockets and on each edge of each picture there were four perforations to receive the sprockets, one revolution of the sprocket wheel would invariably carry forward with an approach to accuracy for four pictures, and if the sprocket wheel were so geared to the shutter as that the shutter should make four exposures during one revolution of the sprocket wheel, such a machine could be relied on to bring the pictures to the optical axis substantially at the times of exposure, but sprocket wheels were found to be objectionable, because they would stretch the holes in the films and sometimes break them out, and a number of machines have been made that employ two smooth rollers, instead of a sprocket wheel, with a roller to hold the film Smooth rollers, I believe were suggested before pictures were properly projected by the use of sprocket wheels, but those who suggested the use of smooth rollers seem not to have understood how to use them successfully and, so far as I know, it is since the very general use of sprocket wheels that smooth rollers have been used successfully.

Now, if I had a machine like one such as I have tried to describe and wished to convert it into a machine for moving the film intermittently across the optical axis it would be necessary for me to introduce between the optical axis and what I have called the dragging rollers, some eccentric device for jerking the film quickly across the optical axis or to arrange that the devices for drawing the film across the optical axis should exert a force upon the film that might be overcome without stopping their movement and without breaking the film and then add a device for clamping the film intermittently on the other side of the optical axis. There may be other ways of accomplishing this purpose,

2666

but I do not know that any other expedients for the purpose have been employed. It is easy to see if the film is drawn continuously across the optical axis, and a delivering reel is employed, that it may be drawn directly from the delivering reel, and it is simply necessary that the reel shall turn with some degree of friction around its shaft. If the reel be a small one the film may be drawn from it in the same way where there is a device for moving the film intermittently across the optical axis and I have repeatedly run film through such machines in that way. Of course, however, there is always danger of breaking the film by jerking it when the jerk must communicate its force to the loaded reel and cause the latter to revolve, hence it becomes necessary, especially where large reels are employed to devise an arrangement for producing a loop on the side of the optical axis opposite to that of the appliance for drawing the film rapidly across the optical axis. Such a loop is maintained in all intermittently moving apparatus that I have constructed and in all that I know anything about by simply having two sets of wheels or rollers, one that I have already called the dragging rollers, the other a pair precisely like these placed on the opposite side of the optical axis. If this latter pair of feed rollers is made in revolving to feed the film at a certain rate, the dragging rollers in revolving may be made to take up the film at the same rate, provided one of each pair of rollers is sprocketed. If the rollers are not sprocketed, it becomes necessary to use devices to make them carry the film equally, otherwise the loop would become unduly large or would disappear altogether. speaking of the devices for moving the film at intervals rapidly across the optical axis, I should

2669

have mentioned perhaps that the device employed for this purpose may be a sprocket wheel, such as is shown in the application filed June 1, 1896, and involved in this interference, or a pair of smooth rollers which the film is constantly in contact with; or some kind of eccentric device, as for example a crank might be employed to pull the film at intervals across the optical axis with which device the film is only intermittently in contact.

Any machine, including the device for moving the film intermittently across the optical axis can be employed successfully in photographing pictures. provided the pause of the film at the optical axis, which such a machine causes in its operation shall be of the proper length, and provided the whole apparatus is covered so as to exclude the light and a photographic objective is employed. On the other hand, any apparatus which is suitable for photographing objects in movement can be employed in projecting the pictures, provided the covering is taken off and a projecting lens be employed in place of the photographic objective, and provided a suitable light be at command. I should like to add to this answer after reading it over that when in referring to the means for maintaining a loop I said that the loop is maintained by having two sets of wheels or rollers, &c., in all intermittently moving apparatus that I knew anything about, I meant in all intermittently moving apparatus made by others than myself that I knew anything about.

2672

2673

Adjourned to December 9, 1897, at 11 a.m.

New York, December 9, 1897.

Met pursuant to adjournment. Present—Parties as before.

Continuation of the cross-examination of WOOD-VILLE LATHAM:

By Mr. Marble:

2675 XQ216. Did you find the minutes which you kept of the first meeting of the Board of Directors of the Lambda Company after it was organized?

A. I did; as I was told that the simple desire was to fix the date of that meeting, I concluded that the giving of that date would be sufficient and that I need not trouble myself to bring the whole book. The date was April 20, 1895.

It is hereby stipulated by and between the parties to this controversy in view of the witness's last answer, that the first meeting of the Board of Directors of the Lambda Company, about which the witness has testified, was held on the 20th day of April, 1895.

The witness says that he wishes to correct his testimony given heretofore as to drawings made by him.

Since the session of yesterday, I have found a drawing made by me that I had not remembered. There is no date to the drawing but there is a representation of the essential features of the apparatus involved in this interference, and there is writing on the paper touching another device that I once had in mind that leads me to the conclusion that

the drawing was made prior to January, 1895, but the circumstances under which the drawing was made I cannot clearly recall.

XQ217. You have referred to a paper on which you say there is a drawing. Before being sworn as a witness had you made search for any and all drawings pertaining to your apparatus described and illustrated in your application involved in this interference?

A. Repeatedly, because my attorney had told me that it was desirable that I should be prepared to show such drawings. I found the drawing last night accidently at a place where I should never have thought of looking for it.

XQ218. Did you look for other drawings then? A. I did, sir.

XQ219. Did you find any other drawings?

A. No.

XQ220. You have given the date of the first meeting of the Board of Directors of the Lambda Company as April 20, 1895, and you testified yesterday that said Board of Directors at that meeting passed a resolution that it was inexpedient at that time for you to apply for a patent on the apparatus described in your application involved in this interference. At the time of said meeting did any of the Directors of said Board other than yourself and sons know that said apparatus could be used for any other purpose than taking pictures?

A. I do not know, sir. My recollection, however, is that prior to that time I was informed by my son, Otway Latham, that he had projected pictures by the use of that apparatus in order that some of the directors who happened to be in New York from their homes outside of New York might see the operation. 2678

Mr. Marble: All the last answer after the words "I do not know, sir," is objected to as hearsay and volunteered.

XQ221. The apparatus which you say the Board resolved it would be inexpedient to apply for a patent on, was generally known to your company as an apparatus for photographing objects in motion up to and including April 20, 1895, was it not?

2681

A. It was known to the members of the Lambda Company as a photographic apparatus not only up to the time mentioned in the question, but was so known to the Lambda Company up to the time when its assets were transferred to the Eidoloscope Company. It was transferred by me to the Lambda Company as an apparatus to be used in photographing pictures.

XQ222. I wish you would point out and name all of the devices, whatever they are, that are shown in the drawings of your application involved in this interference which you say were added to your first machine and which appear in the drawings?

2682

A. In Fig. 1, sheet 1, of the drawings (as shown in the certified copy of the file and contents of my application involved in this interference which has been identified) there are shown a cord numbered 30a and a cord tension device marked 61 and 62, not to be bound in the apparatus as first constructed. There is a friction device for regulating the force coming from the motor employed for actuating the machine, with the numbers 64 and 66 near it, which was not a part of the first machine. The appliances I have referred to appear on sheet No. 2, Fig. 2 and sheet No. 3, Fig. 3; and on sheet

2684

No. 4 Fig. 9, is a representation of the frictional device referred to. My recollection is that the representation of rollers 57a and 58a in Fig. 7 of sheet 4 are not just what they were in the first machine. I am not absolutely certain that any such rollers were employed in the first machine, but my recollection is that they were employed and mounted somewhat differently from the way in which they are shown in these drawings. There was in the frame work—that is, in the supports of the essential parts of the apparatus first constructed a considerable difference in size and form. if my recollection serves me, from what is shown in these drawings. There is absolutely nothing that I can see in the drawings to indicate a difference between what the drawings show and what the first machine was in the appliance, or means, rather, for moving the film intermittently across the optical axis. My recollection is that the bevel gear marked 32 on Fig. 2, sheet 2, was not employed in the first machine, but that instead a worm and gear were employed. Of this, however, I am not absolutely certain. I now refer to the bevel gear marked 32.

2685

XQ223. Have you in your last answer stated every part and device shown in the drawings of your application involved in this interference which were not to be found in the first apparatus, as you have referred to in your testimony?

A. I am quite sure that I have not, but I have referred to what I consider every essential difference. I know positively that the machine from which this drawing was made was constructed on my order by a man employed by and paid by my sons and myself, and the order was given to him in the absence of my sons from the city. The order as

I gave it to him was that he should make two machines precisely like the first one that had been made, and the differences to be found between the machine first made and the one from which the drawings were made are differences absolutely unessential.

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as irresponsive after the words "I am quite sure I have not."

2687

XQ224. Again I ask you to name all of the parts appearing in the drawings accompanying your application involved in this interference which were not parts of your first machine as you have spoken of it in your testimony.

I ask you this question because the Commissioner of Patents and other officers of the Patent Office have to pass upon this testimony, and they may deem parts essential which you do not deem essential, and we are simply getting at the facts so that they may have all the information that you have in relation to these machines.

2688

Mr. Bowen objects to the question on the ground that it is immaterial. The issue of the interference, as defined by the Patent Office, contains certain specific elements, and the question to be decided in this case is, Did the original or first machine contain such elements of the issue of interference? I therefore object to the question for the reason stated.

A. I do not think that I can answer the question otherwise than as I have already answered. There is a great deal of detail in such constructions that the man himself who makes the machine is unable to remember after such an interval has occurred as has occurred since I saw the apparatus in question.

XQ225. Why in your answer to cross question 223, in which you were asked if you had in your last answer stated every part and device shown in the drawings of your application involved in this interference which were not to be found in the first apparatus, as you have referred to it in your testimony, "I am quite sure that I have not"?

A. Simply because I was sure that a workman in making the second machine would introduce details not to be found in the first machine, of which the second machine was to be essentially a copy.

XQ226. Is that all the explanation you have to give for your answer to XQ223, "I am quite sure that I have not"?

A. That is all the answer that I have to make.

XQ227. Do you know when the machine was made which did have the elements in it which you have mentioned in your testimony this morning which were not in the first machine, as you have described it?

Mr. Bowen wishes to announce on the record at this point, in order to save time, that he is now able to produce the original machine and he will do so this afternoon, as the search that was instituted for the machine which he promised to make has resulted in finding it.

A. I have already testified on that point that my recollection is that the construction was begun in the fall of 1895. The construction may have been

2690

begun in the latter part of the summer of 1895. My attention at this point is drawn to the question more particularly; as to difference of elements, that one of the elements which appears on the drawings, namely, the friction device for regulating the force coming from the motor employed for actuating the machine is a separate device not necessarily forming a part of the apparatus involved in this interference or any other similar apparatus, and, as a matter of fact, has never been used by me in connection with the machine involved in this interference. It was a device appearing in a prior application for a patent made by me, and was added to the drawings and to the specifications of the application of June 1, 1896, because I had always intended to use it in connection with that apparatus, as well as in connection with the apparatus for which a patent had previously been applied for.

Recess.

After Recess.

2694

2693

Mr. Bowen wishes to say that it is not now his intention to call as a witness in this case Mr. Armat, a party to this interference, for the reason that the necessity for so doing does not now seem to exist. Counsel was aware that the Vitascope company were making, or professed to make, a machine of Mr. Armat's design, and counsel also believed that the original machine, which has been testified about, was in the shops at 101 Beekman Street, this city, where the Vitascope people are located. Counsel does not

know that Mr. Armat had any knowledge of this machine, and it was his purpose to ascertain by making him a witness. As the machine has been found and is now in a condition to be produced, there is no need of calling Mr. Armat.

XQ228. The drawings accompanying your application involved in this interference were made by the draughtsman, were they not, from his viewing what you have termed the second or third machine for photographing moving objects?

A. That is my recollection.

XQ229. Where were these experiments conducted which you have testified were made by Mr. Dickson, assisted by one of your sons in October, 1894?

A. My recollection is that some of them were made in one of the rooms of Columbia College, this city, and I have an impression that some of them were made in the room at 83 Nassau Street, where my sons had for exhibition the Edison kinetoscope.

XQ230. Was there more than one experiment made at Columbia College?

A. My memory is not very clear as to that, but my impression is that more than one meeting for the purpose was had at Columbia College.

XQ231. Mr. Dickson told you, did he not, at one or more of these meetings where he conducted the experiments, either at Columbia College or at 83 Nassau Street, that it was not new to give the film in a photographing machine for moving objects an intermittent movement?

A. He did not at such times, nor at any other time.

2696

XQ232. Mr. Dickson told you, did he not, that it was not new to give a picture bearing film an intermittent motion in a projecting machine, at one or more of your meetings in Columbia College, or at 83 Nassau Street, when he made the experiments you have testified to?

A. He did not on such occasions, nor on any other occasion.

XQ233. You say that Mr. Dickson suggested an arresting device. When did he suggest that device?

A. The suggestion was made at or about the first of November, when my sons had secured a shop and machinery and were ready to begin the manufacture of the apparatus according to Mr. Dickson's plan; that is to say, according to Mr. Dickson's plan for arresting the movement of the film periodically at the optical axis.

XQ234. Was the necessity for such an arresting device developed during the experiments about which you have testified which were conducted by Mr. Dickson?

A. No, sir.

XQ235. When was it discovered?

A. From the very beginning of my attention to the matter I felt sure that it would be necessary to have an apparatus with an arresting device to be used at least for photographing pictures unless arrangements could be made to get pictures otherwise, and I did not know how pictures could be obtained otherwise than by making them myself. Indeed, my first thought was to make one machine to be used for photographing and for projecting. The idea of using, for projection, the machine I had made with the arresting device was given up by me at that time, for the reason, among others, that I thought that the arresting of the film would make

2699

its life very short as compared with what its life would be if it were run without interruption through a machine. By the expression "at that time" which I have used, I mean the time when the machine with an arresting device had been made and tried.

XQ236. Had you devised an arresting device before Dickson suggested one to you?

A. I have never devised one to this day. There were then, as now, a great many appliances suitable for the purpose to choose from that had been used in machinery constructed for other purposes. I had not determined positively which one to try first. As a matter of fact, the one I did try first after finding that Mr. Dickson's device would not answer its purpose, was the broken gear called the Geneva stop, which succeeded and was adopted.

XQ237. The film carrying reel and the film receiving reel which you show in your drawings accompanying the application involved in this interference are the equivalents, are they not, of film-carrying devices and film receiving devices in Edison's kinetoscope, a model of which you had in those experiments?

2703

2702

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as immaterial.

A. No, sir, for two very good reasons. One of them is, that in the Edison kinetoscope a film in the form of an endless belt was used with the necessity for giving to the entire apparatus an undue bulk, and the other is that the kinetoscope was unable to carry any but a strip of moderate length. The first kinetoscope that Mr. Edison made was constructed to carry about 50 feet of film. Subsequently, and prior to my coming to New York, in

the summer of 1894, he had made on the special order of my sons, Otway Latham and Gray Latham, a larger machine to carry about 150 feet, after making a charge against them for experimenting with the view of determining the possibility of complying with their wishes, expressing at the time doubt of his ability to do so. By the use of reels, one for delivery and one for receiving the film, it is easy to carry with my machine several thousand feet of film at once.

2705

XQ238. I think an invention may be embodied in a buggy as well as in a large draft wagon. The Edison film carrying devices and film receiving devices in the kinetoscope were arranged, were they not, so as to furnish and take up the picture films used in that machine?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as immaterial and irrelevant. It is further objected that the question is not asked with a view of bringing out facts the witness may be acquainted with, and the witness is not here as an expert.

2706

A. I am unable to understand what inquiry is intended to be made. The Edison kinetoscope is well known to the public, and is a thing designed for a purpose altogether different from that of the apparatus invented by me and concerned in this interference. The Edison kinetoscope has no delivering and receiving reels properly so-called, is incapable of using a film unless its ends are cemented together, includes no appliance for intermittent movement of the film across the optical axis, and cannot be used for projecting pictures.

XQ239. You testified yesterday with the Edison model of the kinetoscope you projected pic-

tures fairly well on a screen in October, 1894; why do you now say that an Edison kinetoscope cannot be used for that purpose?

A. Because I have not testified that I ever attempted to use the Edison kinetoscope for such a purpose. What I did use was what I was told was a part of the machinery that had once been a part of an Edison kinetoscope, but I do not know of my own knowledge that even that was the truth. My informant was Mr. W. K. L. Dickson. Besides such machinery as was employed, was machinery which I have no reason to believe Mr. Edison, or any other one man in the world, had the exclusive right to use. Mr. Edison did not invent the sprocket wheel, nor gear wheels, nor shutters, nor belts.

XQ240. In the experiments which were made with this model of the Edison machine, you passed the picture films, did you not, across the optical axis just the same as they are passed in the kinetoscope?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as immaterial and irrelevant.

A. Precisely.

XQ241. Now what you say you did, and what you have described and shown in your application in addition to what was shown and embodied in the Edison model is to put a stop mechanism to momentarily, as you say in your specification and claims, stop the movement of the film when the picture is at the optical axis; is this not so?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as immaterial and irrelevant and as an inquiry having no bearing whatever upon the issue of this interference.

2708

2712

A. I have not said anything of the kind.

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as irresponsive and the question is repeated.

XQ242. (XQ241 repeated.)

A. I have not described and shown in my application what is no more than a stop mechanism in connection with the so-called Edison model, and there is nothing in my specification and claims to indicate any such thing.

2711 XQ243. The picture film in the Edison model which you had moved continuously, did it not across the optical axis?

Same objection.

A. It did.

XQ244. And you claim in your application, do you not "means for bringing each picture momentarily to rest as it comes into line with the optical axis of the apparatus?"

Same objection.

A. I do, but I claim much more. I claim an organization for projecting pictures upon a screen and individual appliances for the purpose.

Cross-examination by Mr. Armat:

Mr. Armat, in his own behalf, by consent of counsel for Latham, desires to make the following objections to the questions and answers: Q10. The question is objected to because it calls for immaterial and irrelevant testimony and because it assumes that

the apparatus Mr. Dickson was working on embodied the invention as set forth in the declaration of interference. The same objection is made to Q21. Objection is made to Q23 that it is leading and calls for immaterial and irrelevant testimony and because it is assuming that the photographing machine described is involved in this interference. Same objection is made to Q25. Q32 is objected to as leading and as assuming that the photographing machine mentioned is involved in this interference. objections, except such as I have mentioned that were made by Mr. Marble, counsel for Casler, I desire to make on my own behalf. with the following exceptions; no objection to the answer to Q6; no objection is made to the answer to Q9.

2714

XQ245. Had you previously done anything in the way of inventing apparatuses or machines for projecting pictures of moving objects upon a screen that justified you in not having the slightest doubt of your abilty to devise a machine for this purpose?

7715

A. I do not understand the bearing of the word previously. Previously to what?

XQ246. What I meant by the word previously in this question was previous to the time of the exhibition by your sons which you state was in the summer of 1894?

A. I had never previously invented apparatus for projecting pictures of movement upon a screen, and had not, therefore, any such basis as such previous invention might have afforded for believing that I could construct such apparatus.

XQ247. Then the solution of the problem of

projecting pictures of moving objects on a screen appeared to you at that time a very simple one, and it not?

A. I think I have already stated, in my direct examination, that at the very first my impression was that the solution of the problem was easy.

XQ248. What appeared to you at that time to be the problems connected with such projection that were at that time to be solved?

A. The very first thing that presented itself to my mind as a thing to be done was the providing of a sufficiently strong light which should not have heat enough to burn the easily combustible substance of the film.

XQ249. Was that an unsolved problem at that time?

A. As at that time, I had never known or heard of the successful projection upon a screen of such strips of pictures as I intended to use and as had previously been used in the Edison kinetoscope I did not know whether it would be easy or difficult to command such a light as I desired. I am speaking now, I would like to have it understood, of projection without any stop of the film at the optical axis at the time of projection.

XQ250. Did you disclose the invention which you claimed to have made, and which is involved in this interference, to Mr. W. K. L. Dickson?

A. I have already stated most distinctly that I did. I repeat the statement here.

XQ251. When?

A. It is utterly impossible at this date to say even in what month the disclosure was made, but prior to the 1st of November, 1894, Mr. Dickson knew generally, at least what my notions upon the subject were.

2717

XQ252. You say that you reserved the photographic apparatus constructed in January, 1895, as a photographing machine. When did you give a public exhibition for pay with this machine?

A. I do not think that I have said that I reserved it for any special use. I think I said that I abandoned, or gave up, at one time the idea of using it as a projecting machine. It was the Lambda Company, I think, that I testified had taken it with a determination to use it exclusively as a photographic machine. It was never employed by the Lambda Company in projecting pictures for pay, and I as an individual have never at any time employed any appliances for exhibitions for pay.

2720

XQ253. Your sons and yourself owned the majority of stock in the Lambda Company for a considerable period of the year 1895, did you not?

A. We did.

XQ254. The Lambda Company could have used such an apparatus for pay during the year 1895, could it not?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as immaterial and irrelevant, as this interference is not for the purpose of determining what the Lambda Company may have done, but whether the invention of the issue of the interference was made and by whom first.

2721

A. Do you mean to ask me if the Lambda Company could, without my consent, have used the apparatus for projecting pictures for pay.

XQ255. That was not the question.

A. Do you mean then to ask me if the Lambda Company could have used the apparatus for photographing pictures for pay?

2723

XQ256. No. I mean could the Lambda Company have used the apparatus for projecting pictures for pay?

A. That is a legal question which I am unable to answer confidently. It depends upon what construction might be put by the Courts upon the contract between the Lambda Company and myself.

XQ257. You say that you directed Mr. E. W. Kleinert to order the mutilated gear which you say you employed in the month of February for taking pictures. Why did you not order this gear yourself?

A. For the simple reason that Mr. Kleinert was an expert mechanic and knew better than I did just how to describe the thing that I wanted. It was necessary, of course, inasmuch as the apparatus was otherwise then completed, or nearly so, to have the little wheels of dimensions suitable to be connected with the rest of the machine.

XQ258. Did Mr. Kleinert suggest the use of this gear to you?

A. No, sir.

XQ259. Was this identical gear employed to 2724 photograph the pictures of the Griffo-Barnett fight?

A. It was not.

XQ260. Where did you get the gear that you used to photograph the fight?

A. It was made for me and my sons by Frederick Pierce, whose shop is at 79 John Street, this city. At least that is my recollection.

XQ261. Was the rest of the apparatus for photographing this fight the identical apparatus which you have stated was used to project pictures by your son, Otway Latham in January, 1895?

A. Oh, possibly. Some immaterial alterations

may have been made; I don't remember. My son, Otway Latham who will be a witness in this case had direct supervision of the manufacture and from him, probably more definite information can be obtained than I can give about these matters of detail.

XQ262. You have stated that one reason that you did not use an intermittent motion in a machine for projecting pictures was that the wear on the film was greatly less in an apparatus using a continuously moving film. How did you ascertain this?

A. By having observed from my boyhood that if I allowed my horse to move along without jerking him he would go further.

XQ263. How did you expect to make money out of an apparatus for projecting pictures in the fall of 1894?

Objected to by Mr. Bowen, as irrelevant and immaterial

A. I have not testified that in the fall of 1894, or at any other time, I expected to make money projecting pictures.

XQ264. The parties who became interested in the Lambda Company expected to give exhibitions for pay, did they not?

Same objection.

A. I really do not know what their individual or collective expectations were at first. As a matter of fact they did begin to give exhibitions for pay about May 20, 1895, but it was never done by my advice, or with my approval or with any expectation on my part that money would be made out of

2726

such a business. My own notion was always that the proper thing to do was to manufacture the apparatus, sell the machines to anybody that would buy them and leave the purchasers to do what they pleased with them, but the majority seem to have been of a different opinion.

XQ265. You have stated that a gift of stock in the Lambda Company was made to Mr. E. W. Kleinert. Was this gift of stock in payment of his services?

A. Nothing of the sort. It was intended for no

purpose in the world but to give him an interest

2729

2730

in the business over and above what he would have had as a mere employee drawing weekly wages, and perhaps more especially than that even, because he had found out that some stock had been given to Mr. Lauste, another mechanic, and because Kleinert showed a degree of jealousy on that account. When Mr. Kleinert was first employed by me he was in Boston; I wrote for him. He came the latter part of December, 1894. Mr. Dickson was greatly excited when he found that I had employed Mr. Kleinert and told me that in consequence of my having done so he should be compelled to remain away from the shop thereafter. Subsequently, however, he became reconciled to what I had done and, as I have already testified, the \$5,000 of stock given to Kleinert were a subtraction from the original \$125,000 given to Br. Brown for Mr. Dickson.

XQ266. Can you state why Mr. Dickson became excited on account of your having engaged Kleinert?

A. I can for he told me why.

XQ267. Will you explain the reason?

A. While Mr. Dickson had in the beginning assured my sons and had subsequently given me the

same assurance that the promises he had made were such as he could honorably make, and such as no good man could complain of him for having made, he exhibited a morbid dread of having Mr. Edison learn of what he was do-He said he could trust Lauste to keep ing. everything secret, but that he had known Kleinert who, I believe, had previously been employed by Mr. Edison, and that Kleinert was not a man to be relied on. At some part of my testimony I think I intimated that there was a time when I began to mistrust Mr. Dickson. Certainly the anxiety he displayed to keep from Mr. Edison what he was doing made me suspect that my sons had made a mistake in entering into any sort of engagement with Mr. Dickson, and made me wish still more than I had done previously that my sons had permitted me to work out the problem for them by myself.

XQ268. What was the character of the inventions of Mr. Dickson that you have stated you endeavored to get him to disclose to you in October, 1894?

A. I am sure I do not know, because he has not disclosed them to me from that day to this, except in so far as concerns a device for arresting the movement of the film which I have already testified about. He did make or have made, so he says, a printing machine, but, I think, that my son and Mr. Lauste claimed that they had had about as much to do with inventing the device as Mr. Dickson had had. I remember that I was constantly hearing complaints of the printing machine, and that alterations were frequently made in it.

XQ269. At the time you endeavored to get Mr.

2732

Dickson to disclose his invention, was it your intention to approve the contract that you say your sons made with him or intended to make with him under which he was to have one-fourth of the stock of the Lambda Company?

Objected to by Mr. Bowen as immaterial.

A. I have already stated that I had no authority to approve or disapprove of that contract. It was a contract made with Mr. Dickson by two of my 2735 sons on their individual responsibility, and before the Lambda Company came into existence. If it be desired by that question to find out what manner of man I am I will state in this connection that even after the machines had been made and though Mr. Dickson had had almost nothing to do with devising the elements of them, I said to him, "Claim these things as your own inventions, if you please. Get a patent on them in your own name. I don't care for them," and he refused, and said I was the man entitled to receive the patent. His own lawyer, an intimate personal friend, drew up the first application I sent to Washington, 2736 namely, Mr. Edmond Congar Brown.

Adjourned to December 10, 1897, at 11 a. m.

New York, December 10, 1897.

Met pursuant to adjournment.

Present—Parties as before.

Mr. Latham desires to add to his answer given to Question 259 what seems necessary

2738

to convey a distinct notion of what the facts were. The gear, known as the Geneva stop, soon after it was obtained from Boston was put upon the machine and used, but it very soon broke, because it had been made of machine steel. The broken parts were at once sent to Frederick Pierce, 79 John Street, this city, and he made for me a duplicate of tougher material, except, perhaps, that on one of the wheels two teeth were made, whereas as my recollection serves me, there had been three teeth on the wheel made for me in Boston. The wheel, which I have just mentioned as the one which Mr. Pierce made for me with two teeth, is represented at Fig. 5, sheet 3, of the drawings in the certified copy of the file and contents of my application identified, and is marked 47.

By consent of all parties the examination of the witness, Latham, is suspended for the examination of Mr. Richard A. Anthony, who is called as a witness on behalf of Latham.

Continuation of the cross-examination of Woodville Latham. 2739

By Mr. Armat:

XQ270. When did you first meet Mr. E. W. Kleinert?

A. I cannot remember whether I had met him before the latter part of December, 1894, or not. I think, however, that I had met him previously and my impression is that it was while he was employed by my sons and their associates in connection with the kinetoscope exhibitions at 83 Nassau street, so often referred to in this investigation.

XQ271. You have stated that you wrote to Mr. Kleinert while he was in Boston; when was that?

A. I do not think I have made such a statement. I think my statement was that I had written for Mr. Kleinert, which might be quite a different thing from writing to him. As a matter of fact, in the latter part of December, 1894, Mr. Kleinert was working for the Kinetoscope Exhibition Company, I believe it was called, under the immediate direction of my son, Gray Latham, in Boston, Massachusetts, and it was to my son that I wrote requesting him to let me employ Mr. Kleinert to assist Mr. Lauste in the shop here in New York City, provided Kleinert was willing to come.

XQ272. Having solved all questions as to means for continuously moving a film and having solved means for taking out and delivering the film and having had numerous devices for intermittently moving the film, was it not well within the power of any skillful mechanic to incorporate an intermittently moving device into the continuously moving device?

A. I confess I do not understand the question.

XQ273. I will add to this question, so that the film would be intermittently moved?

A. I am not certain that I yet understand the question. Do you mean to ask me if, in my opinion, a mechanic who had seen an appliance for moving the film across the optical axis uniformly could, without difficulty, devise a machine for moving such film across the optical axis intermittently?

XQ274. Yes, that is what I mean.

A. Then my answer is that my opinion is that one mechanic might be able to construct such a machine and that another mechanic, though equally

2741

skilled in general respects, might not be able to construct such a machine.

XQ275. You state that Mr. Kleinert was instructed by you to order an intermittent gear, because he was a skilled mechanic and could describe that gear better than you could; how did you describe the gear to Mr. Kleinert?

A. I did not describe it at all. I happened to have a catalogue of things manufactured by the Boston Gear Works with representations of some of them, and it was a representation of the Geneva stop in that catalogue that I showed to Mr. Kleinert for the purpose of indicating to him what I wanted. The catalogue did not belong to me but to Mr. Lauste, another mechanic employed by my sons and myself at that time, as I have already stated, and my recollection is that Mr. Lauste first showed me the illustration and asked me if, in my opinion, that would answer the purpose I had in view.

XQ276. At the time you had finished the two photographing machines for taking pictures of the Corbett-Fitzsimmons fight, were there not, to your knowledge, other parties negotiating for the privilege of taking that fight?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to as immaterial and irrelevant.

A. I really do not remember, sir, but I do remember that I ordered the construction of the two machines you refer to in the summer or fall of 1895, because I had been told by persons not now remembered that in all probability the Lambda Company would be requested to photograph the prize fight which was then expected to occur, if my

2744

recollection now serves me, in February, 1896, but which did not occur.

XQ277. At what rate per second were the pictures of the Griffo fight taken?

A. I do not know, sir.

XQ278. Can you approximate?

A. I cannot.

XQ279. You have stated that you did not believe that pictures could be taken on a continuously-moving film. Had you ever tried it?

2747

2748

A. My recollection is that my statement was not quite such an unqualified one as you have attributed to me. I have never tried to take a picture on a continuously-running film. All the pictures that I have exhibited, or had anything to do with exhibiting, have been pictures photographed with a machine that moved the film intermittently across the optical axis.

XQ280. You were in the city of New York in the summer of 1896, were you not?

A. I was.

XQ281. Did your son Gray Latham ever mention to you that he had seen an exhibition of an apparatus commonly known as the Edison Vitascope at Koster & Bial's Theatre in April of 1896?

A. I really do not remember, but I do remember that at some time, whether in April, 1896, or not, I cannot now remember, but long after I had projected pictures of moving objects upon a screen in view of thousands of people in New York City, I myself did see at Koster & Bial's Theatre exhibitions made by the so-called Edison Vitascope.

XQ282. When did you see these exhibitions in Koster & Bial's Theatre?

A. I have already said that I do not remember the time. The thing did not make any very strong impression on me, and I did not tax my memory with the date.

XQ283. Can you say if it was at any time in the month of April, 1896?

A. If I could make any such statement I should have said so in the beginning without waiting to have you or anybody else drag it out of me.

XQ284. Did your son Gray Latham even mention to you that he had actually seen the construction of this machine?

A. I do not remember. He certainly never explained to me the construction of it and certainly nobody else ever explained to me its construction, and I never, at any time, had the slightest knowledge of its construction till the drawings of the machine were obtained from the Patent Office in Washington in connection with this interference. I might go further and declare as I do that my son Gray Latham has such extremely little knowledge of machinery that if he had studied your machine I verily believe he would have been incapable of describing it to me. In the summer of 1894, when I began to think of such appliances, again and again I asked him to look at and to consider drawings I had made, and he invariably said, "Oh, I can't understand anything of the sort. If you can make the apparatus, make it." I should like to be understood as expressing my opinion of Gray Latham and not necessarily his opinion, of himself.

XQ285. You have stated that Mr. Edmond Conger Brown drew up the first application sent to Washington. Did this application show means for forming a loop in the film?

Mr. Bowen: Objected to on behalf of Latham, for the reason that the application in-

2750

quired about is not involved in this interference, is still pending in the Patent Office and not open to public inspection, and the witness is instructed that he is not obliged to disclose anything whatever concerning such application.

A. I decline to answer the question.

2753

2754

Mr. Armat desires to say that he is not an attorney and that he has had no training to qualify him to determine the propriety of such a question, except such training as he has acquired by virtue of contact with his own patent cases; but it seems to him that in view of the fact that the witness has voluntarily stated that he did apply for such a patent and in view of the fact that he has previously testified that he had devised such an apparatus, it seems to him that the inquiry is proper and he believes that future developments in this case will demonstrate the fact, and he therefore notifies counsel for Latham that if the witness does not answer this question he will make a motion to strike his entire testimony from the record.

Counsel for Latham recalls the witness, Woodville Latham, to examine him regarding matter that has been brought to his attention since the direct-examination closed.

WOODVILLE LATHAM, recalled:

Q285½. On your direct-examination you referred to your having made drawings when considering the question as to how your conception of the invention in issue should be embodied, and you sta-

ted that you were unable to produce any such drawings. Now state whether or not you have made further search for such drawings and what you found, if anything?

A. On my cross examination by counsel for Mr. Casler, I stated that I had accidently found a drawing without date, but bearing internal evidence that led me to the conclusion that it must have been made prior to January 1, 1895, yet now that I have reflected upon the matter more fully, I am inclined to think it possible that the drawing may have been made somewhat later. I have no hesitation in stating that on April the 8th, or thereabout, 1895, an application for a patent from me was filed in Washington, and that said application was filed, according to my recollection, some considerable while after the appliance it related to had been constructed. The appliance included elliptical gear wheels and I find on the sheet now before me. which contains a drawing indicating the leading features of the apparatus involved in the present interference, some statements as to elliptical gears. My inference is that all the writing, as well as the drawing on this sheet, must have been put upon it at a time when I was considering the advisability of using elliptical gears. I have no other means than I have indicated of even approximating the date when this drawing was made.

2757

Counsel for Latham offers the sheet of paper in evidence, and it is marked, "Latham Exhibit No. 14, Dec. 10, 1897, J. A. S., Com'r."

Mr. Marble: The offering and receipt of the paper referred to is objected to as incompetent and irrelevant, it not appearing by the answer of the witness that said paper

has any relation to the subject matter of this interference, or could have had any relation to it by any possibility in view of the testimony of the witness given in the case. Further, it is not shown by the witness's testimony who made the sketch on this piece of paper, nor in whose handwriting the words and figures thereon appearing is.

Same objections by Mr. Armat.

2759

Q286. State whether or not you have made a careful search among your papers for drawings relating to this invention which you have testified to having made?

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to because the attention of the witness was called on his first direct examination to the subject of this question and such subject was then exhausted and counsel for Latham has no right to recall the witness to testify on the subject about which he was first inquired of.

2760

A. Presuming that by the expression "this invention" you mean the invention involved in the present interference I state that that question was asked me by counsel for Mr. Casler in my cross examination and that I answered it then as I answer it now that I have repeatedly made such careful search.

Q287. In whose handwriting is the matter on Latham Exhibit No. 14?

A. In my own handwriting, all of it, words, figures and drawings except the endorsement made by the Commissioner.

Q288. I now call your attention to a machine and its stand, which has been introduced and marked Latham Exhibit No. 12, and ask you to look at said exhibit and state what it is, if you know and when you first saw it?

Mr. Marble: The question is objected to because it calls for incompetent and immaterial testimony.

Same objection by Mr. Armat.

A. I have looked at it carefully and I recognize it as the machine originally constructed under my general direction for photographing and projecting pictures of movement, and as the machine after the pattern of which substantially was subsequently constructed the machine from which the drawings were made that accompanied my application filed in the Patent Office at Washington City on June the 1st, 1896.

Q289. When was the machine Exhibit No. 12 finished as it now stands and where?

Mr. Marble: Same objection.

A. As I think I have already stated, when referring to this machine before it was recovered from the parties into whose hands it had fallen after it left my possession, to the best of my recollection and belief it was finished sometime in the month of January, 1895, substantially and it now appears. It was finished in the shop of myself and sons in the Scott Building at 35 Frankfort Street, New York City.

XQ290. You have referred often in your testimony to the "first machine." Please state what relation the machine Exhibit No. 12 bears to the "first machine."

2762

Same objection by Mr. Marble. Same objection by Mr. Armat.

A. Whenever in my testimony I have used the expression "first machine" my reference was to the machine now marked Latham Exhibit No. 12.

Q291. Who were the mechanics that did the work in building the machine Latham Exhibit No. 12, and also state under whose supervision the work was done?

2765

Same objection by Mr. Marble. Same objection by Mr. Armat.

A. It was built mainly by Eugene Lauste, but my recollection is that E. W. Kleinert assisted him toward the last. The work was done under the direct supervision of my son, Otway Latham.

Q292. Do you know the present whereabouts of the mechanic, Eugene Lauste?

Mr. Marble: Same objection Mr. Armat: Same objection.

2766

A. I do not.

Q293. Do you know the present whereabouts of the mechanic E. W. Kleinert?

> Mr. Marble: Same objection. Mr. Armat: Same objections.

A. My information is that he is in Waterbury, Connecticut.

Cross-examination by Mr. Marble (without waiving his objections):

XQ294. It already appears in the record that you filed an application for a patent on December.

28, 1895. Now it appears that you filed one on April 8, 1895. How many applications for patents did you file before June 1, 1896?

A. I cannot remember.

XQ295. Did you file more than had been referred to in the testimony here?

A. That is just the thing that I am unable to remember.

XQ296. Do you mean to be understood that the sketch and paper and writing and figures which was offered in evidence and marked Latham Exhibit 14, is one of the sketches you made in reference to the invention here in controversy?

A. I mean to be understood as making an inference as to the time when that drawing was made from the circumstance that upon the paper, and obviously written near about the time when the drawing was made, is mention of an elliptical gear wheel, nothing more.

XQ297. It is very difficult to determine facts from inferences. Do you or do you not mean to be understood in your testimony that this paper marked Latham Exhibit No. 14 was made by you and the sketch put thereon, the writing and other figures put thereon, during the time that you were considering the invention here in controversy?

A. I mean to be understood no otherwise and to no other extent than I have indicated.

XQ298. You have indicated nothing. What I want you to do is to say something. I want to know how you mean to be understood, and I want to know whether you mean to be understood that this Exhibit No. 14, the sketch, the writing and figures thereon were made by you while you were considering the invention here in controversy?

A. I wish to be understood as having presented

2768

2771

a paper containing a drawing and other things that may have been put upon the paper prior to the completion of the apparatus involved in this investigation and which yet may have been put upon the paper subsequently to the completion of that apparatus. I wish to be understood as declaring and as having repeatedly declared that it is impossible for me to state with any degree of certainty when the drawing was made, but I wish to be understood as saying and as having said that there is mention on the paper of an elliptical gear wheel. I wish further to be understood as saving now that I do not believe that since the construction of the apparatus involved in this interference I have ever concerned myself in such a way about an elliptical gear wheel as to make it probable that I would write upon a sheet the things I now find written upon the sheet containing the drawing and which I do believe were put upon the paper on or about the time the drawing was put there. It is utterly impossible for me to be more specific in this connection; I could not honestly be so. It is for the Department in Washington to determine whether or not the drawing is a thing of any weight one way or the other in this investigation.

2772

XQ299. You are the only person on earth or whoever was on earth who can tell the Department at Washington facts upon which it can determine whether this paper is worth anything or not, and have any place in this case. The paper does not speak for itself: Now what makes you think this sketch and these figures were made after January 1, 1895, as stated in your answer to Q285?

A. I stated in that answer that it may have been made somewhat subsequently to January 1, 1895, and I have also stated that it may possibly have been made at a date even so late as one subsequent to the date of the completion of the apparatus involved in this interference. It is simply because I am not certain about the date myself that I have mentioned the writing touching an elliptical gear wheel together with a mention of my best recollection as to the time since when it is not probable, in my own estimation, that there has been an inducement to me to make such notes touching the elliptical gear wheel, as a circumstance that might possibly be taken as an indication when the drawing was notes.

XQ300. What are the words, figures or ear marks on this paper marked Latham Exhibit No. 14 which lead you to think that the sketch thereon, words and figures thereon, were made after January 1, 1895, and possibly after the machine marked Latham Exhibit No. 12, or some other machine

was made and completed?

A. There are on the paper no words, figures, ear marks or other indications to lead me to such a belief. I only stated that as I could not remember when the drawing and writing were put upon the paper, they might possibly have been put there after January 1, 1895. The "words, figures and ear marks" all lead me to the conclusion that the drawing was made prior to January 1, 1895, but not so strongly to that belief as to justify me in declaring it to be my belief positively.

XQ301. Where do you find on this paper anything which leads you to say in your answer to Q299, "It is simply because I am not certain about the date myself that I have mentioned the writing touching an elliptical gear wheel"?

A. I find it in a statement in words and figures of what would be the action of a driving ellipse,

2774

by which words "driving ellipse," I meant an elliptical gear wheel and I do not believe that I can recall any circumstance going to show that I felt any interest in such statements as to the action of a driving ellipse, subsequently to the completion of the apparatus involved in this interference that is, not the kind of interest that would have induced me to put upon paper such a statement as appears upon this paper, the Latham Exhibit No. 14.

2777

XQ302. What was the nature of your alleged invention in your application filed April 8 or thereabout, 1895, that it should employ elliptical gear wheels as you stated in answer to Q285?

A. So far as I know that application is still pending, and as others than myself have an interest in it, and as the department—that is the Patent Office Department in Washington City—is in possession of the papers and can at any time refer to them for light in the decision of this interference, I do not think that I ought to be required to describe the apparatus.

2778

XQ303. I haven't asked you to describe the apparatus. You have brought a paper here which has been marked Latham Exhibit No. 14. You have testified that on or about April 8, 1895, you filed an application which included elliptical gear wheels. Now, I want to know what the nature of that invention was. You needn't describe any feature of it, but you brought this paper here marked Latham Exhibit 14 and you say that it has on it what you understand to be elliptical gear wheels. Now I ask you again to state what was the nature of the invention described, illustrated and claimed in your application filed on or about April 8, 1895?

A. For the reasons I have already given I must decline to disclose the nature of that apparatus.

Mr. Marble: The attention of the Commissioner of Patents is called by counsel for Casler to the recalcitrancy of this witness, and his unwillingness to answer fair questions after he has disclosed fully the subject upon which the question is predicated and that too, of his own accord.

2780

Adjourned to December 11, 1897, at 11 A. M.

New York, December 11, 1897.

Met pursuant to adjournment. Present—Parties as before.

Continuation of the Cross-examination of Woodville Latham by Mr. Marble:

XQ304. Can you now state positively to what Latham's Exhibit No. 14 relates?

2781

A. I can make no addition to statements already made except to declare that the drawing on the said exhibit was intended to represent either my conception of some of the principal features of the apparatus for which application was filed June 1, 1896, or else a representation of some of the features of that apparatus after it had been constructed. I would be able to say distinctly whether it was one or the other if I could fix positively in my own mind the time when the drawing was made.

XQ305. Did this Exhibit 14 form a part of a communication from you to somebody else?

A. Whether or not the drawing of Exhibit 14 was ever shown by me to anybody else, I am unable to say, but I do say that, prior to the construction of the apparatus involved in this interference the general construction indicated by the drawing aforesaid was frequently spoken of by me to my sons and to Mr. Dickson, as I have already stated heretofore substantially.

2783

XQ306. Can you tell what the words and figures were put on said exhibit for?

A. I cannot, sir. If what is on the exhibit, put there by me, was put there prior to the beginning of the construction of the apparatus, it is likely that this was done with the view of enabling me to communicate my ideas to others. If it was made after the construction of the machine, I am unable to guess why it was made.

XQ307. Did this paper marked Latham Exhibit 14 once form a part of a larger sheet of paper?

A. Not so far as I know, or have any reason to believe.

2784

XQ308. In direct question three your attention was called to the issue of this interference and you were asked if you ever devised the invention defined in said issue and you answered "An invention of that description was devised by me and I first conceived of the invention in a general way in July or August, 1894." What do you mean by the words "in a general way" in that answer?

A. I mean that at that time I had not made up my mind positively as to just what means I should employ in accomplishing the objects which I had satisfied myself must be accomplished in order to make such apparatus effective and that I had not made up my mind as to just how the different parts of the appliance should be connected together, so as to make them co-operative.

XQ309. When did you then conceive of the means which you would employ and make up your mind how the different parts of the appliance should be connected together so as to make them co-operative?

A. I will answer the last part of your question Questions touching the connection of the several leading parts of the apparatus together so that they would work in co-operation were left almost exclusively to the mechanic. I think I have already stated that the chief difficulty, if not the only one, that presented itself to me touching the machinery as distinguished from appliances for securing light was the difficulty of determining which one of a large number of appliances for producing intermittent movement might best be adopted. I think I have also testified as to the circumstances under which for something like two months, namely, the months of November and desired, and how, therefore, it was not until after by my sons to construct such apparatus as they December, 1894, Mr. Dickson had been employed they had reason to believe that Mr. Dickson would not succeed that I got their permission to employ the broken gear which appears substantially in Exhibit No. 12. I have already testified that that broken gear, or one similar to it, was purchased by me of the Boston Gear Works early in January, 1895, and I have also testified, or have certainly meant to do so, that not until about the time of the purchase of that gear had I resolved upon any special appliance for producing the intermittent movement. From the very beginning-that is, from

2786

July or August, 1894—it was my purpose to use two sprocket wheels geared together so as to revolve at the same rate, one of them on one side of the optical axis and one of them on the other. I had also determined to employ between one of these sprocket wheels and the optical axis an appliance for moving the film intermittently across the optical axis. Of course I knew it would be necessary to keep the film flat—that is, not wrinkled—at the optical axis, and I had made up my mind at the beginning as to the appliance that I should employ for that purpose. In my estimation these were the essential features of the apparatus.

2789

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as irresponsive.

XQ310. In your answer to direct question 288, which called your attention to Latham Exhibit No. 12 and in which you were asked to state what it is and if you knew when you first saw it, you answered in part as follows: "I have looked at it carefully, and I recognize it as the machine originally constructed under my general direction." What do you mean by use of the words "general direction"?

2790

A. That is an expression, it seems to me, the meaning of which is perfectly obvious, and I do not know how I could express myself generally in any better way. If the question is made more definite I will endeavor to answer it.

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as irresponsive and the question is repeated.

XQ311. (XQ310 repeated.)
A. I make the same answer.

XQ312. Do you decline to answer the question further?

A. The answer to that question is found in what I have already said.

Mr. Marble: The attention of the Commissioner of Patents is again called to the recalcitrancy of this witness in refusing to state what he means by a phrase used in his own answer.

XQ313. What general directions, if any, did you give to the person or persons who constructed Latham Exhibit No. 12?

A. At this distance it is utterly impossible for me to recall them.

XQ314. Do you mean to be understood that you cannot remember any of the instructions or directions which you gave for the building of this apparatus marked Latham Exhibit No. 12?

A. I mean to say that it is utterly impossible for me to recall at this date any special general direction given by me touching the construction of the apparatus, for the reason that the construction occurred nearly three years ago.

XQ315. I think you have already stated, but I would like to have you state in this connection again who the persons were that attended to the actual construction of Latham Exhibit No. 12?

A. I have already stated that the mechanical work was done by Eugene Lauste, assisted, possibly, by E. W. Kleinert toward the last, and that Otway Latham superintended and directed this work.

XQ316. In your answer to XQ309, in which you were asked: "When did you then conceive of the means which you would employ, and make up

2792

your mind how the different parts of the appliance should be connected together so as to make them co-operative," you stated among other things "Questions touching the connections of the several leading parts of the apparatus together, so that they would work in co-operation, were left almost exclusively to the mechanic." To what mechanic do you refer in this answer?

A. When I made that answer I had in mind the first mechanic we employed, namely, Eugene Lauste. After, however, I had employed Mr. Kleinert, some such things were left to his determination, and I was considerably annoyed by complaints from each of these mechanics about the inefficiency of the other.

XQ317. Well, when they had got the apparatus constructed and arranged according to their notions, did you approve of the construction and arrangement?

A. I have not declared in any part of my testimony that the apparatus ever was "constructed and arranged" according to their notion.

XQ318. Did you approve of the construction and arrangement of the apparatus marked Latham Exhibit No. 12 after you had had placed in it what is termed the Geneva stop?

A. I approved of it as a whole—that is as a thing that would accomplish its purpose, but there were details of construction, just the very things that I have declared to have been left to the judgment of the mechanics, that I did not approve of, and I said to Mr. Lauste that I thought some of the means he had employed for connecting together the different shafts were clumsy and unworkmanlike.

Cross-examination waived by Mr. Armat.

2795

Mr. Armat: I desire to make the same objection to the witness's answers in my own behalf that Mr. Marble has made.

Mr. Marble: In view of the testimony given by this witness this morning I object to such testimony as contradictory to the statements contained in his preliminary statement in this case, to wit: to clauses marked (a), (b) and (d).

Recess till 2 p. m.

2798

After recess.

WOODVILLE LATHAM.

Signed before me

John A. Shields, U. S. Commissioner, S. D. of N. Y. Adjourned to December 13, 1897, at 11 a. m.

2800

NOTICE OF TAKING TESTIMONY 1N REBUTTAL.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

WOODVILLE LATHAM

VS.

HERMAN CASLER

VS.

THOMAS ARMAT.

Apparatus for Projecting on a Screen Pictures of Moving Objects.

Interference No. 18,461.

2801

Mr. Julian C. Dowell,
Attorney for Thomas Armat,
Loan & Trust Building,
Washington, D. C.

Sir.—Please take notice that I shall proceed to take testimony in rebuttal in the above entitled interference on behalf of Woodville Latham, at the Vanderbilt Building, Room No. 1111, No. 132 Nassau Street, City of New York, N. Y., before Miss C. E. Davidson, Notary Public, or other proper officer, beginning Saturday, March 11th, 1899, at 10: 30 o'clock a. m.

2802

The names of the witnesses to be examined and their addresses or residences are as follows: Woodville Latham, Grey Latham and Otway Latham, all of the City of New York, N. Y., and E. E. Kleinert, of Waterbury, Ct.

The examination will be continued from day to day, without further notice.

You are invited to attend and cross-examine.

J. E. M. BOWEN, Attorney for Woodville Latham.

Dated March 9th, 1899.

Service accepted this 10th day of March, 1899.

JULIAN C. DOWELL,
Attorney for Armat.

NOTICE OF TAKING TESTIMONY IN REBUTTAL.

2803

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

WOODVILLE LATHAM

VS.

HERMAN CASLER

VS.

THOMAS ARMAT.

Apparatus for Projecting on a Screen Pictures of Moving Objects.

Interference No. 18,461.

2804

Messrs. E. M. Marble & Sons, Attorneys for Herman Casler, St. Paul Building, New York, N. Y.

Sirs.—Please take notice that I shall proceed to take testimony in rebuttal in the above entitled interference on behalf of Woodville Latham, at the Vanderbilt Building, Room No. 1111, No. 132 Nassau Street, City of New York, N. Y., before Miss C. E. Davidson, Notary Public, or other proper officer, beginning Saturday, March 11th, 1899, at 10: 30 o'clock a. m.

The names of the witnesses to be examined and their addresses or residences are as follows: Woodville Latham, Grey Latham and Otway Latham, all of the City of New York, N. Y., and E. E. Kleinert, of Waterbury, Ct.

The examination will be continued from day to day, without further notice.

You are invited to attend and cross-examine.

J. E. M. BOWEN, Attorney for Woodville Latham.

Dated March 9th, 1899.

Service accepted this 10th day of March, 1899.

E. M. MARBLE & SONS, Attorneys for Herman Casler.

In the Matter

of

The interference between the applications of Woodville Latham, filed June 1st, 1896, Herman Casler, filed February 26th, 1896, and Thomas Armat, filed February 19th, 1896.

Before the Commissioner of Patents.

Interference No. 18,461.

2807

Subject: Apparatus for Projecting on a Screen, Pictures of Moving Objects.

Depositions of witnesses examined on behalf of Woodville Latham, in rebuttal, pursuant to the annexed notices, before C. E. Davidson, Notary Public, at the Vanderbilt Building (Room No. 1111), 132 Nassau Street, in the City of New York, N. Y., on Saturday, the 11th day of March, 1899.

2808

Present—Mr. J. E. M. Bowen, on behalf of Wood-ville Latham.

Mr. E. M. MARBLE, on behalf of Herman Casler.

Mr. Bowen: As Mr. Dowell, the attorney for Armat, is unable to be present this morning and cannot attend until Monday, I wish to reserve on the record his right of objection and cross-examination when he attends on Monday.

WOODVILLE LATHAM, being first duly sworn, doth depose and say in answer to interrogatories propounded to him by J. E. M. Bowen, his counsel, as follows:

- Q1. You are a party to this interference and have heretofore testified in the case, have you not?
 - A. I am, and have.
- Q2. You heard the testimony of Eugene Lauste who was examined in this case on behalf of Casler and have since read said testimony?

A. I heard portions of his testimony as he gave it, paying no particular attention to it, and had no clear notion of what it was until yesterday when I read a copy of it carefully.

Q3. As Lauste's testimony referred particularly to you in his relations with you, you will please state whether from your knowledge of the facts, he testified to the truth, when he states that the invention, the subject of this interference, was devised by him and was not explained to him by you when you employed him as a workman?

Mr. Marble: Question is objected to as 2811 leading and indefinite.

A. His testimony touching these matters is most absurdly false, and was known by him to be false when he gave it. There is internal evidence to show conclusively that he came upon the witness stand for a purpose that had been explained to him and he was so over-zealous to carry out that purpose that he lied when there was no possibility that his lies could benefit his employers.

Mr. Marble: Answer objected to as irresponsive and yague.

Q4. You have heretofore testified in this case that Lauste never showed you any sketches embodying the features of the invention of this interference before the machine (Latham's Exhibit No. 12) was completed. Since Lauste has testified to the contrary, please state your present recollection on the subject?

A. My present recollection and my confient belief are that he not only never showed me such

sketches, but that he never made them.

Q5. If you have not heretofore answered the question, please now say, briefly, for what purpose you employed Lauste in 1894?

A. Solely for the purpose of doing as a mechanic the things he might be directed to do. recommended to my sons and myself by Mr. W. K. L. Dickson, not as an optician, not as a physiologist, but simply and solely as a mechanic whom he had known for a considerable time, and whom he believed to be capable of doing any nice mechanical work that we might require at his hands.

Q6. When Lauste entered your employ did you explain to him fully what you wished to have him 2814 do, and also explain to him the invention that he was to embody in a machine?

> Mr. Marble: Question objected to as leading and not rebutting testimony, as it already appears in the witness' direct testimony how Mr. Lauste came to be employed by the witness and his sons and how he was set to work.

A. I did not. I informed him that he would receive his directions from my son Otway Latham.

It was impossible at that time for me or Mr. Dickson, or either of my sons, to explain to him the invention that he was to embody in the machine, for the reason that no one of us at that time had anything but the most general notion of what such a machine ought to embody.

Q7. That was in September, 1894, so Lauste testifies, is that so?

Mr. Marble: Question is objected to as leading and incorrectly stating the testimony of Mr. Lauste.

2816

A. That is my recollection. If it be deemed necessary I can by referring to memoranda, give the day on which I first began to pay for his services.

Q8. Lauste has testified that Otway Latham had no control over him and simply stood around and watched him, what have you to say as to that?

A. That his statement was intentionally false; that at the time when I employed him I said to him that he was to be in all things under Otway Latham's orders, and as a matter of fact from the beginning to the end of his employment by me and my sons he obeyed my son. Otway Latham, in the minutest particulars, so far as the construction of the machine is concerned. From the beginning to the end of his employment by myself and sons there was absolutely nothing left to his determination except mere mechanical details.

Q9. Do you know whether Lauste could make working drawings and did you ever ask him to make any such drawings of any machine? I use the word "working" in the sense in which it is employed by mechanics and machinists.

A. I never asked him to make working drawings and never knew or heard of his doing so. It is the practice of some machinists to make such drawings and to conform their work to the drawings. Mr. Lauste's practice was to make no drawings as a guide to his work and the only drawings of the machines which I have known of his making or have ever heard of his making were drawings made after the machines were completed. It is true that on some occasions when he was endeavoring to explain to me how he would carry out my wishes and when he had found that I could not understand his verbal explanation he would assist his speech by the use of his pencil.

2819

Q10. In Lauste's answer to question 18, he states "now Mr. Latham told me he would not come many times to the shop, but would leave me alone to work at the machine," what have you to say as to that?

A. That my telling him that I would not often come to the shop was in connection with my statement to him that he would receive his instructions from Otway Latham.

2820

Q11. In the same answer Lauste states "Mr. Latham gave me \$20,000 shares for the idea of the machine." What have you to say as to that?

A. That it is unqualifiedly false. That in the beginning he agreed to work for us for eighteen dollars a week; that he seemed so anxious to carry out our wishes, and seemed such a faithful worker, that I voluntarily, or rather at the suggestion of one of my sons, Gray Latham, increased his pay to twenty-one dollars. After the machine had been completed, and my sons and I, and others who were interested with us, concluded to form a stock company for exploiting it, again at the suggestion

of Gray Latham, I consented that of the stock belonging to himself, his brother and myself, 200 shares of \$100 each, par value, should be given to Lauste. When I gave it to him I made no impression upon his mind other than that it was a free gift from my two sons and myself. From a better knowledge of Mr. Lauste's character than we had had in the beginning we had come to fear that he might yield to any temptation that might be offered him and play us false by imparting to somebody else a knowledge of what we had done, and our notion was that we could bind him to us securely by making him a stockholder in the company.

Q12. Did Lauste ever have any ideas about picture projecting machines that he ever imparted to you?

Mr. Marble: Question objected to as leading.

A. Never. I remember that after we had completed one or more machines and were trying the effect of placing the shutter in one position and another, he said to me that the shutter ought to be made to "cut the picture, not the light," meaning that the shutter ought to be placed between the picture strip and the screen rather than between the picture strip and the lamp. We had tried both positions separately and together, and his remark probably was due to what he had observed in the experimentation we had made. The only thing that enables me to remember his remark is the peculiar form of it. In all my intercourse with him I never discovered that he had any knowledge whatever of the principles governing the projection of pictures. He claimed to be an elec2822

trician especially, and I never heard him make a claim to any knowledge of optics.

Q13. In answer to Question 20 Lauste says, referring to yourself, "I never got a sketch from him. I made the first one." What have you to say as to this?

A. That he certainly got from me as many sketches prior to the completion of the machine as I ever got from him, and probably many more, because just as it was difficult for him to make me understand his language without a rough sort of sketch to supplement it, so it was impossible for me at times to convey my thoughts to him without similar rough sketches.

Q14. During the taking of Lauste's testimony he made at the request of counsel for Casler a series of sketches which are numbered 1 to 4. Of the first sketch, No. 1, he said he made the original sketch, not produced, in October, 1894, and showed it to you at that time, what is your recollection as to that?

A. That his statement is untrue.

Q15. In answer to Question 34, Lauste says: "Yes, and he said, I trust you, you go ahead," in reply to the inquiry of counsel for Casler as to whether he, Lauste, told you and Otway Latham what the different parts of the sketch alleged to have been made in October, 1894, represented and how it would operate, what have you to say as to this?

A. That his statement has not one syllable of truth to justify it, so far as it relates to me.

Q16. Lauste testifies that in December, 1894, he made a second sketch and that he showed the sketch to you; what is your recollection as to that?

2825

A. That his statement is untrue, if by sketch his meaning was a drawing of any machine prior to the construction of that machine. I do not now remember clearly whether in December, 1894, we had finished the construction of any operative machine, but I reiterate the statement heretofore made in this examination, that so far as I know and believe Lauste never did, prior to the completion of a machine, make anything in the way of a sketch, except rough sketches to assist his verbal utterances, such as I have already described.

Q17. In answer to Question 62, Lauste prepared

a sketch, at his examination, which was introduced in evidence and marked "Casler's Exhibit, Lauste Sketch No. 2"; the sketch thus made is alleged to be like the second sketch claimed to have been made by Lauste in December, 1894. answer to Question 51, he states that he does not know where the original second sketch is, but that after the machine was completed he made a new sketch and had a blue print made, and that Mr. Latham, meaning yourself, took the sketch away. Lauste further states, in answer to Question 54, that you took the third sketch from the bench, and when he asked you where it was he said you told him you took it home. You will observe that this third sketch is claimed to have been made after the machine was completed, and it is also claimed that a blue print was made of the sketch. Now I have gone into this matter with some detail in order to ask you whether it is your present recollection that any drawings were ever made by Lauste of a projecting machine that he had helped to construct for you, or whether any drawings were

made of the machine which has been introduced in this case as "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," and if so, 2828

state about when such drawings were made and the circumstances relating to the subject?

Mr. Marble: Question objected to as misleading and multifarious.

A. I do not recall any but three sets of drawings, and am unable to understand just what drawings are referred to by Lauste as Nos. 1, 2 and 3, because, as I understand his testimony, he declared that he had made four sets. A projecting machine, with elliptical gears, was made, and also one exactly like it, except that the gears were round. Which of them was first tried, and of which, after its construction, drawings were first made, I do not Both these first two sets of clearly remember. drawings were made for patent application purposes and one of the sets, if not both of them, were by me put into the hands of Mr. Edmond Congar Brown, attorney at law, with office in the Vanderbilt Building, New York City. Mr. Brown was at that time my patent attorney and he afterwards had made by a draftsman, whom I have never seen, and whose name I do not recall, such drawings based upon these as met the requirements of the Patent Office. Mr. Brown has never returned to me the drawings I put into his hands. Both those sets of drawings were made by my order after the construction of the machines they represented. The third set of drawings to which I have referred as within my knowledge, were of the machine marked "Latham's Exhibit No. 12." drawings were made by Lauste under my direction a long while after the machine they represented had been constructed and used. To the best of my reconection it was more than a year after the con-

2831

struction of the machine that the drawings were made. They were not made for patent application purposes but solely because I was afraid that the building in which the machine was kept for the most part might be destroyed by fire. When Lauste had completed these drawings he brought them to me in the shop and after I had looked at them casually either he or I laid them upon one of the tables. That afternoon when I returned to my quarters I took them with me. The next day Lauste asked me about them. I told him that I had taken them home and he said, that, as I had observed, one of the copies was a blue print and that he had made it in the hope that I would give it to him as a souvenir. I told him that I would give it to him with pleasure, but I forgot to do so, and the original drawing, the tracings and the blue print are now in my possession. After Lauste had testified as to these and other drawings the request was made by attorneys for Casler that I would produce them. I stated to my attorney that I then believed that no such drawings were in my possession. Several circumstances caused me to make the mistake, one was that the purposes for which the 2835 drawings had been made were no longer and had not been for a considerable while matters of any interest to me, another was that my understanding at the time when Lauste gave his testimony was that he referred to working drawings or sketches made by him prior to the construction of the machine to which they referred. My thought was that the attorneys on the one side and the other were simply trying to trace my conduct and that of Lauste up to the construction of the machines. and it seemed to me that no drawing made of machines after their construction could have any

sort of bearing on the question by whom those machines were devised and made. A third circumstance was that my dwelling room was a small one, that it was utterly impossible for me to keep my papers and books and clothing in any orderly way; that I repeatedly moved from one such small room to another and that when I was searching for such sketches as I supposed I had been called on for, I failed to find the drawings which I subsequently learned were the ones I was expected to produce. Later, by accident, I fell upon them and immediately put them into the hands of my attorney.

2837

Mr. Marble: Answer objected to as irresponsive and largely volunteered.

Recess until 2:30.

2:30 P. M.

Q18. At whose request did you renew your search for sketches or drawings, such as Lauste claimed that he made?

2838

A. My recollection is that it was at the suggestion of my attorney.

Q19. And did he not urge you to continue the search?

A. Yes, I think he did. I remember that he said to me that a consulting attorney in this case had said to him that it was a great misfortune to me that I had not been able to recover those drawings.

Q20. Lauste made at his examination a fourth sketch which he claimed was similar to a sketch that he made before he commenced the construction of the machine "Latham Exhibit No. 12," and that sketch was introduced as "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 4." The original sketch,

which Lauste claims he made, is referred to in answer to Question 70, where he states: "I made the drawing in two hours, and I started the pattern immediately, the same day. In answer to Question 123 Lauste states that he showed this sketch to you, and in answer to Question 122 he states that he made it in November or the first of December, 1894. What is your recollection as to all of this?

A. That there is not one syllable of truth in it, so far as I know and believe.

Q21. Was any sketch or drawing, showing a complete machine embodying the elements of Latham's Exhibit No. 12, exhibited to you by anybody before the completion of that machine in the winter of 1894 and 1895?

A. No, sir.

Q22. Was there a drawing or sketch made of that machine, and from that machine, after its completion, by any one upon your instructions, and if so, by whom?

Mr. Marble: Objected to as leading.

A. I have already stated that such a drawing was made by Lauste under my order a considerable while after the completion of the machine; that drawing I now have in my hands. It is the only drawing of the machine that was ever made by anybody, so far as I am aware. The drawing itself, together with testimony given by me, with proofs touching the time of the adoption of the Geneva stop or Maltese cross, as Lauste calls it, shows conclusively that the drawing could not have been made as early as December, 1894. The elaborateness of the drawing is clear indication that it could not have been made in two hours by a sick man sitting upon his couch.

2840

Q23. How many sheets of paper is the drawing to which you refer, made upon?

A. Upon two sheets of brown paper, upon one of which is stuck a small piece containing the representation of a motor.

> Mr. Bowen: The drawing referred to in the last answer is introduced in evidence and is marked "Latham Exhibit, First Drawing of Complete Machine." C. E. D., Notary Public, March 11th, 1899.

> Mr. Marble: The offering and receipt of the drawing just mentioned and marked "Latham's Exhibit, First Drawing of Complete Machine," are objected to as not rebutting testimony and incompetent.

Q24. Who made the drawings just introduced in evidence.

A. The order for them was given by me to Lauste, and from Lauste I received them when they were finished. I have, however, a vague impression that he was assisted in making them by another workman whom I was then employing.

Mr. Marble: Answer objected to as irresponsive and vague.

Q25. Can you now state about when the said drawings were made by Lauste?

A. From the fall of 1894, till the fall of 1895, our shop was in Frankfort Street. In the fall of '95, we moved to more commodious quarters at 101 Beekman Street, previously to going to Beekman Street, we had no facilities and Lauste had none, so far as I know and believe, for making drawings and tracings such as I have just referred to. Imme-

2843

diately after going to Beekman street, I purchased a fine drawing table and other appliances for the use of the draftsman, and my belief is, that these drawings and tracings were made some considerable while after our removal into the Beekman street shop. Lauste never lived in the Beekman street building; he did live in one of the rooms of the shop in Frankfort street, and it was in this latter place that he had a spell of sickness of short duration, and it was in this latter place that such parts of the machine, "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," as were not made by outside parties, Frederick Pierce and others, were made, and it was here also that the parts of the machine were assembled and that the machine was first used.

2846

Q26. You have stated that the drawings, "Latham Exhibit First Drawing of Complete Machine" were made from the machine "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," how do you know that to be so?

A. Because, as I have already stated, I directed Lauste to make for me such drawings after the machine had been completed; because these are the drawings that he gave to me in obedience to that order, and because on comparing the drawings with the machine as it then appeared before me, I saw that they were a correct representation of it, certainly in the main. My recollection is, that there never was a motor fastened to the top of the machine, and that his representing it as being there was intended only as a suggestion that that would be a convenient place to put it. As a matter of fact, so far as I remember, the motors with which we ran our machines were always fixed to the floor. The machine was so small that a motor of sufficient size to drive it could scarcely have found lodgment on it. My recollection is, that the motors we com-

monly employed were about the size of the machine itself, perhaps larger, and the proportion represented by Lauste's drawing—

At this moment I discover that what at a hasty glance I took for the representation of a motor is not one. I have requested counsel for Casler to allow me to expunge the portion of my answer relating to the motor and the privilege has been denied me. The discovery of my mistake was made by myself, and I scarcely think that attorney for Casler would have observed it, if he had been looking at the drawings himself.

2849

Counsel for Casler says that he thinks the witness has made a great many mistakes in his testimony to-day. They are of that character as are not so readily demonstrable as this one, and therefore he objected to the witness striking out the statement he has made which militated quite thoroughly against his knowledge of this drawing, Latham's Exhibit First Drawing of Complete Machine, and when and under what circumstances it was made.

2850

Q27. Now state whether you had the drawings referred to in the last answer in your hands or were looking at them when giving your answer, and also state what the device is at the top of the machine which you spoke of as a motor?

A. I neither was looking at the drawings nor did I have them in my hands at the time. Prior to a few moments ago, I had not seen these drawings for months; certainly had not looked at them. I find on observing them more carefully that the device I referred to as a motor is a kind of indicator of the

speed of the driving shaft of the machine, and governor thereof.

Q28. Previous to the time that these drawings "Latham Exhibit, First Drawing of Complete Machine" were made by Lauste upon your orders, had anyone ever shown you or brought to your attention a drawing or sketch showing similar mechanism?

A. Never.

Q29. You have stated, that tracings were made from these drawings by Lauste and blue prints from the tracings, have you such tracings and blue prints present, if so, please produce them, and explain briefly the circumstances under which they were made, and by whose instructions and consent?

2852

Mr. Marble: Question is objected to because it does not call for rebutting testimony and therefore incompetent.

Mr. Bowen: These Exhibit drawings and the tracings and blue prints are produced in response to the demand of Counsel for Casler, if they could be found. They are not now produced for the purpose of establishing a date of invention but simply to place before the Patent Office the facts connected with their preparation. According to the testimony in the case, the machine, which these drawings and tracings and blue prints represent was constructed long before it is claimed these present exhibits were made.

Counsel for Casler thanks Counsel for Latham for the little speech he has just made because it sustains the objections he has made, but if the only object of producing these drawings is to satisfy the request or

demand that was made for them when Mr. Lauste was here and could have referred to them in his testimony, notice should have been given that these drawings would be produced for that purpose and an opportunity offered to have Mr. Lauste here so that he might give his testimony in relation to these particular drawings. It is very evident that the advice of consulting counsel has had great influence upon the Counsel of Record for Latham, and upon that of Latham himself.

The attention of the Commissioner of Patents is particularly called to the statement of Counsel for Latham, in relation to the production of these drawings at this time.

Mr. Bowen: The statement just made by Counsel for Casler implies that Counsel of Record for Latham may have advised against the production of these drawings at the time they were called for. On the contrary, Counsel for Latham used every means in his power to trace these drawings or to locate them if they existed, urging upon Professor Latham to search everywhere among his effects. Upon consulting with Mr. Abbot as to the progress of this case (Mr. Abbott being the attorney for E. & H. T. Anthony & Company) he concurred with me in the opinion that a further effort should be made to find any drawings heretofore made relating to this case. I am entirely satisfied that the drawings were discovered under the circumstances related by The production of the draw the witness. ings now is, in my opinion-inasmuch as

2855

they do not affect the question of priority of invention—entirely proper rebutting testimony to meet the assertions under oath of the witness Lauste.

Counsel for Casler states that counsel for Latham is entirely mistaken about the inference which he refers to, of any bad faith on his part in relation to these drawings, but he is advised to hang his drawings either on one horn of the dilemma or the other, either that he puts in these drawings as rebutting testimony or that he puts them in because of the demand of counsel for Casler for them. Both reasons have been given in the record this afternoon.

2858

A. The building in Frankfort Street and the building in Beekman Street heretofore referred to, as places where our shops were successively, are both buildings, a fire in which would be difficult of extinction. The circumstance that Mr. Lauste had made no working drawings of the machine, no sketches from which the machine could be reproduced, coupled with the circumstance that a very long time had been taken for constructing the machine and coupled also with the circumstance that our money supply was rapidly diminishing, made me extremely fearful that the machine, when in one or the other of the buildings, might some night be burnt up and that we would not have the means with which to construct another one in the slow way in which the first had been constructed. These things led me to direct Lauste to make such drawings as would enable himself or other mechanics to duplicate the machine in case of its destruction. It was a considerable while after I had directed him

to make the drawings before he did so. There was always work for him to do in the shop and his repeated excuse to me for not having the drawings ready was that he had not had the time to make them.

I greatly preferred working drawings and when I directed him to make the drawings my expectation was that they would be working drawings. If I had imagined that he would make nothing better that what he did make I should have saved myself months of anxiety by photographing the machine. It was only after he gave me these drawings that I learned of his inability to make working drawings. The tracings were made from the pencil drawings and the blue prints from the tracing. All three were given to me by Lauste at the same time. His name appears on the tracing and blue print, and in his testimony he mentioned that fact as a reason why the device should be considered his own, but no such claim was ever made by him in my hearing and I do not think that prior to the beginning of this investigation he ever had a thought of making such a claim. I hand you two sheets of tracing and two sheets of blue print.

2862

2861

Counsel for Latham offers in evidence the tracings referred to by the witness, which are marked "Latham's Exhibit, Tracings of First Drawing of Complete Machine," C. E. D. Notary Public, March 11th, 1899.

Counsel for Latham, also offers in evidence, the blue prints referred to by the witness, which are marked "Latham's Exhibit, Blue Prints," C. E. D. Notary Public, March 11th, 1899.

Mr. Marble: The offering and receipt of the tracing exhibit and blue print exhibit are objected to as not rebutting testimony and therefore incompetent.

Q30. Please state whether or not the tracings and blue print just offered in evidence and the original drawings from which the tracings were made were the only drawings, tracings and blue prints made by Lauste for you of the machine "Latham's Machine Exhibit No. 12," or that showed the invention, the subject matter of this interference whether with his name upon them or otherwise?

2864

A. I answer unhesitatingly that these are the only drawings, tracings, and blue prints of the machine, Latham Exhibit No. 12, or any part of it that were ever received by me from Lauste, and that they are the only ones that have ever been made, so far as I know and believe, either before the construction of the machine or afterwards. The tracings and blue prints are the only drawings with Lauste's name upon them that I have ever laid eyes on and I am absolutely certain that these are what Lauste referred to in his testimony as drawings, tracings and blue prints as having been made by him prior to the construction of the machine.

2865

Q31. In answer to Question 73 Lauste states that the taking machine, "Latham Exhibit No. 12," was built to take pictures "forty a second." What have you to say concerning this opinion expressed by Lauste?

A. That it shows utter ignorance of the principles of an effective photographic machine. The more rapidly a machine runs the greater is the number of pictures per second that can be photographed but for limitations as to light and the sensitiveness of the film. As a matter of fact, I have

never had any reason to believe that the machine could take forty good pictures per second, constructed just as it is. Lauste had heard Mr. Dickson say some nonsensical thing about forty pictures per second being necessary to produce upon the eye the impression of continuous movement, and he was merely echoing that.

Adjourned to Monday, March 13th, at 11 o'clock a. m.

2867

New York, March 13th, 11 o'clock a. m.

Present-Counsel as before.

Q32. Lauste says in answer to Question 99, that the machine, "Latham's Exhibit No. 12" was not used as a projecting machine, except to make one experiment with it and it did not work, what have you to say as to that?

> Mr. Marble: Question objected to because it does not call for rebutting testimony.

2868

A. That there was never any doubt in my mind or that of my sons, of the possibility of using it as a projecting machine. It was necessary, in our opinion, that the machine to be employed for photographing pictures should be easily portable. To make it so, it was necessary to have small sprocket wheels. The only earthly reason why the machine with the small sprocket wheels was not precisely suitable for projection was that we had discovered that the film in process of development changed length. The sprockets on the wheels we employed, whether those wheels were large or small, were, if

I remember correctly, 3/16 of an inch apart, that is, from centre of base of sprocket to centre of base of sprocket, and the perforations in the strip from centre to centre, were 3/16 of an inch apart. With a small sprocket wheel, having sprockets of a given height the distance between the points of the sprockets bears a larger ratio to the distance between the bases of the sprockets than would be the case with large sprocket wheels and supposing that a developed positive picture strip should be of different length from the corresponding undeveloped negative strip, the sprockets of a larger sprocket wheel would be more apt to enter the perforations than would be the sprockets of a smaller sprocket wheel. For films of short length it is possible to have the developed positive of the same length as that of the undeveloped negative. With such a positive strip Latham's Exhibit No. 12, will project pictures as well as it can photograph them. With developed positives different in length from the undeveloped negatives produced by the machine, projection can be made in all cases where the variation between the lengths of the undeveloped negative and the developed positive is not unduly great. I understood perfectly well that by enlarging the sprocket wheels I could meet all the conditions of projection. The reason why I abandoned the idea of using Latham's Exhibit No. 12, as a projecting machine was, that I believed the strain that machine would give to the film would shorten its life too much, and meanwhile, I had found out how to project the pictures of a continuously running film.

2870

2871

Mr. Marble: Answer is objected to as irresponsible and as a useless waste of time. Q33. State whether or not the machine, Latham Exhibit No. 12, in the condition in which it was sent to the Patent Office is capable of projecting pictures of objects in motion?

Mr. Marble: Same objection, and also leading.

A. It is. It is only necessary to add a projecting lens and a suitable light.

Q34. At the time that Kleinert came to work 2873 for you at the end of December, 1894, as he has a stified, how far completed was the invention which is embodied in Latham's Exhibit No. 12?

A. It was completed except that I had not been able to acquaint myself with an intermittent device that seemed to me satisfactory. There was never any thought in my mind of inventing such a device but my effort was by searching such books and catalogues of machinery as were within my reach to discover something that might seem to me suitable.

Q35. Now, in order to again put the matter on record, and in answer to the testimony of Lauste that he is the inventor of the organization, embodied in Latham's Exhibit No. 12, which you state was completed at the time Kleinert came to work for you at the end of December, 1894, except the striking upon a suitable stop motion device, I wish to ask according to whose ideas and under whose instruction was the invention of that exhibit embodied in the form in which it is shown therein?

Mr. Marble: Question is objected to because it is not rebutting testimony and as leading, and further because the witness

Kleinert has testified that he decided what device should be put in the machine to give it an intermittent movement, and that he "ordered the gearings I thought would answer the purpose," and the witness is not permitted to contradict, under the pretense of rebuttal the testimony of a witness sworn in his own behalf.

A. Both Kleinert and Lauste were in my employ. Both of them knew that I was making the search to which I have referred. Both of them had promised to help me in such search. I went to the standing together looking at a copy of a catalogue shop one morning and found Lauste and Kleinert of the Boston Gear Works. One or the other of them, I forget which, at this moment, called me, directed my attention to several cuts in that catalogue representing broken gear and asked me if I thought that one of them would answer my purpose. I replied that I did think so, and then and there directed Kleinert to write to the Boston Gear Works for one of these sets of broken gear. Not only so far as concerns the machine as it embodies this broken gear just referred to, or one altogether similar to it in principle, but in so far as concerns all the other parts of the machine made or determined upon prior to the adoption of the special form of broken gear, with the exception of mere mechanical details, the device was my own and it is without one shadow of truth or honesty that Lauste claimed the contrary when he was on the witness stand. I desire to add most emphatically that Latham's Exhibit No. 12 is the embodiment, with the exception of mere mechanical details of my own ideas.

2876

Q36. In answer to question 113 Lauste testified that you did not suggest anything concerning the making of the machine Latham's Exhibit No. 12; is that true?

A. It is most ignominiously false.

Q37. Lauste also testifies that he supervised the making of the parts of that machine which were made at Pearce's shop. To what extent did he and under whose direction?

2879

A. No essential part of the machine was made by Mr. Lauste. The gear wheels, the sprocket wheels, the worm and all the things that go to make up the machine, except the support, and, perhaps, the shafts, were made by Pearce, under orders from me delivered to Pearce by my son Otway Latham. In all cases, as soon as my son, after having consulted with me, had made up his mind as to just such sprocket wheels, etc., as were needed, Lauste being unable to make the working drawings was sent to Pearce to explain what we That was the sum total of what, in his testimony, he called supervision. At no time, while he was in my employ, had he authority from me to adopt or reject any essential constituent of the machine, and he was never bold enough to attempt to violate my orders, or those of my son, in the smallest particular.

2880

Q38. When the broken gear stop motion was brought to your attention what did you think of it as a mechanical means for effecting the stop motion action in the machine which you had conceived?

Mr. Marble: Question objected to because it does not call for rebutting testimony, and is therefore incompetent. A. It seemed to me that it would answer my purpose, provided I could overcome any difficulty arising from possible back lash. I was sure that I could obviate this difficulty if it should present itself by a suitable compression of the film between the guides at the optical axis.

Q39. Lauste testifies in answer to questions 124 and 125 that after he had made the sketch like "Casler's Exhibit Lauste Sketch No. 4," which I understand is similar to the exhibit, "Latham's Exhibit, First Drawing of Complete Machine," he showed such sketch to you and explained it, and that you told him to go ahead; what do you say as to that statement?

2882

Mr. Marble: Question objected to as misleading, not in rebuttal, and therefore incompetent.

A. The first sketch or drawing he ever made or showed to me was that represented by Latham's Exhibit First Drawing of Complete Machine. Neither when he gave me that drawing in obedience to an order previously received from me to prepare it for me, nor at any other time did I ever tell him to go ahead, and to use his own judgment as to any matter connected with the machine except mere mechanical details.

2883

Q40. If you have not already answered the question, please state now, whether the exhibit drawing, "Latham's Exhibit First Drawing of Complete Machine" was made before or after the completion of the machine, "Latham's Exhibit No. 12?"

A. It was made long after the completion of that machine.

Q41. Lauste has testified that Kleinert was taken into your employ to sweep the shop and wait on him, and that he did no work and slept all day in his (Lauste's) bed, is all of that true?

A. Kleinert was not employed for any such purpose as Lauste states. He knew then and does know now a great deal more about the principles of a projecting machine than Lauste did or does. Whether or not Kleinert slept on Lauste's bed or anywhere else during working hours I do not know. He certainly impressed me while he was in my employ as an intelligent, faithful and active worker.

2885

Mr. Marble: Question objected to as an incorrect statement of Lauste's testimony.

Recess until 2 o'clock.

2 p. m.

2886

Q42. Has it ever been your custom when in a position where you were responsible for the outcome of a mechanical or other undertaking to place yourself in the hands of a mechanic or other person and say to him you do as you think best, and to leave with such person the expenditure of money without restraint, on experimental work?

Mr. Marble: Question objected to because it does not call for rebutting testimony, is speculative, and incompetent for any purposes connected with this case.

A. Never has it been my custom to do so, and I have never in any instance done so.

Q43. You remember the machine introduced as an exhibit in this case, on behalf of Casler and marked "Casler's Exhibit First Machine," and I think you heard or have read the testimony that was offered relating to such machine, now please state, from your knowledge of the construction of that machine, and of the subject of projecting pictures of moving objects, whether said machine can be used for projecting such pictures?

A. I am quite sure that it cannot be used so as to project pictures correctly; that in its present condition, or rather in the condition in which it was when I saw it, it cannot be used to project pictures even imperfectly; that by the use of one or more mirrors properly placed it might be made to project such picture strips as are usually at hand for the purpose, but that the projections would be successively further and further away from their proper place on the screen.

Q44. The machine in question is a smooth roller machine and has no sprockets. State whether there is any means embodied in the machine to serve as a regulator for the film, and if such means is not essential to successful projection?

A. Assuming that by the words "means to serve as a regulator for the film" you intend means for varying the feed of the strip relatively to the rate at which the pauses occur or *vice versa*, my recollection is that the machine as I saw it included no such means, and I declare that such means are absolutely necessary to ensure correct projection with a smooth roller machine.

Q45. State whether or not such means is necessary where the film is carried by sprocket wheels as is the case in "Latham's Exhibit No. 12"?

A. No, it is not, for the reason that a sprocket

2888

wheel in a revolution carries forward a given number of pictures, whereas a pair of smooth rollers in a revolution carry forward a given number of inches of the length of the picture strip.

Q46. Can you give any other reason why you are of the opinion that the machine "Casler's Exhibit First Machine" as constructed cannot be used to project pictures without alteration in the organization or additions thereto?

A. My recollection is that the machine is so constructed that there could be no one straight line, connecting the light, the picture and the screen, and I have also the impression that the machine as I saw it, is constructed in a way to forbid the use of a mirror so as to obviate that difficulty.

Q47. Have you ever had granted to you any patent for apparatus for photographing and projecting pictures of objects in motion, if so, state whether you recognize the copy of patent now handed you as such patent?

Mr. Marble: Question objected to as not calling for rebuttal testimony and incompetent.

A. The sheets which you have handed to me are a copy of a patent granted me on March 1st, 1898.

Mr. Marble: Answer objected to as irresponsive.

Mr. Bowen: The copy of patent referred to is offered in evidence and is marked "Latham's Exhibit, Patent 600, 113, C. E. D., N-P., March 13th, 1899.

Counsel for Casler objects to the offering and receipt of the copy of the patent re-

2891

ferred to, because it is not rebutting testimony, and is therefore immaterial, irrelevant and incompetent.

Mr. Bowen gives notice on the record that he will refer at the hearing of this case to the file jacket and contents of the patent just offered in evidence.

Direct-examination closed.

2894

Cross-examination by Mr. Marble, without waiving objections:

XQ48. Did you commence to pay Mr. Lauste at the rate of \$18 per week from the time he first called upon you?

A. My recollection is that I stated in my direct examination that I am uncertain on that point, but that by referring to memoranda in my possession I would be able to testify definitely. My recollection is that I paid him \$18 at first, as I know positively he agreed at first to take \$18, and that I increased it to \$21 after I had found that he was in the habit of working for me on Sundays.

2895

XQ49. Have you that memoranda with you?

A. I have not, sir.

XQ50. Will you obtain this memoranda so that you can state definitely at the next session of taking this testimony, when you did commence to pay him?

A. I will endeavor to do so.

XQ51. Mr. Lauste worked night and day all the time he was in your employ, did he not?

A. He did not.

XQ52. When did he not do so?

A. It is impossible for me to say, inasmuch as I was not always with him.

XQ53. Was the fact that you learned that he worked Sundays the only reason why you increased his wages from \$18 to \$21 per week?

A. Yes, I should say with full recollection of the general statement I made in my direct examinaation, that it was the only reason. It was that especially that made me think he was unselfishly devoted to my interests. He did not work on Sunday at my request and did not work every Sunday. When he did so my son Otway Latham was usually present with him.

XQ54. How do you know your son Otway Latham was with him on the Sundays when he worked?

A. From report made to me by my son, under whose direction the Sunday work was done.

XQ55. In your answer to Question 11, referring to Mr. Lauste, you said "that in the beginning he agreed to work for us for \$18 a week; that he seemed so anxious to carry out our wishes and seemed such a faithful worker that I voluntarily, or rather at the suggestion of one of my sons, Gray Latham, increased his pay to \$21." Is that statement correct?

A. It is.

XQ56. You were present, were you not, all the time when Mr. Eugene Lauste was giving his testimony in this case?

A. My recollection is that I was not, though I may have been present all the time.

XQ57. Can you say you were not present all the time when Mr. Lauste was giving his testimony in this case?

2897

A. I cannot speak more definitely than I have spoken already.

XQ58. You heard his testimony, did you not, in relation to the several sketches which he testified he made and explained to you before the building of any machine or machines?

A. My memory is not clear as to whether I heard him or not.

XQ59. You saw and examined, did you not, the sketches which he prepared while on the witness stand, as reproductions of the sketches which he made and showed to you before the building of any machine and which he said you took and carried away?

A. I have an indistinct recollection that I saw some sketches that Lauste made, or was reported to have made while he was under examination as a witness, but I have not the slightest recollection of what they were. The only impression that I have retained in regard to the matter is, that such sketches as he presented embodied nothing more than his recollection of what the machines were

XQ60. Is your memory defective?

after completion.

A. Not, I think, when the thing to be remembered seems to me to be a matter of consequence.

XQ61. It is a matter of consequence, is it not, whether Lauste devised the machine, marked "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," and made a sketch of it, and showed it to you before the machine was made, as he testified he did?

A. I will answer your question, if you will divide it into its three parts.

XQ62. I don't think the question has any three parts, and I therefore repeat it.

A. I therefore choose to answer it in my own

2900

way. It is a matter of consequence to me and to all honest people whether or not Lauste devised the machine in question, and as to this matter my memory is clear and never could fail. It is a matter of consequence whether or not Lauste made a sketch of that machine before it was constructed, and upon that matter my memory is perfectly clear. It is a matter of consequence whether he showed to me a sketch never made, and which could not have been made by him or anybody else, and upon that matter my memory is as clear as the noonday sun.

2903

XQ63. Why do you say that a sketch such as Mr. Lauste testified he made and showed to you before the machine was made or constructed could not have been made?

A. Because the idea of it, that is, the image of it, was not in his mind, and was not in the mind of anybody but myself and son.

XQ64. Which son do you refer to?

A. Otway Latham.

XQ65. The two sheets of drawings, which have been marked "Latham's Exhibit, First Drawing of Complete Machine," as I understand your testimony, were made sometime during the year 1905, after you had moved to Beekman Street, is that correct?

A. I stand by the testimony I gave as to that matter.

XQ66. Is that all the answer that you can give to that question?

A. It is the only answer I propose to give.

XQ67. Can you say whether or not the two sheets of drawings marked "Latham's Exhibit, First Drawing of Complete Machine," were made before your drawings forming a part of your ap-

plication involving this interference were made?

A. I can. "Latham's Exhibit, First Drawing of Complete Machine," were made prior to the patent application drawings.

XQ68. Are you sure of that?

A. Absolutely.

XQ69. Did you have them in your possession when the drawings forming a part of your application involved in this interference were made?

A. My impression is that I did have them in my possession. I am strengthened in that belief by the circumstance that I never had any objection to giving to Lauste the blue prints, and I think that if there had been any occasion for the use of these drawings in preparing the patent application drawings, I would have taken them to the shop, and then would have been reminded of my promise to Lauste touching the blue prints. My impression is that another workman that I had, assisted in making the drawings upon which the patent application drawings were based.

XQ70. Did you promise to give to Mr. Lauste blue prints which were made from the tracings of the drawing now marked "Latham's Exhibit, First Drawing of Complete Machine"?

A. I did.

XQ71. When you gave your testimony in chief in this case you did not remember, did you, that there were any such drawings in existence as the drawing marked "Latham's Exhibit, First Drawing of Complete Machine," and the tracings and blue prints which you have now produced and have marked in this case?

A. I neither remembered nor endeavoued to recollect any such drawings, for the reason that it seemed to me that drawings made after the com-

2906

pletion of the machine were of no sort of consequence in the investigation that was being held.

XQ72. You did not mention nor refer to these drawings, did you, in all of your testimony given in chief although you were on the witness stand several days?

A. Probably not, just as I would scarcely refer to your photograph if I were endeavoring to give to somebody an account of your origin.

XQ73. In your answer to XQ141, in your testimony in chief, among other things you said, "I do not remember to have seen at any time a complete drawing of the machine, as a whole, until the drawings for the patent office at Washington. D. C., had been made," do you now adhere to that statement?

A. I do not, for the reason that my memory has since been refreshed by finding drawings "Latham's Exhibit, First Drawing of Complete Machine."

XQ74. In the same answer to XQ141, referring to your answer to direct question 8, you say, "my statement ought to have been that so far as I knew, the drawings referred to, were left in the shop that had belonged to me and my sons. Prior to the time when the shop passed out of our control, I frequently saw such drawings in the possession of Eugene Lauste, the mechanic who made them," and in your answer to direct question 8 which is referred to in cross question 141, you call these drawings working drawings, now is it or is it not a fact that Mr. Lauste made working drawings from which to build the machine which has been marked "Latham's Exhibit No. 12" and showed to you such working drawings?

Mr. Bowen: The question is objected to as not a complete statement of what the

2909

witness did say in answer to XQ141, inasmuch as the question omits the witness's explanation given in the latter part of his answer as to the kind of drawings that Lauste made when building the machine.

A. It is not possible that Mr. Lauste ever made while he was in my employ and showed to me any drawings that could justly be called working drawings. There were frequently, prior to the time when Lauste left my employ working drawings made, but my recollection is that they were always made by a man by the name of Wiet, also in my employ, even when they applied to work that Lauste was to do. I have no recollection of ever having seen as made by Lauste any drawings except such rough sketches as would serve to assist his own talk and have never had any reason to believe that he used such rough sketches to assist his work in the way in which mechanics use working drawings.

XQ75. You mean to have the Commissioner of Patents understand, do you not, that Mr. Lauste, while in the employ of yourself and sons, was under the immediate direction of Otway Latham?

A. I do.

XQ76. In XQ126 of the examination of Mr. Otway Latham, he was inquired of as follows: "Did any one but Mr. Lauste, as far as you know, make any mechanical drawings, as you call them, just before or during the construction of Latham Exhibit No. 12?

A. I should like to state that in my foregoing answers, instead of the word "mechanical" I would like to use "working." As well as I can remember, Lauste made all of the working drawings. Can

2912

you say that Mr. Lauste did not make all of the working drawings, in view of the testimony of your son, and that there were no working drawings?

A. I can, notwithstanding the testimony of my son, say as I have already repeatedly said, that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, Lauste never made a working drawing while he was in my employ. I have no doubt that my son, when he used the expression working drawing, had his mind on nothing more than the rough sketches so often referred to by me. He is not a mechanic, and is not familiar with the meanings of words as mechanics employ them.

2915

XQ77. Did you consider Mr. Lauste a mechanic? A. I did consider him a mechanic of a certain sort.

XQ78. Did you consider that it was the proper thing to put a man who was a mechanic under the direction and control of another man who was not a mechanic?

A. Perfectly so, under the circumstances. son was over him as my representative. my money or money for which I was personally responsible that was being expended.

2916

XQ79. If you were not present, and your son did not know anything about mechanics, what direction or instructions could Mr. Lauste receive from either of you?

A. The supposition you make is a false one, inasmuch I have not said that my son did not know anything about mechanics. My son knew, for instance, what a sprocket wheel was, and when we had agreed to have one made he simply directed Lauste, inasmuch as Lauste could not make it himself, to go to Pearce and to explain to Pearce the dimensions of the sprocket wheel required.

as it was with a sprocket wheel so it was with every other part of the machine. Lauste was either directed by my son to make it, or, if for any reason he did not care to deliver the order to Pearce directly, he sent Lauste to Pearce's shop.

XQ80. You have testified that your son Otway was not a mechanic and your son Otway has testified on the subject himself. When I tried to get him to state something about the sketches which you claim to have made in July and August of 1894 the question 115 being repeated, he said, "I do not remember sketches shown to me by my father in the months of July and August of 1894, as I was unfamiliar with mechanical matters at that time. It was only when I began active work in the experimenting and the construction of this apparatus that I paid any particular attention to drawings or sketches that were shown to me or that such things made any impression upon my mind"; do you think that a man who made such an answer as that was a man to put over a skilled mechanic like Mr. Lauste?

A. If I had not thought so I would not have done so; and I should like to add to this answer that so far are Mr. Lauste's present employers from putting a higher estimate upon his abilities than I did, that from the time he left me and went to them, to the time when he was brought from Europe here as a witness, he had been employed by them to do only the kind of work that I had had done by boys after twenty-four hours' instruction, that is, they had employed him in the capacity of what he calls "operator," and that is, that he was employed simply to run their machines, all of which information was given to me by Mr. Lauste himself.

XQ81. Mr. Lauste has testified that he went into your employ, or rather went to work in the

2918

shop on Franklin Street on October 4th, 1894, do you know whether that is so or not?

A. I do not.

XQ82. On your direct-examination in the taking of rebutting testimony you were asked by your counsel in question 6, as follows: "When Lauste entered your employ did you explain to him fully what you wished to have him do and also explain to him the invention he was to embody in the machine," and you answered as follows: "I did not. I informed him that he would receive his directions from my son Otway Latham. It was impossible at that time for me or Mr. Dickson, or either of my sons, to explain to him the invention that he was to embody in the machine for the reason that no one of us at that time had anything but the most general notion of what such a machine ought to embody." Is your answer to that question correct?

A. Perfectly so.

XQ83. You have testified that as to several matters, to which your attention has been directed by your counsel, Eugene Lauste, while on the witness stand in this case, testified falsely. Why did you not have him arrested for perjury, if your allegations are correct?

A. It did not occur to me to do so, and I am by no means sure that I would have done so if it had occurred to me.

XQ84. Is that all the answer you have to give to that question?

A. The question is as to why I did not have Mr. Lauste arrested for perjury. I think I answered that question fully when I said that it did not occur to me. If counsel desires a fuller answer than that, and desires to have me say why

2921

in all probability it did not occur to me, and will put his question in form, I will endeavor to answer it.

XQ85. You heard, as I remember, all or nearly all of the testimony of Mr. Lauste as it was given commencing on April 29th, 1898, and continuing until a late hour on the 30th of said month, do you mean to be understood that it did not occur to you then that Mr. Lauste, as you now say and swear, testified falsely on the points which you now accuse him of testifying falsely on?

2924

A. I feel indignant at this inquiry, because I am inquired of, as to whether I have said what counsel knows perfectly well I have not intimated. He asked me why I did not have Lauste arrested for perjury, I replied that it had not occurred to me to do so, and now he asks me a question that he hopes I will incautiously answer in a way to indicate that I did not at that time know perfectly well that Mr. Lauste was lying.

XQ86. Have you not testified yesterday and today that some of the testimony that Mr. Lauste gave was false and even ignominiously false?

A. I refer you to the record for information.

XQ87. Is that all the answer you have to make to my last question?

A. That is all the answer that I have to make.

Adjourned until to-morrow, Tuesday, March 14th, 1899, at 11 o'clock.

New York, March 14th, 1899, 11 A. M.

Present-Counsel as before.

XQ88. Were you able to find the data from which you can tell when Mr. Lauste entered your employ?

2927

A. I think so.

XQ89. Please state when it was that he entered your employ?

A. The memoranda in my possession lead me to the conclusion that his employment began, that is, that he began to be paid for his services on November 2nd, 1894. My recollection is that for some days previously he went about the city with my son, Otway Latham, in search of a suitable workshop and to find where might be obtained the tools and machinery that we needed. The very first payment of salary that I ever made to him was made on November 24th, 1894. It was a payment of \$21 for seven days' work.

XQ90. Did you remember when the rent commenced to run on the Frankfort Street shop which you occupied?

A. The memoranda in my possession lead me to the conclusion that the rent of that shop began November 1st, 1894.

XQ91. Independent of the memoranda which you have found, can you tell when Mr. Lauste entered your employ?

2928

A. I cannot.

XQ92. What is the nature of the memoranda you refer to?

A. My cash account, a list of expenditures given to me sometime, possibly in November or December, 1894, though not dated, that had been made by my son and the receipts in my possession for the rent of the Frankfort Street shop. I would like to add that when I said that the list of expenditures given me by my son was not dated, I meant that I had not observed a date on it. Some of the expenditures he had made were dated and some not.

XQ93. Have you not that memoranda with you?

A. No, sir, and I would not produce it if I had. XQ94. Why wouldn't you produce it, if you had it here?

A. I am glad of an opportunity to answer that question. Casler and his attorney started out in the hope that they would be able to prove that his antedated mine. They quickly that that would be impossible and brought here from Europe a Frenchman by the name of Lauste, who had worked for the Casler Company ever since his connection with me was severed, a man whom they own, to endeavor to prove by him that while he was a mechanic work. ing for me he and not I had invented a machine which I had sworn that I had invented. In other words, I am thoroughly satisfied that this witness was suborned by them in order to prove perjury in me. The whole thing seems to me so ungracious. so ungenteel, so vulgar, so absurd, that I do not choose in such a contest to present papers that other people than myself have an interest in having kept in my hands.

Mr. Marble: The answer is objected to as irresponsive and apparently venomous.

XQ95. Does the memoranda from which you have formed your conclusions give any other data in relation to Mr. Lauste than the payment to him of \$21 in November, 1894?

A. The list referred to as having been given to me by my son of expenditures that had been made by him includes mention of only two payments made by him to Lauste, one was a payment of \$21 made on the 11th of November, 1894, and there is a memorandum of my own to the effect that this payment was for the time up to and in-

2930

cluding November 8th, 1894. The other payment was made according to his memorandum, unless my memory fails me, on the 19th of November, 1894. This also was a payment of \$21, and my conclusion is, that after Lauste's first week's work for us we determined to add \$3.00 a week to the \$18.00 he had promised to work for. I should like also to say, that after leaving the witness stand vesterday afternoon I saw my son, Gray Latham, who told me that I must be mistaken in supposing that he had advised me to increase Lauste's salary from \$18 to \$21 a week, for the reason that he was in Boston at the time and could not have given me such advice. The probability therefore is, that the advice came from Otway Latham, rather than from Gray Latham.

2933

Mr. Marble: All of the last answer that refers to Gray Latham and what he says is objected to as irresponsive and useless.

XQ96. Is it a fact that during the months of November and December, 1894, that you were seek-2934 ing to have the arresting device suggested by Mr. Dickson applied to a machine for projecting pictures of moving objects upon a screen?

A. With a clear understanding of the meaning of the word "seeking," I reply most emphatically, no.

XQ97. In your answer to direct question ten of testimony in chief, the following occurs, "During the months of November and December, it was Mr. Dickson's habit to come over to the shop at 35 Frankfort Street, from his home in Orange, N. J., one night in every week professedly to direct Eugene Lauste, the one mechanic in my employ, in his work of carrying into practice the aforemen-

tioned idea of Mr. Dickson for intermittently arresting the movement of the film," is this statement in your answer to question referred to correct?

Mr. Bowen: Question is objected to as it is not at this time proper cross-examination, but as going into the examination of the witness when testimony in chief was taken. It has no relation whatever to the testimony taken in rebuttal.

2936

A. Perfectly so.

XQ98. Then it is a fact, is it, that as late as December, and by that I mean by the end of the month of December, 1894, you had not hit upon any device for arresting the movement of the film. and was trying to see if you could not find such device in the one suggested by Mr. Dickson?

Mr. Bowen: Same objection, and the attention of the Commissioner of Patents is called to the fact that this line of examination, besides not being proper cross-examination, is unnecessarily loading the record with matter that counsel has no right at this time to review under the guise of cross-examination.

2937

A. I have already testified fully upon this matter and stand by the statements I have heretofore made,

XQ99. Where have you fully testified in relation to this matter?

A. Search the record and you will see.

XQ100. Is that the best answer you can give to my question?

A. It is the only answer I propose to make in view of the objections just made by my counsel.

XQ101. Can you describe the construction of the machine which was introduced in testimony, marked "Casler's Exhibit First Machine."

A. I decline to answer that question, in view of the objection just made by my counsel.

2939

Mr. Bowen: I think the witness should answer the question last put, as it is evidently asked with a view of testing the witness's knowledge of the invention in dispute; that is his knowledge of the organization of the invention. The objection above placed on record does not include a question of this nature.

Mr. Marble: Answer objected to as irresponsive and question repeated.

A. I can, so far as the essential features are concerned.

XQ102. Describe it?

2940

A. It contains a pair of smooth feed rollers, for delivering the film towards the window. It contains on the opposite side of the window a pair of smooth feed rollers, one of which runs continu-Between these last-mentioned feed rollers the film passes so that when it is not clamped the second of the two rollers freely mounted on its shaft does not turn. The clamping arrangement worked, if I remember correctly, serving arrest crank and to intermittently. geared unalterably is the shaft of one or both of the feed rollers that serve to deliver the film to the window. the film is clamped the feed rollers last mentioned serve to make a loop on the side of the window they occupy, and when the film is unclamped the loop is taken up by the other pair of rollers that I have referred to.

XQ103. Is this the best answer you can give to the question last propounded to you?

A. That is a question extremely difficult to answer. A man never knows when he has expressed a thought whether or not he might find, if he were to try, a better expression of it. I am satisfied with my answer as I have given it.

XQ104. Do you know what the issue of this Interference covers?

A. I think so, sir.

XQ105. Please state what the issue of this Interference covers?

A. It covers the use of a picture strip, means for supporting and feeding it through the machine, means for arresting it at intervals at the optical axis, in a way such that the time of movement shall be less than the time of rest, and a device, called, I think, by others a "tension device," whose sole purpose is to hold the film flat at the window. It includes one more thing which I, for the moment, forgot, namely, means for creating slack, or a loop on one side of the window, that towards which the film is fed, while the film is arrested in its movement at the window.

XQ106. You were asked yesterday by your counsel in question 44, as follows: "The machine in question is a smooth roller machine, and has no sprocket. State whether there is any means embodied in the machine to serve as a regulator for the film, and if such means is not essential to successful projection?" This question refers to the machine introduced on behalf of Mr. Casler, and marked "Casler's Exhibit, First Machine." Does

2942

the issue of this Interference cover, as one of its elements, means to serve as a regulator for the film?

A. I do not know what you mean by means to "serve as a regulator for the film."

XQ107. In my question I am simply using the language of the question which was put to you by counsel, in substance. You answered that question yesterday, I mean Question 44, and I was surprised that you did, first being surprised at your counsel asking it; but I will quote the language in full referring to the Casler machine "State whether and see if you can answer it. there is any means embodied in the machine to serve as a regulator for the film, and if such means is not essential to successful projection?" Can you answer the question now?

Mr. Bowen: In view of the statements embodied in the foregoing question, I think it fair that I should state that the question asked the witness on his direct-examination had reference to the Casler machine, which as stated in the question, is a machine without sprockets but employing smooth rollers, and the inquiry was to ascertain whether the witness regarded such a machine as capable of projecting without some means of controlling the movement of the film.

Counsel for Casler says, that the remarks of counsel for Latham are wholly uncalled for, as the entire question was repeated to the witness in XQ106, and by so repeating it, the witness was fully advised of what was being referred to and in part of its construction. It is hardly to be presumed that the witness needs any coaching.

2945

A. The intimation made by counsel for Casler that I would vary my testimony at a suggestion made by my attorney or anybody else I repel most indignantly. The question 44 asked me yesterday by my counsel is a question that I answered only after assuming that he meant something else than just what he had said. I knew perfectly well what he referred to and I knew my assumption was a just one, and one that I had the liberty to make in that case, but I have no right to assume that Mr. Marble means anything but what he says, and I repeat that I do not know what he means by "means for regulating the film."

2948

XQ108. Do you mean to be understood that you do not understand Direct Question 44?

A. On the contrary, I have already stated that as coming from my own counsel, I understood its meaning perfectly, but I do not know that you mean by the words what he meant, and I do not believe it, because if you did you would ask me to answer the question under the same assumption that I made yesterday.

2949

XQ109. So that your mind might be fully prepared for the question, I asked you, in substance, if you understood the construction of the machine marked "Casler's Exhibit First Machine," and you said you understood, you thought, the essential features. I then asked you, if you understood the issue of this interference, and you stated that you did, and then I asked you in the natural order if the issue of this interference covered as one of its elements, means to serve as a regulator for the film, which is the pith of Direct Question 44. Now, I would like to have you state, if you can, whether the issue of this interference calls for any means to serve as a regulator for the film?

A. The issue of this interference covers a projecting machine. A machine in which between the smooth delivering feed rollers and the arresting device there is unalterable gearing, is, in my opinion, not a projecting machine. If you mean to ask me whether or not there is a specific mention in the interference issue of alterable gearing between the delivering rollers and the arresting device, I answer, no.

Recess.

2951

XQ110. Have you read the Issue of this Interference?

A. I have, not for some days, though.

XQ111. You know, do you not, that the Issue of this Interference does not cover an entire projecting machine, but simply one of the combinations in such a machine?

Mr. Bowen: Exception is taken to the question just propounded for the reason that the elements of the Issue of Interference undoubtedly comprise a complete apparatus for projecting pictures of moving objects. While the issue as defined may not include mere details such as are to be assumed present, it certainly includes sufficient for an operative machine. The issue itself if it comprised the only claim in a patent would be sufficient to support the patent, I think.

Counsel of Casler excepts to the so-called exception of counsel for Latham because it is unnecessary to inform this witness what the opinion of his counsel is in relation to the Issue of Interference. Counsel for Casler further says that the

combination of elements set forth in the Issue of Interference without other elements not therein named for projecting pictures upon a screen representing moving objects, and that while it may be true that a patent with a claim in the language of the Issue of Interference might be sustained if it was infringed like other claims which cover a part of a structure it would not be a sufficient claim standing alone to cover an entire structure or to cover a complete machine, as all of the machines, that is, the machines of the respective parties to this Interference fully demonstrates. Without other elements than those mentioned in the Issue of this Interference, no machine could be used for the projecting of pictures upon a screen.

Mr. Bowen: Further objection is taken to the question propounded on the ground that the witness is not an expert in patent matters nor is he to be assumed to be familiar with the Patent Law and the construction to be given to claims in patents. He has not been qualified as an expert in either of these respects.

Counsel for Casler calls the attention of the Commissioners of Patents to the exception and the objection of counsel for Latham and asks him to note that the reprehensible character of the exception and of the objection apparently given to aid the witness in forming an answer to the question.

A. While the question may have some special meaning that does not appear to me and while I know nothing of the matters just now discussed by

2954

my counsel and that of Casler, I do not hesitate to declare it as my belief that leaving out the words, "In a picture exhibiting apparatus for giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion," in the issue, a machine might include everything else mentioned in the issue and be yet not a machine capable of projecting correctly pictures of moving objects.

2957

2958

XQ112. It is a fact, is it not, that the combination of elements mentioned in the issue of the interference striking off the introductory words which you have stricken off in your last answer is a good combination of elements in a camera or in a projecting machine, and equally applicable in both, or in a machine which can be used as a camera or used as a projecting machine?

A. I don't like to adopt your word "good," but I would say that the combination you refer to is an effective one for a photographing machine but that it is not necessarily an effective one for a pro-

jecting machine.

XQ113. I have asked you two or three questions about the issue of this interference and the combination therein set forth for a purpose. I see that you understand the issue of the interference when you put your mind upon it. Now I do not think that you have answered XQ109, at least that part of the question which is important, and I will repeat the last clause of that question and ask you to answer it. "Now I would like to have you state, if you can, whether the issue of this interference calls for any means to serve as a regulator for the film?"

A. Before I attempt to answer that question, will you inform me whether or not I am to assume that by your expression "regulator for the film"

you mean a device for varying, while the machine is in operation, the feed of the film in the intervals of exposure, or varying the length of the interval of exposure without altering the feed?

XQ114. No. I do not mean any device. I have taken the language substantially from the direct question 44 asked by your counsel. I don't think my question or your counsel's question requires you to assume anything. It simply asks you to look at the issue and then state whether or not you find in the issue an element which is referred to as "means to serve as a regulator for the film?"

2960

A. Waiving any mention of the very great difference I see between the question asked by you and the question that was asked by my counsel and to which you refer, I have no hesitation in saying, that though I have just now read carefully the words of the issue of interference, I do not see therein specific mention of any sort of regulator for the film.

XQ115. You know, do you not, that the broken gear or Geneva stop which you obtained through Mr. Kleinert from the Boston Gear Works, was never put into your machine, called in this case "Latham's Exhibit No. 12"?

2961

A. I know it now, but I did not remember it when I was first called as a witness in this case; but I do know that another one precisely similar in principle, but of smaller size, was put into "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," and is in it now, unless it has been removed since the exhibit was sent from here to Washington.

XQ116. The stop movement, which you say is in the machine now, is just the opposite in construction, is it not, from the one that you obtained from the Boston Gear Works? Mr. Bowen: Question objected to as not proper cross-examination in rebuttal.

A. Not in one single respect opposite in principle, but differing, as I now think I remember, in the utterly unimportant circumstance, that in the device got from Boston the driver was within the driven wheel, whereas, in the one now in the machine the driver is on the outside of the driven wheel.

2963

XQ117. The stop movement which you got from Boston could not be used, could it, in Latham's Exhibit No. 12?

Mr. Bowen: Same objection.

A. It could not be used, for no other reason than the following: The supports for two such wheels, one of them outside of the other, must be different from the support of two such wheels when one of them is inside of the other, and the wheels got from Boston, certainly the larger one, was, if I remember, too large for the space occupied by the wheels now in "Latham's Exhibit No. 12."

2964

XQ118. Mr. Lauste not only advised this change in the stop movement which you have mentioned, but he went to Pearce's shop and stayed there until he had the stop movement made as it was finally put in the machine, is this not so?

A. I have not testified to any such thing.

XQ119. Is that all the answer you can make to that question?

A. Oh, no, I could make a great deal larger answer than that if I choose to do so.

XQ120. Why don't you answer the question then?

A. Because I have heretofore testified most fully as to every matter referred to in your question.

XQ121. I think you are mistaken, Professor, but if you wish to leave the matter there we leave it on other testimony?

A. I have testified that Lauste never went to Pearce's shop except under orders. I have testified that he did not invent the stop movement employed. I have testified that I was in search of a stop movement that might seem to be suitable for my purposes; I have testified that both Lauste and Kleinert had promised to assist me in such search; I have testified that when the two were standing together one morning in the shop, looking together at a copy of the Boston Gear Work's catalogue, I was asked by one of them whether a broken gear pictured in that catalogue, would, in my opinion, be the thing I wanted. I have testified that neither Kleinert nor Lauste, nor anybody but myself, determined the question, whether or not such broken gear should be used; I have testified that the broken gear first used was ordered from the Boston Gear Works, by Kleinert under my direction, and I now swear that neither Lauste nor anybody else had the right to command me in the matter, and that I paid for the broken gear, giving to Kleinert at the time when I directed him to write for it some \$5.00 as I remember, as a prepayment. From the beginning to the end of the conception and the construction of Latham's Exhibit No. 12, I have testified and do reiterate the testimony now that there is not one single essential feature in the machine that Lauste or anybody else but myself, can justly lay claim to having introduced into the machine. That being the case it does seem to me that I was not wrong when I stated

2966

just now that I had already testified to all the matters referred to in your question.

Mr. Marble: Answer objected to as uncalled for and volunteered.

XQ122. In your answer to XQ369, in your examination in chief, in which you were asked "When did you then conceive of the means which you would employ, and make up your mind how the different parts of the appliance should be connected together so as to make them co-operative," and you answered, "I will answer the last part of your question first. Questions touching the connection of the several leading parts of the apparatus together so that they would work in co-operation were left almost exclusively to the mechanic;" to what mechanic do you refer in your answer?

A. To the mechanic that happened to have in charge the work that was to be done. Sometimes that mechanic was Lauste, sometimes it was Kleinert.

XQ123. Can you tell any work which Mr. Kleinert did in the building of "Latham's Exhibit No. 12" in which he determined the "connections of the several leading parts of the apparatus together"?

A. That depends altogether upon what you mean by the connections between the parts. If you mean to inquire of me if Kleinert or Lauste or anybody else determined in a general way the relative positions that the several essential parts of the machine should occupy, then I say they did not, but if your inquiry is to mere mechanical details, I can recall to mind some of the things done by Lauste and some of the things done by

2969

Kleinert. All the sprocket wheels of the machine were made either by Kleinert or under his direction, I think. The arresting device was made by Pearce. These constitute the most essential features of the machine, if not the only ones, and some of the rest, possibly most of them, were made by Lauste. It is more than likely, though my memory is not clear on this point, that Kleinert made, or had made, the shafts that support the sprocket wheels.

XQ124. In your answer to direct question 34, you were understood by your counsel to say, as appears by his question 35, that Latham's Exhibit No. 12 was completed when Kleinert come to work for you, in December, 1894, except the striking upon a suitable stop motion device, did you intend to convey that meaning?

2972

Mr. Bowen: Question objected to because it does not place upon questions 34 and 35 a just or fair interpretation.

Counsel for Casler asks counsel for Latham to state why his question does not put upon direct questions 34 and 35, a just and fair interpretation.

2973

Mr. Bowen: Because in question 34 the expression is used "How far completed was the invention which is embodied in Latham's Exhibit No. 12." No reference is there made to the completion of the exhibit, but rather the invention embodied in the exhibit, and in question 35, the "organization embodied in Latham's Exhibit No. 12" is mentioned. The subject of "completed" in question 35, is the "organization." This is the reason for the objection.

Counsel for Casler calls attention of the Commissioner of Patents to this gross misininterpretation of question 35 according to its plain reading, as stated in the last remark of counsel for Latham. The language of the question is "Now in order to again put the matter on record, and in answer to the testimony of Lauste that he is the inventor of the organization, embodied in Latham's Exhibit No. 12, which you state was completed at the time Kleinert came to work for you at the end of December, 1894, except the striking upon a suitable stop motion device, I wish to ask according to whose ideas and under whose instruction was the invention of that exhibit embodied in the form in which it is shown therein." In connection with that question, I mean question 35, I call attention to question 34. "At the time that Kleinert came to work for you at the end of December, 1894, as he has testified, how far completed was the invention which is embodied in 'Latham's Exhibit No. 12' "? "A. It was complete except that I had not been able to acquaint myself with an intermittent device that seemed to me satisfactory. There was never any thought in my mind of inventing such a device, but my effort was by searching such books and catalogues of machinery as were within my reach to discover something that might seem to be suitable." It is respectfully submitted that the question 35 according to its proper construction shows that the counsel for Latham understood that Latham's Exhibit No. 12 was completed at

2975

the time Kleinert came to work for Mr. Latham, except the striking upon a suitable stop motion device.

Mr. Bowen: I stand upon the interpretation that I have placed upon my direct questions 34 and 35. I certainly knew what was in my mind when the questions were asked and I have explained the meaning of the questions only in reply to the request of counsel for Casler to do so. The Patent Office will decide for itself what the questions mean and the witness will answer for himself what his understanding of those questions was.

2978

A. I did not.

XQ125. You know, do you not, that considerable work was done on Latham's Exhibit No. 12, after Mr. Kleinert entered your employ?

A. I do.

XQ126. The parts of the machine had never been assembled when Kleinert came into your employ, had they?

A. I don't understand what you mean by the machine, that is, I don't understand whether you mean Latham's Exhibit No. 12 or whether you mean a machine embodying the features of Latham's Exhibit No. 12.

XQ127. I mean the machine marked "Latham's Exhibit No. 12"?

A. Then, I answer, that when Kleinert first came to me, not only were the parts of that machine not assembled, as I recollect, but most, if not all of them, were unmade.

XQ128. Mr. Kleinert, in his testimony, said he left the employment he had been in for your son Gray Latham "in December, shortly before

Christmas; the third Sunday before Christmas in December, 1894." In direct question 10 he was asked, "do you remember about what date you went to work at the shop 35 Frankfort Street as a machinist? A. I could not remember the exact date but it was before Christmas; it might have been on the 23rd day of December, 1894." Does this date about the 23rd of December, 1894, agree with your recollection as to the time when he entered your employment?

2981

A. I have an indistinct recollection in regard to the matter. My impression has been that it was not until after the Christmas holidays that he began to work regularly. I believe, however, that I paid him from the time that he left Boston. It may be that it was just before Christmas Day that he came, and that he commenced work within the Christmas week.

XQ129. After the completion of the machine or apparatus, marked "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," you offered to let another apply for a patent on the invention or inventions supposed to be embodied therein, did you not?

2982

A. I did not.

XQ130. Have you not testified in this case that you did?

A. I have not, but I did testify that I had offered that privilege to another, but it was a privilege relating to a totally different machine from Latham's Exhibit No. 12.

Re-direct Examination by Mr. Bowen:

RDQ131. Referring to your last answer, I think it well to put on the record, an answer to this question: State whether or not the offer to which

you refer was not made because there was some doubt in your mind as to whether that other invention was so far the result of your conception as to make it proper for you to apply for a patent for it, and that you did not intend to turn over, to another, even if you could have lawfully done so, the right to take a patent for an invention that you had actually devised?

A. Certainly, and I was only induced to make the application myself on the assurance given me by the person to whom this offer was made that it was right and proper that I should do so.

2984

Mr. Marble states that he forgot to ask the witness a question or two; therefore resumes the Cross-Examination.

XQ132. Mr. Lauste, as I remember, and as the record will show, made while he was on the witness stand four sketches or drawings numbered 1, 2, 3, and 4, and testified that the originals of those sketches were given to you. You have produced one of the drawings, which Mr. Lauste made, and also a tracing and blue print of the same. Where are the other drawings which Mr. Lauste said he gave you or you took to your home?

2985

Mr. Bowen: Question is objected to for the reason that it is immaterial and irrelevant. The sketch No. 4 which Lauste made while on the witness stand was asserted to be a sketch embodying the invention of this Interference. At the present examination, the witness has produced the drawings that he found, after a search, that embodies the invention of this Interference. He has not produced any other drawings irrelevant to this Issue and no testimony having reference to such other invention is competent or admissible in my opinion.

Counsel for Casler says that these drawings are important because if produced they would corroborate Mr. Lauste and would show or tend to show that he made the drawings after which the machines were made while in the employ of Mr. Latham and his sons, or of the Lambda Company, of the Eidoloscope, and for this reason he has made inquiry about them.

2987

A. I once more declare most positively that I never received from Lauste drawing that were made prior to the construction of the machine they were intended to represent. The first drawings made for me by Lauste were made from the machine to which reference was made just now as one that I had hesitated to apply for a patent upon. drawings were made by Lauste under my orders. When finished they were given to me and I handed them over to Mr. Edmond Congar Brown, attorney at law, already referred to in this investigation, and Mr. Brown got a draftsman to make from them, drawings to be sent to the Patent Office in Washington. These last were sent to Washington by Mr. Brown for me. He was at that time my Patent Attorney. My recollection is, that owing to some question raised by the Patent Office I concluded to make a little change in the drawings, and consequently in the application. It is more than likely that other drawings were made by Lauste differing from the first to the necessary extent. My recollection is not clear, but I think, that this alteration was made while yet Mr. Brown

was my attorney, and that the second set of drawings were put into his hands just as I had put the Afterwards Mr. Brown ceased to be my Patent Attorney, when Mr. Bowen became my counsel before the Patent Office. I never regarded the drawings that were put by me into Mr. Brown's hands as of any value after the patent drawings had been made, and I have never asked him to return them to me, and he has never done so, or offered to do so. The next occasion I had for drawings was the one I have already mentioned, namely, the circumstance that I feared that Latham's Exhibit No. 12, might by fire, or otherwise, be lost to me. The drawings that were made by Lauste, of that machine I have already submitted as an exhibit In the early winter, of 1896, the in this case. Lambda Company sold out to the Eidoloscope Company or to a company of gentlemen, who afterwards called themselves so, such interests in my machine as I had transferred to the Lambda Company, including "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," and the Eidoloscope Company requested me to apply for a patent on that machine, a thing that I had previously, for what seemed to me to be sufficient reasons, neglected to do. In the summer of 1895, I ordered Lauste and Eugene Wiet whom I had then employed-I would say in the summer or early fall-to make two machines like "Latham's Exhibit No. 12," except that the worm and gear in Latham's Exhibit No. 12, which I had found not to be durable, were to be replaced by beveled gears. When I came to make the application for a patent on this machine, the patent drawings were based on one of these last mentioned two machines, rather than on Latham's Exhibit No. 12. Raphael Netter, a well known draftsman of this

2990

city, prepared the patent drawings for me. I have copies of them, I believe, and my impression is, that Mr. Netter's drawings were made from the machine directly, and that Mr. Lauste never did make any drawings as a basis for this patent application.

XQ133. In your answer you have referred in your way to the drawings produced by Mr. Lauste, and marked 1, 2 and 3, and have said nothing about his No. 4 what have you to say about that?

A. I beg pardon, I have not said anything about Lauste's drawings, 1, 2 and 3, as I do not know what Lauste's drawings, 1, 2 and 3, were, but I have referred to drawings of Latham's Exhibit No. 12, and to drawings of another machine, that was certainly made for me by Lauste. I have referred to an altered drawing of a machine, only slightly different from the last one mentioned, that Lauste may possibly have made for me, and finally I have referred to a fourth set of drawings made by Mr. Netter which I do not believe Mr. Lauste ever had anything to do with. The drawings made by Mr. Netter differ from the drawings of Latham's Exhibit No. 12 in this, substantially, that in Latham's Exhibit No. 12 a worm and gear are employed whereas in the machine Mr. Netter made the drawing of the worm and gear are replaced by

XQ133. Do you deny that you had a drawing from Mr. Lauste corresponding to the reproduction he made while on the witness stand and which he numbered 4?

A. I deny most emphatically that I have or ever have had any drawings from Mr. Lauste other than the ones mentioned in my last answer. I deny most emphatically that I have ever seen or heard

2993

2994

beveled wheels.

of other drawings than these of the machine which is the subject of this investigation, other than such rough sketches as I have already mentioned as having been made by him occasionally to enable me to understand his speech.

XQ134. Will you obtain and produce the drawings you admit you had and put into the hands of your then attorney Edmond Congar Brown which were made by Mr. Lauste in order that they may be marked as exhibits in this case?

A. I shall be governed by the advice of my Counsel.

2996

Mr. Bowen: The drawings inquired about are of an invention different from the subject matter of this interference and they are drawings of an invention for which the witness has now pending at the Patent Office an application for a patent. If the drawings could be produced by the witness I should object to their being offered as an exhibit in this case as it would disclose to others an invention not yet patented and which the witness is justified in not disclosing while his application for a patent is pending. Moreover, the drawings inquired about have nothing to do with the invention of this controversy and are therefore immaterial as evidence in this case.

2997

Counsel for Casler in reply to the objection and speech by counsel for Latham states that Mr. Eugene Lauste said he made these drawings and let Mr. Latham take them or he did take them; he also swears that he communicated to Latham the al-

Latham, Interference Deposition.

leged invention therein and the invention illustrated in the drawings which have been produced by Mr. Latham and marked, "Latham's Exhibit, First Drawing of Complete Machine." Mr. Lauste has also made drawings or sketches as reproductions of the drawings, and we have a right to have these drawings produced to confirm Mr. Lauste in his testimony, inasmuch as they are in existence and within the control of the witness if he wishes to assert his rights, therefore we ask that they be produced.

2999

A. In view of the circumstances connected with these papers, to which reference has been made several times since the beginning of this investigation, I refuse to make any effort to recover the papers that I put into Mr. Brown's hands.

W. LATHAM.

Testimony in rebuttal closed.

Complainant's Exhibit N.

3001

COMPLAINANT'S EXHIBIT.

Colt Bills and Letter.

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES.

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Complainant,

VS.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE COMPANY OF AMERICA,
Defendant.

3002

BENJAMIN BARKER, Examiner.

JAS. B. COLT,

CHARLES GOODYEAR, JR.

J. B. COLT & CO.,

Manufacturers of Optical Lanterns, Lantern Slides, 3003

AND SPECIALTIES,

P. O. Box 2773.

16 Beekman Street, New York.

New York, Dec. 18th, 1894.

Prof. W. Latham,

c/o Hotel Bartholdi,

Madison Square, South,

New York City.

Dear Sir:

In accordance with our verbal understanding, we write to say that we propose to furnish you with five (5) projection lanterns, including electric

lamps condenser cells with combination of $4\frac{1}{2}$ and 5 in condensers, the $4\frac{1}{2}$ in lens to be mounted in springs, five (5) optical benches for same, with objective supports, and five (5) short focussed objectives, all as per sample that you have been using, for the sum of Five hundred (\$500.00) dollars, the receipt of Two hundred and fifty (\$250.00) dollars of which we hereby acknowledge, the balance to be paid on the delivery of the goods within thirty (30) days from December 17th.

Yours very truly,

3005

J. B. COLT & CO., C. G., Jr.

LATHAM EX. 6. J. A. S. COM'R DEC. 4, 1897. 3007

AMET
VS.
LATHAM
VS.
CASLER
VS.
ARMAT.

No. 16 Beekman Street,

P. O. Box 2773

3003

New York, Jany. 14/95.

Prof. Latham Bartholdi Hotel, City.

Bought of J. B. COLT & CO., Patentees and Manufacturers of

JAMES B. COLT.

CHARLES GOODYEAR, JR.

IMPROVED MAGIC LANTERN AND LANTERN SLIDES,
AND SPECIALTIES.

Agents for Baldwin design paper from Steel Plates and Evan's & Son's Eagle Claw Traps.

5 Cut Elec. Lant. Combin. cells 4½x5 lenses carbon holders for 5% carb. No bellows or front.

3009

5 Optical Benches.

5 Object supports for use on optical bench.

5 Special short object (focus), 500.

Expressage from Paris 2.95

Telegram to Paris 3.00 505.95

Less 250.00

\$255.95

Above goods are ready for delivery 296.

3010

3011

STATEMENT.

P. O. Box 2773. New York Feby. 1st/95 Prof. Latham

To J. B. COLT & CO. Dr.

\$255.95

J. B. Colt & Co., PAID Feb. 2 1895. Per A. Schmidt.

Complainant's Exhibit O.

3013

Amet vs. Latham vs. Casler vs. Armat.

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS Co., Complainant, vs.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE COMPANY OF AMERICA,

Defendant.

3014

BENJAMIN BARKER, Examiner.

COMPLAINANT'S EXHIBIT.

Clipping From Chicago Inter-Ocean.

EDISON IS NOT IN IT.

Kinetoscope Outclassed by Prof. Latham's Newest. 3015

Calls it Eidoloscope.

Reproduces Continuity of Action Accurately.

Adapted for Anything from a Change of Heart to a Prize Fight.

Professor Woodville Latham, late professor of chemistry in the University of West Virginia, after 3016

years of patient research and study, has perfected a machine which takes Edison's kinetoscope by the nape of the neck and ousts it into obscurity. Professor Latham calls his invention the eidoloscope, and its range of usefulness embraces anything from a lynching bee to a prize fight. In consonance with the popular clamor Professor Latham seeks, and successfully, to bring his invention before the public by way of the prize ring. Recently on the roof of the Madison Square Garden the professor, aided and abetted by Prize Fighters Griffo and Barnett, took in the full gamut of a four-round fight. You do not bend over and get a kink in your neck by looking through a contracted slot. You sit down in a darkened room. The full, life-size pictures in motion of the fighters, their seconds and the referee are thrown out on a canvas in front of you, and every move, lead, feint, counter and duck is reproduced vividly. Howard B.

3018

3017

In this city is a man who has taken the kinetoscope and gone it many times better—and he has only just started in. There doesn't seem to be any doubt that when he and his two energetic sons get fairly under way they will be able to play game or nothing with any other three or three hundred men in the presentation for the enjoyment of spectators of actual movements of persons and things.

Hackett, in the New York World, goes into ecsta-

sies over the invention. Says Hackett:

WIDE RANGE OF USEFULNESS.

Life-size presentations they are and will be, and you don't have to squint into a little hole to see them. You'll sit comfortably and see fighters hammering each other, circuses, suicides, hangings, electrocutions, shipwrecks, scenes on the exchanges,

street scenes, horse races, football games—almost anything, in fact, in which there is action, just as if you were on the spot during the actual events. And you won't see marionettes. You'll see people and things as they are. If they wink their other eye, even though not so expressively as Miss Cissy Fitzgerald winks hers, or Thomas C. Platt winks his, you will see the lid on its way down and up. If their hair rises in fright, or grows gray in half an hour, you'll see all the details of the changes.

With a phonographic attachment the possibilities are far greater. This involves the reproduction of court scenes, plays, conventions, mass meetings and conversations as natural as life. A little knowledge of the scheme impresses one with the view that its possibilities are almost limitless.

The scheme has a name, of course—a scientific name. It is called the "eidoloscope." Operations were begun with it for the delectation of a curious public on Monday last in a store on lower Broadway. The sparring contest between Young Griffo and Charley Barnett on the Madison Square Roof Garden on May 4 has been reproduced daily since at intervals of fifteen minutes. Each reproduction lasts twelve minutes. The spectators sit in chairs in darkness and observe the actions and objects displayed on a canvas of good size.

They see Griffo and Barnett advance from their corners and shake hands. They see them move their hands back and forward and dance around warily. They see them counter, duck, swing, upper-cut and give body blows. When they clinch the onlookers laugh as Referee Charlie White parts them and walks between them. They don't hear him say: "Break, there, break." They would, though, with the phonograph attachment. The round ends and the men go to their corners and the

3019

3020

3022

3023

seconds are seen wiping their faces and fanning them vigorously with towels. It is all realistic, so realistic, indeed, that excitable spectators have forgot themselves and cried: "Mix up there." "Look out, Charlie; you'll get a punch," "Oh, what do you think of that, Mr. Barnett?" and other expressions of like character. It is wonderful.

SOMETHING OF THE INVENTOR.

The man who is responsible for it is Woodville Latham. He was professor of chemistry in the University of West Virginia. Then he held the same position in Oxford, Miss., in the Mississippi Then he went into the real estate business in St. Louis, and then to Chattanooga, where there was a boom. He wishes he had skipped the latter place. Then he came to New York, where his sons, Gray Latham and Otway Latham, had introduced the kineteoscope. He suggested reproductions on a screen. He experimented for a year with a photographic machine. The results were important. They were these: A process by which the reproductions could be magnified to life size, and a process by which they could be projected onto the canvas. The secrets of these processes are his own.

3024

More than this. He so arranged the instantaneous photographic machine that it will work for hours if necessary. Edison's photographic machine will work but a moment. The match between Griffo and Barnett lasted twelve minutes.

Even the slightest motion can be reproduced. The act of snapping the finger can be photographed four times. Otway Latham has a scene in which a man is smoking a pipe. The smoke from it can be seen on the canvas. A photographer was out one day recently with a street piano player

for the purpose of catching children dancing to 3025 the music. That will be reproduced.

An effort will be made to reproduce the execution of Buchanan, if he is executed, for scientific purposes. It has been ascertained that there is no legal obstacle in the way, but whether Governor Morton will give his consent is not yet known. Much advantage is claimed for the eidoloscope in scientific work.

3026

Complainant's Exhibit P.

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Complainant,

VS.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE COMPANY OF AMERICA, 3029 Defendant.

> BENJAMIN BARKER, Examiner.

COMPLAINANT'S EXHIBIT.

Eastman Kodak Co. Bill Feb. 18, 1895.

COPY OF INVOICE.

Feb. 18, 1895.

3030 36785.

> W. Latham, Hotel Bartholdi, Madison Sq., N. Y.

12 Rolls 2 in. Transp. Film 25 ft. long

\$1.871/2 per roll 22.50 .21

Exp. prepaid

22.71 By cash Feby. 13, '95 22.50

.21

Nat. X Pd. Feb. 13, 1895.

Complainant's Exhibit Q.

3031

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY, Complainant,

VQ

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE
COMPANY OF AMERICA,
Defendant.

3032

2033

BENJAMIN BARKER, Examiner.

COMPLAINANT'S EXHIBIT.

Eastman Kodak Co Bill of Apr. 5, 1895.

COPY OF INVOICE.

Apr. 5, 1895.

2646B.

W. Latham, Hotel Bartholdi, N. Y. City.

192 ft. 2 in. Transp. Film .071/2

4.40

Exp. Prepaid

14.52

.12

Nat. X Pd. C. O. D. Duplicate.

3034

Complainant's Exhibit R.

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY,

Complainant,

VS.

3035

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE COMPANY OF AMERICA, Defendant.

> BENJAMIN BARKER, Examiner.

COMPLAINANT'S EXHIBIT.

Eastman Kodak Co. Bill of Apr. 27, 1895.

COPY OF INVOICE.

5101F.

3036 W. Latham, a/c.

Hotel Bartholdi,

N. Y. City.

10 Strips 2 in. Transp. Film 200 ft. each 2,000 ft. at .07½ 150.00 Apr. 24—By Cash 50.00

100.00

U. S. X. C. O. D.

Complainant's Exhibit S.

3037

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS Co., Complainant,

VS.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE COMPANY OF AMERICA,
Defendant.

3038

BENJAMIN BARKER, Examiner.

COMPLAINANT'S EXHIBIT.

Eastman Letter

W. Latham, Esq., New York City.

Dear Sir :-

Your favor of the 23rd is just at hand, 5 p. m. We, however, received your telegrams during the day and have your directions to cut ten strips two hundred feet long and join them together, making two one thousand sheet strips. We have since telegraphed you for remittance on this order. You will appreciate the necessity of this, as this special film would be of no value to us, if for any reason you should decline to receive it. This will not delay the order, however, as we expect to receive your telegram and will cut the film to-morrow if your reply is satisfactory.

As you now seem practically prepared for business, will you not please give us the usual refer-

Referring again to the joining of the film, will say that these joints will necessarily cause a break

3040 ences as to responsibility so that future orders may not be delayed?

in the continuity of the sensitized surface. The joint will be about 1½ in. long and this will not be sensitized. We cannot make any joint sufficiently solid on which there will not be a break in the sensitized surface. As to the thickness of the film for the four thousand feet order, there is a possibility of a misunderstanding as to this. Mr. Eastman handed writer immediately after your Mr. Latham's departure, a memorandum of the understanding with him and this states that the film is to be 1/1000 in. thicker than our regular film. As our regular film is 3/1000 in. thick, this practically agrees with your statement of the matter, but we thought it better to mention the directions as we

The special order for four thousand sheets will probably be ready in four or five days, but the telegraphic order which will be made from our regular film should be ready for shipment Friday morning. This is as early as we can get it out, as cut rolls are always held over until the next morning to give a practical camera test of the film before shipment.

Yours truly,

EASTMAN KODAK COMPANY, By McIntyrl.

Your telegram asking "How much do you demand in advance" is rec'd, and we have replied "Amount of order one hundred and fifty dollars net"—Kindly telegraph if check is forwarded and we will go ahead with order.

3041

have them.

Complainant's Exhibit T.

3043

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS Co., Complainant,

VS.

1NDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE Co. of AMERICA,

Defendant.

In Equity, No. 5-167.

3044

COMPLAINANT'S EXHIBIT.

Decision of Examiner of Interferences in Armat Interference.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

LATHAM

VS.

CASLER

VS.

ARMAT.

No. 18461.

3045

Apparatus for projecting on a screen pictures of moving objects.

Application of Latham filed June 1, 1896.

Application of Casler filed February 26, 1896.

Application of Armat filed February 19, 1896.

Mr. J. E. M. Bowen, attorney for Latham.

Messrs. E. M. Marble & Sons, attorneys for Casler.

Mr. Julian C. Dowell, attorney for Armat. The issue in controversy is defined as follows:

"In a picture-exhibiting apparatus for giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion, the combination with a picture-carrying strip or film, a tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension device, whereby the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film."

3047

This interference, as originally declared, contained four parties. On motion of Armat, the senior party, judgment was rendered against Edward H. Amet for failure to take testimony within the time set. This judgment became final on December 6, 1897, and Amet accordingly ceased to be a party to the interference.

3048

The other three parties, Latham, Casler and Armat, have all taken testimony and filed briefs in support of their respective cases.

Armat was the first to file his application, and the burden of proof therefore rests upon the other parties, Latham and Casler, to overcome the presumption of prior invention which inures to Armat's benefit by reason of his earlier filing date.

Woodville Latham, the first junior party, is the principal witness in his own behalf. Latham states that he was educated for a civil engineer, was engaged in direction of the manufacture of ordnance and powder for the Confederate Army during the Civil War, was afterwards a railroad engineer, and next professor of chemistry and physics for five years at the University of West Virginia and then at the University of Mississippi. At present he is a chemist, residing in New York City.

Latham testifies that two of his sons, Gray Latham and Otway Latham, were engaged in New York during the summer of 1894, in the business of exhibiting pictures by the use of the Edison Kinetoscope. One of his sons came to him and asked him if he could not devise a machine for projecting the pictures upon a screen. Latham felt confident that he could and at once began to consider the matter. He states that:

"It seemed to me that nothing was necessary for the projection of pictures of movement upon a screen but the combination of a magic lantern with an appliance similar to Edison's Kinetoscope for running the picture strip continuously across the optical axis; but I was aware that it would be necessary to provide pictures for such apparatus and I did not believe that pictures could be photographed clearly on a continuously running strip. Immediately, therefore, I began to consider what device might be best for arresting the movement of the film intermittently."

He made drawings from time to time illustrative of his ideas and showed them to his sons and to others. These drawings were of a transient nature and are now lost or destroyed. Money was required to reduce Latham's ideas to a practical 3050

form, and it was not until November, 1894, that the necessary funds were secured. Latham at once hired a shop, purchased machinery and set a mechanic by the name of Lauste at work to produce a machine.

It is unnecessary to review the efforts of Latham prior to January 1, 1895, for it appears clearly by his own testimony that it was not until about this date that he conceived of any "means for intermittently moving the film." If anything is well settled in the law of patents it is that no inventor can be allowed a date for his conception until he has in his mind the idea of a particular means. In the words of Robinson in his work on Patents, Sec. 376, et seq.:

"The conception of the invention consists in the complete performance of the mental part of the inventive act." * * All that remains to be accomplished, in order to perfect the art or instrument, belongs to the depart-

ment of construction, not creation.

3054

3053

"To perceive an existing want; to conceive that in some way it may be supplied; even to discover what attributes an article or operation must possess in order to relieve the want—neither of these acts results in an idea of means by which the want may be removed."

Now, while it appears that Latham had decided that an intermittent movement was necessary, it appears from his own testimony that he had not in mind any means for giving this intermittent movement until January 1, 1895, when the Geneva stop movement was selected and ordered. Moreover, Latham tried prior to this date a different kind of means for giving an intermittent movement, which was devised by Dickson, and found it impractical.

Latham testifies that after some experiments a machine, later introduced in evidence as Latham Exhibit No. 12, was completed with the assistance of Lauste and one Kleinert and under the The first picture supervision of Otway Latham. was taken with the machine on the night of February 26, 1895, and a portion of the film is offered in evidence. Pictures were taken again with the machine in March and on May 4, 1895, and both of these pictures were subsequently exhibited on a screen to the public. Latham further states that this same machine could be and actually was employed by him in the month of January or February, or both, 1895, at 35 Frankfort Street, New York, to project pictures taken by it. Latham also states that a company known as the Lambda Company, was organized in December, 1894, to carry on the manufacture of this invention, and the machine, Exhibit No. 12, was turned over to this company. The Lambda Company, after a year's existence, sold out to a company called the Eidoloscope Company, and the machine then became the property of the latter company.

R. A. Anthony, president of E. & H. T. Anthony & Company, the assignees of Latham's application, was called as a witness and produced the machine, Latham Exhibit No. 12, which he purchased during the taking of the testimony from Raff & Gammon, otherwise known as the Vitascope Company, into whose hands it had come. He gives so far as he is able a very satisfactory history of the machine.

3056

Otway Latham was called as a witness in behalf of his father. He states that in the summer of 1894 he controlled certain rights in connection with the Edison kinetoscope, and that he and his associates were unable to accommodate the crowds desiring to see the pictures. His father then, in July or August, suggested making a machine that would enlarge pictures of this character so that more than one could view them at the same time. Otway Latham says that his father made some sketches at this time and later, but he does not remember just what they showed. He testifies as to the interesting of Dickson in the matter and as to the failure of the device proposed by Dickson for giving the intermittent movement to the film and the subsequent immediate adoption of the Geneva stop. He states that the work of constructing the machine, Latham Exhibit No. 12, was begun in October or November of 1894, and that the Geneva stop was put in about the first of January, 1895, and that pictures were photographed and projected in the same month. He later states that the machine was first used for photographing about February 26, 1895, and identifies the film, Latham Exhibit No. 2, as the picture taken at that time. He corroborates his father as to the subsequent taking of pictures with this machine early in May, 1895, and states that these pictures were exhibited in the shop at 35 Frankfort Street by means of the machine that photographed them, but does

On cross-examination he reiterates his testimony that this machine was used for projecting pictures on a screen early in January, 1895, and soon after the Geneva stop was put in. He states that several subjects were used, possibly a girl dancing or a

3059

3060

not say when.

boxing match, and that Lauste, Kleinert, his father, and Dickson were present at this or immediately subsequent trials. He states that the exhibit machine is the same now as it was then with the exception of the two reels upon which the films were rolled, and the focusing lamp and objective lens.

Grey Latham testifies to being one of those who exploited the kinetoscope in the Summer of 1894, and states that his father in July or August of that year suggested to him the possibility of projecting moving pictures on a screen. On several occasions during these months his father showed him pencil drawings of an arrangement which he said would both photograph and project moving objects, but he gave little or no attention to it, as he knew nothing of mechanics, and did not understand the drawings. He states further:

"I remained in Boston almost continuously during the fall and winter of 1894 and 1895.

At some time in November, I think it was, while I was in New York on a visit and after we had raised money for the manufacture of photographic and projecting machines, and had opened a shop at 35 Frankfort Street, New York, and had been at work for some time, as I understood, on the ideas as set forth by Mr. Dickson and my father, I was told by my brother, Otway Latham, by my father, Woodville Latham, and by our mechanic, who was doing the work, that Dickson's idea had proved a failure and that the work thereafter would continue on the line laid down by and after the ideas of my father. I remained in New York only a few days at that time, and returned to Boston."

3062

In December he was informed by letter that work on the machine was progressing satisfactory, and that an assistant in the shop was needed. He then, in the latter part of December, 1894, sent Kleinert to New York. Grey Latham states also that he saw the machine in its completed state in New York in January, 1895, and he very clearly identifies the machine Latham Exhibit No. 12, as the one he saw. He personally first operated the machine for photographing pictures in February, 1895. As to the first use of the machine for projecting pictures he testifies:

3065

"Either in January, the later part, or the early part of February, I think, my brother and I in the presence of several others removed the back plate from the machine, Exhibit 12, and inserted an electric light and projected satisfactorily one of the kinetoscope pictures on a screen at 35 Frankfort Street, in room No. 35."

3066

Kleinert testifies that he was once employed as a foreman in the manufacture of the Edison kinetoscope, and that in the Fall of 1894, and up to the Sunday before Christmas of that year he was in the employ of Grey Latham in Boston. On the date last mentioned he went to New York and agreed to work for Woodville and Otway Latham. He began work at once on a machine for taking photographs, and had as a fellow-workman Lauste. At the time he came Lauste was working on a device to attain a stop movement. He states that Lauste in his work followed out instructions given to him by Woodville Latham and Otway Latham. The stop movement on which Lauste was working was found to cause too much jar, and the two

Lathams, Lauste, and Kleinert had a conference. "Each one was asked for some suggestion, which was freely made by every one, and as a practical mechanic myself suggested a broken gearing. We talked that over for quite a while. After looking over different catalogues, I ordered the gearing I thought would answer the purpose." Kleinert says that he ordered the gear or Geneva stop early in January, 1895, and after some further experiment the machine was completed inside of a month. The first photograph was taken on the night of February 26, 1895, and he identifies Exhibit No. 2 as the film taken at that time. He also identifies the machine, Latham's Exhibit No. 12, as the machine made by his assistance and recognizes his own workmanship.

3068

The testimony on behalf of the party Latham, as outlined briefly above, appears to establish that Latham conceived and reduced to practice the invention which is embodied in Exhibit No. 12 in January, 1895, and no earlier. Casler at the conclusion of his testimony put upon the stand Lauste, who appears to have been brought from Europe to testify in this case, and endeavored to prove that Latham had made no invention at all, and that Lauste was in fact the inventor of the matter embodied in the said exhibited machine. aminer is not favorably impressed with the character of the testimony given by this man Lauste, the former employee of Latham and the present employee of the Mutoscope Company, of which Casler is a director. It contains many self-contradictions and incredible statements, which it is hoped are due to the witness's imperfect knowledge of However, Lauste by his own testimony was employed and paid by Latham to make this

machine, and even if he as a skillful mechanic did suggest much that is embodied in the machine it can not detract from Latham's right to be considered the real inventor under the well-settled principles of law governing the relationship of employer and employee. Latham in rebuttal took the stand himself again and denied in toto all of Lauste's statements affecting the question of inventorship, which did not agree with the testimony of the previous witnesses. This testimony of Latham is rather forceful in character and he was injudicious in his language, but it is entitled to weight and in connection with the other testimony nullifies the evidence of Lauste.

3071

The only question which remains to be determined in Latham's case is whether or not the Latham Exhibit No. 12 is an embodiment of the issue of this interference. As to this question there is controversy. This machine is full-sized and well made out of the proper materials. It is apparent from the testimony that the exhibit machine was designed and made primarily for the purpose of taking pictures and not for projecting pictures on a screen. It is claimed, however, that the machine is adapted for the latter use, and that the testimony in fact shows that it was so used. The machine as it stands to-day is not in condition for exhibiting pictures, but is arranged to be used as a camera, which is the use to which it has been put almost entirely. It now contains a circular revolving shutter with but two small peripheral apertures, which renders it impossible to make the interval of pause and illumination exceed the interval of motion of the film. But the issue does not demand that the machine shall contain a shutter, and the testimony shows that a shutter is not an essen-

tial element by any means of a picture-exhibiting apparatus. If this shutter should be removed, and no mechanical reason exists to prevent its removal, the machine becomes at once an embodiment of every element of the issue. The mechanism which moves the film acts quickly and then allows that part of the film at the point of exposure to remain stationary for a much longer interval of time. Not only does the machine as pear to be an embodiment of the issue, but the testimony shows that it was, once at least, used to project pictures. Furthermore, it is well settled that "the inventor of a machine is entitled to the benefit of all the uses to which it can be put, no matter whether he had conceived the idea of the use or not" (Roberts vs. Ryer, 91 U. S., 150; Milleret et al. vs. Eagle Mfg. Co., C. D. 1894, 147).

It is found, therefore, that Latham is entitled to rely upon this machine as a reduction to practice of the invention of the issue.

It is noted that the issue, which is for a combination of the elements of a machine, includes as a positive element "a picture-carrying strip or film." It is not seen how this is any more an element of the picture-exhibiting apparatus than the log is of the saw-mill or the paper of the printing press, referred to by Mr. Justice Brown in Morgan Envelope Co. vs. Albany Perforated Wrapping Paper Co. 67 O. G., 271. But even if it can be considered an element of the machine, the testimony fairly shows that such a film was used by Latham in the test made in January, 1895.

The case presented on behalf of the party Casler is easily disposed of to the mind of the examiner. Casler alleges in his preliminary statement that he conceived the invention about December 12, 1894,

3074

and about March 1, 1895, he completed the only machine which he has built. Admitting that these facts are proven by the evidence, the testimony of Casler himself shows that this machine which is produced in evidence "was not intended when built as a machine for projecting photographs or pictures of moving objects," and that it was not until about November 1, 1895, that it was fitted up so that it could be used for such a purpose. The machine as it appears in evidence, is clearly and unmistakably a camera. It is so constructed that light cannot be made to pass in a right line through the machine to project the picture upon the screen. It is itself a full corroboration of Casler's testimony that it was not originally designed for anything other than a camera.

3077

If "Casler's first machine" can be relied upon at all as a reduction to practice of the issue, and there is considerable doubt in the mind of the examiner as to his point, it certainly can be of no avail for this purpose until November, 1895, for it was not until then that it was adapted in any way for pro-Casler testifies that at this date pegs were placed in the machine, by means of which the course of the film was diverted, and that by arranging a mirror and other devices the machine was adapted for projecting. Until these changes were made, and Casler himself says that they were necessary changes, the machine was nothing but a camera and could not be used for projecting. therefore, Casler's case be put in the strongest possible light he cannot prevail even as against Latham. Granting that he conceived the invention on December 12, 1894, and that he built the machine in evidence by March 1, 1895, and modified it in November, 1895, so as to embody the issue, he

would, as against Latham, be the first to conceive and the last to reduce to practice, and would be obliged to show diligence; but from March to November, 1895, he was clearly not diligent, and offers no excuse therefor. The examiner is further of the opinion that Casler never conceived the invention of this issue prior to November, 1895, when he decided to and did make the changes in his exhibit Other questions in regard to Casler's machine. case have been raised which it seems unnecessary to notice because of the view here taken. conduct of Casler in putting the witness Lauste upon the stand and in endeavoring to prove that Lauste was the inventor of the Latham machine at the dates claimed by Latham goes to show that Casler does not now consider himself to be the first inventor.

3080

The testimony on behalf of Armat, the senior party, is comparatively brief, and it is unnecessary to review it at all in detail.

Although Armat has alleged a conception of the invention in November, 1894, in his preliminary statement, he has utterly failed to establish this fact by his own proofs. On the contrary, he admits in his own testimony that he did not conceive the invention as now embodied in the Armat's Exhibit Armat Machine, which contains the issue, until September, 1895. It appears from Armat's testimony that this machine was constructed and shipped to Atlanta, Georgia, lacking a very essential element of the issue, namely, "mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension device;" that shortly after the arrival of the machine in Atlanta an additional shaft and toothed drum, together with iron pulleys, leather belt, and supporting

standards, were added to the machine for this very purpose. These facts are admitted by counsel for Armat in his brief. Armat, hence, did not conceive or reduce to practice till long after the dates awarded to Latham.

Judgment of priority of invention is accordingly awarded Woodville Latham. Limit of appeal from this decision will expire July 5, 1899.

WALTER JOHNSON, Examiner of Interferences.

3083

June 14, 1899.

Endorsed:—Intf. No. 18461; paper No. 93—Latham vs. Casler vs. Armat—Decision of priority in favor of Latham, June 14, 1899—Recorded, vol. 62, page 145.

Defendants' Exhibit No. 1.

3217

Mfr's					
Serial	No.				
3557					

SIMPLEX

Special License No. 3666

Made by

THE PRECISION MACHINE COMPANY

Patented.

No.	576,185,	March	2,	1897.	
No.	580,749,	April -	13,	1897.	
No.	586,953,	July	20,	1897.	321
No.	673,329,	April	30,	1901.	
No.	673,992,	May	14,	1901.	
No.	707,934,	August	26,	1902.	
No.	722,382,	March	10,	1903.	

The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of Reissued Patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company, and complied with by the user while it is in use, and while the Motion Picture Patents Company owns said patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the right to use this machine.

3219

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,

New York, N. Y., U. S. A.

Defendants' Exhibit No. 2.

LICENSE AGREEMENT.

(a) THIS AGREEMENT, made this 20th day of June, 1912, by and between the MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of New Jersey, and having an office in said State, party of the first part (hereinafter referred to "LICENSOR"), and

The Precision Machine Company, Inc., a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the 3221 State of New York, and having an office and principal place of business in the Borough of Manhattan, City of New York, in said State, party of the second part (hereinafter referred to as the "LICENSEE");

- WHEREAS, the Licensor represents that it is the owner of the entire right, title and interest in and to Letters Patent of the United States:
- No. 578,185, dated March 2, 1897, for Vitascope, granted to Thomas Armat;
- No. 580,749, dated April 13, 1897, for Vitascope, granted to Thomas Armat;
- No. 586,953, dated July 20, 1897, for Phantoscope, granted to Charles F. Jenkins and Thomas Armat:
- No. 588,916, dated August 24, 1897, for Kinetoscope, granted to Charles M. Campbell as the assignee of Willard G. Steward and Ellis F. Frost;
- No. 673,329, dated April 30, 1901, for Kinetoscope, granted to the American Vitagraph Company as the assignee of Albert E. Smith;
- No. 673,992, dated May 14, 1901, for Vitascope, granted to Thomas Armat;

- No. 707,934, dated August 26, 1902, for Projecting Kinetoscope, granted E. & H. T. Anthony & Co. as assignees of Woodville Latham;
- No. 722,382, dated March 10, 1903, for Animated Picture apparatus, granted to American Mutoscope & Biograph Company as the assignee of John A. Pross;
- No. 744,251, dated November 17, 1903, for Kinetoscope, granted Albert E. Smith;
- No. 770,937, dated September 27, for Kinetoscope, granted The Vitagraph Company of America as the assignee of Albert E. Smith;
- No. 771,280, dated October 4, 1904, for Winding-Reel, granted Albert E. Smith;
- No. 785,205, dated March 21, 1905, for Flame-Shield for Kinetoscope, granted The Vitagraph Company of America as the assignee of William Ellwood; and
- No. 785,237, dated March 21, 1905, for Film-Holder for Kinetoscopes, granted The Vitagraph Company of America as the assignee of Albert E. Smith;

all of which said Letters Patent relate to improvements in the motion picture art, and that there are no outstanding licenses, shop rights or other rights under said Letters Patent, or either of them, except a license for Parlor Kinetoscopes granted The Karmata Company, of Washington, D. C., under Letters Patent Nos. 578,185, 580,749, 586,953 and 673,992, and certain alleged licenses under U. S. Letters Patent No. 586,953, which are in dispute, claimed to be owned by the Edison Manufacturing Company, the American Graphophone Company of Washington, D. C., and S. Lubin, of Philadelphia, Pa.; and excepting a license granted by the American Mutoscope & Biograph Company to

3224

the firm of Marvin and Casler to manufacture and sell cameras and exhibiting or projecting machines under Letters Patent owned by it (some of which are hereinbefore referred to) for use in foreign countries only, and excepting certain licenses granted by the Armat Moving Picture Company to the American Mutoscope & Biograph Company under Letters Patent Nos. 578,185, 580,749, 586,953, 588,916 and 673,992, and by the latter Company to the former Company under Patents Nos. 707,934 and 722,382, which licenses are, however, by agreement between said parties, suspended and are not to be acted upon until the Licensor becomes bankrupt, ceases doing business or shall be dissolved voluntarily or otherwise, or its Charter shall be repealed; and

3227

(c) Whereas, the Licensor further represents that it is the owner of the entire right, title and interest in and to reissued Letters Patent of the United States numbered 12,192, dated January 12, 1904, the original Letters Patent of which were numbered 589,168, and dated August 31, 1897, and that it has granted licenses under the said reissued Letters Patent only to the following named persons, firms or corporations: American Mutoscope & Biograph Company of New York City; Edison Manufacturing Company of Orange, N. J.; Essanay Company of Chicago, Illinois; Kalem Company of New York City; George Kleine of Chicago, Illinois; Lubin Manufacturing Company of Philadelphia, Pa.; Pathe Freres of New York City; Selig Polyscope Company of Chicago, Illinois; The Vitagraph Company of America, of New York City; and that all of the said persons, firms or corporations have covenanted and agreed to lease only

and not sell in the United States, its territories and possessions, except its insular possessions and Alaska, (hereinafter referred to as the "lease territory aforesaid") motion picture films manufactured or imported by them, of a width greater than approximately one inch (1 in.), and under the conditions and restrictions that the said films shall be used only on exhibiting or projecting machines licensed by the Licensor under United States Letters Patent owned by the Licensor; and

- (d) Whereas, the Licensee is engaged in the manufacture and sale of motion picture exhibiting and projecting machines, and relying upon the representations of the Licensor and induced thereby, desires to obtain from the Licensor a license under the said United States Letters Patent;
- (e) Now, THEREFORE, the parties hereto, for and in consideration of the sum of one dollar to each in hand paid by the other, and for other good and valuable considerations, from each to the other moving, receipt of which is hereby acknowledged, have agreed as follows:
- (1) The Licensor hereby grants to the Licensee for the term and subject to the covenants, conditions and stipulations hereinafter expressed, the right and license for the United States, its territories and possessions, to manufacture and sell motion picture exhibiting or projecting machines embodying one or more of the inventions described and claimed in the said United States Letters Patent Nos. 578,185, 580,749, 586,953, 588,916, 673,329, 673,992, 707,934, 722,382, 744,251, 770,937, 771,280, 785,205, and 785,237. The license hereby granted is personal to the Licensee, and in

3230

3233

the event of the permanent discontinuance or retirement from business of the Licensee for a period of six consecutive months, the License hereby granted shall be immediately terminated.

- (2) The Licensor, for itself, its successors, assigns and legal representatives, hereby releases, acquits and discharges the Licensee from any and all claims, demands and liability for profits and damages because of any infringement by the Licensee of one or more of the said United States Letters Patent Nos. 578,185, 580,749, 586,953, 588,916, 673,329, 673,992, 707,934, 722,382, 744, 251, 770,937, 771,280, 785,205 and 785,237, or use by the Licensee of the inventions covered thereby.
- (3) The Licensee hereby recognizes and admits the validity of each and all of the said United States Letters Patent Nos. 578,185, 580,749, 586,953, 588,916, 673,329, 673,992, 707,934, 722,382, 744,251, 770,937, 771,280, 785,205 and 785,237, and the Licensee agrees not to contest or question the same during the continuance of this agreement.
- 3234
- (4) The Licensee covenants and agrees that on all motion picture exhibiting or projecting machines containing one or more of the inventions described and claimed in the said United States Letters Patent Nos. 578,185, 580,749, 586,953, 588,916, 673,329, 673,992, 707,934, 722,382, 744,251, 770,937, 771,280, 785,205 and 785,237, made in the United States, its territories and possessions, by the Licensee and sold after the license hereby granted shall take effect and during the continuance of this agreement, the Licensee will pay royalties as follows:

On each such machine capable of exhibiting or projecting by transmitted light, motion pictures on film of a width greater than approximately one inch (1 in.), a royalty of five dollars (\$5.00).

On each such machine not capable of exhibiting or projecting by transmitted light, motion pictures on film of width greater than approximately one inch (1 in.), a royalty of three per cent. (3%) of the net retail selling price of such machines.

On each such machine capable of exhibiting or projecting by reflected light, motion pictures on film of any width, but not capable of exhibiting or projecting the same by transmitted light, a royalty of three per cent. (3%) of the net retail selling price of such machines.

It is understood and agreed by and between the Licensor and the Licensee that the expression "motion picture exhibiting or projecting machine," as used hereinbefore or hereinafter, includes motion picture mechanisms or "heads" for such exhibiting or projecting machines, but not any repair parts or portions of such motion picture mechanisms or "heads."

The Licensee further covenants and agrees that the Licensee will, within fifteen (15) days after the last days of the months of November, February, May and August in each year, after this agreement takes effect, and during its continuance, submit a statement in writing, signed by the proper officer of the Licensee, and sworn to if requested by the Licensor, showing the number of exhibiting or projecting machines of each of the classes provided for in this paragraph, embodying one or more of the inventions described and claimed in the said United States Letters Patent Nos. 578,185, 580,749, 586,953, 588,916, 673,329, 673,992, 707,934,

3236

722,382, 744,251, 770,937, 771,280, 785,205 and 785,237, sold by the Licensee during the three months ending with the last days of the said months, and at the same time pay the royalties The first such statement and paydue thereon. ment, however, shall be only for the period between February 1, 1909, and February 28, 1909. Licensee further agrees to keep accurate books of account and to permit the Licensor to determine, through Messrs. Price, Waterhouse & Company, or any other reputable chartered accountants to be agreed upon by the parties hereto, the number of such exhibiting or projecting machines sold by the Licensee while this agreement is in effect, if the Licensor should so desire.

(5) The Licensee further covenants and agrees

3239

that each and every motion picture exhibiting or projecting machine capable of exhibiting or projecting by transmitted light, motion pictures on a film of a width greater than approximately one inch (1 in.), and embodying one or more of the inventions described and claimed in the said United States Letters Patent Nos. 578,185, 580,749, 586,-953, 588,916, 673,329, 673,992, 707,934, 722,382, 744,251, 770,937, 771,280, 785,205 and 785,237, made in the United States, its territories or possessions by the Licensee, shall be sold by the Licensee, except when sold for export, under the restriction and condition that such exhibiting or projecting machines shall be used solely for exhibiting or projecting motion pictures containing the inventions of reissued Letters Patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Licensor while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Licensor and complied with by the user while the said machine is in use and while the Licensor owns

said patents (which other terms shall only be the payment of a royalty or rental to the Licensor while in use). The Licensee further covenants and agrees that the Licensee will attach in a conspicuous place to each and every such exhibiting or projecting machine of the Licensee's manufacture, sold by the Licensee, except for export, after the date hereof, a plate showing plainly not only the dates of the Letters Patent under which the said machine is licensed, but also the following words and figures:

3242

Serial No.

PATENTED

No.

The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of reissued patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion. Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company and complied with by the user while it is in use and while the Motion Picture Patents Company owns said patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the right to use this machine.

3243

(6) The Licensee further covenants and agrees that each and every motion picture exhibiting or projecting machine not capable of exhibiting or projecting by transmitted light, motion pictures on a film of a width greater than approximately one inch (1 in.), or capable of exhibiting or projecting motion pictures on film of any width, but

only by reflected light, and embodying one or more

3245

of the inventions described and claimed in the said Letters Patent Nos. 578,185, 580,749, 586,953, 588,-916, 673,329, 673,992, 707,934, 722,382, 744,251, 770,937, 771,280, 785,205 and 785,237, and made in the United States, its territories and possessions, by the Licensee, shall be sold by the Licensee, except when sold for export, under the restriction and condition that the said exhibiting or projecting machine shall be used in exhibiting or projecting motion pictures only in places to which no admission fee is charged. The Licensee further covenants and agrees that the Licensee will attach in a conspicuous place to each and every such exhibiting or projecting machine of the Licensee's manufacture, sold by the Licensee, except for export, after the date hereof, a plate showing plainly not only the dates of the Letters Patent under which the said machine is licensed, but also the following words and figures:

PATENTED

No.

3246

The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it so long as this plate is not removed or defaced and in places to which no admission fee is charged.

(7) The Licensee further covenants and agrees that to each and every motion picture exhibiting or projecting machine of any kind, embodying one or more of the inventions described and claimed in said United States Letters Patent Nos. 578,185, 580,749, 586,953, 588,916, 673,329, 673,992, 707,934, 722,382, 744,251, 770,937, 771,280, 785,203 and 785,237, and made in the United States, its ter-

ritories and possessions by the Licensee, when sold bona fide for export, there shall be attached a plate showing plainly not only the dates of the Letters Patent under which the said machine is licensed, but also the following words and figures:

PATENTED

No.

Not licensed for use in the United States, its territories and possessions (except its insular possessions and Alaska).

3248

It is understood by and between the parties hereto that by "export sales" is meant all sales for delivery outside of the "lease territory aforesaid," when the machine, addressed to the purchaser, agent, or consignee, is delivered to the vessel or to a transportation company for transportation outside of the said "lease territory aforesaid," and not otherwise.

(8) The Licensee further covenants and agrees that the Licensee will not, after this agreement takes effect, make or sell repair parts for motion picture exhibiting or projecting machines which have been manufactured or imported and sold by any other person, firm or corporation, who or which is licensed by the Licensor to manufacture or import and sell motion picture exhibiting or projecting machines under any or all of the said United States Letters Patent Nos. 578,185, 580,749, 586,953, 588,916, 673,329, 673,992, 707,934, 722,382.

3249

(9) The Licensee further covenants and agrees that the Licensee will not sell any exhibiting or projecting machine at less than the Licensee's list

744,251, 770,937, 771,280, 785,205 and 785,237.

price for such machine, except to jobbers, and to other persons, firms and corporations for the purpose of resale, and that the Licensee will require such jobbers and other persons, firms and corporations, to sell such machines at not less than the Licensee's list price for such machine. Nothing in this paragraph shall prohibit, however, the allowance of two per cent. (2%) discount from list price for ten days cash payments.

3251

(10) The Licensee further covenants and agrees that the Licensee will not sell, after May 1, 1909, during the continuance of this agreement, any exhibiting or projecting machine capable of exhibiting or projecting by transmitted light, motion pictures on film of a width greater than approximately one inch (1 in.), at a less list price than One Hundred and Fifty Dollars (\$150), which list price may include the machine head, stereopticon attachment, film magazines, lamp house, arc lamp, rheostat, switch and switch box, and attaching cords, except, however, that for the last five named items may be substituted a gas burner and gas making outfit. It is further understood and agreed that such complete machines may be sold between February 1, 1909, and May 1, 1909, at a less list price than One Hundred and Fifty Dollars (\$150), but only to persons, firms or corporations not engaged in the business of renting motion picture films, and not for use in any permanent or fixed place of exhibition.

3252

(11) It is further mutually covenanted and agreed by and between the Licensor and the Licensee, that the Licensor may grant other licenses to manufacture or import and sell motion picture exhibiting or projecting machines, under any or

all of the said United States Letters Patent Nos. 588,916, 673,329, 586,953, 578.185, 580,749, 673,992, 707,934, 722,382, 744,251, 770,937, 771,280, 785,205 and 785,237, said licenses to be in writing, and if any of said licenses to an additional licensee of the Licensor contains terms, conditions or stipulations more favorable to the additional licensee than the terms, conditions or stipulations of this agreement (except to the Biograph Company of New York City, and to the Armat Moving Picture Company of Washington, D. C., who are to pay no royalties on any exhibiting or projecting machines embodying any or all of the inventions described and claimed in the aforesaid Letters Patent, and to the Vitagraph Company of America of New York City, the royalty rates to which under the aforesaid Letters Patent are to be only four-fifths (4/5) of these provided for herein, and to Thomas A. Edison, Inc., of Orange, N. J., and to the Marvin & Casler Company of Canastota, N. Y., neither of which is to pay any royalties under the aforesaid Letters Patent on any exhibiting or projecting machines sold bona fide for export) then the Licensor will upon demand of the Licensee convey to the Licensee terms, conditions and stipulations similar to those conveyed to said additional Licensee.

3254

3255

(12) It is mutually covenanted and agreed by and between the Licensor and Licensee that, unless sooner terminated, as hereinbefore and hereinafter provided, this agreement, and the license granted thereby, shall take effect on June 20, 1912, and shall continue until June 20, 1913, but that the Licensee may renew this agreement and license thereafter from year to year upon the same terms,

conditions and stipulations as herein provided, by giving notice to the Licensor on or before the 20th day of March in each year, beginning with the year 1913, of the Licensee's election to so renew this agreement and license and upon the giving of each such notice this agreement and the license thereby granted shall be considered and treated by the Licensor and Licensee as renewed for the period of one year, beginning June 20th of the year following such notice, and such notice and renewal may be given and made by the Licensee during the life or lives of each or all of the patents under which the Licensee is hereby licensed.

3257

In case, however, that the Licensor should become bankrupt, cease doing business, or should be dissolved, voluntarily or otherwise, or its Charter should be repealed, then, on the happening of either such events, this agreement and the agreements made with the additional licensees hereinbefore provided for, that are then in force, shall forthwith terminate and be at an end.

3258

(13) It is further mutually covenanted and agreed by and between the Licensor and Licensee, that if, during said original term or during any such renewal period, either party should, knowingly or through gross neglect or carelessness, be guilty of a breach, violation or non-performance of its covenants, conditions and stipulations, resulting in substantial injury to the other party, and should, for the period of forty (40) days after notice thereof from the other party persist therein or fail to correct, repair or remedy the same, then and in such case the party aggrieved may terminate this agreement by giving notice in writing to the guilty party of its intention so to do. It is, however, mutually covenanted and agreed by and between

the Licensor and Licensee that if the guilty party should correct, repair or remedy such breach, violation or non-performance of its covenants, conditions and stipulations within the said period of forty (40) days after such notice, and should thereafter knowingly or through gross neglect or carelessness be guilty of a second breach, violation, or non-performance of its covenants, conditions and stipulations, resulting in substantial injury to the other party, then, and in such case, the party aggrieved may terminate this agreement by giving thirty (30) days' notice in writing to the guilty party of its intention so to do. Such termination of the agreement, however, shall not prejudice either party hereto in the recovery of damages because of any such breach, violation or non-performance by the other party hereto.

3260

(14) All notices provided for in this agreement, shall be in writing and shall be given by delivering the same to the Licensor or Licensee, as the case may be, or by depositing such notices, postage prepaid, in any post-office of the United States, in a sealed envelope directed to the Licensor or Licensee, as the case may be, at its last known post-office address, to be forwarded by registered mail.

3261

(15) It is mutually covenanted and agreed by and between the Licensor and Licensee that after notice of the termination of this agreement and the license granted thereby by either party, as provided for in Paragraph 13 of this agreement, and after the same have been terminated, no matter what the cause or manner of termination may be, neither this license agreement, nor the fact that the Licensee has entered into or acted under it,

3263

shall be used in any manner, directly or indirectly, by or for the Licensor, its successors, assigns or legal representatives or by or for others with its or their consent or permission against the Licensee, or the Licensee's successors or legal representatives, in any litigation, controversy or proceeding involving the Licensee, or them, or any other persons, firms or corporations, or in any other way, it being understood and agreed that upon such termination the positions and rights of the Licensor and Licensee shall be the same as if this agreement had not been made; provided, however, that the rights of neither party shall be prejudiced by such termination in the recovery of damages for any breach or other violation of this agreement by the other occurring prior to such termination.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this agreement to be executed by their officers duly authorized to perform these acts, the day and year first above written.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,

By H. N. MARVIN,

3264

President.

(Seal, Motion Picture Patents Company.)

Attest:

WM. PELZER, Secretary.

> THE PRECISION MACHINE CO., INC., By Edwin S. Porter.

Attest:

F. B. CANNOCK, Secretary.

(Seal, The Precision Machine Company, Inc.)

Defendants' Exhibit No. 4.

3265

IN THE

DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

FOR THE EASTERN DISTRICT OF PENNSYLVANIA.

SITTING IN EQUITY.

UNITED STATES

VS.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY, et al. October Sessions, 1914. No. 889, 3266 Petition Under Anti-Trust Act.

SUR TRIAL HEARING ON PETITION, ANSWERS AND PROOFS.

(Filed October 1, 1915)

DICKINSON, J.

3267

A petition was filed in this case under the Act of July 2, 1890, averring the combination of the defendants to accomplish an unlawful restraint of trade and consequent obstruction of the free flow of commerce in interstate transactions, in the sale of positive motion picture films and other necessary accessories of the motion picture art. The prayer is that a stop be put, by the power of the law, to the practices charged to be illegal.

The record is of such bulk, and the discussion has taken such a wide range and has with such thoroughness dealt with all possible phases of the case, that to even outline, with anything like adequacy, all the considerations involved in its decision, would extend an opinion beyond manageable limits.

The present discussion is therefore limited to two questions (and largely to one of these) which give us the bearing points upon which the whole case turns. This restriction does not imply the slighting of any feature of the arguments, so well worthy of the fullest attention, which have been addressed to us, because there is substantial accord in the thought that with these questions eliminated the defence has failed. This feature will, however, be adverted to later.

At the risk of being open to the criticisim of its being wholly academic, a start may be made with a few general observations. The beginnings of this controversy are found in the ages-long struggle "to secure the blessings of liberty," to obtain which is stated to be one of the objects of our Con-There is deep-grained in human nature the impulse to influence, and, so far as it can be done, control the actions of others. It is too much to expect that this control, when secured, will always be exerted for altruistic ends. Out of this condition has arisen the need of a power of government to check the restraints which the strong would otherwise impose upon those whom they could control. Power and efficiency, however, are possessed in insensible gradation, and there is a right to the liberty of its full, fair exercise. There would be no real gain, in securing to some, freedom from extra-legal control, by imposing upon all, unfair and unreasonable restraint through an unfair and unwise administration of the law.

The liberty spoken of in our Constitution had more direct reference to this latter freedom from

3269

the "undue and unreasonable" exactions of constituted rulers. In the cycle of human efforts, we have come back to the needs which moved men into constituting rulers over themselves, and the power of the law has been invoked for protection against, what are declared to be, evil practices. The particular phase of liberty, with which this law concerns itself, is the freedom or free flow of com-It is based upon the right of every individual to choose his own calling in life and to follow the trade of his choice unhampered by any undue and unfair interference from others. It secures this "blessing of liberty" to all by making it unlawful for any to conspire to bring about "restraint of trade or commerce." This is the genesis and motive of the Act of July 2, 1890. seeks (within constitutional limitations) to reach this end by declaring all such conspiracies to be criminal, and places under the ban of its condemnation all such attempts "to monopolize any part of trade or commerce." Its meaning has been declared in as broad and clean a sweep of language as could well be employed, and has been interpreted for us in a series of opinions which render further comment worse than vain. There are now more than a round dozen of these decisions, in which can be found the rule to be applied to the facts of the instant case.

The full text of the complaint appears in the record and is too lengthy for quotation.

The gravamen of the offence may be gathered from the general summary that it is a conspiracy to drive from the field all other traders in the things which make possible the practice of the motion picture art and to monopolize to themselves that trade and through this the practice of the art itself.

3272

This latter feature justifies the interpolation into the discussion, of a preliminary question which lies at the threshold of the proceedings. The defence asserts the real charge to be that of an effort to control the motion picture business. This is asserted to be the business of dramatic representation and dramatic representation to be the practice of an art. The control, with the seeking of which the defendants are charged, is therefore the control of an art and not of trade or of anything which is the subject of commerce or can be brought within the laws relating thereto.

3275

It has been settled by the decisions, under the earlier copyright laws, that the copyright of a dramatization covered a photo-play presentation of the same subject. This was based upon the recognition of, what every observer experiences, the similitude, if not identity, of the impressions received from seeing a photo-play and from the same play acted out by actors living and moving before his eyes. The photo-play business may therefore be well said to bear the same relation to dramatic art which the theatrical business does. The latter has not, however, the same relation to trade and commerce. The moving picture business, as an entirety, is made up of the presentations, to which the public is invited, and of a trade in other things, which make this final display possible. If it is a photo-play, it has, of course, the same basis of the labors of the author and the art of the actor as has the acted play. The spectator of the play sees the actors acting out the play. That which the spectator of the photo-play thinks he sees is an illusion. He thinks he sees, for instance, a man moving (or a picture of it), and, in one sense, he does because such is his mental impres-

sion of what is before him. This illusion is produced by projecting upon a screen, in rapid succession, enlarged reproductions of a series of consecutively quickly taken photographs of a man as he is moving. There must be, therefore, in the motion picture business the use of all these additional accessories, from the screen back to the raw film and the camera, as part of the apparatus for the production of a photo-play.

One of these essential things in the motion picture business is the positive motion picture film or reel, and the charge made against these defendants is that whatever may have been their final purpose with respect to the control of the art, what they combined to do and have done, is to restrain trade or commerce in these films, which are articles of trade and the subject of large interstate transactions, in which the defendants had part. The latter fact is admitted. It is evident that whoever controls the films, referred to, controls the motion picture business, but the point, with which we are now concerned, is that interstate trade in these films is within the statute.

The next branch of the defence, which presents itself for analysis and discussion, is that based upon the patent rights of the Motion Picture Patents Co. The plea is, in legal effect and in practical acknowledgment, one in confession and avoidance, for there is, as already stated, a substantial (although not formal) admission that, with this patentright ownership out of the case, plaintiff should have the relief prayed.

The importance of the question thus raised cannot well be overestimated. The eulogy which counsel have bestowed upon our patent law system springs from real feeling and is not only a beauti-

3278

ful but doubtless a deserved tribute to its merits, and their eloquent portrayal of the benefits which have flowed from it is as true as it is impressive. It is easy to keep in sympathetic touch with them in the first step in their argument and to accept the proposition that the Anti-Trust Act did not work a repeal of the patent laws. This must be accepted on general principles, even were its supports not buttressed by the cases to which we have been referred. That their validity is not open to question in a collateral proceeding, and is to be assumed in this inquiry, must also be conceded. Prima facie they are and must be taken to be valid and to be for what the claims allowed by the Patent Office show.

3281

A little space may now be devoted to the consideration of what a patent right is, in order that we may understand the true value of this part of As has been well said, the patent the defence. laws do not confer any right to make, use or vend the subject matter of an invention. This is the natural right of the inventor. What the patent law does do, for one thing is to take away, for a limited time, from all others than the patentee, or his assigns, that which would otherwise have belonged to them also, the right to make, use or vend the patented article. Another thing it does, is to proffer to the patentee, the aid of the law in enforcing this prohibition upon others. The latter is really the right given. It is the right to a remedy. It is, as it is sometimes phrased, a proprietary right. There is also the idea of property of a special kind which has all the general characteristics of other kinds of property. The ownership of a patent, as the ownership of any form of property, may confer a power upon the proprietor

which he otherwise might not have been able to wield. It has its peculiarities, as other kinds of property have, and certain consequences flow from this. To one of these we will later refer, but the point now presented is that a patent as property must have the same relations to the Act of 1890 as would any other kind of property. In view of this, it is a little difficult to grasp the thought that, in this broad aspect, patents are not subjected to the provisions of this Act just as is any other species of property. We see no escape from the conclusion that they are. Just here, however, comes in a difference born of one of the peculiarities to which reference was made.

The Act of 1890, in its first section, declares combinations in restraint of trade to be illegal. By its second section, it condemns monopoly. The opinions in Standard Oil Co. and Keystone Watch Co. and in Patterson vs. U. S. make clear the purpose and scope of the two sections. The condemnation is visited both upon the means and the end, forbidden by law. A peculiarity of the rights of the owner of a patent, as distinguished from other property, is this: Each has the right to sell that which is his, but the owner of the patent has the exclusive right to sell his patented ar-This is, in a very substantial sense, a monopoly. It must be, however, that the monopoly here meant is not the monopoly condemned by the Act of 1890. To hold otherwise would clearly be, as counsel for defendants urge, a logical absurdity, because there can be no such thing as restraint in a trade which has no existence, and a monopoly created by law in pursuance of a policy of the law. cannot be said to result from such restraint. To transfer a phrase from the opinion of Judge Coch3284

ran, in Patterson vs. U. S., which was directed to something else but which is applicable here, "there can be no monopolizing in the legal and accurate sense where there can be no common occupation." The right to sell carries with it the right to withhold from sale, or to part with the possession without parting with the ownership. It also confers the right to impose reasonable and legal conditions of bailment or sale "restricting the terms upon which the (patented) article may be used and the price to be demanded therefor. All these propositions are clear and have been expressly held to be the law. Bement vs. National Co., 186 U.S., 70 and 72, and Standard Co. vs. U. S., 226 U. S., 20 The limitation that the terms must be legal should however not be lost sight of. An effort, for instance, after a sale to impose a sale price condition which will follow the article through successive sales, will not be upheld.

3288

3287

We have, therefore, to determine the limits of a right and a wrong which seem to overlap each It is the right of a patentee, through having the exclusive sale of the patented article. to control, and in that sense, to monopolize the trade in it. It is wrong by any illegal restraint of trade to monopolize it or any part of it. the one hand, it cannot have been intended to make it unlawful to acquire that, the right to which, the law has conferred. On the other hand (as already observed), it cannot be that the grant of a patent right confers a license to do that which the law condemns. The solution of the problem is to be sought by finding the special field of operation of each of these laws. There is a field of trade, the sole occupancy of which may be in a patentee. Here he is supreme, and the keeper of the gate

There is another field which is in of entrance. the common occupancy of all. Where the law has given the whole field to a patentee with the express right of exclusion of others and the use of the power of the law to enforce the exclusion, it is unthinkable that such exclusion is an illegal Where the field, however, is restraint of trade. open to all, competition for trade is likened to a race in which all may enter, but in which there must be no unfair jostling or hampering of others. Each one is free to exert all his powers and distance, if he can, all competitors, and win all the prizes, but he must run fairly and accord to others a like freedom. If he possesses a patented device which will aid him in the race, he may use it, as he may use any other form of property, but he must put it only to its proper use, and if he uses it as a weapon to disable a rival contestant, or to drive him from the field, he cannot justify such use, because of his patent right, except to the extent of protecting his exclusive right. We have, therefore, the principle, which is recognized in all the cases, that if the subject matter of a contract, which otherwise would be illegal because in restraint of trade, is a patented article, this takes away the illegality only to the extent to which the field of the trade, controlled through the combination, is co-extensive with the field within which exclusive control has been granted by the law.

This is the doctrine of Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1; Bement vs. Harrow Co., 186 U. S., 70; the Bath Tub Case, and all the other kindred cases to which we have been referred.

The difference between this private field and the common field of trade, is, as a distinction, sufficiently clear, but there may be again an overlapping.

3290

The owner of a patented article has the right to enter upon this common field of trade. patented article may be so superior, or of such less cost than anything else upon the market, as to supplant all others and give to him the whole trade as effectually as if his patented article has originally had the field itself. Indeed, its ownership may be sought, for the reason that it has this possibility Again, the patent may apply to only certain features of the article of trade and yet enable the owner to reap the same advantage, and control a trade in what is beyond the exclusive rights given by the patent. The special circumstances affecting a particular contract or combination may make the principle difficult of application and the line of legality or illegality hard to draw, but the principle remains the same. legality of such a contract is determined by the judgment of whether in its whole scope and legal intendment it is fairly limited in its operation to the proper field of trade belonging to the patentee. and whether any further advantages which flow to him are fairly incidental and are not the evil fruit of unfair practices employed to restrain the right of others to a share of the common trade. the legal intendment of the contract or combination which is to be found. The motives of the contracting parties, whether innocent or otherwise. do not determine the real character of their act. but it is determined through the judgment of the Motives and intentions, except as declared. or appearing from the character of the act, are teo vague and difficult of ascertainment to be made the basis of the legal judgment called for in such cases. A conspiracy under this Statute, as at common law. may have, as an element, the seeking of an unlawful end or the employment of unlawful means.

3293

We learn from the opinion in the Keystone Watch Case Co. that the prohibited restraint of trade, beside being undue and unreasonable, must be the direct and not a merely incidental result of the contract or combination, before the latter will be condemned as illegal. If it is asked to be condemned, not because of the illegality of the means employed to accomplish its end, but because monopoly results as a consequence, the monopoly must be shown to be an unlawful monopoly, not the monopoly granted by the patent laws. A contract or agreement among business men, which had as its end to preserve to the owners of a patent, the exclusive sale of the patented article, and as its means the exercise of due, reasonable and fairly proper control over sales to be made, would not be condemned as void in itself or justify any inference of guilt under the Act of 1890. Where, however, by what was agreed to be done, the end indicated, in the sense of the result to be expected, was a monopolistic control of what was not the exclusive property of any one, or such a monopoly was the direct result of undue and unreasonable restraints of trade, to be employed as the means of carrying out what was to be done, the fact that any one or more of the persons concerned owned patents, would not prevent a finding of conspiracy.

A feature of the Watch Case Co. litigation affords us an illustration of the extent to which patent rights enter into the defence to proceedings of this character. The feature, alluded to, was, in the language of the opinion, that of "the system under which the Howard watch was sold by defendants. Certain parts of the Howard watch were covered by bona fide patents taken out and used for a lawful purpose, and, as the owner of

3296

these patents, the company had the right to make a direct agreement with the jobbers, whereby a minimum price was fixed at which the jobber ought to sell. The company went further '(however)' and by mere notice to the retailer, accompanying the box in which the watch was sold by the jobber, attempted to fix the minimum price at which the retailer might sell to the consumer. When the company sold the watch to the jobber it had fully exercised its right to vend and had no right to use the notice subsequently given, in order to control the price at which the retailer might sell."

:3299

As a conclusion to the whole discussion, we deem the Bath Tub Case to be decisive of the principle contended for by the United States. There it is true the patent was not on the ware, which was the subject of the trade sought to be monopolized, but on a tool used in its manufacture, and the case doubtless might have been ruled upon that distinction.

:3300

We cannot accept, as well taken, the position that it was so ruled, because the Court, in formulating a statement of the principle upon which the ruling was based, expressly refused to plant the decision on this narrow ground, but placed it upon the broad principle that the agreements in that case "transcended what was necessary to protect the use of the patent or the monopoly which the law conferred upon it. They passed to the purpose and accomplished a restraint of trade condemned by the Sherman law." "The agreements combined the manufacturers and jobbers in a combination . . . condemned by this Court as offending the Sherman law. added element of the patent * * * cannot confer immunity from a like condemnation

and this we say without entering into the consideration of the distinction of rights for which the Government contends between a patented article and a patented tool used in the manufacture of an unpatented article. Rights conferred by patents are indeed very definite and extensive, but they do not give, any more than other rights, an universal license against positive prohibitions. The Sherman law is a limitation of rights • • • which may be pushed to evil consequences. • • • "

We would feel constrained, on the authority of this case alone, to find that the agreements and acts of the defendants in the present case went far beyond what was necessary to protect the use of the patents or the monopoly which went with them, and that the end and result, which would be expected to be and was accomplished, was the restraint of trade condemned by law. Some of the considerations which move to this conclusion are stated later.

This is a lengthly prelude to the consideration of the special facts of this case. We feel relieved from the necessity of any extended reference to them, because they are set forth in the complaining petition, with a precision and accuracy which has prevented denial, except as to the motives which actuated the defendants and the legality of the With respect to the motives and conscious purposes by which men are actuated, it has been well said that these "cannot be easily estimated," and we may concede to the defendants no purpose to offend against or to evade the law, and that their intentions were as beneficent and have resulted in as much good to the patronage of the art as is claimed, and that this good bears a fair relation to the profits received by them. This

3302

is foreign to the inquiry which we have made, because the duty to refrain from what is prohibited by law "cannot be evaded by good motives." Moreover, "the law is its own measure of right and wrong," as well as the judge of whether a transaction is of the character which it condemns. If, in the judgment of the law, a contract or cooperating agreement is such as to work an undue and unreasonable restraint of trade and through such restraint to monopolize trade or any part of it, the judgment is one of condemnation, no matter how innocent or otherwise praiseworthy the motives of those who had part in it.

3305

We do not, therefore, feel called upon to make any specific findings on this subject beyond what is stated to be found. The real motives of those, whose minds conceived and whose wills carried through this combination, were doubtless like those behind almost all other human acts, probably of a mixed character. We would not be justified, and would certainly have no wish, to deny the presence of the very laudable motives, which defendants avow in their answer, some of which were to gratify their desire to allay bickerings and recriminations among themselves, to advance and improve the art, to protect the morals of the public and, as they frankly admit, to make money for themselves. Certain it is, that the end and purpose of the plan, was to dominate and control the trade, in all the accessories of the art and, in order to assure this, to control the entire motion picture business. We are driven to this conclusion, not only because that is the plain meaning of what they did, but also because they themselves categorically declare the latter to be the imperative need of the business and one which they alone could supply. The need was

for a single directing and regulating head. This extended even to a censorship of what was shown. The United States could not, and the States would not, interpose for the purpose of regulation, and the defendants claim the credit of having performed this neglected duty of the State. In doing all which was done, the defendants not merely deny the illegality of either end or means, but also lay claim to commendation. We only mention this to make clear the fact, that, they did monopolize, and the only question left, is whether this monopoly is a lawful monopoly, or was accomplished through an unlawful restraint of trade.

3308

The combination was not formed until 1908. The defendants were at that time engaged in the busi-There were ness as manufacturers or importers. scores of jobbers buying and distributing films and necessary supplies to thousands of exhibitors. The business was expanding, literally by leaps and The total investment ran into millions. bounds. There was, therefore, a trade to be restrained and one well worth monopolizing. The original plan, if it was contemplated, did not disclose, any purpose to exclude the middle men, and, from its first being put in operation, 116 jobbers were licensed by and did business with the defendants. short time, however, the absorption of this part of the trade was decided upon, and the General Film Co. was formed to take over the business of dis-How effective and thorough were the tribution. methods employed, is shown by the fact, that, of the 116, there is left one solitary survivor.

3309

The plan out of which these methods grew was first to combine the defendants, who were manufacturers and importers of films, in an agreement to act as one man might have acted. Lists of ex-

3311

changes and of theatres, were prepared and no exchange was permitted to have films, and no theatre to exhibit them, unless with the consent of all the defendants. The names of none appeared upon this list, except such as bought all supplies from the defendants, and any who dealt otherwise were dropped. Every theatre was required to pay a royalty for the use of a projecting machine, even when the machine had been owned by the exhibitor, before the combination was formed. The films passed into the possession of exchanges and exhibitors under an agreement which enabled the defendants to recall them at will. It is too clear for comment, that the mere possession of the power here shown would make its assertion seldom necessary. It was, however, effectively exercised. It is also clear that such a combination is condemned by the Act of 1890, unless immunity is given by the patent laws. The pressure, here, is upon the weak point of the argument on behalf of the defendants. The fault in it, is basic. There is doubtless injustice in applying, even rhetorically, the "dead indian" aphorism to trusts. It may be admitted that, there may be, trusts which are both living and good. When a monopoly has been found, however, to be the result of an unlawful restraint of trade, the argument, that the combination, through which it has been accomplished, is a good trust, or was formed from good motives, or that good results from the monopoly, is, for legislative, and not judicial consideration. As already stated, it is the legal intendment of the whole scheme, which determines its character-what is its end and what the means to be employed—to be found from the natural and to be expected results. Here, again, the illuminating phrase employed in the Keystone Watch Co. opin-

ion clarifies the thought. If the end is monopoly, and the means the restraint of trade, the inquiry is directed to the character of the restraint. If that is undue and unreasonable, and was directly intended, and the monopolistic results flows as a direct, and not a merely incidental consequence, the combination, through which it is brought about, is illegal. The same conclusion follows a finding that the end is illegal because reached through the same means. Indeed, the two things come to be, nearly, if not quite, the same, although there is room for a difference.

3314

The defendants had the right to propose to themselves, as an end, the protection of their exclusive right to sell an article, protected by a patent, which was their property. They had the right to employ, as a means to this end, due and reasonable regulations, and to impose any lawful conditions of sale. If restraint of trade and monopoly flowing from it, incidentally resulted as a consequence, as neither the end proposed nor the means employed was unlawful, the combination which effected these objects, could not justly be condemned.

3315

The owner of a patented device, process or product may undoubtedly acquire from another any issued patents for improvements, and we see no reason to deny the right of the owners of the original patent, and of the patented improvements, to pool their ownerships for their joint or common protection. This we understand to have been expressly ruled. U. S. vs. United Shoe Co., 222 Fed., 349. Indeed, this case may well be claimed as authority for the proposition (within its facts) that there might be a combination of the owners of different patented machines all entering into a manufacturing trade. However this may be, the distinction sought

to be pointed out is, that while the owner of a pat-

ent on a plow, covering the handles or beam, might acquire or join with the owners of patents covering the mold-board or share or other parts of the plow, for the protection of the patented rights of all, and thereby incidentally secure an enlarged part of the trade in plows, the judgment would refuse to sanction a combination between the owners of patented plows, patented harrows, patented reapers and binders, and other implements of husbandry, and large dealers in these implements, who were not owners of patents, for the purpose of monopolizing the whole trade in the products of agriculture, if the direct end first proposed was to unduly and unreasonably restrain trade, as a means to the final purpose of monopolizing. The ownership of the patents, in such a case, surely could not be accepted as a defence to the charge of unlawful conbination.

If a reason to support the distinction between these supposititious cases is asked for, it may be found in the fact, that, in the first case, it could not be concluded that the scheme of the combination had no normal and real relation to the protection of the patent rights; in the second case, no such relation could be even plausibly said to exist, and its assertion would be characterized as a pretense.

The legal justification, set up by the defendants, for what they have done, and for everything they have done, is that in so doing, they were lawfully asserting rights acquired by them, through a large number of overlapping patents. The total number reaches 16. Ten of these are admittedly, however, of minor importance, and, indeed, of no importance, in their bearing upon the case. The remaining six may be roughly catalogued as one each pertaining to films, cameras, and what is termed the Latham

3317

Loop, and three to projecting machines. The ownership of these patents was divided among some of the defendants. Others had no interest therein, except in so far as they dealt in the different apparatus, features of which, were covered, or claimed to be covered, by the several patents respectively. If the combination had been limited, and the arrangements and the scheme in its entirety, had possessed, or could be found to have, any normal real relation to the assertion and protection of these patented rights, and this had been the end proposed, the defendants would be upheld in the maintenance of such rights.

3320

We are constrained, however, to find that there was no such relation, but that the end, directly proposed, was, the imposition upon the trade of an undue and unreasonable restraint, in order that, as the immediate and direct effect and result of the combination, the defendants might monopolize the trade in all the accessories of the motion picture art so far as they are articles of commerce.

A further end proposed, and which has largely been achieved, is the domination of the motion picture business itself, and it requires no prophetic vision to foresee that the ultimate result would be, that no play would be written, or dramatically enacted, except by authors and artists favored by the defendants.

3321

It is further found as a fact that the defendants did, in furtherance of the scheme of the combination so to do, directly impose upon the trade undue and unreasonable restraint, and that such restraint was the end proposed to be directly reached, and was not merely incidental to efforts to protect the rights, granted by the patents, but went far beyond the fair and normal possible scope of any efforts

to protect such rights, and that as a direct and intended result of such undue and unreasonable restrictions, the defendants have monopolized a large part of the inter-state trade and commerce in films, cameras, projecting machines and other articles of commerce, accessory to the motion picture business.

It is further found, for what the finding may be

worth, that although the ends proposed in the combination, and carried out by the defendants, were first this restraint, and through this, the monopolizing of the trade to reap commercial advantages to themselves, a further inducement and motive was (and these were also ends in view), the wish to relieve each other from the odium of infringement, to end contests which hampered the development of the art, to protect the morals of the public by the prevention of the exhibition of suggestive or otherwise improper pictures, to promote the progress of this branch of dramatic art by improving the character of the shows, both in the artistic merits and mechanical perfection of the display, and generally to supply, what, up to that time, the State had neglected to furnish, a regulating and governing authority over the entire motion picture business. The end and purpose of the combination, and in this sense the motive or moving cause, further was, not to protect the patent rights, which the Motion Picture Patents Co. was organized to take over, but the control of the patents was made a feature of the scheme in the belief, or at least the hope, that this would render the scheme (otherwise illegal) not

We conclude with the formal finding, in the language of the Act of Congress, that the contracts, enumerated in the petition, and the combination there described, was a conspiracy in restraint of

open to the condemnation of the law.

3323

with foreign nations, and were and are illegal, and that the defendants and each of them (with the exception next noted) have attempted to monopolize and have monopolized, and have combined and conspired, among themselves and with each other, to monopolize, a part of the trade or commerce among the several States, and with foreign nations, consisting of the trade in films, cameras, projecting machines and other accessories of the motion picture business, as charged in the petition of complaint filed.

The exception referred to is this: Melies Manufacturing Company, one of the corporation defendants named in the petition, has denied (as have all of the defendants) that it was in any sense a party to the combination charged. We have gone over all the proofs without finding any, which go to making good of the charge against this particular defendant. It is therefore excluded from the findings made, and the petition as against it is dis-

missed.

The conclusion is that the petitioner is entitled to the relief prayed so far as indicated by this opinion, and a decree, to effectuate the findings made, may be submitted.

This statement should perhaps be added. The point has been raised by the United States that the Edison patent on the picture film, was limited to its negative form, and did not cover the positive motion picture films, which were dealt in commercially. The conclusions, to which we have arrived, have been reached without such a finding.

3326

United States of America, 'Eastern District of Pennsylvania,

I, William W. Craig, Clerk of the District Court of the United States for the Eastern District of Pennsylvania, do hereby certify, that the annexed and foregoing is a true and faithful copy of opinion, filed October 1, 1915, in the case of United States vs. Motion Picture Patents Company, No. 889, October Session, 1914, now remaining among the records of the said court in my office.

3329

(Seal)

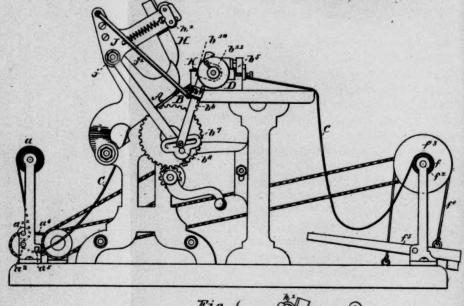
In Testimony Whereof, I have hereunto subscribed my name and affixed the seal of the said District Court at Philadelphia, this fifteenth day of October, in the year of our Lord one thousand nine hundred and fifteen, and in the one hundred and 40th year of the Independence of the United States.

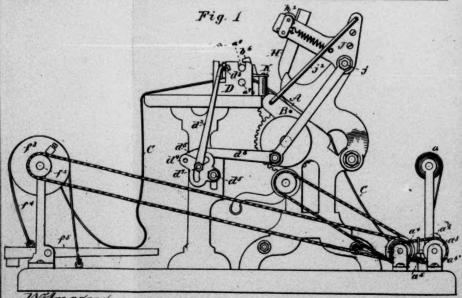
WILLIAM W. CRAIG, Clerk District Court U. S., By E. G. JOHNSON,

Deputy Clerk.

W. P. KIDDER.

Chromatic Printing Machine.
No. 224,440. Patented Feb. 10, 1880.





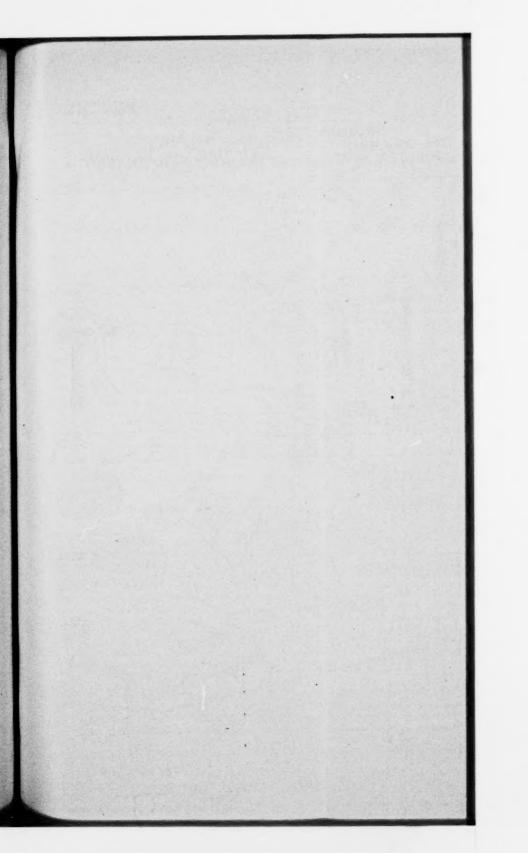
Witnesses: Frank 9. Parker

Fig. 2.

Inventor:

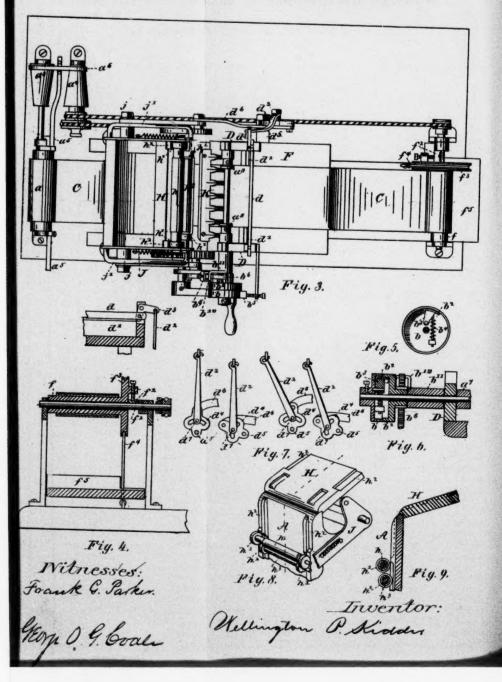
Grown & Grove

Wellington P. Stidde



W. P. KIDDER.

Chromatic Printing Machine.
No. 224,440. Patented Feb. 10, 1880.



UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

WELLINGTON P. KIDDER, OF BOSTON, MASSACHUSETTS.

CHROMATIC-PRINTING MACHINE.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 224,440, dated February 10, 1880. Application filed March 14, 1879.

To all whom it may concern:

Beit known that I, WELLINGTON P. KIDDER, of Boston, in the county of Suffolk and State of Massachusetts, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Printing-Presses, of which the following is a full, clear, concise, and exact description, reference being had to the accompanying drawings, making a part hereof.

In the drawings, Figures 1 and 2 are side

elevations; Fig. 3, a plan.

The other figures show details, and are re-

ferred to below.

A is the bed, and B the platen, of a print-15 ing-press, properly connected together to make the impression, and C is the strip to be printed. The strip C is wound upon a drum, a, suitably supported in convenient proximity to the press.

Heretofore in all presses known to me adapted to print a long strip of paper or other material the paper was unwound from the drum or reel by the action of the feed, the drum or reel being one side of the platen and the feed 25 the other side. The effect of this is to throw more strain upon the printed paper than is desirable, especially when the paper is of a poor

quality; and one feature of my present invention is designed to remedy this difficulty, this 30 feature of my invention consisting in the use of two feeds, one serving to draw the paper from the drum or reel or other supply, so as to have the paper slack between the first feed and the form, while the other feeds the paper

35 to the action of the type by simply taking up the stack furnished by the first feed.

The auxiliary feed in the drawings consists of the rollers a' a', between which the strip of paper C is passed. The under roller, a2, is re-40 volved positively, while the upper one, a', may be revolved by friction only. To regulate the speed of this feed I use a conical pulley, a3, fast to the shaft of roller a³ and belted to a conical pulley, a⁴. The belt-shipper a⁵ con-45 trols the position of the belt at, and thereby determines the quantity of paper fed by this auxiliary feed a' a^2 in a given time. The object is to keep the paper slack between the auxiliary feed a' a' and the main feed a' a', in 50 order to relieve the latter feed of the duty of cam boby a dowel-pin fitting loosely, but may, 100

drawing the paper from the reel or other sup-

ply.

The auxiliary feed may be intermittent and on the be driven by mechanism like that used on the main feeds but with the conical pulleys a3 a4, 55 belt as, and belt-shipper as, by a slight change in the position of the belt-shipper a5, the speed of the auxiliary feed can be regulated, and thus the paper be kept slack below the platen.

This combination of the conical pulleys a3 a4, 60 belt at, and belt-shipper at with the feed a' at also constitutes a part of my invention.

The strip of paper C extends from the feed a' a^2 through suitable guides and between the bed and platen through the main feed a^7 a^8 , a^7 65 being a roll actuated positively, while at may be actuated by friction only. In a bed-andplaten press this roll a must be actuated intermittently, and in order to effect this I have combined with this feed a7 a8 the clutch de- 70 vice shown in detail in Figs. 5 and 6.

The two wheels b and b' are arranged as shown, b being fast to the shaft of roll a7, while b' and the pinion formed on its hub are free to revolve on that shaft except when b 75 and b' are connected together by the clutch mounted on b. This clutch consists of the shoe b3, wide enough to engage with the flange of wheel b', this shoe b^3 being mounted on the cam b^3 , and the cam b^3 being pressed in one 80 direction by the spring b^4 . When the motion of by is such that the friction of its flange on the shoe b' tends to move the shoe and its cam b3 against the spring b4, that spring yields, and thus the flange of b' slips over the shoe b' with- 85 out moving wheel b. For greater certainty, and also in order to prevent the wheel b moving by its own momentum at the end of the feed, I use a brake, b, on wheel b. (See Fig. 1.) But when the motion of wheel b' is such that 90 the friction of its flange tends to move the shoe b3 and its cam b3 in the opposite direction—that is, in the same direction as that in which they would be moved by the spring b4—the cam causes the shoe b3, which is loosely supported 95 upon its cam, to bind tightly upon the flange of the wheel b', and thus clutches them together, so that they move as one wheel.

In practice the shoe bo is connected with

of course, be otherwise connected, provision being always made for a slight tip of the cam sufficient to bind the shoe against the flange of wheel b'

Motion is imparted to wheel b' by means of its pinion and the rack be. That rack is connected to the piece b⁷, which is secured to the wrist-pin b³. The motion of the rack is made more or less by connecting it to the piece b' farro ther from or nearer to the axis around which wrist-pin b' revolves.

This combination of feed a a with clutch b b' and reciprocating rack b' also constitutes

one feature of my invention.

In some cases it is important to adjust the motion of the feed within very exact limits, and the use of this rack bo with a slide, bio nicely fitted to the rack and secured to a sleeve, b", nicely fitted to its stud, enables me to use 20 adjustable stops (one of which is shown marked b) on the rack on each side of slide b. These stops are capable of very accurate adjustment, and they serve to prevent any variations in the feed arising from backlash or loose bearings.

The cutters d d' are mounted in a frame which is rigidly connected to or made in one piece with the frame of the feed a' a'. The purpose of this is to allow the adjustment of the cutters without changing their relation to

30 the feed.

It is necessary, in order to adapt the press to various sizes of sheets, that not only the feed be adjustable, but also the position of the cutters in relation to the form of type.

In the press shown the cutter-frame and feedframe are in one piece, and in practice this double frame D is held to the table F by clamps, so that the frame D may be readily adjusted

toward or from the press.

The movable cutter d is actuated through the connecting-rod d, which connects the two bell-crank levers d d. The stud d, which supports the bell-crank d, is secured adjustably to the frame of the machine (by entering 45 a vertical slot in the frame in a well-known way) in order that it may be raised or lowered to suit the position of the cutter. The bell-

crank d is actuated by the connecting rod d. When the axis of d', the axis of wrist-pin d, 50 and the end of cutter d are in line, the cutter d is at its highest position, and the motion imparted to the cutter is very slight while the axis d' moves across the line, the motion increasing rapidly as the motion of axis d' gets

55 lengthwise of that line.

Either the stud d'or the connecting-rod d' must be adjustable, as will be clear from the

diagram, Fig. 7.

When it is desired to roll up the printed 60 strip (for example, in order to print upon both sides) the shears will not, of course, be operated, but this strip will extend from the feed a a to the drum f. The paper must be so wound upon this drum that it will always be

The drum f is mounted upon a shaft, f', so that the motion of the shaft f' will be imparted to dram f through the friction-shoe f. friction-shoe is fast upon the friction-pulley f. which pulley is fast to drum f, f' being an enlargement of drum f, simply that the friction belt or brake f' may act with greater power. This brake f' is fast at one end to the floor 75 or bed of the machine and at the other end to the lever f2, which is sufficiently heavy at its outer end to produce a friction between the brake f. and pulley f sufficient to prevent the drum f from revolving with its shaft f', 80 and thus prevent the winding up of the strip C on drum f. This causes the slack to accumulate on the inner end of the lever fo (which is made wide for this purpose) until the weight of the accumulated slack is sufficient to de- 85 press the inner end of the lever fs, thus raising its outer end, and thereby relieving the pulley f' from its brake f' to such an extent that the friction of shoe f' is greater than the friction between pulley f and its brake f when the drum f is revolved by its shaft f' and winds up the strip C until the weight of that part of it resting on the inner end of lever f is too small to counterbalance the lever-that is, until the outer end of lever f' 95 descends far enough to tighten the brake f' on pulley f' and stop the revolution of drum f.

This combination of drum f and shaft f' with the two sets of friction devices, one acting to make the drum and its shaft revolve together, 100 and the other controlled automatically by the veight of the slack acting to prevent the drum from revelving with its shaft until a given quantity of the strip is slack, also constitutes

one feature of my invention.

Another feature of my invention relates to the use of two or more inking-rollers, each supplying ink to a different part of the form; and this part of my invention consists in the combination, with the inking-rollers, of guides 110 so arranged that each roller shall be held away from the inking-table and from the form during a portion of its travel over the table and form. Thus in the drawings the roller A is prevented by its guides h' from coming into con- 115 tact with the lower part of the inking table H and the lower part of the form, but is allowed, the guides h entering grooves h along the edge of the table H and of the form, to come into contact with the upper part of the for table and form. In like manner the inkingroller h' is prevented by its guides h' from coming into contact with the upper part of the table and form, but comes into contact with only the lower part of the table and form.

In printing with two colors one will be distributed to and applied by one of the rollers and the other by the other, and in this way all kinds of two-colored printing can be done, the feed being so regulated that that portion 130 of the strip which receives an impression from

which prints red, for example, has made its impression, the feed is such that that impression is carried under the other part of the form, which prints black, for example, two impressions being necessary to make one com-

plete impression.

In the drawings, J is the roller-frame, journaled at j to the bed A. One part of this frame carries the inking rollers, as shown. The connecting-rod j', extending from platen B to the frame J, causes the frame to rock on its journal. As the bed vibrates toward and from the platen this rocking of frame J carries the rollers over the inking-table and the form.

Another important feature of my invention consists in the combination of a bed-andplaten printing-press and a ruling apparatus, so arranged together that the intermittent feed of the press shall also act as the feed of the ruling apparatus, the purpose of this part of my invention being to rule letter and note sheets, bill-heads, &c., at the same time that they are printed.

In the drawings, K indicates a ruling apparatus, too well-known to need description.

This apparatus is best applied so that the points of the ruling-pins shall rest on or near the feed-roll, as shown in the drawings. This combination gives a new capacity to

my press, and enables a very large class of work to be done upon it which before my invention required two separate machines, one

for printing, the other for ruling.

By means of the printing-press, ruling ap- 35 paratus, feed, and cutters, a long strip of paper can be printed, ruled, and cut into sheets at the same operation; and this combination also constitutes an important part of my invention.

What I claim as my invention is-

1. The combination of the two feeds a' a' and a' a', in the manner described, and mechanism, substantially as described, for driving the two feeds at different speeds, the first 45 feed drawing the paper from the drum or other supply and slacking it between the first feed and the form, the other feed drawing the paper thus slacked over the form, all substantially as described.

2. In combination, reciprocating rack bo, slide b10, and adjustable stop b9, substantially

as described.

3. In combination, drum f, shaft f', frictionbrakes f2 f4, and lever f5, all substantially as 55

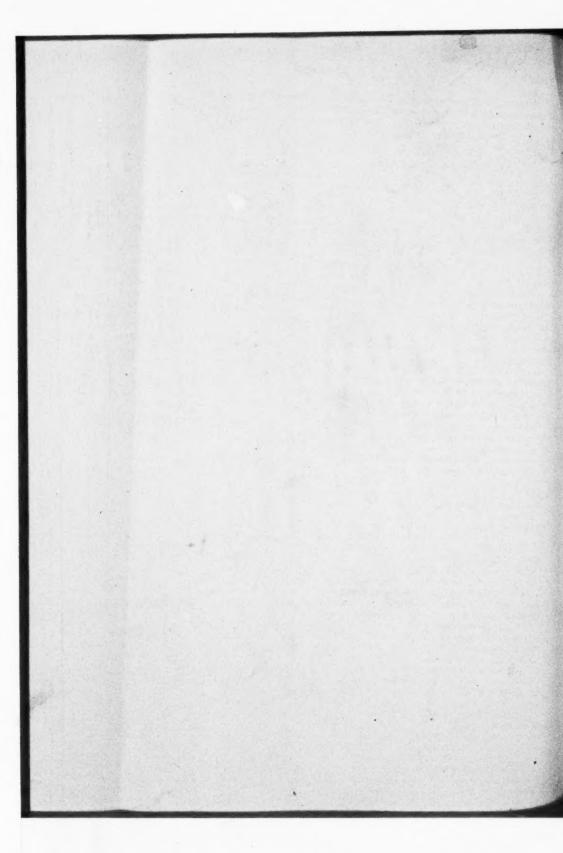
described.

4. In combination, feed-rolls a7 a2 and winding-up device f by means of automatic mechanism operated by the weight of the slack, substantially such as is above described, the 60 weight of the slack, when in excess of the desired amount, acting to permit drum f to revolve.

WELLINGTON P. KIDDER.

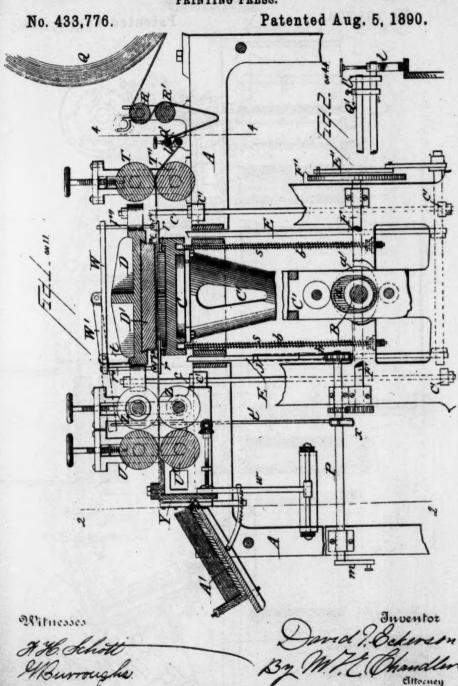
Witnesses:

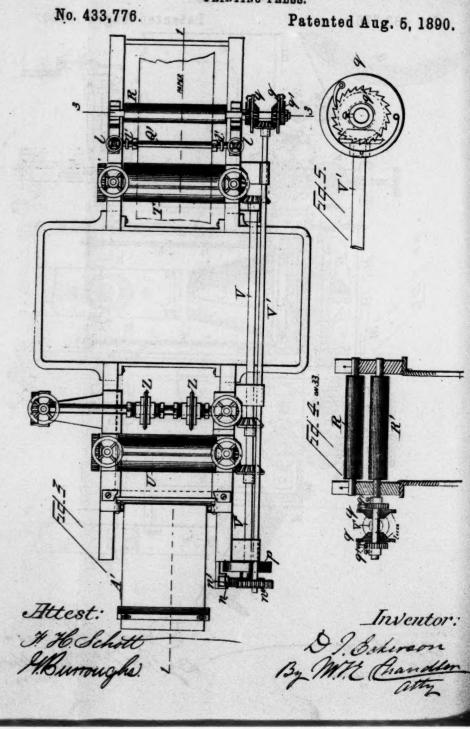
J. E. MAYNADIER, GEORGE O. G. COALE.



Attorney

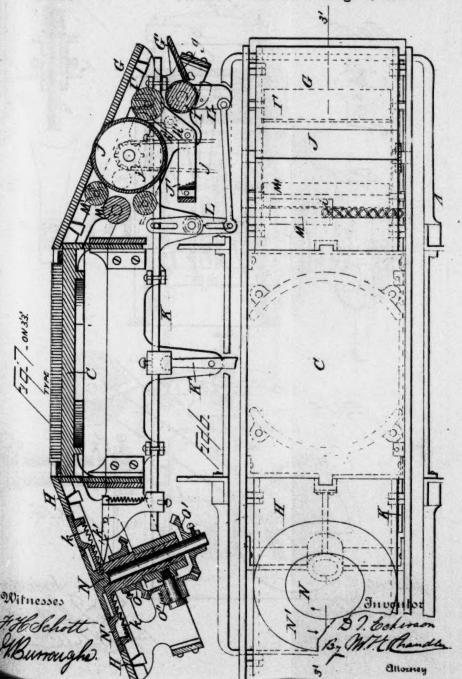
D. I. ECKERSON. PRINTING PRESS.





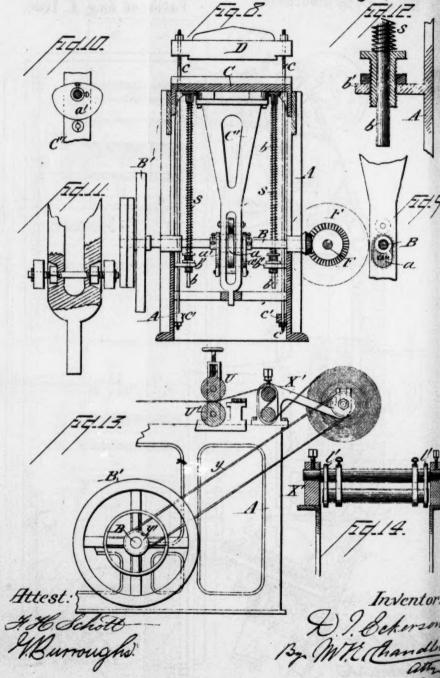
No. 433,776.

Patented Aug. 5, 1890.



No. 433,776.

Patented Aug. 5, 1890.



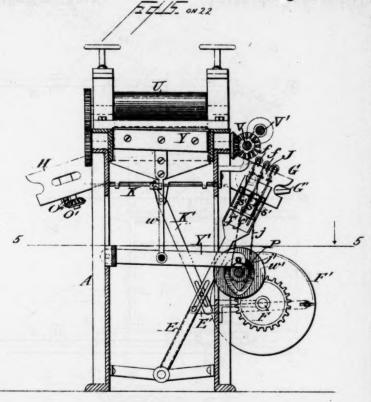
(No Model.)

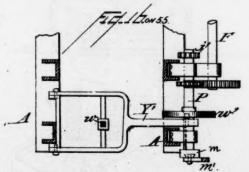
D. I. ECKERSON. PRINTING PRESS.

8 Sheets-Sheet 5.

No. 433,776.

Patented Aug. 5, 1890.



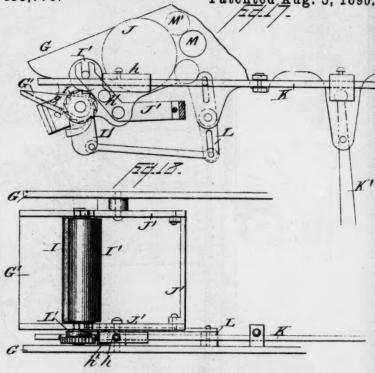


Httest:

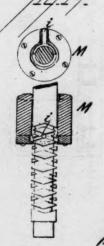
H.Burroughs.

No. 433,776.

Patented Aug. 5, 1890.



Witnesses F. H. Schott IBuroughs.



DI Cokerson
By MIL Chandler

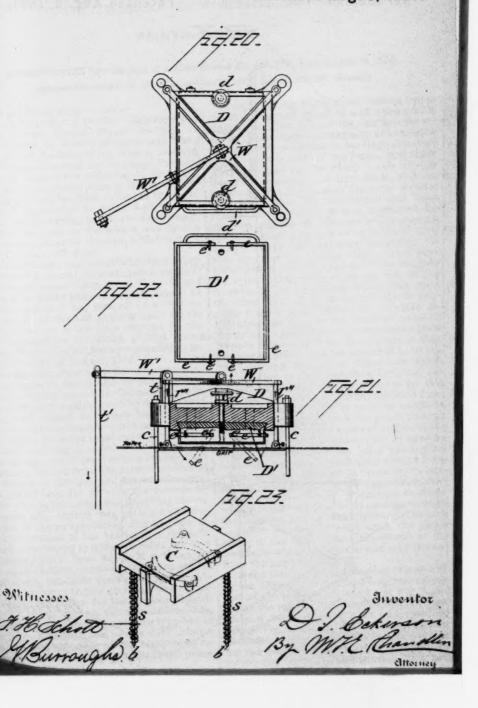
8 Sheets-Sheet 7.

(No Model.)

D. I. ECKERSON.
PRINTING PRESS.

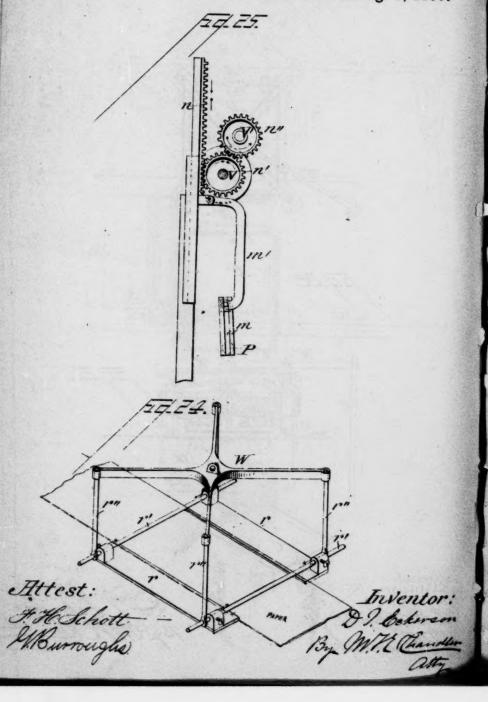
Patented Aug. 5, 1890.

No. 433,776.



No. 433,776.

Patented Aug. 5, 1890.



UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

DAVID I. ECKERSON, OF WORCESTER, NEW YORK.

PRINTING-PRESS.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 433,776, dated August 5, 1890. Application fled September 20, 1888. Renewed June 27, 1890. Berial No. 356,895. (No medel.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, DAVID I. ECKERSON, a citizen of the United States, residing at Worcester, in the county of Otsego and State Worcester, in the county of Otsego and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Printing - Presses; and I do declare the following to be a full, clear, and exact description of the invention, such as will enable others skilled in the art to which it appertains to make and use the same, reference being had to the accompanying drawings, and to the letters and figures of reference marked thereon, which form a part of this specification.

This invention relates to that class of printing-presses designed to print upon a continuous sheet of paper taken from the roll, and which, after being printed, may, if desired, be cut into sheets of any size, all of which opw erations are performed automatically by the machine, which is an improvement on the printing-machine for which United States Letters Patent No. 387,500 were granted to me

on the 7th day of August, 1888. The especial objects of this improvement are to improve the platen by the introduc-tion of a sliding removable impression-plate; to so arrange the paper-feeding devices that there shall always be a slack loop of paper to between the impression-plate and the roll from which the paper is taken; to provide the vertically moving type-bed with counterbal-ance springs, which shall relieve the cam that operates said bed from the greater portion of is the weight of the bed and its attachments; to a slotted cam for driving the devices by which the paper is cut after receiving the impression, said slotted cam giving a positive motion to the reciprocating entting-plate in the both directions; to the inking apparatus, in which a revolving cylinder supplies ink to a stationary plate from which it is taken by the inking-rollers, carried to the type and to a revolving ink-table upon the opposite side tached to the platen for the purpose of hold-ing the paper against the impression-plate, preventing its dropping upon the type-bed as the latter descends, and to the steel rods ar-50 ranged upon the sides of the machine to re-tain the platen in position against the press-am of the type-bed.

In carrying out these improvements I construct a frame of netal, to and upon which all the operative parts of the machine are secured. These consist, essentially, of a suitable driving-shaft revolving in bearings attached to the opposite sides of the frame, said shaft carrying cams, one of which forces up the type-bed in making an impression, and the 60 others draw it down away from the impression-plate after the impression has been made. To this shaft is also connected, by suitable gearing, the devices which operate the feeding-rolls, as well as those which give 65 motion to the paper-cutting apparatus. It also operates the inking-rolls, which pass transversely over the type-bed from the inking rolls. ing cylinder and table upon one side of the machine to the revolving inking disk upon 70 the other side. The inking cylinder is supplied from a suitably-shaped fountain attached to one side of the machine beneath the cylinder and table. The impression-plate is made removable from the platen, so that 75 its elastic surface may be prepared to fit the inequalities of the type or plates from which the printing is executed, thus avoiding the necessity of raising the heavy platen for this purpose. The roll of paper to be printed from 80 is carried upon a shaft in suitable supports at one end of the machine, the paper passing from said roll between a pair of rollers which are connected with another pair by gearing in such a manner that the paper passing be- 85 tween the two sets of rolls shall always form a loop at least sufficient in quantity to supply the paper needed for one impression, thus preventing the danger of tearing or otherwise injuring the sheet in its passage through 90 the machine, as this slack prevents the sudden jerk which will come upon the paper owing to the intermittent movement of the feed-rolls, which supply it to and take it away from the impression-plate.

In the drawings accompanying this specifi-cation, Figure 1 is a vertical longitudinal section of the machine on line 11 of Fig. 3, and shows the relative positions of the principal parts of the press. Fig. 2 is a transverse sec-tion of Fig. 1 on line 4 4, illustrating the con-struction of the friction devices for prevent-ing the drawing of more paper into the press by the feeding-rolls than is needed for each

impression, Fig. 3 is a plan view showing the relative arrangement of the feeding-rolls and their operating devices to the frame of the press. Fig. 4 is a transverse section of the 5 press-frame on line 3 3 of Fig. 3, showing the mechanism employed to give motion to the first pair of feeding-rolls. Fig. 5 is an emlarged side elevation of the pawl-and-ratchet devices employed to give motion to said rolls.

10 Fig. 6 is a plan of a portion of the press-frame, the type-bed, and inking-tables. Fig. 7 is a vertical section of the same on line 3'3' of Fig. 6. Fig. 8 is a transverse vertical section through the press-frame, showing the platen 15 and its holding-rods as well as the type-bed

and the mechanism by which it is vertically reciprocated. Fig. 9 is a side elevation of the lower part of the type-bed support with the cam and shaft by which it is raised in mak-20 ing an impression. Fig. 10 is a similar view

of one of the cams by which the type-bed is brought down after the impression is made. Fig. 11 is a view, partly in section, of the lower end of the type-bed support, showing the friction-rollers on which the cams that

bring down the type-bed act. Fig. 12 is a sectional view of a portion of the press-frame with one of the adjusting devices for the springs which support the type-bed. Fig. 13 30 is a side elevation of a part of the press, illus-

trating the manner of winding the paper after once passing through the press. Fig. 14 shows the friction device for regulating the strain upon the paper during the operation of wind-

15 ing. Fig. 15 is a transverse section on line 2 2 of Fig. 1, and shows the means employed for operating the inking devices. Fig. 16 is a horizontal section on line 5 5 of Fig. 15 and further illustrates these means. Fig. 17 is a

40 side view of one of the ink-tables and the means employed for carrying the ink from the fountain thereto. Fig. 18 is a bottom plan further illustrating these devices. 19 shows the means employed for the purpose

15 of giving an endwise movement to one or more of the ink-distributing rolls. Fig. 20 is a top or plan view of the platen and lever for operating the gripping devices. Fig. 21 is a vertical section of the platen, showing the

50 relative positions of the platen, the gripping devices, and the removable impression-plate. Fig. 22 is a bottom plan of the impressionplate. Fig. 23 is a perspective view of the type-bed and its supporting-springs. Fig. 24

55 is a perspective view of the gripping devices detached from the platen. Fig. 25 is a side elevation, on an enlarged scale, of the mech-

anism which operates the feed-rolls.

In the several figures, A represents the frame of the press, consisting, essentially, of two side pieces placed at a suitable distance from each other and firmly united by cross-bars bolted to the side pieces. This frame carries in suitable journal-boxes the shaft B, 65 which crosses the frame, and is provided at one end with a tight and loose pulley upon which the belt runs, through which power is

communicated to the movable parts of the press, and it may also be provided with a hy-wheel B', which equalizes the motion, caning the machine to run steadily.

Midway between the two sides of the frame is secured to the shaft B a cam a, which is volves in a slot formed in the standard C. which carries the type-bed C. This cam a revolves in contact with an anti-friction relier secured in the slot above it and serves to raise the type-bed for the purpose of making an impression.

At each side of the standard C' is secured upon the shaft B a cam a', which revolves in contact with anti-friction rollers journaled upon the standard beneath said cams, which serve the purpose of drawing down the typebed after the impression is made. By the use of these separate cams great speed is permitted, as the movement of the standard and type-bed is positive in both directions.

The type bed C is securely bolted to the top of the standard C', and is guided in its recip rocations by depending guide-pieces, which are allowed a vertical movement in guidinggrooves formed in the cross-bars which con-

nect the side pieces of the frame.

From the under side of the type-bed and attached thereto are two or more rods b, which extend downward, their ends passing through lugs b', projecting from the sides of the frame. These rods b b between the type-bed and lugs are surrounded by the coiled springs s s, the tension of which is adjusted by sleeve-nuts passing through the lugs b'. These springs are so adjusted as to nearly or quite support the weight of the type-bed and standards, thus relieving the cam a of the great weight it would otherwise be forced to carry, avoiding wear of the frictional surfaces, and by the almost perfect balance of the reciprocating parts allowing the type-bed to be operated at a great speed.

Secured in position above the type-bed is the platen D. In order to hold this platen firmly to resist the upward pressure of the type-bed in making the impression, four rods cc, preferably of steel, pass through its projecting corners downward and engage with the lugs c'c', projecting inward from the lower part of the frame. Suitable nuts screwed upon these rods are used net only to hold the platen, but also to adjust it to a position parallel with the upper surface of the type-bed.

As the surface which receives the impression from the type-bed must necessarily be of a yielding nature, and owing to the use of different kinds of type and the insertion of 1 cuts to the surface of the type to be printed, it becomes necessary to fit the surface against which the impression is taken to this unevenness, and as the platen is too heavy to be moved readily so as to admit of the adjust-ment of its lower surface, the difficulty is overcome by providing the platen with a re-movable impression-plate. In order to afford a ready means of removal, this plate D' is inserted in dovetail grooves in the under side of the platen, and is firmly secured when in its proper position by means of sc was d d, which pass down through the platen and serew into the plate. (See Fig. 21.) A handle d' is also attached to the plate, by which it can be drawn out of the grooves of the platen after the securing-screws have been removed. The cloth or other elastic surface to covering the under side of the impression-plate is held in place by clamps ee, secured to the plate by the pivots e'. These clamps can be swung down from the sides of the plate, thus releasing the covering, but when if forced back into a horizontal position stretch and secure the covering on the face of the

The apparatus employed for applying and properly distributing ink to the face of the type consists of a swinging lever E, pivoted at its lower end to a cross-piece secured to the opposite sides of the frame. This lever carries at its upper end a series of inking-rollers ff, two or more in number, that are attached to the lever E by sliding rods f'f'. These rods are each surrounded by a light spiral spring s', the tension of which keeps the rollers always in contact with the surface of the type and the ink-tables, although said surgo faces are not the arc of a circle the radius of which is the length of the lever, but merely approximate to such an arc by inclining the tables at an angle to the surface of the type.

In order to communicate the desired swinging movement to the lever E, it is connected by means of the pitman E' with an adjustable crank-pin in the crank-wheel F', mounted upon the shaft F. This shaft revolves in suitable journal-bearings attached to one side to of the frame, and lies at right angles to the main shaft B, from which it receives motion through the agency of bevel-gearing, Fig. 8, said gearing being so proportioned that the shaft F shall make one revolution to two of the main shaft, thus causing the rollers ff to travel once across the face of the type to each revolution of said main shaft.

The ink-tables G and II are secured to the frame at an angle of twenty degrees or thereo about to the face of the type, their inner upper ends approaching the level of the surface of the type when the same is at its lowest point or farthest from the impressionplate above it, so as to leave room between 55 said type and plate for the free passage of the rollers f, which deposit a fresh sup-ply of ink on the faces of the type at each passage over them. These rollers ff receive their supply of ink from the table G, beneath which is an ink-fountain G'. This ink-fountain carries the intermittently-revolving roll I. close to the surface of which is the edge of the spring-plate g, adjusted by means of set-screws passing through the bottom of the 65 fountain. The position of this plate with relation to the roll I regulates the flow of ink from the fountain to the roll.

Beneath the plate G, and projecting slightly above the surface of the same through a slot formed in said plate for its passage, is the roll J, and journaled in an oscillating frame J', between the rolls I and J, is the transfer-roll I', which takes the ink from the roll I and transfers it to the roll J. Motion is communicated to roll I' and oscillating frame J' by the reciprocating rod K, which traverses the press transversely and is actuated by the lever K', pivoted to a cross-piece of the frame, its lower end connected by an adjustable pin with the lever E and its upper end-by a ball-socket joint with the rod K.

To move the roll I intermittently, the rod K is connected to the upper end of a swinging lever L, and the lower end of this lever by a suitable connection with the lower end of the pawl-lever L', the pawl of which engages with a ratchet-wheel upon one end of

the shaft of the roll I.

To oscillate the frame J', an adjustable sleeve h is placed upon the rod K in such a 90 position that when the rod moves in one direction the beveled end of the sleeve strikes an anti-friction roll h', pivoted to the frame, depressing the roll I' until it contacts with the surface of roll I. Then, as the rod re- 95 verses its movement the sleeve releases the friction-roll, and the weight of the rear por-tion of the frame J' elevates the roll I' into contact with roll J, and consequently transfers a portion of the ink it receives from the 100 roll I to said roll J. In order to still further equalize the distribution of ink over the surface of this roll J, an equalizing roll M is employed. The shaft of this roll is provided for a portion of its length with right and left 10 screw-threads, and the roll, which is shorter than the others, is given a reciprocating motion upon its shaft by means of the swivelnut i, which travels back and forth in said threads, carrying the roll with it. An additional roll M' may be so placed as to engage with the equalizing-roll M, as may also other rolls in such number as may be found necessary to perfectly distribute the ink. All of these last-named rolls are rotated by contact 1 with the surface of the roll J, which in turn receives motion through the pitch-chain g from the sprocket-wheel j' upon the shaft P, connected by spur-gears with the shaft F in such a manner that the shaft P shall make two revolutions to one of the shaft F. As the ink-rollers f pass over the type from the table G to the table H upon the opposite side of the machine, they not only deposit ink upon the faces of the type, but carry a portion to the table H, which is provided with two rotating disks—a central one N and an annular disk N'—that surrounds the central disk, the faces of both being in the same plane as the remainder of the table H. angular disk is provided with a downwardlyprojecting sleeve that is journaled in the frame which supports the table. Said disk also carries a downwardly-projecting annular

433,778

ratchet k, with which the spring-pawi k', carried by the reciprocating rod K, engages. The reciprocations of this rod therefore impart a rotary movement to the annular disk 5 N'. This rotary movement is communicated to the inner disk N by means of the mitergear O, secured to the sleeve of said disk, and from this gear to the gear O' upon the downwardly-projecting shaft of the disk N

and from this gear to the gear O' upon the downwardly-projecting shaft of the disk N to by an intermediate gear O'', revolving loosely upon a pin projecting from the journal-bearing which supports both disks. It will therefore be seen that from this arrangement of gearing both disks have a rotary motion, but

15 in opposite directions, causing them to properly mix and distribute the ink deposited on them by the rollers ff, or which may be re-

ceived from any other source.

The paper which supplies the press is taken from a roll Q, carried on suitable supports at one end of the press-frame, and passes over the roll R, thence backward between said roll and the roll R', dropping downward from the latter and forming a depending loop between 25 it and the friction device Q'. This friction device consists of two smooth bars placed parallel to each other and extending across the frame, the lower bar being longer than the upper and having its ends held adjustably by 30 means of set-screws in the brackets I, which are in turn secured to the press-frame, the upper bar being retained in the desired position with relation to the lower one by the connections l'. From this friction device the pa-35 per passes to the first pair of intermittentlyrotating feed-rolls T and T', thence through
the press between the type-bed and impression-plate to the rolls U and U', from which it goes to the receiving-table at the end of the to machine.

In order to give the several pairs of feedrolls their proper motion, a slotted erank m is secured to the outer end of the shaft P. pitman m' connects a movable pin in the slot-45 ted crank with the rack-barn. This rack-bar engages with a pinion n', loosely mounted upon one end of the shaft V. This pinion connects with the ratchet-wheel p, attached to said shaft, so that a movement of the rack 50 n in one direction will rotate the shaft V; but its return or reverse movement acts only on the pinion n', revolving it upon said shaft. At suitable points on this shaft V are placed bevel or miter gears, which engage correspond-55 ing gears on the shafts of the feed-rolls Tand U, the corresponding rolls T' and U' being driven by spur-gears attached to the opposite
end of the roll-shafts and engaging in the ordinary manner. It will be seen that by this
60 method of operating the feed-rolls their movement is intermittent and that the amount of auch movement is determined by the position of the adjustable crank-pin in the slotted crank m. This intermittent motion of these 65 feed-rolls is rendered necessary by the fact that the paper must be stationary during the time it is receiving the impression, and that its forward movement must occur while the type being a inked. It will be observed that the role R mand R' are but half the diameter of the other. Therefore to allow the same length of paper to pass between them that passes between the large rolls at each movement of the same their motions must be nearly or quite continuous. To accomplish this result, an additional whaft V' is placed above and parallel with the shaft V. This shaft V is provided with a spur-gear n" and which engages with the gear n" upon the end of the shaft V. As this gear n" receives an alternate movement in opposite directions from the rack n, the gear n" and the shaft V', with which they are connected, partake of the same movement.

In order to convert this into a nearly or

quite continuous rotary movement of the rolls R R', the shaft of the latter is extended across the end of the shaft V' and provided with two pawl-carrying miter-gears q, that revolve loosely upon the roll-shaft and engage with a similar gear upon the end of the shaft V'. Secured upon the roll-shaft outside the gears qure the ratchets q', with which the pawls upon said gears engage. The result of this construction is to rotate the roll R'continuously in one direction at a rate of speed that shall give the same forward movement to its periphery dur-ing a revolution of the shafts P as the large rolls make during the same time. Thus paper is continuously passing from the roll Q falling down beneath the roll R' in a loop which is taken up at each movement of the intermittently-moving feed-rolls. By this means the jerking movement of the feed-rolls upon the roll of paper is obviated and all danger of tearing it from this cause done away with. As the paper would be liable to sag down from the impression-plate when the type-bed recedes, thus getting in the way of the ink-rollers, and as it is also necessary that it should be held firmly in contact with said plate at the time of muking the impression, a gripping device is provided, which consists of two parallel plates rr, that pass beneath the opposite edges of the sheet of paper, and are (see Fig. 24) retained in the desired position with relation to the paper ssing through the press by set-screws that allow of their adjustment upon the rods r' r' to any distance needed to enable said plates to engage the edges of the paper and hold it firmly against the impression-plate while the impression is being made. They then release the paper and allow it to be drawn forward for the next impression. In order to accomplish this, the ends of the rods r' are connected by means of vertical rods r" with the spider W above the plates. A lever W' is pivotally connected with this spider, having its fulcrum upon a post t, which projects upward from the platen. The rear end of the lever W' is connected by the rod t' with an eccentric a upon the shaft P. The rotation of this shaft corresponds with the number of im-

pressions. Consequently by placing the eccentric in the proper position the gripping device is made to hold the paper against the impression-plate to receive the impression and release it when it is to be drawn forward by the feed-rolls. A suitable cutting-off blade Y is placed at the end of the frame and is operated by the bifurcated lever Y' with which it is connected by a pitman w. The lever Y' is fulcrumed at one side of the frame, and is connected at its opposite end with the grooved cam w' upon the shaft P. It will be observed that the feeding-rolls U and U' are mounted upon an adjustable carriage is that may be moved upon the main frame, together with the cutting-blade, by means of screws to suit the distance it is desired to feed forward the paper at each imprint

As it is sometimes desirable to use a sheet wide enough for two or more imprints, rotary shears Z are placed in front of the feed-rolls The shafts upon which these shears are applied extend beyond the frame of the press at one side a sufficient distance to allow of their being moved endwise on the shaft out of the path of the paper when it is desired to have the imprint take up the full width of the same. These rotary shears are driven, like the feed-rolls U and U', by miterp gears from the shaft V, and consequently have the same movement as said rolls.

e

8 12

d

0

8

- 12

As it is sometimes desirable to print the paper upon both sides, a means is provided for so doing by removing the adjustable table 35 A' at the end of the machine and substituting in place thereof the devices shown in Figs. 13 and 14 of the drawings. These consist of a friction device similar to that employed at the opposite of the machine to retard the forward motion of the paper before it is taken by the feed-rolls, suitable brackets X' for earing said friction device, and the shafts upon which the paper is to be rolled, which shaft is revolved by the belt y from a suitable pulley y' upon the driving-shaft B of the machine. After the paper has passed through the press and wound into a roll, said roll is transferred to the supports of the roll Q and allowed to again go through the press, the opposite side so of the paper from that which has already been printed being submitted to the action of the

Having thus described my invention, I elain as new, and desire to secure by Letters

55 Patent, the following:

1. In a printing-press printing from a roll of continuous paper, the combination, with the continuously-rotating rolls R R to receive the paper, and the intermittently-rotating rolls T T and U U to carry the paper over the type-bed and about double the diameter of the rolls R R', of the intermittently-rotating shaft V, connected to the shafts of the rolls U' and T' by bevel-gearing, and the shaft V', 65 connected to the shaft of the roll R' by a fixed

bevel-gear on the end of the shaft V', and the loose ratchet-and-pawl-controlled bevelgears q on the shaft of the rolls and engaging the fixed gear on opposite sides, substantially

as specified.
2. The communation of the continuouslyrotating rolls, the intermittently-rotating rolls, and a friction device secured to the frame of the machine between the continuously-rotating and intermittently-rotating 75 rolls, and consisting of the brackets l, secured to the press-frame, the lower transverse bar, with its ends held adjustably in said brackets by set-screws, and the upper transverse har parallel to the lower har and attached thereto 80 by the connections l' substantially as specified.

3. In a printing-press, the combination of the vertical reciprocating type-bed, the stand-ard thereof having a suitable longitudinal 85 slot in its lower portion, the main shaft B, passing through said slot, the cam a, mounted on the main shaft in the slot and bearing upward against an anti-friction roller journaled within the slot, and the cams a', mounted on 90 the shaft B and bearing downward against anti-friction rollers mounted on the shaft journaled in the type-bed standards, by means of which cams both the upward and downward movement of the type-bed is rendered posi- 95

tive, substantially as specified.

4. In a printing-press, the combination, with the main frame having the lugs b' provided with threaded perforations, and the stand-ards C' of said bed moving in guides in the 100 main frame and having longitudinal slots in its lower portion, of the main shaft B, the guide-rods b, the externally-threaded auts engaging the perforations in the lugs b', the spring surrounding the rods h between said 105 nuts and the type-bed, and the cams a', mounted on the main shaft in the slot in the standard and bearing upward against a suitable anti-friction roller, substantially as specified:

5. The combination, with the type-bed and type-bed-guide standards, of the guide-rods b. the externally-threaded nuts sliding on said guide-rods and engaging in threaded perforations of the lugs b' of the main frame, and 115 the coiled springs surrounding the guide-rods between the said nuts and the type-bed, sub-

stantially as specified.

6. The combination of the vertically-moving type-bed, its balance-springs, the cams 120 for raising said type-bed and making the impression, and the cams for withdrawing the same arranged as shown and described.

7. In a printing-press, the combination, with the main frame, inking-rollers, and operative 125 mechanism therefor constructed substantially as described, of the slotted table G, the inkwell G', the plate g, secured thereto and set by an adjusting-serew; the rotatory ink-roll I, the rotatory inking-cylinder J, and the 13c

vibratory ink-distributing roller I', all constructed and arranged substantially as and for

the purpose specified.

8. In a printing-press, the inking-cylinder 5 and slotted stationary table, in combination with the traveling distributing-rolls, the rotating inking-disks, and stationary table upon the opposite side of the machine, as set forth.

9. In a printing-press, the combination, with to the main frame, the operative nechanism, and inking-rollers actuated thereby, all constructed substantiany as described, of the cylinder J, the roll I, having a ratchet at one end, the ink-well provided with the adjustable 15 plate g, the vibrating roll I', the pivoted vi-

brating lever K', the reciprocating rod K, the oscillating frame J', upon which the roll I' is mounted, the adjustable sleeve h, mounted on the rod K, the anti-friction roller h', mounted 20 on the oscillating frame to engage said sleeve, the swinging lever L, connected to the rod K, the pivoted lever L', provided with pawl to

engage the ratchet on the roll I, and a suitable link-rod connecting the levers L L', all 25 constructed and arranged substantially as and

for the pu-pose specified.

10. In a printing-press, the combination, with the platen and impression-plate, of the spider W, the rods r² with their upper ends 30 secured in perforations in the ends of the arms of the spider, the rods r' with their end parts inserted in openings in the lower ends of the rods r^2 , the plates r, laterally adjustable on the rods r^2 , and mechanism, substan-35 tially as described, whereby the spider and its attachments are automatically raised and lowered at the proper times, for the purpose

11. In a printing-press, the platen and its 40 impression-plate, in combination with the parallel gripping plates engaging opposite sides of the paper, the lever by which said plates are carried, and the eccentric driven by the shaft P, which gives motion to the le-45 verand actuates the gripping-plates, substan-

tially as set forth.

specified.

12. In a printing-press, the combination, with the main frame, inking-rollers, and operative mechanism therefor, of the rotating ink-50 ing-cylinder passing out of a slot in the inking-

table C, the inking-roll M', turned by contact with said cylinder and equal in length to the cylinder, and the reciprocating distributingroll M, about one-half as long as the cylinder, turned by contact with the roll M' and mov-

ing back and forth on its shaft by means of the sarew-grooves in said shaft, and the swiveled nut or rider z', traversing said gree alternately in opposite directions, subsh

tially as specified.

13. In a printing-press, the combination with the reciprocating rack and shaft V, op ating the intermittently-revolving food-roll, of the shaft V' and its connecting-gear for operating the continuously-revolving rolls, as 6

set forth.

14. In a printing-press, the vertically-reciprocating type-bed and its slotted standard in combination with the main shaft passing through said standard, the cams for raising the standard and type-bed, and the cams for drawing down the same, all arranged and operating as shown and described, to give a positive movement to the type-bed, as set

15. In a printing-press, the combination, with the main frame, inking - rollers, and operative mechanism, all constructed substantially as described, of the table II, the central rotating disk having a shank projecting inward from its center, the annular disk having a sleeve that surrounds the shank of the central disk and provided with the annular ratchet k, the loose bevel-gear O^2 , the bevel-gears O O', secured, respectively, to the sleeve 8of the annular disk and to the shank of the central disk, the reciprocating rod K, and the spring-controlled pawl k', pivoted on a bracket adjustably secured to said rod and engaging the ratchet k, substantially as a specified

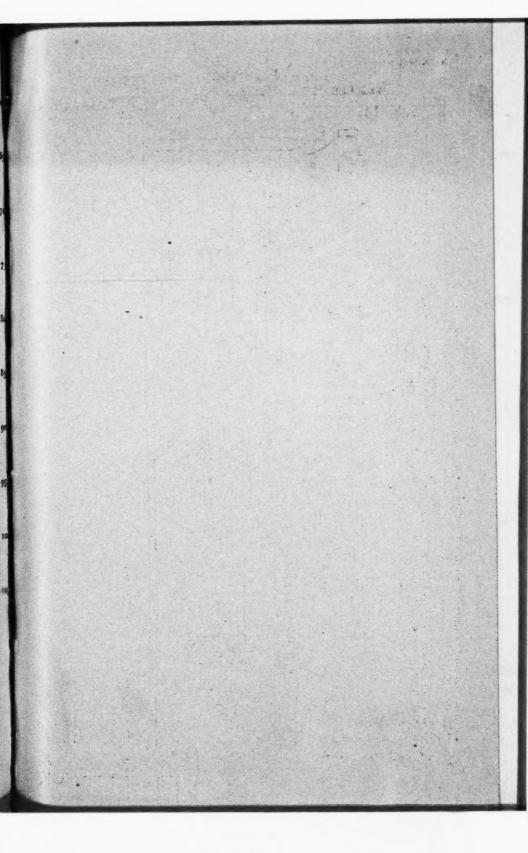
16. The combination of the shaft P, having the slotted crank m on one end, the pitman m', having at one end a swiveled block adjustable-in the slot of said crank, the rack n, g attached to the other end of said pitman and moving in suitable guides, the shafts $\nabla \nabla'$, the gear wheel or pinion n', loose on the shaft V' and engaging the rack n, so that it is moved thereby alternately in opposite directions as 1 the rack reciprocates, the ratchet moving with the pinion n' and moving the shaft V at intervals in one direction only, and the pinion n², meshing with the pinion n', and consequently moving the shaft V', to which it is at tached, alternately in opposite directions, substautially as specified.

In testimony whereof I affix my signature in presence of two witnesses.

DAVID I. ECKERSON.

Witnesses:

G. BURROUGHS, N. DUMONT.

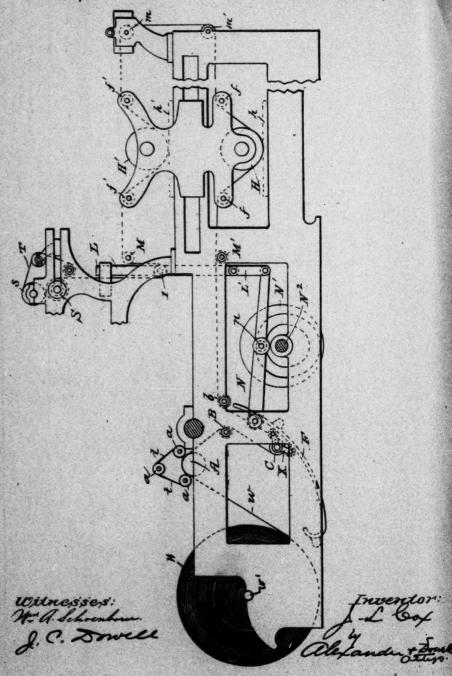


J. L. COX.

WEB FEEDING DEVICE FOR PRINTING PRESSES.

No. 508,814.

Patented Nov. 14, 1893.



UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

JOSEPH L. COX, OF BATTLE CREEK, MICHIGAN, ASSIGNOR TO THE DUPLEX PRINTING PRESS COMPANY, OF SAME PLACE.

WEB-FEEDING DEVICE FOR PRINTING-PRESSES.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 508,814; dated November 14, 1893. Application filed December 6, 1892. Serial No. 454,277. (No madel.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, JOSEPH L. Cox, of Battle Creek, in the county of Calhoun and State of Michigan, have invented certain new and aseful improvements in Web-Feeding Devices for Printing-Presses; and I do hereby declare that the following is a full, clear, and exact description thereof, reference being had to the accompanying drawing, and to the letters of reference marked thereon, which form part of

this specification.

This invention relates to web printing presses, and its object is to provide an improved system of feeding the web through the press se that it may be positively and con-tinuously drawn from the paper roll into the press and positively and continuously delivered both during and after the making of an impression thereon, and it is especially designed for use in connection with such presses M are shown and described in Letters Patent of the United States, granted to me as follows: No. 459,813, dated September 22, 1891, and No. 478,503, dated July 5, 1892.

The drawing represents a diagrammatical side elevation of a perfecting press, illustrating the improved web feeding and shifting

The type beds h, h' are arranged parallel, one over the other, and the impression cylinders H, H' co-operate therewith. The web is ed in from the feed roll, over a feeding and looping device hereinafter described, to and over a web guide roller M', then between the cylinder H and bed h, to and under a guide roller m', up over a guide roller m, back be-tween cylinder H' and bed h' to and over a roller M, then under a looping roller l, all substantially as in Patent No. 478,503 aforesaid, and then up over a delivery roller Sover which it is drawn by coacting rollers s and coaxing tapes T, substantially as set forth in my Patent No. 459,818. The cylinders and the web guide rollers f, f' are preferably reciprocated over the bed. by means not shown, substantially for instance as described in my aforesaid patents. The web looping roller lis journaled in reciprocating bars L which are connected at their lower ends by links L' to the free ends of vibrating levers N which are pivoted at their other ends to the main | fed into the press by the feed devices, and

frame, and are provided at an intermediate point with a wrist pin n which enters a cam groove in a wheel N' journaled on a suitably driven shaft N² by which means the levers 55 are vibrated. This mechanism is substantially the same in construction and operation as that which is fully shown and described in my application for Letters Patent, Serial No. 444,318, filed August 27, 1892, and need 60

not be further described herein.

The web w of paper is led from the roll W which is mounted in supports w' to a feed roller A over which it is drawn by means of coaxing tapes t, t, running over rollers a, a, 65 The coaxing tapes t operate substantially like the delivering tapes T and are driven continuously during the operation of the press by any suitable mechanism as belts or gearing from any suitable source of power, as 70 from the main shaft. The drive mechanism for said tapes is not shown, for its construction is not part of present invention, and can be readily supplied and understood by any one skilled in the art. From the feed devices 75 the web is led over a roller B journaled on the main frame under a governor roller C and then over a roller b journaled on the frame beside roller B to roller M'. The web is thus looped under the governor roller C, which as 80 shown is journaled in a wheeled carriage X traveling up and down on curved bars F attached to the main frame constructed substantially like that described in my Letters Patent No. 370,321, of September 20, 1887, and 85 therefore a more detailed description thereof is unnecessary. This governor roller C is a gravity roller, and takes up any slack of the infed web during the taking of an impression, and maintains the tension of the web by its 90 weight. It may be otherwise mounted or guided provided it is left free to take up the slack in web.

The operation of the press is similar to that of the press in Patent No. 478,503, but in 95 place of a positively actuating looping roller, I employ the idler gravity governor roller described, and different feed and delivery mech-

anism.

The parts are so adjusted that the amount 100 of web positively drawn from the roll W and

the amount of web positively drawn out of the press by the delivery devices will be equal. While the impressions are being taken, the web is nipped between the heds and cylin-5 ders and is of course held thereby, but during this time the roller l is raised at such a speed that the loop of web thereunder is paid out to the delivery fast enough to prevent tearing of the web, and at the same time the governor roller C (which is supported by the loop of web thereunder) descends and takes up all the web fed in during the taking of an impression, holding the web always at a constant and uniform tension. As soon as 15 the impression is taken the roller l is drawn down and in so doing pulls forward through the press and over the beds the amount of web which was infed and taken up by roll C during the taking of an impression. This 26 amount of web in connection with what is at the same time fed out by the delivery is enough for an impression plus margins.

By the employment of coaxing tapes, rupture of the web is prevented, if for any reason at travel of the web is hindered in its course

through the press.

As the above described systems of feeding may be applied to various forms of presses, I do not limit myseif wholly to the employment o thereof only with the presses indicated and hereir described.

Having described my invention, what I claim as new, and desire to secure by Letters

Patent thereon, is-

1. The combination in a printing press of two type beds arranged one over the other, and two cylinders cooperating therewith for producing an impression, a positively operated web feed, and a gravity governor roller adapted to take up slack between the feel and printing mechanisms, and web guide rollers with a web delivery mechanism, and a positively operated web looping roller interposed between the printing mechanism and the delivery and supported independently of the web, all constructed and arranged to operate substantially as described.

2. The combination in a printing press of mechanism for taking an impression, and web guide rollers, a continuously acting delivery mechanism, a positively reciprocated web looping and shifting roller between the printing mechanism and the delivery, a positive web feed, and a gravity governor roller, interposed between the feed and printing mechanism, and running on curved ways, adapted to take up slack in and tension the web, sub-

stantially as described.

3. The combination of two type beds arranged one above the other, two cylinders coacting with said beds, and web guide rollen for directing the web successively between said beds and cylinders; with a continuously acting web delivery mechanism, a positively reciprocated web looping and shifting roller between the printing mechanism and delivery, a positive web feed, and a gravity governor roller interposed between the feed and printing mechanism, and running on curved ways, adapted to both take up slack in and tension the web, substantially as described:

In testimony that I claim the foregoing as my own I affix mysignature in presence of two

witnesses.

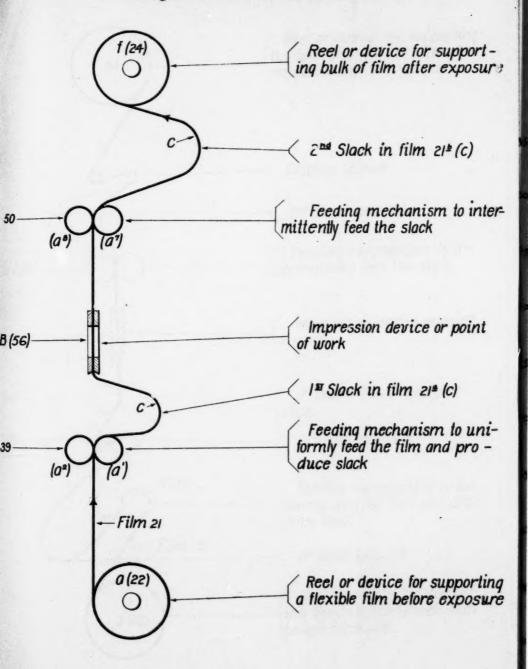
JOSEPH L. COX.

3

Witnesses:

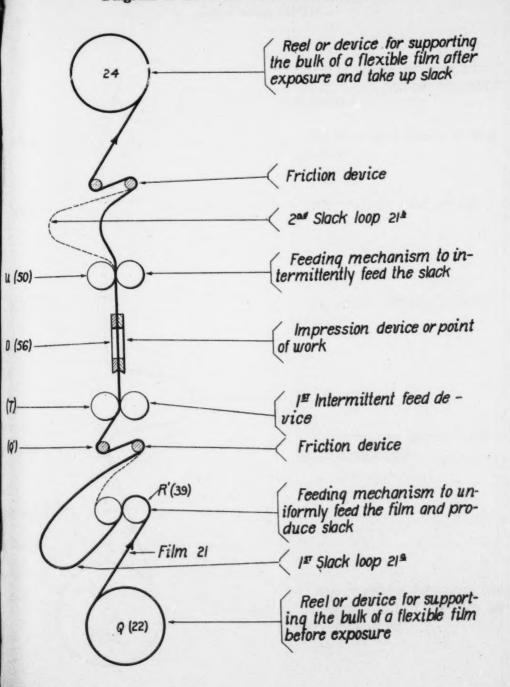
ALEX. S. STEUART, ARTHUR E. DOWELL.

DEFENDANTS' EXHIBIT No. 8 Diagram of Kidder Pat. 224440

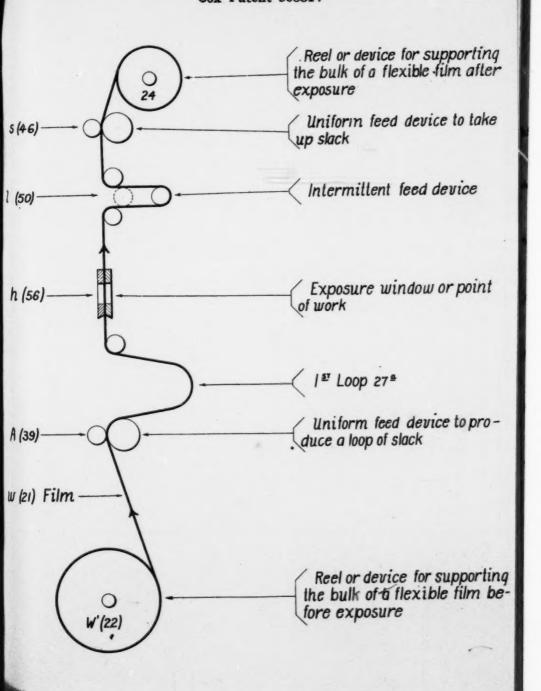


CALL THE PARTY BUSINESS

DEFENDANTS' EXHIBIT No. 9 Diagram of Eckerson U. S. Patent 433776



DEFENDANTS' EXHIBIT No. 10 Cox Patent 508814



A. LE PRINCE.

METHOD OF AND APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ANIMATED PICTURES OF NATURAL SCENERY AND LIFE.

No. 376,247.

Patented Jan. 10, 1888.

Fig. I.

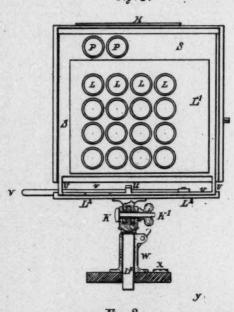


Fig. 2.

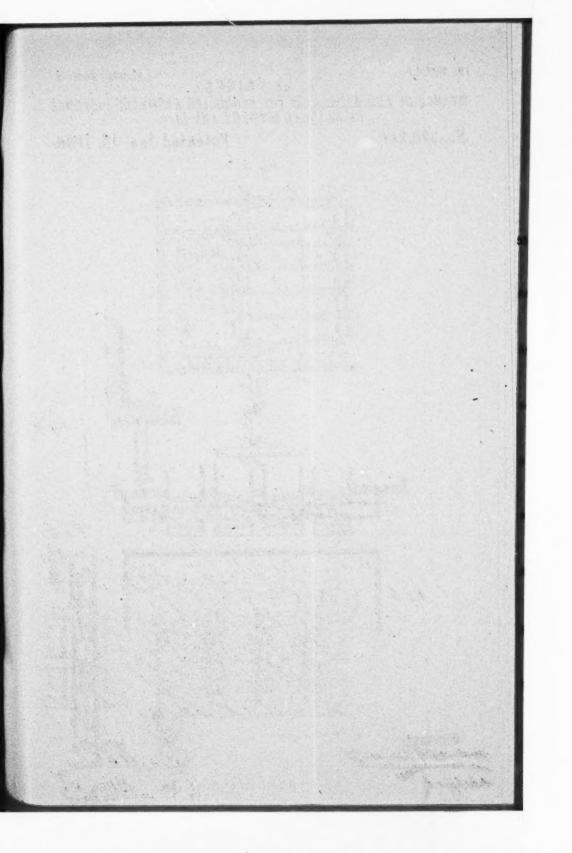
Fig. 2.

Fig. 2.

Fig. 2.

A. J. A. J.

WITNESSES: Sohnello Deemer J bobadgrick BY Munn to

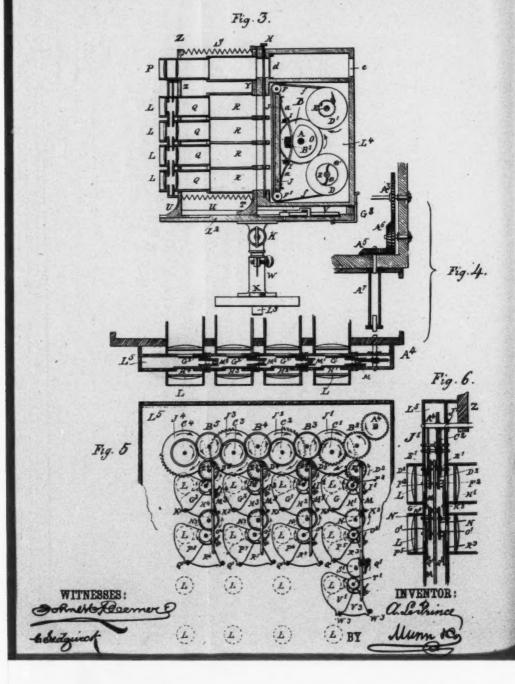


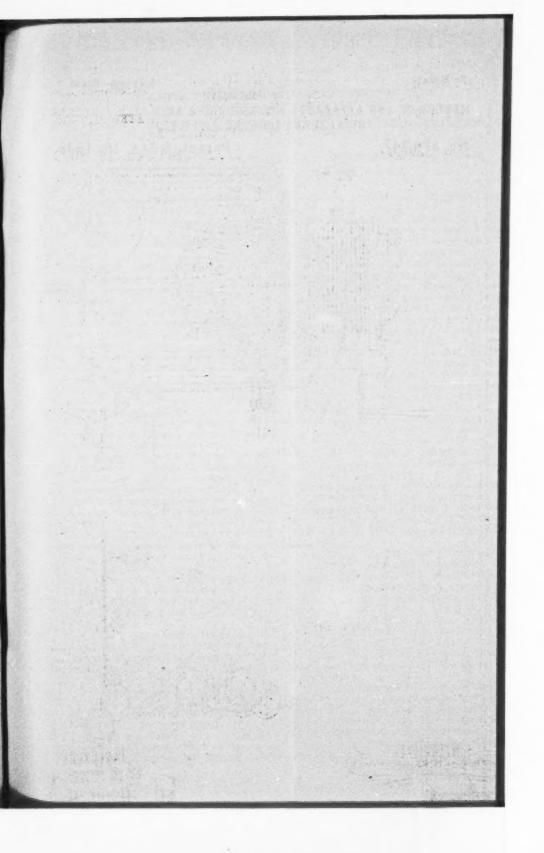
A. LE PRINCE.

METHOD OF AND APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ANIMATED PICTURES OF NATURAL SCENERY AND LIFE.

No. 376,247.

Patented Jan. 10, 1888.





(No Model.)

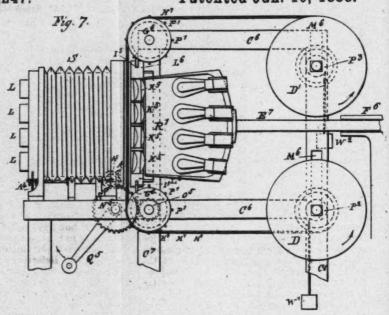
A. LE PRINCE.

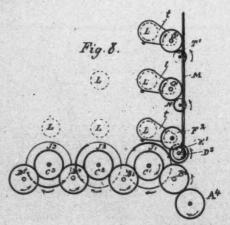
3 Sheets-Sheet 3.

METHOD OF AND APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ANIMATED PICTURES OF NATURAL SCENERY AND LIFE.

No. 376,247.

Patented Jan. 10, 1888.





WITNESSES:

INVENTOR: a. L. Rince

BY Munn to

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

AUGUSTIN LE PRINCE, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

METHOD OF AND APPARATUS FOR PRODUCING ANIMATED PICTURES OF NATURAL SCENERY AND LIFE.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 376,247, dated January 10, 1988

Application filed November 2, 1886. Serial No. 217,669. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, AUGUSTIN LE PRINCE, of the city county, and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in the Method of and Apparatus for Producing Animated Pictures of Natural Scenery and Life on Glass, Canvas, or other Prepared Surfaces, of which the following is a full, clear, and exact description.

In order to carry out my method I provide an apparatus consisting of a receiver or photocamera and a deliverer or stereopticon adapted to throw the transparent pictures obtained by means of the said camera or receiver in the 15 same order and time in which they were taken, as will be hereinafter fully described and

The transparent pictures thrown in quick succession on a finely ground plate glass or so other suitable material will produce on the eye of the spectator the same effect or impression as the objects thomselves when in motion in front of the "camera-receiver."

Reference is to be had to the accompanying'
35 drawings, forming a part of this specification,
in which similar letters of reference indicate
corresponding parts in all the figures.

corresponding parts in all the figures.

Figure 1 represents a front view of the receiver, showing a set of sixteen lenses, L, set in the shutter-box L', fixed upon the front of bellows-camera S, resting on bed L' and sliding on feet U by means of lever V. The lower part shows a section of the knee joint K and friction-socket W with air-level X, allowing 35 the camera to revolve on spindle L' and to be

fixed at any angle backward and forward by thumb-screw at K'. The two lenses P at the top are the focusing lenses, and H the shutter in motor-box.

40 Figs. 2 and 2' represent a sectional plan view and detail of the receiver, showing in the lower or front part the lenses L of objective provided with tubes Q, sliding in square boxings B, so as to allowing focusing. In the upper or back 45 part the supply and motor box L'is shown, the motor shaft A, with half gear wheels B B, transmitting alternatively the motion through gear-wheels C C to lower drums, D D, loose on shafts E E, and through wheel A' and gear-wheels A' A' and cog-wheels A' A' (shown in

wheels A' A' and cog-wheels A' A' (shown in Pig. 2') transmitting motion through socket wheels D' M, &c., with the connecting-rod M.

A' to gear A' in shutter-box L'. (Detail in en-

larged Figs. 4, 5, and 6.)

Fig. 3 is a sectional side elevation of receiver, showing the above, and more particularly the supply-drum D, storing-drum D', with film f, guided over rollers F F in front of pads J, faced with cloth or rubber, and pressed alternately against the film by blocks B', pressed by cams O and released by springs 60 a a, fixed to the back of pads J and to the rods I, running across and fixed in sides of motor-box L'. It shows also the section of focusing-lenses P with glass screens d and peep-holes c, and the action of focusing-lever V and rod u 65 in moving forward and backward the front part o' objective. The spring hasp G' holds the motor-box tight against the objective and allows one to take it off readily and replace it with another after full exposure of the film 70 or drums D. Referring again to Fig. 2*, this is a section of the motor-box through y y in Fig. 2, showing transmission of power from main shaft A to wheels A' A* A* and cogwheels A* A* to socket A' and wheel A*, Figs. 75 4 and 5, and giving motion to the shutters in box L', Figs. 4, 6, and 7.

Fig. 4 is an enlarged sectional plan showing the transmission from shaft A to wheel A', but the section through the lenses is lower down, 8c and shows only the position of shutters G G' G' G' and H' H' H' H' and connecting rods M M' M' M'.

Fig. 5 is an enlarged front elevation of the system of shutters with transmission from 85 wheel A' to runners B' B' B', gear-wheels C' C' C' C' and quadrant mutilated gear-wheels J' J' J' J' to double pinions, and quadrant mutilated gear-wheels E' and D', E' and D', &c., to double shutters G H', G' H', G' H', G' H', with 90 aprings I' I' I' I' to bring them to first position as soon as bog-teeth D' D' D' D' leave off. It shows also, rods, M M' M' M' transmitting motion vertically from shutter to shutter for each set of lenses.

Fig. 6 is an enjarged sectional side elevation showing the double sets of mutilated wheels J', also double pinions and mutilated wheels D' E' and pinions F', with their shutters G H', and stop-pine E', together with the crank-pins connecting the double quadrant mutilated gear-

Fig. 7 is a side elevation of the deliverer, the objective being the same as in the receiver only shows the outside frame and bellows S. The back part is in section through center 5 and shows the film transparencies mounted on two metallic ribbons punched with holes H', fitting on pins P', driven in guide rollers G' G', stored on drums DD', loose on shafts with square ends, and lying in grooves M' M' pro-to vided in frame-work C'. The weights and small cables W' W', rolled on small pulleys P' In, fixed on drums D and D', secure the tightness and stendiness of the films. At the back of the films is the reflector R', with sixteen or more incandescent lights held by rod E', sliding in socket F'. In front of reflector are a set of sixteen double condensers, K' K', throwing the light through the sixteen pictures, and mounted on a frame, L', grooved at 1', so so they may alide in and out laterally on frames C when required. The guide-roller G carries a pinion, O', gearing in wheel N', fixed to frame C', and provided with crank Q' or any other device to transmit power.

Fig. 8 is a diagram showing the special disposition of shutters, the same as in Fig. 8, but

arranged for long exposures, the dark lines showing the full gearings and the cogs on mutilated gear-wheels.

A suitable subject having been found, the photo-camera or receiver is brought in front and focused. The receiver is composed of three parts: first, the objective; second, the supply and motor-box; third, the stand.

The objective is a system of three, four, eight, nine, sixteen, or more lenses of equal focus secured in a vertical brase plate or frame, Z. Two light brase plates fixed in front of Z form a boxing, in which the instantaneous shutters. a boxing, in which the instantaneous shutters 40 work automatically, as explained hereinafter. The drawings show an objective of sixteen lenses. On the back side of the plate Z each lens is provided with a light brass boxing, Q. sliding in and out of a corresponding set of the brass partitions, R, slightly larger and fixed on the front side of the back plate, Y. The other four sides of the box 8 are made of rubber bellows, so no light can penetrate except through the lenses. The back plate, Z, is proso vided with sixteen square openings, and securely fixed at T, Rig. 3, to a horizontal bed or board, L', provided with two slides or grooves, in which the lower corners, U, of the front brass plate, Z, can slide backward and 55 forward by rack-and-pinion or lever action, to allow accurate focusing. Figs. 1 and 3 show lever V pressing on eye-hole in square rod s on transverse but v, connected with corners or feet II II of front plate, and pushing or

ners or feet U U of front plate, and pushing or pulling it forward and backward, as required. Under the bed-plate L' is a knee-joinf, K, ellowing inclination backward and forward upo a strong rod, L', revolving in a friction aplit

socket, W, fixed in the upper part of the stand, 65 and provided with small spirit-level X, so that the objective may be inclined back ward and forward, and, revolving upon rod L, be brought.

to face any object around the operator without interference with the inner action of the motor-box or the focusing of the moving objects 70 at various distances, while at the same time the verticality of the lateral sides of the pictures is maintained. The supply and motor box fits at the back of the objective by overlapping at top and sides of back plate, Y, of 75 the objective, and is held in position by spring-lock G', hinging on plate L'. The front part is provided with sixteen openings corresponding to those in back plate, Y, of the objective, and a sliding shutter, H, closes communication 80 of the whole set of lenses previous to exposing the films or removing the supply-box to dark-

The sensitive films f are stored on the two lower drums, D D, set on spindle E, upon 85 which they revolve independently as re-quired, tension being secured by springs a, fixed through spindle B and pulling on teeth d, set in the inner circle of a ring fixed on the outer sides of drums D D, Fig. S. From 90 thence they are carried over small guide-rollers F F and F F, Fig. 8, presenting a flat surface facing the leases for exposure, and ultimately wind over an upper set of drams, D D', loose on upper spindle, E', and provided 95 with gearing wheels C C on their outer faces or disks. These wheels C C gear alternately with two mutilated gear-wheels, B B, Fig. 2, fixed on main motor-shaft A, passing through the box, and provided at one end with a square 100 head to carry a crank for hand-power or for any other power, such as a weight and blocks, spring and clock-work, compressed air, electricity, &c. The length of the mutilated gear on wheels B B will be sufficient to pull in one 103 revolution of the main shaft A a length of film equal or greater than the total height of the square openings in front of the lenses L. The shaft A carries, also, two cams, OO, Figs. 1 and 3, which press forward, during one half of the their revolution, two blocks, B' B', fixed on two springs, a a, held by screws on light rods II, passing through the box. The springs are also fixed at their ends to two vertical pads, J J, a trifle wider than the films, so as to hold 115 them flat and tight against the openings in front of box during exposure and release them immediately after, while the mutilated gears revolve drums D', alternately storing the exposed surfaces and bringing new ones in po-

sition to be operated upon.
On the left inner side of the power-box a set of cog-wheels, A' A', Figs. 2, 2', and 4, gears with main shaft A by wheels A' A' A' and transmits motion to the shutters in front 125 bram box L' of objective by means of the og-wheel shaft, which is square and revolves the socket A', in which is square and revolves the socket A', in which the square shaft of wheel A', Figs. 2' and 4, commanding the shutters, may slide while the objective focus is altered during exposure, as may be required. The wheel A' gears with runners B' B' B' and wheele C' C' C', all alike. The latter are fixed to larger wheels, J' J' J', provided.

376,247

with quadrant of cogs, each gearing successively on small pairs of wheels E E E E, having as many teeth as there are cogs. They are fixed themselves to larger pairs of wheels, D' D' D', also provided with quadrant of cogs graning with the double pinions F' F' F' F', fixed on shutters G and H', G' and H', &c.,

Figs. 5 and 6. Four connecting rods, M M' M' M', connect to vertically the four sets of double shutters, and &c., is provided with a spiral spring, I I' I' I', &c., which brings the shutter by &c., which brings the shutters back to first position, to pin K' Q', &c., as soon as they are 15 out of gear. So with the first quarter of a revolution of wheel A' cogs J' will work small wheel E one revolution, and during the first quarter of that revolution cogs D' will work the pinions of shutters G and H', so that G 20 will be raised over lens-opening L, while H' comes up and closes it; but as the cog gearing on pinion of shutter H' has one, two, or three teeth less than that of shutter G, the pinion of shutter H' will be so much sooner out of gear and 25 brought down by spring I', giving the expos-use, which is brought to an end by the subsequent full of shutter G. The next quarter of a revolution of small wheel E will, by means connecting rod M, work shutters P' and R' in 20 the same way; then the third and fourth quarters will act on the other two lenses below, completing one of the vertical sets. The second quarter of revolution of wheel A' will act precisely in the same way upon the next ver-Is tical set commanded by cog J', the third quarter on cog J', and the fourth on cog J'. So, for each revolution of A', Fig. 5, corresponding to one revolution of main driving about A, Fig. 3, I have sixteen exposures; and, as dur-40 ing the second half of the revolution the film of the first drum has been replaced by a fresh length, the part acted upon being stored on apper drum, there is no interruption in the exposure, the slow speed of one revolution per 4s second giving nine hundred and sixty pictures per minute. So several thousand may be taken with case in the same time; and with drums of large diameter and a few store-boxes ready to fix behind the objective while the 50 drums are removed and replaced in the darkroom it becomes possible to record, and by

the aspect of any scenery, meeting, procession, races, &c., under fair conditions of light. The stand, as already stated, is provided with a friction socket, W, to receive the vertical rod L', fixed to the bed L' of the camera. It is a strong telescopic tripod with a book and chain fixed under the disk to increase its stato bility by a heavy weight or stone hanging near

means of the deliverer to reproduce afterward,

the ground.

In the deliverer, Fig. 7, of my apparatus the objective is the same as in the receiver, with the exception that the lenses L are a lit-65 tle further apart and convergent toward a point at the distance required to show the picture,

the shutters are single, and the mutilated wheels are provided with twice as many teeth, so as to give full exposure and no interruption between the successive pictures, Fig. 9. store box is replaced by a reflector, R', and frame work C', provided with at least as many incandescent electric lights as there are lenses and sliding backward and forward through socket Fe by means of rod E'. Between this 75 reflector and the films a frame, L', containing the condensers K', is brought in position by means of slides 12 13 in uprights C'.

The transparencies are adjusted on a pair of endless metallic ribbons accurately punched 80 with small round holes Il', in which fit the pins P', fixed on the driving and guide drams G' so that after having been wound around drum D they are pulled and brought in position alternately by the action of gearing-wheels N' 85

O' and crank Q'.

The drams D, fixed on uprights C', let out the transparencies rolled on them, as required, and they are received on rollers D'after exposure. All the while the transparencies are 90 kept tight on both rollers by weights W' hanging on cables wound on pulleys P. P. fistened on one end of each drum. The shut-ters are also worked by wheel N° through cog-wheels A° A° to wheel A°. The shutters 95 t are single and work similarly to those of re-

ceiver, as shown in diagram Fig. 8. For subjects requiring fewer pictures and admitting repetition—such as waves, cascades, &c. - the drums are replaced by two polygonal 100 disks, A' A', Figs. 9 and 10, and supported by frame N', which may be fixed bodily on frame C. Fig. 7. The disks are divided geometrically into as many segments as one-fourth the total number of transparencies constituting the pictures. They are caused to revolve as explained in description of Figs. 0 and 10, and will be thrown successively on the screen by the revolution of quadrant-opening R', so as to require a set of four leases, the reflector R' 110 requiring only a corresponding number of lights and condensers-i. e., four.

The sensitive film for the negatives may be an endless sheet of insoluble gelatine coated with bromide emulsion, or any convenient 115 ready made quick acting paper, such as East-man's paper film. The exposure will be given as described and development carried out as usual, care being taken to mark the negatives in their regular order before cutting them 120

when required.

The sensitive film for the transparencies or positives must be on a transparent flexible material—such as gelatine, mics, horn, &c.— for the larger deliverer with drums. They 125 may be thin glass for the disks of smaller deliverers Once well developed and toned, the transparencies will pass through the hands of artists, who will tint them in transparent colors, dyes, or lacquers, as the subject may re- 1,30 quire, and they will be ready for mounting and adjusting between the metallic ribbons,

which will bind them together for the larger deliverer, or in the slides provided at the outer edge of disks for the smaller deliverer.

When the animated pictures to be taken are 5 of long duration, the receiver has to be provided with one or more supply and motor boxes, to be fixed to the back of objective as soon as the films on supply-drums of the first box are exhausted. These may then be taken to to the dark-room or tent and have new drams fixed by an assistant, while the operator at-

tends to the receiver.

By the process and with the apparatuses described I am enabled to take at regular intersame objects in motion, and practically to produce during any length of time as many and more pictures than the quickest eye could detect in the same period of time in looking at so the objects themselves, and with the deliverer carry out or complete any process and reproduce and reconstitute such flying pictures in the same order and period of time in which they were taken, producing upon the eye of 25 the spectator at any other time or place the very same effect or impression produced at the time of taking the photographs with the receiver.

It is obvious that the details of the mechan-30 issue forming my apparatus might be greatly varied without departing from the spirit of my

invention.

I do not claim the particular construction of the stereopticon or deliverer in this appli-35 cation, as I propose making the same the sub-

ject of a separate application.

By my invention I am enabled to take negatives of any object or objects at intervals, regular or irregular, and with or without short or 40 long interruptions, and at the slowest or most rapid speed, regular or irregular, as may be wanted, attaining several thousand per minute, and prevision is made for moving the objective in any direction required-horizontally, ver-

45 tically, or both simultaneously—and also to lengthen or shorten the focus while taking the pictures, the apparatus being essentially portable and self-contained, and independent of the objects or subjects of which it takes the

50 pictures, and entirely under the control of the operator, and adapted to act equally well upon solid ground or moving platforms, such as bouts, cars, balloons, &c.

Having thus fully described my invention I claim as new and desire to secure by Letters a

1. A photographic receiver comprising a casing, a series of lenses therein, a series of shutters therefor, and connections between the said shutters for successively and continuously 60 operating them at regular intervals, whereby negatives of the same object from the same point of vision may be produced upon a snitable surface, substantially as set forth.

2. The photographic receiver provided with 6; a series of lenses, a series of shutters, and means for operating them successively and con-tinuously, in combination with film drums and means for operating them intermittently for moving the film in the dark-box, substan- 10

tially as described

3. The receiver provided with a series of lenses and shutters and means for operating them successively and continuously, in com-bination with the film-rollers, the pad J, and 75 means for reciprocating it, substantially as and

for the purposes set forth.

4. The combination, with the series of lenses and the series of tubes B, for receiving the lens-tubes Q, the latter held upon an inde-so pendent frame, and means for moving said frame and lens-tubes out and in for changing the focus during successive exposure, in com-bination with the series of successively-operated shutters for closing the lens-tubes, substantially as described.

5. An apparatus for producing animated pictures and delivering the same upon suitable surfaces, comprising a photo camera provided with series of lenses and shutters and means of for operating the shutters, and a deliverer or stereopticon provided with mechanism for delivering or throwing the pictures obtained by the camera mechanism upon a surface in ap proximately the same order and time in which they were received, substantially as set forth.

6. An apparatus for producing animated pictures, comprising a photo camera having the shutter mechanism and removable and interchangeable film-box and stereoption-reflector, 100 whereby the camera may serve the twofold purpose described, substantially as set forth.

AUGUSTIN LE PRINCE

Witnesses: H. A. West, C. SEDGWICK.

N° 10,131



A.D. 1889

Date of Application, 21st June, 1889 Complete Specification Left, 13th Mar., 1890—Accepted, 10th May, 1890

PROVISIONAL SPECIFICATION.

Improved Apparatus for Taking Photographs in Rapid Series.

We, WILLIAM FRIESE GREENE, Photographer, of 92, Piccadilly, in the County of London, and MORTIMER EVANS, Civil Engineer, of Savile Club, Piccadilly, aforesaid, do hereby declare the nature of this invention to be as follows:—

Our Invention has for its object the formation of Photographic Pictures, and 5 relates chiefly to the production of such pictures as are necessary to illustrate and register the movements of animals, insects or moving objects either taken singly or in masses as may be desired.

For this purpose we construct an apparatus by which with a single camera and lens a rapid series of such pictures may be taken and by which a series of fresh photographic sensitive films or portions of such photographic film may be substituted for those which have been exposed to the action of light with sufficient rapidity for the desired end.

To carry out our Invention we provide a main shaft which is actuated either by a winch turned by hand, clock-work or otherwise, to this shaft is attached wheel work and counter shafts by which the whole apparatus is driven and the necessary

cycle of motions performed.

By the rotation of this shaft the prepared film is paid out and placed in position to receive the photographic impression and it is then automatically exposed to the action of light, the light is then cut off, and the exposed film is passed on and wound up on a receiving roller, fresh film being at the same time paid out to receive the succeeding impression which is after exposure again passed on and wound up as before. All these movements go on so long as the main shaft is rotated and there is film on which to operate, the number of such pictures being limited alone by the length or amount of film provided.

To provide for the production of many pictures such as would constitute a lengthened series of such pictures and to enable three hundred or more to be taken successively and in rapid series, we arrange a long roll of sensitive photographic film on one of the spindles or counter-shafts before mentioned and this spindle is so arranged that as it rotates under the driving action of the main shaft it pays out the film as fast as it is needed. To another spindle or counter shaft the free end of the film is attached, and the arrangement is such that by means of the main shaft this second counter shaft is caused to rotate in a reverse direction to that of the former or paying out spindle and its action consequently is to wind the film up are fast as it is paid out.

Intermediate of these two rollers or counter shafts we arrange an exposure screen over which the sensitive film passes on its way to the rolling up shaft and it is whilst the films rests on this exposure screen that it is subjected to the action of the

photographic image.

As both paying out and rolling up rollers have a continuous motion communicated to them by the driving shaft and as it is desirous that the film during its exposure to the light should be at rest we provide an arrangement to effect this which is as follows. Immediately beyond the exposure screen and between it and the upwinding roller we place an intermittently acting drum of such a diameter and circumference as that each turn thereof will take up or roll forward the exact amount of film that is required for each picture, and in passing this film forward the drum also draws into the exposure position a fresh length of film ready to be exposed.

To effect this intermittent motion we provide the aforesaid drum with a single long escapement tooth which when the drum is not in motion rests on the cylindrical

surface of a slotted pinion which gears into and is driven by the main shaft with a continuous motion. The slot in this pinion is so arranged that once only during each revolution of the pinion does it allow the escape tooth to pass and when this occurs the drum under the action of a driving spring with which it is provided makes one full turn when the escapement-tooth coming round again rests on the cylindrical 5 portion of the slotted pinion as before.

The spindle on which the drum revolves also gears into and is driven with a uniform motion from the main shaft, and to this shaft is attached the one end of a coiled spring the other end of which is fixed to the inner circumference of the drum itself. As the spindle revolves this spring winds up and on the release of the escape tooth and drum the spring unwinds carrying both the drum and escape tooth with it. Thus the film is passed forward between winding and unwinding rollers at this point

only with the necessary intermittent motion.

The constant uniform motion of the paying out spindle as it unwinds causes a certain uniform length of the film to pass forward towards the exposure screen when it collects into a kind of loop in readiness for use, it cannot, however, pass into the position for actual exposure until that portion of the film occupying such position has been withdrawn; as soon, however, as the detent tooth attached to the drum escapes through the slot in the pinion the drum makes a single revolution and in so doing both removes the exposed film from the screen and at the same time draws the loop of fresh film which has been gathering into the exposure position and at the same time passes forward the already exposed film into the form of another loop in readiness to be wound up on the winding roller, which being provided with a similar uniform continuous motion from the main shaft as the paying out roller proceeds gradually to wind up this loop so that it is wholly taken up by the time 25 the escape tooth again rotates when a fresh loop of film is passed forward.

The shutter for exposing the film to photographic action is made in two portions each provided with an aperture or slot which in one position only allows the light from the lens to pass and it is only by the simultaneous action of these two shutters, that is, when the apertures in each coincide at a given moment, that any action of 30

light on the film can take place.

One portion of this shutter is caused to revolve with a uniform motion as it is driven from the main shaft, the other portion is worked by a rocker or slide actuated by a cam. To this latter portion of the shutter is attached a spring with a tension screw to regulate its speed of action. In this way the duration of exposure is a rendered entirely independent of the speed of the driving shaft, as by the turning of this screw a long or short exposure (within limits) can be ensured, whatever the number of exposures per minute may be.

The moment the aperture in the revolving shutter comes into position with the lens, the cam lets the sliding shutter go and by means of its attached spring the 40

aperture in the sliding shutter also crosses and the exposure is effected.

The action of this shutter is so arranged that each exposure occurs simultaneously with the at-rest position of the drum escape tooth and the film on the exposure screen.

Dated this 12th day of October 1889.

DAY, DAVIES & HUNT, 321, High Holborn, London, W.C., Agents for the Applicants.

COMPLETE SPECIFICATION.

Improved Apparatus for Taking Photographs in Rapid Series.

We, WILLIAM FRIESE GREENE, Photographer, of 92, Piccadilly, in the County of 50 London, and Mortimer Evans, Civil Engineer, of Savile Club, Piccadilly, aforesaid, do hereby declare the nature of the said Invention and in what manner the same is to be performed, to be particularly described and ascertained in and by the following statement:—

This Invention consists in so arranging the mechanism of a camera so as to cause 55

the cycle of operations necessary for the obtainment of a latent photographic representation or of a series of such representations, to be automatically effected in proper sequence, by means deriving their actuation from the rotation of a common shaft to which motion may be imparted by hand or by any other suitable means and 5 so that such cycle of operations may be effected repeatedly so long as such shaft is kept in rotation and with a rapidity dependent upon that of such rotation, while allowing of the period of exposure being varied as may be required, the number of representations capable of being obtained being limited only by the length of the sensitized strip with which the camera is or may be provided.

The Invention is of special advantage in enabling such cycle of operations to be repeated in and with a single camera and lens in sufficiently rapid series to enable the obtainment of such representations of the consecutive movements of animals, insects and moving objects generally, whether singly or in groups; but the improved camera may also be used in obtaining a succession of photographic representations 15 of different objects, taken at different times, on adjacent following portions of a

sensitized strip.

10

In accordance with the Invention, let off and take up devices, which at each operation respectively let off and take up a portion of a sensitized strip of the length required for each representation, are combined with a device which at each operation advances into position for exposure to the action of the lens the portion of the strip supplied by the let-off device, and advances from the position of exposure towards the take-up device the portion of the strip lastly exposed, and which, between such times of operation, arrests the portion of the strip in position for exposure or allows of its being so arrested and with an exposure device which is timed to operate while the portion of the strip in position for exposure is arrested as aforesaid, but which can (if desired) be independently adjusted so as to regulate the period of exposure as may be required; and such devices are so connected to and operated by a common shaft as that the rotation thereof will cause the complete cycle of operations to be effected or to be caused to be effected repeatedly as long as such shaft is kept in rotation and 30 there is sensitized strip on which to operate, and with a rapidity dependent upon that of such rotation.

The accompanying drawings represent an embodiment of our Invention in a camera

suitable for taking photographic representations of quarter-plate size.

Fig. 1 represents a side elevation of the camera mechanism removed from the 35 enclosing case.

Fig. 2 represents the same in plan view.

Fig. 3 represents a view in the plane of Fig. 1, partly in section and partly in

elevation of the sensitized strip operating devices.

And Fig. 4 represents a sectional elevation through the plane indicated by the 40 line, a, b, looking on the direction of the arrow, c, Fig. 2, illustrating an especially suitable arrangement of shutter mechanism.

5, represents the algresaid common or main shaft upon the rotation of which the operation of all the parts is dependent. It is supported in opposite carrying frames, 6, but may be otherwise arranged, and may be rotated by awinch-handle inserted through 45 a tubular light-shield, 7, inserted through the side of the enclosing case, 8, (part of which is indicated in dotted lines), and screwed on to the seating, 9, secured to the adjacent frame, 6. Or the shaft, 5, may be otherwise rotated as aforesaid.

10, represents a roll of any convenient length of sensitized paper or the like, 11, which passes from between such roll and a feed roller, 12, under a guide-roller, 13, 50 between exposure screens, 14—15, between rollers, 16—17, to a take-up roller, 18, which derives its motion directly from the shaft, 5, and imparts simultaneous and a corresponding extent of motion to the roll, 10, through the roller, 12.

The roll, 10, can freely rotate on a supporting pin, 19, which is screwed into or otherwise suitably supported by the frames, 6. It is driven by frictional contact with the roll, 12, the surface of which is preferably roughened, and which in turn may be driven by frictional contact with the roll, 20, of the exposed strip, which accumulates

on the flanged take-up roller, 18, or may be independently driven directly from the shaft, 5.

In the firstly referred to of such modifications, the roller, 12, is supported in slotted rocking bearings, 21, pivoted to the frames, 6, and it is borne into constant contact with the rolls, 20, 10, by springs, 22, which may, if required, be adapted with any suitable means of adjusting their tension, and are connected to lever arms, 23, which are also pivoted to the frames, 6, and when in operative position are borne against pins, 24, projecting from the frames, 6. The lever-arms can turn about their centres so as to permit of the roller, 12, being withdrawn from its bearings, 21, to facilitate the placing or removal of the roll, 10, or its core. In the secondly referred to of such modifications (illustrated in dotted lines in Fig. 3), the roller, 12, is supported in a fixed position on a spindle carried by the frames, 6, and is driven by the wheel, 29, from the wheel, 28, hereinafter referred to, at a surface speed which (by its frictional contact with the roll, 10, which is borne thereagainst by the arms, 23, which support it, and the springs, 22), will cause the roll to let off the length of strip required ready for each operation of the roller, 16. The roller, 12, may, however, be otherwise supported and actuated in any switzble manner.

The roller, 16, is mounted on a supporting pin, 24*, which is screwed into or otherwise suitably supported by the frames, 6. It is driven by frictional contact with a split tubular hub, 25, projecting into the hollow axis, 26, thereof, vide Fig. 3, from a toothed pinion, 27, mounted on the pin 24*, and which is driven from the toothed wheel, 28, on the shaft, 5, by suitably supported connecting gearing, 29, 30, by which it is caused to receive a relatively increased speed of rotation which is effective through the frictional contact of its hub. 25, with the hollow axis, 26, of the roller, 18, in causing the latter to take up the slack of the exposed strip immediately it is advanced by the operation of the rollers, 16, 17, as hereinafter described.

The roller, 13, is supported in the frames, 6, in position to guide the strip between

the screens, 14, 15, and it can freely rotate in its bearings.

The exposure screen 14 is screwed to or otherwise suitably secured between the frames, 6, and is opaque, and prevents any light from reaching the sensitized strip behind it, and the screen, 15, is made with a through aperture, 31, of any desired shape and size, through which the photographic representation can be projected on to the portion of the sensitized strip supported between the screens. The screen, 15, is slotted at its base at, 32, to permit of its being set away from the screen, 14, to facilitate the adjustment of the strip, 11, when first placing it, or of its removal for replacement by a screen with a differently shaped or sized aperture, and to permit of its being subsequently secured in juxtaposition to the screen, 14, so that the strip can freely move between the screens, by set-screws, 33, working in 4 cross plate, 34, connecting the frames, 6. The screens, 14, 15, may, however, be otherwise suitably supported.

The roller, 16, is provided with end caps, 35, vide Fig. 2, and with projecting pointed discs, 36, and is made fast at the one end to an escapement tooth, 37, and is connected by a spiral spring, 38, vide Fig. 4, to a spindle, 39, by which the roller and such attachments are supported. The spindle, 39, is carried in bearings in the frames, 6, and has pinned thereon a toothed pinion, 40, which gears with the wheel, 28, and is continuously rotated from the shaft 5. The gearing, 28, 40, is so proportioned that one revolution of the winch-handle will effect two complete cycles of the herein described operations, but it may be otherwise proportioned. The pinion, 40, gears with another like-sized pinion, 41, fast on a spindle, 42, which is carried in bearings in the frames, 6, and carries a hollowed escapement hub, 43, on 50 the circular circumference of which the tooth, 37, normally rests. While the tooth, 37, thus rests on the hub, 43, the roller, 16, remains stationary, and the portion of the strip, 11, between the screens, 14, 15, is arrested and the exposure is effected; and meanwhile the continuing rotation of the shaft, 5, causes the upwinding of the spring, 38, and the retation of the hub, 43, the recessed part, 44, of which, once in each revolution, parally the tooth, 37, to pass, whereupon, the spring, 38, causes the

roller, 16, to complete a revolution (the motion of the roller being then again arrested by the tooth, 37, again coming into contact with the circumferential part of the escapement hub, 48), which revolution is effective in advancing the strip, 11, the required length, advancing the exposed portion towards the take up roller, 18, and drawing the next following portion, let off from the roll, 10, into position for exposure,

as aforesaid.

As each of the aforesaid operations of the roller, 18, is limited to the extent of the portion advanced by the said operation of the roller, 16, to be taken up, and as such advanced portion is equal to the length of the strip required for each of the said photographic representations, it follows, in the modification hereinbefore referred to, wherein the roller, 12, is actuated from the roll, 20, that the winding up of each such portion will cause the roll, 10, to simultaneously unwind a corresponding length ready for the next photographic representation, and that this will always occur notwithstanding the continually decreasing diameter of the roll, 10, and the continually

15 increasing diameter of the roll, 20.

The roller, 17, is supported by lever arms, 45, which are pivoted at, 46, in the frames, 6, and it is borne against the end parts of the roller, 16, by adjustable springs, 47, hooked at, 48, to the frames, 6. It is formed with raised rims, 49, which prevent its intermediate part from injuring the sensitized face of the strip, and with intermediate grooves, 50, which allow of the projecting rims, 36, of the roller, 16, getting an effective hold of the edges of the strip. The roller, 17, may, however, be otherwise suitably supported, and it may be positively driven from the pinion, 40, at the same surface speed as the roller, 16, in which modification the edges of the strip will be nipped between two driving surfaces.

One or more of the points of one or each of such discs, 36, may be omitted to indicate the places where the divisions of the strip should subsequently be effected, if such should be required to be done before development of the latent photographic

representations obtained.

The shutter or exposure device is, as aforesaid, timed to operate during each of the times the portion of the strip in position for exposure is arrested in such position. It is preferably composed of two reciprocating portions, 51, 52, both operated from the shaft, 5, but the latter of which, when released from the operation thereof, is independently and automatically operated for effecting the exposure, as hereinafter described.

The part. 51, serves principally as a light-screen, and reciprocates on a spindle, 53, supported by an end plate, 54, and is operated from the shaft, 5, by the bevil pinion, 55, pinned on the spindle, 39, gearing with a like-sized bevil pinion, 56, fast on a spindle, 57, which is supported in a bearing, 58, projecting from the adjacent frame, 6, and in the end plate, 54, and by a toothed pinion, 59, also fast on the spindle, 57, and which gears with a like-sized pinion, 60, supported by a stud, 61, projecting from the end plate, 54, and which pinion is made fast to a disc. 62, adapted with a projecting pin, 63, which engages with a slot, 64, in an arm, 65, which is made fast to the shutter, 51, such gearing being proportioned so that each revolution of the spindle, 39, imparts one complete reciprocation to the shutter, 51,

The shutter, 52, is made with an aperture, 66, and also rocks on the spindle, 53, and it is raised, together with the shutter 51, from the position indicated in full lines in Fig. 3 (where the shutter, 52, abuts against a rubber stop, 67,) to the position indicated in dotted lines (which position the shutters assume immediately preceding the moment of exposure) by the pin. 63, engaging with the arm. 65, of the shutter, 51, and with an arm. 68, made fast to the shutter, 52. Immediately the pin. 63, passes beyond the range of the arm. 68, the shutter, 52, is actuated by the contraction of a spring, 69, which is connected to an arm. 70, projecting therefrom, and its aperture is thus caused to cross an aperture, 71 (the position of which is indicated in dotted lines) made in the case, 8, and into which the lens is inserted, thus permitting of the necessary exposure of the then stationary portion of the strip, to the momentary action of the lens, immediately following the occurrence of which, both shutters, 51, 52, assume the positions indicated in full lines in Fig. 4.

The speed of action of the shutter, 52, can be adjusted, as may be required, by regulating the tension of the spring, 69, which may be effected by means of a lever, 72, pivoted at, 73, to the end plate, 54, and to one end of which the spring is connected, the lever being capable of being set into different positions by a snail, 74, on a pin, 75, passing through the front of the case and operated from the exterior by 5 a thumb nut, 76, adapted with an index and pointer, 77, so that any desired definite tension may be readily given to the spring for regulating the period of exposure as may be required.

The camera may, however, be adapted with any other suitable arrangement of shutter mechanism, operated from the shaft, 5, and so arranged as that it should be 10

timed to operate at each of the times aforesaid.

78, represents a ratchet wheel, and, 79, a spring pawl, which prevent the shaft, 5,

from being reversely rotated.

The whole of the aforesaid mechanism is enclosed in a suitably shaped case, the actuating handle (if worked by hand), the lens and the exposure regulator alone 15 projecting or being visible from the exterior.

Having now particularly described and ascertained the nature of our said Invention and in what manner the same is to be performed, we declare that we claim as our invention:—

1. So arranging the mechanism of a camera as to cause the cycle of operations necessary for the obtainment of a latent photographic representation or of a series of such representations to be automatically effected in proper sequence, by means deriving their actuation from the rotation of a common shaft or its equivalent, to which motion may be imparted by hand or otherwise, with or without means for allowing of the period of exposure being varied as may be required.

allowing of the period of exposure being varied as may be required.

2. In a camera, the combination of an intermittently opening shutter with mechanism for giving an intermittent movement to a sensitized strip, the whole being actuated from a common shaft or its equivalent, in such manner that the opening of

the shutter takes place during a period of rest of the strip.

3. In a camera, in combination, a device which at each operation advances into position for exposure to the action of the lens a portion of a sensitized strip fed thereto and simultaneously advances from the position of exposure towards a take-up device the portion of the strip lastly exposed and which between such times of operation arrests the portion of the strip in position for exposure or allows of its being so arrested, an exposure device (which may or may not be capable of independent adjustment to regulate the period of exposure as may be required) timed to operate while the portion of the strip in position for exposure is arrested, and a shaft to which such devices are so connected as to be caused to operate in proper sequence upon the rotation of such shaft.

4. In a camera, in combination, a device which at each operation advances into 40 position for exposure to the action of the lens a portion of a sensitized strip fed thereto and simultaneously advances from the position of exposure towards a take-up device the portion of the strip lastly exposed and which between such times of operation arrests the portion of the strip in position for exposure or allows of its being so arrested, and a shaft to which such device is so connected as to be caused to operate 45

upon the rotation thereof.

. 5. In a camera, in combination, let-off and take-up devices which at each operation respectively let off and take up a portion of a sensitized strip of the length required for each representation, a device which at each operation advances into position for exposure to the action of the lens the portion of the strip supplied by the let-off device and advances from the position of exposure towards the take-up device the portion of the strip lastly exposed and which, between such times of operation arrests the portion of the strip in position for exposure or allows of its being so arrested, an exposure device (which may or may not be capable of independent adjustment to regulate the period of exposure as may be required) timed to operate while the portion of the strip in position for exposure is arrested, and a common shaft to which such devices are so

connected as to be caused to operate in proper sequence upon the rotation of such shaft.

6. In a camera, in combination, let-off and take up devices which at each operation respectively let off and take up a portion of a sensitized strip of the length required for each representation, a device which at each operation advances into position for exposure to the action of the lens the portion of the strip supplied by the let-off device and advances from the position of exposure towards the take-up device the portion of the strip lastly exposed and which between such times of operation arrests the portion of the strip in position for exposure or allows of its being so arrested, and a common shaft to which such devices are so connected as to be caused to operate in proper sequence upon the rotation of such shaft.

7. In a camera, in combination, the spindle, 39, means for operating it, the roller, 16 and connecting spring, 38, the escapement-tooth, 37 the escapement-hub, 43, and

gearing connecting the latter with the spindle, 39.

8. In a camera, in combination, the spindle, 39, means for operating it, the roller, 16, and connecting spring, 38, the escapement-tooth, 37, the escapement-hub, 43, and gearing connecting the latter with the spindle, 39, the lettoff roll, 10. the take-up roller, 18, the connecting feed roller, 12, the shaft, 5, and gearing connecting the shaft with the rollers, 16, and, 18, respectively.

9. In a camera, in combination, the spindle, 39, means for operating it, the roller, 16, and connecting spring, 38, the escapement-tooth, 37, the escapement-hub, 43, and gearing connecting the latter with the spindle, 39, the let-off roll, 10, the take-up roller, 18, the feed roller 12, the shaft, 5, and gearing connecting the shaft with the

rollers, 16, 18, and, 10, respectively.

10. In a camera, in combination, the automatically acting roller, 16, the frictionally driven roller, 18, the shaft, 5, and gearing connecting the shaft with such rollers respectively, substantially as and for the purposes set forth.

11. In a camera, in combination, the automatically acting roller, 16, the frictionally driven rollers, 18, and, 10, the shaft, 5, and gearing connecting the shaft with such

rollers respectively, substantially as and for the purposes set forth.

12. In a camera, in combination, the automatically acting roller, 16, the frictionally driven rollers, 18, and, 10, the connecting feed roller, 12, the shaft, 5, and gearing connecting the shaft with such rollers, 16, and, 18, respectively, substantially as and for the purposes set forth

13. In a camera, in combination, the roller, 18, the shaft, 5, means for frictionally actuating the roller from the shaft, the roll, 10, and the connecting feed roller, 12, for frictionally actuating the roll, 10, from the roll, 20, substantially as and for the

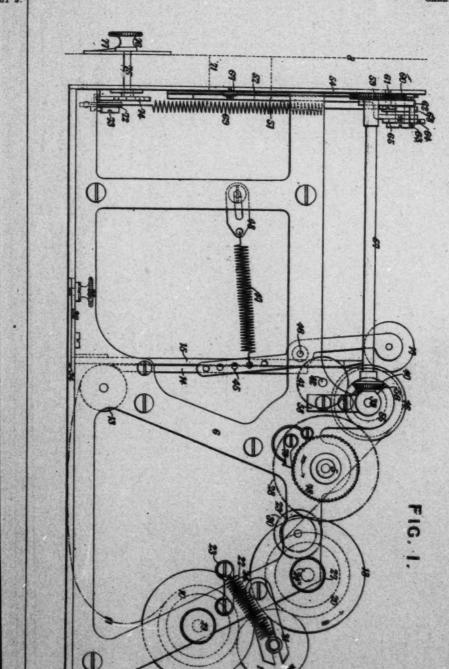
purposes set forth.

14. In a camera, in combination, the roller, 18, the shaft, 5, and means for frictionally actuating the roller from the shaft, substantially as and for the purposes

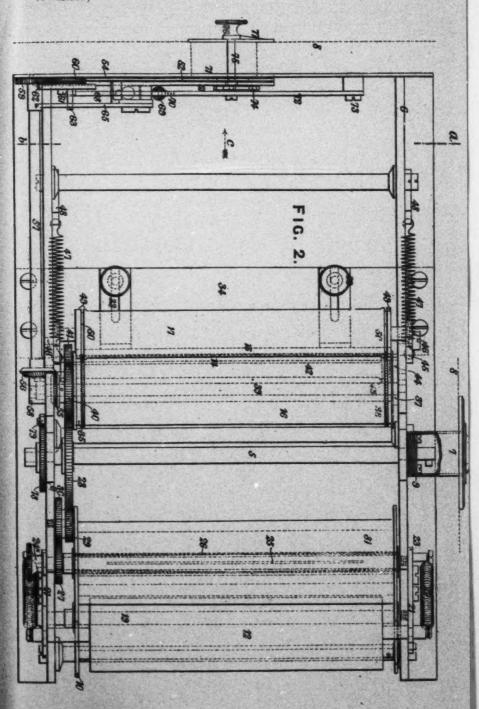
Dated this 1st day of March 1890.

DAY, DAVIES & HUNT, 321. High Holborn, London, W.C., Agents for the Applicants.

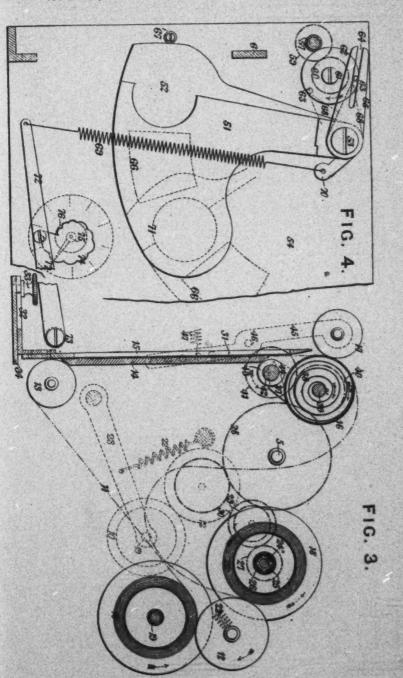
Redhill: Printed for His Majesty's Stationery Office, by Love & Malcomson, Ltd. [Wt. 57-50/3/1911.]



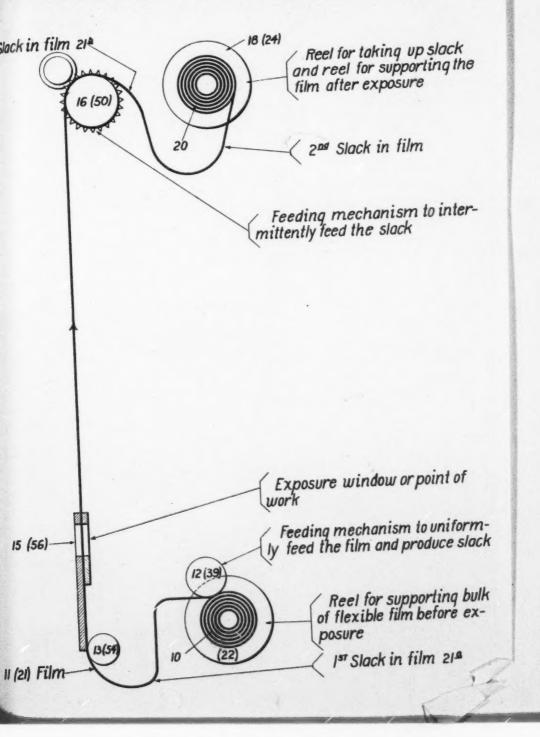
(39 Edition)



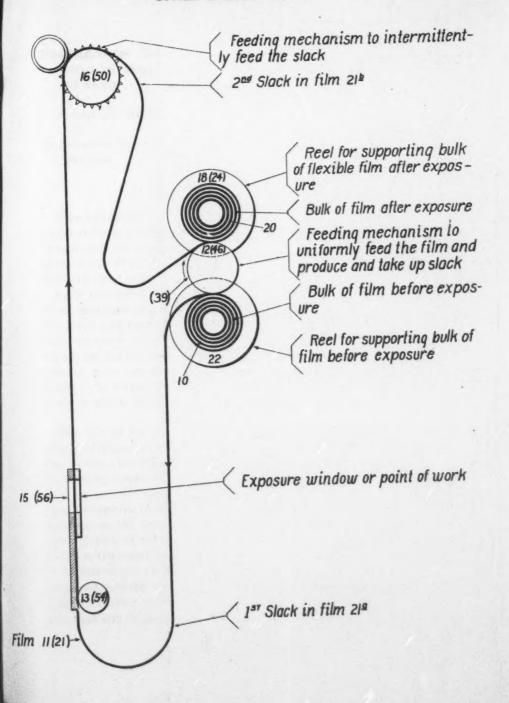
(39 Edition)



DEFENDANTS' EXHIBIT No. 13 Diagram of Greene & Evans British Pat. 10131 of 1889



DEFENDANTS' EXHIBIT No. 14 1167 Greene & Evans No. 2



Defendants' Exhibit No. 16—Translation of Marey Patent, No. 208,617 of 1890.

Patent No. 208,617, Dated October 3d, 1890.

To Monsieur Marey, for a Photochronographic Apparatus.

PLATE VII.

This apparatus is arranged to take successive pictures upon a strip of sensitized film. This film is mounted on covered reels; it advances rapidly to the focus of the objective and is arrested during the periods of exposure.

3506

Each resolution of a movement into its parts by photochronography demands a long series of impressions and uses up a strip of film. It is, therefore, necessary, for each new set of impressions, to withdraw the film photographically impressed and replace it by another. This substitution can be made in a bright light by means of the covered reels of which the description follows:

Fig. 1.—At the end of each narrow strip of film strips of paper of the same width are pasted on. One of these extension strips is red, the other black, each being about 90 centimetres long. The band thus formed is wound in the dark room on a metal reel, the groove of which it fills exactly. After the winding on the exterior of the reel shows superposed layers of black paper, the opacity of which protects the sensitized film from contact of light.

In this way a certain number of stock reels are prepared covered on the outside with black paper which a rubber band keeps in place. In this state the reels can be handled in a bright light.

In order to put them into the apparatus several turns of the black covering are unrolled, the end being attached to an empty reel, which we will call the *receiver*, and upon which there will be a fresh winding-on of the strip in proportion as it advances to the focus of the photographic objective.

Fig. 2.—Pressure-rollers guarantee the regular winding-on of the strip on the reels.

When one set of impressions is finished the entire strip has passed from the paying-off reel to the receiving reel; the latter then exhibits on the outside the red color of the covering which in its turn preserves the film from the action of the light and permits its withdrawal without danger from the apparatus.

On account of these two different colors the reels which have received photographic impressions will not be mistaken for those which have not been used.

In order to have clear pictures, it is necessary that the surface on which they are formed should be absolutely motionless during the period of exposure. Now, when a series of photographic impressions is taken at short intervals, 1/10 or 1/50 of a second for example, the sensitized film and the wheel-work that advances it must necessarily have a great velocity.

In order to produce the periods of arrestment of the sensitized strip it is not necessary to think of stopping the heavy members of the gearing, that would lead to destructive shocks. On the other hand, to arrest the film at one point, while the gearwheels continue to draw it, would tear it.

I have met this difficulty in the following manner:

I arrange at the point c a pressing organ which,

3509

for a moment, holds the film stationary at the focus of the objective. In following the film beyond this point, towards the right, it is seen to pass over a light roller r mounted on the end of a very resilient spring blade, then it returns to pass between the rollers l which take and advance it with a uniform movement.

This circuit made by the film is quite long; now, during the moments when it is held in position for exposure the pull exercised below by the rollers l will have the effect of stretching tight the film and of bending the spring blade on which the passing over has taken place. In this way the path followed by the film will be made shorter and the rollers l will continue their pulling although the film has been arrested above.

As soon as the pressing agent has ceased to act the strip moves again with great rapidity because the bent spring resumes its position.

There remains another important condition to be met: before the film begins to move it is necessary that the driving wheel-work should assume its uniform velocity.

In order to gain this result the film attached to the two reels and lying between the rollers l is not gripped there and is not pulled along. In reality the rollers consist of a driving cylinder and a pressure cylinder which is driven. At a given moment the latter presses the film against the driving cylinder. As long as this pressure does not exist the film does not advance.

On the other hand, the receiving reel, if it turned all the time, would also draw along the film; this reel is stopped by means of a pawl, and the driving spindle which traverses it turns by friction in its interior.

3512

A pressure exercised on the one detent has the double effect of gripping the strip in the rollers, and of releasing the receiving reel. As soon as the strip begins to advance drawn by the rollers, and in proportion as it advances from them, it is wound up on the receiving reel.

This shows the necessity of the driving of the receiving reel by the friction of the interior spindle. This form of driving permits the reel to rotate with a variable speed, according to its changes of diam. ter.

3515

It rotates, in fact, very quickly at the beginning, when its core is only covered by several windings of the strip, and, on the contrary, rotates more slowly when it has increased in size by the winding-on of two or three metres of film. At this moment the spindle slips in the friction movement within the reel.

Fig. 3.—All the organs which have been described are contained in a chamber which is hermetically sealed and where external light cannot penetrate during the receiving of the impressions.

3516

In travelling from one reel to the other the sensitized film passes behind a window through which it receives the photographic impression. The width of this window is equal to the perimeter of the rollers, so that one rotation of these advances the strip the exact amount necessary to keep the pictures from overlapping, yet without permitting between them waste spaces.

A cam which turns at the same speed as the rollers causes, at every rotation of the latter, the pressing of the film in a way to hold it motionless for an instant.

The action of this cam is the following:

Figs. 4 and 5.—A lever l pressed by a spring r falls into the notch of the cam and, by a bell-crank movement, controls the gripping of the film. Lastly, the axle of the cam causes the windowed disc to turn, which disc passes into the objective and admits the light at the same instant in which the film has been arrested.

In order to have very rapid exposures, I make use of two discs of which the one makes one rotation while the other makes five. The coincidence of the windows in the interior of the objective and the admission of light only takes place once during the five rotations. In this way with discs of small dimensions there is an exposure as short as with a disc five imees larger.

If it is desired to increase the number of impressions, for instance to double them, two diametrically opposite windows should be made in each of the discs. One should then, by means of a kind of diaphragm, reduce by half the width of the window by which light reaches the film. Finally, the film should be arrested twice during each rotation of the rollers.

To this end there is placed to the side of the first cam a second equipped with two notches suitably made in the axle. According to the number of impressions which it is desired to obtain the lever which controls the gripping of the film will be placed upon the one or the other cam.

I have constructed various models of this apparatus: one with weights, another with a spring, still another with an electric motor. In this last one the gripping of the film was caused by a current from a battery and an electric-magnet. The moment of this arrestment as well as its duration were regulated by a friction contact set on the axle of the shutter-disc.

3518

The drawing gives an idea of the apparatus as a whole; the present model is run by a weight.

I claim then not only the arrangement just described, but every other which, by means of springs, electricity, or some other force, would have as its effect the advancing of a sensitized film to the position for exposure by arresting it at the right moment for taking the pictures.

I also include in my claim the use of covered reels which permit the handling in a bright light of the extremely sensitive films that are to receive

the photographic impressions. 3521

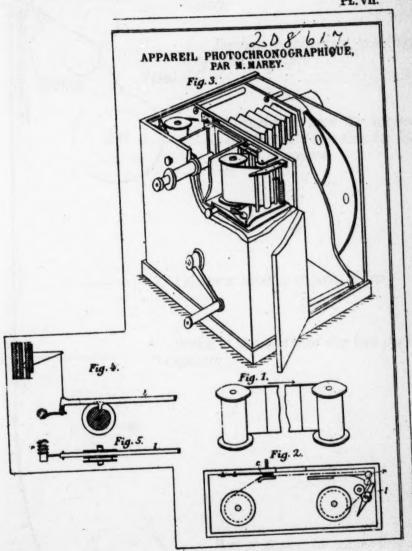
> I include in it lastly the different applications of this apparatus to the taking of successive pictures of a moving body, whether this body is seen at a great distance or whether it is placed at the focus of the objective for a microscope.

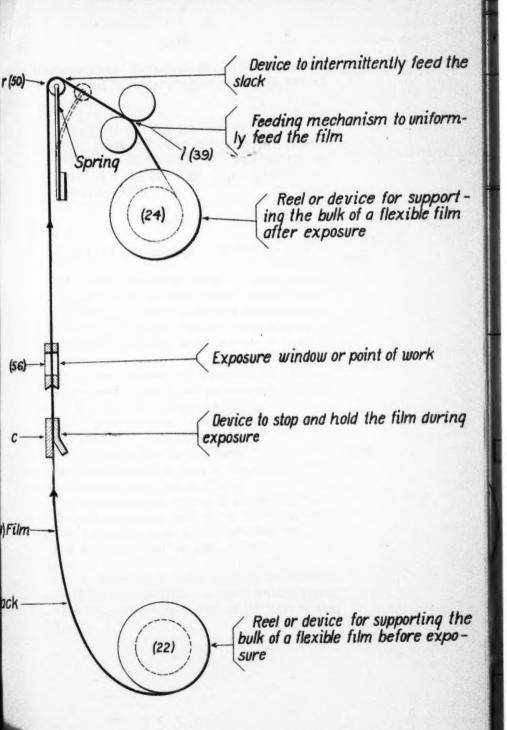
> Finally, I reserve for myself making such an arrangement of this apparatus that it can be used at the same time for photochronography on a fixed plate (method previously described, "Transactions of the Academy of Science," page 14, July 3, 1882), for photochronography on a moving film or paper, lastly for photochronography of micro-

3522 scopic creatures.

> For this last end I make use of extremely concentrated light, capable of destroying in a few seconds the object studied, but which is only used intermittently and during periods of time not exceeding the 1/1000 or 1/2000 of a second.

PL.VII.





Desired of White Property to March 114 (Nevel north Nim on your MAN TO SECURE THE PROPERTY OF THE Bright to fellow a green and the pro-Sufficient Homes and Indiana to be fill.

Defendants' Exhibit No. 19—Translation of Marey Patent No. 231,209 of 1893.

Patent No. 231,209, Dated June 29, 1893.

To MR. MAREY, FOR A CHRONOPHOTOGRAPHIC APPARATUS APPLICABLE TO
THE ANALYSIS OF ALL KINDS OF
MOVEMENTS.

(Extract.)

Plate VIII.—Photography. Industrial Arts.

3536

The present invention refers to an apparatus which permits the securing upon a mobile sensitive film strip, or upon a stationary sensitive plate, a series of photographic images corresponding to the successive attitudes of an animal or object in motion.

Fig. 1, rear view of the apparatus (the bottom being removed), showing the movement mechanism of the film and the driving mechanism.

Fig. 2, plan showing the movement mechanism of the film.

Fig. 3, plan of the driving parts.

Fig. 4, internal front view of the bottom of the box which was removed in Fig. 1.

Fig. 5, longitudinal section of the driving parts of the disk-shutters in case where these disks shut off the light very close to the sensitive film.

Fig. 6, transversal section according to 1-2, Fig. 5.

Fig. 7, longitudinal section showing the arrangement of the shutter-disks and their driving parts, in case where these disks shut off the light in the objective.

Fig. 8, section according to 3-4, Fig. 7.

Figs. 9 to 11, plan and elevation of the fixing device, i. e., the attachment which immobilises the film at each lighting period, and the driving cams.

Fig. 12, details of one of the cylinders J of the rollers JJ which unroll the film.

Fig. 13, details of one of the bobbins.

Fig. 14, unpolished glass frame for focussing in chronophotography upon stationary plate.

Fig. 15, frame receiving the sensitive glass in chronophotography upon stationary plate.

3539

Fig. 16, admission shutter substituted in place of photographic frame when operating upon mobile sensitive film.

This apparatus is based upon the unrolling of a sensitive film before a single objective which, upon each passage of a perforated shutter over a disk impelled with a rotating motion, allows the luminous rays to penetrate which make an impression on the part of the film which is, at that time, behind the admission shutter.

In order not to receive the images upon a moving surface, which would decrease the distinctness thereof, I have arranged my apparatus in such a way that the film is automatically stopped at each lighting period.

3540

All the parts of the mechanism which are necessary to the unrolling of the film are enclosed in the rear part of the apparatus at A. The sensitive film is rolled on a bobbin bored with a hole through its axis, serving for disposing the bobbin in the apparatus by engaging it in the vertical rod a; the extremity of the film is introduced in a slit made into another bobbin which is placed at B, the film following in the apparatus the path indicated by the mixed line a, C.D.E.F.G.H.B.

In order to freely manipulate the filmy strips, introduce them in the apparatus and remove them in full daylight, I glue at the extremity of each sensitive film two strips of opaque paper. When the rolling up, which occurs in the photographic laboratory, is through, the bobbin can be brought into full daylight without fear of spoiling the film, as same is protected by the multiple thicknesses of black paper. At the close of the experiment, the film is recovered with a series of opaque paper windings; it is therefore possible to further manipulate the bobbin in full daylight.

The bobbins are put in place as stated above, and a part of the opaque strip which precedes the sensitive film is unrolled, following the path indicated by the mixed line a, C.D.E.F.G.H.B.

The parts which assist in the unrolling of the film are all enclosed in the chamber A, Fig. 7.

a, axle on which the storage-bobbin is engaged, same being perforated to this effect by a longitudinal hole; after this bobbin is put into place, a hand manipulation is made upon the index I1 for lowering it, which disengages the piece I; immediately thereupon, and under the action of the spring i1, the axle I3, the extremities of which end with the two friction rollers I2, is applied against the coil engaged upon the rod a; these two friction rollers exert an equal pressure upon the storagebobbin inasmuch as the axle i3, which carries them, can oscillate around the piece i2 which connects it to the axle around which the spring i1 is wound. From the storage bobbin, the film passes upon the cylinder J which, as will be seen later, may be impelled by a rotating motion; at the required time, a second cylinder formed of two friction rollers J', is brought near the cylinder J, through the

3542

medium of a suitable mechanism; these friction rollers J¹ are also mounted upon an axle J³ which can pivot around the axle j serving for bringing it near the drum J; a spring j¹ constantly tends to apply the friction rollers against the drum, Figs. 1 and 2, details Fig. 12.

When coming out of the rollers formed by the cylinder J and the friction rollers J1, the film passes behind an attachment which I shall call the fixing device. The purpose of this device is to compress the film, at each lighting period produced by the objective, against the partition K of the chamber A, so as to render the film stationary during the very short interval of time during which the film is impressed. This fixing device requires a special arrangement in order to assure the even pressure upon the film; it consists of a drum L mounted loosely upon an axle, the extremities of which are fixed in two squares L1 united to the pressure bar L2 which allows, in normal time, a sufficient space, between the partition K of the box A and itself, for the passage of the film.

In order to fully understand this arrangement, it will be sufficient to refer to Figs. 9 to 11, observing, however, that the parts indicated in Fig. 11 are in reality behind the cam shaft of Fig 9; we only have separated them so as to represent them in a manner as complete as possible. Under the action of the springs 1 which lean against the pillar 1', the pressure bar L² is shifted from the partition K, and it is brought close to it for compressing the film only when one of the cams 1², mounted upon the plate 1⁴, fixed to the shaft 1³, attacks and pushes the roller L; when this phenomenon occurs, it can be seen that the bar L² leans against the partition K, and owing to the

3545

agency of the drum L, the pressure is even on \mathfrak{I} ll points of the bar L^2 .

We shall see later on that the cams are arranged in such a way that they act upon the Ioler L and produce a stop of the film at the time when the latter is impressed. The film then passes between E and F into the division M, placed exactly opposite the objective; in the chamber M, which is behind the objective, an unpolished glass frame M' is arranged which may fall back against one of the partitions of the chamber M. For focussing, this frame is turned back by letting it pivot on its hinge n so that it is placed exactly according to E.F.

From thence, the film travels upon the flexible blade N fixed to the pillar n; the purpose of this flexible blade is to give a certain amount of play to the film, so that it cannot tear under the action of the traction caused by the receiving coil which turns when the fixing device maintains the film during the posing time; in fact, if this flexible blade did not exist, it is obvious that the film, being maintained at D, Fig. 2, and drawn through the rotation of the receiving-coil B, would tear at each picture. This effect is prevented through the bending of the flexible blade. After having passed on the loose pulley H, which acts as a guide, the film finally reaches the receiving-coil, the fixing method of which. I now shall proceed to explain.

This receiving bobbin is placed by running it over the axle B, at the lower part of which a ratchet wheel B' is frictionally mounted, and which may be rendered stationary by the pawl B². The receiving-bobbin carries, at its lower face, a series of holes b into which tenons fixed upon the ratchet wheel enter, so that, when the bobbin is put in

3548

place, it is solidarity with the rotation motions of the ratchet wheel B¹; this ratchet wheel proper is fed only through the friction of the sub wheel, so that it is possible either to stop it or let it operate, as required, with the bobbin forming a part thereof, all this occurring through the manipulation of the pawl.

Two friction rollers, arranged as the friction rollers I², which maintain the bobbin in place while evening up the tension of film, lean against the receiving bobbin, as is the case for the storage-bobbin.

3551

Without yet entering into a description of the shutter-disks which serve towards successively uncovering the objective and for allowing the light to arrive upon the portion of the film placed at E.F, I shall proceed to study in detail the operation of the film.

The driving parts are above the chamber A, which encloses all the pieces of the film shifting mechanism. The axle O is acted upon by means of a crank, which axle, through the medium of the gearing O¹, turns the barrel O² which, on its side, transmits the movement to the axles B and 1³ through the medium of a series of gearings which are plainly shown in Figs. 1 and 3.

3552

Thus, among the pieces of the mechanism enclosed in the chamber A, there are three pieces animated by a rotating motion, they are: The cam shaft of the fixing device, the axle B upon which the receiving bobbin is engaged, and the cylinder J of the rollers; of these three pieces, the first two directly receive their movement from the driving parts; the cylinder J turns under the action of the gearing P, one of the wheels of which is amounted upon the cam axle.

Let us suppose: First, that the rollers J¹ are brought apart from the cylinder J under the action of the spring j; Secondly, that the pawl B² is in contact with one of the teeth of the ratchet wheel B¹, and let us see what is going to happen if we turn the lower crank Q.

The film will remain stationary; in fact, the pawl prevents the receiving bobbin from turning; it has, consequently, no action upon the film which cannot be advanced by the cylinder J, inasmuch as the friction rollers J1 do not compress the film The only apparent movement upon the drum. will be that of the fixing device which will periodically compress the film against the partition K. If, at this moment, a continuous pressure is made through the medium of a finger upon the tumbler Q placed on the side of the box A, the axle Q1 will turn by about one fourth of a circle, and the projections q,q1, fixed upon this axle, will act, one of them upon the buffer with which the axle f is terminated, and which is connected to the friction roller shaft J1 for applying these rollers against the cylinder; the other one upon the tail of the pawl B2 for separating this organ from the teeth of the ratchet wheel.

The film will immediately shift in the direction of the arrow and will be rolled on the receiving bobbin, while it will be unrolled from the storage bobbin; this unrolling motion will take place with very short stopping periods corresponding to the lighting periods of the film by the objective, and produced by the action of the fixing device upon the film, which we have previously described.

If, at any time, it is wished to stop the unrolling of the film, it will be sufficient to stop the action of the finger upon the tumbler Q; the latter, un-

3554

3557

der the action of the spring j^{1} which pushes back the projection q, will come back to its primitive position, and the projections q q^{1} will stop their action upon the pieces which they drive; the pawl B^{2} will again come into contact with the teeth of the ratchet wheel B^{1} and the friction rollers J^{1} will be separated from the drum J, the film stopping.

The width of the shutter E.F. must evidently be equal to the perimeter of the rollers, so that a turn of the latter drives forward the strip by the margin exactly required, so that the images are not covered up and do not allow any space to be lost; moreover, the cams 12 are arranged so as to produce stops coinciding with the lighting periods. We have indicated upon the drawings six cams, and, inasmuch as the diameters of the toothed wheels, which serve for transmitting the movement of the cam axle 13 to the cylinder J, are equal, there will be six stops per turn of the cylinder J; it will therefore be necessary, in case it is desired to utilize the six stops, to reduce the width of the shutter by 1/6 of its original size, which is done by means of the frame shown in Fig. 16.

3558

If it is desired to have a lessor number of images, it is not necessary to change the cams; the latter will produce a certain number of non-utilized stops, but each lighting period always coincides with a stop of the film.

In order to be able to introduce and remove the bobbins, the chamber A is provided at its upper part with a hinged cover A¹ which, when the apparatus operates, prevents the entrance of the outside light.

As I stated at the beginning of these Letters Patent, the apparatus may be used either for chronophotography on sensitive film, when operating before a lighted field, or for chronophotography on sensitive plate, when it is a question of studying the motions of a lighted object in a dark field.

In the first case, the mechanism above described is used by introducing in the slit R, Fig. 5, the admission shutter with variable opening, as indicated in Fig. 16. If the movements of an object lighted before a dark field are analyzed, then entire mechanism (unrolling of the film, which has just been described), becomes useless. The unpolished glass frame, Fig. 14, is then introduced in the slit R, Fig. 5 for focussing, then, after this operation has been performed and after having obtained the focussing, this frame is substituted by the frame, Fig. 15, which contains the sensitive plate; when this frame is introduced in the apparatus, the small front board which closed it is lifted up and the apparatus is ready for the analysis of the movements of an object lighted before a dark field; in fact, with each admission of the light emanated from the objective, the image of the lighted point will be obtained upon the sensitive plate, and, as this object is moving, a series of images of the object will be obtained upon the sensitive plate after several consecutive admissions of the light.

Let us now study the arrangements adopted in order to obtain the successive lighting periods, and here we adopt two arrangements according to the tests which it is aimed to effect: One of which consists in cutting off the light in the objective and the other one, which is used when a great lighting period is required, consists in shutting off the light close to the film or to the sensitive glass. The apparatus is arranged so as to be able to uti-

3560

lize either one or the other of these dispositions, as required.

Let us first study the disposition used for shutting off the light in the objective.

The toothed wheel O³, Fig. 1, which receives the movement from the barrel O² and which transmits, as stated above, the movement to the axles B and 1³, is wedged on the axle B, Fig. 7, upon which the telescopic transmission U¹ is joined, thus constituting an axle of a variable length, upon which the disk S is wedged. The purpose of this telescopic transmission is to permit the axle U¹ to grow elongated or shorter, according to the requirements of the focussing effected by separating from the part A of the apparatus, in which the sensitive film is placed, the part A² which contains the objective—as is the case in all photographic apparatus.

The shaft U1 is provided at its front extremity with a pinion T which transmits, by means of the rollers T1, T2, the movement of this shaft to the disk S1, parallel to the disk S. Let us suppose that one of the disks makes three turns while the other one only executes one turn. The coincidence of the shutters in the interior of the objective and the admission of the light only occurs every three days; a lighting period is thus secured in disks of small dimensions as short as in a disk three times larger. If it is desired to multiply the number of images, it will be sufficient to perforate a suitable number of shutters upon each side of the disks, and, on the other hand, to reduce to suitable proportions the width of the shutter, Fig. 16 through which the light reaches the film.

In order to change the number of shutters, it will be sufficient to keep, in one direction or the

3563

other, metallic curtains which slide against the disks upon which they are applied and which may either be placed before the shutters or uncover same.

As we stated above, it is absolutely indispensable that there be a concordance between the stops of the film and the lighting periods; this concordance is obtained, thanks to the mode of fixation of the disk S upon the telescopic axle U¹. This fixation manner consists in a washer S¹ perforated with circle are slits which are traversed by two threaded tenons fastened in a similar washer forming part of disk S; the wedging which has been arranged in order to secure the desired concordance is maintained by means of clamping pins.

If it is desired to obtain a very powerful lighting period not allowed by this arrangement in which the light is shut off close to objective, I modify the apparatus in the following manner, Figs. 5 and 6.

I suppress the whole fore part A² and the blower, and I remove the telescopic shaft U¹, preserving only the rear part of the apparatus upon the axle X which receives its movement from the wheel O⁴, as indicated by Figs. 7 and 5; I fix a first disk X¹ very close to the shutter E,F. This disk carries, towards its centre, a hole X¹ into which the driver y¹, fixed at the extremity of the shaft y is introduced; when turning, the disk drives the shaft y by means of the driver which, through the medium of the gearings Y, turns the disk Y¹. The gearings are calculated in such a way as to give to the disk Y¹ a different speed than that of the disk X¹, in order to produce the same effects as the two disks S and S¹ of which we spoke above.

3566

In the latter arrangement, the blower Z is placed in front of the apparatus and carries the objective suitable to the tests it is desired to make. It is useless to again refer to the object of the two shutter disks, this object is the same as in the previously described arrangement.

Whatever may be the arrangement adopted for chronophotography, the focussing occurs by means of a magnifying glass through the hole W provided with a mobile plug, viz., upon any one of the unpolished glasses.

3569

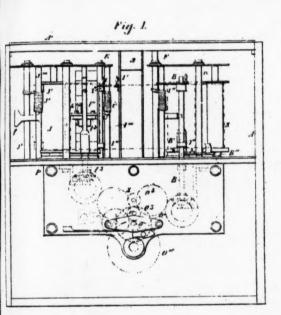
The reversibility of this apparatus can easily be seen, if a strip carrying positive images, lighted from the rear, are made to pass through the focus of the objective.

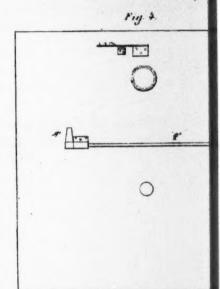
In order to easily determine the field in which the object, the motions of which are being studied, evolves, and for regulating the focussing when the apparatus is charged, we use an "aiming" device, the objective of which is identical to that of the apparatus proper.

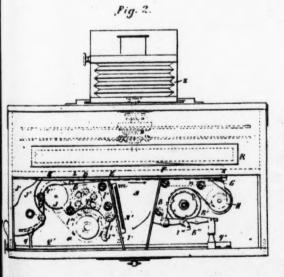
3570

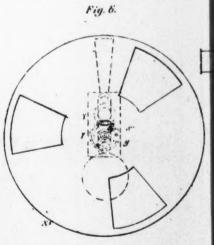
Finally, in case when operating upon stationary plate, and when only desiring to take a determined phase of the phenomenon, we place, in front of the objective, a curtain obturator of any system whatever which is opened at the time when the test begins and which is closed when the phenomenon ceases. In this manner, the images which it is desired to gather are not mixed with other images corresponding to phases which it is desired to overlook.

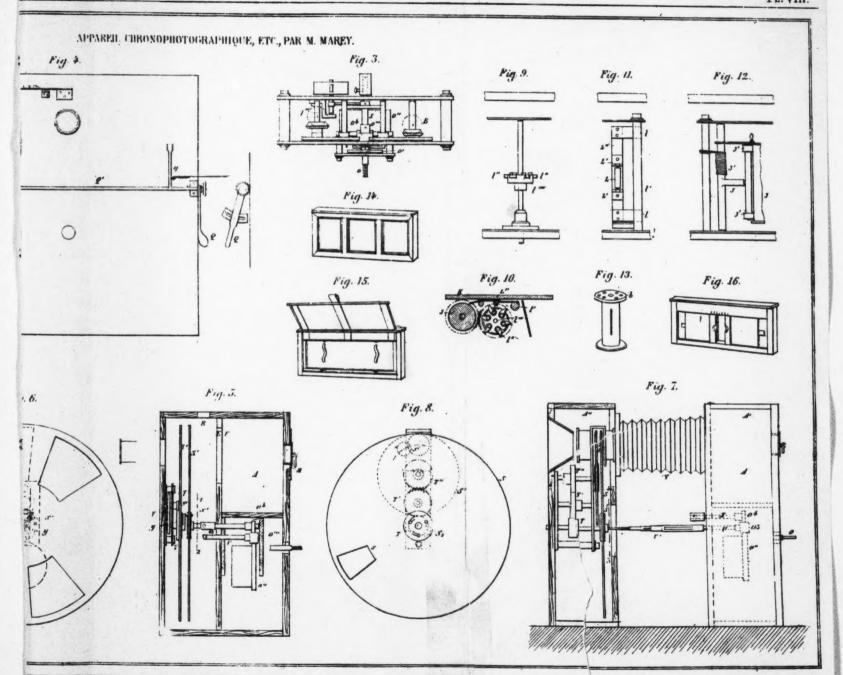
APPAREII, CI











N (50)

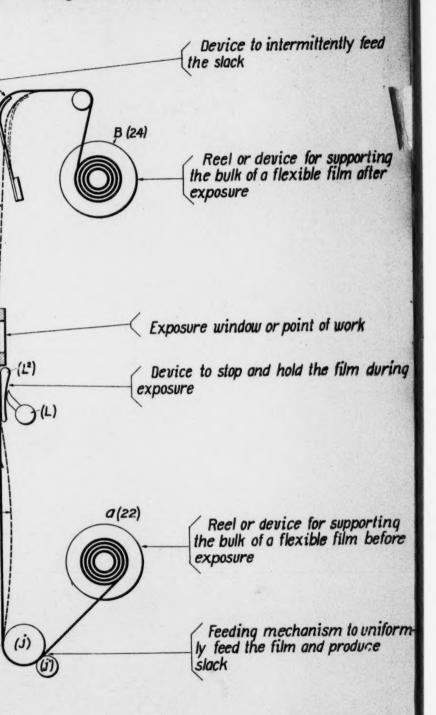
56→ (K)→

Slack 21°

Film 21—

39---

DEFENDANTS' EXHIBIT No. 20 Diagram of Marey French Patent 1893

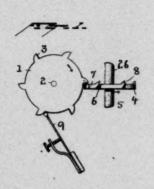


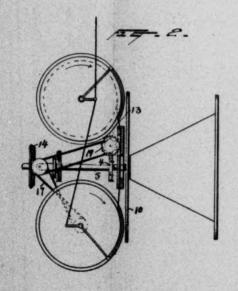
(NO MOUGI.)

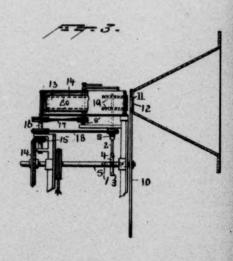
T. A. EDISON. STOP DEVICE.

No. 491,993.

Patented Feb. 21, 1893.







Witnesses Forris A.Clark Pr. F. Plests The Edison Styles Stely.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

THOMAS A. EDISON, OF LLEWELLYN PARK, NEW JERSEY.

STOP DEVICE.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 491,993, dated February 21, 1893. biginal application filed Angust 24, 1891, Serial Wo. 403,535. Divided and this application filed April 11, 1892. Serial Wo. 428,614. (Ne modal.)

all whom it may concern: Be it known that I, THOMAS A. EDISON, a men of the United States, residing at Llewm Park, in the county of Essex and State of Jersey, have invented a certain new and ful Improvement in Stop Devices, (Case 950,) of which the following is a specifica-

The present invention relates to devices apted to stop a driven drum or shaft for an stant and then to allow the same to move

reard and so on in rapid succession.

The main object of the invention is to proie such a device which shall operate with sering certainty and with great rapidity, the astruction preferably being such that the eriods of rest shall be longer than those in

hich the device is moving forward.
The invention consists in the combinations

reinafter described and claimed In the accompanying drawings, Figure 1 is plan view of the detent device; and Figs. 2 ad 3 are plan and side views respectively,

owing the device applied to a photograph

In my application (Case No. 929,) filed Aust 24, 1891, Serial No. 403,535, I have shown described this stop device applied to an apantus fortaking pictures of moving objects, adthe present application is a division of that polication, only a part of the photographic paratus, however, being shown.

The detent device consists of a wheel 1 on shaft 2, which when the device is in use is on a tendency to rotate by suitable power. he wheel 1 has projecting teeth 3, six being town, which teeth are adapted to strike ainst the face of the co-operating detent or op wheel 4 on a shaft 5, which is constantly fiven by a suitable motor. The wheel 4 has corresponding number of notches 6 at regulative the strike around its periphery. These states, the depth of which is indicated by a dotted line 7 Fig. 1 are of such shape and e dotted line 7, Fig. 1, are of such shape and
that the teeth 3 can pass through them sen the wheels 1 and 4 are rotated in the di-ection of the arrows. Each tooth in succeson will strike the face of wheel 4, thereby ringing wheel 1 and shaft 2 and parts geared have, absolutely to rest, and after the lapse moment the tooth will pass through the

notch next below it, allowing the wheel 1 and shaft 2, and parts driven thereby, to move an-To avoid the danger of wheel 4 other step. moving so quickly that a tooth cannot enter 55 the proper notch, an extending lip 8 is provided adjacent to each notch. The lips 8 extend laterally from the face of wheel 4 toward which the teeth on wheel I move, as distinguished from teeth extending radially. As this lip comes up under a tooth 3, it will guide the tooth into the notch.

9 is a detent spring or pawl to prevent back-ward movement of the wheel 1.

I prefer to so proportion the parts above de- 65 scribed when they are to be used in my pho-tographic apparatus, that the wheel 1 is at rest for nine-tenths of the time in order to give a long exposure of the sensitive film, and is moving forward one-tenth of the time, said 70 forward movement being made to take place from thirty to fifty times per second. On the shaft 5, or on any suitable shaft driven by the motor, is a revolving disk 10 serving as a shutter for alternately exposing and covering the 75 sehsitive film. This disk, which is continuously revolving, is provided with suitable apertures 11 near its edge in such position that as the shutter is rotated the apertures pass directly between the camera opening 12 and 80 the sensitive film 13 at a point midway between the reels, from one to the other of which the film is wound, as described in my applica-tion Case No. 929. On the motor shaft is a bev-eled wheel 14 gearing with a wheel 15 on shaft 85 16, which shaft is connected to the axis of one of the reels above referred to by a cross-belt 17, and to the shaft 2 by a straight belt 18, the pulleys on shaft 2 and the axis of the reel being frigtionally connected with their shafts go so as to constitute a yielding driving connection. This frictional or yielding driving connection may be formed by placing springs S, S' on the spindles adjacent to the loose pulleys, as shown in Fig. 3, the upper ends of the 95 springs pressing against (but being otherwise unconnected from) the lower faces of the pulleys and having sufficient tension to connect the pulleys with the spindles when little power is required to drive the appearance but allow is required to drive the apparatus, but allow- 100 ing the pulleys to slip when resistance to movement of the apparatus increases. Since this

is a well known way of connecting pulleys to their shafts, and since other yielding or frictional connections may be used, the construction is not shown in detail, but is indicated 5 merely in the drawings. At the upper end of shaft 2 are two feed-wheels 19, the teeth of which are adapted to engage the perforations 20 in the film 13 to advance the same.

With the arrangement described, when the to driving shaft 5 is rotating, that is, when the apparatus is being used, it will be evident that detent wheel 4 will be driven continuously, and that shaft 2 and wheels 19 will be driven except when said parts are positively held 15 from forward movement by the detent device described. At such times the frictional driving connection slips. The result is that until a tooth slips through a notch in the detent wheel, the film 13 will be at rest, but when so said tooth passes through the notch the film will be advanced another step. This movement is so timed that an opening 11 will be in the position shown in Fig. 3 while the film is at rest, and while the film is moving a solid 25 part of the disk 10 will be in front of the opening 12.

Evidently the stop device described is not confined to the use above indicated. The form of the teeth and notches, as well as their 30 number, may be varied to some extent with-

out departing from my invention.

What I claim is-1. A detent or stop device consisting of a rotatable wheel or disk provided with notches 35 or passages in its periphery, a wheel in a plane at an angle with the first mentioned wheel and provided with teeth adapted to pass

through the notches or passages in the first mentioned wheel, and means for driving both 40 of said wheels, said means being distinct from

said wheels themselves substantially as to scribed.

2. A detent or stop device consisting of a rotatable wheel or disk provided with notches in its periphery, laterally extending lips adjacent to the notches, and a wheel tending when the device is in use to turn in a plane at an angle with the first mentioned wheel and provided with teeth adapted to pass through the notches in the first mentioned wheel, sub-

stantially as described.

3. A detent or stop device consisting of a rotatable wheel provided with six notches in its periphery and arranged at regular intervals, a second wheel tending when the device 55 is in use to rotate in a plane at right-angles to the first mentioned wheel and provided with six teeth adapted to pass through the notches in the first mentioned wheel, and means for driving both whoels, said means being distinct 60 from the wheels themselves, substantially as described.

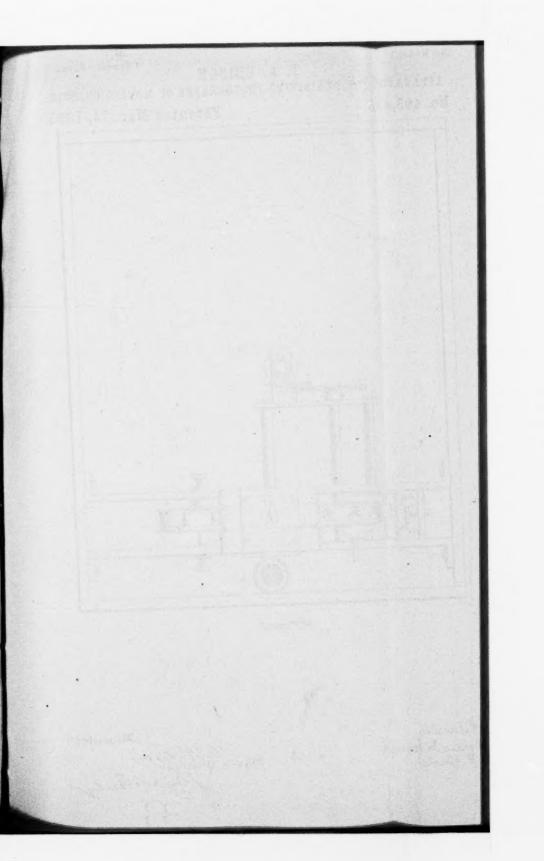
4. A detent or stop device consisting of a rotatable wheel provided with notches in its periphery and arranged at regular intervals, 65 a driving shaft for said wheel, a second wheel in a plane at an angle to the first and provided with teeth adapted to pass through the notches in it, driving means distinct from said first wheel for rotating said second wheel, and a 70 yielding driving connection between said wheel and driving shaft, substantially as described.

This specification signed and witnessed this 5th day of April, 1892.

THOMAS A. EDISON.

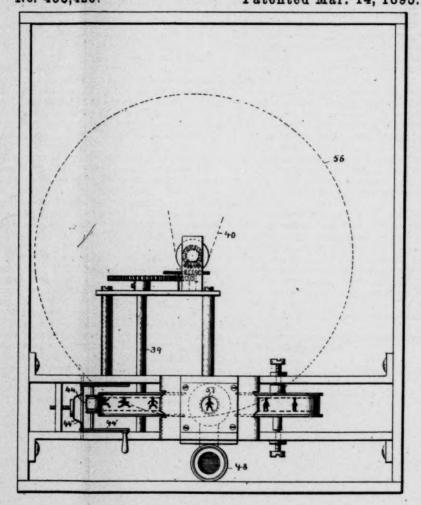
Witnesses:

JOHN F. RANDOLPH. THOMAS MAGUIRE.



APPARATUS FOR EXHIBITING PHOTOGRAPHS OF MOVING OBJECTS.

No. 493,426. Patented Mar. 14, 1893.



159.3.

Witnesses Forris & black. My his attorney of Syert Seely



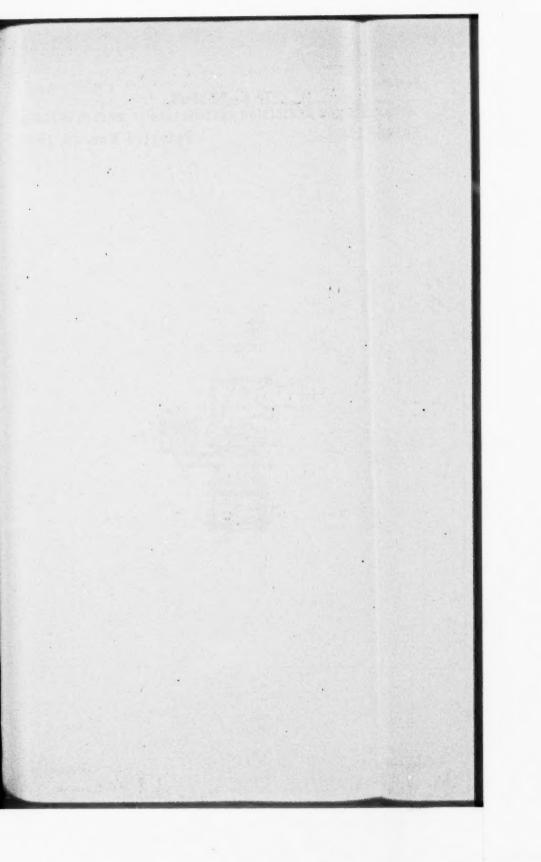
APPARATUS FOR EXHIBITING PHOTOGRAPHS OF MOVING OBJECTS.

No. 493,426. Patented Mar. 14, 1893.

Inventor

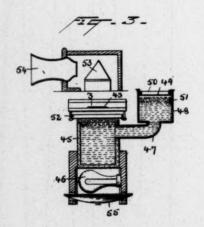
Witnesses Fornis J. black, Mr. F. Wherlis

T. A. Edison. Byert beely.

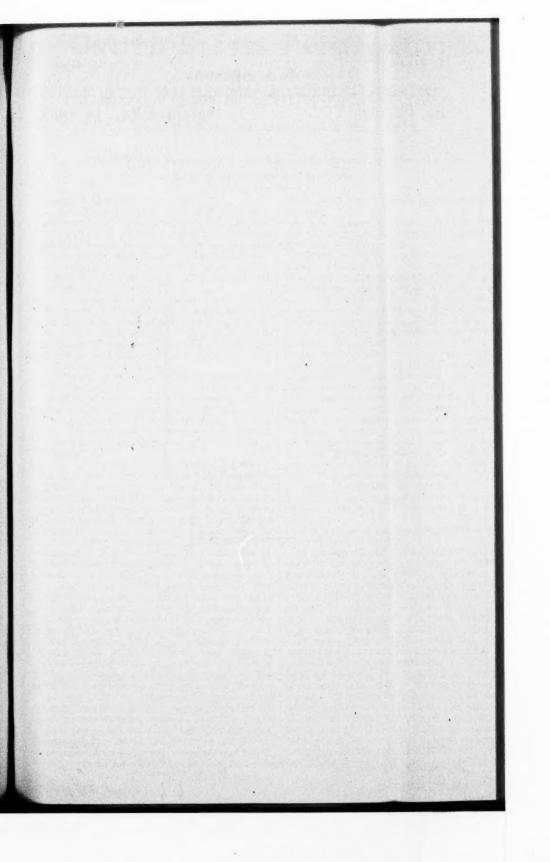


APPARATUS FOR EXHIBITING PHOTOGRAPHS OF MOVING OBJECTS.

No. 493,426. Patented Mar. 14, 1893.

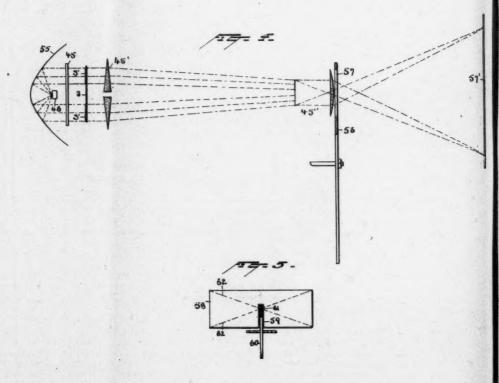


Witnesses Fromis A. black. N. F. Queley Shy his accorning Sylves Seely



APPARATUS FOR EXHIBITING PHOTOGRAPHS OF MOVING OBJECTS.

No. 493,426. Patented Mar. 14, 1893.



Witnesses Forris L. black. N. F. Olerly Hoventor Inventor A. Edison Lyer Suly

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

THOMAS A. EDISON, OF LLEWELLYN PARK, NEW JERSEY.

APPARATUS FOR EXHIBITING PHOTOGRAPHS OF MOVING OBJECTS.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 493,426, dated March 14, 1893.

Application filed August 24, 1891. Berial No. 403,536. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, THOMAS A. EDISON, a citizen of the United States, residing at Llewellyn Park, in the ccunty of Essex and State 5 of New Jersey, have invented a certain new and useful Improvement in Apparatus for Exhibiting Photographs of Moving Objects, (Case No. 930,) of which the following is a specification.

The present invention relates to apparatus for using photographs which have been taken in rapid succession of an object in motion, by means of which a single composite picture is seen by the eye, said picture giving the impression that the object photographed is in

actual and natural motion.

The object of the invention is to provide an efficient apparatus adapted to pass a large number of pictures rapidly before the eye of to the beholder in regular order, and the invention consists in the several combinations forming the apparatus, or definite parts thereof, hereinafter fully described, and set forth in the claims.

In the accompanying drawings, Figure 1 is a plan view of the reproducing apparatus, the top of the inclosing case being removed. Fig. 2 is a rear view of the apparatus, the back of the case and the motor being removed and the frame being broken away to show some of the parts behind it. Fig. 3 is a sectional view showing the arrangement of reflector, light, film, &c. Fig. 4 is a view illustrating the reproduction of stereoscopic pictures; and Fig. 3 5 shows a modified form of lens and shutter.

The film 3, on which a large number of photographs of a moving object have been taken in such manner that any two successive pictures are almost identical in appearance as 40 set forth in my application, Serial No. 403,534, filed August 24, 1891, is passed back and forth over rollers 36, 37 at the top and bottom of the inclosing case respectively, the ends of the film being connected so that the film forms an endless band or belt. This band is advanced at the proper rapid speed by the reel 38 on the shaft 39 driven through the beit 40 by any suitable motor. The film passes over the pulley 41, under the light spring 42, 50 through the slit 43, and over the reel 38. In

through the slit 43, and over the reel 38. In order to get a sufficiently long strip or tape say several hundredsor thousands of feet—the

rollers 36, 37 may be multiplied to any desired extent.

44 is a brake-roller, carried by the crank- 55 arm 44', provided with a suitable handle and

thrown forward by a spring 44".

Below the passage through which the film is led is a glass cell 45 containing alum water for the purpose of absorbing heat-rays from 60 the electric or other light 46. This is shown as an incandescent lamp, which, when the apparatus is in use, is continuously lighted, but it is only essential that the light should exist when an opening in the shutter comes over a 65 picture. The cell 45 has a branch 47 terminating in a reservoir or tank 48, which is tightly closed by a rubber diaphragm 49 held in place by the clamping ring 50. On the surface of the alum water is a surface 51 of oil 70 to still further prevent evaporation. the cell 45 is a ground-glass plate 52 for still further absorbing the heat-rays and protecting the film. This plate may be tinted to give the picture the appearance of a colored picture, 75 the plate being all of one tint, or partially of one tint and partially of another tint, according to the subject and arrangement of the picture. Above the film are suitable lenses or prisms 53, and a sight opening 54 through 80 which an observer can look to see the reproduced picture.

55 is a reflector below the lamp to throw the .

light upward to the film.

In the reproducing apparatus a shutter is 85 used for covering and exposing the pictures successively in much the same manner as the sensitive film is exposed in taking the photographs. The position of such a shutter is indicated in dotted lines at 56, Fig. 1. This 90 shutter has one or more openings 57 near its edge, the single opening shown being directly over one of the pictures on the film. shutter is continuously revolved through the belt 40 with a speed sufficient to bring the 95 opening centrally over a picture at intervals practically equal to the intervals between exposures in taking the pictures. The means for advancing the film and for operating the shutter to expose the pictures may be the 100 same in all particulars as in the apparatus for taking pictures described in my application, Serial No. 403,535, filed August 24, 1891. When the brake 44 is released by means of the han-

dle, the film is pulled forward between the lamp and the prisms at a regulated speed, corresponding to the speed at which the pic-tures were taken, when the observer at the 5 sight opening will seem to see a single pic-ture, the object represented being in easy and natural motion, owing to the fact that the successive pictures are so nearly alike that at a glance they cannot be clearly dis-ro tinguished from each other, although they do in fact represent positions of the object at different moments

I propose in some cases to use a film on which pictures have been taken stereoscopi-15 cally, that is, in which pictures have been taken in pairs side by side on the film, as fully described in my application, Serial No. 403,535. This arrangement is indicated in Fig. 4, in which 3 is the film, which is supposed to be so movable in a line at right-angles to the paper. On the film at regular intervals are the pic-

tures arranged in pairs. These pictures are indicated by the two heavy lines 3'.

46 is the electric lamp.

55 is a parabolic reflector, and 45 the alum cell between the lamp and the film.

45' are prisms for deflecting the rays from the two pictures and superposing them on the projecting lens 45". 56 is the shutter, which 30 is rotated at a constant speed and which is provided with an opening 57 adapted to uncover the lens at regular intervals.

57' is a screen on which the picture is projected. This screen may be white or, prefer-35 ably, may be colored to give the picture the appearance of a colored picture; for example, if the picture shows sky and earth, the upper part of the screen may be colored blue and the lower part brown, and it may be oth-40 erwise colored for other objects. The reproduction of stereoscopic photographs of mov-

ing objects gives a very vivid impression of movement, and the coloring just described adds to the realistic effect.

Instead of using a large shutter such as

above described, I may use a very small shutter with a small opening by placing it near the center of the lens through which the rays pass, the shutter being placed in a slit in the body of the lens, and the opening in the shutter passing across the line where the converging rays intersect. 58 indicates a lens, 59 a slit therein, 60 a small shutter adapted to ro-

tate in the slit, 61 an opening in the shutter, 55 62 the light-rays which intersect and pass through the opening 61. I am aware that a heat absorbent, such as

alum water, has been used in connection with microscopes between the objects being exam-60 ined and the lens to protect said object from the effect of heat concentrated thereon by said lens. I do not, therefore, claim broadly the use of such heat absorbent, but only the use thereof in combination with the moving 65 film having pictures thereon and certain ele

ments of my apparatus, as hereinafter defined in the claims.

What I claim is-

1. The combination, in a picture exhibiting apparatus, of a series of rollers, a tape in the 70 form of an endless belt on which are a large number of pictures of a moving object, said tape being passed back and forth over said rollers, suitable means whereby the tape may be fed forward, and a light for illuminating 75 said pictures as they pass over it, substantially as described.

2. The combination, in a picture exhibiting apparatus, of a series of rollers, a tape on which are a large number of pictures of a mov- 80 ing object passed back and forth over said rolls, suitable means whereby the tape may be fed forward, a light for illuminating said pictures as they pass over it, a sight opening, and prisms for directing the beams to said 35 sight opening, substantially as described.

3. The combination, in a picture exhibiting apparatus, of a film in the form of a tape and having a large number of pictures on it representing an object in motion, means of sup- 90 porting and moving said film, a light for illuminating each picture as it passes before the eye, and a transparent heat absorbent between the light and the film, substantially as described.

4. The combination, in a picture exhibiting apparatus, of a film in the form of a tape and having a large number of pictures on it representing an object in motion, means for supporting and moving said film, a light for illu- 100 minating each picture as it passes before the eye, and a glass cell containing alum water between the light and the film, substantially as described.

5. The combination, in a picture exhibiting 105 apparatus, of a film or surface having a large number of pictures on it representing an object in motion, means of supporting and mov-ing said film, a light for illuminating each picture as it passes before the eye, and a 110 ground glass plate between the light and the film, substantially as described.

6. The combination, in a picture exhibiting apparatus, of a long endless tape on which are a large number of pictures of an object 115 in motion, a support for said tape, means for advancing the tape, and a shutter having an opening in it for exposing the pictures one after another, said shutter being driven so that an opening comes directly over the film 126 at the same moment that a picture is moved along into position to be seen, substantially as described.

7. The combination of an endless tape with pictures representing an object in motion 125 and being so nearly alike as not to be readily distinguishable arranged at regular intervals thereon, means for supporting said tape and for moving it along at a regulated speed, and a light for illuminating each picture as it 130 comes into position to be seen, substantially as described.

8. The combination of a photograph, means for throwing the same onto a suitable lens or prism, and a shutter provided with an opening and movable across the lens in a slit at or near the center thereof, substantially as

described.

9. The combination of a film or surface having on it pictures of a moving object taken stereoscopically side byside, means for moving said film or surface rapidly forward at a regulated speed, a projecting lens or prism, and to means for superposing said pictures on said lens or prism, substantially as described.

10. The combination of a film or surface having on it pictures taken stereoscopically side by side, means for moving said film or 15 surface forward at a regulated speed, a projecting lens or prism, means for superposing said pictures on said lens or prism, and a

screen onto which the pictures are thrown, substantially as described.

11. The combination of a film or surface having on it pictures taken stereoscopically side by side, means for moving said film or surface forward at a regulated speed, means for superposing said pictures, and a screen es colored to correspond with the subject of the

photograph onto which the superposed pictures are thrown, substantially as described.

12. The combination of the film having pic-

tures taken stereoscopically on it in pairs side by side, means for moving said film, the light 30 and reflector for illuminating the pictures, the heat absorbent between said light and film, and means for superposing the pictures and rendering them visible as a single picture, substantially as described.

13. The combination, in a picture-exhibit-

ing apparatus, of a transparent flexible band or tape having a large number of pictures on it representing an object in motion, means for supporting and moving said tape forward to 40 bring the pictures into view in rapid succession and regular order, and a sight opening at a point along the tape through which the pictures can be seen, substantially as described.

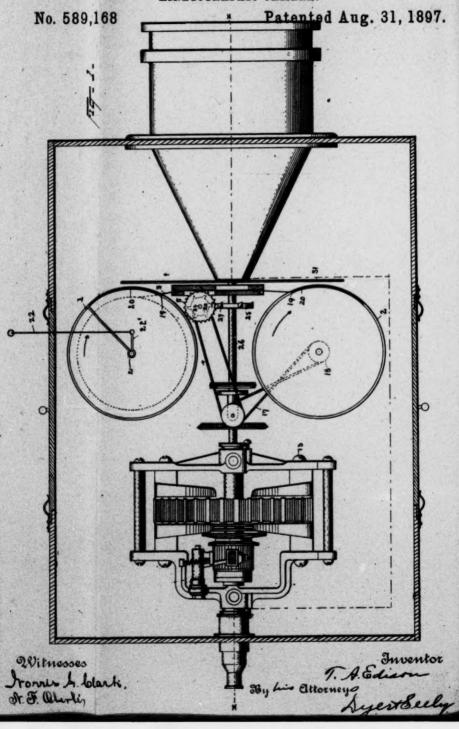
This specification signed and witnessed 45 this 31st day of July, 1891.

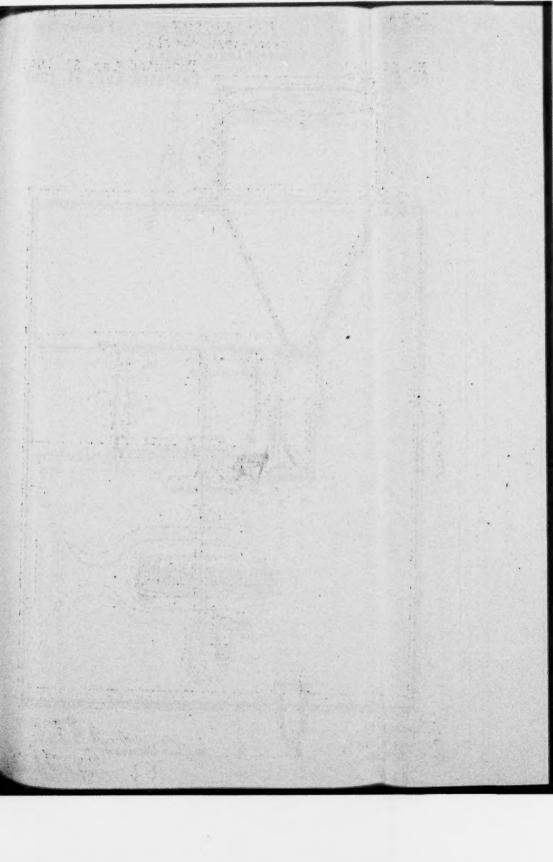
THOS. A. EDISON.

Witnesses:

JOHN F. RANDOLPH. FREDERICK OTT.

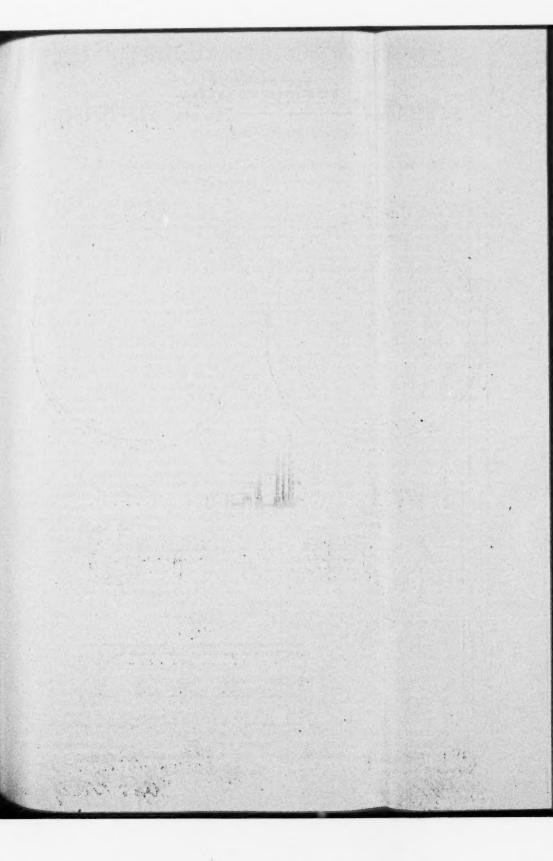
T. A. EDISON. KINETOGRAPHIC CAMERA.





T. A. EDISON.

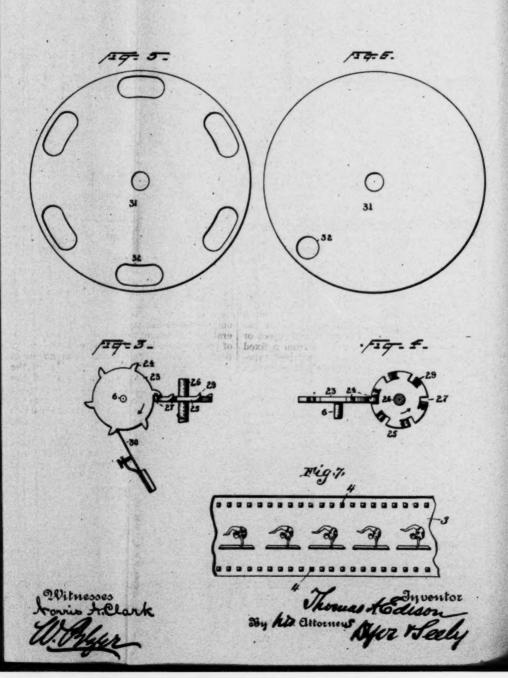
KINETOGRAPHIC CAMERA. Patented Aug. 31, 1897. No. 589,168. Inventor J. A. Edison Dyert Seel Witnesses Formis A. blank.



T. A. EDISON. KINETOGRAPHIC CAMERA.

No. 589,168.

Patented Aug. 31, 1897.



UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

THOMAS A. EDISON, OF LLEWELLYN PARK, NEW JERSEY.

KINETOGRAPHIC CAMERA.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 589,168, dated August 31, 1897. Application filed August 24, 1891. Berial No. 403,584. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, Thomas A. Edison, a citizen of the United States, residing at Llewellyn Park, in the county of Essex and State 5 of New Jersey, have invented a certain new and useful Improvement in Kinetoscopes, (Case No. 928,) of which the following is a

specification.

The purpose I have in view is to produce 10 pictures representing objects in motion throughout an extended period of time which may be utilized to exhibit the scene including such moving objects in a perfect and natural manner by means of a suitable exhibit-15 ing apparatus, such as that described in an application filed simultaneously herewith, (Patent No. 493,426, dated March 14, 1893.) I have found that it is possible to accomplish this end by means of photography.

In carrying out my invention I employ an apparatus for effecting by photography a representation suitable for reproduction of a scene including a moving object or objects comprising a means, such a single camera, 25 for intermittently projecting at such rapid rate as to result in persistence of vision im-ages of successive positions of the object or objects in motion as observed from a fixed and single point of view, a sensitized tape-30 like film, and a means for so moving the film as to cause the successive images to be received thereon separately and in single-line sequence. The movements of the tape-film may be continuous or intermittent, but the 35 latter is preferable, and it is further preferable that the periods of rest of the film should

By taking the photographs at a rate sufficiently high as to result in persistence of vision 40 the developed photographs will, when brought successively into view by an exhibiting apparatus, reproduce the movements faithfully

be longer than the periods of movement.

and naturally.

I have been able to take with a single cant-45 era and a tape-film as many as forty-six photographs per second, each having a size measured lengthwise of the tape of one inch, and I have also been able to hold the tape at rest for nine-tenths of the time; but I do not wish to limit the scope of my invention to this high rate of speed nor to this great disproportion between the periods of rest and the

periods of motion, since with some subjects a speed as low as thirty pictures per second or even lower is sufficient, and while it is de-sirable to make the periods of rest as much longer than the periods of motion as possible any excess of the periods of rest over the pe-

riods of motion is advantageous.

In the accompanying drawings, forming a 60 part hereof, Figure 1 is a plan view, with the top of the casing removed, of a form of apparatus which I have found highly useful for the taking of the photographs. Fig. 2 is a vertical longitudinal section on line x x in 6; Fig. 1. Figs. 3 and 4 are enlarged views o. the stop meetanism of the photographing apparatus. Figs. 5 and 6 are plan views of two different forms of shutters for the photo-graphing apparatus, and Fig. 7 is a perspec-tive view of a section of the tape-film with the photographs thereon.

Referring to the drawings, 3 indicates the transparent or translecent tape-film, which before the apparatus is put in operation is 75 all coiled on a reel in the sheet-metal box or case 1, the free end being connected to an empty reel in the case 2. The film 3 is preferably of sufficient width to admit the taking of pictures one inch in diameter between the 80 rows of holes 4, Figs. 2 and 7, arranged at, regular intervals along the two edges of the film, and into which holes the teeth of the wheels 5, Figs. 1 and 2, enter for the purpose of positively advancing the film. When the 85 of positively advancing the film. When the film is narrow, it is not essential to use two rows of perforations and two feed-wheels, one feed-wheel being sufficient. Said wheels are mounted on a shaft is, which carries a loose pulley 7—that is, a pulley frictionally con-nected to its shaft and forming a yielding mechanical connection. This pulley is driven by a cord or belt 8 from a pulley 9 on the shaft 10, which shaft is driven by means of the boycled gears 11 12. The wheel 12 is 95 preferably driven by an electric motor 13, which when the apparatus is in use is regulated to run at the desired uniform speed, being controlled by the centrifugal governor 14 and the circuit-controller 15 in a well- 100

formed by the edge 19 and the sliding door 20, which is normally thrown forward by the 5 spring 21, Fig. 2, with sufficient force to clamp the film and hold it from movement. When the door 20 is retracted by pulling on the rod or string 22, which is connected to the arm 22', the film is liberated and allowed to to advance. Film-case 2 is provided with a similar door, but the device for moving the door is not illustrated. This arrangement of the sliding door not only holds the film, but it tightly closes the cas. g, thus excluding 15 light and protecting thesensitive film. casings or boxes 1 2 are removable, so that they, with the inclosed film, may be taken bodily from the apparatus. The shaft 6, heretofore referred to, is provided with a de-tent or stop-wheel 23, the form of which is most clearly shown in Figs. 3 and 4. The wheel 2d is provided with a number of projecting teeth 24, six being shown, which teeth are adapted to strike successively against 15 the face of the cooperating detent or stopwheel 25 on the shaft 26, which is the armature-shaft of the motor or a shaft which is constantly driven by the motor. The wheel 25 has a corresponding sumber of notches 27 30 at regular intervals amund its periphery. These notches are of such size and shape that the teeth 24 can pass through them, and when the wheels 23 and 25 are rotated in the direction indicated by the arrows each tooth 35 in succession will strike the face of wheel 23, thereby bringing the film absolutely to rest at the same moment that an opening in the shutter exposes the film and will then pass through a notch, allowing the tape-film to be 40 moved forward another step while it is covered by the shutter. To avoid the danger of the wheel 25 moving so quickly that a tooth cannot enter the proper notch, a laterally-projecting tooth 29 is provided adjacent to 45 each notch. When a tooth 29 strikes a tooth 24, the latter tooth will be guided by the tooth 29 into the adjacent notch 27. 30 is a detent spring or pawl to prevent backward movement of the wheel 23 I prefer to so proportion the parts above de-cribed that the wheel 23 is at rest for ninetenths of the time in order to give to the sensitized film as long an exposure as practicable and is moving forward one-tenth of the time, 55 and said forward movement is made to take place thirty or more times per second, preferably at least as high as forty-six times per second, although the rapidity of movement or number of times per second may be regu-foo lated as desired to give satisfactory results. The longer interval of rest of the film insures a good impression of the object projected

thereon and results in a picture having clean and sharp lines, since the film has sufficient

bration caused by the sudden and rapid mo-

tions of the feed mechanism. On the shaft

65 time to become steady and overcome the vi-

which the tape is connected in easing 2. The

film passes from the casing I through a slit

26 or on any suitable shaft driven by the motor is a revolving disk 31, serving as a shutter for alternately exposing and covering the 70 sensitive film. This disk, which is continuously revolving, is provided with six or any other suitable number of apertures 32 at regular intervals around it near the edge, they being so arranged that one of the apertures 75 passes directly between the camera-lens 33 and the film each time the film is brought to rest, the light-rays passing through the opening 33 and falling on the film half-way between the reels on which the film is wound. 80

34 is a device for adjusting the camera-lens toward or from the film, and 35 is a device by means of which the operator can focus the camera on the object to be photographed.

While I have described the use of an intermittently-moving film and a shutter having several openings so arranged as to expose the film at proper intervals, it would be possible and within my invention to use a continuously-moving film, and also to use a shutter you with a single opening, as shown in Fig. 6, the shutter revolving at a high rate of speed.

To make the apparatus move the film continuously, it will only be necessary to omit the stop-wheels 23 and 25, which arrest the 95 rotation of the shaft 6.

Although the operation has been partially indicated in the description of the apparatus it will now be set forth more in detail.

The apparatus is first charged with a sen- 100 sitive tape-film several hundred or even thousands of feet long and the motor is set in op-eration. Since the spring 21 causes the door 20 to clamp the film, as already described, the loose pulleys 7 18 slip without pulling said 105 film along, but when a moving object-for example, a man gesticulating—is placed in the field of the camera and the handle 22 is pulled the film is released and the pulleys operate to pull the same along. At the same 110 time the reel in case 2 is rotated to wind up the film, thus transferring it from the reel in case 1 to the reel in case 2. In the apparatus shown in Fig. 1 this movement is not continuous, but, as already indicated, is intermit- 115 tent, the film advancing by very rapid step which are definitely and positively controlled by means of the peculiar detent or escapement described, and a photograph is taken after each step

While I do not care to limit myself to any particular number of steps per second, there should be at least enough so that the eye of an observer cannot distinguish, or at least cannot clearly and positively distinguish, at 125 a glance a difference in the position occupied by the object in the successive pictures, as illustrated in Fig. 7. A less speed in taking the pictures will cause a trembling or jerky appearance in the reproduced picture. When 130 the movement of the object being photographed has ceased or the desired number of photographs has been obtained, the apparatus is stopped. The film is snitably treated

for developing and fixing the pictures, when it is ready for use in an exhibiting apparatus.
What I claim is—

1. An apparatus for effecting by photogra-5 phy a representation, suitable for reproduction, of a scene including a moving object or objects, comprising a means for intermittently projecting at such rapid rate as to result in persistence of vision images of successive poto sitions of the object or objects in motion, as observed from a fixed and single point of view, a sensitized tape-like film, and a means for so moving the film as to cause the successive images to be received thereon separately

 and in a single-line sequence.
 An apparatus for taking photographs suitable for the exhibition of objects in motion, having in combination a single camera, and means for passing a sensitized tape-film to at a high rate of speed across the lens of the

camera and for exposing successive portions of the film in rapid succession, substantially

as set forth.

3. An apparatus for taking photographs 25 suitable for the exhibition; of objects in motion, having in combination a single camera, and means for passing a sensitized tape-film across the lens of the camera at a high rate of speed and with an intermittent motion, and 30 for exposing successive portions of the film during the periods of rest, substantially as set forth.

4. An apparatus for taking photographs

suitable for the exhibition of objects in motion, having in combination a single camera, 35 and means for passing a sensitized tape-film across the lens at a high rate of speed and with an intermittent motion, and for expos-ing successive portions of the film during the periods of rest, the periods of rest being 40 greater than the periods of motion, substantially as set forth.

5. An unbroken transparent or translucent tape-like photographic film having thereon equidistant photographs of successive posi- 45 tions of an object in motion, all taken from the same point of view, auch photographs being arranged in a continuous straight-line sequence, unlimited in number save by the length of the film, substantially as described. 50

6. An unbroken transparent or translucent tape-like photographic film provided with perforated edges and having thereon equidistant photographs of successive positions of an object in motion, all taken from the same point 55 of view, such photographs being arranged in a continuous straight-line sequence, unlimited in number save by the length of the film, substantially as described.

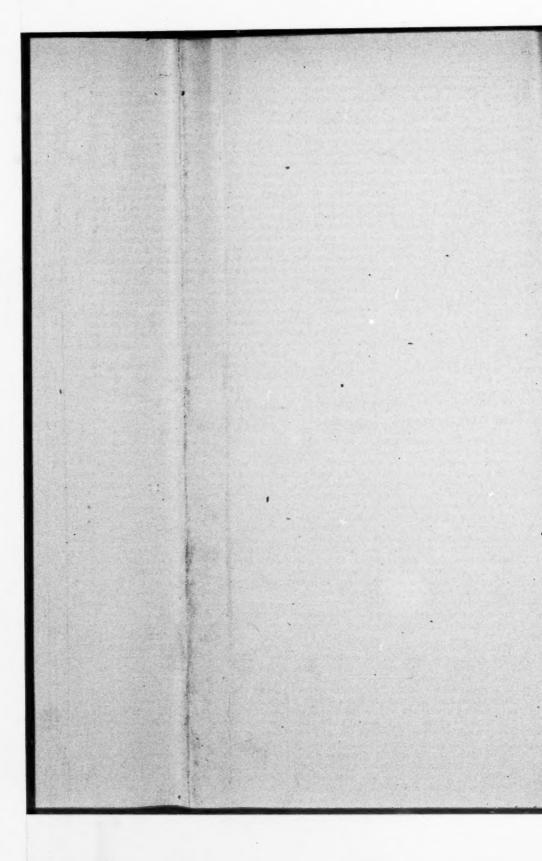
This specification signed and witnessed this 60

31st day of July, 1891.

STATE TO I

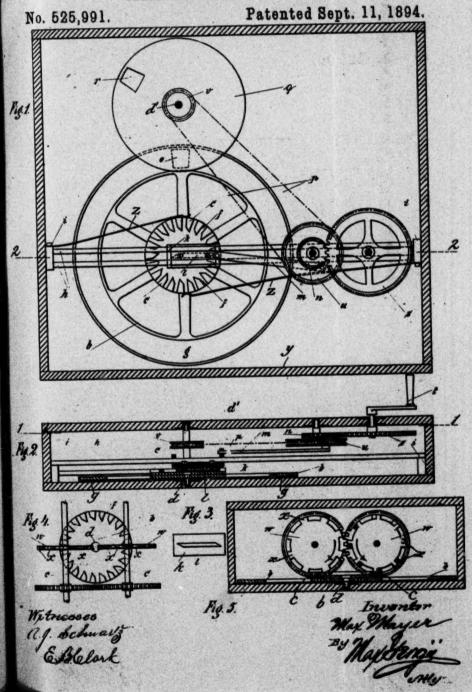
THOS. A. EDISON.

Witnesses: JOHN F. RANDOLPH, FREDERICK OTT.



M. MAYER.

SERIES PHOTOGRAPHIC CAMERA.



(No Model.)

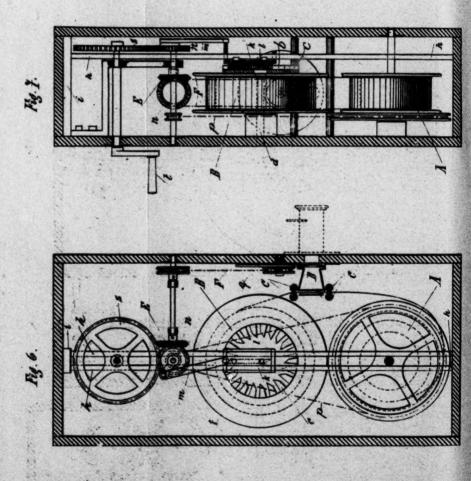
2 Sheets-Sheet 2

M. MAYER.

SERIES PHOTOGRAPHIC CAMERA.

No. 525,991.

Patented Sept. 11, 1894.



Witnesses
a f schwarff
Edelark

May Mayer By Mayferrie

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

MAX MAYER, OF MUNICH, GERMANY.

SERIES PHOTOGRAPHIC CAMERA.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 525,991, dated September 11, 1894. Application filed September 24, 1892. merial Ho. 446,788. (He model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Do it known that I, MAX MAYER, a subject of the King of Bavaria, residing at Munich.
Bavaria, German Empire, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Photographic Apparatus, of which the following

is a specification.

My invention relates to an improvement in photographic apparatus; and it has for its will photograph moving objects at short in-tervals of time so that the pictures when de-veloped, if exhibited to view in a stroboscope, represent net only the general appearance of the object photographed, but also will repro-duce it as if in motion.

The invention will first be described in con-

The invention will first be described in connection with the accompanying drawings, and then pointed out in the claims.

In the drawings,—Figure 1 is a longitudinal vertical section of an apparatus embodying my improvements, taken on the line 1—1, Fig. 2. Fig. 2 is a transverse section of the same, partly in section, taken on the line 2—2, Fig. 1. Fig. 3 is a detail view. Fig. 4 is a detail of one modification of the gearing.

Fig. 5 is a plan view, partly in section of the Fig. 5 is a plan view, partly in section, of the same. Figs. 6 and 7 are vertical sections, to taken in planes at right angles to each other, of another modified form of my improved ap-

Referring to Figs. 1 and 2, b is a carrier-wheel rigidly attached to a shaft, d, revolubly mounted in a casing, y, the carrier-wheel, b, being provided with an integral hub having an odd number of radial wedge-shaped teeth, c, (in this case twenty-one) forming a crown-wheel, the inner ends of these teeth being bev-sled or inclined in ward in the direction of rota-

tion of the wheel, as will be fully understood from the drawings. On that side of the carrier-wheel, b, which faces the lens, an annular sensitive plate or sheet, g, is mounted.

For the purpose of intermittently rotating the carrier-wheel, b, I provide a reciprocating tappet, l, having each end beveled or inclined in the same direction for engagement with the inclined inner ends of the crown teeth, c. This tappet, l, is secured to and carried by a cross-head, k, guided in slides, h,

which are held by brackets, i, attached to the casing, y. The cross-head, k, and with it the tappet, i, is reciprocated in the slides, h, through the medium of a pitman, m, conceeding it with a wrist-pin on the cog-wheel, n, which preferably meshes with a second cogwheel, s, which may be rotated by a crank, l, as will be fully understood from the drawings. As the tappet, I, is moved to the right its 60 right-hand inclined face engages the inner inclined end of the cog or tooth which happens to be at the extreme right-hand side of the crown - wheel or hub. The continued the crown - wheel or hub. movement of the tappet to the right depresses 65 the tooth, thus rotating the wheel a short distance and permitting the tappet to enter the space, f, between the tooth just depressed and that one immediately above it. It is plain that after the tappet has entered the space, 70 f, it will move to its extreme limit at the right and back again until it has cleared the right hand tooth without retailing the wheel, but hand toeth without rotating the wheel; but as there are an odd number of teeth in the crown-wheel, the left-hand inclined end of 75 the tappet, in its movement to the left, will strike the inclined end of the extreme lefthand tooth, thereby forcing up the said tooth and rotating the wheel. Thus it will be seen the crown-wheel and with it the carrier-wheel, So

the crown-wheel and with it the carrier-wheel, 80 b, is alternately rotated and stopped.

To prevent accidental displacement of the crown-teeth, c, after the tappet, l, has released those on one side and before it has come in contact with the proper one on the opposite 85 side, upper and lower detent-aprings, z, are provided, these springs being secured at one end to the brackets, i, and arranged to bear against the crown-wheel teeth, c, being bent at their free ends as shown, the bend normally resting in the spaces between the teeth.

At each instant of rest of the carrier-wheel, b, a photographic exposure is made as heroin-after set forth, and at each partial rotation of the carrier-wheel by the tappet, l, a fresh 93 section (as indicated in dotted lines at 0) of the sensitive ring, g, is brought opposite the lens.

The shutter I employ consists of a rotary disk, q, which is operated through the medium for of a pulley, v, on the same shaft with the shutter, driven by a chain, p, passing round

a pulley, to fixed on the same shaft as cogwheel, n, which, as before stated, is rotated by the gear wheel, n, and crank, t. A small portion of the shutter is cut away

5 to form an aperture, r, which is so arrange as to register with the lens-opening when the carrier-wheel is at rest, and to be carried out of register before the carrier-wheel is rotated

by the tappet.

As shown in Figs. 4 and 5 the above appa ratus may be modified by substituting for the cross head, k, and sildes, h, two tappet-wheels, w, revolving in opposite directions and in a plane at right angles to wheel, b. These wheels are provided with detents in the shape of wedge-shaped teeth, lugs, or projections, x, which alternately engage the teeth, c, and cause the same intermittent movement of the wheel, b, the arrangement being such that as space, f, between the teeth, c, a lug or tooth on the other wheel engages the incline on a tooth, c, on the opposite side and thus turns the wheel another half-tooth.

Instead of a flat sensitive plate, a web of sensitive paper may be employed, which is intermittently carried forward opposite the lens. For this purpose the apparatus is somewhat modified as illustrated in Figs. 6 30 and 7. In this modification A is a reel upon which is wound the unexposed sensitive paper

which is in a continuous web whose portion already exposed is wound on a bobbin, B. In order to keep the paper flat, it is passed

35 between two sets of guide-rolls, C, and between two glass plates, D, located between
the rolls and in front of the lens, as will be

plain from the drawings.

The remaining construction is the same as 40 already described in connection with Figs. 1 to 5, except that for rotating the shutter, q, it is necessary to istroduce a bevel-gear, E, a counter-shaft, and gearing, F, after cogwheel, n. The latter, moreover, is connected by gearing with reel, A, in order to unwind the sensitized paper somewhat more rapidly than the same is wound upon reel, B, in order

to prevent tearing.

Having thus described my invention, what 50 Telaim as new, and desire to secure by Letters Patent, is-

1. In a photographic apparatus, the combi-

nation, with a crown-wheel having palls. teeth, a tappet-device actuating the pallet teeth; and means for operating the tapped 55 device, of a sensitized surface support move by the crown-wheel, and a surface exposing shutter, substantially as described and for the purpose set forth.

2. In a photographic apparatus, the combi-nation, with a crown-wheel having pallet-teeth, a tappet-device in engagement with the pallet-teeth, and a sensitized surface support attached to the crown-wheel, of a shutter and means for simultaneously moving the shutter 6; and actuating the tappet device, substantially as set forth.

3. In a photographic apparatus, the combination, with a crown - wheel having palletteeth, a tappet device in engagement with the pepallet-teeth, and a sensitized surface support attached to the crown-wheel, of a rotary shutter having an exposure-aperture, and means for simultaneously moving the shutter and actuating the tappet device, substantially as 75 set forth.

4. The combination, with a crown-wheel having pallet-teeth, and a sensitized surface support attached to the crown-wheel, of a pair of tappet wheels revolving in opposite a directions in a plane at right angles to the crown-wheel, each tappet wheel being provided with tappets arranged in contact with the pallet-teeth, and mechanism for revolv-ing the tappet wheels substantially as de 8;

scribed.

5. In a photographic apparatus, the combination, with a carrier wheel having a hub provided with pallet teeth, of a pair of tappet wheels revolving in opposite directions in a plane at right angles to the carrier wheel, each tappet wheel being provided with tap pets arranged to contact with the pallet teeth, and mechanism for revolving the tappet wheels, whereby the carrier wheel is alter- 95 nately rotated and then held stationary, sub-stantially as described.

In testimony that I claim the foregoing as my invention I have signed my name in presence of two subscribing witnesses. my invention I have algue witnesses.

Presence of two subscribing witnesses.

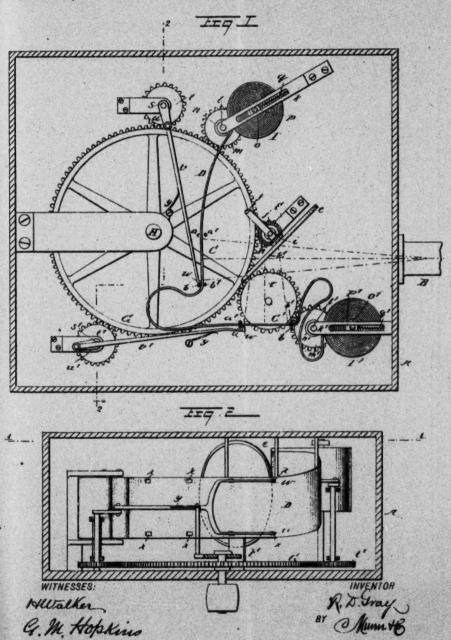
MAX MAYER.

ALBERT WEICEMANN, KARL MAYER

R. D. GRAY. SERIES PHOTOGRAPHIC CAMERA.

No. 540,546.

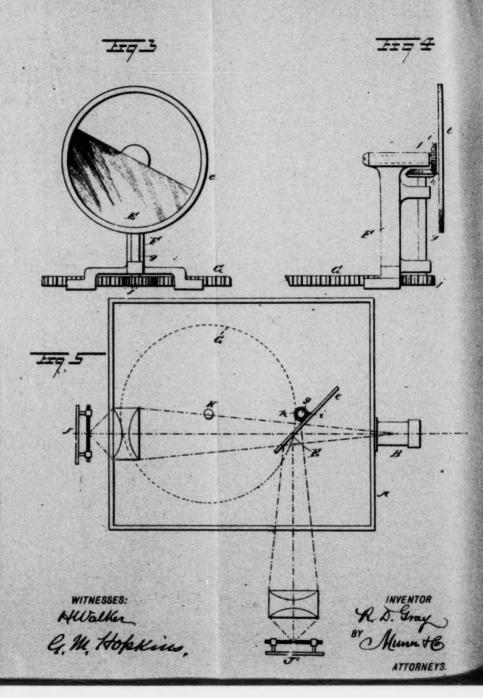
Patented June 4, 1895.



R. D. GRAY. SERIES PHOTOGRAPHIC CAMERA.

No. 540,545.

Patented June 4, 1895.



UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

ROBERT D. GRAY, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

SERIES PHOTOGRAPHIC CAMERA.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 540,545, dated June 4, 1895. Application filed March 9, 1885. Serial No. 541,135. (He mobel.)

to all whom it may concern.

Be it known that I, ROBERT D. GRAY, of New York city, in the county and State of New York, have invented a new and Improved Photographic Camera, of which the following is a full, clear, and exact description.

The object of my invention is to construct

s photographic camera for taking a series of photographic pictures of moving objects, and fer projecting the pictures thus produced on a screen by the aid of a suitable illuminant and light-controlling devices attached to the

The object is also to provide apparatus for taking a continuous series of pictures so that all the movements of the object are repre-

sented in the pictures when projected.

My object is also to produce two series of photographs, the separate pictures of which will be made in alternation, the movement of the sensitive film required for bringing it into position for the exposure of one series alternating with the movement required to bring another portion of the film into position for exposure for a picture of the other series, so that the said movements may each be made with one half the speed that would be required for producing a succession of exposures with intervals of darkness.

My invention consists in a camera provided with an objective, a strip of unexposed sensitive film, guides for holding the film in two focal planes at right angles to each other, a plane segmental revolving mirror arranged on is a plane at an angle of forty-five degrees with the axial line of the objective, and constructed to eclipse the direct light beam entering the camera and at the same time reflect it laterally to the portion of the sensitive film lying to parallel with the axial line of the lens.

It also consists in devices for moving two portions of the film in alternation along the two focal planes by a step-by-step movement, all as hereinafter more fully described.

on line 2 2 in Fig. 1. Fig. 3 is a front eleva-tion of the segmental revolving mirror. Fig. 4 is a side elevation of the same, and Fig. 5 is a plan view showing the application of the 55 camera to projection.

The box A, which contains the mechanical portions of my improved camera, is provided with a photographic lens B, and is furnished with two film guides C, C', arranged at right 6c angles to each other, each guide being composed of four smaller rollers a a', b b', between which the consister strip. D pages the rollers which the sensitive strip D passes, the rollers a b being at one side of the portion of the strip to be exposed, and the rollers a'b' being 65 at the other side.

The sensitive strip D is designed to receive two series of impressions, one above the other, and since the pictures of the two series are taken at different times with the same 70 lens, the portions of the strip receiving the impression are held in the same horizontal plane, as shown in Fig. 2. On a line bisecting the angle formed by prolonging the two focal planes represented by the pertions of 75 the film in the film guides, is arranged a revolving segmental mirror E, whose plane of rotation intersects the prolongation of the axis of the lens B at an angle of forty-five deaxis of the lens Bat an angle of forty-five degrees, so that when the mirror revolves, it intercepts the beam of light entering the camera once during each revolution. The direct beam passes to the portion of the film in the guide C, and the reflected beam passes laterally at right angles to the portion of the film in the guide C'. The duration of the time during which the beam is reflected is proportionate to the time during which the direct beam is passing, so that the exposures by the direct beam and reflected beam are equal. The two so series of pictures being thus made on the series of pictures being thus made on the same strip, one series above the other, the up-per half of the film being used in the present per hair of the film being used in the present case for the series of pictures taken by the direct beam, and the lower half being used for 95 the pictures taken by the reflected beam, it is necessary to elevate the film-guide C', as shown in Fig. 2, to bring the lower portion of the film into position for exposure.

It is obviously possible to produce the necessary movements of the film and the rotary motion of the segmental mirror by different Reference is to be had to the accompanying drawings, forming a part of this specification, in which similar letters of reference indicate corresponding parts in all the views.

Figure 1 is a horizontal section of my improved camers, taken on line 11 in Fig. 2.

Fig. 2 is a vertical section of the same, taken

means. I shall proceed to describe one way of doing it, but I do not limit myself to this par-

ticular way.

The segmental mirror E is mounted on a 5 wheel e carried by the horizontal shaft f journaled in the standard F. The mirror covers one half of the wheel, or as much more as may he required to secure an equal illumination of The portion of the wheel not covthe film. ac ered by the mirror is left open and unob-structed to allow the direct light beam from the lens to proceed to the film in the guide C. In the standard F is journaled the vertical shaft g, which carries at its upper end a bevel

15 wheel h which engages a bevel pinion i se-cured to the shaft f. The lower end of the shaft g carries a spur pinion j. The standard F is secured to the bottom of the camera box A, and the pinion j is engaged by a spur wheel to G, mounted on the shaft H journaled in bear-

ings in the camera box. In a bridge k at one side of the wheel G is journaled a shaft 4 to which is secured a pinion m, which is engaged by the spur wheel G, and upon the shaft!

25 is secured a roller n, against which is pressed a roll I, of exposed sensitized film. The roller o on which the exposed sensitized film is wound is journaled at one end in a sliding journal box p, placed in a slot in the bridge k and pressed

30 forward by a spiral spring q placed in the slot of the bridge. The other end of the roller o is journaled in a similar spring-pressed sliding box below the roll of film. When the wheel G, and consequently the wheel m and roller 15 n are revolved, the roll I is turned in the di-

rection required for rolling the film. At the opposite side of the camera box is arranged a bridge k' carrying a wheel m', a roller n'

a roller o' carrying the sell I' of unexposed to film, the roller o' being journaled in a sliding journal box p' pressed forward toward the roller n' by the spring q'. The film D, which is continuous from the roll I' to the roll I, passes through the film guides CC', and as it

45 is unwound from the roll o' and wound upon the roll o, the said roll o' is arranged to revolve in the opposite direction. To secure this movement and at the same time to increase the distance of the roll of unexposed

50 film from the film guides, an latermediate wheel r is placed between the wheel m' and the main wheel G. On opposite sides of the wheel G are journaled shafts s s', carrying spur wheels t', engaged by the spur wheel G

55 To the shafts s s' are secured cranks uu', pivotally connected with rods v v', which are forked at their free ends, the ends of the tines

of the forks being bent at right angles, and beveled to form hooks wfor engagement with 60 the film D, which is provided at its upper and lower edges, with perforations x for recoiving the books to at the ends of the forks. The forked rods v v' are arranged to act on the portions of the film held by the guides C

65 C', and are pressed forward against the film by springs y secured to a fixed portion of the

apparatus. The hooks to are thus arm to reciprocate in planes at right angles to other. They are also geared so as to work

alternation.

The beam of light entering the camer through the lens B, passes to the portion of the film in the guide C through the open p tion of the wheel e, while the portion of the film being exposed is at rest. As soon as the mirror E in its revolution intersects the light beam, the portion of the film in the guide C is exposed by the reflected beam and the portion just exposed by the direct beam is moved along one space by the hooks w of the rod v, there being sufficient slack in the film D between the guides C and C' to allow of this movement. When the direct beam is againallowed to fall on the portion of the film in the guide C, the portion of the film in the guide C' just exposed by the reflected beam is moved along by the books w of the rod v', there being sufficient slack in the film to admit of this movement. In this manner the expos ures are made in alternation, and the film is moved along and rolled and unrolled automatically.

When the film has been developed and printed on a similar film for projection, the positive film is placed in the camera and illuminated by two sources of light J, J', which in the present case are electric arc lights, the light being converged by condensers as in an ordinary optical lantern. The film is drawn along by the step-by-step motion, as described in the operation of taking the impressions and the projection is alternately by direct

and reflected beams.

The picture which is reversed in taking by reflection is corrected when reversed in pro-

jection by reflection.

It is obvious that by means of my improvement I am enabled to make continuous exposures without any periods of darkness, and that I am enabled to project the pictures without any interruption of the light, thus producing better effects on a larger scale than is possible with the methods and apparatus heretofore in use.

Having thus described my invention, I claim as new and desire to secure by Letters

Patent-

1. In a photographic camera of the character described, the combination of a lens, two film guides arranged at right angles to each other, means for moving forward the film in the guides, and a segmental mirror arranged to act as a shutter for one field and a means of directing light to the other field, substanecified.

tially as specified.

2. In a photographic camera of the character described, the combination of a photographic lens, two film guides placed at right angles to each other, a revoluble segments mirror placed in a plane intersecting the angles formed by the planes of the film guides and mechanism for moving the film forward 540,545

with a step-by-step motion, substantially as

specified.

3. In a camera for taking negatives of moving objects, the combination of a lens, two film guides, a perforated film passing through the guides, a revolving segmental mirror, and reciprocating hooks for carrying the film

through the guides, as specified.

4. The combination, with a camera provided with a lens, revolving segmental mirror, and duplicate film moving mechanism, of light furnishing and controlling devices for protesting a direct and a reflected have in all and a reflected have a direct and a reflected have in all and a reflected have in a reflected have a refl jecting a direct and a reflected beam in alter-

95

5. The method of taking a series of photo-graphic pictures to represent motion, which consists in exposing a sensitive film to a con-tinuous beam of light directed on two fields of exposure in alternation, thereby forming a

series of images representing all the move- so ments of the moving body.

6. The method of taking a series or pnoto-graphic pictures, which consists in taking an image on a sensitized surface by a direct continuous beam of light, then covering the ex- 25 posed surface and replacing the exposed surface while covered with an unexposed sensitized surface and simultaneously deflecting the light beam to another surface, then re-turning the direct beam to the replaced sur- 30 face, and at the same time replacing the surface exposed by the deflected beam by an unexposed surface, as herein specified.

ROBERT D. GRAY.

Witnesses:

C. SEDGWICK, F. W. HANAFORD

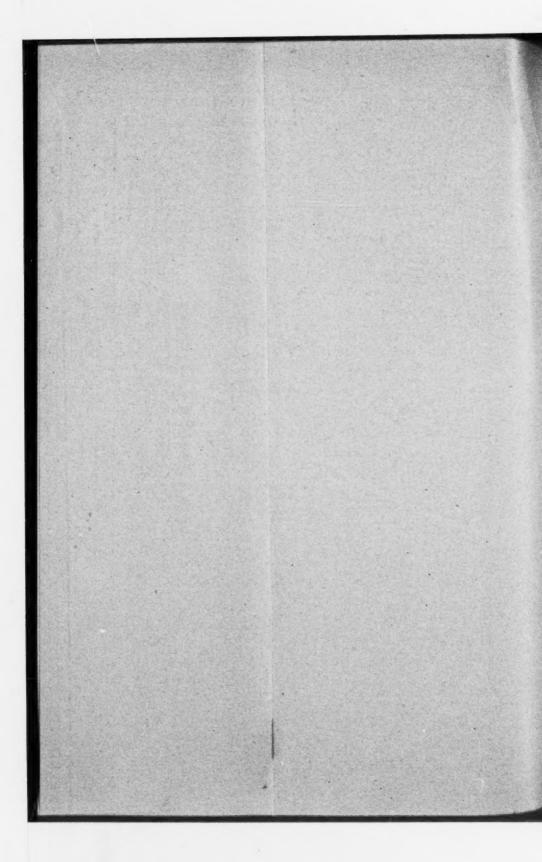
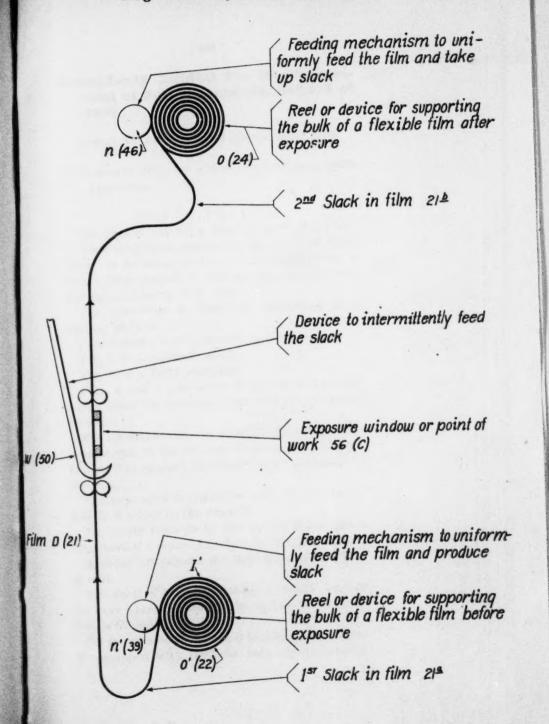


Diagram of Gray U. S. Patent 540545



WATER THE THE WATER OF THE WATER TO STATE OF THE STATE OF Defendants' Exhibit No. 28—Translation of Joly Patent No. 249,875 of 1895.

Patent No. 249875, Dated August 26th, 1895.

To Monsieur Joly, for a New Photochronographic Apparatus.

Plate XII, Figs. 1 to 4..

The present invention has for its object a new photochronographic apparatus, by the aid of which there can be taken during a determined period of time a large number of photographs, each of these photographs being very clear.

The apparatus is composed essentially of a moving pictures.

I have shown this apparatus in the drawing.

Fig. 1 is a vertical section.

Fig. 2 is a front elevation.

Figs. 3 and 4 are views of details of members which cause the arresting of the film at the desired moment.

The apparatus can also serve as a kinetoscope for wooden box, in the interior of which are two metal frames that support the members we are about to describe.

The apparatus is controlled with the aid of the handle A acting on the wheel B.

The latter controls by the intermediate agency of a chain C a pinion keyed on the shaft E.

A pulley D^1 permits the tightening of the chain at will.

The shaft E carries a pinion F, which controls the gear-wheel G through the agency of the gearwheels G^1 and G^2 .

On the spindle of the wheel G is mounted a roller H, equipped with teeth on both circumferences;

3698

these teeth penetrate into the holes made along the entire length of the strip of film 1.

A pressure pulley H^1 keeps the film pressed against the roller H and assures the advancement.

A spring acts upon the arm which supports the spindle of this pulley H^1 .

When the roller H rotates it draws off the film which is wound upon the reel J.

After having gone beyond the roller H the film passes between two rollers K K^1 which direct its course.

3701 The film then descends vertically and enters the dark room L.

On leaving the dark room it passes over a roller M and into the interior of a frame N, which is supported by the linked arms N^1 .

From this frame the film passes between two rollars O and O^1 , over the toothed roller P, over the roller Q, and goes to be wound up on the reel R.

The shaft E carries a pinion S which, by the agency of the wheel S^1 , controls the wheel T mounted on the spindle of the roller P.

3702

The reel R is actuated by a spring which is placed in the drum U.

Let us suppose, in order to explain the working of the apparatus, that the film has been put in place and let us see how the different members work.

The shaft E being set in motion, the roller H rotates and winds off the film which is on the reel J.

When the photograph is taken the crank-disc V causes the frame X to oscillate around its joint pin N^2 and forces it by the agency of the connecting-rod X to advance towards the front part of the apparatus.

The film, which is held in the frame N, is carried along in this movement, being held on the lower edge by the teeth of the roller P it cannot go backwards; therefore, the part that has just had an impression made upon it will have to leave the dark room and it will be replaced by a new portion of film that has not had an impression made upon it.

The shaft E continuing to rotate the frame N returns to the back, the loop it had formed in advancing will no longer be held taut and the roller P will cause the film that has formed this loop to travel downwards.

The roller H, on its side, will have unwound from the reel J a quantity of film corresponding to that which has been wound up at the lower end on the reel R.

Before beginning the working, at the moment when the film is introduced into the apparatus, a loop is made by hand between the roller H and the rollers K and K^1 ; as there is wound up on the reel R an amount of film equal to that which is paid off from the reel J this fold will be preserved during the entire time that the apparatus is working.

There results from this that the roller P not drawing on a film which is stretched tight, the latter runs no risk of being torn.

At the beginning of the operation the spring which is contained in the drum U is about half tense

To maintain the tension of this spring, since it is the spring which causes the rotation of the reel R, I arrange on the spindle of the roller P a wheel Y which, by the agency of the chain Y^1 , controls the pinion Y^2 .

There is set on the spindle of this pinion Y^2 another pinion Z engaging with the wheel Z^1 , that causes the winding-up of the spring.

3704

During the working of the apparatus the tension of this spring, therefore, will be constantly maintained.

The shutter a is set on a spindle b carrying a worm-wheel c engaging with a work d set on the shaft E.

In order that the film may advance easily from its entrance in the dark room and at the same time be arrested during the exposure, I arrange, a little above the opening of the dark room, a joint e carrying a tenon e^1 which moves in a slot arranged in the upper part of a lever f fulcrumed around the spindle g, the lower extremity of which lever also has a slot into which there enters a tenon fixed at the end of the rod h, united with the collar of the eccentric i.

This eccentric is set on the shaft E. At the moment when the frame N advances in a way to cause the descent of the part of the film which is to be impressed by the picture the rod h advances also; the lever f swinging around the spindle g removes at this moment the joint e of the plate f against which the film is supported.

This plate carries a band of velvet that prevents the film from being ruined by the friction.

This plate j, as Fig. 3 shows, is removable, so that the band of velvet can be easily replaced when it is worn or when it is full of dust.

During the entire time that the frame N is advancing towards the front part of the apparatus, the joint e remains at a distance from the plate j; there is, therefore, nothing to prevent the easy passage of the film.

As soon as the frame N approaches the end of its course, the eccentric brings the lever f forward, and the joint e coming into contact with the plate j the film is arrested.

3707

It is thus seen that if the film were inclined to continue its downward movement it would be arrested by the joint e, the pressure which this joint exerts upon the plate j permits, besides, the roller P to keep the film constantly taut in the dark room.

When the film is arrested, one of the openings made in the shutter comes between the dark room and the objective.

Thus the film has the impression made upon it at the moment it is arrested.

A diaphragm with a variable opening is placed 3710 in the dark room.

In small sizes of the apparatus the roller H may be omitted when necessary.

The film unwinds under the action of the frame N.

When it is desired to use the apparatus as a kinetoscope, the back of the dark room is replaced by a translucent glass, the film is continuously unwound, as I have explained above, and by placing behind the apparatus a sufficient source of light equipped with a reflector and a condenser the picture which is on the film can be thrown on a screen.

Moreover, this picture cannot be projected excepting when the film has been stopped, for, as I have remarked above, it is only at this moment that one of the openings of the shutter comes before the dark room and allows the rays of light to traverse the objective.

On account of the method of controlling the film, a very long film which has consequently a relatively high weight can be used.

The frame N which causes this advancement of the film is not obliged in reality to act directly on the reel since there is constantly a certain length of film already paid off.

Therefore this frame does not itself produce the rotation of the reel.

In certain cases a single toothed roller would suffice, provided it had a sufficiently large diameter.

The two reels in these circumstances being placed on the same side of the apparatus the teeth of the roller would cause, on the one side, the paying off, on the other, the winding up of the film.

I reserve for myself the right of replacing the frame N by an eccentric roller which will communicate the same movement to the film as this frame.

(The claims follow.)

Patent of Addition, Dated July 23d, 1896.

Plates XII and XIII, Figs. 5 to 10.

The present patent of addition has for its object certain improvements which I have made in the photochronographic apparatus described in my patent.

3714

I have represented, by way of example, my new photochronographic apparatus modified and equipped with the improvements which are the object of the present patent of addition.

Fig. 5, rear elevation of the apparatus.

Fig. 6, transverse section.

Fig. 7, side elevation.

Fig. 8, plan showing the mode of acting upon the shutter.

Figs. 9 and 10, details.

My apparatus always contains the two drawingoff rollers A and B, with the projecting parts made in the two extremities.

The strip of film is wound up at the upper end on a reel A1, on leaving this reel it forms a loop, then passes over the drawing-off roller A behind the dark room A^2 , and finally over the roller Bthat has an alternating movement which causes the advancing of the film by jerks, as this is necessary for the right working of the apparatus.

The driving shaft is in G; it can be actuated by a handle fixed on its end and not shown in the

drawing.

On this shaft is keyed the gear-wheel H, that engages with the wheel H^1 mounted on the spindle h; the drawing-off roller A is set on this spindle h.

There is set on the same spindle a gear-wheel h^1 , which transmits its movement to the pinion h_2 , set on the spindle E_1 .

On this intermediate spindle E^1 are keyed:

1. A bevel pinion e which engages with another bevel pinion e^i set directly on the spindle of the shutter P.

2. A plate on two points of the circumference of which is attached a connecting rod D, that is fulcrumed at its lower end on a small crank c1 carrying a pawl.

This pawl acts on a ratchet wheel c set on the spindle C at the end of which is secured the draw-

ing-off wheel B.

It is thus evident from what has gone before that if the wheel G receives a continuous rotary movement, the drawing-off roller A will rotate continuously, as well as the shutter, but the drawing-off roller B will turn by jerks under the action of the plate E, of the connecting rod D, of the pawl c1, and of the ratchet-wheel c.

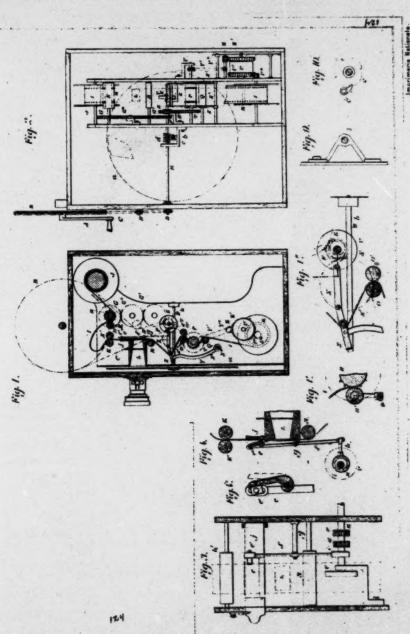
The apparatus, therefore, will work in the same manner as that which was the object of my patent,

that is to say, that the film will be motionless during the projection, and that, further, the pull necessary for the paying-off of the film will be made on a loop of this latter and not on the reel holding the film itself, an essential condition for the right working of the apparatus.

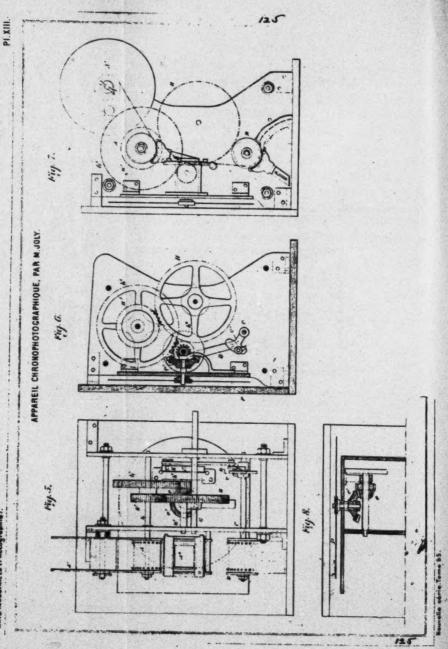
It is understood that I reserve for myself, and exclusively for the projection of positives on screens, the combining of my apparatus with a phonograph working synchronously with the projector apparatus in such manner that the spectators have at the same time the illusion of motion and of speech.

(The claims follow.)

APPAREIL CHRONOPHOTOGRAPHIQUE, PAR M.JOLY.



Revelle same fome II



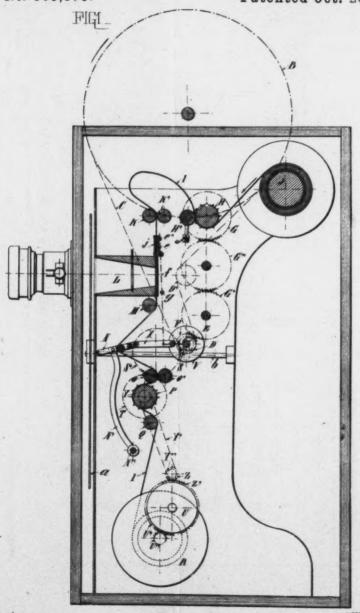
USTRIELS (Phothersphie).

1214.3:

M. J. H. JOLY. CHRONOPHOTOGRAPHIC APPARATUS.

No. 569,875.

Patented Oct. 20, 1896.



Witnesses

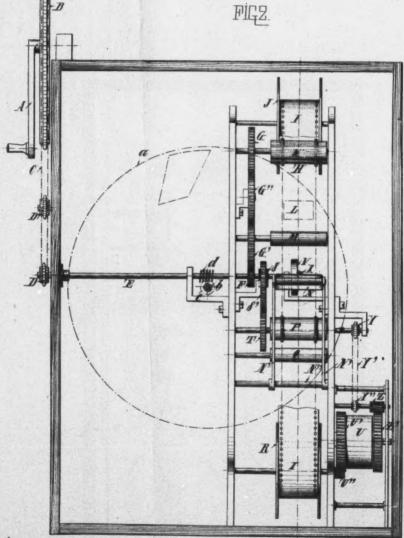
Marie Joseph Auri Jaly



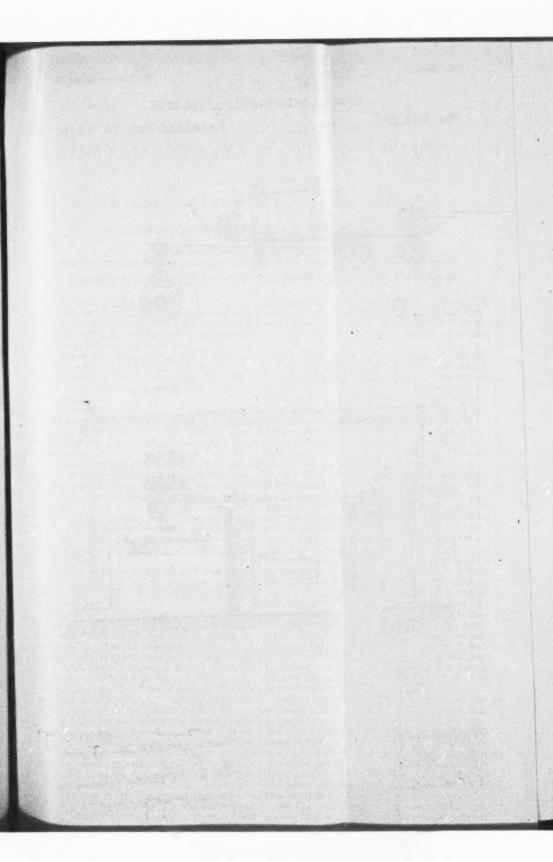
M. J. H. JOLY.

CHRONOPHOTOGRAPHIC APPARATUS.

No. 569,875. Patented Oct. 20, 1896.



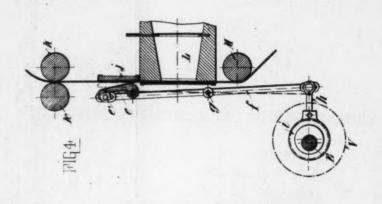
Witnesses. Fran Juins N. R. Edden. Marie Joseph Steuri Joly by Follow Smarero.

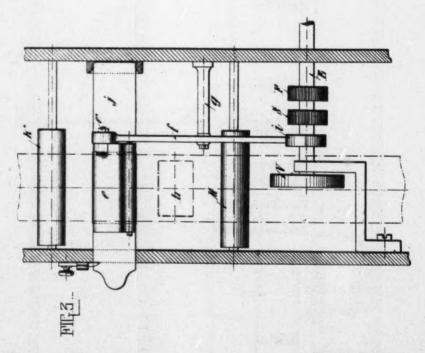


M. J. H. JOLY. CHRONOPHOTOGRAPHIC APPARATUS.

No. 569,875.

Patented Oct. 20, 1896.





Hitnesses. Rew Lives W.R. Edde Marie foreste semi fely
by Tolload mauro,
his attorneys.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

MARIE JOSEPH HENRI JOLY, OF PARIS, FRANCE.

CHRONOPHOTOGRAPHIC APPARATUS

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 569,875, dated October 20, 1896. Application filed June 5, 1896. Serial No. 594,437. (No model.) Patented in France August 26, 1895, No. 249,875.

's all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, MARIE JOSEPH HENRI JOLY, a citizen of the Republic of France, and a resident of Paris, (Seine,) in said Republic, 5 have invented certain new and useful Im-provements in Chronophotographic Apparatus, (for which a patent has been secured in France, No. 249,875, dated August 26, 1895,) of which the following is a full, clear, and ex-10 act description.

This invention relates to a chronophotographic apparatus whereby a large number of photographs, each very clear, may be taken within a given time. It may serve also as a

15 kinetoscope.

In the accompanying drawings, which form part of this specification, by way of illustrating the invention, an apparatus constructed in accordance with the said invention is rep-20 resented.

Figure 1 is a vertical section of such apparatus; Fig. 2, a front elevation of the same, and Figs. 3 and 4 detail views of the means for producing the arrest of the film at the 25 moment desired.

The apparatus consists of a wooden box, in the interior of which are two metallic frames that support the working parts to be

The control of the apparatus is obtained by the aid of a crank A, connected with the wheel B. This latter operates a pinion D, keyed on the shaft E, through a chain C. A roller D' enables the chain to be stretched at 35 will. The shaft E carries a pinion F, which operates the wheel G through the intermediates G'G". On the shaft of the wheel G is mounted a roller II, provided with two circles of teeth on its periphers, these teeth enof the film-band I. A pressure-roller II' holds the film against the roller H, which insures its engagement. A spring acts upon the arm which supports the axle of roller H'. When the roller H turns, it carries along the film, which is wound upon the spool J. After leaving the roller H the film passes between two rollers K K', which hold it in the desired po-The film then descends vertically and enters the dark chamber L. At its exit from

is supported by rocking arms N'. From the frame N the film passes between the two rollers O and O', over the toothed roller P, over 55 the roller Q, and is finally wound upon the

spool R.

The shaft E carries a pinion S, which, through the intermediate S', drives the wheel T, fast on the shaft of the roller P. The move- 60 ment is given to the spool R by a spring in the barrel U. This barrel is for this purpose provided with a wheel U', which drives the shaft of the spool R through the pinion U"

To explain the operation of the apparatus, 65 it will be supposed that the film has been introduced into its working position, and the operation will be described as it would then take place. The shaft E being moved, the roller H turns and unrolls the film from the spool 70 When the photograph has been taken, the crank-disk V acts upon the frame N through the connecting-rod X, moving it about the axis of oscillation N" of the arms N' and forcing it to approach the front of the apparatus. 75 The film, which is caught in the frame N, is carried along, and since its lower part is held by the teeth of the roller Pit cannot be drawn back, and the portion which has been printed will be obliged to pass out of the dark cham-ber, being replaced therein by a new and un-exposed portion of the film. The shaft E continuing to turn, the frame N returns rear-ward, and the loop which it formed in advancing being no longer held can be taken 85 The roller H for its part up by the roller P. will have unrolled from the spool J a length of film corresponding with that which has been wound below on the spool R.

Before commencing the operation, at the oo moment when the film is introduced into the apparatus a loop is formed by hand between the roller H and the rollers K K', and as the same length is wound upon the spool R as is unrolled from the spool J this loop will 95 maintain itself during the whole time the apparatus operates. It hence results that as the roller P does not pull upon a tight film the latter is not liable to be torn apart.

At the beginning of the operation the 100 spring in the barrel U is about half-wound. In order that the tension of this spring -

on the axle of the roller P, and this wheel drives the pinion Y" through the chain Y'. On the axle of pinion Y" is another pinion Z, which meshes with the wheel Z', whereby the spring is wound. Thus during the working of the apparatus the tension of this spring is kept constant.

The shutter a is mounted in a shaft b, which carries a worm-wheel c, that is engaged to by the endless screw d on the shaft E.

In order that the film may be easily moved at the time of its entrance into the dark chamber and may also be arrested during the exposure, a hinged leaf e, Figs. 3 and 4, is arranged a little above the entrance to the dark chamber, and this hinge is provided with a pin e', which is movable in a slot in the upper arm of a lever f, fulcrumed on the stud g. In the lower arm of this lever there is a slot in which works a pin on the end of the bar h, that is fastened to the strap of the eccentric i. This eccentric is fast on the shaft E. At the moment when the frame N advances to draw down the film which has been exposed ine bar h also advances, and the lever f is rocked on its fulcrum and withdraws

the leaf e from the plate j, against which it has clamped the film. This plate is provided with a velvet band, which prevents the film 30 being injured by rubbing. This plate j is removable, as shown in Fig. 3, so that the velvet band can readily be replaced when it is worn or when it becomes clogged with powder.

During all the time the frame N is advancing toward the front part of the apparatus
the leaf e remains withdrawn from the plate
j, and nothing, therefore, opposes the free
movement of the film. As soon as the frame
N is at the end of its course the eccentric
trings forward again the lever f and causes
the leaf e to bear against the plate j, and the
film is stopped.

It will thus be seen that if the film tended to continue its downward movement it would 45 be arrested by the leaf c, and besides the pressure of the leaf against the plate j permits the roller P to keep the film stretched

constantly in the dark chamber.

When the film is at rest, one of the openings in the shutter comes between the dark chamber and the objective. The film then is printed or exposed at the moment in which it is at rest. A diaphragm of variable opening is placed in the dark chamber. In small 55 spparatus the roller H may if desired, be suppressed. The film would then be unwound by the action of the frame N.

When the apparatus is to serve as a kinetoscope, the back of the dark chamber is re-60 placed by a translucent plate, the film is unrolled, as before explained, and by placing a sufficient source of light provided with a reflector or condenser behind the apparatus the

image which may be on the film can here. ceived on the screen. This image cannot be projected except when the film is at rest, for, as observed above, it is only at such time that one of the openings in the shutter is in front of the dark chamber and permits the luminous rays to pass through the objective. reason of the system of supporting and shifting the film this may be of very great length and consequently of a considerable weight. The frame N, which produces the shifting of the film, does not have to act directly on the spool, since there is constantly a certain length of film unrolled in advance. This frame then is not required to produce itself the rotation of the spool. In certain cases single toothed wheel might suffice, provided it is of sufficiently large diameter. spools being then placed on the same side of the apparatus, the roller-teeth may produce on one hand the unwinding and on the other the rewinding of the film. The frame N can (without departing from the invention) be replaced by an eccentric roller which will communicate to the film the same movement as the frame.

I claim as my invention or discovery--

l. In an apparatus of the kind described wherein a film having perforations at regular intervals therein is employed, two toothed rollers, the teeth thereon engaging perforations in the film, one for unrolling and the other for rewinding the film, means for rotating the rollers at a uniform continuous movement, means for forming a loop in the film in advance of the dark chamber, and a frame reciprocating at right angles to the normal line of feed and acting to periodically form a loop in the film after it leaves the dark chamber, whereby the film is passed through said chamber by an intermittent movement, aubstantially as described.

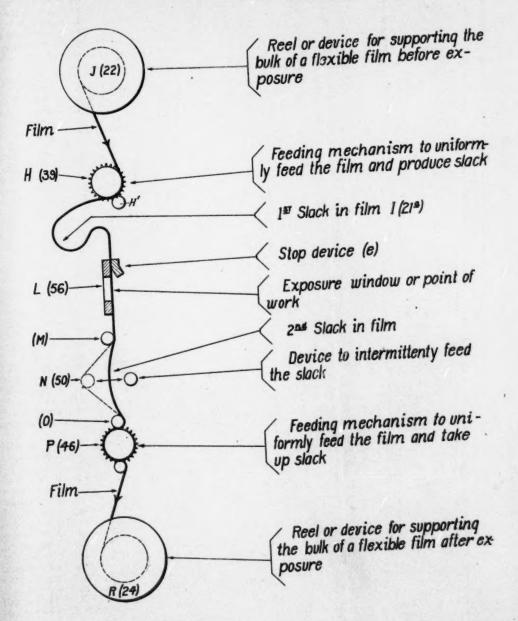
2. In an apparatus of the kind described, means for unrolling and means for rewinding the film at a uniform continuous movement, means for forming a loop in the film in advance of the dark chamber, and a frame remeiprocating at right angles to the normal line of feed of the film and acting to periodically form a loop therein after it leaves the dark chamber, whereby the film is passed through said chamber by an intermittent movement, and a clamp or gripping device located immediately in advance of the dark chamber and actuated to hold the film during intervals of exposure, substantially as described.

In testimony whereof I have signed this a specification in the presence of two subscribing witnesses.

MARIE JOSEPH HENRI JOLY. Witnesses:

CLYDE SHEOPSHIRE, EDWARD BARBARY.

DEFENDANTS' EXHIBIT No. 30 Diagram of Joly French Pat. 249875 and U. S. Pat. 569875



No. 673,992.

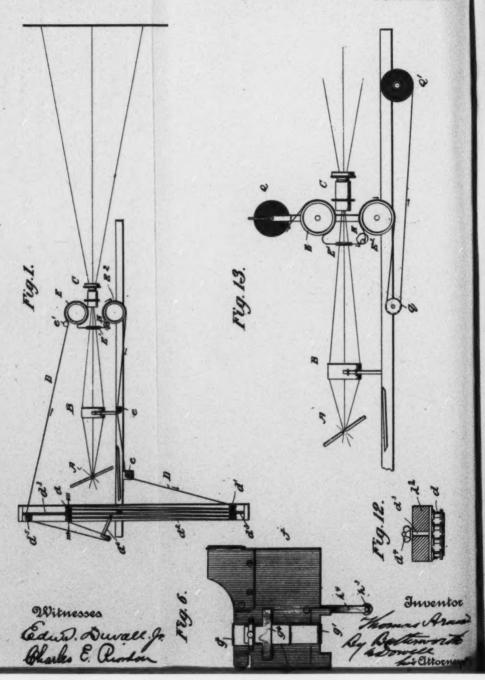
T. ARMAT.

(Application filed Feb. 10, 1896.)

Patented May 14, 1901.

(No Model.)

3 Sheets-Sheet I.



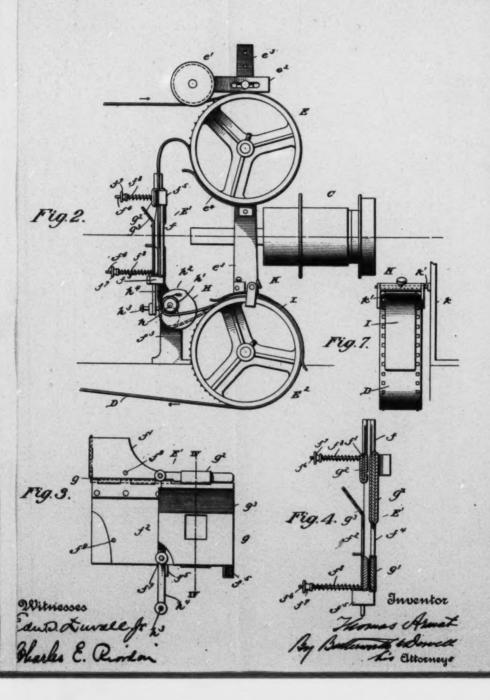


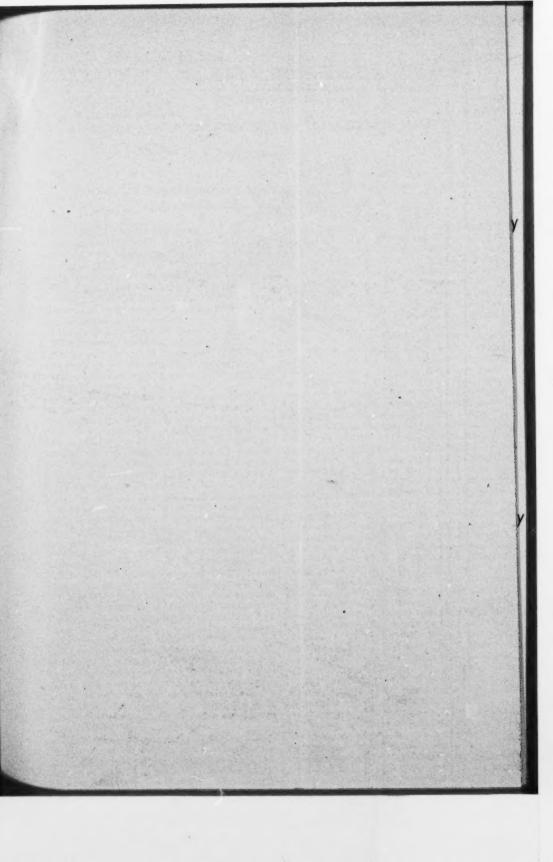
T. ARMAT.

(Application filed Feb. 19, 1896.)

(No Model.)

3 Shoets-Sheet 2.





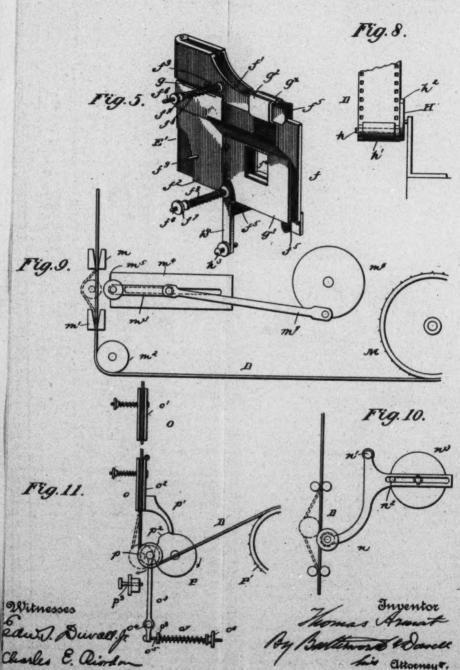
No. 673,992.

Patented May 14, 1901.

T. ARMAT. VITASCOPE.

(No Model.)

3 Sheets-Sheet 3.



UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

THOMAS ARMAT, OF WASHINGTON, DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.

VITASCOPE.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 678,992, dated May 14, 1901. Application filed February 19, 1896. Serial No. 579,901. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, THOMAS ARMAT, a citizen of the United States, residing at Washington, in the District of Columbia, have inyented certain new and useful Improvements in Vitascopes; and I do hereby declare the following to be a full, clear, and exact de-scription of the invention, such as will enable others skilled in the art to which it apperro tains to make and use the same.

This invention relates to apparatus for exhibiting pictures, but more particularly to that class of picture-exhibiting apparatus in which the impression is given to the eye of

15 objects in motion.

The primary object or one invention is to provide improved and efficient means whereby a series of photographic or other pictures showing successively the different positions or attitudes assumed by a person or object in motion may be displayed in such manner as to reproduce to the eye the appearance of the moving object through all the phases of such movement with a life-like and unblurred ef-25 fect.

Another object is to provide means by which a continuous or endless strip or film forming the picture-carrying surface may be operated so as to successively place the objects thereon in position for reproduction without liability to injury from unnecessary strain and wear thereon and without the knocking and jarring of the mechanism which Other objects are to provide means for pre-

venting the film from flexing or puckering at the point of exposure (in order to assure a proper reproduction of the objects thereon) and for intermistently releasing the film, so as to permit it to move a sufficient distance to expose a picture at each successive move-ment, and also to provide continuously-op-erated mechanism for moving the film, and means for intermittently moving it so as to successively place the pictures in the field of illumination for reproduction.

These several objects may be accomplished by the use of the mechanism hereinafter described and without using a shutter or equiva-50 lent device, such as is commonly used in apparatuses of a similar character, whereby the light for illuminating the picture to be pro-

jected or reproduced is ntilized continuously and to the best advantage and the casting of shadows or cloud effects produced by the pas-sage of the shutter across the light is avoided.

The invention will first be hereinafter more particularly described and then pointed out in the claims at the end of the description.

Referring to the accompanying drawings, forming a part of this specification, Figure 1 is a diagrammatic view, in side elevation, of one form of picture-exhibiting apparatus em-bodying my invention. Fig. 2 is an enlarged side elevation of a preferred form of mechanism for operating the picture-carrying surface or film, so as to place the objects thereon successively in position for reproduction. Fig. 3 is a front elevation of the tension and guiding device for the film. Fig. 4 is an enlarged vertical sectional view taken on the line IV IV of Fig. 3. Fig. 5 is a perspective view of the tension and guiding device. Fig. 6 is an elevation of the tension and guiding device looking from the rear, illustrating an adjustable plate which may be employed for enlarging or decreasing the size of the opening therein according to the size of the object to be reproduced. Fig. 7 is a detail view of one of the feed-drums, having a pressure and a guiding device for the film while passing around said drum. Fig. 8 is a detail view of a preferred form of device for intermittently operating the film. Figs. 9 and 10 are side elevations of modified forms of mechanism for intermittently operating the film. Fig. 11 is a side view of another form of mechanism for intermittently operating the film, showing how pressure may be applied to and released therefrom. Fig. 12 is a sectional plan on the line XII XII of Fig. 1, illustrating how the banks or series of rollers may be adjusted upon their support; and Fig. 13 is a diagrammatic view of a modified form of apparatus in which a continuous instead of an endless strip or film is employed.

In devices or apparatuses such as have heretofore been devised for exhibiting lifelike pictures or producing the appearance of objects in motion it has been considered most feasible to keep the series of similar pictures (whether on a disk, tape, or other surface) constantly moving at a regulated speed corresponding with the speed at which the pic-

tures were taken and by means of a shutter or light-obstructing surface to alternately cover and expose the pictures successively in a manner quite similar to the method of 5 exposing the sensitive film or substance in taking the photographs, so as to bring the opening through the shutter centrally over a picture at intervals practically equal to the intervals between exposure in taking the picto tures, so that each picture may be seen only when it is in such a position that it will be exactly superposed upon the image not yet (owing to the persistence of vision) faded from the eye. The openings in such shutters, 15 which are ordinarily in the form of revolving disks having openings near their circumferences, usually cover but a fractional part of the circumference of the disk, so that a view of the picture is afforded through an inter-"so val of time much less than the period of interruption, and as the illuminated pictures and the cloud effect or darkness of interruption caused by the passage of the shutter across the light are blended or mixed together as in the eye of the observer the darkness continues to impress upon the retina so much longer than the light that the value of the illumination is very greatly diminished and the picture appears to be poorly lighted or 30 blurred. In the case of my invention the conditions are quite different, and the results produced are therefore more satisfactory than and superior to anything of the kind heretofore obtained, for the reason that the picture 35 is held a much longer time than is required to remove it and substitute another in its stead, thus prolonging the period of view or illumination very greatly as compared with the period of interruption or change, and there 40 is no obstruction of the light by the interposition of a shutter or opaque substance across its path, so that the impression of the picture on the eye is so much longer and more permanent than the distortion or shadow effect inci-45 dent to its movement and the interval of change or interruption is so infinitesimal that the image of the picture is readily retained until displacement and substitution takes effect, and owing to the inability of the eye 50 to receive an impression from every phase of motion the interruption or change is wholly imperceptible, and the result is a most vivid appearance of an object in motion, otherwise unchanging, clearly exhibiting all the phases of such motion with life-like effect.

of such motion with life-like effect.

My invention depends for its successful operation both upon the inability of the eye to receive an impression of movement exceeding a certain rapidity and upon that faculty of the eye which enables it to retain an impression after the source of light has vanished—the persistence of vision—which enables me to change the pictures, one for another, imperceptibly. This, I accomplish by moving the film or other picture-carrying surface intermittingly in such manner that the interval of exposure and illumination of the picture

shall exceed the interval of time required to effect a change sufficiently to enable the eye to form a perfect impression or image at each 76 exposure and to retain it through the interval of motion or change and until another picture has been superimposed, as it were, upon the one displaced, thus rendering the act or effect of displacement and substitution of pictures 75 wholly imperceptible and giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion. Various contrivances and forms of mechanisms may be employed for effecting the intermittent movement, the requirement being that the &c film or other surface shall be moved quickly between anccessive pauses far enough to expose the next succeeding picture in the series

In the arrangement illustrated in Fig. 1 is shown an illuminator A and a condensingleus B, the latter arranged adjacent to the illuminator and adapted to concentrate the rays of light upon a picture located in the focus of an objective lens C, all of which parts may be of the usual or of any preferred con- oo struction and arranged in any suitable manner. The strip or film D may be composed of any suitable transparent or translucent flexible substance adapted to provide a surface for carrying pictures produced or impressed 95 thereou by photographic or other means, the several pictures in the series representing successively different positions of a moving object, so that the rapid exhibition of the entire series of pictures in the order in which 100 they were made or taken may result in the reproduction of the appearance of the moving object in every phase of its motion. An upper and a lower bank or series of rollers d d'. respectively, may be arranged upon a suit- 105 able support d, and the film may be made to pass around or partially around each roller in the series, passing alternately from an upper to a lower roller, or vice versa, so as to take up the surplus material and provide com- 110 pact means by which a very long continuous or endless strip may be employed. These banks or series of rollers are preferably adjustably supported upon the standard de in order to permit films of various lengths to be 115 used, and for this purpose the frames of the rollers d d' may be provided with projecting screw-threaded bolts which may pass through slots de in said support or standard and be secured thereto by a thumb-nut d' on the pro- 130 jecting threaded end of the bolt or otherwise as shown in Fig. 12. From the last roller of the upper series or bank the film may pass around or over a roller or stud d^* , preferably first passing under a take-up roller arranged 125 between said roller d^* and the upper series or bank of rollers d, said take-up roller being arranged on an arm d', which has its inner end pivoted to the support, so that its outer end may move freely in order to provide a 130 rielding surface over which the film may pass and to provide means for taking up the slack in said film, though as an additional means for taking up the slack the arm d' may

678,999

be weighted or otherwise caused to exert a pressure upon the surface of the film. The film after leaving the roller d is caused to past around a drum or spool E, then through 5 a tension and guiding device E', and then around a drum or spool E', as hereinafter more fully explained, and then over one or more rollers e to the lower series or bank of rollers d' in the direction shown by the ar-

10 TOWS. The drums or spools E and E3 are preferably provided with peripheral teeth or, projections adapted to engage perforations in the film, so as to properly guide and hold it is against slipping. These spools may have their shafts journaled in any suitable support or standard and may be geared together by a sprocket-chain or otherwise, so as to rotate in unison, being so timed that each spool so will rotate the same number of times in the same space of time. The film is preferably gently pressed in its passage over the drum E by a roller e' resting thereon, said roller being journaled in a bracket et, which is adas justably mounted upon a standard es, rising above the drum E. Below the drum E may also be placed a curved spring or yielding strip of metal et, which may be secured to the standard &, so as to bear underneath the film 30 and press it gently against the periphery of the drum. Owing to its rigidity or stiffness the film D will be caused to move or be carried upwardly or outwardly a short distance away from the drum E and its point of contact with 35 the spring et, so as to provide constant slack in the film at this point, and then with a return-bend it may pass in a substantially straight line through the tension and guiding device E' and thence to the drum E

As a means for tensioning and frictionally holding the film so as to permit the series of pictures thereon to be brought successively into the illuminated field and retained for exposure therein for a predetermined time 45 I preferably employ a tension device E', having a stationary member f and the pivoted or hinged members f' and f', between which the film passes, as shown in Figs. 2 to 6, inclusive. The stationary member f may be supported in any suitable manner, as upon the standard f's, and is provided with an opening f', through which the successive pictures may be exposed, and with the upper and lower guides f's, against which the edges of 55 the film may abut, so as to be properly aliaed while passing between the yielding and stationary members. Pins or stems f' may pro-

through apertures in the yielding or movable to members f and f, each stem being provided with a nut f at its outer end, between which and its corresponding yielding member is placed a coiled or other suitable spring f, so that said movable members may be held to with a yielding force in proper relation to

ject from the stationary member f and pass

is with a yielding force in proper relation to the stationary member to clasp the film between the same, said yielding or movable

members being each also preferably provided with an aperture through which pins f', projecting from the stationary member, 70 may pass in order to serve as a guide there-for when moved on their pivots. The mem-ber f may be pivoted or hinged, as at g, below the member f' and is preferably angu-lar in form and forced with greater pressure 75 against the film than the member f' in order to prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure and to yieldingly hold the film and to exert a pressure sufficient to prevent the displacement thereof while the objects 80 thereon are in position for reproduction. By employing two tension devices or a tension device having two members adapted to exert different pressures for yieldingly holding the film or picture-carrying surface one of said 85 members will act promptly in case the other should not, and thus insure the stoppage of the film the instant it has been advanced the desired distance and the holding of the same stationary during the desired interval of ex- 90 In the form shown the pivot of the member f' is arranged above and at right angles to the pivot of the member f2. cushion and provide a smooth brushing-surface for the film between the members or any 95 two or more of the same of the tension device, a strip of leather or other suitable material g and a strip of softer material g^{\times} , as felt or plush, may be cemented or otherwise secured on the stationary member f, between the occurred guides fo and on opposite sides of the opening fo, while on either or both of the movable or yielding members (preferably the member f') may be secured felt, plush, or other suitable material, as at g, adapted to contact to with the film and exert a yielding pressure thereon, so as to keep the film free from dust and to prevent it from slipping. Upon the movable member fa and secured thereto or formed integrally therewith is a plate or shield 110 gs, having an aperture therethrough corresponding with the aperture fo of the stationary member, said shield being separated from the stationary member f by a suitable space in order to protect the film and tension and 115 guiding device from the heat of the illuminator and to provide a space for the circulation of air, so as to keep the film cool, this result being facilitated by the fanning action of said plate or shield under the action of the cam rec operating intermittently to release the tension on the film.

As the pictures on different films do not at ways occupy the same position with reference to the perforations in the film, one or more adjustable plates, as g*, Fig. 6, may be provided for varying the size of the opening f* of the stationary member according to the position of the pictures or objects to be exposed relative to such perforations.

For the purpose of intermittently moving orfeeding the film or picture-carrying surface in such manuer as to cause the series of pictures thereon to be brought into and permit-

ted to remain in the illuminated field for an interval of time exceeding the time required to effect the displacement of any one picture and the substitution of another therefor and 5 to automatically release the pressure exerted upon the film by the yielding member of the tension device I may employ a rotating disk, cam, or other rotating element II, Figs. 1, 2, and 8, having thereon, preferably, an eccento trie stud or pin h, which may have a frictionroller h' journaled thereon and adapted to impinge against the film and advance the same a predetermined distance at each revolution of said disk or cam. The disk may 15 be journaled in a suitable standard or framepiece, as f3, in such position that the stud or roller thereon may press downwardly upon the film at a point between the tension device E' and drum E2, so as to cause the film to be so moved or drawn downward the required distauce at each revolution of said disk or cam. A cam-surface h2 on the disk or cam H is adapted to engage the end of a screw ha, arranged in a pendent arm h4, which is secured 25 to or formed integrally with the member fof the tension device, in order to release the pressure on the film by said member prior to and while the film is being drawn downward by the roller h'. This roller is preferably 30 provided with a suitable covering and may have reduced ends, as shown in Fig. 8, so that it may engage the surface of the film between the perforations in order to prevent enlarging or otherwise distorting the perfora-This arrangement permits the film to be constantly moved by the drums E E3, while a portion thereof is intermittently fed forward and positively held during the interval of exposure, so as to present the successive to pictures in the field of illumination, while maintaining sufficient tension thereon to pre-

In connection with one or both of the feed-45 drums E and E', I may employ a pressure device, such as shown at I in Figs. 2 and 7. This pressure device may consist of a spring having a portion thereof adapted to press the film yieldingly against the smooth face or

than the required distance.

vent the film from slipping or moving more

50 periphery of the drum, between the rows of teeth thereon, so as to hold the film in place. A guide K may also be provided for either or both of the feed-drums, said guide being preferably supported upon a suitable stand-

55 and k and provided with depending arms or fingers k', adapted to embrace the edges of the film, so as to aline the same and prevent the projections on the drum from enlarging or otherwise injuring the perforations in the 60 film.

The feed-drums E and E should be geared together, so as to run at a regulated speed and should revolve in unison with each otler, each making a complete revolution in the same instant of time, and the disk or cam It should be so actuated and timed with respect to the rate of movement of the drums that

the film may be advanced the same distant for every revolution. Though no mechanism is shown for this purpose it is obvious that to gearing, belts, chains, or any other suitable means may be employed and may be actuated by an electric or other suitable motor.

The operation of the invention will be readily understood from the foregoing description when taken in connection with the ac companying drawings, the parts being in the position shown in Figs. 1 and 2. It the feeddrums are rotated at a proper speed, the ilm D will be moved in the direction indicated by & the arrows; but the pressure exerted by the tension device E will hold the film stationary with the exposed picture in the field of illamination for a predetermined time and until the disk II has rotated far enough to cause & its roller h' to contact with the film for alvancing the latter, so as to displace the esposed picture and bring another picture into the field of illumination, there being sufficient slack in the film at the bend thereof above to said tension device to permit a rapid movement of a given length sufficient to displace any one of the pictures in the series and permit another to be brought into position for exposure or reproduction. When the object of has been held in the field of illumination the proper interval of time, the cam-surface h of the cam or disk II will engage the setscrew hs and throw the member fof the tension device outwardly on its pivot, so as to iss relieve the pressure exerted thereby upon the film, the member f' being adapted to exert a constant but yielding pressure on the film to prevent the latter from slipping or being fed farther than is required to present the 10g successive pictures in proper position. When the pressure exerted on the film by the member f2 is relieved, the roller h' on the disk H will simultaneously engage the film and move it downward a sufficient distance to displace in one object or picture and place the next succeeding object in proper position for exposure. When the tension device and film are released by the cam ha and roller h', respectively, on the disk H, the roller will revolve its the remaining portion of a complete revolution before again moving the film, while the released tension device instantly regains its hold upon and holds that part of the film which is in the field of illumination station- 130 ary until the roller again contacts with the film. During this interval of time the slack in the film between the tension device and the drum E3 will be gradually taken up by the last-mentioned drum, but not at such a 185 speed as to exert a tension sufficient to move the film during the interval of exposure of the picture, and in the same instant of time, while the picture is being exhibited, the slack in the film between the tension device and 130 the drum E, which has been taken up by advancing the film, will be compensated by as additional amount of slack paid out by the drum E, thus providing sufficient slack ahead

678,999

ora, was a set our disk or crank as

of the tension device to permit the next succeeding picture to be brought quickly into the field of illumination and allowing sufficient slack in that portion of the film which

has passed the tension device to be taken up by the succeeding drum during the inaction of the film-advancing device. This operation will be repeated in regular sequence, the film being caused to move over the surtor face of the drums E and E² continuously,

o face of the drums E and E continuously, while that portion thereof which lies between the two drums is intermittently moved forward just far enough to expose a picture at each move, the film-advancing mechanism being also continuously driven, but adapted

to only intermittently advance the film, the interval of illumination of the picture being made to exceed the interval of movement or change preferably very greatly or in the state of the land of th

so in the ratio of about one to ten. In this manner the pictures on the picture-carrying surface or film may be successively displaced and substituted one for another with great rapidity, so that in exhibiting a series of simi-

lar pictures representing the same moving object in different phases of its motion the impression may be given to the eye of persons or objects in motion and with a vivid or life-like appearance. I thus provide means for

30 operating the film so that it may be moved the proper distance for exposing successive pictures without liability to injury thereto, and whereby the knocking and jolting of the machinery incident to the necessarily rapid

and whereby the knocking and joining of the machinery incident to the necessarily rapid so movement of the parts may be effectually prevented.

It is obvious that various devices may be employed for informittently moving the film so as to successively place the pictures in the field of illumination. In Fig. 9 the film passes between two suitable tension devices m m', then around a roller m³, and thence to the drum M, though other means for guiding said film may be used, if desired. Between the

45 guides m m' may be arranged an arm or crosshead m³, adapted to slide in a suitable support m⁴, one end of said cross-head being provided with a roller or other engaging portion m³, and the other end thereof connected to 50 snitable driving mechanism, as a crank and

pitman m⁶ m⁷, respectively, so that when the cross-head is forced forward the roller will engage the film between the guides and force it outward, thereby causing the slack portion of the film above the guide or tension device

55 of the film above the guide or tension device m to move downward the desired distance to displace one picture and place another in its stead, the slack below the tension device m' in the film being taken up by the drum M or

fo in any other preferred manner. The roller for actuating the film, instead of having a sliding reciprocating movement, as in Fig. 9, may be arranged on the end of an oscillating arm or lever n, Fig. 10, pivoted, as at n', to

of a siriele. In this case the lever n may have a slotted portion in which a piu or stud n³.

projecting from a rotary disk or crank no, may work, so as to tilt said lever on its pivot and force the film outward, as shown in dot- 70 and lines.

Fig. 11 illustrates a modified form of tension and guiding device and means for intermittently operating the film. The stationary member o of the tension device O in this in- 75 stance may be in two parts, as shown, (or in one piece, if preferred,) and has an upper yielding member o', which exerts a constant yielding pressure upon the film, and a lower pivoted or hinged and yielding member oo, 80 adapted to exert a greater pressure upon the film than the member o' in substantially the same manner as in the tension device E'. lever o' may be pivoted, as at o', to a suitable support and has on one end thereof a rod or 85 stem o', provided with an adjusting-nut o', and a spring o', interposed between said nut and a suitable stop or fixture o', through which the rod o's slides, so that the rod will be normally forced inward, and on the opposite end 90 of said lever may be journaled a roller p, adapted to engage the film and tending to normally force the same outward, as shown in dotted lines. The yielding member of of the tension device is provided with a depend- 95 ing arm or finger p', adapted to be engaged by the cam-surface p' of the disk or cam P at a predetermined time, so that when said member is thrown outward sufficiently to relieve the pressure on the film the spring of will force 100 the end of the lever o's, with the roller p thereon, in the direction indicated by the arrow, until the lever reaches the adjustable stop pt, at which time the picture in the field of illumination will be displaced and another 105 substituted therefor. At P' is a drum for taking up the slack in the film and holding the lever o's against the tension of the spring o' until the pressure on the film by the member of the tension device is relieved by the 110 cam P.

In Fig. 13 the film is shown as a continuous strip or band instead of an endless strip, as shown in Fig. 1. In this case the film may be unwound from a reel or spool Q' and after passing around the feed-drums E and E', as heretofore explained, may be caused to pass around a roller q and then to the reel or spool Q', the latter being operated in any suitable manner, as by frictional engagement devices, to take to the slack in the film as it is unwound from the drum E without causing unnecessary tension apon said film. The reel Q' may, however, be placed in such position that the film may be wound directly is thereon from the drum E'.

It will be understood, of course, that the film may be fed to the tension device and taken up after leaving the same by other means than by the use of the feed-drums, that cortain parts of the apparatus may be dispensed with or others substituted therefor, and that some parts of the operating mechanism and other parts of the apparatus may

be employed in other connections or for other purposes than exhibiting pictures without departing from the spirit of my inven-

tion.

From the foregoing description it will be seen that the pictures are brought successively into an illuminated field and that each picture is illuminated without interruption from the instant it enters such field until displaced by the next picture in the series and that the several pictures in the series are successively substituted one for another with such rapidity that although the exposed portion of the film or picture-carrying surface is continuously illuminated the eye receives an impression of the picture which so greatly predominates any possible impression that

might be made by the practically instantaneous motion of said film or surface in substituting picture for picture that the predominating impression which the eye receives, owing to its inability to receive two impressions at one and the same time and to the persistence of vision, has the effect of rendering the movement of the film utterly imperceptions.

ble, while the successive impressions of different pictures are each retained until another picture in the series is superimposed, as it were, upon the previous impression or

30 picture, thus rendering it possible to produce most vivid and life-like effects without any interruption whatever in the illumination, whether the film is moving or stationary and without interposing a shutter, and thereby

35 causing a shadow or shade effect which reduces the vividness of the impression; but I do not desire to be confined to the use of the invention without a shutter, in a smuch as such a device might be used under some circum-

40 stances—as, for instance, when constructed so as to interrupt the illumination only at that instant of time when the film is moving and without rendering the interruption perceptible to the eye; but for all practical purposes 45 a shutter of any kind is useless and objection-

able and is preferably dispensed with.

Having thus fully described my invention, what I claim as new, and desire to secure by Letters Patent of the United States, is—

o 1. In a picture-exhibiting apparatus for giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion, the combination with a picture-earrying strip or film, a tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent flexing or pack-

55 ering at the point of exposure, means for internittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the period during which each picture

60 is stationary and visible shall exceed the period occupied in substituting one picture for another, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension device, whereby the film may be moved with great rapidity without unnec-

65 be moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film, substantially as described.

2. In a picture - exhibiting apparatus for giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion, the combination with a picture-car- to rying strip or film, a tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering as the point of exposure, means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding 75 the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and & said tension device, whereby the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film, substantially as described.

3. In a picture-exhibiting apparatus for &: giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion, the combination with an illuminator and a projecting lens, of a picture-carrying strip or film having a portion thereof arranged in the focus of the objective of the po projecting lens, a tension device adapted to keep the exposed portion of the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, means for intermittently moving the film at short intervals exceeding the in- 95 terval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion; mechanism for taking up the film as it is intermittently moved, and mechanism for feeding the 100 film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension device, whereby that portion of the film between the feeding and take-up mechanisms may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without un- 105 necessary strain and wear upon the film, substantially as described.

4. The combination, in an apparatus for exhibiting pictures so as to give the impression to the eye of objects in motion, of a picture-carrying film or strip, a pair of feed-drums adapted to be continuously rotated so as to give a continuous movement to the film, a tension device interposed between the feed-drums adapted to hold and keep the film taut 115 so as to provide slack on one side thereof, together with means for intermittently moving the film between the drums at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of panse 120 and illumination shall exceed the interval of

motion, substantially as described.

5. In a picture-exhibiting apparatus, the combination with a picture-carrying film and means for giving movement to the same, of 125 a tension device provided with a yielding member adapted to hold and prevent movement of the film for a predetermined interval of time, tog-ther with mechanism for intermittently moving the film and almultaneously engaging a portion of the yielding member so as to release the pressure exerted thereby upon the film, whereby the pictures may be successively placed in position for ex-

posore with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film, substan-

tially as described.

6. In a picture-exhibiting apparatus, the s combination with a picture-carrying surface or film and means for intermittingly moving the same so as to successively expose the pictures thereon, a tension device for yieldingly holding the film, having two parts or memto hera adapted to exert different pressures, so as to insure prompt action of one or the other of said parts the instant the film has moved the desired distance, substantially as de-

7. In a picture-exhibiting apparatus, the scribed. combination with an illuminator and a proecting lens, of a picture carrying strip or film having a portion thereof arranged in the focus of the objective of the projecting lens, so a tension device having two members adapted to exert different pressures so as to keep said portion of the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, means for intermittently moving said portion 25 so as to impart a step-by-step movement thereto and successively place the pictures in po-sition for expours, mechanism for taking up the film as it is intermittently moved, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to pro-30 vide slack therein between the same and said tension device, whereby that portion of the film between the feeding and take-up mechanisms may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and 35 wear upon the film, substantially as described.

8. In a picture-exhibiting apparatus, the combination with a picture-carrying film, of a tension device therefor having two members adapted to exert different pressures so 40 as to keep the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, mechanism for taking up the film after leaving the tension device, means located interme-diate said tension device and the take - up 45 mechanism for intermittently moving the film, together with means for feeding the film so as to provide slack between the same and said tension device, whereby the pictures may be successively placed in position for exposure 50 with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film, substantially

as described.

9. The combination with a film or strip and means for imparting movement thereto, of a 55 tension device provided with a yielding member adapted to hold and keep the film tant and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, a rotatable element adapted to contact with a portion of the yielding mem-60 berso as to relieve the pressure exerted thereby upon the film, together with means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device, substantially as described

10. The combination with a film or strip, of 55 a pair of feed-drums adapted to be continuously rotated so as to give a continuous movement to the film, a tension device interposed

between the feed-drams and provided with a yielding member adapted to hold and keep the film taut, so as to provide slack on one 70 side thereof, a rotary disk or cam adapted to contact with a portion of the yielding member so as to release the pressure thereof on said film, and having thereon a projecting portion adapted to engage the film and in- 75 termittently move the same when the pres sure of said yielding member is released, sub-

stantially as described. 11. In combination with the film and means for imparting movement thereto, the tension 80 device comprising three members between which the film is adapted to pass, one member being stationary and the others adapted to press the film against said stationary member with different pressures so that when the 85 pressure of one of the yielding, members is released the other may exert a pressure sufficient to prevent slipping of the film without preventing its proper movement, whereby the film may be successively moved a uni- 90 form distance, substantially as described.

12. The combination with a film orstrip, of a tension device comprising a stationary member, two spring-pressed yielding members adapted to press the film against said sta- 95 tionary member with different pressures, guides for alining the film, and means whereby one of the yielding members may be ac-tuated so as to release the pressure exorted thereby upon the film, substantially as de- 100

scribed. 13. The combination with a film or strip, of a tension device comprising a stationary member, two yielding members hinged thereto adapted to press the film against said sta- 105 tionary member with different pressures, guides for alining the film, means whereby one of the yielding members may be actuated so as to release the pressure thereof upon the film, and a plate or shield carried by one of rec the yielding members and separated therefrom sufficiently to provide space for thecirculation of air, whereby the film may be pro-tected from the heat of the illuminator and the parts kept cool by the fanning action of 115 said plate, substantially as described.

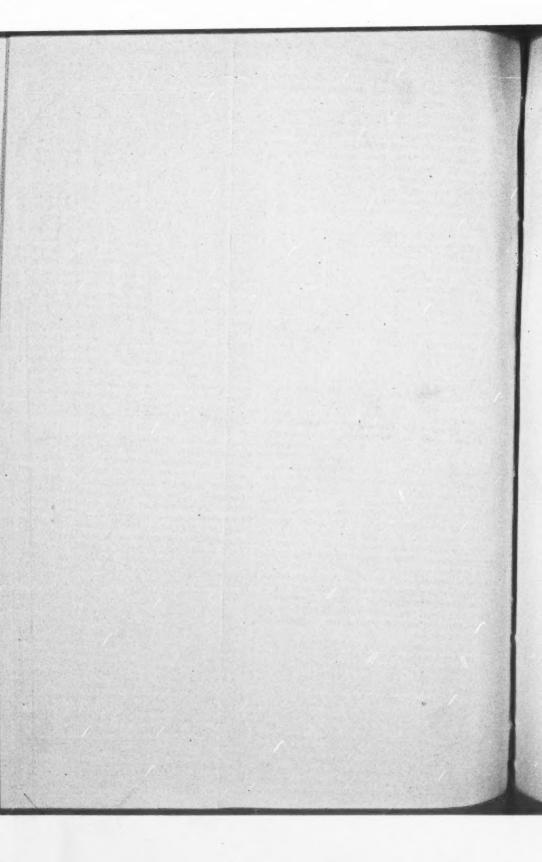
14. The combination with a film erstrip and means for imparting movement thereto, of a support, banks or series of rollers separated from each other and adjustably held upon 120 said support so that the film may pass afternately from a roller of one series to the next succeeding roller of the other series, together with an arm pivotally held to the aupport and provided with a roller adapted to engage 125 the film and exert a tension thereon, sub-

stantially as described.

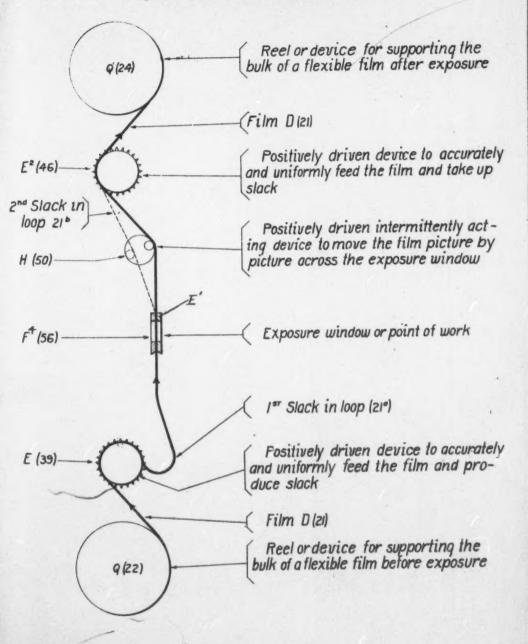
In testimony whereof I affix my signature in presence of two witnesses.

THOMAS ARMAT.

J. A. E. CRISWELL, CHARLES E. RIORDON.



DEFENDANTS' EXAIBIT No. 32 Diagram of Armat Patent No. 673992



H. CASLER.

CONSECUTIVE VIEW APPARATUS.

(Application filed Feb. 26, 1896.)

(No Model.)

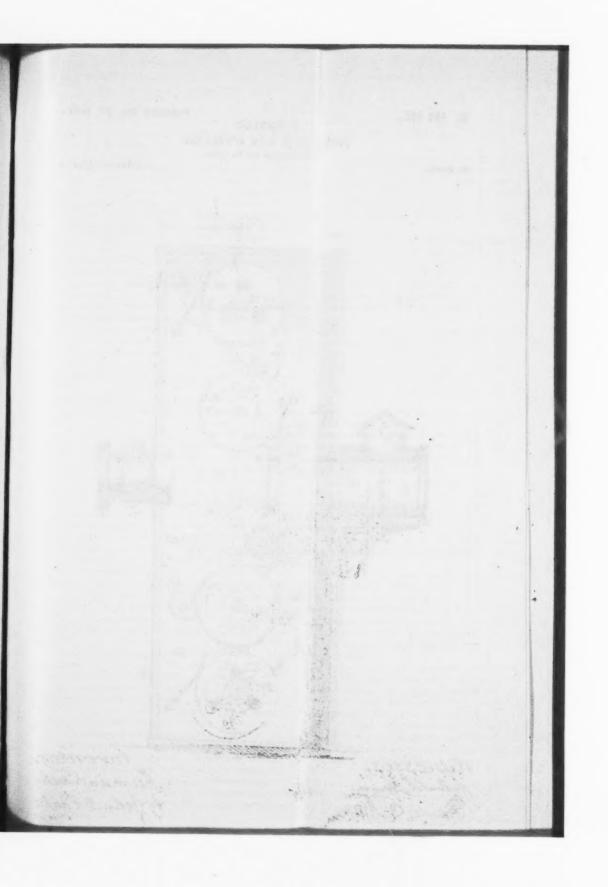
3 Sheets-Sheet |.

y Fig. 1. X

Witnesses.

Michael S. Mongran
Frank O. Avon

Merman Casler by John J. Easton



No. 666,495.

Patented Jan. 22, 1901.

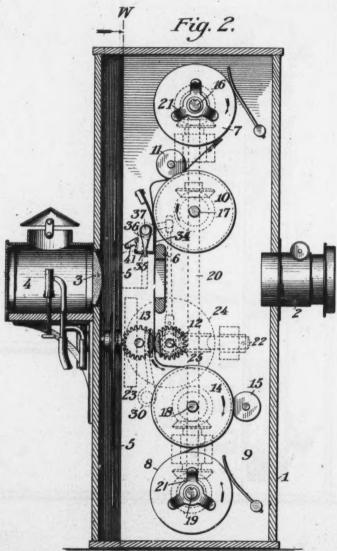
H. CASLER.

CONSECUTIVE VIEW APPARATUS.

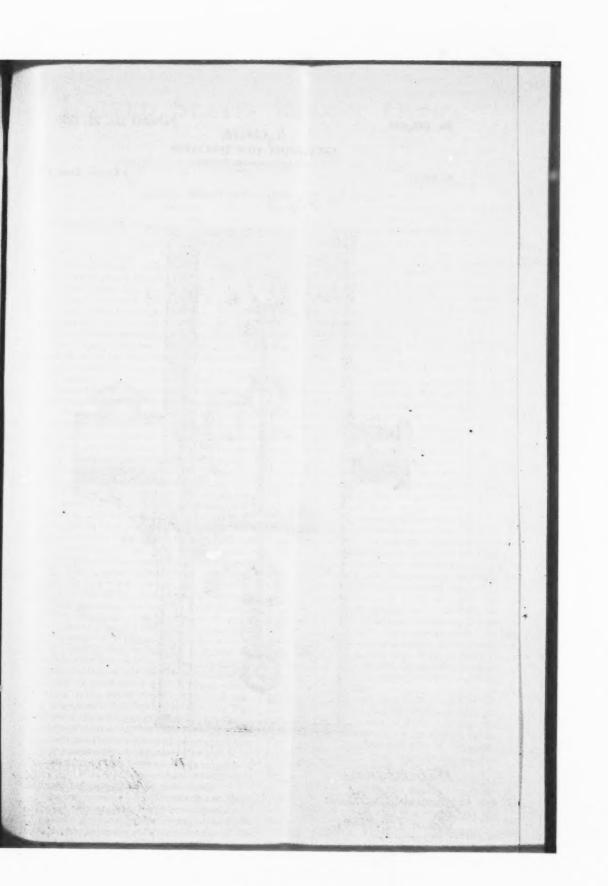
(Application filed Feb. 98, 1898.)

(No Model.)

3 Sheets-Sheet 2.



Witnesses, Inhand S. Llowers. France C. Aven Inventor, Herman Caster by John J. Easton



No. 666,495.

Patented Jan. 22, 1901.

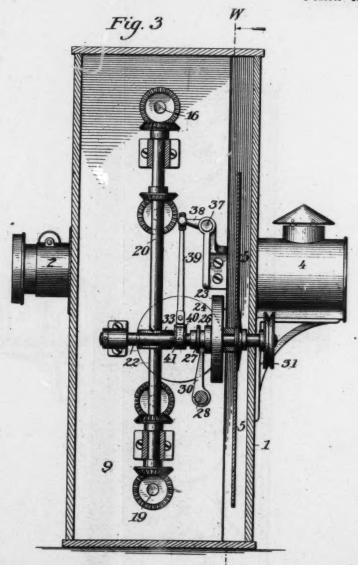
H. CASLER.

CONSECUTIVE VIEW APPARATUS.

(Application filed Feb. 26, 1898.)

(No Model.)

3 Shoots-Shoot 3.



Witnesses, Shokard & Honoran Raux C. Aven MInventor, Merman Ousler by John J. Easton Atty

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

HERMAN CASLER, OF CANASTOTA, NEW YORK.

CONSECUTIVE-VIEW APPARATUS.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 686,495, dated January 22, 1901.

Application filed February 26, 1896. Serial No. 580,810. (Ne model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, HERMAN CASLER, a citizen of the United States, residing at Canastota, in the county of Madison and State of New York, have invented a new and useful Improvement in Consecutive-View Apparatus; and I do hereby declare the following to be a full, clear, and exact description of the invention, such as will enable others skilled to in the art to which it appertains to make and use the same.

My invention relates to consecutive-view apparatus and to strip or film feeding mechanism therefor, and particularly to project-15 ing-lanterns designed to reproduce upon a screen the movements of moving objects by means of a rapid succession of views of said objects, showing the different positions assumed in their movements. In projecting-20 lanterns of this description heretofore used great difficulty has been experienced in securing sufficient illumination, because the film-feeding mechanisms employed for bringing into the field of the lens successive views 25 produce so much vibration when operated at the required speed that it has been impracticable to permit the passage of light through the film during more than a brief portion of the time during which each view is actually 30 within the field of the lens, and also because the small pictures necessarily used require excessive enlargement by the lantern in order to produce satisfactory results, it having been found impossible hitherto to produce a strip-35 feeding mechanism, either for cameras for taking the pictures or for projecting-lanterns, witich is capable of sufficiently rapid feeding of the film to produce or utilize larger views.

In the camera which forms the subject-matter of a separate application for Letters Patent of even date herewith, Serial No. 580,811,
I have produced a camera capable of producing upon a flexible sensitive photographic film
a rapid succession of negative views of moving objects, and this instrument is capable of
taking much larger views than instruments
for similar purposes heretofore used.

In the instrument which forms the subjectmatter of this application I have shown and fo described a projecting-lantern capable of producing upon a screen the movements of objects which have been photographed by a con-

secutive-view camera by means of a flexible sensitive film carrying a succession of positive views, such as may be made by printing 55 upon sensitive film the negative views produced by a consecutive-view camera. The film-strip-feeding mechanism employed in this projecting instrument and which forms the essential feature thereof is a modification of the film-feeding mechanism used in my consecutive-view camera.

My invention consists in the novel means provided for compensating for slipping or shrinkage of the film, in the novel means provided for rewinding the film, in the novel construction of the film-feeding apparatus, and in the novel combination, construction, and arrangement of the parts of the apparatus.

The objects of my invention are, first, to 70 provide a projecting-lantern for reproducing upon a screen the motion of moving objects. which shall be capable of producing views of larger size and with better illumination than have been produced by lanterns for simi- 75 lar purposes heretofore used; second, to provide an improved film-feeding apparatus for feeding the picture-strip; third, to provide means for compensating for shrinkage of the film or slipping of the film-feeding mechan- 80 ism; fourth, to provide improved means for rewinding the film, and, fifth, to make the projecting - lantern simple in construction, compact, durable, and easily operated. These objects are attained in the projecting-lantern 85 herein described, and illustrated in the drawings which accompany and form a part of this application, in which the same referencenumerals indicate the same or corresponding parts, and in which-

Figure 1 shows an end view of the mechanism of the projecting-lantern and is a section upon the line w w of Figs. 2 and 3, the shutter-disk being shown by dotted lines. Fig. 2 shows the right-hand side of the mechanism, particularly the strip-feeding drums and rollers, and is a section on the line x x of Fig. 1. Fig. 3 shows the left-hand side of the mechanism, especially the shafts and gearings by which the strip-feeding drums and roo rollers are operated, and is a section on the line y y of Fig. 1.

In the drawings, I is the box which incloses the mechanism of the lantern. In its front face is an ordinary objective lens 2 and in its rear face is a condensing-lens 3, behind which is supported a calcium light or other suitable means of illumination. Between the lens and 5 the objective 2 is a shutter-disk 5, the contour of which is shown in Fig. 1 by dotted lines, revolubly mounted and arranged in its revolution to cut off light for a portion of the time, and also a support 6 for a transparent

revolution to cut off light for a portion of the time, and also a support 6 for a transparent 10 and flexible strip carrying or having on its surface a succession of views which are to be projected by the lantern upon a screen. The plate 6 is apertured to permit the passage of light between the lenses. The picture-strip is drawn from a spool 7 and as it passes through

the field of the lens is wound upon a second spool 8. These spools, together with the strip-feeding mechanism and the support 6, are supported by a transverse frame plate or partition 9, secured to the bottom and top of

the case 1. The strip unwinds from the spool 7 and passes between a delivery-drum 10 and an idler-roll 11, (see Fig. 2,) which serves to hold the strip in contact with the drum 10, and thence over the supporting-plate 6, between auxiliary feeding-rolls 12 and

13, the function of which is to feed the strip

across the field of the lens and over a take-off drum 14, against the surface of which it is held 30 by an idler-roll 15, and thence upon the winding-spool 8. The spool 7, drums 10 and 14, and the spool 8 are mounted upon shafts 16, 17, 18, and 19, respectively, which have bear-

ings in projecting bosses in the supporting-35 plate 9, and these shafts are driven by bevelgears from a vertical shaft 20, mounted uponthe left-hand side of the frame-plate 9 in Figs. 1 and 3. The shaft 20 is itself driven by means to be hereinafter described.

40 The delivery and take-off drums 10 and 14 are secured to the shafts upon which they are mounted. The spools 7 and 8 are loose upon the shafts upon which they are mounted, but may be connected therewith and driven

45 therefrom by friction connections formed by three-legged spring-collars 21 21, mounted upon and themselves secured to the shafts 16 and 19 and pressed against the ends of the spools 7 and 8 by screw-nuts. By pressing against the ends of the species the ends of the en

50 against the ends of the spools these collars produce sufficient friction to cause the spools to revolve. In the operation of the machine the spring-collar of the spool from which the film is being drawn is always relieved by un-

55 screwing its nut, so that the spool shall not be driven by its shaft, but shall revolve only as the strip is unwound from it by the feeding mechanism. This is to prevent too-rapid unwinding of the strip from the spools. In

to order to allow for possible slipping of the picture-strip, as well as to allow for the increase in diameter of the spool upon which the strip is wound, as the strip is wound from the one spool to the other, the gearing is so decigned that the spools 7 and 8 tend to ro-

driven by their shafts. The tension on the picture-strip as it is fed forward by the drums 10 and 14 causes the spool upon which the strip is wound to revolve slightly slower than its shaft, slipping somewhat beneath the spring-collar 21.

The vertical shaft 20 is driven by a horizontal driving-shaft 22 by means of a variablespeed gearing, the purpose of which will be apparent hereinafter. The shaft 22 carries a friction-wheel 23, and a corresponding friction-disk 24 is mounted upon a horizontal shaft 25 at right angles to the shaft 22, the periphery of the wheel 23 being in contact with the surface of the disk 24, so as to drive the disk 24 by frictional contact. The frietion-wheel 23 revolves with its shaft, but is splined or keyed thereto, so as to be capable & of longitudinal motion thereon, and has a hub 26, with a groove 27 therein. A rock-shaft 28, the end of which projects outside of the case 1 and carries a handle 29, has an arm 30, the end of which enters the groove 27. By moving the hand-lever 29 the friction-wheel 23 may be caused to move along its shaft 22 toward or away from the center of the frictiondisk 24, thus varying the speed of the friction-disk 24 and shaft 25 with respect to the wheel 23 and shaft 22. The shaft 22 is provided with a band-wheel 31 outside of the case 1, by which it may be revolved from some external source of power.

The shaft 25 carries a worm 32, which engages with a worm-wheel 33 upon the vertical shaft 20. Rotation of the band-wheel 31 and driving-shaft 22 therefore causes rotation of the shaft 20 and the operation of the parts of the feeding mechanism driven thereby. The auxiliary feed-roll 12 above mentioned is mounted upon and driven by the same shaft 25 upon which the friction-disk 24 and worm 32 are mounted. The auxiliary feed-roll 13 is mounted upon a spindle and is geared to n the roll 12 to revolve at an equal speed therewith. The gearing by which the shaft 25 drives the shaft 20 and the diameter of the auxiliary feed-rolls 12 and 13 are such that the peripheral velocity of the auxiliary feedrolls is twice or somewhat more than twice as great as the peripheral velocity of the feeddrums 10 and 14. This is in order that the auxiliary feed-rolls, which, as will be seen subsequently, operate to feed forward the picture-strip during about one-half of the time, may feed forward as much of the strip as is fed forward by the drum 10, which operates continuously.

The auxiliary feed-rolls 12 and 13 are always in contact with the picture-strip and always tend to feed the same. The movement of the picture-strip across the plate 6 is prevented, however, during the time that the shutter is open by a spring-catch 34, which presses the picture-strip against the supporting-plate 6. The end of the spring 34 is up-

which projects through and has bearings in the supporting-plate 9 and carries upon its inner end an arm 38, which is moved up and down by an eccentric-rod 39, secured to an ec-5 centric-strap 40 of an eccentric 41, mounted upon the driving-shaft 22. The rock-shaft 37 and arm 38 are thereby caused to vibrate each time the driving-shaft 22 revolves, each time lifting the spring 34 and permitting a to portion of the picture-strip to be fed across the plate 6 by the action of the auxiliary feedrolls 12 and 13. The position of the arm 36 and its amplitude of movement and the length of the slow 35 are so adjusted that the spring 15 34 holds the picture-strip when the shutter is open and releases it as soon as the shutter is closed.

The shutter-disk 5, which controls the passage of light through the film, is a disk secured to the driving-shaft 22, with its periphery in line with the axis of the condensing and objective lenses. A portion of the periphery of the shutter-disk is cut away, so as to permit the passage of light, as shown in

25 dotted lines in Fig. 1.

The operation of my projecting-lantern is as follows: The position of the parts of the mechanism of the lantern as shown in the drawings is that occupied when the shutter 30 is open and a picture is in the field of the lenses 2 and 3. The picture-strip is being unwound from the spool 7 and is being wound upon the spool 8, the spool 8 being driven by its shaft 19 through the spring collar 21. 35 The auxiliary feed-rolls 12 and 13 are revolving at somewhat more than twice the peripheral velocity of the drums 10 and 14 and are in contact with the picture-strip, but are unable to move the same, as the strip is held by 40 the spring-catch 34 pressing it against the plate 6. A loop of loose strip is being formed between the drum 10 and the plate 6, and a similar loop previously formed below the auxiliary feed-rolls 12 and 13 is being taken up 45 by the drum 14. The instant the shutterdisk 5 in its revolution cuts off the light from the lens 3 the arm 36 upon the rock-shaft 37 trips the spring 34, lifting it away from the plate 6, and thus releases the picture-strip. 50 The auxiliary feed-rolls 12 and 13 instantly draw this picture-strip across the field of the lens until the loop of loose strip between the drum 10 and the plate 3 has been taken up. This is all done during the time that light is 55 cut off. An instant afterward in its revolution the shutter-disk 5 again permits the passage of light, the arm 36 swinging backward and permitting the spring 34 to press the picture-strip against the plate 6 an instant be-60 fore the shutter opens, and so holding the picture-strip stationary. By the feeding forward of the strip during the time the shutter was closed a new picture has been brought into the field of the lens, and this picture is 65 now projected by the lantern upon the screen in place of the picture previously projected. The alternations of light and darkness take

place so rapidly that the fact that the light is not continuous is not observed, neither is the change of picture observed, but only the 70 appearance of motion of the images seen upon the screen due to the gradual change in positions of these images in the successive views. The take-off drum 14 carries away the strip as it is fed forward by the auxiliary rolls 12 75 and 13, and the strip is wound from the drum 14 upon the spool 8. The greater portion of the work of feeding the picture-strip is done by the constantly-revolving drums 10 and 14. the auxiliary feed-rolls 12 and 13 being re- 80 quired only to do the work of feeding the short length of film which is between these rolls and the drum 10. The rock-shaft 37, upon which the arm 36 that operates the spring-catch is mounted, is driven from the same horizon- 85 tal shaft 22 which carries the shutter-disk 5. Therefore the operation of the catch 34 is always synchronous with the operation of the shutter and is not affected by any change in speed of the strip-feeding mechanism with re- oo lation to the speed of the shutter. If there were no slipping of the picture-strip upon the feed-rolls and no shrinkage of the strip, such as is due to atmospheric causes or such as frequently takes place during development, 95 there would be no occasion for varying the speed of the film-feeding mechanism with respect to the shutter, and the relative speed of the film-feeding mechanism to the shutter might be constant, as in the camera described 100 in my said application, Serial No. 580,811; but slipping and shrinkage of the strip frequently take place to a slight extent, the one causing a smaller length of film to be fed across the field of the lens than is proper each 105 time the catch 34 is operated and the other causing too great a length of film to be fed across the field of the lens than is proper, Too rapid or too slow feeding of the film has the effect of causing the picture upon the 110 screen to apparently creep up or down the screen; but by altering slightly the length of picture-strip fed across the field of the lens each time the catch 34 is operated, which may be done by varying the speed of the film-feed- 115 ing mechanism with respect to the speed of the shutter, this creeping of the picture may be prevented. For this reason the variablespeed mechanism shown in Fig. 3, and comprising the friction-wheel 23 and disk 24 and 120 the parts connected therewith, is employed. By moving the hand-lever 29 so as to move the wheel 23 toward the center of the disk 24 the speed of the disk 24, shafts 25 and 20, and the film-feeding drums may be increased. 125 By moving the hand-lever 29 so as to move the wheel 23 toward the circumference of the disk 24 the speed of the disk 24 and the shafts 25 and 20 and the feed-drums may be reduced. In this manner the operator, watching the 130 picture upon the screen, may move the handlever 29 so as to keep this picture practicallystationary, so far as its position upon the screen is concerned, without regard to stip-

ping of the film between the feed-rollers, which may take place, or to shrinkage of the strip, which may have taken place. the picture-strip has been nearly unwound 5 from the supply-spool 7 the operation of the apparatus is stopped. In order to rewind the strip upon the spool 7, so as to prepare for another exhibition, a door in the side of the case (not shown) is opened to afford ac-10 cess to the mechanism within the case, and the spring-catch 34 is lifted away from the plate 6 and a small detent 41 is dropped to hold the spring away from the plate 6, so as to leave the strip free. The nut upon the 15 shaft 16 is screwed down, so as to press the collar 21 upon said shaft against the spool 7, and the nut upon the shaft 19 is relieved, so as to leave the spool 8 loose upon said shaft. The band-wheel 31 is then rotated in reverse 20 direction, winding the strip from the spool 8 to the spool 7. When the strip has been wound upon the spool 7 sufficiently far, rotation of the wheel 31 is stopped, the nut upon the shaft 16 is loosened and the nut upon the 25 shaft 19 tightened, as before, the detent 41 is lifted to permit the spring to slip down against the plate 6, and the consecutive-view apparatus is again ready for operation.

The shutter and the feeding mechanism

30 shown in the drawings are arranged to admit the passage of light during half the revolution of the shutter; but because all of the parts of the strip-feeding mechanism except the eatch 34 and the parts which have di-35 rectly to do with the operation thereof are in continuous and uniform motion, so that no vibration is caused thereby, the feeding mechanism is capable of feeding the required length of picture-strip in a much shorter time to than one-half of the revolution of the shutterdisk at the speed at which it is necessary to operate the machine in order to produce the desired continuous effect upon the screen. In this manner the intensity of illumination 45 upon the screen may be greatly increased by increasing the time during which the shutter is open. The strip-feeding mechanism may be caused to feed the strip so rapidly across the field of the lens that it will be possible to o dispense entirely with the shutter and shutter mechanism in many cases, the strip being fed so rapidly across the field of the lens when it moves and the time during which it is motionless in said field being so much longer than the time when it is moving across the field of the lenses that when it does move this motion will be imperceptible to the eye.

Having thus completely described my invention, what I claim, and desire to secure by Letters Patent, is—

1. In a consecutive - view apparatus, the combination, with a flexible picture-strip containing a series of consecutive regularly-spaced views of a moving object, of continuously-moving strip-feeding devices for feeding the strip by frictional contact, an inter-

the strip intermittently and at intervals corresponding to the distance between the pictures, thereby momentarily preventing the 70 feeding of the strip across the field of view, and variable-speed gearing by which the relative speed of the strip-feeding devices and catch may be varied during the operation of the apparatus, substantially as described.

2. In a consecutive-view apparatus, the combination, with the lenses and illuminating apparatus of a projectine apparatus, of continuously-moving strip-feeding devices for feeding a picture-strip through the field of so said projecting apparatus, an intermittently-operating catch arranged to grasp the strip intermittently, thereby preventing momentarily the feeding of the picture-strip through the field of the projecting apparatus, and so means for varying the length of strip fed forward while the strip is released by the catch, substantially as described.

3. In a consecutive - view apparatus, the combination, with the lenses and illuminating of apparatus of a projecting apparatus, of continuously - moving strip-feeding devices for feeding a picture-strip through the field of said projecting apparatus, an intermittently-operating catch arranged to grasp the strip operating catch arranged to grasp the strip intermittently, thereby momentarily preventing the feeding of the picture-strip through the field of the projecting apparatus, and means for varying the relative speed of the strip-feeding mechanism and catch, whereby the length of strip fed forward each time the catch is released may be varied, substantially as described.

4. In a consecutive - view apparatus, the combination, with the lenses and illuminating 105 apparatus of a projecting apparatus, of continuously-moving main feeding devices arranged to deliver and to carry away a picture-strip, auxiliary feeding devices moving continuously but at higher peripheral veloc- 110 ity than the main feeding devices, and arranged to feed the strip through the field of the projecting apparatus, acting upon the strip by frictional contact, an intermittently-operating catch arranged to grasp the strip 115 intermittently, thereby preventing momen-tarily the feeding of the strip through the field of the projecting apparatus, and a changeable-speed gear connecting the driving members of the strip-feeding devices and of the 110 catch, whereby the speed of the strip-feeding devices relative to the catch may be varied, substantially as described.

5. In a consecutive-view apparatus, the combination, with the lenses and illuminating apparatus of a projecting apparatus, of supply-spool carrying a picture-strip, a delivery feeding-drum arranged to unwind the strip from said spool, auxiliary feed-rolls acting upon the strip by frictional contact and having ing a greater peripheral velocity than said delivery-drum, and arranged to feed the strip through the field of the projecting apparatus

wound, means for rotating said spool, a takeoff drum arranged to carry the strip from the
auxiliary feed-rolls to said winding-spool, an
intermittently-operating catch arranged to
grasp the film intermittently, thereby preventing momentarily the feeding of the strip
through the field of the projecting apparatus,
and changeable-speed gearing connecting the
driving members of the catch and deliveryto drum, whereby the rate of feeding of the strip
through the apparatus, relative to the speed
of the catch, may be varied, substantially as
described.

6. In a picture-strip-feeding mechanism for 15 consecutive-view apparatus, the combination, with a delivery-drum for delivering the strip, a take-off drum for carrying away the strip, means for holding the strip in contact with said drums, a winding-spool, a shaft geared 10 to said drums and winding-spool for rotating the same, and auxiliary feed-rolls likewise geared to said shaft and arranged to rotate at a higher peripheral velocity than said delivery and take-off drums, of a catch arranged 25 to grasp the strip and prevent it from being fed by said auxiliary feed-rolls, a shaft and connecting mechanism operated thereby for operating said catch intermittently, frictiondisks connected to said shaft and to a shaft 30 of the strip-feeding rolls, the periphery of one of said disks being in contact with the face of the other disk, and means for moving the first disk radially with respect to the second disk, whereby the speed of the strip-feeding 35 rolls relative to the speed of the catch may be varied.

7. In a picture-strip-feeding mechanism for consecutive-view apparatus, the combination,

with a supply-spool, a winding-spool, continuously-moving main feeding devices ar- 40 ranged to unwind the strip from the supplyspool and to carry the strip to the windingspool, a shaft for driving the supply and winding spools and strip-feeding devices, and clutches connecting the driving-shaft with 45 said supply and winding spools, whereby either of said spools may be thrown out of engagement with said shaft, of auxiliary feedrolls for feeding the strip across the field of view, arranged to rotate at a higher periph- 50 eral velocity than the main feeding devices, an intermittently-operating catch arranged to grasp the strip intermittently and thereby to prevent the strip from being fed across the field of view, and a detent adapted to engage 55 with the catch and hold the same out of contact with the strip.

8. In a consecutive-view apparatus, the combination, with a continuously-moving strip-feeding device for feeding astripthrough 60 the field of the apparatus, of an intermittently-operating catch arranged to grasp the strip intermittently, thereby momentarily preventing the feeding of the strip through the field of the apparatus, and speed-varying mechanism interposed between said feeding devices and said intermittently-operating catch, whereby the length of the strip fed forward each time the cauch is released may be varied.

In testimony whereof I affix my signature 70 in presence of two witnesses.

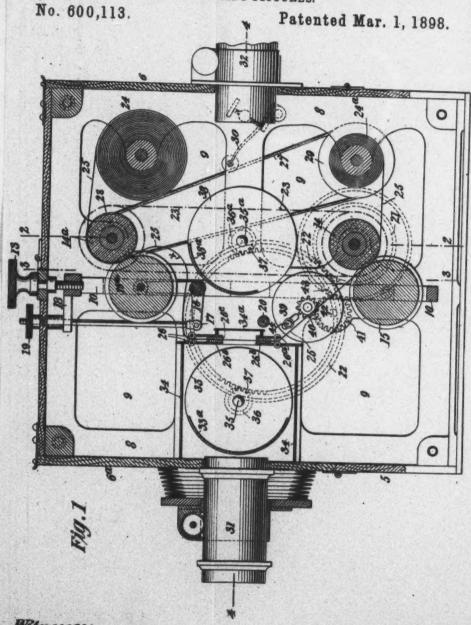
HERMAN CASLER.

Witnesses:

A. A. SCHENCK, K. F. CASSIDY.

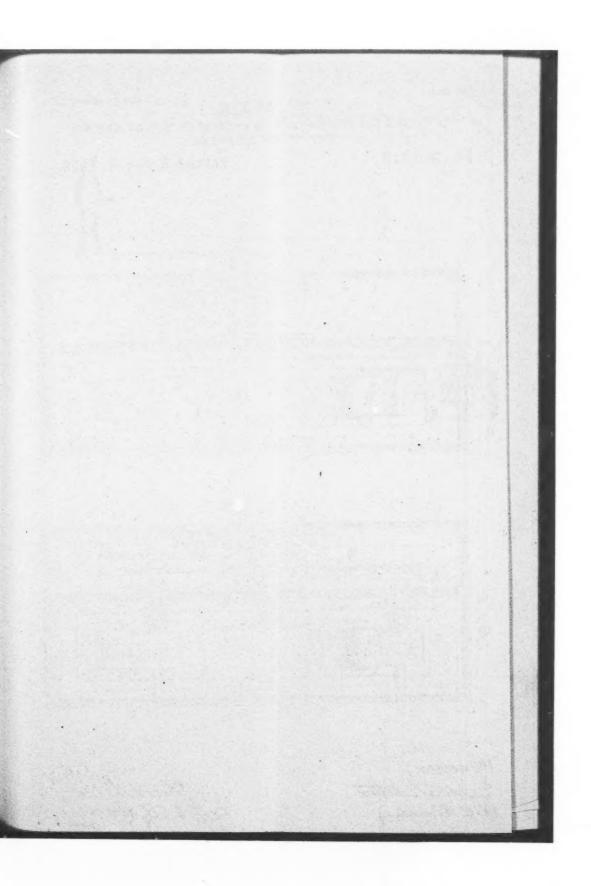
W. LATHAM.

APPARATUS FOR PHOTOGRAPHING OBJECTS IN MOTION AND FOR PROJECTING PICTURES.



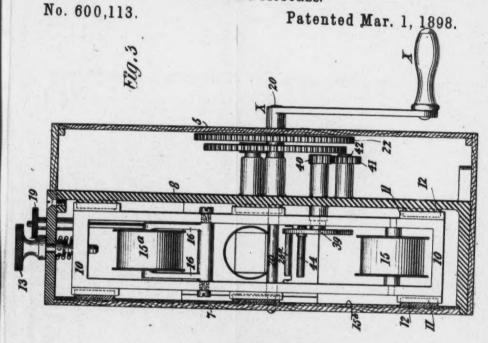
Wilnesses: Raphael Netter

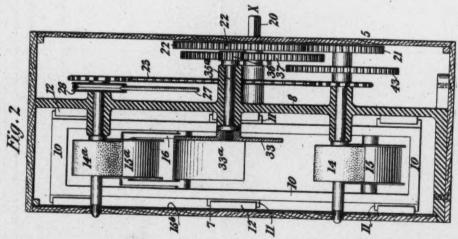
By Jell Bo ren and



W. LATHAM.

APPARATUS FOR PHOTOGRAPHING OBJECTS IN MOTION AND FOR PROJECTING PICTURES.





Witnesses: Raphail tetter M. G. Pinckney

Hordille Latter

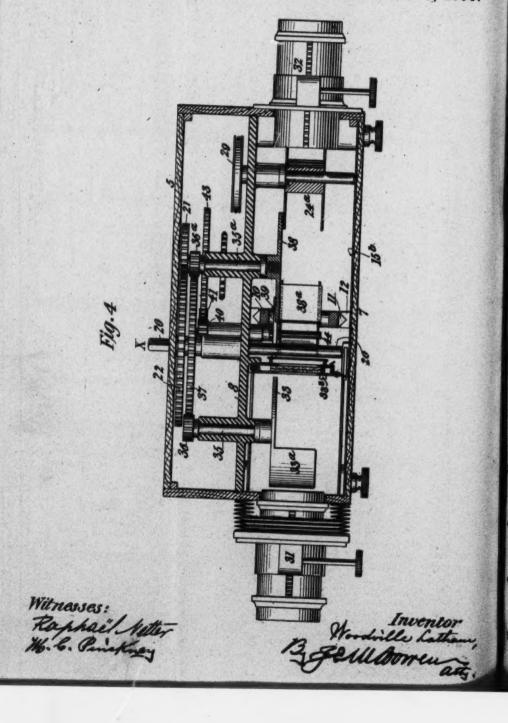


W. LATHAM.

APPARATUS FOR PHOTOGRAPHING OBJECTS IN MOTION AND FOR PROJECTING PICTURES.

No. 600,113.

Patented Mar. 1, 1898.



UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

WOODVILLE LATHAM, OF NEW YORK, N. Y.

APPARATUS FOR PHOTOGRAPHING OBJECTS IN MOTION AND FOR PROJECTING PICTURES.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent Mo. 600,113, dated March 1, 1898. Application fied December 26, 1896. Serial No. 617,012. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, WOODVILLE LATHAM, scitizen of the United States, and a resident of New York, in the county and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improven ents in Apparatus for Photographing Objects in Motion and for Projecting the Pictures Upon a Screen or other Surface, of which the following is a specification.

My invention relates to apparatus for photographing objects in motion and for projecting the pictures upon a screen or other surface whether by intermittent or continuous movement of the film.

The object of the invention is to devise an apparatus of the character indicated which shall be free from the defects incident to the

constructions heretofore devised.

In the present apparatus smooth rollers are made use of for feeding the film. Sprocket-machines are apt to tear the picture-strip, be-sides being otherwise objectionable; but if the strip is carried between smooth rollers i; passes through the apparatus not at the rate of a definite number of pictures per turn of the driving-shaft, as in aprocket-machines, but at the rate of a definite number of inches, and as the positive pictures usually differ in size from the negatives because of shrinkage or expansion under the process of develop-ment a new difficulty presents itself which an example will explain. Suppose that one hundred inches of celluloid film has been used, and that upon it have been photographed one independent that the negatives. Suppose that the negative-strip has been developed and that from it one hundred positives have been printed and developed. A measurement of the positive-strip will show that it is, I will say, only ninety-nine inches long. Let the machinery of the photographic appearance in companion. of the photographic apparatus, in connection, of course, with suitable appliances for proof course, with suitable appliances for projection, be employed to project the positives upon a screen. There will be only one exist posure for each of the ninety-nine inches on which the hundred positives appear. The first projection will be that of picture number one together with a part of picture number two. The second projection will be that of the remainder of picture number two toof the remainder of picture number two to-gether with a larger part of picture number side 7 of the case, the inner surface of side three. The third projection will be that of 7 being preferably lined with metal 15, hav-

the remainder of picture number three, together with a still larger part of picture number four, and so on to the end of the strip. 55 In the apparatus about to be described the driving-roller of each pair of feed-rollers is made of soft rubber or other yielding elastic material and the feed is suitably varied by varying the pressure between the rollers.

In the accompanying drawings, forming a part of this specification, I have shown one embodiment of my invention, the best known to me at the present time, and in the claims at the end hereof I have set forth the features 63 and combinations for which I desire protec tion. It is to be understood, of course, that I do not limit myself to the particular details of arrangement or construction herein shown. as these may be varied to suit conditions.

In the drawings, in which like parts are indicated by like numerals of reference in the several views, Figure 1 is a side elevation, partly in section, of an apparatus constructed according to my invention; and Figs. 2, 3, and 44,

respectively, of Fig. 1.

Referring to the drawings, 5 indicates a case of any suitable dimensions and material. Each end of the case 5 is provided with a 80 hinged door 6 6 to render the interior easy of access, and one side 7 of the case is detachably applied for the same reason.

Within case 5 is fitted and secured a frame 8, of metal, which furnishes a support and 85 bearings for the mechanism. This frame, to reduce the weight, is cut away at suitable places, as shown at 9. A sliding frame 10 is mounted in frame 8 and guided by a series of dovetail projections 11 on its sides fitting 90 into corresponding depressions 12 on frame 8 and the inner surface of side 7 of the case. The frame 10 is adapted to be moved up or down by turning the milled head of screw 13; which is fitted through the top of the case 95 and engages with the top of said frame 10. Numerals 14 14° indicate rollers covered

with a proper thickness of a material that is yielding and elastic, such as soft rubber. These rollers are fixed to their shafts, which 100 are suitably supported in frame 8 and in me-

20 once equalized for any position of the frame 10, the equality will not be destroyed by moving said frame up or down and no further turning of the milled head 19 will be necessary during the operation of the apparatus.

The roller 14 is driven from the drivingshaft 20, the shaft of said roller being provided at its outer end with gear-wheel 21 which meshes with gear-wheel 22 on said driving-shaft. The roller 14° is driven from 30 the shaft of roller 14 by suitable gearing as, for example, a sprocket-chain 23, which answers the purpose well. The reels carrying the film or picture-bear-ing strip 25 are indicated at 24 24°, and they 35 are suitably mounted in the case 5 and are easily accessible and removable. The film or picture-bearing strip is drawn from the upper reel 24 and passes between rollers 14° 15° between the pairs of small guide-rollers 40 26 26°, located above and below the opening at the optical axis of the apparatus, thence between the rollers 14 and 15 to the lower reel 24*, upon which it is wound by the action of the cord 27, which connects the shafts 45 of roller 14° and lower reel 24° by passing over pulleys on the respective shafts. The pulley 28 on the shaft of roller 14° is provided with a groove of such shape as to prevent the slipping of the cord 27, (see Fig. 2,) and the 50 pulley 29 on the shaft of lower reel 24° is so formed as to promote the slipping of said cord. The adjustable apring-roller device 30 (shown in dotted lines in Fig. 1) serves to give the cord 27 such tension that it slips continuously on the pulley of the shaft of reel 24° to an extent sufficient to prevent the breaking of the film between the reel and the rollers 14 15, but not too much to prevent the winding of the film upon the reel regularly. This spring-roller device 30 is attached to the inside of the case in suitable relation to the cord 27 and is so constructed as to be capable of exerting by suitable adjustment the 65 necessary amount of pressure on said cord. There are two doors at the opening of the optical axis of the apparatus separately

ing said bearings formed integrally therewith.

15 15° are rollers (preferably of hard material and preferably flanged, as shown) loose on

driven by the rollers 14 14°. The roller 15

is mounted in the sliding fram : 10 directly,

while roller 15° is mounted in said frame by

means of arms 16, pivoted to frame 10, as

17, the long arm of which extends through

a guide-piece 18 at the upper end of sliding

frame 10 and out through the top of the case,

where it is provided with a milled head 19.

crank lever 17 may be turned so as to make

the pressure between rollers 14° and 15° the

same as the pressure between rollers 14 and 15. When these two pressures have been

15 By means of the milled head 19 the bell-

10 shown, and connected to the bell-crank lever

5 15 are also made with soft facing.

For some purposes rollers 15

They are

hinged to the supporting-frame 8, and in these doors are mounted the small guide-rollers 26 26°, one pair in each door. These rollers do 10 not quite touch each other. Between the plates supporting these guide-rollers are comented on the side toward the objective 31 pieces of some very soft animal skin 26b, with fur extending downward. On the side to 75 ward the objective 32 are cemented pieces of velvet, felt, or similar substance 26°. The fur brushes without injury the sensitive side of the film as the latter moves downward. When the film is to be transferred from the 80 lower to the upper reel, the outer door is opened to prevent raking of the sensitive sur-When the two doors are shut together, these cemented pieces press against each other, so that the film 25 passes between them \$5 with suitable friction. A regulating-screw 33b, operating between the two doors, makes it possible to vary the friction to suit films of The objective 31 is the varying thickness. one employed for photographing. It and its 90 bellows are detachably connected to the case and are to be removed, as are also the shutter 35 and its inclosing box and the cap 34°, back of the opening at the optical axis, when the apparatus is used for projecting. The shutter 33 comprises a disk, from which

The shutter 33 comprises a disk, from which projects perpendicularly the "guillotine-shutter" proper, 33*, which may be curved, as shown, or it may be flat. The advantage claimed for this shutter is that it alternately ocuts up and down, and that the defects due to an upward-cutting exposure and those due to a downward-cutting exposure in photographing the pictures neutralize each other when the pictures are rapidly projected, and to that the effect of a uniform exposure is there-

by produced.

The shutter 33, which is made use of when photographing, is mounted in a box 34 on a shaft 35, having bearings in frame 8, but not me extending into the box 34. This box is open toward the objective 31 and toward the film 25 on the opposite side, and it fits well against the inside of door 6° or against the bellows of the objective 31, if the door is not present, mad against the outer one of the two small doors in which the guide-rollers 26 26° are mounted.

The outer end of the shaft 35 of shutter 33 is provided with a pinion 36, which is adapted 12 to mesh with gear-wheel 37, fixed to the driving-shaft 20, by which means the desired movement is communicated to the shutter.

The shutter 38 38° may or may not be made

use of when projecting; but it is preferably used when the film moves intermittently and must be used when the film moves continuously. It is the same as shutter 33 33° (except as to the time of exposure it allows) and is similarly mounted in frame 8 in proper replation to the opening in the optical axis of the apparatus, as seen in Fig. 1. It also has the necessary movement communicated to it from the gear 37 on the driving-shaft 20, which

60

800,118

gear meshes with a pinion 36° on the end of shaft 35° of said shutter.

The cap 34° fits upon a projection on the rear door at the optical axis. It is easily removable and its purpose is to prevent the light through the objective 31 at the moment of exposure from reaching any part of the film except that on which the picture is to

be photographed.

A disk 39 is mounted below the optical axis in proper relation to the rollers 14 15 and moves in the same plane with them, its shaft having bearings in the frame 8 and carrying at its outer end a pinion 40, which meshes g with a gear 41 on shaft 42, the gear 41 in turn meshing with gear 43 on the shaft of roller 14. By this arrangement of the gearing the proper direction of movement is given to the disk 39. Perpendicular to the face of the disk so 39 is mounted a rod or tube 44, which is adjustable in a slot in said disk (see Fig. 1) to different distances from the center of the disk. During a part of the time of a revolution of disk 39 its rod or tube 44 presses on 15 the film 25 and draws a portion of it down between the doors at the optical axis of the apparatus. The portion drawn down at any one contact of the rod or tube with the film is precisely equal to what the rollers 14 15 30 have moved forward since the preceding contact. This fact should be marked carefully. because it is the keynote of the apparatus and because it seems not to have been observed heretofore. If the rod or tube 44 is so near 35 to the center of disk 39 that it pulls down less of the film than the rollers 14 15 move forward in the intervals of contact between said rod or tube and the film, then in the intervals of contact the film will be broken or else 40 will be drawn between the small doors at the optical ax's by the rollers 14 15 and there will be no rest of the film at the optical axis at the times of exposure. If, on the other hand, the rod or tube 44 is so far from the 45 center of the disk 39 that its first impact with the film draws down a greater length than the rollers 14 15 take up in the interval between the impacts, the fault is corrected at the second impact, and ever afterward the length of 50 film brought down by the rod or tube 44 w!!! depend solely on what the roller 14 in a revolution against the roller 15 can carry forward. The ratio of the time of movement of the film to the time of rest depends on the number of 55 degrees of revolution which rod or tube 44 makes while it is pressing upon the film. Increase of the distance of the shaft of the disk 39 from the taut film between the rollers 26° and the rollers 1415 (coupled with a suitable to increase of the distance of rod or tube 44 from the center of 39) will increase the time of rest and diminish the time of movement. If the center of the disk is placed on the side of the film opposite to that where it appears in the g drawings, the disk may be of smaller diameter. These facts must be considered in constructing the machine to suit varying conditions.

When the apparatus is to be used for photographing, the objective 31 and its bellows 70 and the shutter 33 33° and its box 34 are placed in position and the cap 34° is put in its place. All the rest of the apparatus is covered by the case 5. The milled head 13 is turned to move the frame 10, so as to give 75 fair pressure between the rollers 14 15 and between the rollers 14° 15°. Let it be supposed that the rollers 14 14° are of such diameters that when they revolve once six inches of film are carried forward, and let it 80 be supposed that the gearing between roller 14 and the disk 39 is such that one revolution of the roller 14 makes six revolutions of the When the negatives have been photographed, it will be found that each of them 85 occupies one inch of film. The negatives are developed, the positives are printed and developed, and the pictures are now ready to be projected. In projecting the pictures the objective 31, the shutter 33 33°, and the cap 34°, 90 covering the optical axis, are removed, and a lamp and condenser are placed near about where the said objective and shutter were previously placed, the objective 32 being already in positica. The shutter 38 38° may be used 95 or not in the projection. Both of the shutters are readily removable. Now as the film begins to run through the apparatus (a slack portion being provided just below rollers 14° 15°, as seen at x, Fig. 1) it may be found that 100 the pictures, because of the circumstance that each of them may occupy greater or less than one inch of the film, (due to development, as herein explained,) do not present themselves with their centers at the optical axis at the 105 moments of exposure, because the rollers 14 15 and 14° 15° feed too slowly or too rapidly. A turn of the milled hoad 13 in the proper direction will cause a greater or less pressure between the pairs of rollers and so diminish 110 or increase the effective diameter and carrying-surface of the rollers 14 14°, and the result will be a proper presentation of the pic-tures. The slightest tendency to false projection can be seen by the operator as he 115 watches the upper or lower margin of the pictures on the screen, and before the spectators have had opportunity to observe any defeet he obviates it. If the pictures are of substantially uniform size, it is unnecessary to 120 touch the milled head 13 after they have begun to present themselves properly. projection made by my improvements there is no dancing up and down of the pictures (no quiver,) and the appearance is as natural 125 as a limited number of repeated impressions on the eye can ever be as compared with a continuous impression coming of an uninterrupted stream of light from the objects looked at. 130 For scientific purposes this apparatus is the only one of which I have any knowledge

that is capable of giving anything like accu-

An operative apparatus, as illustrated and described, is very compact and light and can 5 therefore be carried about by hand. A surveyor's tripod answers well to rest it upon. It can be actuated by means of the crank X. (shown in Fig. 3,) or, if more convenient, a pulley can be attached to the driving-shaft to 20 and any form of motor employed to run the apparatus.

By removing the disk 39 the apparatus may be employed to project pictures (and to photograph them, though not so well as with 15 the disk) without stopping the film at the

moment of exposure.

When the apparatus is constructed to project pictures only, its size may be reduced, as no parts of the photographing appliances

20 are needed.

It is obvious that the reel 24 and the rollers 14° 15°, with the regulating device belonging to them, might be dispensed with and the picture-strip be drawn around the lamp from 25 a box or backet placed under the table or that the picture-strip may be put into the form of an endless band. In this case the loop 25 would be unnecessary

Having thus described my invention, what 30 I claim as new, and desire to secure by Letters

Patent, is-

1. The combination with an objective, of a proper guide adapted to conduct a film across the optical axis of the same, two smooth-sur-35 faced rollers between which said film is drawn past the objective, one of said rollers driving the other and having a yielding surface, and means for adjusting the pressure between said rollers.

2. The combination with an objective, of guides adapted to conduct a strip or film past the same, a pair of smooth-faced feed-rollers, one of said rollers being made of yielding and elastic material, appliances for regulat-45 ing the pressure between said rollers, a shut-ter, a revolving disk provided with a rod perpendicular to its face and adjustable from the center to the circumference of the disk,

and suitable gearing for propelling the mov-so able parts of the apparatus.

3. The combination with an objective, of guides for conducting a strip or film past the same, a pair of smooth-surfaced feed-rollers for said film, one of said rollers being made of yielding and elastic material, appliances for regulating the pressure between said rollers, a dark box in proper relation to the ob-jective and the optical axis, a shutter adapted to revolve in said dark box, a disk revo-60 lubly mounted and provided with a rod perpendicular to its face and adjustable from the center to the circumference of the disk, and suitable gearing for actuating the moving parts of the apparatus.

The combination with an objective, of a pair of smooth-surfaced feed-rollers adapted to draw a strip or film past the objective,

one of said rollers being made of yielding or elastic material, means for regulating the pressure between said rollers, a revolving guillotine-shutter, and suitable gearing for operating the movable parts of the apparatus.

5. As a means for regulating the movement of a film, the combination with a pair of rollers and suitable guides all adapted to con- 75 duct a strip or film, of a rod revolubly mounted on a shaft parallel with said rod and adapted to engage with said film between said guides and said pair of rollers, means for varying the distance between said rod and its & shaft, and gearing for actuating the movable

parts of the apparatus.

6, An apparatus of the character herein described comprising delivering and receiving reels adapted to carry a strip or film, two & pairs of smooth-surfaced feed-rollers for said film, one roller of each pair of yielding and elastic material and the other roller of each pair of suitable material, appliances for regulating the pressure between the respective 90 rollers of each pair to make the feed of the two pairs together greater or less as may be necessary, a shutter, a photographic objective and suitable gearing for giving the necessary movements to said reels, feed - rollers and g shutter.

7. The combination with delivering and receiving reels adapted to carry a strip or film, of two pairs of smooth-surfaced feed-rollors for said film, one roller of each pair of yield- 100 ing and elastic material and the other roller of each pair of suitable material, appliances for adjusting the pressure between the two rollers of one pair and for regulating the pressure between the respective rollers of each is pair to make the feed of the two pairs together greater or less as may be necessary, a shut-ter, a photographic objective and suitable gearing for giving the necessary movements to said reels, feed-rollers and shutter.

8. The combination with delivering and receiving reels adapted to carry a strip or film, of two pairs of smooth-surfaced feed-rollers for said film, one roller of each pair of yielding and elastic material and the other roller in of each pair of suitable material, appliances for regulating the pressure between the respective rollers of each pair to make the feed of the two pairs together greater or less as may be necessary, guide-rollers for the film is above and below the optical axis, a photo-graphic objective, a dark box in proper rela-tion to the objective and the optical axis, a shutter adapted to revolve in said dark box, and suitable gearing for giving the necessary 15 movements to said reels, feed - rollers and shutter.

9. The combination with delivering and receiving reels adapted to carry a strip or film, of two pairs of smooth-surfaced feed-rollers 1 for said film, one roller of each pair of yielding and elastic material and the other roller of each pair of suitable material, appliances for regulating the pressure between the re400,118

8

spective rollers of each pair to make the feed of the two pairs together greater or less as may be necessary, a shutter, a disk intermediate the two pairs of said feed-rollers and 5 adapted to revolve in the same plane as said feed-rollers, and provided with a rod or tube perpendicular to its face and adjustable from the center to the circumference of the disk, a photographic objective and suitable gearing for giving the necessary movements to said reels, feed-rollers, disk and shutter.

10. The combination with delivering and receiving reels adapted to carry a strip or film, of two pairs of smooth-surfaced feed-rollers is for said film, one roller of each pair of yielding and elastic material and the other roller of each pair of suitable material, appliances for regulating the pressure between the respective rollers of each pair to make the feed so of the two pairs together greater or less as may be necessary, guide-rollers for the film above and below the optical axis, a photographic objective, a dark box in proper relation to the objective and the optical axis, a 25 shutter adapted to revolve in said dark box. a disk intermediate of the two pairs of said feed-rollers and adapted to revolve in the same plane as said feed-rollers and provided with a rod or tube perpendicular to its face to and adjustable from the center to the circumference of the disk, and suitable gearing for giving the necessary movements to said reels,

11. The combination with delivering and receiving reels adapted to carry a strip or film, of two pairs of smooth-surfaced feed-rollers for said film, one roller of each pair of yielding and elastic material and the other roller of each pair of suitable material, appliances to for regulating the pressure between the respective rollers of each pair to make the feed of the two pairs greater or less as may be necessary, a revolving guillotine-shutter, a photographic objective and suitable gearing for to giving the necessary movements to said reels,

feed-rollers and shutter.

feed-rollers, disk and shutter.

12. The combination with delivering and receiving reels adapted to carry a strip or film, of two pairs of smooth-surfaced feed-rollers for said film, one roller of each pair of yielding and elastic material and the other roller of each pair of suitable material, appliances for regulating the pressure between the respective rollers of each pair to make the feed 55 of the two pairs greater or less as may be necessary, a revolving curved guillotine-shutter, a photographic objective and suitable gearing for giving the necessary movements to said reels, feed-rollers and shutter.

50 13. In an apparatus of the character herein described, the combination with delivering and receiving reels adapted to carry a picture-strip or film, of two pairs of smooth-surfaced feed-rollers for said picture-strip, one roller of each pair of yielding and elastic material and the other roller of each pair of suitable material, appliances for regulating the pres-

sure between the respective rollers of each pair to make the feed of the two pairs together greater or less as may be necessary to 70 bring the center of each picture to the optical axis at the moment of exposure, a shutter in proper relation to the optical axis, an objective, and suitable gearing for giving the necessary movements to said reels, feed-roll-75

ers and shutter.

14. The combination with delivering and receiving reels adapted to carry a picture-strip or film, of two pairs of smooth-surfaced feed rollers for said picture-strip, one roller of each 80 pair of yielding and elastic material and the other roller of each pair of suitable material, appliances for adjusting the pressure between the two rollers of one pair and for regulating the pressure between the respective rollers of 85 each pair to make the feed of the two pairs together greater or less as may be necessary to bring the center of each picture to the optical axis at the moment of exposure, a shutter in proper relation to the optical axis, an 90 objective, and suitable gearing for giving the necessary movements to said reels, feed-rollers and shutter.

ers and shutter.

15. The combination with delivering and receiving reels adapted to carry a picture-strip of film, of two pairs of smooth-surfaced feedrollers for said picture-strip, one roller of each pair of yielding and elastic material and the other roller of each pair of suitable material, appliances for regulating the pressure between the respective rollers of each pair to make the feed of the two pairs together greater or less as may be necessary to bring the center of each picture to the optical axis at the moment of exposure, a disk intermediate of the rost two pairs of said feed-rollers and adapted to revolve in the same plane as said feed-rollers.

and provided with a rod or tube perpendicular to its face and adjustable from the center to the circumference of the disk, an objective, and suitable gearing for giving the necessary movements to said reels, disk and feed-rollers. 16. The combination with delivering and

receiving reels adapted to carry a picture-strip or film, of two pairs of smooth-surfaced feedrollers for said picture-strip, one roller of each pair of yielding and elastic material and the other roller of each pair of suitable material, appliances for regulating the pressure between the respective rollers of each pair to 120 make the feed of the two pairs together greater or less as may be necessary to bring the center of each picture to the optical axis at the moment of exposure, a disk intermediate of the two pairs of said feed-rollers and adapted to 125 revolve in the same plane as said feed-rollers, and provided with a rod or tube perpendicular to its face and adjustable from the center. to the circumference of the disk, a shutter in proper relation to the optical axis, an objec- 130 tive, and suitable gearing for giving the necessary movements to said reels, feed-rollers, disk and shutter.

17. The combination with delivering and

receiving reels adapted to carry a picture-strip or film, of two pairs of smooth-surfaced feedrollers for said picture-strip, one roller of each pair of yielding and elastic material and the

5 other roller of each pair of suitable material, appliances for regulating the pressure between the respective rollers of each pair to make the feed of the two pairs together greater or less as may be necessary to bring the center of each picture to the optical axis at the mo-

ment of exposure, a revolving guillotine-shutter in proper relation to the optical axis; an objective and suitable gearing for giving the necessary movements to said reels. feed-roll-

15 ers and shutter.

18. As a means for increasing or diminishing the speed of a film or belt, or for varying the relative rates of revolution of two shafts, the differential frictional gearing herein described consisting of a greath meaning the state of the s

seribed consisting of a smooth-surfaced roller of any suitable material cooperating with a smooth-surfaced roller of yielding and elastic material, and appliances for adjusting the

pressure between said rollers.

19. In combination, a supporting-frame, two feed-rollers of yielding and elastic material, a sliding frame, as 10, and two smooth-surfaced feed-rollers of suitable material carried by said sliding frame in proper relation to said first-mentioned feed-rollers, so as to form pairs of feed-rollers, and appliances for regulating the pressure between the pressure and suppliances.

regulating the pressure between the respective rollers of each pair to make the feed of the two pairs together greater or less as may

35 be necessary.

20. In combination, a supporting-frame, two feed-rollers of yielding and elastic material, a sliding frame, as 10, and two smooth-surfaced feed-rollers of suitable material carried by said sliding frame in proper relation to said first-mentioned feed-rollers, so as to form pairs of feed-rollers, and appliances for adjusting the pressure between the two rollers of one pair and for regulating the pressure between the two rollers.

The second of th

sure between the respective rollers of each 45 pair to make the feed of the two pairs to gether greater or less as may be necessary.

gether greater or less as may be necessary.

21. The combination with the delivering and receiving reels adapted to carry the film, and the feed-rollers one of which being of so yielding and elastic material and the other of any suitable material and adapted to be pressed against the yielding and elastic roller to compress it more or less as may be required during the operation of the apparatus, of a supulley on the shaft of the receiving-reel formed to promote slipping of a driving-cord, a pulley on the shaft of one of the feed-rollers formed to prevent slipping of such cord, and a driving-cord passing over said pulleys, whereby the movement of the receiving-reel is regulated to permit the film to wind itself upon said receiving-reel regularly and without chance of breaking.

22. The combination with the delivering of and receiving reels adapted to carry the film, and the feed-rollers one of which being of yielding and elastic material and the other of any suitable material and adapted to be pressed against the yielding and elastic rollers to compress it more or less as may be required during the operation of the apparatus, of a pulley on the shaft of the receiving-reel formed to promote slipping of a driving-cord, a pulley on the shaft of one of the feed-rolls are formed to prevent slipping of such cord, a driving-cord passing over said pulleys and an adjustable spring-roller to increase or diminish the tension of said cord, whereby the film is caused to wind itself upon the receiv-

ing-reel regularly and with safety.

Signed at New York, in the county and State of New York, this 22d day of December, 1896.

WOODVILLE LATHAM.

Witnesses:
J. E. M. BOWEN,
ALEXIS C. SMITH.

Defendants' Exhibit No. 35, Chinnock 3889 Agreement.

ARTICLES OF AGREEMENT, made the 25th day of May, 1895, between C. E. CHINNOCK, of New York City, and F. R. CHINNOCK, of the City of Brooklyn, WITNESSETH as follows:

That the said C. E. Chinnock and F. R. Chinnock have agreed and do hereby agree to form a company for the purpose of manufacturing and selling certain Kinetoscopes, of which the said C. E. Chinnock is the inventor, and for which he agrees, as hereinafter set forth, to make application for Letters Patent of the Unoted States of America, and the said parties to this agreement hereby covenant and agree, each for himself:

FIRST.—That the said C. E. Chinnock is to superintend the manufacture of said Kinetoscopes, and that the said F. R. Chinnock is to employ his time and attention in procuring a sale for the same.

SECOND.—Whereas, the said C. E. Chinnock has already expended the sum of Twelve hundred dollars on the aforesaid invention, it is hereby expressly agreed that the said sum of Twelve hundred dollars shall be paid to the said C. E. Chinnock from the net profits of this company before the said F. R. Chinnock shall be entitled to share in the profits thereof, but that after the said Twelve hundred dollars has been so paid, the said parties hereto shall share equally both the profits and losses of the company.

0000

3891

THIRD.—Whereas, the said F. R. Chinnock has heretofore paid to the said C. E. Chinnock the sum of Five hundred dollars as a payment in part of the capital to be paid by him to this company; and whereas the sum of Eleven hundred and fifty dollars has heretofore been paid for the sale of the aforesaid Kinetoscope to the said C. E. Chinnock, it is hereby expressly agreed that the said Eleven hundred and fifty dollars shall be deposited in some bank or trust company to the credit of this co-partnership.

3893

FOURTH.—It is further mutually agreed by the parties hereto that both the said C. E. Chinnock and F. R. Chinnock shall each at the same time deposit the sum of Five hundred dollars whenever they shall mutually agree that such deposits shall be necessary, in some Bank or Trust Company to be hereafter chosen, which money is to be used exclusively for the legitimate purposes of this company. It is further agreed that all checks, drafts, notes and other orders and promises to pay which may hereafter be given by this company shall be signed by both the parties to this agreement.

3894

FIFTH.—Whereas, the said C. E. Chinnock hereby agrees to make application for Letters Patent of the United States of America for the invention herein referred to, now, for and in consideration of the sum of One dollar to him in hand paid by the said F. R. Chinnock, and other valuable consideration as herein set forth, the said C. E. Chinnock hereby grants, conveys, assigns, sells and sets over unto this company and its successors all his rights, title and interest in and to the said invention, and in and to the said Letters Patent for the same

whenever they may be granted, the same to be held and enjoyed by the said company for its own use, and for the use of its successors, to the full end of the term for which said Letters Patent shall be granted as fully and entirely as the same would have been held and enjoyed by the said C. E. Chinnock if this assignment and sale had not been made.

SIXTH.—It is further covenanted and agreed by and between the parties hereto that neither party to this agreement will engage in the business of manufacturing and selling any of said Kinetoscopes on his own account and to the detriment of the interest of this company so long as this company shall last.

3896

F. R. CHINNOCK. (Seal) C. E. CHINNOCK. (Seal)

In the presence of A. H. FUMEL.

The word Company is inserted in place of the word Copartnership.

3897

C. E. CHINNOCK.

3898 Defendants' Exhibit No. 36, Agreement Between Chinnock & Hough and Werner.

THIS AGREEMENT, made this 3rd day of May, in the year of our Lord eighteen hundred and ninetyfive, between Chas. E. Chinnock of Brooklyn, party of the first part; James E. Hough and Michael Werner of the second part,

Witnesseth, that in consideration of One thousand dollars (\$1,000), now paid by the parties of the second part to the party of the first part, and further sum of One thousand one hundred dollars (\$1,100), to be paid by the party of the second part to the party of the first part, the party of the first part agrees to supply—

Two photographic machines capable of taking photographs at the rate of 46 per second of time and suitable for the manufacture of Kinetoscopic films.

Ten Kinetoscopes similar to the one shown by the party of the first part to the parties of the second part at 157 Sixth Ave., Bklyn, at the date of this contract.

Delivery to be as follows: The photographic machines to be delivered on or before the 20th day of May instant.

The ten Kinetoscopes on or before the 1st day of June next—allowance in time to be made for strikes or other accidents—which prevent the manufacture of his machines—which upon presentation of Bills of Lading to the Hong Kong and Shanghai Bank, the balance of the purchase money aforesaid, namely, Eleven hundred dollars (\$1,100), to be paid.

The necessary instructions in the use of the Photographic machines shall be imparted to the

3899

3900

parties of the second part before said machines are delivered to them.

Signed by the within named parties in the presence of

Witnesses
WALTER ISAAC
J. W. LAHEY

JAMES E. HOUGH MICHAEL WERNER C. E. CHINNOCK

Defendants' Exhibit No. 37, Hough Letter of Jany. 15, 1895.

3902

15th Jany 1895

From

THE LONDON PHOTOGRAPH Co.

3 Broad St. Buildings,

London, E. C.

Chief office in Europe for Edison's newest and best Phonographs. Largest stock of Records (English & American) Blanks and Phonograph parts.

3903

To Mr. Chas. E. Chinnock 157 6th Avenue, Brooklyn

D Sir

The Photographic M/c—is not to hand nor have I any advice that you have sent it—This is manifestly wrong & I shall hold you responsible for the delay.

Yours Truly

J. E. Hough

3904 Defendants' Exhibit No. 38, Certificate of Incorporation of Maltby Mfg. Co.

CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION

of the

MALTBY MANUFACTURING COMPANY.

We, Frank D. Maltby, Charles W. Congdon, E. L. Maltby and C. D. Congdon, all being of full age and two-thirds being citizens of the United States, and a majority residents of the State of New York, do hereby certify and set forth: That we propose to form a Business Corporation, pursuant to and in conformity with the acts of the Legislature of the State of New York.

FIRST.—The corporate name of the said Company shall be The Maltby Manufacturing Company.

SECOND.—The object and nature of the business for which said Corporation is to be formed is as follows:

3906

The manufacturing and selling tools and machinery and such other business as may be necessarily incidental thereto, and its business shall be located at the City of Brooklyn, in the County of Kings and State of New York.

THIRD.—The amount of capital stock of the said Company shall be the sum of Twelve thousand dollars.

FOURTH.—The number of shares of which said capital stock shall consist shall be Two hundred and Forty shares each of the par value of Fifty Dollars and the amount of capital with which said Corporation shall begin business is eight thousand Dollars.

FIFTH.—The location of the principal business office of the said corporation shall be in the City of Brooklyn, in the county of Kings, and State of New York.

SIXTH.—The duration of said Corporation shall be fifty years.

3908

SEVENTH.—The number of Directors of said Corporation shall be four, each of whom is a stockholder having at least five shares of the stock thereof.

EIGHTH.—The names and post office addresses of the Directors of said Corporation for the first year are as follows:

Frank D. Maltby,	Brooklyn,	N.	Y.	
Charles W. Congdon,	44	66	66	
E. L. Maltby,	44	66	66	
C. W. Congdon,	66	66	66	3909

NINTH.—The post office addresses of the subscribers and the number of shares of stock which each agrees to take in said corporation are as follows:

N	Post Office Addresses.			Number of Shares.
Names.				
Frank D. Maltby,	Brooklyn,	N.	Y.	115
Charles W. Condgon,	46	44	46	115
E. L. Maltby,	66	46	46	5
C. W. Congdon,	66	66	66	5

In Witness Whereof, we have made and signed this Certificate, in duplicate the 28th day of August one thousand eight hundred and ninety-five.

> FRANK D. MALTBY CHARLES W. CONGDON E. E. MALTBY C. D. CONGDON.

State of New York, City of Brooklyn, County of Kings,

On the 5th day of September in the year one thousand eight hundred and ninety-five personally appeared before me Frank D. Maltby, Charles W. Congdon, E. L. Maltby and C. W. Congdon, to me known to be the individuals named in and who executed the foregoing Certificate, and they sever-

ally, before me, signed the said Certificate, and acknowledged that they executed the same for the purposes therein set forth.

FRANK C. LANG, Notary Public, Kings County.

(Seal.)

(Endorsed)

CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION

OF

THE MALTBY MANUFACTURING COMPANY.

Tax for privilege of organization of this Corporation \$15.00/100 Under Chapter 143, Law of 1886. Paid to

State Treasurer before Filing.

3914

STATE OF NEW YORK.

Office of Secretary of State.

Filed and Recorded Sep. 6, 1895.

Andrew Davidson

Deputy Secretary of State.

State of New York,
Office of Secretary of State,

I have compared the preceding with the original Certificate of Incorporation of the Maltby Manufacturing Company filed and recorded in this office on the 6th day of September, 1895, and do HEREBY CERTIFY the same to be a correct transcript therefrom and of the whole of said original.

WITNESS my hand and the seal of the Secretary of State, at the City of (Seal)

Albany, this eleventh day of May, one thousand nine hundred and eleven.

JOSE E. PIDGEON, Second Deputy, Sec. of State.

3916 Defendants' Exhibit No. 39, McCoy Affidavit,

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES, .

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY, Complainant,

.

VS.

In Equity. No. 5-167.

3917

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE COMPANY OF AMERICA. Defendant.

Affidavit of Joseph F. McCoy.

State of New York, County of New York, ss.:

Joseph F. McCoy, being duly sworn, deposes and says as follows:

3918

I am of mature age; I reside at Rahway, New Jersey, and I am employed by the Edison Manufacturing Company at Orange, New Jersey. In the years 1895, 1896 and 1897, I was connected with William Wilson, of Philadelphia, who was operating automatic phonographs and moving picture machines. Among the machines which were exhibited by us in Philadelphia, Atlantic City and other places in the United States during this period were machines for the direct view exhibition of moving pictures, known as the Chinnock Kinetoscopes,

Defendants' Exhibit No. 39, Affidavit of Joseph F. McCoy.

3919

which were manufactured and sold by Charles E. Chinnock of Brooklyn or New York. These machines were well known to everyone connected with the business of exhibiting moving pictures, and were somewhat extensively sold and used, at least in the eastern part of the United States. They were advertised and pushed to considerable extent, and I believe that everyone of prominence in the business knew that such machines were being marketed and used, and these facts are still known to the trade generally.

3920

Subscribed and sworn to before me this 5th day of May, 1911.

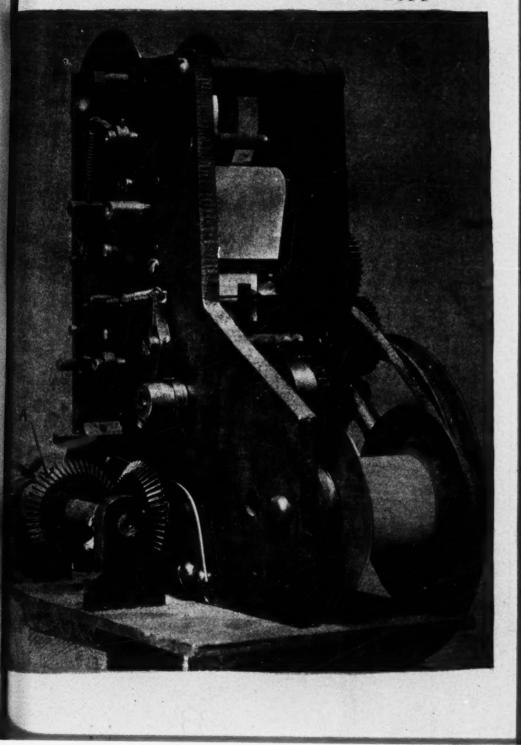
M. LAWSON DYER, Notary Public 86, (Seal) N. Y. Co., N. Y.



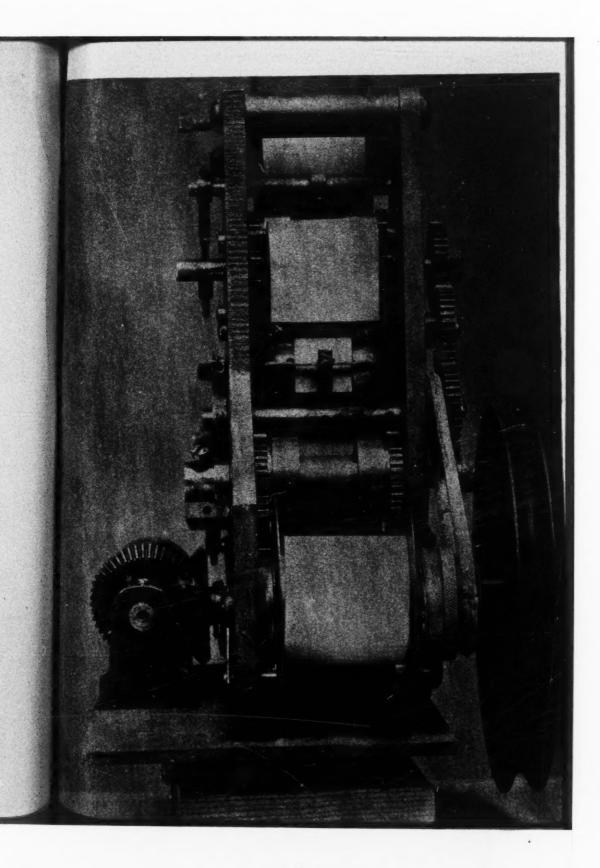


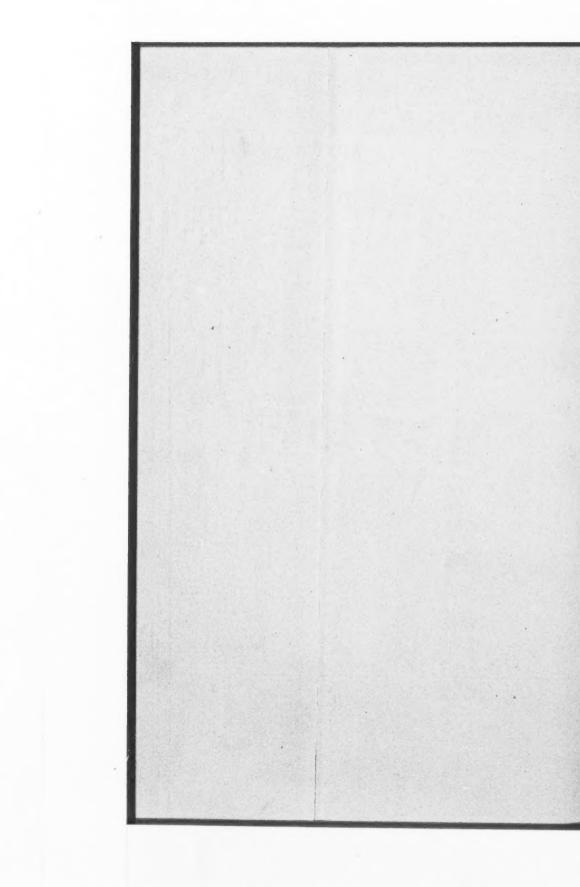
, PHOTOGRAPH No. 2, CHINNOCK CAMERA.

1311

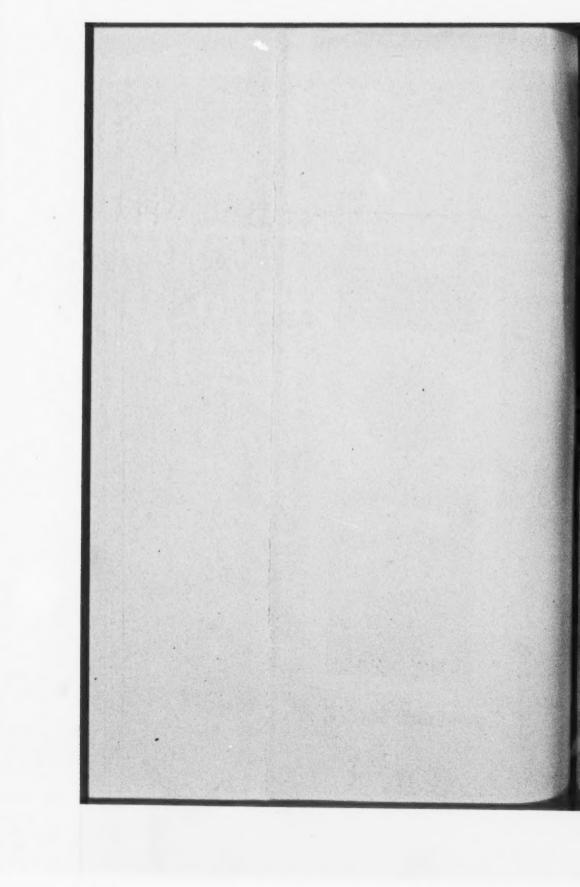


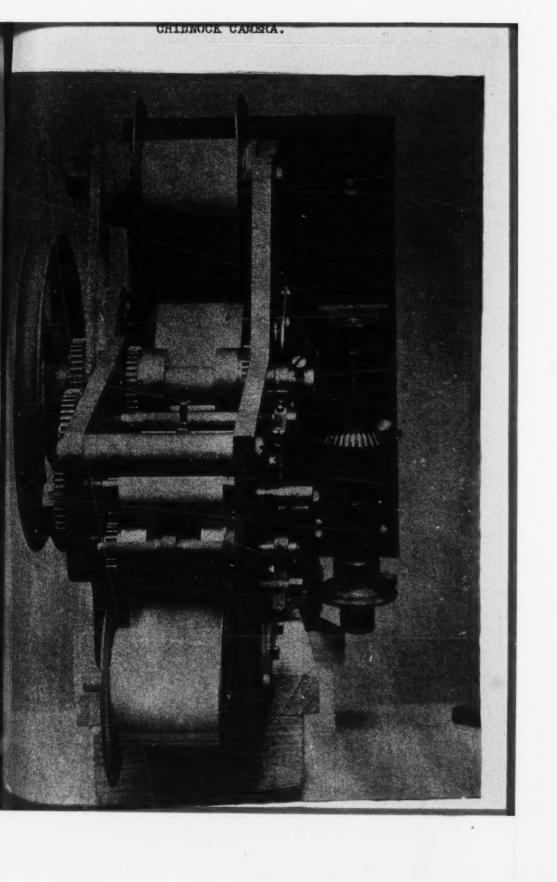






PHOTOGRAPH No. 4,







UNITED STATES OF AMERICA,

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR FX. No 44

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE. U. S. Dist. Court

To all to whom these presents shall come, Greeting:

DEC 23 1915

THIS IS TO CERTIFY that the annexed is a true copy from the

secords of this Office of the File Wrapper and Contents in the

natter of the

Letters Patent of

DEC 24 SUIT

Woodville Latham, Assignor, by mesne assignments, to

E. & H. T. Anthony & Co.,

Fumber 707, 934,

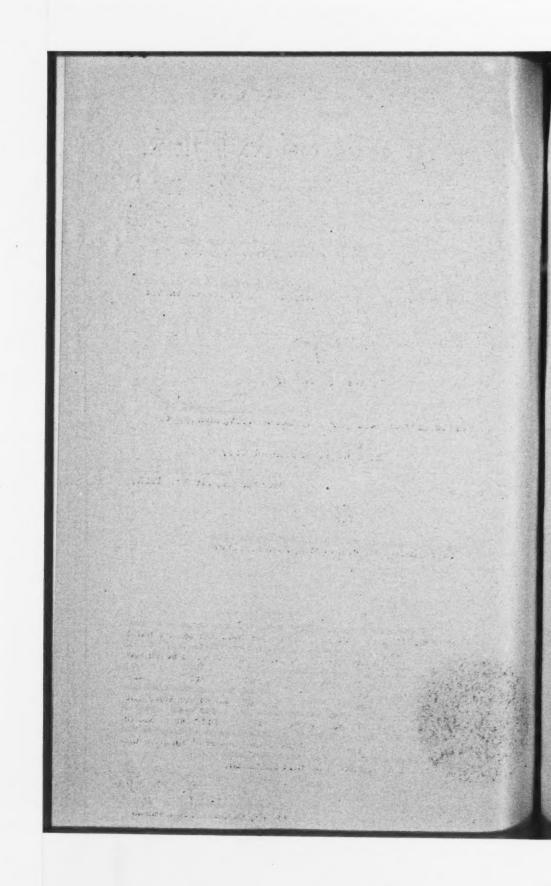
Granted August 26, 1902,

for

Improvement in Projecting-Kinetoscopes.

and caused the seal of the Patent Office to be affixed at the City of Washington, this 3rd day of May , in the year of our Lord one thousand nine hundred and fifteen and of the Independence of the United States of America the one hundred and thirty-ninth.

Activity Commissioner of Patents.



(Serial Number,)
593,747

1896.

(Ex'r's Book,)

Div 51 102

Patent No. 707934

Woodville Latham, Assor, by mesne assgts, to

R. & H. T. Anthony & Co., (Corp. of N Y.) of same place.

Of New York

County of .

State of New York

Invention Apparatus for Projecting on a screen Pictures of

Moving Objects-

Petition June 1, 1896
Affidavit " " "

Specification " " "

Drawing 4 shts, " " "

Model none
Specimen " Prints Jan. 26/97

First fee Cash 315. June 1. '96
" " Cert.

App. filed complete

June 1 96

Examined F. L. Pittman Aug 4, 1900.

Countersigned: Acting Exr

J W Babson

For Commissioner.

Notice of allowance

Aug. 6, 1902.

Final Fee Cash \$20

Aug. 7, 1902

" " Cert.

, 190

Patented

August 26, 1902

Associate Attorney Poster & Freeman Attorney Phillips Abbott,

Asso. H. A. Seymour, 931 F Street, N.W., 206 Broadway

City

Washington, D. C. New York City.

J. - X .- Bowon

J.-E.-M.-Bowen

123 Wassau-84.

132--Nassau-St

New-York

MOPK-N-Y

. C. Renderson City

AMOUNT RECEIVED S \$ 15 Ck CHIEF CLERK

Petition.

To the Commissioner of Patents:

Your Petitioner Woodville Latham, a citizen of the United States and a resident of New York, in the County and State of Mew York, prays that Letters-Patent of the United States may be granted to him for the invention or improvements in Apparatus for Projecting on a screen Pictures of Moving Objects, set forth in the annexed specification; and I hereby appoint J. E. H. Bown, No. 132 Massau Street, New York, and 501-F-Street, New-W--City ef-Washington, District of Columbia, W.S.A. my Attorney, with full power of substitution and revocation, to prosecute this application make alterations and amendments therein, to receive the patent, and to transact all business in the Patent Office connected therewith.

Woodville Latham

Specification.

To all whom it may concern:

per D

Be it known that I, Woodville Latham, a citizen of the United States and a resident of New York, in the County and State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Projecting Kinetescope Improvements in Apparatus for Projecting on a screen Pictures

of Moving Objects, of which the following is a specification:-

Sub B' for projecting continuously on a screen, or other plane surface, many thousands of photographs of moving objects whereby the movement of the objects is accurately exhibited.

The purpose of the invention is to devise an appara atus capable of continuously projecting a great number of pictures of mowing objects arranged in a strip or film of great length, whereby each picture in the strip is brought to rest at the moment of projection. In an apparatus organized so that the picture-bearing strip is caused to move continuously and uninterruptedly across the optical axis, a light of the highest intensity is necessary to give satisfactory results, but a light of the highest power is not required for satisfactory projection by means of an apparatus embodying the principle of the present invention. The stoppage of each picture during its exposure permits the requisite quantity of light to pass through the condenser, the picture and the objective to the screen or plane surface upon which the image is projected, when the light employed is only of a moderately high power.

My present invention accordingly consists of an apparatus for projecting continuously a great number of pictures of moving objects, embodying means for bringing each picture to rest at the moment of projection; means for reducing the strain the picture film would otherwise suffer from the rapid interruption of its movement, and means for maintaining uniformity of tension of the film, as it unwinds from the delivering reel, and as it winds upon the receiving reel, all as set forth in the claims at the end

of this specification.

In the accompanying drawings which form part of this description and wherein like features are designated in the several views by like numerals of reference, Figure 1 is a side elevation of an apparatus embodying my invention. Figure 2 is a cross section on the line 2, 2, of Figure 1, partly broken away. Figure 3 is a section on broken line 3, 3, of Figure 2, looking toward the machine. Figure 4 is a fragmentary section on line 4, 4, of Figure 2. Figure 5 is a similar section on the line 5, 5, of Figure 2. Figure 6 is a vertical section through the machine and showing the slack in the film, on the line 6, 6, of Figure 2. Figure 7 is a similar section showing the mechanism for pressing the film in contact with the guide rollers and drums. thrown out of action, Figure 8 is a sectional plan view on the line 8, 8, of figure 2; and Figure 9 is a section on the line 9, 9, of Figures 1 and 3 through the friction controlling appliances, showing the relation of the parts when winding back the film to the delivering reel,

The several parts of the apparatus are mounted upon an optical bench indicated in the drawings at 10 and of any convenient design. At the ends of the bench 10 are the brackets 11 furnishing supports for the pair of longitudinal rods 12 upon which are mounted the standards 13, 14, 15, said standards being bifurcated to connect with rods 12 in such manner as to be capable of longitudinal adjustment thereon.

The standard 15 supports a projecting lens or an ordinary objective 16 which may be readily adjusted to

bring it in proper relation to the pictures being projected, and standard 14 supports the condensing lens or lenses 17 while the standard 15 supports the lamp 18 which in this instance is shown as a focusing arc lamp. The lamp 18 is adjustable on its support both vertically and laterally, and the standards for the condensing lens and the lamp may. be adjusted longitudinally on the rods 12 so as to obtain the proper relative relation between the lamp and the condenser and the condenser and picture strip.

The mechanism for supporting and propelling the shutter and the picture bearing strip is arranged above and below the optical beach 10 on standards 19 which extend vertically above the beach and for a short distance beneath, and are braced by the brackets 20 which also furnish bearings for the longitudinal rods 12, as seen in figure 2.

The picture-bearing strip, which may be of any desired length without in any way affecting the operation of the machine, is indicated at 21 in the several views. It is wound upon the delivering reel 22 the shaft of which, 23, is journaled in the lower ends of the standards 19. The receiving reel 24 is similarly mounted at the top of stand-19 its shaft 25 having bearings in said standards and being extended at one side beyond the standard to receive pulley 26 for the belt 30% transmitting the motion of the driving shaft to the receiving reel. The picture-bearing strip 21 is conducted through and over its guiding and controlling mechanism mounted in standards 19, and secured to the hub of reel 24, the said strip when in the position it is caused to assume when the apparatus is projecting having two slack sections contiguous to the feed

drums for the purpose presently explained.

To one side of standards 19 there is fixed the bracket 27 in which the main shaft 28 is mounted in bearings 28ª. At one end of this shaft 28 there is keyed a pulley 29 to receive the driving belt 30 and at its opposite end if fixed the hub of the shutter 31. On main shaft 28 iskeyed the bevel gear 32 which meshes with bevel gear 33 fixed to the end of shaft 34 which revolves in bearings 348 in bracket 27 and adjacent standard 19; the revolution of the shaft 28 being thereby transmitted to shaft 34. The shaft 34 has keyed to it pulley 35 which receives the belt 30ª transmitting motion to the receiving reel, and it has also keyed to it the small gear wheel 36 which engages with the large gear wheel 37 keyed to shaft 38 having bearings in bracket 27 as well as in standards 19, said shaft carrying the toothed drum 39 and having keyed to its outer end bevel gear 40 which meshes with bevel gear 41 fixed to the upright shaft 42 supported in brackets 42ª on standard 19, and having at its upper end beyel gear 43 which meshes with a like gear 44 on the end of shaft 45 which carries toothed drum 46 and has bearings in standards 19. By this mechanism the toothed drums 39 and 46 are caused to revolve continuously at a uniform rate when power is communicated to main shaft 28. It is obvious that other forms of gearing may be employed to drive said toothed drums 39 and 46 in unison from shaft 34.

Shaft 34 has also keyed to it broken gear 47 (figure 5) which is adapted to engage with broken gear 48 fixed to shaft 49 having bearings in standards 19 and carrying

toothed drum 50. The gear 48 on the shaft of drum 50 is provided with a series of four toothed sections and a series of four plain sections the surfaces of the latter being made to conform to the toothless portion of the circumference of the broken gear 47, so that while the gear 47 revolves continuously it intermeshes with gear 48 only momentarily as it completes each revolution, moving the gear 48 intermittently and thus producing momentary stoppage of the drum 50 once with each complete revolution of shaft 34. At the moment of stoppage of the drum 50 the smooth surfaces of the gears are in sliding contact and remain so until the shaft 34 dompleting another revolution the teeth of the two gears again intermesh revolving the drum 50 one fourth of a revolution and so on continuously said drum momentarily stopping as the picture-bearing strip is moved through the apparatus the length of one picture, thus bringing each picture to rest at the moment of projection.

To prevent any vibration of the picture at the moment of projection the smooth surfaces of the broken gears
47 and 48 should be held in close sliding contact and with
this end in view at the bearings 34^a, 34^a, (see figures
4, 5, and 8) of the shaft 34 are made eccentric so that by
means of the adjusting screws 31, 51, passing through lugs
52 on bracket 27 and bearing at their points on opposite
sides of the yoke 53 cennected to or formed with said bearings, the shaft 34 may be slightly raised or lowered as required. This mode of adjustment has been found in practice
to be efficient and to satisfactorily answer the purpose
intended.

By the rapid interruption of the movement of the picture film it is necessary to provide means for reducing the strain on the same to prevent its being ruptured, and it is also necessary to provide means for maintaining uniformity of tension of the film as it unwinds from the delivering reel and winds upon the receiving reel. The manner whereby I effect these objects will now be described.

The numerals 54, 55 and 56 indicate rollers for supporting and guiding the picture-bearing strip 21 and are arranged to freely revolve on fixed shafts supported in the standards 19. The picture-bearing strip 21 which comprises a series of pictures representing the successive stages or positions of the moving object or objects to be reproduced, and which consists of material commonly used in the better class of kodaks, is conducted from the delivering reel 22 over guide roller 54, toothed drum 39, guide roller 55, past window 56 attached to the standards 19 in the line of the optical axis of the apparatus, toothed drums 50 and 46 and guide roller 55 to the receiving reel 24 to the hub of which its end is secured. The strip 21 is perforated at regular intervals along its lateral edges to correspond exactly with the teeth arranged on the circumferences of the drums 39, 46 and 50 near their ends,

In figure 6 the parts of the mechanism controlling and guiding the picture-bearing strip, as well as the picture-bearing strip, are in position for projecting, and in figure 7 the parts are shown in the position they are made to assume when the picture-bearing strip is being wound back from the receiving to the delivering reel

To secure the necessary co-operation between the picture-bearing strip 21 and the feeding drums 39, 46 and 50 is the purpose of the frames 57 and 58 pivoted as shown to the standards 19 and provided with the freely revolving rollers 57ª and 54ª. The rollers 58ª carried by frame 58 and adapted to co-operate with the toothed drums 46 and 50, and provided circumfarentially near their ends with grooves as shown in figure 2 to receive the teeth or sprockets of said feed drums when the frame is fixed in the position it occupies when the apparatus is projecting; and the rollers 57ª of frame 57 which co-operate with toothed drum 39 are similarly constructed for the same reason, the upper roller 57ª coacting with guide roller 55 being grooveless on its circumference. The frames 57, 58 are held in the two positions which they are adapted to occupy--as in figure 6 when projecting or as in figure 7 when the picture-bearing strip is released so as to be wound back from the upper to the lower reel -- by the removable rods 59 passing through suitable holes in standards 19, as shown in figures 6 and 7. When in the position shown in figure 6 the rollers carried by frame 57 are between toothed drum 39 and guide roller 55, while the rollers carried by frame 58 are between the toothed drums 46 and 50. Within the spaces occupied by the two sets of rollers 572 and 582, when the apparatus is adjusted for projecting, the film or picture-bearing strip 21 is drawn out in the form of a loop as shown at 212, 21b, one of these slack portions being below window 56 and the other above the same. The extent of each of said slack portions is that of the height of a picture, or slight ly more, and in the operation of the apparatus the rollers 572, 582 hold the strip in proper contact with the respective feed drums and guide roller 55 as will be understood from figure 6, and ensure proper contact between the strip and the respective feed drums.

The picture-bearing strip is carried through the apparatus with great rapidity and because of the rapid interruption of its movement it would not be possible for the strip to withstand the strain brought upon it if there were not provision made for the slacks in the film as just explained. The instant each picture of the strip is brought in the line of the optical axis the toothless surfaces of the broken gears 47, 48, mounted respectively on shafts 34 and 49 are in sliding contact with the effect of causing stoppage of revolution of the toothed drum 50 and consequent momentary stoppage of the film between said toothed drum 50 and the toothless roller \$5 beneath the optical axis, and the revolution of shaft 34 being continuous the toothed drums 39 and 46, geared from said shaft as explained, also revolve continuously, taking up the slack 21b between toothed drums 46 and 50, and alse replacing the slack 21ª between toothed drum 39 and roller 35, thus restoring the slack 21ª to be taken up when the broken gears 47, 48 again momentarily intermesh. It will thus be seen that as the slack 21b is taken up at the moment of stoppage of the toothed drum 50, the slack 212 is simultaneously being restored and this action is continuous while the operation of projecting is going on. There is therefore but little if any additional strain on the film incident to the rapid interruntion of its movement through the apparatus.

Uniformity of tension of the film as it unwinds from the delivering reel, to prevent the film from buckling and ensure its proper entrance to the apparatus, is secured by any suitable friction device applied to the shaft 23 of said reel. In the drawings is shown a metallic strap with an adjusting screw for this purpose. This friction device is indicated by 60.

The rate of winding of the picture-bearing strip upon the receiving real is regulated by automatically controlling the revolution of the reel by means of the idler 61 which is shown loosely journaled on shaft 34. The idler is provided with a slot, as shown, in which is adjustably fixed roller 62 and around this roller is passed the belt 30a. By adjusting roller 62 in the slot the pressure on the belt is varied. As the real 24 becomes larger by the winding of film thereon, the idner serves to loosen the belt 30ª and to cause it to slip on pulley 26 of the reel shaft. This slipping is a continuous one from beginning to end of the operation of the machine, but it is such a gentle slipping that no appreciable heat is produced and no appreciable wearing of the belt. The outer end of the idler is screw-threaded and provided with weight 63 by means of which a nicer adjustment of the pressure exerted by the idler is obtained. By this means the rate of revolution of the receiving reel is automatically maintained in proper correspondence with that of the feed drum 46.

The shutter 31 carried by the shaft 34 has but a small solid section. Its use is to cover the film during the interval of movement of each picture, which in this

apparatus is never more than one hundredth of a second. The power of the driving motor is imparted to main shaft 28 through the friction regulating and controlling appliance attached to the bottom of the optical bench by means of the bracket 64. In this bracket is journaled the shaft 65 carrying at one end a friction plate 66 and having keyed to its opposite end a pulley 67 adapted to receive the belt 30 which passes over pulley 29 on the main shaft 28. The friction plate 66 co-operates with a friction roller 68 keyed to shart 69 the said shaft having a longitudinal groove 70 and being provided with pulley 71 receiving the belt 72 to the motor and also with pulley 73 adapted to receive belt 74 which is made use of to transmit the power of the motor to the delivering reel when winding back the film from the receiving reel, the shaft of said reel being provided with pulley 75 to receive said belt. The pulleys 71 and 73 are connected to shaft 69 by feathers entering the groove of said shaft, as shown in figure 9, so that while these pulleys cannot turn on the shaft the shaft can be moved through the hubs of the pulleys which is done when adjusting the friction roller 68 with relation to the friction plate 66. The hub of the friction roller is connected by an arm 76 having a screw-threaded sleeve through which passes screw-threaded shaft 77 supported in bracket 64 and adapted to be turned by crank 78 to permit the adjustment of the friction roller toward or from the centre of the friction plate to increase or diminish the rate of speed of the friction plate shaft \$5 in a manner well understood, the rate of speed of the main shaft 28

connected to the friction plate shaft 65 through belt 30 being thus determined and regulated as desired. The pressure of the friction plate 66 against the friction roller 68 is regulated by means of the milled head screw 79 the point of which enters a depression in the end of the friction plate shaft, as shown in figure 3.

In figure 9 the friction speed regulating appliances are shown adjusted for winding back the film from the receiving to the delivering reel, the friction roller 68 having been shifted across the centre of the friction plate so as to reverse the revolution of the shaft 65. When winding back the film the pulleys 73 and 75 are connected by belt 74 and the frames 57, 58, are swung back as shown in figure 7 so as to relieve the film of all binding tension.

The reels may be of size suitable to carry any length of picture-bearing strip that may be desired.

In operating the apparatus, power is transmitted from the motor, not shown, by belt 72 and through friction plate shaft by belt 30 to main shaft 28 of the apparatus. the operation of the gearing and the manner in which the teeth of the feed drums engage the perforations in the edges of the picture-bearing strip and move it from the delivering to the receiving reel, and across the opening 56 in the line of the optical axis of the apparatus with a momentary stoppage of the film crossing the optical axis as the central portion of each picture is brought in the line of the optical axis, will all be understood from the preceding description. Whenever the central portion of a picture is in the line of the optical axis and the picture comes to rest, the

light will pass simultaneously through the condensing lens, through the picture and through the objective outward to the screen or other plane surface. The light, of course, must be so adjusted as to cover the whole of the picture. The pictures are projected successively with such great rapidity, each succeeding picture showing a slightly advanced stage of the motion, that the effect on the observer is exactly the same as if the moving object or objects were being looked at directly.

It is to be understood that many of the mere details of the apparatus herein described may be varied without departing from the principle of my invention, as for example while the mechanism ahown and described for causing the picture-bearing strip to travel in such manner that there is a real stoppage of the film as each picture is presented in the line of the aptical axis, is of the form and character preferred by me, it is obvious that the principle of the invention may be retained with differently organized gearing and the employment of the other appliances than those shown and described.

Having thus described my invention, what I claim as new and desire to secure by letters patent, is:
sert A' as 1. In an apparatus for projecting on a screen, or other plane surface, pictures of moving objects, the combination with an objective, a condenser and a light, of a strip or film on which successive pictures of objects in motion have been photographed, and appliances for moving said strip or film and means for bringing each picture to a state of complete rest as it comes into line with the optical axis of the apparatus.

other plane surface, nictures of moving objects, the combination with an objective, a condenser and a light, of a strip or film on which successive pictures of objects in motion have been photographed, a delivering and a receiving reel for said strip or film, appliances for moving said strip or film between said reels and means for bringing each picture momentarily to rest as it comes into line with the optical axis of the apparatus.

other plane surface, pictures of moving objects, the combination with an objective, a condenser and a light, of a strip or film on which successive pictures of objects in motion have been photographed, a delivering and a receiving reel for said strip or film, appliances for moving said strip or film between said reels, means for maintaining a constant tension on the picture-bearing strip or film between the receiving reel and the feeding mechanism below, and means for bringing each picture momentarily to rest as it

comes into line with the optical axis of the apparatus.

other plane surface, pictures of moving objects, the combination with an objective, a condenser and a light, of a strip or film on which successive pictures of objects in motion have been photographed, appliances, including feed drums, for moving said strip or film and for ensuring slacks in the film above and below the optical axis of the apparatus, and means for bringing each picture momentarily to rest as it comes into line with the optical axis of the apparatus.

all 5. The combination with a perforated picture-bearing strip and feeding appliances therefor including a series of three toothed drums, of a driving shaft, gearing transmitting the motion of said shaft continuously to two of said drums, and broken gearing on the driving shaft and the shaft of the intermediately arranged drum whereby the motion of the driving shaft is transmitted intermittently to said intermediate drum.

bearing strip and feeding appliances therefor including a series of three toothed feed drums, of a driving shaft, gearing transmitting the motion of said shaft continuously to two of said drums, broken gearing whereby the motion of said shaft is transmitted intermittently to the remaining drum, and appliances for ensuring slacks in the film, above and below the intermediate drum whereby each picture is momentarily brought to rest as it comes into line with the optical axis of the apparatus and the slacks in the film

are alternately taken up and restored.

drums arranged one above and the other below the optical axis of the apparatus and gearing transmitting the continuous movement of said shaft to said drums, of a third feed drum with its shaft provided with a broken gear, and a broken gear on the main shaft co-operating with the broken gear on said drum shaft, whereby said drum is caused to stop momentarily with each revolution of the main shaft, substantially as set forth.

and its feeding mechanism comprising drums 39, 46 and 50 and roller 55, of adjustable frames as 57 and 58 provided each with a pair of rollers adapted to maintain said strip in proper operative relation to said feeding mechanism, substantially as set forth.

als 9. The combination with the main shaft provided with broken gear 47 and mounted in eccentric bearings, as 34^a, andfeed drum, as 50, whose shaft is provided with broken gear, as 48, meshing with broken gear 47, of means for adjusting said bearings to regulate the contact between said gears, substantially as set forth.

and the pivoted frames 57, 58, each provided with a pair of rollers, as 572, 582, of toothed drum 39 and roller 55, and toothed drums 46, 50, means for imparting continuous motion to drums 39 and 46 and intermittent motion to drum 50, and a picture-bearing strip perforated on its lateral edges, substantially as set forth.

Signed at New York, in the County and State of New York, this 25th day of May 1896.

Woodville Latham

Witnesses:

JE M Bowen
Alexis C. Smith

Oath.

State of New York,)
)ss:
City & County of New)
York)

Woodville Latham the above named petitioner a citizen of the United States and resident of New York, County and State of New York, being duly sworn (or affirmed) deposes and says that he verily believe himself to be the original, first, and sole inventor of the invention of Improvements in Apparatus for Projecting on a screen Pictures of Woving Objects, described and claimed in the foregoing specification; that the same has not been patented to him or to others with his knowledge or consent in any country, except that the same has not to his knowledge been in public use or on sale in the United States for more than two years prior to this application, and he does not know and does not believe that the same was ever known or used prior to his invention thereof.

Woodville Latham

Sworn to and subscribed before me, this twenty fifth day of Way 1896.

(Notarial Seal) 30

Alexis C. Smith

NOTARY PURLIC,

KINGS CO.

Certificate filed in N. Y. Co.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR, United States Patent Office,

July 9, 1896.

Mailed " " "

Woodville Latham,

Care, J. E. M. Bowen,

132 Nassau Street,

New York, N. Y.

Serial No. 593,747, filed June 1, 1896, for Apparatus for Projecting on a Screen Pictures of Moving Objects.

Claims 1, 2, 3 and 4 are rejected on patent to Gray #540,545, June 4, 1895, (filed March 9, 1895) or on the Cinematographe of Lumiere described and illustrated in La Nature, Vol. XXIII. 11, page 215 (October, 1895.)

Claims 5, 6 and 7 are rejected on either of the references cited above. No invention lies in substituting for the intermittent motion of the band in either construction such a gearing as appears for the same purpose in patent to Bonnet et al., \$399, 127, Mar. 5, 1889, (Coin Controlled Apparatus, Surface Exhibitor.)

Claim 9 is rejected on patent to Bonnet et al., cited.

No invention is required to substitute for the rigid shaft bearing in this patent such adjustable bearing as appears in patent to Rodebaugh #490,453, June 24, 1889, (Saw Mill Sets?

The remaining claims appear to be allowable.

A.W.C.

Oscar Woodward

2-402.

NO ASSIGNMENTS

Found of record affecting this applioation.

Examined up to and including

This certificate dated

July 17 , 100 1896

. F.V. Booth Chief of Div. D.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR,

United Frates Patent Office,

Hashington, D. C., July 15

., 190-1896

To the

Chief of the Assignment Division:

You will please make a statement of what is shown in the "Assignment Becords" relating to the condition of the title to the alleged invention involved in the application referred to in the paper hereto annexed. You will attach such statement to such annexed paper and transmit the same to the "Docket Clerk" on ox before the ...day of_

Commissioner of Patents.

The Commissioner of Patents,
City of Washington, D. C.

1343

Sir:-

In the matter of my application for letters patent for Apparatus for Projecting on a screen pictures of Moving Objects, filed June 1st, 1896, No.593.747 I hereby revoke power of attorney heretofore given to J.E.V.Bowen of New York, N.Y., and request all future communications to be addressed directly to me. This action reflects no discredit on Mr Bowen

Respectfully,

Woodville Latham

May I ask that receipt of this be acknowledged?

for Letters Patent for an Improvement in Apparatus for Projecting on a screen Pictures of Moving Objects

Filed. June 1, 1896

No. 593,747 Filed. Very respectfully,

John S. Saymour

J.R.M. Bowen	

132 Massau St.,

M.Y.City, M.Y.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR,

1344 Um	ted States Patent Office,	
Durlicate	****	
	Washington, D. C., July 18,1896,	186-18

SIR:

You are hereby informed that NOUN-POWER-OF ATTORNEY HAS BEEN ACCEPTED in the matter of the application of ______ Woodville Latham for Letters Putent for an Improvement in Apparatus for Projecting on a screen Pictures of Moving Objects 593,747 Filed _____ June 1, 1896 Very respectfully,

Woodville Latham,

54 East 21st St.,

New York?H.Y.

90-11 mgm 15065

New York, Dec. 22nd, 1896.

The Commissioner of Patents,

City of Washington, D. C.

Sir:-

Enclosed find powers of attorney in the matter of two pending applications of Woodville Latham Nos. 503.747 -- 582,998, the receipt of which please acknowledge. The assignments to the Anthony Company have only recently been recorded.

Respectfully.

27

J. E. M. Bowen.

MCP.

New York, N.Y., Dec. 18th, 1896.

The Commissioner of Patents,
Washington, D. C.

Sir:-

In the matter of the application of Woodville

Lathan for letters patent for Apparatus for projecting on
a screen pictures of moving objects, filed June 1st, 1896,
No.593.747, of which application and the invention covered
thereby we are now the sole and exclusive owners by assignment duly recorded at the United States Patent Office,
we hereby appoint J. E. M. Bowen of No. 132 Nassau Street,
New York, N. Y., our attorney to prosecute said application,
to amend the same andto receive the patent with full power
of substitution and revocation.

48

Respectfully,

E & H T Anthony & Co

by P. A. Anthony

President
(NOTARIAL SEAL)

AB monominations should be addressed to other control of the Commissions of Petasia, DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR,

United States Patent Office,

SIR:

You	u are hereby informed that YOUR POWER OF ATTORNEY HAS BEEN ACCEPTED
in the	matter of the application of
for Let	ters Patent for an Improvement in Apparatus for Projecting on a sen Pictures of Woving Objects
No	Very respectfully,
	John S Separ
J.E.	M. Bowen, Commissioner of Patents.
	32 Massau St.,
	W.Y.City, W.Y.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

WACHINGTON, D. C.

28 1897 EX'R OF INTERFERENCES

Woodville Latham,

Care J.E.M. Bowen,

Jan. 23rd 1897 Interference No. 18,461

132 Nassau St. New York City.

Mease find below a copy of a communication from the Examiner concerning your application for Apparatus for Projecting On a Screen Pictures of Moving Objects, filed June 1, 1896, Serial No. 593,747.

Very respectfully,

John S. Seymour

Commissioner of Patents.

Your case, above referred to, is adjudged to interfere with others, hereafter specified, and the question of priority will be determined in conformity with the Rules.

In a picture exhibiting apparatus for giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion, the combination with a picture-carrying strip or film, a tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension device, whereby the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film.

Embraced in your claim 10, in claims 1, 2 and 3 of Armat, claim 5 Caster and claim 9 of Amet, respectively.

The other parties are:

Thomas Armat, of Washington, D.C., whose Attorneys are Butterworth & Dowell, of Washington, D.C.

Herman Casler, of Canastota, New York, whose attorneys are E.M. Warble & Sons, 263 Broadway, New York, N.Y.

Edward H.Amet, of Chicago, Illinois, whose attorneys are Munday, Evarts & Addock, 906 Marquette Building, Chicago, Illinois.

The case will be held for revision after final award of priority.

A.W.C.

New York, N.Y., December 1st, 1899.

The Commissioner of Patents, Washington, D.C.

Sir:-

In the matter of the application of Woodville Latham (E. & H. T. Anthony & Company of New York, Sole Assignees), for Improvements in Apparatus for Projecting on a Screen Pictures of moving Objects, filed Way 7th, 1896, Sr. No. 593,747, I hereby appoint Mr. William G. Henderson of 501 F. Street, N.W., Washington, D.C., as my associate with the usual powers, and I hereby revoke all other associate powers of attorney heretofore given in this case.

Respectfully,

32

JE M Bowen

Attorney for B. & H.T. Anthony & Company Assignees.

J'E M B Decemby Sago 25 Conte

Ser - 593747

2-402.

further NO ASSIGNMENTS

Found of record affecting this application.

Examined up to and including 189. 1900 Jan. 8 . 100 ...

This osrtifloate dated

Jan 13 1900 F.V. Booth. Chief of Div. D.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR,

United States Patent Office,

Washington, D. C., Jany 12, 1860

To the

Chief of the Assignment Division:

Gou will please make a statement of what is shown in the "Assignment Records" relating to the condition of the title to the alleged invention involved in the application referred to in the paper hereto annexed. You will attach such statement to such annexed paper and transmit the same to the "Docket Clerk" on or before the day of _______, 190....



115 Broadway .
New York, N. Y., January 10, 1900.

The Commissioner of Patents,

City of Washington, D. C.

Sir:-

In the matter of my application for letters patent for Apparatus for Projecting on a screen pictures of Moving Objects, 5 filed June 1st, 1896, No. 693,747, I hereby revoke power of attorney heretofore given to J. E. M. Bowen of New York, N. Y., and request all future communications to be addressed directly to me.

25

Respectfully,

Woodville Latham

1350

Washington, D. C., Jan. 15th, 1900.

In the Matter of the Application of Woodville Latham, Apparatus for Projecting on a Screen Pictures of Moving Objects, Filed June 1,1896, Ser. No.593,747.

Revocation of Power of Attorney.

Sir:

Please find enclosed herewith the revocation of the power of attorney to J. E.M. Bowen, for the purpose of having the concurrence of the assignee, E. & H. T. Anthony & Co., in the execution of the same.

By direction of the Commissioner,

Wery respectfully.

E. V. Shepard

Woodville Latham, #115 Broadway, New York, N. Y.

Chief Clerk.

JMF

Commissioner of Patents,

Washington, D. C.

Sir:-

I hereby appoint H. A. SEYMOUR, Esq. of Washington, D. C., as my associate in the matter of the Application of WOODVILLE LATHAM for Letters Patent for apparatus for projecting on a screen pictures of moving objects, filed June 1st, 1896, Serial No. 593,747, with the usual powers; and I hereby revoke all other associate powers of Attorney heretofore given.

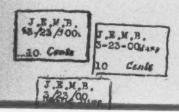
J E M Bowen

Attorney for W. Latham

Dated

New York,

Mch. 22, 1900.



Room 217.

In re application of

Woodville Latham

Projecting on a Screen Pictures

of Woving Objects.

Filed June 1st, 1896

No. 593,747.

Hon. Commissioner of Patents,

Sir:-

Add the following claims:-

A' lat. The combination with a flexible strip or film of two feeding mechanisms, one of which is constructed to move the film intermittingly and cause its intervals of rest to exceed its intervals of motion, while the other feeds the film continuously and provides slack film, substantially as set forth.

2nd. The combination with a flexible strip or film of two feeding mechanisms one of which feeds the film intermittingly through the grame in which it is guided and exposed, and causes its interval of rest to exceed its interval of motion, while the other feeds the film continuously and provides the intermitting feeding mechanism with a constant supply of slack film, substantially as set forth.

3rd. The combination with a flexible strip or film and two rotary feeding rollers, of mechanism for imparting an intermitting feeding action to one of the feeding rollers and

cause it to feed the film intermittingly and in such manner that its interval of pause will exceed its interval of motion, and mechanism for imparting a continuous feeding action to the other feeding roller and cause it to furnish a constant supply of slack film to the intermittingly acting feeding roller, substantially as set forth.

4th. The combination with a flexible strip or film provided with a series of holes of two rotary feeding mechanisms each of which is provided with teeth for engaging the holes in the film, one feeding mechanism being constructed to feed the film intermittingly and cause its interval of rest to exceed its interval of motion, and the other being constructed to feed the film continuously and provide a constant supply of slack film, substantially as set forth.

5th. The combination with a flexible strip or film of two rotary feeding mechanisms, one being constructed to feed the film intermittingly and cause its interval of rest to exceed its interval of motion the other being constructed to feed the film continuously and provide a constant supply of slack film, and gearing connecting the two feeding mechanisms for maintaining a fixed relation between them, substantially as set forth.

6th. The combination with a flexible strip or film of two rotary feeding mechanisms, one being constructed to feed the film intermittingly and cause its interval of rest to exceed its interval of motion, and the other being constructed to

feed the film continuously and provide a constantly supply of slack film, a drum for taking up the film and gearing connecting the two feeding mechanisms and take up drum and adapted to maintain a fixed relation between them, substantially as set forth.

7th. The combination with a flexible strip or film provided with a series of holes, and two rotary feeding rollers each provided with teeth for engaging the holes in the film, of actuating mechanism and connecting gearing, for actuating one of the feeding rollers so as to feed the film intermittingly and cause its interval of rest to exceed its interval of motion and for operating the other feeding roller continuously and providing a constant supply of slack film, substantially as set forth.

Change the numerals of the remaining claims.

Respectfully,

H A Seymour.

Associate Attorney.

Phillips Abbott

Hon. Commissioner of Patents:

Sir:

I hereby constitute and appoint HENRY A. SEYNOW RSQ., of Washington, D. C., my associate attorney in the matter of the application of Woodville Latham, filed June 1st, 1896 and numbered 593,747.

P. A. 3/26/1901 | P. A. 3/26/1901 | Cents | P. V.A. 3/26/1901 | P. A. 3/26/1901 | Cents | P. V.A. 3/26/1901 | Cents | P. V.A. 3/26/1901 | Cents | P. V.A. 3/26/1901 | Gents | P. V.A. 3/26/1901 | P. V.A. 3/26/1901 | Gents | P. V

TO THE COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS:

The undersigned assignee of the entire interest in the application made by Woodville Latham on June 1st, 1896, serial No. 593,747, for an Improvement in Projecting on a Screen Pictures of Moving Objects, hereby revokes all former powers of attorney and appoints PHILLIPS ABBOTT, ESQ., of 206 Broadway, New York City, New York, their attorney, with full power of substitution and revocation, to prosecute said application, to make alterations and amendments therein, to receive the patent and to transact all business in the Patent Office connected therewith.

Signed at New York, in the County of New York, State of New York, this 26th day of March, 1901.

42

B & H. T. Anthony Co by T A Anthony

Secy & Treasr



913-F St ..

Washington, D. C.

Phone find below a communication from the EXAMMEN in charge of your application

593,747, filed June 1, 1896, Apparatus for Projecting on a screen

Pictures of Moving Objects.

Claims 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7, are rejected on the following patents-

Mayer, 525,991, September 11, 1894, Photography, Kinetographic, Cameras; Green & Evans, English, 10,131, June 21, 1899, Optics, Kinetoscopes.

It is observed that in claims 4 and 7, the feeding mechanisms or feeding rollers are characterized by having teeth for engaging the holes in the film. The addition of this means for positively engaging the film to the combination of Greene & Evans, or Mayer, is not invention in view of the fact that the same means had been commonly employed in this class of devices prior to the applicant's use thereof. See for instance, La Prince, 376,247, January 10, 1388; Optics, Kinetoscopes.

Claims 8, 9, and 10, are rejected on Jenkins & Armat, 586,953, July 20, 1897, Optics, Kinetoscopes, and on Gray, of record.

Claim 11, is rejected on Gray.

Claim 12, is rejected on Wayer, and on Greene & Iwans.

Claims 13, 14, and 15, are rejected on Greene & Ewans,

In claim 16, the word "as" before the numerals is objectionable rednering the claim indefinite, and modification is required.

Claim 17, also includes the objectionable word "as" and should be modified. It is observed that in this claim the

"pivoted frames 57, 58, each provided with a pair of rollers," are interjected elements having no apparent connection with the remaining mechanism set forth. The relative location of these pivoted frames should be set forth, in order that some idea may be obtained of their function in the combination. Since the pivoted frames are not relatively located in this combination, this claim is held to be met by Greene & Evans, of record, and is

Serial No.593,747 Paper No.12
Amendt B
Filed Jan 21 1902
W. Latham

Gladme

Room 217

APPLICATION, Woodville Latham. Apparatus for Projecting on a Screen Pictures of Moving Objects. Serial No. 593,747. Filed June 1, 1896.

Hon. Commissioner of Patents, Washington, D. C.

Dear Sir:-

Replying to official letter of April 12, 1901.

Before considering the present rejection on its
merits, applicant desires to make the following statement:

It appears to the attorney now in charge of the case, who had nothing to do with it until immediately before the argument of the appeal before the Board, that the interference in this case was entirely without justification and measures should have been taken to avoid it. The issue requires, among other things, "a tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure". It also provides "that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motfon".

There never has appeared in Latham's case any claim referring to either of these features; nor has there ever appeared in the specification any reference to a tension device at the exposure window. He does not wish any tension there. He has simply the ordinary form of window which is adapted to held the film flat, but there is no tension applied at this point, whereas in both the Casler and Armat applications a positively acting tension

applying device was present at the exposure window.

Again, there is no affirmative claim laid in the Latham case relative to the comparative time of the pause and the movement of the film. The interference was a mistake. It should never have been declared.

It is true that Latham's intermittingly acting mechanism, which moves the film across the optical axis, is of such character that the period of rest is four times as long as the period of movement, and he is entitled to make that claim, but prior to the interference he did not make it, nor did he make the slightest reference to the period of illumination being co-extensive with the period of rest.

The actual invention of the Latham case, and the thing which is of value and which he strove to protect and is entitled to protect, is his special construction, arrangement and combination of devices whereby, the film is intermittingly moved across the optical axis in such manner that it is brought to a full stop at each picture and the movement is effected by reason of the continuous presence of the necessary amount of slack film with the least possible wear and tear upon it. In other words, he first disclosed a machine in which there were devices at the two extremes such as the two reels, one of which acts merely as a storage place and supplies the film for exposure, and the other acts merely as a receiver for the exposed film and cdls it up, thus preserving and taking care of it, and in between these two film supporting devices and adjacent to the exposure opening there are applicant's specially

constructed and specially operating devices, and these operate successively upon an exceedingly limited portion or section of the film, to-wit, that part which, for the time being, is effective for the purposes of projection, and they are so constructed that they take positive reliable hold upon the film, thus compelling it to move for the formation of the slack at one side and its removal at the other side, and at one side of the exposure window there is located intermittingly acting mechanism which, with great rapidity, moves the film from picture to picture across the optical axis, and this intermittingly acting mechanism also is provided with means which positively and with certainty compels the film to move, and these slack manipulating and intermittingly feeding mechanisms are positively geared together in such manner that they are compelled to act in unison with each other, effecting absolutely and without possibility of defective registration, the requisite movement of the film. It will be particularly noted that the reels at the extreme of the machine, which support the bulk of the film, are totally separate and distinct from these other mechanisms which are located adjacent to the exposure window, and which, acting upon the limited section of the film which is at that instant relied upon for the success of the operation and upon that only, effect the picture by picture transit irrespective of the length and consequent weight of the film on the reels, and with assurance of proper registration; consequently, applicant's apparatus realizes a most marked

advance in this art. The reels and the bulk of the film are not affected at all by the step by step movement across the optical axis; consequently their inertia does not enter into the consideration at all. Also there is no question of frictional feed present, which is impossible to make successful. Also no question of increase or decrease in the diameter of the coil upon the supply or receiving reel is present. Also the intermittingly feeding devices are extremely small in size and light in weight, and they operate upon an exceedingly limited section of the film; consequently they will stop and start instantaneously without exerting any strain or jar upon any part of the mechanism or upon the film. Also that the devices which may be called the exposure devices, take positive and absolute hold upon the film by reason of the engagement of the sprocket teeth with which they are provided in the holes in the film, so that there is no possibility of slipping which would result in faulty registration.

It is confidently asserted that no prior apparatus has ever been constructed which embodies that which is disclosed in applicant's case. He, before all others, appreciated the defects in pre-existing machines and devised means whereby an effective reliably acting one could be realized. In proof of this applicant refers to the Kayser patent No. 688,648, December 10, 1901. This patent was assigned to the Edison Mfg. Co., as appears on its face, and Mr. Kayser is, as the subscriber understands, the superintendent in the works of the Edison Mfg. Co. where the

kinetoscope machines are made.

The invention of this Kayser patent is for mechanism for "back winding" the film, but in Fig. 1 he discloses the recently adopted mechanism of the Edison kinetoscope. It will be seen that it is identical in every particular with applicant's invention.

See also the Armat patent No. 673,992, May 14, 1901. That was the patent issued to him on the interference in this case. It will be noted (see Fig. 13) that he likewise employs identically applicant's construction and arrangement of parts. Armat's claims are limited to a tension device at the exposure window.

The Circuit Court of Appeals in its decision on this case holds, in substance, that the Latham machine is an excellently constructed perfectly operative mechanism; that it embodies every feature of that which will be recited in the claims about to be presented, and the only reason the decision was adverse to Latham was because there was no proof, as the court thought, that he contemplated illuminating the picture during all the time the film was at rest. The record in the interference case shows the contrary, but that need not now be referred to.

In order that the marked differences between applicant's machine and the prior art machines, which constitute his a practically useful and desirable one which has superseded all the others, may be brought out clearly applicant now amends by canceling the present specification and claims and substituting the accompanying rewritten ones, and particular attention is called to the fact that in the rewritten specification he has not departed from the invention as originally set forth, nor has he added anything to it. He has made certain clerical corrections and has added an explanatory clause here and there that, in the interest of the public as well as in the exercise of a privilege he has, the meaning of his specification and the intent in his invention may be more clearly appreciated.

In view of the personal conference recently had with the Examiner it is believed that no extended reference need be made to the claims now presented, because on their face they are clearly differentiated from the prior art, and they are based strictly upon that which is disclosed in applicant's case as originally filed.

A brief reference will be made to the prior patents cited by the Office in the last official action which may be of aid in considering the newly presented claims.

Mayer patent, No. 525,991. This is an old form of apparatus which has been repeatedly tried and found wanting. It is absolutely impossible to stop and start the relatively reavy reels which support the bulk of the film, and which have considerable inertia, with the rapidity necessary in projecting life pictures. The jar and rack upon the machine would be such that any decent projection would be absolutely impossible. There must be slack forming and intermittingly acting machanism between the reels which

support the bulk of the film which operate directly upon the small section of it and which, for the time being, is undergoing exposure and that only. It is absolutely essential that these exposing devices -- if they may be so called -- be light in weight, small in size and operating immediately adjacent to the exposure window, and also that they take positive hold upon the film so that the movements may be made with extreme rapidity and without the handicap of inertia to interfere with the instantaneous stopping and instantaneous starting.

Also in this Mayer reference there is no control of the film by the spools. When 25 or 30 feet of film is wound upon a spool it is possible to pull off from 1 inch to 5 or 4 inches, sometimes more, of the film without rotating the reel proper because of the mere fact of the slipping of the convolutions of the film upon themselves. This is the reason why any frictional feed directly from the reels is, and always has been, inadequate. It is impossible to maintain accurate registration between the pictures and the optical axis. Also the feeding roller will slip upon the face of the film itself.

Again in Mayer's construction there is no provision for the increase and decrease in the diameter of the respective coils of the spools. The amount of film crossing the optical axis will vary at each revolution of the spools. It is utterly impossible to project properly under these circumstances.

All of the above considerations are, however, unnecessary. Applicant claims a construction, arrangement.

and method of operation not at all presented in the Mayer patent.

Green & Evans, English, No. 10,131. This apparatus appears, at first sight, to resemble applicant's, but upon a little careful scrutiny it will be found as different as daylight from darkness; so different that it must be inevitably a complete failure in operation. The main gear 28 through gearing 29-30 rotates a shaft 24x which has a slip connection with a speel 18, thus winding up the exposed film into a coil 20. A roller 12 receives motion by reason of its pressing against the surface of the coil 20 and thereby is supposed to transmit, by reason of such frictional contact, the same amount of unwinding action upon the spool 10-19, 13 is a mere idle guide roller and 39 is a shift continually rotated by gearing which connects it with driven gear 28, and there is a certain pawl which, at each revolution, lets go a coiled spring which actuates a drum 16 over which the film passes and by which it is supposed to be jarked across the optical axis. A roller 17 has grooves in it near its ends in which certain teeth which are upon the roller 16 enter, provided they have been able to puncture the edge of the strip as it is jerked forward.

It will be noted that this machine differs vitally from applicant's. There is no positively acting mechanism adjacent to the exposure opening which alternately produces and takes up the slack film, said devices being entirely separate and distinct from the film supporting

reels and so constructed as to take positive hold of the film and compel its accurate movement and registration with the optical axis. This English patent has the two reels 18 and 19, but there are no positively driven devices separate and distinct from them located between them and at opposite sides of the exposure window for securing the formation of the slack. The idler 13 is a mere guide and has no control whatsoever over the film, and the spring actuated snapping roller 16 controls it only so far as the puncturing of the film by the teeth on its ends are enabled so to do. This is altogether inadquate. The punctures must be there before the film is applied to the apparatus so that the sprocket teeth may properly engage in the already perforated holes in the film, thus insuring accuracy of registration. Moreover, there is no intermittingly acting device located between the slack manipulating devices for the intermittent and picture by picture movement of the film across the optical axis. If the roller 16 is this intermittingly acting device then it cannot be the device which takes up the slack, and if the reel 18 which does coil up the exposed film be the slack reducing device, then there is no reel which takes the place of applicant's storage reel.

Aside from the foregoing, there are other vital differences. The slack forming device in the English patent is the roller 12 which relies upon frictional contact both for receiving and transmitting its motion, and this frictional contact is against the surface of the yielding

and unstable film itself, and it is not located where applicant's claims locate his slack forming devices. On the contrary, instead of being between the supporting reels which sustain the bulk of the film and adjacent to the exposure window, the roller 12 is between the two reels on the opposite side as remote as possible from the window. Slipping will invariably occur between the roller 12 and the surface of both the reels 18 and 19, for reasons already explained. There is an inevitable crawling or slipping of the film upon itself, and this action is influenced markedly by difference in atmospheric and climatic conditions. It is utterly impossible to properly project by any such mechanism. One picture may be ,Ol of an inch, the next will make it .02, the next .03, the next .04 and so on until after fifty pictures have been exposed they are .50 of an inch, in other words 1/2 inch out of registration. The Examiner will readily see what sort of satisfaction such a machine will give in projecting a film having from five hundred to perhaps as many thousand pictures on it. Again, every time the film is run through this machine the puncturing teeth or points on the snapping roller 16 are supposed to cut through the film. They can only feed the film properly by so doing. In this way after the film has been used say six times its edges will be cut off entirely and it will be ruined. But what degree of certainty can be attained by any such feeding device? It must be remembered that the snapping roller starts instantly with a

vicious snapping action. It is inevitable that under these conditions the puncturing of the film by the teeth on this roller, which is alone relied upon for proper feeding,

will be uncertain and unreliable, and to a greater or less especially after two or three uses and the previous punctures are present degree a slipping or tearing action will take place which will tend to throw the film out of registration, and although the discrepancy may be slight for any one picture

when multiplied by a thousand or two times will completely

preclude proper projection.

The above is on the theory that the puncturing will be properly made, but it is perfectly safe to say that this will not be the case because the films are not always in the same condition, and a film which would properly puncture at one time would be too soft at another so that tearing to a greater or less extent would be inevitable; and on the other hand if the film be sufficiently tough to prevent this tearing, then at another time it would be so hard and horny as to prevent puncture, and these differences in the film continually occur. They differ in density, in thickness, the character of the developing, toning and fixing materials influence it. The condition of the atmosphere, the presence of moisture and heat or of frost and cold all effect marked changes, as is well known, in the film. Applicant is aware that this Green, & Evans English patent suggests that the delivering roll may be geared to the main driving gear28, but this does not cure any defect. On the contrary, it increases it because of the fact that the diameter of the coil upon the delivering roll will continually decrease, whereas the speed of its rotation is fixed. Consequently, at the commencement of a projection the loop of slack produced by the revolution of the coil of large diameter will be excessive so as to choke the mechanism and make so much film that the intermittingly acting mechanism has to jerk forward, as to destroy proper action, and at the end of the projection the coil will be so small that not sufficient slack will be furnished, so that at each operation of the snapping roller the film will fetch up taut, thus in like manner precluding proper action.

It is not necessary, however, to urge all the foregoing. The Green, & Evans patent does not show the parts as claimed by applicant in their construction, arrangement and method of operation.

The Jenkins & Armat patent, No. 586,953. The necessary modification in claims 8, 9 and 10 have been made. It is believed nothing further need be said in this connection because the controlling feature of the present case, that is to say, the feature of the slack, etc., is entirely lacking in this patent and also the timing of the intermittent feed.

Gray patent, No. 540,545. This comes too late. It is behind the time conceded to Latham by the Circuit Court of Appeals' decision. However, a suggestion or two may be made. The period of rest and period of movement at the exposure window in this patent are exactly the same. It is not possible that there be any difference.

Again, this apparatus is inoperative, and therefore,

under the well settled rule, cannot be cited as an adequate reference. The specification distinctly declares that the pictures are taken in two series which are in different planes. How, therefore, can they be in the focal axis when projected? Also, the order in which the pictures are taken, and consequently the order in which they will inevitably have to be exposed, is as follows: 2, 4, 6, 1, 8, 3, 10, 5, 12, 7, 14 and so on. This will produce certainly a most extraordinary exhibition of "objects in motion".

Again, the intermitting feeding devices are not rotary devices and the same vital defect, that is to say, the formation of the slack not by positively acting devices which take absolute hold upon the film and compel it to move, but the inoperative frictional contact roller is used which does not and cannot accurately feed. Applicant has made his claims specific and distinct in this respect. In the Gray machine when the slipping takes place the film will not be sufficiently advanced to enable the prongs of his intermittingly feeding devices to enter the holes in the film, which, it will be noted, are spaced quite far apart. Therefore, there will be no feed and the machine will fail to operate. No one has ever been known to use this Gray machine.

Again, in Gray's construction the machine is duplex in its action, and instead of the film being passed to the receiving roller after the exposure, it passes to a second exposing mechanism, thus conflicting the action of the apparatus. Applicant contends that the office should not, to his injury, make over the machine in such manner as to eliminate one of these exposure mechanisms, particularly under the circumstances here present.

In this case also all the foregoing is unnecessary because Gray does not show positively driven devices which make positive engagement with the film and compel its movement, said devices being separate and distinct from the film supporting reels. Gray's slack forming and slack reducing devices must act in conjunction with the supply and take-up reels respectively. They operate and can make operate only by pressure against the film on those spools and the slipping of the pressure rollers against the film and also the slipping of the film upon itself, heretofore referred to, will surely take place. The slack will surely be irregularly produced and lack of registration, indeed lack of feeding at all, will surely result. There are other differences aside from those heretofore recited, but they need not be specifically referred to.

Former claims 16 and 17 have been remodeled and now appear as claims 9 and 10, and it is supposed the objections made to them have been cured.

In view of the foregoing, and of the personal interview had with the Examiner, as stated, favorable action on the case as presented is respectfully requested.

Yours truly,

52

Phillips Abbett

Atty for

Applicant

Dated New York, January 20, 1902.

REWRITTEN SPECIPICATION AND CLAIMS AS OF JANUARY 17, 1902.

B

The present invention has reference to apparatus for projecting successively, and at frequent intervals, on a screen, or other plane surface, an extended series of photographs of moving objects whereby the movement of the objects may be accurately exhibited.

The purpose of the invention is to provide an apparatus capable of continuously projecting, or exhibiting upon a suitable surface a great number of pictures taken from moving objects and arranged upon a strip or film of great length, whereby each picture in the strip is brought to rest at the moment of projection so that there is given to the eye an impression of objects in motion in a manner now well understood.

In an apparatus organized so that the picturebearing strip is caused to move continuously and uninterruptedly across the optical axis, a light of very high intensity is necessary to give satisfactory results, but a light of such power is not required for satisfactory projection by means of an apparatus embodying the principle of the present invention. The stoppage of each picture during its exposure permits the requisite quantity of light to pass through the condenser, the picture and the objective to the screen or plane surface upon which the image is projected, when the light employed is only of a moderately high power.

The invention, therefore, consists in an apparatus for projecting successively a large number of pictures of moving objects embodying, among other things, means for bringing each picture to rest at the moment of projection; means for reducing the strain the picture film would otherwise suffer from the rapid interruption and renewal of its movement, and means for maintaining uniformity of tension of the film as itunwinds from the delivering reel and as it winds upon the receiving reel, all as set forth in the claims at the end of this specification.

per C

In the accompanying drawings, which form part of this description, one form of apparatus embodying the invention is illustrated. In the drawings like features are designated in the several figures by like numerals of reference. Figure 1 is a side elevation of the apparatus. Figure 2 is a cross section on the line 2, 2, of Figure 1, partly broken away. Figure 3 is a section on broken line

3, 3, of Figure 2, looking toward the machine. Figure 4 is a fragmentary section on line 4, 4, of Figure 2. Figure 5 is a similar section on the line 5, 5, of Figure 2. Figure 6 is a vertical section through the machine, showing the slack in the film taken on the line 6, 6, of Figure 2. Figure 7 is a similar section showing the devices for pressing the film into contact with the guide rollers and drums, thrown out of action. Figure 8 is a sectional view on the line 8, 8, of Figure 2, and Figure 9 is a section on the line 9, 9, of Figures 1 and 3 through the power transmitting appliances, showing the relation of the parts when winding back the film to the delivering reel.

The several parts of the apparatus may be mounted upon an optical bench indicated in the drawings at 10 of any convenient design. At the ends of the bench 10 are the brackets 11 furnishing supports for the pair of longitudinal rods 12 upon which are mounted the standards 13, 14, 15, said standards being bifurcated to connect with the rods 12.

The standard 13 supports a projecting lens or an ordinary objective 16 which may be readily adjusted to bring it in proper relation to the picture being projected, and standard 14 supports the condensing lens or lenses 17, while the standard 15 supports the lamp 18 which, in this instance, is shown as a focusing arc lamp. The lamp 13 is preferably adjustable on its support both vertically and laterally and the standards for the condensing lens and the lamp are so constructed that they may be adjusted longitudinally on the rods 12 so as to obtain the proper relative relation between the lamp and the condenser and the condenser and the picture strip.

The mechanism for supporting and propelling the shutter and the picture-bearing strip is arranged above and below the optical bench 10 on standards 19 which extend vertically above the bench and for a short distance beneath, and are braced by the brackets 20 which also furnish bearings for the longitudinal rods 12, as seen in figure 2.

The picture-bearing strip, or film, which may be of any desired length without in any way affecting the operation of the machine, is indicated at 21 in the several views. It is wound upon the delivering reel 22 the shaft of which, 23, is journaled in the lower ends of the standards 19. The receiving reel 24 is similarly mounted at the top of standards 19, its shaft 25 having bearings in said standards and being extended at one side beyond the standard to receive a pulley 26 for the belt 30ª transmitting themotion of the driving shaft to the receiving reel. The function of these two reels is merely to support the bulk of the film while successive sections of it are subjected to the feeding and exposing mechanism. One of the reels supplies the film for exposure and the other coils up and takes care of the film after exposure. The picture-bearing strip 21 is conducted through and over its guiding and controlling mechanism mounted in standards 19, and secured to the hub of reel 24; the said strip when in the position it is caused to assume when the apparatus is projecting has two slack sections contiguous to the sprocketed feed drums for the purposes presently explained.

To one side of the standards 19 there is fixed a bracket 27 in which the main shaft 28 is mounted in bearings 28°. At one end of this shaft 28 there is keyed a pulley

29 to receive the driving belt 30 and at its opposite end is fixed the hub of the shutter 31. On the main shaft 28 is keyed the bevel gear 32 which meshes with a bevel gear 33 fixed to the end of shaft 34 which revolves in bearings 34 in bracket 27 and adjacent standard 19; the revolution of the shaft 28 being thereby transmitted to shaft 34. The shaft 34 has keyed to it a pulley 35 which receives the belt 30ª transmitting motion to the receiving reel, and it has also keyed to it the small gear wheel 36 which engages with the large gear wheel 37 keyed to shaft 38 having bearings in bracket 27 as well as in standards 19, said shaft carrying the toothed drum 39 and having keyed to its outer end a bevel gear 40 which meshes with another bevel gear 41 fixed to the upright shaft 42 supported in brackets 42 c. standard 19, and having at its upper end a bevel gear 43 which meshes with a like gear 44 on the end of shaft 45 which carries a toothed drum 46 and has bearings in standards 19. By this mechanism the toothed drums 39 and 46 are caused to revolve continuously at a uniform rate when power is communicated to the main shaft 28. It is obvious that other forms of gearing may be employed to drive said toothed drums 39 and 46 in unison.

Shaft 34 has also keyed to it broken gear 47 (Pigure 5) which is adapted to engage with a broken gear 48 fixed to shaft 49 having bearings and standards 19 and carrying a toothed drum 50. The gear 48 on the shaft of drum 50 is provided with a series of four toothed sections and a series of four plain sections the surfaces of the latter being made to conform to the toothless portion of the circumference of the broken gear 47, so that while the

gear 47 revolves continuously it intermeshes with gear 48 only momentarily as it completes each revolution, moving the gear 48 intermittently andthus producing momentary stoppage of the drum 50 once with each complete revolution of shaft 34. At the moment of stoppage of the drum 50 the smooth surfaces of the gears are in sliding contact and remain so until the shaft 34 completing another revolution the teeth of the two gears again intermesh revolving the drum 50 one-fourth of a revolution and so on continuously said drum momentarily stopping as the picture-bearing strip is moved through the apparatus the length of one picture, thus bringing each picture to rest at the moment of projection, and hence in a device of the construction described the period of rest of the film is four times greater than its period of movement.

To prevent any vibration of the picture at the moment of projection the smooth surfaces of the broken gears 47 and 48 should preferably be held in close sliding contact and with this end in view the bearings 34°, 34° (see 34 figures 4, 5 and 8) of the shaft are made eccentric so that by means of the adjusting screws, 51, 51, passing through lugs 52 on bracket 27 and bearing at their points on opposite sides of the yoke 53 connected to or formed with said bearings, the shaft 34 may be slightly raised or lowered as required. This mode of adjustment has been found in practice to be efficient and to satisfactorily answer the purposes intended.

Because of the rapid interruption and resumption of the movement of the picture film it is necessary to provide means for reducing the strain on the same to prevent its being ruptured by the teeth of the sprocket drum 50, which actuates or feeds the film intermittently by engaging in holes at its edges, and it is also necessary or desirable, to provide means for maintaining uniformity of tension of the film as it unwinds from the delivering reel and winds upon the receiving reel. The manner whereby these objects are effected will now be described.

The numerals 54, 55 and 56 indicate rollers for supporting and guiding the picture-bearing strip 21 and are arranged to freely revolve on fixed shafts supported in the standards 19. The pic are-bearing strip or film 21, which has photographically produced upon it a series of pictures representing the successive stages or positions of the moving object or objects to be reproduced, is conducted from the delivering reel 22 over the guide-roller 54, toothed or sprocketed drum 39, guide-roller 55, past exposure window 56ª which is attached to the standards 19 in the line of the optical axis of the apparatus, toothed drums 50 and 46 and guide roller 56 to the receiving reel 24 to the hub of which its end is secured. The strip or film is perforated at regular intervals along its lateral edge s to correspond exactly with the sprocket-like teeth arranged on the circumference of the drums 39, 46 and 50 near their ends respectively.

In figure 6 the parts of the mechanism for controlling and guiding the picture-bearing strip or film, as well as the strip itself, are in position for projecting, and in figure 7 the parts are shown in the position they are made to assume when the picture-bearing strip is being wound back from the receiving to the delivering reel.

To secure the necessary engagement between the picture bearing strip 21 and the feeding drums 39, 46 and 50 so that the strip may be fed or moved with greater accuracy and certainty, the frames 57 and 58, pivoted as shown to the standards 19 are provided and they are supplied with the freely revolving rollers 57ª and 58ª. (See fig.7) The rollers 58ª carried by frame 58 are adapted to cooperate with the toothed drums 46 and 50, andthey have circumferentially near their ends grooves as shown in figure 2 to receive the teeth or sprockets of said feed drums when the frame is fixed in the position it occupies when the apparatus is projecting; and the rollers 578 of frame 57, one of which co-operates with ik toothed drum 39, are similarly constructed for the same reason, the upper roller 572, which co-acts with the toothless guide roller 55, being grooveless on its circumference. The frames 57, 58 are held in the two positions which they are adapted to occupy -- as in figure 6 when projecting or as in figure 7 when the picture-bearing strip is released so as to be wound back from the upper to the lower reel -- by the removable rods which pass through suitable holes in the standards 19, and engage with the ends of the frames, as shown in figures 6 and 7. When in the position shown in figure 6, the rollers carried by frame 57 are between the sprocket drum 39 andthe guide roller 55, while the rollers carried by frame 58 are between the sprocket drums 46 and 50. Within the planes occupied by the two sets of rollers 57ª and 58ª, when the apparatus is adjusted for projecting, i.e., when in operation, the film or picturebearing strip 21 is thrown out in the form of a loop as

shown at 21^a , 21^b , one of these slack portions being at one time above window 56^a and the other at another time above the same. The extent of each of said slack portions is preferably that of the height of a picture, or slightly more. It will be understood from the description that follows that the loops of slack below and above the exposure window are alternately thrown out another taken up by the operation of the sprocket drums respectively and that they produce and take up the slack by their own positive action entirely independent of the film supporting reels at the extremes of the apparatus. In the operation of the machine the rollers 57^a , 58^a hold the strip in proper contact with the respective feed drums and guide-roller 55 as will be understood from figure 6, and insure proper contact between the strip and the respective drums.

The picture-bearing strip is carried through the apparatus with great rapidity and because of the rapid interruption and resumption of its movement it would not be possible for the strip to withstand the strain brought upon it for any considerable time if there were not provision made for the slacks in the film as just explained. The instant each picture of the strip is brought in the line of the optical axis the toothless surfaces of the broken gears 47, 48 are in sliding contact, their respective cogs being out of engagement, with the effect of causing stoppage of revolution of the toothed drum 50 and consequent momentary stoppage of the film between said toothed drum 50 and the toothless roller 55 beneath the optical axis, but the revolution of shaft 38 being continuous the toothed drums 39 and 46, which latter is positively geared from said shaft as

explained, also revolve continuously, taking up the slack 21b between toothed drums 46 and 50, and also replacing the slack 21a between toothed drum 39 and roller 55, thus restoring the slack 21a to be again taken up when the broken gears 47, 48 again momentarily intermesh. It will thus be seen that as the slack 21b is taken up at the moment of stoppage of the toothed drum 50, the slack 21a is simultaneously being restored and this action is continuous and positive and independent of the other parts of the machine while the operation of projection is going on.

There is therefore but little if any additional strain on the film incident to the rapid interruption and resumption of its movement through the apparatus.

The construction and operation of the devices which produce and take up the loops of slack film and also those which intermittingly feed, or so to speak, jerk the film from picture to picture across the exposure window or axis of the lens, from an exceedingly important part of this invention. It will be noted that they are entirely separate and distinct from the reels which support the weight of the bulk of the film, and which are consequently relatively heavy, so that the length and consequent weight of the film may be indefinitely extended without affecting the operation of the machine. The intermittingly feeding devices, on the other hand, which comprise only the broken gear 48 and the feed drum 50, with its shaft, are very light and consequently have very little inertia, and since also the small portion of the film, which this part of the apparatus actuated, has scarcely any weight these parts will instantly stop and start with great rapidity and with

per C

a minimum of strain or jar upon the mechanism and with the least possible wear on the holes for the sprocket teeth in the film, and in order that the slack may be formed and the intermittent movements across the optical axis effected although not essential with accuracy and certainty, it is desirable that the rollers which effect these movements be provided with the sprocket teeth shown, or their equivalent, so that they may positively engage with the film and positively move it without the possibility of any slipping which is apt to occur when frictional contact alone is relied on, because such slipping will preclude proper registration between the picture and the optical axis.

In order that these parts may operate as described, it is essential that the loop of slack film be maintained at all times ready for the intermittingly acting device, and also that the slack manipulating and the intermittingly moving devices be positively driven by mechanism which will absolutely insure the presence of the slack and the accurate movement of the film. The reason these parts, and their arrangement and method of operation are such important and valuable features of the invention is because their action is necessarily exceedingly rapid, and if the intermittingly feeding mechanism were heavy so as to have much inertia, or if any considerable portion of the film, or either of the reels which support it, were stopped and . started at each transition from picture to picture, there would be such strain brought to bear on the sprocket holes in the film as would speedily tear it adjacent to such holes, thus ruining it, and since

these films are expensive, a good one being capable of making large profits for its owner, any means which will prolong their life is of great value in this art.

Another feature peculiar to my invention, and one which distinguishes it from certain other apparatus, is the important fact that the intermitting feed devices and the slack former being entirely separate and distinct from the other parts, are alone relied upon for securing accurate registration of the successive pictures with the axis of the projecting lens. The supply and coiling reels at the extremes of the machine may operate with only substantial accuracy and still the results be satisfactory because they have nothing to do except to properly support the film, supplying it at one side and taking it away at the other. The intermitting feed devices, and the slack producing devices, on the other hand, which lie between the two reels, and immediately adjacent to the exposure window, control and manipulate that special and limited part of the film which is at that instant relied upon for the desired results, and it is a comparatively easy matter to accomplishexactness in operation when this part of the mechanism is separate and distinct from the other.

Uniformity of tension of the films as it unwinds from the delivering reel, to prevent the film from buckling and insure its proper entrance to the apparatus, is secured by any suitable friction device applied to the shaft 23 of said reel. In the drawings is shown a metallic strap with an adjusting screw for this purpose. This friction device is indicated by 60.

The rate of winding of the picture-bearing strip

upon the receiving reel is regulated by automatically controlling the revolution of the reel by means of the idler 61 which is shown loosely journaled on shaft 34. The idler is provided with a slot, as shown, in which is adjustably fixed roller 62 and around this roller is passed the belt 30a. By adjusting roller 62 in the slot the pressure on the belt is varied. As the reel 24 becomes larger by the winding of the film thereon, the idler may be manipulated to loosen the belt 30ª and to cause it to slip on pulley 26 of the reel shaft. This suppling is, or may be, a continuous one from beginning to end of the operation of the machine, but it is such a gentle slipping that no appreciable heat is produced and no appreciable wearing of the belt. The outer end of the idler is screw-threaded and provided with a weight 63 by means of which a nicer adjustment of the pressure exerted by the idler is obtained. By this means the rate of revolution of the receiving reel is automatically maintained in proper correspondence with that of the feed drum 46.

The shutter 31 carried by the shaft 28 has but a small solid section. Its use is to cover the film during the interval of movement of each picture.

The power may be imparted to the main shaft 28 through a friction regulating and controlling appliance attached to the bottom of the optical bench by means of their bracket 64. In this bracket is journaled the shaft 65 carrying at one end a friction plate 66 and having keyed to its opposite end a pulley 67 adapted to receive the belt 30 which passes over pulley 29 on the main shaft 28. The friction plate 66 co-operates with a friction roller 68

keyed to shaft 69 the said shaft having a longitudinal groove 70 and being provided with pulley 71 receiving the belt 72 to the motor and also with pulley 73 adapted to receive belt 74 (see Figure 9) which is made use of to transmit the power of the motor to the delivering reel when winding back the film from the receiving reel, the shaft of said reel being provided with pulley 73 to receive said belt. The pulleys 71 and 73 are connected to shaft 69 by feathers entering the groove of said shaft, as shown in Figure 9, so that while these pulleys cannot turn on the shaft the shaft can be moved through the hubs of the pulleys which is done when adjusting the friction roller 68 with relation to the friction plate 66. The hub of the friction roller is connected by an arm 76 having a screwthreaded sleeve through which passes screw-threaded shaft 77 supported in bracket 64 and adapted to be turned by crank 78 to permit the adjustment of the friction roller toward or from the center of the friction plate to increase or diminish the rate of speed of the friction plate shaft 65 in a manner well understood, the rate of speed of the main shaft 28 connected to the friction plate shaft 65 through belt 30 being thus determined and regulated as desired. The pressure of the friction plate 66 against the friction roller 68 is regulated be means of the milled head screw 79, the point of which enters a depression in the end of the friction plate shaft, as shown in figure 3.

In figure 9 the friction speed regulating appliances are shown adjusted for winding back the film from the receiving and delivering reel, the friction roller 68 having been shifted across the center of the friction-plate so

74 and the frames 57, 58, are swung back as shown in Figure 7 so as to relieve the film of all binding tension.

The reels may be of size suitable to carry any length of picture-bearing strip that may be desired.

In operating the apparatus, power is transmitted from the motor, not shown, by belt 72 and through friction plate shaft by belt 30 to main shaft 28 of the apparatus. The operation of the gearing and the manner in which the teeth of the feed drums engage the perforations in the edges of the picture-bearing strip and move it from the delivering to the receiving reel, and across the opening 56 in the line of the optical axis of the apparatus with a momentary stoppage of the film crossing the optical axis as the central portion of each picture is brought in the line of the optical axis, will be understoodfrom the preceding description. Whenever the central portion of a picture is in the line of the optical axis and the picture comes to rest, the light will pass simultaneously through the condensing lens, through the picture and through the objective outward to the screen or other plane surface. The light, of course, must be so adjusted as to cover the whole of the picture. The pictures are projected successively with such great rapidity, each succeeding picture showing a slightly advanced stage of motion, that the effect on the eye of the observer is exactly the same as if a moving object or objects were being looked at directly.

It is to be understood that many of the mere details of the apparatus herein described may be varied withput departing from the principle of my invention, as for
example while the mechanism shown and described for forming
the slack in the film and causing the picture-bearing strip
to travel in such manner that there is a real stoppage of
the film as each picture is presented in the line of the
optical axis, is the form and character preferred by me, it
is obvious that the principle of the invention may be
retained with differently organized gearing and the employ-

Sub C

- 1. The combination with a flexible strip or film, and devices for supporting the bulk of the film before and after exposure, of positively actuated feeding mechanisms located between the devices for supporting the film, one of said feeding mechanisms being constructed to positively feed the film and produce a predetermined supply of slack, and the other atapted to positively and intermittingly feed the slack film across the exposure window.
- 2. The combination with a flexible strip or film, and devices for supporting the bulk of the film before and after exposure, of positively actuated feeding mechanisms located between the devices for supporting the film, one of said feeding mechanisms being constructed to positively feed the film and produce a predetermined supply of slack, and the other adapted to positively and intermittingly feed the slack film across the exposure window, and constructed also to cause the intervals of rest of the film to exceed its intervals of movement.
- and devices which support the bulk of the film and supply it for exposure and take care of it after exposure, of positively driven devices separate and distinct from the film supporting devices, located between them and at opposite sides of the exposure window, and which respectively are provided with means to positively engage and feed the film, and which respectively produce and take up slack in it, and an intermittingly acting device located between said last named devices which intermittingly moves the

slackened part of the film across the exposure window.

- 4. The combination with a flexible strip or film, and devices which support the bulk of the film and supply it for exposure and take care of it after exposure, of positively driven devices separate and distinct from the film supporting devices and which are provided with means to positively engage the film and compel its movement, and which feed the film by uniform and continuous rotary action, and an intermittingly acting device located between said last named devices and which moves the slackened part of the film picture by picture across the exposure window and causes its period of rest to exceed its period of movement.
- 5. The combination with a flexible strip or film, and devices which support the bulk of the film and supply it for exposure and take care of it after exposure, of positively driven devices separate and distinct from the film supporting devices and located between them at opposite sides of the exposure window, and which are provided with means to positively engage the film and insure its feeding, which last named devices respectively produce and take up slack in the film, and an intermittingly acting device provided with teeth which engage in holes in the film whereby it feeds the film across the exposure opening, and causes its period of rest to exceed its period of movement.
- 6. The combination with a flexible strip or film, and devices which support the bulk of the film and supply it for exposure and take care of it after exposure, of a positively driven device located between the film supplying device and the exposure window and which produces a loop

of slack film, and an intermittingly acting device which engages positively with the film and feeds the slackened part of it across the exposure window, and causes its period of rest to exceed its period of movement.

The combination with a flexible strip or film having continuous rows of equally spaced holes in its opposite edges, and devices which support the bulk of the film and supply it for exposure and take care of it after exposure, of positively driven devices located between said supporting devices and at opposite sides of the exposure window, and which are provided with teeth arranged to accurately engage in the holes in the film and which respectively produce and take up slack in it, and an intermittingly acting feeding device also provided with teeth which accurately engage with the holes in the film whereby the film is intermittingly fed across the exposure opening.

- 8. The combination with a flexible strip or film of two reels which support the bulk of the film, one of which supplies it for exposure and the other coils it up and takes care of it after exposure; a positively driven device separate and distinct from the said reels and located between the supply reel and the exposure window and which produces a loop of slack film, and an intermittingly acting device likewise positively driven which moves the film picture by picture into the optical axis at the exposure window and causes each picture to remain momentarily at rest in the optical axis.
- 9. The combination with a flexible strip or film of two rotary reels which support the bulk of the film, one of which supplies the film for exposure and the other

structed to feed the film intermittingly and cause it to move picture by picture across the axis of the lens and to come to rest in said axis, the other constructed to feed the film continuously and provide a constant supply of slack film and gearing positively connecting the said two feeding mechanisms for maintaining a fixed relation between them.

- provided with a series of holes of two rotary reels which support the bulk of the film, one of which supplies the film for exposure and the other coils it up and protects it after exposure, two rotary feeding rollers located between said film supporting reels each provided with teeth for engaging the holes in the film, actuating mechanism and connecting gearing between said feeding rollers which positively actuates one of the feeding rollers so as to feed the film intermittingly and cause its interval of rest to exceed its inverval of motion, and which also positively actuates the other feeding roller continuously and this provides a constant supply of slack film.
- 11. The combination with the main shaft provided with a broken gear mounted in eccentric bearings and a feed drum whose shaft is provided with a broken gear which meshes with the first named broken gear of means for adjusting said bearings to regulate the contact between said gears.
- and pivoted frames 57, 58 each provided with rollers of tooth drum 39 and roller 55 between which the rollers of one of said frames normally rests, and toothed drums 46, 50 between which the rollers of the other frame normally rests, and means for imparting continuous motion to drums 39 and 46 and intermittent motion to drum 50, and a picture bearing strip adapted to engage with said drums and rollers.

1389

s. c. o.

WASHINGTON, D. C., February 18, 1902.

Woodville Latham,

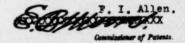
MAILED " " "

Care of Phillips Abbot,

206 Broadway, New York,

N. Y.

Please find below a communication from the EXAMINER in charge of your application. #593,747, filed June 1, 1896, Apparatus for Projecting on a Screen Pictures of Moving Objects.



This case has been carefully considered in view of the amendment of the 21st ultimo.

As to the date of reduction to practice of the machine filed as an exhibit in the late interference with Armat and others, the examiner is unable to ascertain that the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia found any certain date. In that interference it appears that the court held that the applicant had never reduced the invention to practice prior to the reduction by Armat, and it was for this reason that the unfavorable decision was rendered. The earliest date which it now appears may be given to applicant is that of the date of filing of this application, viz., June 1, 1896.

Since the patentability of many of the claims now in this case appears to depend upon the light in which the patent to Armat, #673,992, May 14, 1901, Optics, (18), is to be considered, the pertinency of this patent as a reference in this case must be ascertained. This application was in interference with the application upon which the above patent to Armat was granted, and the interference was actively contested for a number of years, resulting finally in a decision by the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia which was unfavorable to the applicant. In the opinion of the examiner, the patent to Armat is a valid reference against

this case for all that is shown therein which is not distinct and separable from the subject-matter of the interference.

In this connection attention is invited to the MS. decision in Harkness v. Strohm, November 11, 1899, wherein the Commissioner said as follows:

"In view of ex parte Booth (56 O.G., 141) and ex parte Guilbert (85 O.G., 454), the claims of the defeated party to be allowable must not only be patentable over the issue itself, but over the structure of the successful party to which that issue is drawn. The structure to which the claim is drawn and not merely the claim itself is the thing that is in controversy, and after the decision on priority the defeated party obviously should not be permitted to insert the other claims to the same matter, although they may contain specific differences and thereby provoke a second interference in regard to the same device previously contested. To do so wouldprovide a way whereby the defeated party to an interference could by successive interferences indefinitely delay the issue of a patent to the successful party."

In the case of Passett v. Ewart Mfg. Co., 64 0.G., 439, the court considered the question of the effect of an adverse decision on priority in the patents, and said:

"The conclusive consideration is that the so-called fundamental or generic claims and the specific claims found in cases A and B and in the Howe patent are for the same machine as a whole and not for different parts thereof, and are distinguishable only in respect to their scope."

In this case the patentee had been defeated in an interference in the patents on an issue covering the same device, although said issue contained specific differences from the generic claims in suit, and the court said:

the generic claims, except to procure a patent which would dominate the other two, the effect of which should be to nullify the decision in favor of Howe upon the interference."

The Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia in its decision stated that:

"All the tribunals agreed that Armat's conception and reduction to practice could not have been earlier than about November, 1895."

Claim 1 is rejected on Armat, #673,992, May 14, 1901, Optics, (18); Casler, #666,495, January 22, 1901, Optics, (18), and Gray, of record. Each of these patents shows the flexible strip or film, devices for supporting the film before and after exposure, and

positively actuated feeding mechanisms located between the devices for supporting the film, one being constructed to positively feed the film and produce a predetermined supply of slack, and the other being adapted to positively intermittingly feed the slack film across the exposure window. The only attempt made to distinguish from the construction shown in the above patents is the inclusion of positively actuated mechanisms. However, it is thought that the use of the word "positively" in this connection is not sufficient to distinguish from the references, inasmuch as in this class of devices it was common, long prior to the applicant, to feed the film positively, as shown in other references, notably LaPrince, of record. This claim is further rejected on Jenkins & Armat, in view of Gray, both of record.

Claim 2 is rejected on Casler and on Armat, above cited.

In claim 3, and in other claims, the phrase, "take care of it", is found. This phrase is regarded as indefinite, and some other term should be employed. However, this claim in anticipated by the references cited in connection with claim 1, and is rejected

Claim 4 is rejected for the same reasons as claim 1.

Claim 5 is rejected on Jenkins & Armat, in view of Gray; and it is also met by Armat, in view of Gray, or Edison, #589,168, August 31, 1897, Optics, (17).

Claim 6 is rejected for the same reasons as claim 1.

Claim 7 is rejected on Armat, in view of Gray or Edison

Claim 8 is rejected on Casler and on Armat.

Claims 9 and 10 are rejected on Armat.

As at present advised, claims 11 and 12 may be allowed.

J.W.A.

E. L. Chapman Examiner 1392

Asso Power of Atty Filed July 18, 1902.

(Dictated.)

Washington, D.C.

July 18, 1902.

Hon. Commissioner of Patents,

Sir:

I hand you herewith associate power in the application of Woodville Latham, Apparatus for Projecting upon a Screen Pictures of Moving Objects, filed June 1, 1896, Serial No. 569,747.

Respectfully,

Foster & Freeman

NEW YORK, July 16th, 1902

Room No. 217.

Application of Woodville Latham,
Apparatus for Projecting upon a Screen Pictures
of Moving Objects,
Filed June 1st, 1896
Serial No. 569,747

Hon. Commissioner of Patents,

Washington, D. C.

Dear Sir :-

I hereby constitute and appoint Messrs. Foster & Freeman Attorneys Attorneys of 931 F. Street, N. W., Washington, D. C. my associates in the prosecution of the above application for patent in the United States Patent Office.

Yours truly,

Phillips Abbott

Attorney for Applicant.

Serial No. 595,747 Paper No. 15 Amendt C Filed July 18 1902

Claims 1,2,3,4,5,6,8,9,

Application of Woodville Latham,

Apparatus for Projecting upon a

Screen Pictures of Moving

Objects,

Room No. 217

Filed June 1st, 1896, Serial No. 569,747

Hon. Commissioner of Patents,

Washington, D. C.

Dear Sir:-

Replying to official letter of February 18th, 1902 and as per personal interview had with the Examiner on July 8th, 1902, applicant's position is as follows:

The law undoubtedly is and should be that in an interference proceeding, those features of the invention which are directly included within the scope of the issue of the interference are foreclosed against the losing party; and it is equally well settled that no features of the invention, excepting those which are so included, are in any wise affected by the interference proceedings. This has been the immemorial practice in the Patent Office and is the only just and equitable view possible in the premises. It is immaterial what the scope of the claims subsequently presented by the defeated party may be, if they are not within the scope of the issue. They are to be considered by the Examiner precisely as though there has been no interference.

In Acther words, the decision in the interference proceeding becomes merely a reference for that which is specifically decided by it.

In Ellis v. Lee v. Howe, C. D. Wss. March 5, 1895, one of the parties, Howe, contended that the defeated party in an interference contest cannot thereafter have allowed to him a claim or claims, which although not expressly involved in interference, would dominate the victorious party's device. The Commissioner (Mr. Simonds) held that that proposition was not sound. The victor in an interference contest is entitled to claim everything coming fairly within the issue upon which he has been victorious, but to say that if a specification presents two features of invention, only one of which is involved in an interference contest, that a judgment upon that feature carries with it the fate of both is to state a proposition whose unscundness is demonstrated by the mere statement.

The doctrine applies peculiarly here, for this case is markedly different from most interference cases. Indeed, the subscriber does not know that precisely this case has ever arisen before, for the following reasons:

First, in this case the broad controlling claims have never been at issue at all. They have always from the start been conceded to Latham, the applicant. The interference was declared (erroneously it is true, but nevertheless declared) on Armat's exceedingly limited claim, the limitations in which are dwelt upon in the decision of the Circuit Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia. It involves a specific and restricted method of operating

mechanism involving the presence of a mbutter and requires as an essential feature that the period of illumination shall be coextensive with the duration of pause of the film.

Second: The second fact which distinguishes this from other cases is that the Court apparently with intent, makes a dual set of findings in its decision, finding for Latham on all points excepting the special feature referred to, i.e., the concurrent duration of the pause and illumination of the film. A reading of the decision, together with that which transpired at the hearing, leads unmistakeably to the conclusion that the decision was awarded as it is, in order that Latham's rights might be preserved to him and that he might thereafter present broad claims for that which constitutes his actual invention, so that in due course, claims therefor might be awarded to him by the Office, although he was not considered entitled to the special and specific method of operating the mechanism as recited in the interference issue.

That broad claims are conceded to Latham is conclusively shown by the fact that Armat, although victorious in the interference concerning the limited subject matter of the issue, nevertheless knowing full well that Latham was entitled to the broader claims, he took his patent after the interference with every claim limited to the specific features embodied in the general invention to which he felt himself entitled, but distinctly did not claim the mechanism broadly, knowing that that belonged to Latham.

In other words, Armat's peculiar tension device and the concurrent duration of pause and illumination appear in every one of his claims.

It is also pertinent to notice that Casler recognizes Latham's superior right to the broad claims, because his patent is likewise in every claim limited to his peculiar gripping device. It is true that Casler was beaten at every stage in the interference by Latham. It is significant that in not one of the eight claims presented by him does he depart from his special detail of construction, to wit, his film gripping device.

From the above state of facts, it is unnecessary to refer to the fundamental doctrine relative to estoppal, to wit, that it can extend only to that which is directly included within the issue presented by the pleadings; and in as much as that issue was, as defined by the Court, specifically limited to a certain definite method of running the apparatus to produce a specific result, anything outside of that is not affected in any way by the decision and Latham is now entitled to present the claims now presented and they should be approved, since the Court of Appeals has gone out of its way to find for him in this respect. In addition, both Armat's and Casler's patents as issued in the most emphatic manner possible concede the right to Latham so to do.

Referring briefly to the decision of the Court of Appeals, after awarding the date January 1st, 1895 to Latham and finding his machine to be operative and that it embod-

ied the fundamental feature of the two supporting and independently acting feeding mechanisms, one operating continuously and the other intermittently, and after considering Latham's contention that the prior tribunals had misconceived his invention, the decision proceeds by stating
in substance that whatever Latham's invention actually was
and whether or not there has been a mistake made, the Court
finds the issue that it is to consider laid down for it
and under the practice, it is not permitted to depart there
from, and in it it finds as an essential element or feature
"means for intermittently moving the film through the ten"sion device at short intervals exceeding the interval re"quired in effecting the movement, so that the interval of
and illumination
"pause, shall exceed the interval of motion".

The Court then considers certain prior constructions, involving shutters operating differently from Armat's and "by reason of this the period of illumination was made less "than the period of rest and the general effect of the ex"posure was impaired.... At any rate, it was thought es"sential to the combination allowed and as such declared
"in interference, that the period of pause and illumination
"should exceed the period of motion required to bring for"ward the next succeeding picture of the series. This was
"equivalent to contending that each picture when in the
"field of exposure should be illuminated without interrup"tion.... Again patentable novelty has been declared
"in the Patent Office to lie in an apparatus embodying all
"of the elements set forth in the issue. The rule of the

"Patent Office seems to well established that when a "party has incorporated an element into his claims, it is "to be regarded as a material part of the invention. . .

"It appears that the original apparatus of Latham (Ex-"hibit No. 12) on which his reduction to practice of the "invention of the issue has been claimed, operated with "double mechanisms, one continuously feeding the film from "the roll and the other intermittently moving it across "the path of exposure. This was undoubtedly an effective *machine operated as a camera for taking consecutive pic-"tures, but that is the only practical use to which it has *been put. That it was experimented with on one or more *occasions by Professor Latham and his sons, as an appara-"tus for projecting pictures may be regarded as established. "The machine was kept and satisfactorily operated as a "camera for taking pictures. . . We are free to confess "in this case that inspection of the original machine and "the proof of its effecient performance in intermittently "moving the film in the taking of pictures, in connection "with the evidence of the first prvate trials in exhibiting *the pictures, has strongly inclined us to decide in favor "of its reduction to practice, but we have not been able "to overcome the weight of one circumstance, which has an "important bearing. . . . when we bear in mind all of the "limitations and requirements of the issue, which we have "heretofore stated must be done. As we have seen an im-*portant element of the invention of this issue is the re-"quirement to give a longer period for pause and for il"lumination of the picture than is required for its dis"placement and the substitution of the one following and
"this period of pause and illumination is concurrent. The
"original machine was constructed with a shutter and that
"shutter remains a part of it. Such a shutter performs an
"important, if not necessary, function in a camera for
"taking pictures, but operates injuriously when the appara"tus is used for their exhibition, as has been heretofore
"described. Practically it reduces the illumination period
"to that of the movement of substitution.

"Recurring to the testimony, it does not appear that
"Latham had any idea of detaching this shutter in using
"the machine for exhibiting pictures. It is this condition
"that involves to a certain extent the question of the con"ception of the invention of the issue with that of his re"duction to practice and renders it impossible for us to
"find that he has overcome the burden necessary to an award
"of priority over Armat".

The foregoing shows conclusively the truth of that which has been heretofore stated that the decision against Latham rests solely upon the fact that the Court did not consider that Latham had sufficiently proved his use of the machine in such specific manner that the period of illumination was coextensive with the period of pause.

As a matter of fact the Courts seems to have overlooked the positive statements of the record that the machine was built primarily as a projecting machine. That was all the inventor and his sons had in mind until some months after it was built, and as originally built and used on three or four separate occasions for projecting, it had no shutter on it whatever. The shutter was not made until a number of weeks after the machine had been completed and successfully operated as a projecting machine, and it would seem as though the evidence was satisfactory on that point. The statement, therefore, that the machine was made for taking pictures is distinctly erroneous. All of Latham's witnesses agree that the machine was made in the first instance for projecting.

Also the statement that Latham does not appear to have detached the shutter is a mistaken one. There was no shutter to detach at the time he used it for a projecting machine.

Also the fact that Latham did not further use it for projecting, but continued to use it for taking pictures, was fully explained in the record. However, all this is past now.

Under the above state of facts, it would be a lamentable miscarriage of justice, if the decision in this interference, which went off on the illumination feature only, everything else being found for Latham, the applicant herein, and which was founded upon a mistaken conception of Latham's invention, should result in depriving him of claims for those things which as a matter of fact constitute his invention and which are of exceeding value in this art, if not of controlling value.

The Armat and Casler patents are particularly relied upon by the Examiner in rejection of the claims now presented, Weither of these patents claims the invention.

Consequently, Rules 75 and 76 apply and since the depositions in the interference case in the most conclusive manner satisfy the requirements of these rules, and as suggestted by the Examiner at the personal interview referred to,
applicant files herewith Latham's argument prepared by the
Hon. Henry A. Seymour, before the Circuit Court of Appeals
for the District of Columbia, together with Latham's printed interference record and he calls attention to pp. 18-42
of the brief, both inclusive.

Referring now to the references, the Armat and Casler patents have been disposed of as above. Neither of them can be properly cited to the claims now presented in this case. The decision of the Court of Appeals is as conclusive touching those things that make for Latham as it is touching those things which make for Armat. Latham cannot claim the interference issue, which is Armat's claim, nor can Armat and Casler be cited in view of the evidence in the interference case, against the Latham claims as they are now presented, for they do not claim any such thing. Latham is by concession and also by judicial finding first regarding the subject matter of these claims.

Latham's actual invention, as stated by Mr. Seymour in his brief before the Circuit Court of Appeals consists in the combination in a machine of the class stated of the dual sets of film supporting and moving mechanisms, one of them, the supply and take up reels which support and take care of the bulk of the film; the other the mechanism which makes and takes up the loops

at opposite sides of the exposure window and the intermittently acting device which intermittently moves or jerks the film from picture to picture across the exposure epening. Further detail regarding these two sets of mechanisms is set forth in specification to which reference is here made.

Claim 1. The Office cites the Armat and Casler patents in conjunction with the patent to Gray against this claim. It is respectfully contended that Armat and Casler are, for the reasons above set forth, improper references and as to the Gray patent, it will undoubtedly be conceded that it alone is not a pertinent reference, for the reasons stated in the last argument by applicant, but he will here say that the Gray patent comes too late. It is behind the time set by the Circuit Court of Appeals. This apparatus is inoperative, however, and under the well settled rule cannot be cited as an adequate reference. The specification distinctly declares that the pictures are taken in two series which are in different planes. It is therefore impossible for them to be in proper focal axis at the time of projection. Each alternate picture will be badly off-set upon the screen relative to the one that immediately precededs it; and this offset, although but slight during the taking process, is so multiplied when projection of the picture takes place that the pictures may not even overlap one another on the screen. But further than this note the order in which the pictures must inevitably be taken, which is as follows: 2, 4, 6, 1, 6, 3, 10, 5, 12,

14, and so on. This would produce a most extraordinary exhibition of objects in motion. The degree of motion would be agonizing.

Again the whole film will become light struck, there being no protection of the exposed or unexposed part. Also when projecting the rays of light from the two lamps cut across each other. This is impossible. The whole thing is inoperative.

Again frictional contact rollers are used to affect the intermittent movement, not as in some machines which are reasonably well operative in which the film is squeezed between two rollers, both of them mere feed rollers, but the feed rollers in Gray's machine bear against the supply roll itself at one side and against the take up reel at the other, and as has been fully pointed out in preceeding arguments, the slipping of the many convolutions of the film upon itself on the supply reel andthe changes due to atmospheric conditions, will preclude the possibility of proper registration between these devices and Gray's intermittently acting hook-like devices, so that in a run of 50 or 100 pictures, the hooks will fail to register with the holes in the film. Particular attention is called to the fact that in applicant's case, his loop forming devices and the intermittently acting devices at the exposure window are declared to be, and in the claims stated to be separate and distinct from the supply and take up reels. The reason for this positive statement is that applicant's construction will work and the other will not, and applicant's useful construction should not be rejected upon Gray's useless construction.

The Examiner suggests that "the only attempt made to "distinguish from the construction shown in the above "patents is the inclusion of positively actuated mechan-"isms" and holds that the use of the word "positively" in this connection is not sufficient to differentiate from the references. This is surely a mistake. Applicant's construction works and Gray's does not, and the reason is that Gray attempts to feed frictionally from the supply roll. This cannot be done. Applicant feeds by engaging the film in such manner that it cannot and does not slip. Consequently there is always reliable, accurate and satisfactory feeding of the film secured. Applicant's feeding devices are entirely separate and distinct from the supply. and take up reels. They may be at a distance from the feed ing devices, indeed, they need not be present at all. The film may be in a basket or in a pile on the floor. Applicant's feeding devices are in no way connected with or dependent upon the reels which support the bulk of the film. This is a controlling difference.

Claim 2. The Examiner cites the Armat and Casler patents alone against this claim. They are not proper references for the reasons above stated.

Claim 3. The same references as to Claim 1 are cited against this claim, to which applicant makes the same reply The criticism concerning the words "takes care of it" has been corrected in the re-written claims below.

Claim 4. The references cited to Claim 1 are cited against this claim. Armat and Casler being removed, Gray alone remains and he has been considered above.

Claim 5. Jenkins & Armat, in view of Gray, are cited against this claim, Applicant's position will be best emphasized by asking where in these patents are to be found the devices which support the bulk of the film in combination with the positively driven devices separate and distinct from the film supporting devices and which respectively produce and take up slack film and cause its period of rest to exceed its period of movement? Armat & Jenkins have no such devices whatsoever and Gray's loop former is not separate and distinct from the supply and take up rolls; on the contrary, must necessarily make contact with them, whereby the slipping of the film is inevitable and lack of registration between the intermittently acting hooks and the holes in the films is likewise inevitable. However, as stated above, Gray comes too late and it is an inoperative device, for various reasons as heretofore pointed out.

The Edison patent is likewise cited to this claim, in conjunction with Armat's individual patent, and since that is not a proper reference, it is believed that the mere fact that Edison shows a sprocket wheel engaging with holes in a film is immaterial.

The remaining claims, excepting the 11th and 12th, which have been approved, are objected to because of that shown by Armat, Casler, Gray and Edison. It is believed

that it is unnecessary to further carry this matter through in detail. This applicant, Latham, was the very first in the history of this art to produce either a taking or a projecting machine in which the peculiar instrumentalities referred to, are employed constructed, combined and operating for the purpose of moving a delicate and valuable film in the manner stated. This improvement is one of great value and Latham is the fundamental inventor. This has been found judicially by the highest tribunal to which this case can come. To meet these claims there must preexist such an accurate description in the prior art as will clearly teach and promulgate that which he has produced. The subject matter of the claims he now presents originated with him. It is new and it is useful.

Concerning the claims, in order to meet the views of the Office, and for the convenience of all concerned, applicant amends by cancelling all of the claims heretofore presented and submits the accompanying re-written set. He also amends the specification as follows:

Substitute the word movement for the word "tension"; in the 10th line of page 1 1/2 of the specification as last presented.

Insert the words although not essential after the words "it is desirable" in the 5th line of page 10 of the specification as last presented.

It is believed that the claims as now presented should be allowed.

- 1. The combination with devices for supporting the bulk of a flexible film before and after exposure, of feeding mechanisms located between the devices for supporting the film and separate and distinct therefrom, one of said feeding mechanisms being constructed to uniformly feed the film and produce a pre-determined supply of slack, and the other adapted to intermittently feed the slack across the exposure window.
- 2. The combination with devices for supporting the bulk of the film before and after exposure, of feeding mechanism located between the devices for supporting the film and separate and distinct therefrom, one of said feeding mechanisms being constructed to uniformly feed the film and produce a pre-determined supply of slack, and the other adapted to intermittently feed the slack film across the exposure window, and constructed also to cause the intervals of rest of the film to exceed its intervals of movement.
- 3. The combination with devices which support the bulk of the film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positively driven devices separate and distinct from the film supporting devices, located between them and at opposite sides of the exposure window, and which respectively engage with and accurately and uniformly feed the film, and which respectively produce and take up slack in it, and an intermittently acting device located between said last named devices which intermittently moves

the slackened part of the film across the exposure window.

- 4. The combination with devices which support the bulk of a flexible strip or film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positively driven devices separate and distinct from the film supporting devices apparate and distinct from the film supporting devices and which engage the film and accurately compel its movement, and which feed the film by uniform and continuous rotary action, and an intermittently acting device located between said last named devices and which moves the slackened part of the film picture by picture across the exposure window and causes its period of rest to exceed its period of movement.
- 5. The combination with devices which support the bulk of a flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positively driven devices separate and distinct from the film supporting devices and located between them at opposite sides of the exposure window, and which engage the film and accurately insure its feeding, which last named devices respectively produce and take up slack in the film, and an intermittently acting device provided with teeth which engage in holes in the film whereby it feeds the film across the exposure opening.
- 6. The combination with devices which support the bulk of a flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of a positively driven device entirely disconnected from the said film supporting devices

-16-

located between the film supplying device and the exposure window and which produces a loop of slack film, and an intermittently acting device which engages with the film and feeds the slackened part of it across the exposure window, and causes its period of rest to exceed its period of movement.

- 7. The combination with a flexible strip or film Sub D' having continuous rows of equally spaced holes in its opposite edges, and devices which support the bulk of the film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positively driven rotary devices located between and entirely disconnected from said supporting devices and at opposite sides of the exposure window, and which are provided with teeth arranged to accurately engage in the holes in the film and which respectively produce and take up slack in it, and an intermittently acting rotary feeding device also provided with teeth which accurately engage with the holes in the film whereby the rilm is intermittently fed across the exposure opening.
 - 8. The combination with two reels which support the bulk of a flexible film, one of which supplies it for exposure and the other receives it after exposure, of a positively driven device separate and distinct from the said reels and located between the supply reel and the exposure window and which produces a loop of slack film, and an intermittently acting device likewise positively driven which moves the film picture by picture into the optical axis at the exposure window and causes each picture to

remain momentarily at rest in the optical axis.

- 9. The combination with two rotary reels which support the bulk of a flexible film, one of which supplies the film for exposure and the other coils it up after exposure, of two rotary feeding mechanisms located between said reels and separate and distinct from them, one constructed to feed the film intermittently and cause it to move picture by picture across the axis of the lens and to come to rest in said axis, the other constructed to feed the film continuously and uniformly and thus provide a constant supply of slack film and gearing positively connecting the said two feeding mechanisms for maintaining a fixed relation between them.
- provided with a series of holes, of two rotary reels which support the bulk of the film, one of which supplies the film for exposure and the other receives it after exposure, of two rotary feeding rollers located between said film supporting reels and separate and distinct therefrom, each provided with teeth for engaging the holes in the film, actuating mechanism and connecting gearing between said feeding rollers which positively actuates one of the feeding rollers so as to feed the film intermittently and cause its interval of rest to acceed its interval of motion, and which also positively actuates the other feeding roller continuously and thus provides a constant supply of slack film.

11. The combination with the main shaft provided with a broken gear mounted in eccentric bearings and a feed drum whose shaft is provided with a broken gear which meshes with the first named broken gear, of means for adjusting said bearings to regulate the contact between said gears.

per D

12. The combination with the supporting standards and proted frames 57, 58, each provided with rollers, of tooth drum 39 and roller 55 between which the rollers of one of said frames normally rests, and toothed drums 46, 50 between which the rollers of the other frame normally rests, and means for imparting continuous motion to drums 39 and 46 and intermittent motion to drum 50, and a picture bearing strip adapted to engage with said drums and rollers.

Dated New York, July 16th, 1902.

Phillips Abbott.
Attorney for Applicant

9-800.

DIV. ROOL 2217.

R. L. L.

Paper-No. 16 Letter.

All communications respecting this
should give the social number

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

Woodville Latham,

WASHINGTON, D. C., July 30, 1902.

and the same of th

MATLED " "

C/o Poster & Freeman,

931-F Street, N. W.,

Washington, D. C.

Please find below a communication from the EXAMINER in charge of your application.
593,747,filed June 1, 1896, Apparatus for Projecting on a Screen
Pictures of Moving Objects.

F. I. Allen.

This action is in response to applicant's amendment filed July 18, 1902.

The title of invention should be changed to Projecting Kineto-scope.

Claims 7, 10, and 12 are objectionable for the reason that the film, which is the thing operated upon and which forms no permanent part of the apparatus, but is supplied by the user, is made a positive element of the combinations. The claims should be amended to set forth the apparatus as adapted to carry and feed the film, but the film itself should not be made a positive element.

Upon reconsideration it is held that, in view of the interference proceedings in this case, and in view of the changes which have been made in the claims by the last amendment, they may, as at present advised, be allowed, if amendment be made as above indicated. H.L.P.

E L Chapman

EXAMINER

Serial No. 593,747 Paper No. 17 Amendt D Filed Aug. 2 1902

Claim 7, 10

Application of Woodville Latham

Apparatus for Projecting upon a

Screen Pictures of Moving

Objects.

Room No. 217.

Filed June 1, 1896. Serial No. 593,747

Hon, Commissioner of Patents,

Washington, D. C.

Dear Sir:-

D'

In reply to the official letter of July 30th, 1902 applicant amends as follows:

Substitute the words Projecting Kinetescope, for the title of the invention as it now appears.

Cancel the present 7th and 10th claims and substitute
the following re-written claims with the same numbers,
which are drawn in compliance with the suggestions of the
Examiner:

7. The combination with devices adapted to support the bulk of a flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positively driven toothed rotary devices located between and entirely disconnected from said supporting devices and at opposite sides of the exposure window, said toothed devices being adapted to carry and feed the flexible film by the engagement of their teeth with equally spaced holes made in the edges of the film and to respectively produce and take up slack in the

film, and an intermittently acting rotary feeding device also provided with teeth which engage with the holes in the film, whereby the film is intermittently fed across the exposure opening.

D2

to support the bulk of a flexible film, one of which supplies the film for exposure and the other receives it after exposure, of two toothed rotary feeding rollers located between said film supporting reels and separate and distinct therefrom and adapted to carry and feed the film by the engagement of their teeth with equally spaced holes in the edges of the film, actuating mechanism and connecting gearing between said feeding rollers which positively actuates one of the feeding rollers so as to feed the film intermittently and cause its interval of rest to exceed its interval of motion and which positively actuates also the other feeding roller continuously and thus provides a constant supply of slack film.

Cancel the 12th claim. Since this claim relates merely to details of construction, applicant does not care to further delay the issuance of the case by any further consideration of it, and therefore cancels it.

Having complied with the suggestions of the Office, allowance is respectfully requested.

Dated New York, August 1, 1902.

Phillips Abbott

**Attorney for Applicant.

a Division. 2—181. Serial No. 593,747	
continue should be addressed to Commissioner of Patents, Washington, D. G." DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR,	
Washington, D. C., Aug. 6 201, 1962 Woodville Latham Assor	1
Washington, D. C., Aug. 68, 1902	9
Woodville Latham Assor	lection.
c/o Poster. & Freeman City	at to the co
<u> </u>	400
SIR:—Your APPLICATION for a paint of an IMPROVEMENT IN Projecting inetoscopes	i
The state of the s	1
	1
The final fee. Twenty Dollars, may be paid, and the latters Patent bear date as of a day not inter than SIX MONTHS from the time of this present notice of allowance. If the final fee is not paid with that period the patent will be withhold, and your only relief will be by a renewal of the application, with individual feez, under the prevaience of Section 4697, Benised Statistic. The Office aims to deliver patenthagen the day of their date, and on which their term begins to re to to de this properly applicants will be expected to pay their fand fees of least TWENTY DAYS prior to the ometission of the six menths, allowed them by law. The printing, photolithographing, and engrousing of the several patent parts, theretory to final signing and coaling, will consume the intercenting time such north will not be deep limit after payment of the measurery free. When you and the final fee you will also sand, DISTRICTLY AND PLAINLY WRITTEM, the name of the INVENTOR ATTILE OF INVENTION AS ABOVE GIVEN, DATE OF ALLOWANCE (which is the date of this circliny), DATE OF FILING, and, if assigned, the RAMES OF THE ASSIGNEES. If you desire to have the patent issue to ASSIGNEES, an assignment containing a REQUEST to the effect, topother with the FEE for recording the same, must be filed in this Office on or before the date of payment of faul fee. After the alternal uncertified copies of the drawings and specifications may be purchased at the prior of the patent uncertified copies of the drawings and specifications may be purchased at the prior of the patent uncertified copies of the drawings and specifications may be purchased at the prior of the patent uncertified copies of the drawings and specifications may be purchased at the prior of the patent uncertified copies of the drawings and specifications may be purchased at	- If payment is made by oheo

After allowance, and prior to payment of the final for, applicants should exceptly corutinate.

The description to see that their statements and imagings are correct, as missakes not inscribe, through the fault of the office, and not afferding logal grounds for releases, will not be convoided after the delivery of the letters patent to the patenties or his agent.

AROTOR	RECEIVED
VECTOR	LEGIT ATO

2-397.

CHIEF CLERK MEMORANDUM

FEE PAID AT UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

(Be careful to give correct Serial No.)

Serial No.	593 747	198
INVENTOR:		
	Woodville Latham	
		*
PATENT TO BE ISSUED TO		
NAME OF INVENTION, AS	ALLOWED:	**********************
	Projecting Kinetoscope	e
DATE OF PAYMENT:		1
	August 7 - 1902	
FEE:		
***************************************	\$2000	
DATE OF FILING:		
*******************************	/ June 1 - 1896	
DATE OF CIRCULAR OF AL		****************
*******************************	August 6, - 1902	
	stents will please apply the accompanying fee as indicated ab	
	Poster & Freeman	
		Attorney,
SEND PATENT TO	Box 93 Issue Div	

In the matter of the patent to Woodville Latham, No. 707,934, dated August 26th, 1902, assigned to E. & H. T. Anthony & Company by mesne as-. signments.

Hon, Commissioner of Patents,

Washington, D. C.

Dear Sir:-

Under the provisions of Rule 170 I respectfully request a certificate of error as provided in that rule, to be officially made and attached to the records and to the copies of the patent issued from the Office. The original patent will be returned for the attachment of thecertificate thereto as soon as action shall be taken upon this petition.

This petition is presented because the patent as issued is not in accord with the record for that:

At line 47, page 3, the numeral 59 should appear immediately after the words "the removable rods";

At line 61, page 3, the word below should be substituted for the word "above";

At lines 2 and 3, page 4, the word actuates should be substituted for the word "actuated";

At line 21, page 5, the words to the should be substituted for the word "and.

Dated New York, August 28th, 1902.

Phillips Abbott Attorney for Applicant. Woodville Latham and for B & H. T. Anthony & Co the assignees.

1418

In the matter of the patent to Woodville Latham, No. 707,934, dated August 25th, 1902, assigned to B. & H. T. Anthony & Company by mesne assignments.

Hon. Commissioner of Patents,

Washington, D. C.

Dear Sir:-

Under the provisions of Rule 170 I respectfully request a certificate of error as provided in that rule, to be officially made and attached to the records and to the copies of the patent issued from the Office. The original patent will be returned for the attachment of the certificate thereto as soon as action shall be taken upon this petition.

This petition is presented because the patent as issued is not in accord with the record for that:

At line 47, page 3, the numeral 59 should appear immediately after the words "the removable rods";

At line 51, page 3, the word below should be substituted for the word "above";

At lines 2 and 3, page 4, the word actuates should be substituted for the word "actuated";

At line 21, page 5, the words to the should be substituted for the word "and.

Dated New York, August 28th, 1902.

Phillips Abbott
Attorney for Applicant.
Woodville Latham
& for E. & H. F Anthony & Co
the assignees

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR, UNITED STATES PATRET OFFICE, WASHINGTON, D. C.

SEPTEMBER 3, 1902.

HON F.I.ALLEN,

COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS.

Sir:

In the matter of Letters Patent No.707,934,issued August 26, 1902,upon the application of Woodville Latham, for an improvement in Projecting-Kinetoscopes, the attorney alleges certain departures from copy as follows:

lst: In line 47, page 3, the numeral "59" should appear after the words "the removable rods."

2nd: In line 61, page 3, the word "above" should read below.

3rd: In lines 2 and 3, page 4, the word "actuated" should read actuates.

4th: In line 21, page 5, the word "and" should read to the.

A careful examination of the papers in the case shows that the printer followed the copy in every instance. The copy is in an amendment filed January 22, 1902, bearing the heading "Rewritten Specification and Claims as of January 17,1902" and is signed "Phillips Abbott, Atty for Applet, Jany 20,1902" and is plainly type-written.

The attorney asks for a certificate of correction under the provisions of Rule 170. The papers in the case are respectfully submitted for instructions.

Very respectfully,

S. W Pool

Acting Chief Issue and Gazette Division.

111

Department of the Interior, United States Patent Office, Washington, D. C.

September 4, 1902.

Mr. Phillips Abbott, 206 Broadway,

New York, N. Y.

Sir:

Your letter of the 28th ultimo is received, calling attention to certain alleged errors in the printed specification of the patent to Woodville Latham, No. 707,934, and asking that a certificate correcting them be endorsed upon the patent, under Rule 170. An examination of the record shows that the patent does not depart from the record in the respects indicated by you, but is a correct copy of the re-written specification filed by you on January 22, 1902. Your request must therefore be denied.

F. I. Allen.

Respectfully,

. 112

Commissioner.

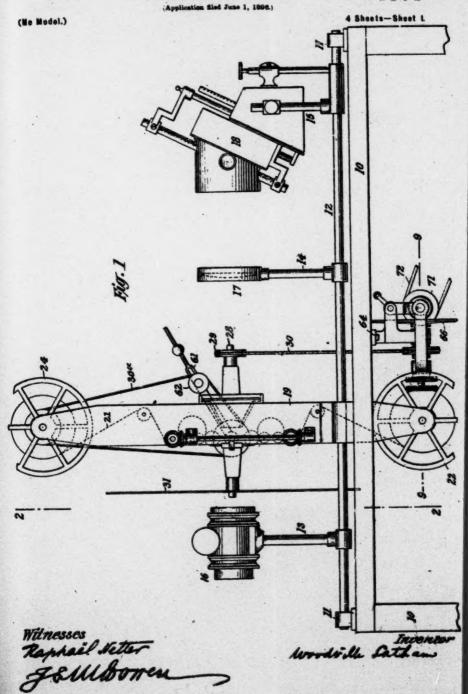
No. 707,934.

Patented Aug. 26, 1902.

W. LATHAM.

PROJECTING KINETOSCOPE.

421



No. 707,934.

Patented Aug. 26, 1902.

W. LATHAM.

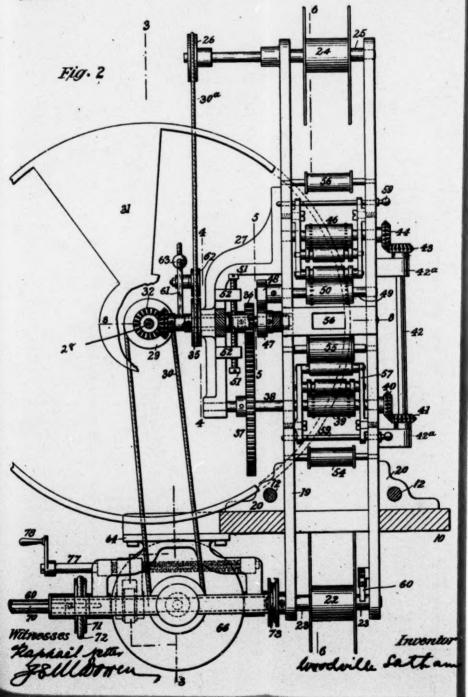
PROJECTING KINETOSCOPE.

Application filed June 1, 1898.)

: 423

(No Model.)

4 Sheets-Sheet 2.

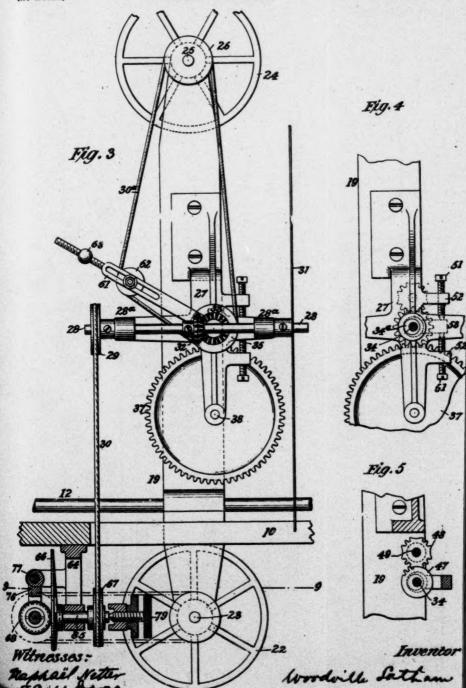


W. LATHAM.

PROJECTING KINETOSCOPE.

timb Kine (USCUPE.

(No Model.)



No. 707,934.

Patented Aug. 26, 1902.

W. LATHAM.

PROJECTING KINETOSCOPE.

14:0

(Application filed June 1, 1898.) 4 Shoots-Shoot 4. (Ne Model.) Fig. 7 25 24 26 Fig.9 020 Woodville Patham

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

WOODVILLE LATHAM, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR, BY MESNE ASSIGN-MENTS, TO E. & H. T. ANTHONY & CO., OF NEW YORK, N. Y., A COR-PORATION OF NEW YORK.

PROJECTING-KINETOSCOPE.

SPECIFICATION forming part of Letters Patent No. 707,934, dated August 23, 1902. Application fled June 1, 1898. Serial No. 593,747. (No model.)

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, WOODVILLE LATHAM, a citizen of the United States, and a resident of New York, in the county and State of New 5 York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Projecting-Kinetoscopes, of which the following is a specification.

The present invention has reference to apparatus for projecting successively and at to frequent intervals on a screen or other plane surface an extended series of photographs of moving objects, whereby the movement of the objects may be accurately exhibited.

The purpose of the invention is to provide is an apparatus capable of continuously projecting or exhibiting upon a suitable surface a great number of pictures taken from moving objects and arranged upon a strip or film of great length, whereby each picture in the so strip is brought to rest at the moment of projection, so that there is given to the eye an impression of objects in motion in a manner

now well understood,

In an apparatus organized so that the picously and uninterruptedly across the optical axis a light of very high intensity is necessary to give satisfactory results; but a light of such power is not required for satisfactory so projection by means of an apparatus embodying the principle of the present invention. The stoppage of each picture during its exposure permits the requisite quantity of light to pass through the condenser, the picture, 35 and the objective to the screen or plane surface upon which the image is projected when the light employed is only of a moderatelyhigh power.

The invention therefore consists in an apto paratus for projecting successively a large number of pictures of moving objects, embodying, among other things, means for bring-ing each picture to rest at the moment of projection, means for reducing the strain the 45 picture-film would otherwise suffer from the rapid interruption and renewal of its movement, and means for maintaining uniformity of movement of the film as it unwinds from the delivering-reel and as it winds upon the

receiving-reel, all as set forth in the claims 50 at the end of this specification.

In the accompanying drawings, which form part of this description, one form of apparatus embodying the invention is illustrated.

In the drawings like features are designated 55 in theseveral figures by like numerals of refer-

Figure 1 is a side elevation of the appara-Fig. 2 is a cross-section on the line 2 2 of Fig. 1, partly broken away. Fig. 3 is a 60 section on broken line 3 3 of Fig. 2 looking Fig. 4 is a fragmentary toward the machine. section on line 4 4 of Fig. 2. Fig. 5 is a similar section on the line 5 5 of Fig. 2. Fig. 6 is a vertical section through the machine, show- 65 ing the slack in the film, taken on the line 66 of Fig. 2. Fig. 7 is a similar section showing the devices for pressing the film into contact with the guide-rollers and drums thrown out of action. Fig. 8 is a sectional view on the 7c line 8 8 of Fig. 2; and Fig. 9 is a section on the line 9 9 of Figs. 1 and 3 through the power-transmitting appliances, showing the relation of the parts when winding back the

film to the delivering-reel.

The several parts of the apparatus may be mounted upon an optical bench (indicated in the drawings at 10) of any convenient design. At the ends of the bench 10 are the brackets 11, furnishing supports for the pair of longi-tudinal rods 12, upon which are mounted the standards 13 14 15, said standards being bifurcated to connect with the rods 12. standard 13 supports a projecting-lens or an ordinary objective 16, which may be readily 8 adjusted to bring it in proper relation to the picture being projected, and standard 14 supports the condensing lens or lenses 17, while the standard 15 supports the lamp 18, which in this instance is shown as a focusing are: lamp. The lamp 18 is preferably adjustable on its support both vertically and laterally, and the standards for the condensing-lens and the lamp are so constructed that they may be adjusted longitudinally on the rods 9
12 so as to obtain the proper relative relation
between the lamp and the condenser and the
condenser and the picture-strip. The mech-

anism for supporting and propelling the shutter and the picture-bearing strip is arranged above and below the optical bench 10 on standards 19, which extend vertically above s the bench and for a short distance beneath and are braced by the brackets 20, which also furnish bearings for the longitudinal rods 12, as seen in Fig. 2. The picture-bearing strip or film, which may be of any desired length to without in any way affecting the operation of the machine, is indicated at 21 in the sev-It is wound upon the deliveringreel 22, the shaft of which, 23, is journaled in the lower ends of the standards 19. 15 ceiving-reel 24 is similarly mounted at the top of standards 19, its shaft 25 having bearings in said standards and being extended at one side beyond the standard to receive a pulley 26 for the belt 30°, transmitting the motion of the driving-shaft to the receivingreel. The function of these two reels is merely to support the bulk of the film while successive sections of it are subjected to the feeding and exposing mechanism. One of 25 the reels supplies the film for exposure, and the other coils up and takes care of the film after exposure. The picture-bearing strip 21 is conducted through and over its guiding and controlling mechanism, mounted in stand-30 ards 19, and secured to the hub of reel 24. The said strip when in the position it is caused to assume when the apparatus is projecting has two slack sections contiguous to the sprocketed feed-drums for the purposes 35 presently explained. To one side of the standards 19 there is fixed a bracket 27, in which the main shaft 28 is mounted in bearings 26°. At one end of this At one end of this shaft 28 there is keyed a pulley 29 to receive 40 the driving-belt 30, and at its opposite end is fixed the hub of the shutter 31. On the main shaft 28 is keyed the bevel-gear 32, which meshes with a bevel-gear 33, fixed to the end of shaft 34, which revolves in bearings 34° in 45 bracket 27 and adjacent standard 19, the revolution of the shaft 28 being thereby transmitted to shaft 34. The shaft 34 has keyed to it a pulley 35, which receives the belt 30°. transmitting motion to the receiving - reel, 50 and it has also keyed to it the small gearwheel 36, which engages with the large goar-wheel 37, keyed to shaft 38, having bearings in bracket 27 as well as in standards 19, said shaft carrying the toothed drum 39 and hav-55 ing keyed to its outer end a bevel-gear 40, which meshes with another bevel-gear 41, fixed to the upright shaft 42, supported in brackets 42° on standard 19, and having at its upper and a bevel-gear 43, which meshes with a like 60 gear 44 on the end of shaft 45, which carries a toothed drum 46 and has bearings in stan-1ards 19. By this mechanism the toothed drums 39 and 46 are caused to revolve continuously at a uniform rate when power is com-65 municated to the main shaft 28. It is obvious

that other forms of gearing may be employed

to drive said toothed drums 39 and 46 in unison. Shaft 34 has also keyed to it broken gear 47, Fig. 5, which is adapted to engage with a broken gear 48, fixed to shaft 49, having bearings and standards 19 and carrying a toothed drum 50. The gear 48 on the shaft of drum 50 is provided with a series of four toothed sections and a series of four plain sections, the surfaces of the latter being made to conform to the toothless portion of the circumference of the broken gear 47, so that while the gear 47 revolves continuously it intermeshes with gear 48 only momentarily as it completes each revolution, moving the gear 48 intermittently, and thus producing momentary stoppage of the drum 50 once with each complete revolution of shaft 34. moment of stoppage of the drum 50 the smooth surfaces of the gears are in sliding contact and remain so until the shaft 31 completing another revolution the teeth of the two gears again intermesh, revolving the drum 50 onefourth of a revolution, and so on continuously, said drum momentarily stopping as the picture-bearing strip is moved through the apparatus the length of one picture, thus bringing each picture to rest at the moment of projection, and hence in a device of the construction described the period of rest of the film is four times greater than its period of movement. To prevent any vibration of the picture at the moment of projection, the smooth surfaces of the broken gears 47 and 48 should preferably be held in close sliding contact, and with this end in view the bear-ings 34* 34* (see Figs. 4, 5, and 8) of the shaft 34 are made eccentric, so that by means of the adjusting-screws 51 51, passing through lugs 52 on bracket 27 and bearing at their points on opposite sides of the yoke 53, connected to or formed with said bearings, the shaft 34 may be slightly raised or lowered, as required. This mode of adjustment has been found in practice to be efficient and to satisfactorily answer the purposes intended. Because of the rapid interruption and re-

sumption of the movement of the picture-film it is necessary to provide means for reducing the strain on the same to prevent its being I ruptured by the teeth of the sprocket-drum 50, which actuates or feeds the film intermittently by engaging in holes at its edges, and it is also necessary or desirable to provide means for maintaining uniformity of tension a of the film as it unwinds from the deliveringreel and winds upon the receiving-reel. The manner whereby these objects are effected

will now be described.

The numerals 54, 55, and 56 indicate rollers 13 for supporting and guiding the picture-bearing strip? i and are arranged to freely revolve on fixed shafts supported in the standards 19. The picture-bearing strip or film 21, which has photographically produced upon it a se- 13 ries of pictures representing the successive stages or positions of the moving object or objects to be reproduced, is conducted from the delivering-reel 22 over the guide-roller 54, toothed or sprocketed drum 39; guide-roller 55, past exposure-window 56°, which is at tached to the standards 19 in the line of the optical axis of the apparatus, toothed drums 50 and 46, and guide-roller 56 to the receiving-reel 24, to the hub of which its end is secured. The strip or film is perforated at regular intervals along its lateral edges to correspond exactly with the sprocket-like teeth arranged on the circumference of the drums 39, 46, and 50, near their ends, respectively.

In Fig. 6 the parts of the mechanism for controlling and guiding the picture-bearing strip or film, as well as the strip itself, are in position for projecting, and in Fig. 7 the parts are shown in the position they are made to assume when the picture-bearing strip is beging wound back from the receiving to the de-

livering reel.

8;

To secure the necessary engagement between the picture-bearing strip 21 and the feeding-drume 39, 46, and 50, so that the strip may be fed or moved with greater accuracy and certainty, the frames 57 and 58, pivoted, as shown, to the standards 19, are provided, and they are supplied with the freely-revolving rollers 57° and 58°. (See Fig. 7.) The rollers 58', carried by frame 58, are adapted to cooperate with the toothed drums 46 and 50, and they have circumferentially near their ends grooves, as shown in Fig. 2, to receive the teeth or sprockets of said feed drums g when the frame is fixed in the position it occupies when the apparatus is projecting, and the rollers 57° of frame 57, one of which cooperates with toothed drum 39, are similarly constructed for the same reason, the upper a roller 57°, which coacts with the toothless guide-roller 55, being grooveless on its cir-cumference. The frames 57 58 are held in the two positions which they are adapted to occupy, as in Fig. 6 when projecting or as in 4 Fig. 7 when the picture-bearing strip is released so as to be wound back from the upper to the lower reel by the removable rods which pass through suitable holes in the standards 19 and engage with the ends of the frames, as shown in Figs. 6 and 7. When in the position shown in Fig. 6, the rollers carried by frame 57 are between the sprocket-drum 39 and the guide-roller 55, while the rollers car-ried by frame 58 are between the sprocket-35 drums 46 and 50. Within the planes occupied by the two sets of rollers 57° and 58° when the apparatus is adjusted for projecting-i. e., when in operation-the film or picture-bearing strip 21 is thrown out in the form to of a loop, as shown at 21° 21°, one of these slack portions being at one time above win-dow 56° and the other at another time above The extent of each of said slack portions is preferably that of the height of a figure or slightly more. It will be understood from the description that follows that the loops of slack below and above the ex-

posure-window are alternately thrown out and then taken up by the operation of the sprocket-drums, respectively, and that they 70 produce and take up the slack by their own positive action entirely independent of the film-supporting reels at the extremes of the apparatus. In the operation of the machine the rollers 57° 58° hold the strip in proper 75 contact with the respective feed-drums and guide-roller 55, as will be understood from Fig. 6, and insure proper contact between the strip and the respective drums. The pic-ture-bearing strip is carried through the ap- &c paratus with great rapidity, and because of the rapid interruption and resumption of its movement it would not be possible for the strip to withstand the strain brought upon it for any considerable time if there were not 85 provision made for the slacks in the film, as just explained. The instant each picture of the strip is brought in the line of the optical axis the toothless surfaces of the broken gears 47 48 are in sliding contact, their re- 90 spective cogs being out of engagement, with the effect of causing stoppage of revolution of the toothed drum 50 and consequent momentary stoppage of the film between said toothed drum 50 and the toothless roller 55 95 beneath the optical axis; but the revolution of shaft 38 being continuous the toothed drums 39 and 46, which latter is positively geared from said shaft, as explained, also revolve continuously, taking up the slack 21 100 between toothed drums 46 and 50 and also replacing the slack 21° between toothed drum 39 and roller 55, thus restoring the slack 21°, to be again taken up when the broken gears 47 48 again momentarily intermesh. It will 105 thus be seen that as the slack 21° is taken up at the moment of stoppage of the toothed drum 50 the slack 21° is simultaneously being restored, and this action is continuous and positive and independent of the other 110 parts of the machine while the operation of projection is going on. There is therefore but little, if any, additional strain on the film There is therefore incident to the rapid interruption and resumption of its movement through the appa- 115

The construction and operation of the devices which produce and take up the loops of slack film and also those which intermittingly feed or, so to speak, "jerk" the film from 120 picture to picture across the exposure-window or axis of the lens form an exceedingly important part of this invention. It will be noted that they are entirely separate and distinct from the reels which support the 125 weight of the bulk of the film and which are consequently relatively heavy, so that the length and consequent weight of the film may be indefinitely extended without affecting the operation of the machine. The intermittingly-feeding devices, on the other hand, which comprise only the broken gear 48 and the feed-drum 50 with its shaft, srevery light, and consequently have very little

inertia, and since also the small portion of the film which this part of the apparatus ac-tuated has scarcely any weight these parts will instantly stop and start with great ra-5 pidity and with a minimum of strain or jar upon the mechanism and with the least possible wear on the holes for the sprocket-teeth in the film, and in order that the slack may be formed and the intermittent movements 10 across the optical axis effected with accuracy and certainty it is desirable, although not essential, that the rollers which effect these

movements be provided with the sprocket-teeth shown or their equivalent, so that they 15 may positively engage with the film and positively move it without the possibility of any slipping, which is apt to occur when fric-tional contact alone is relied on, because such

slipping will preclude proper registration be-so tween the picture and the optical axis. In order that these parts may operate as de-scribed, it is essential that the loop of slack film be maintained at all times ready for the intermittingly-acting device and also that 25 the slack-manipulating and the intermittingly-moving devices be positively driven by

mechanism which will absolutely insure the presence of the slack and the accurate movement of the film. The reason these parts and 30 their arrangement and method of operation are such important and valuable features of the invention is because their action is necessarily exceedingly rapid, and if the inter-

mittingly-feeding mechanism were heavy, so 35 as to have much inertia, or if any considerable portion of the film or either of the reels which support it were stopped and started at each transition from picture to picture there would be such strain brought to bear on the

40 sprocket-holes in the film as would speedily tear it adjacent to such holes, thus ruining it and since these films are expensive, a good one being capable of making large profits for its owner, any means which will prolong their

45 life is of great value in this art.

Another feature peculiar to my invention and one which distinguishes it from certain other apparatus is the important fact that the intermitting feed devices and the slack-50 former being entirely separate and distinct from the other parts are alone relied upon for securing accurate registration of the successive pictures with the axis of the projecting-lens. The supply and coiling reels at 55 the extremes of the machine may operate with only substantial accuracy and still the results will be satisfactory, because they have nothing to do except to properly support and take care of the film, supplying it at one side 60 and taking it away at the other. The intermitting feed devices and the slack-producing devices, on the other hand, which lie between the two reels and immediately adjacent to the exposure-window, control and manipu-65 late that special and limited part of the film which is at that instant relied upon for the

easy matter to accomplish exactness in ones. ation when this part of the mechanism is separate and distinct from the other.

Uniformity of tension of the film as it unwinds from the delivering-reel, to prevent the film from buckling and insure its proper entrance to the apparatus, is secured by any suitable friction device applied to the shaft 23 of said reel. In the drawings is shown a metallic strap with an adjusting-screw for this purpose. This friction device is indi-

cated by 60.

The rate of winding of the picture-bearing strip upon the receiving-reel is regulated by automatically controlling the revolution of the reel by means of the idler 61, which is shown loosely journaled on shaft 34. The idler is provided with a slot, as shown, in which is adjustably fixed roller 62, and around this roller is passed the belt 30°. By adjusting roller 62 in the slot the pressure on the belt is varied. As the reel 24 becomes larger by the winding of the film thereon the idle may be manipulated to loosen the belt 3 and to cause it to slip on pulley 26 of the This slipping is or may be a reel-shaft. continuous one from beginning to end of the operation of the machine, but it is such a gentle slipping that no appreciable heat is produced and no appreciable wearing of the belt. The outer end of the idler is screwthreaded and provided with a weight 63, by means of which a nicer adjustment of the pressure exerted by the idler is obtained. By this means the rate of revolution of the receiving-reel is automatically maintained in proper correspondence with that of the feed-drum 46.

The shutter 31, carried by the shaft 28, has but a small solid section. Its use is to cover the film during the interval of movement of

each picture.

The power may be imparted to the main a shaft 28 through a friction regulating and controlling appliance attached to the bottom of the optical bench by means of the bracket 64. In this bracket is journaled the shaft 65, carrying at one end a friction-plate 66 and n having keyed to its opposite end a pulley 67, adapted to receive the belt 30, which passes over pulley 29 on the main shaft 28. tion-plate 66 cooperates with a friction-roller 68, keyed to shaft 69, the said shaft having a longitudinal groove 70 and being provided with pulley 71, receiving the belt 72 to the motor, and also with pulley 73, adapted to receive belt 74, (see Fig. 9,) which is made use of to transmit the power of the motor to the delivering-reel when winding back the film from the receiving-reel, the shaft of said reel being provided with pulley 75 to receive said belt. The pulleys 71 and 73 are con-nected to shaft 69 by feathers entering the 9 groove of said shaft, as shown in Fig. 9, so that while these pulleys cannot turn on the shaft the shalt can be moved through the desired results, and it is a comparatively hubs of the pulleys, which is done when ad707,984

justing the friction-roller 68 with relation to the friction-plate 66. The hub of the frictionroller is connected by an arm 76, having a screw-threaded sleeve through which passes screw-threaded shaft 77, supported in bracket 64 and adapted to be turned by crank 78 to permit the adjustment of the friction-roller toward or from the center of the friction-plate to increase or diminish the rate of speed of the friction-plate shaft 65 in a manner well understood, the rate of speed of the main shaft 28, connected to the friction-plate shaft 65 through belt 30, being thus determined and regulated as desired. The pressure of the friction-plate 66 against the friction-roller 68 is regulated by means of the milled-head screw 79, the point of which enters a depres-sion in the end of the friction-plate shaft, as shown in Fig. 3. In Fig. 9 the friction-speedregulating appliances are shown adjusted for winding back the film from the receiving and delivering reel, the friction-roller 68 having been shifted across the center of the friction-plate so as to reverse the revolution of thes shaft 65. When winding back the film, the pulleys 73 and 75 are connected by belt 74 and the frames 57 58 are swnng back, as shown in Fig. 7, so as to relieve the film of all binding tension.

The reels may be of size suitable to carry any length of picture-bearing strip that may

In operating the apparatus power is transmitted from the motor (not shown) by belt 72 g and through friction-plate shaft by belt 30 to main shaft 28 of the apparatus. The operamain shaft 28 of the apparatus. The opera-tion of the gearing and the manner in which the teeth of the feed-drums engage the perforations in the edges of the picture-bearing strip and move it from the delivering to the receiving reel and across the opening 56 in the line of the optical axis of the apparatus, with a momentary stoppage of the film crossing the optical axis as the central portion of as each picture is brought in the line of the optical axis, will all be understood from the pre-Whenever the central ceding description. portion of a picture is in the line of the opti-cal axis and the picture comes to rest, the light so will pass simultaneously through the condensing-lens, through the picture, and through the objective outward to the screen or other The light of course must be plane surface. o adjusted as to cover the whole of the pic-15 ture. The pictures are projected successively with such great rapidity, each succeeding picture showing a slightly-advanced stage of motion, that the effect on the eye of the observer is exactly the same as if a moving ob-

6 ject or objects were being looked at directly.

It is to be understood that many of the mere details of the apparatus berein described may be varied without departing from the principle of my invention—as, for example, 65 while the mechanism shown and described for forming the slack in the film and causing located between them at opposite sides of the the picture-bearing strip to travel in such exposure-window, and which engage the film

manner that there is a real stoppage of the film as each picture is presented in the line of the optical axis is the form and character 70 preferred by me, it is obvious that the principle of the invention may be retained with differently-organized gearing and the employment of other appliances than those shown and described.

Having described my invention, I claim as

1. The combination with devices for supporting the bulk of a flexible film before and after exposure of feeding mechanisms located 80 between the devices for supporting the film and separate and distinct therefrom, one of said feeding mechanisms being constructed to uniformly feed the film and produce a predetermined supply of slack, and the other 85 adapted to intermittently feed the slack across

the exposure-window.

2. The combination with devices for supporting the bulk of the film before and after exposure, of feeding mechanisms located be- 90 tween the devices for supporting the film and separate and distinct therefrom, one of said feeding mechanisms being constructed to uniformly feed the film and produce a predetermined supply of slack, and the other adapt- 95 ed to intermittently feed the slack film across the exposure-window, and constructed also to cause the intervals of rest of the film to exceed its intervals of movement.

3. The combination with devices which sup- 100 port the bulk of the film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of posi-tively-driven devices separate and distinct from the film-supporting devices, located between them and at opposite sides of the ex- 105 posure-window, and which respectively engage with and accurately and uniformly feed the film, and which respectively produce and take up slack in it, and an intermittently-acting device located between said last-named 110 devices which intermittently moves the slackened part of the film across the exposurewindow.

4. The combination with devices which support the bulk of a flexible strip or film and 115 supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positively-driven devices separate and distinct from the film-supporting devices and which engage the film and accurately compel its movement, and which feed the film 120 by uniform and continuous rotary action, and an intermittently-acting device located be-tween said last-named devices and which moves the slackened part of the film picture by picture across the exposure-window and 125 causes its period of rest to exceed its period

of movement. 5. The combination with devices which support the bulk of a flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of 130 positively-driven devices separate and distinct from the film-supporting devices and

and accurately insure its feeding, which lastnamed devices respectively produce and take up slack in the film, and an intermittently-acting device provided with teeth which engage 5 in holes in the film whereby it feeds the film

across the exposure-opening.

6. The combination with devices which support the bulk of a flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of

to a positively-driven device entirely disconnected from the said film-supporting devices located between the film-supplying device and the exposure-window and which produces a loop of slack film, and an intermittently-act-15 ing device which engages with the film and

feeds the slackened part of it across the exposure-window, and causes its period of rest

to exceed its period of movement.
7. The combination with devices adapted to so support the bulk of a flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positively-driven toothed rotary devices located between and entirely disconnected from said supporting devices and at opposite sides of the exposure-window, said toothed devices being adapted to carry and feed the flexible film by the engagement of their teeth with equally-spaced holes made in the edges of the film and to respectively produce and take up 30 slack in the film, and an intermittently-acting rotary feeding device also provided with teeth which engage with the holes in the film, whereby the film is intermittently fed across

the exposure-opening. 8. The combination with two reels which support the bulk of a flexible film, one of which supplies it for exposure and the other receives it after exposure, of a positively-driven device separate and distinct from the 40 said reels and located between the supplyreel and the exposure-window and which produces a loop of slack film, and an intermittently - acting device likewise positively driven which moves the film picture by pic-

45 ture into the optical axis at the exposure-window and causes each picture to remain momentarily at rest in the optical axis.

9. The combination with two rotary red which support the bulk of a flexible film, on of which supplies the film for exposure as the other coils it up after exposure, of two tary feeding mechanisms located between mi reels and separate and distinct from them, or constructed to feed the film intermittent and cause it to move picture by picture acro the axis of the lens and to come to rest in an axis, the other constructed to feed the fil continuously and uniformly and thus provide a constant supply of slack film and gearing positively connecting the said two feeding mechanisms for maintaining a fixed relation between them.

10. The combination with two rotary ree adapted to support the bulk of a flexible film one of which supplies the film for exposus and the other receives it after exposure, two toothed rotary feeding-rollers located by tween said film-supporting reels and separa and distinct therefrom and adapted to car and feed the film by the engagement of the teeth with equally-spaced holes in the edge of the film, actuating mechanism and col necting-gearing between said feeding-roller which positively actuates one of the feeding rollers so as to feed the film intermittently an cause its interval of rest to exceed its inter val of motion and which positively actuate also the other feeding - roller continuous and thus provides a constant supply of slac

The combination with the main shall provided with a broken gear mounted in ecentric bearings and a feed-drum whose shall is provided with a broken gear which meshe with the first-named broken gear, of mean for adjusting said bearings to regulate th

contact between said gears.
Signed at New York, in the county au
State of New York, this 25th day of May, 1896

WOODVILLE LATHAM.

Witnesses:

J. E. M. BOWEN, ALEXIS C. SMITH.

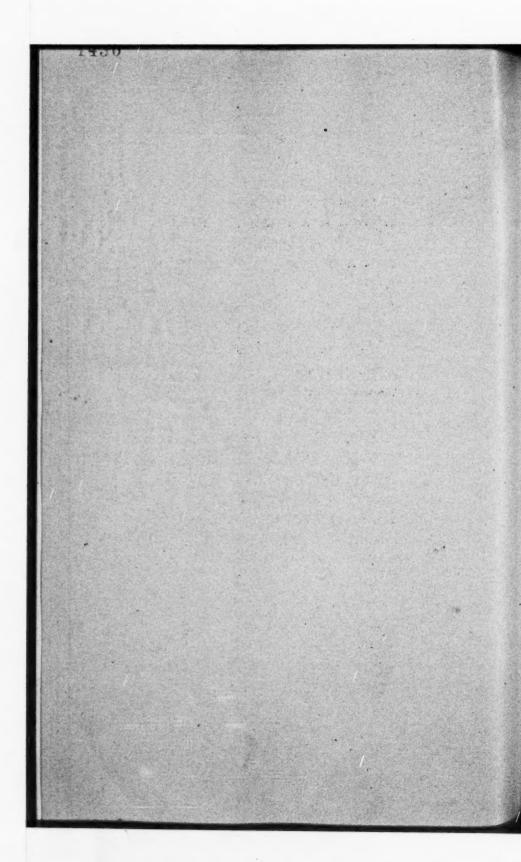
1896

CONTENTS:

- 1/2 Application 1 papers.
 - 1. Rejection July 9, 1896
 - 2. Rev of Power of Atty July 14 '96
 - 3. Notice of Rev. July 18-1896
 - 4. Power of Atty by Assee Dec. 23 '96
 - 5. Notice of Acceptance Dec 24196
 - 6. Interference Jan'y 23d 1897
 - 7. Asso Power of Atty Dec 2, 1899
 7 1/2 Rev Power of Atty Jan'y 18, 1900
 8. Asso Fower of Atty Mch, 23, 1900
 - 9. Amendt A March 23, 1901
 - 10. Power of Att'y Mch 27, 1901
 - 11.Rej. April 12-1901
 - 12.Amendt B Jan 21, 1902
 - 13.Rejection Fee. 18-1902
 - 14. Asso Power of Atty July 18, 1902
 - 15 . Amendt C July 18, 1902
 - 16 .Letter July 30, 1902
 - 17.Amendt D Aug. 2, 1902

TITLE:

Improvement in Projecting
Kinetoscopes



Defendants' Exhibit 45.

4309

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS Co., Complainant,

VS.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE Co. of AMERICA,

Defendant.

In Equity. No. 5-167.

4310

COMPLAINANT'S EXHIBIT.

Decision of Board of Examiners-in-Chief in Armat Interference.

No. 22185.

U. S. Patent Office, Oct. 17, 1899.

Before the examiners-in-chief on appeal.

4311

In the matter of the interference between the application of Woodville Latham, filed June 1, 1896; the application of Herman Casler, filed February 26, 1896, and the application of Thomas Armat, filed February 19, 1896. Interference No. 18461. Improvement in apparatus for projecting on a screen pictures of moving objects.

Mr. J. E. M. Bowen for Latham.

Messrs. E. M. Marble & Sons and John T. Easton for Casler.

Mr. Thomas Armat for himself.

The issue is:

"In a picture-exhibiting apparatus for giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion, the combination with a picture-carrying strip or film, a tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension device, whereby the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film."

4313

This issue is Claim 1 of Armat's application, with the exception that the issue omits the words "substantially as described."

This issue requires that there shall be "means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion." The meaning of this clause, as. we understand it, is that the film shall be intermittently moved from one position of rest to another, the period of time during which the film is at rest exceeding the period of time during which the film is in motion. The issue further requires that this mechanism shall be of such as to permit illumination of the film during the period of rest. It is necessary to have the period of rest in order that a clear image may be projected upon the screen, and it is desirable that this period of rest should be of

4314

relatively considerable length so that the impression upon the eye may be definite enough to cause a persistence of this impression until the next picture is substituted.

In Armat's application the distinction between his device and former devices is well brought out.

"In devices or apparatuses such as have heretofore been devised for exhibiting life-like pictures or producing the appearance of objects in motion, it has been considered most feasible to keep the series of similar pictures 4316 (whether on a disk, tape or other surface) constantly moving at a regulated speed corresponding with the speed at which the pictures were taken, and by means of a shutter or lightobstructing surface to alternately cover and expose the pictures successively in a manner quite similar to the method of exposing the sensitive film or substance in taking the photographs, so as to bring the opening through the shutter centrally over a picture at intervals practically equal to the intervals between exposure in taking the pictures, so that each picture may be seen only when it is in such a position that it will be exactly superposed upon the image not yet (owing to the persistence of vision) faded from the eye. The openings in such shutters which are ordinarily in the form of revolving disks having openings near their circumferences, usually cover but a fractional part of the circumference of the disk, so that a view of the picture is afforded through an interval of time much less than the period of interruption; and as the illuminated pictures and the cloud effect, or darkness of interrup-

tion, caused by the passage of the shutter across the light, are blended or mixed together in the eye of the observer, the darkness continues to impress upon the retina so much longer than the light that the value of the illumination is very greatly diminished and the picture appears to be poorly lighted or blurred.

"In the case of my invention the conditions are quite different, and the results produced are therefore more satisfactory than and su-

4319

perior to anything of the kind heretofore obtained, for the reason that the picture is held a much longer time than is required to remove it and substitute another in its stead, thus prolonging the period of illumination very greatly as compared with the period of interruption or change; and there is no obstruction of the light by the interposition of a shutter or opaque substance across its path; so that the impression of the picture on the eye is so much longer and more permanent than the distortion or shadow effect incident to its movement, and the interval of change or interruption is infinitesimal that the image of the picture is readily retained until displacement and substitution takes

4320

"My invention depends for its successful operation both upon the inability of the eye to receive an impression of movement exceeding

of such motion with life-like effect.

effect, and owing to the inability of the eye to receive an impression from every phase of motion, the interruption or change is wholly imperceptible, and the result is a most vivid appearance of an object in motion, otherwise unchanging, clearly exhibiting all the phases a certain rapidity, and upon that faculty of the eye which enables it to retain an impression after the source of light has vanished—the persistence of vision-which enables me to change the pictures, one for another, imperceptibly. This I accomplish by moving the film or other picture carrying surface intermittently in such manner that the interval of exposure and illumination of the picture shall exceed the interval of time required to effect a change sufficiently to enable the eye to form a perfect impression or image at each exposure and to retain it through the interval of motion or change and until another picture has been superimposed, as it were, upon the one displaced, thus rendering the act or effect of displacement and substitution of pictures wholly imperceptible and giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion.

"Various contrivances and forms of mechanisms may be employed for effecting the intermittent movement, the requirement being that the film or other surface shall be moved quickly between successive pauses far enough to expose 4323 the next succeeding picture in the series."

And again:

"From the foregoing description it will be seen that the pictures are brought successively into an illuminated field, and that each picture is illuminated without interruption from the instant it enters such field until displaced by the next picture in the series, and that the several pictures in the series are successively substituted one for another with such rapidity

that, although the exposed portion of the film or picture-carrying surface is continuously illuminated, the eye receives an impression of the picture which so greatly predominates any possible impression that might be made by the practically instantaneous motion of said film or surface, in substituting picture for picture, that the predominating impression which the eye receives, owing to its inability to receive two impressions at one and the same time, and to the persistence of vision, has the effect of rendering the movement of the film utterly imperceptible, while the successive impressions of different pictures are each retained until another picture in the series is superimposed, as it were, upon the previous impression or picture, thus rendering it possible to produce most vivid and life-like effects without any interruption whatever in the illumination. whether the film is moving or stationary, and without interposing a shutter and thereby causing a shadow or shade effect which reduces the vividness of the impression. But I do not desire to be confined to the use of the invention without a shutter, inasmuch as such a device might be used under some circumstances, as, for instance, when constructed so as to interrupt the illumination only at that instant of time when the film is moving, and without rendering the interruption perceptible to the eye, but for all practical purposes a shutter of any kind is useless and objectionable and is preferably dispensed with."

It will be noted that a device containing a shutter is not excluded by the terms of the issue, but

4325

such device, if containing a shutter, must be so arranged or adjusted that the shutter will permit the illumination of the film through the period of rest and exclude the light only during the period when the film is in motion.

It is further to be noted that the apparatus defined by the issue is a picture exhibiting apparatus for giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion, and is not a photographic camera for the purpose of taking pictures. This kind of a device is frequently referred to in the evidence as a "projecting apparatus." An essential feature of this apparatus is the picture-carrying strip or film, since without such film none of the effects desired can be produced. The film is as essential a part of this apparatus as is the saw in a saw-mill or the form of type in a printing press.

While it is true that a camera for taking pictures may be used as an instrument for projecting pictures by the substitution for the sensitized film of the camera the picture strip of the projecting apparatus and the provision of a proper light and projection apparatus, yet it does not follow that a camera having mechanism for imparting to the film the motion which this issue requires shall be imparted to the picture-carrying strip can necessarily by a reversal such as above indicated be used as a projecting instrument. Even if capable of projecting pictures and giving, to some extent, the semblance of objects in motion, it does not follow that such projection would be satisfactory or fall within the terms of this issue, since unless the shutter were omitted or so adjusted as to provide that the period of illumination of the pictures on the picture-carrying strip were considerably greater than the period of motion, the result in the mechanism

4328

would not be that required by the issue; nor would as satisfactory a result be produced.

While it is true that "the inventor of a machine is entitled to the benefit of all the uses to which it can be put, no matter whether he had conceived the idea of the use or not," as stated by the Supreme Court in Roberts vs. Ryder, 91 U. S., 150, and Miller vs. Eagle Mfg. Co., C. D. 1894, page 147, it is also true as stated by the Supreme Court in Potts vs. Kreager, 70 O. G., 494:

4331

"Indeed, it often requires as acute a perception of the relations between cause and effect and as much of the peculiar intuitive genius which is a characteristic of great inventorsto grasp the idea that a device used in one art may be made available in another-as would be necessary to create the device de nova; and this is not the less true, if, after the thing has been done, it appears to the ordinary mind so simple as to excite wonder that it was not thought of before. The apparent simplicity of a new device often leads an inexperienced person to think that it would have occurred to anyone familiar with the subject, but the decisive answer is that with dozens and perhaps hundreds of others laboring in the same field it had never occurred to any one before. practiced eye of an ordinary mechanic may be safely trusted to see what ought to be apparent to every one.

4332

"As a result of the authorities upon this subject, it may be said that if the new use be so

nearly analogous to the former one that the applicability of the device to its new use would occur to a person of ordinary mechanical skill, it is only a case of double use, but if the relations between them be remote, and especially if the use of the old device produce a new result, it may at least involve an exercise of the inventive faculty. Much, however, must still depend upon the nature of the changes required to adapt the device to its new use."

The remarks of the Court were made with reference to a question of anticipation, a question not in fact the same as that before us.

If Latham with his Exhibit Machine No. 12 and Casler with his Exhibit First Machine, both of which were taking cameras, could without invention have produced a machine of the construction called for by the issue, it is remarkable that they did not do so at any proven date before the filing of their applications.

The evidence shows that neither Latham nor Casler was an ordinary mechanic, but that they were inventors of considerable capacity, and yet neither of them produced a machine having the new and beneficial results which are claimed for the machine described in Armat's application.

It is further to be noted that the Patent Office appears to have recognized the distinction between the cameras for taking pictures and similar apparatuses for exhibiting pictures, as will be seen by comparison of claim 1 of patent No. 586,953, to Jenkins & Armat, patented July 20, 1897, on an application, filed August 28, 1895, for an apparatus for exhibiting pictures, and claim 4 of patent No. 589,168, to Edison, granted August 31, 1897, on

4334

application, filed August 24, 1891, for a kinetographic camera.

The sensitized film of this Edison taking apparatus has precisely the same intermittent motion as the picture-carrying surface described in the claim of Jenkins'-Armat's patent. The examiner properly allowed the claims of both applications, although the applications were pending at the same time, without any interference.

4337

In our opinion proof of the existence of a camera for taking pictures of objects in motion, said camera having in combination with the sensitized film mechanism for giving to the film an intermittent motion in which the periods of pause exceed the periods of motion, said mechanism comprising in addition the other elements called for by the issue and a shutter, is not a reduction to practice of this issue unless there is proof to show that when this camera was used for projecting the shutter was either omitted altogether or was so adjusted as to provide for such relative periods of pause and illumination and periods of motion as are called for by the issue. In our opinion neither Latham nor Casler has proved any such use either of Latham's Exhibit Machine No. 12 or of Casler's Exhibit First Machine.

4338

It is unnecessary to review Latham's testimony in detail. In the view we take of this case it is necessary only to determine what the construction of Latham's Exhibit Machine No. 12 was and when and how it was used, and to make the same inquiry with reference to Casler's machine.

There is much evidence on behalf of Latham himself as to a disclosure of the invention to others, but it is indefinite and is uncorroborated except by general statements that the design of

the machine and a general idea of the same were communicated to the witnesses. It is impossible from their testimony to get any definite information as to just what the disclosure was. The evidence is, however, sufficient, in our opinion, to show that under Latham's directions there was completed about Feb. 27, 1895, a machine in evi dence as Exhibit 12.

There is some evidence on the part of Otway Latham and his brother Gray to show that pictures were photographed and projected some time in January. (See Q22, page 144; Q34, page 145; 4340 Gray Latham, Q21, page 202.) Otway Latham testifies:

"Q31. Where did you obtain the film used in that operation?

A. From Mr. W. K. L. Dickson.

Q32. Was it adapted to the machine?

A. As constructed at that time, Later we made the sprocket wheels wider so we might use larger films. .

Q33. What do you mean by larger films in the answer just given?

A. The film that Mr. Dickson gave me was an inch and three-eighths in width. The film that we afterwards used was two inches in width."

4341

They seem to be in error as to the date, however, because Kleinert testifies that the photographing of a swinging incandescent lamp about February 26th to 27th was the first work that was done with this Exhibit 12, according to his recollection.

It may be admitted for the purposes of this case

that the machine, Exhibit 12, was adapted and perfected for use as early as February 27th for the purpose of taking pictures. The evidence, however, as to the manner of its use as a projecting apparatus at that time or any subsequent time is vague.

Latham testifies as follows:

"Q28. State whether or not the machine with which you state the pictures were taken that were projected by the machine described in Exhibit No. 4 could be employed to successfully project the pictures taken by it and whether or not it was ever so employed by you.

A. It could be so employed, and was, as a matter of fact, so employed by me in the month of January or February, or both, 1895."

Otway testifies:

"Q47. State what use was made, if any, of the pictures that were taken on the original machine in May, 1895, and afterwards.

A. They were exhibited in the shop at 35 Frankfort Street by means of the machine that photographed them, and they were afterwards exhibited to the public at 156 Broadway by means of another machine that carried the film continuously."

"XQ142. The pictures of the Griffo-Barnett prize fight were projected by this other and differently operated projecting machine which the Lambda Company had at that time. Is this not so?

4343

A. At what time do you refer?

XQ143. At the time you mentioned yesterday when these pictures were projected on a screen?

A. Yes; and also by the machine, Exhibit 12.

XQ173. When you projected pictures, as you say, in January of 1895, did you produce the effect on a screen of an object in motion?

A. Yes.

XQ176. Is the Exhibit 12, as it now stands, just as it was when you projected pictures, as you say, in January, 1895?

A. Yes; with the exception of the two reels upon which the films were rolled and the focusing lamp and objective lens."

Gray Latham testifies:

"Q21. When did you first operate the machine, Exhibit 12, and where, for projecting pictures of moving objects?

A. Either in January, the latter part, or the early part of February, I think, my brother and I in the presence of several others removed the back plate from the machine, Exhibit 12, and inserted an electric light and projected satisfactorily one of the kinetoscope pictures on a screen at 35 Frankfort Street, in room 35.

XQ71. Did you ever use Latham's Exhibit No. 12 for giving exhibitions to the public where an admission fee was charged?

A. We have never, so far as I know, used

Exhibit No. 12 for giving such exhibitions. We have used a similar gearing in a machine with which we gave exhibitions to the public where admission was charged.

XQ82. Where did you give and when did you give the first exhibition for pay with the gear similar to that known as the Geneva stop and shown in Exhibit 12?

A. I don't remember when the first exhibition for pay with the gear similar to the one in Exhibit 12 was made, but I do remember to have seen an exhibition-several exhibitions, in fact-with a machine containing this gear at the St. James hotel, Twenty-sixth Street and Broadway, New York City, in the Spring of 1896

XQ83. Can't you approximate the date a little nearer than you have?

A. I think the exhibitions referred to in my last answer occurred in May, 1896."

Woodville Latham testifies (Q235, page 99):

"The idea of using for projection the ma-4350

chine I had made with the arresting device was given up by me at that time, for the reason, among others, that I thought that the arresting of the film would make its life very short as compared with what its life would be if it were run without interruption through a machine. By the expression 'at that time,' which I have used, I mean the time when the machine with an arresting device had been made and tried."

"The reason why I abandoned the idea of using Latham's Exhibit No. 12 as a project

ing machine was that I believed the strain that machine would give to the film would shorten its life too much, and meanwhile I had found out how to project the pictures of a continuously running film" (Q32, page 260).

Otway Latham testifies:

"Q41. I now ask you to look at the machine which has been introduced in this case as Latham Exhibit No. 12, and state what you know about it and where you first saw it.

4352

A. This is the original machine made at 35 Frankfort Street and the machine used in taking the photograph of the incandescent light on or about February 26, 1895. These are the two large film reels and the boxes supporting them that are not on the machine that I have just seen. Exhibit 12. There is also missing the objective lens and the focusing lamp. With these exceptions the machine is complete. I first saw this machine in its present condition some time in January, 1895, at 35 Frankfort Street. It was used by the Lambda Company for some two years for photographing. It was also used by the Lambda Company for projecting photographs, but as the life of the film is very short when run through this machine, we abandoned it for that purpose. was also used by the Eidoloscope Company during the year or so of its existence for photographing. When my connection with the Eidoloscope Company was severed I lost sight of the machine."

4353

The evidence taken as a whole, of which the above-quoted portions may be taken as examples,

shows that the machine was originally constructed mainly as a taking machine; that it may have been used several times as a projecting machine; that it was never used publicly and in the ordinary course of business as a projecting machine, and that its use as a projecting machine was afterwards abandoned.

It further shows that the machine at the time that the experiments in projecting were made contained a shutter having an aperture very small in comparison with the entire area of the disk, so that though the film had an intermittent motion of such a character that the period of rest was much longer than the period of motion, the period of rest and illumination was no longer than the period of rest and exposure when the machine was used as a taking instrument, the conditions of taking instantaneous photographs of objects in motion being best satisfied when the film and its sensitive surface are at rest during the exceeding short exposure.

It is denied on behalf of Armat that the machine ever could have been used successfully as a projecting apparatus because of the failure to provide for a period of rest and illumination longer than the period of motion, and we think that the failure of the applicant Latham to actually use the device for practical purposes is a sufficient indication that either he did not regard its projection as satisfactory from an optical standpoint or that the machine was as he says, mechanically defective, in that owing to the intermittent motion the life of the film would be shortened.

The evidence of Casler shows that his Exhibit First Machine was finished about March 1, 1895, was used about June, 1895, for taking pictures of moving objects and that in November, 1895, it

4355

was used as a projecting machine. This Casler machine was designed for the purpose of taking photographic negatives of moving objects, as admitted by Casler himself, and was not intended as a machine for projecting photographs or pictures of moving objects. (See XQ170.)

Marvin states:

"But it was intended that photographic prints made from the negatives obtained with this machine should be cut up and used in the mutoscope when it was desired to exhibit these photographs by means of the mutoscope" (Ans. to Q67).

4358

The mutoscope is not a device for projecting pictures on a screen.

Casler himself testifies that this exhibition in November, 1895, was "very gratifying to all parties present" (XQ178).

Marvin, the second vice-president of the American Mutoscope Co., of which Casler is a director, testifies to the same effect (Q35). According to his testimony and that of Casler, when it was desired to use this machine as a projecting machine it was necessary to add pegs to the structure over and around which the film is carried, and to provide a mirror placed at an angle of 45° to the axis of the lens in order to deflect the rays of light from a lamp to cause the light to pass through the lens which is placed in the opening at the front of the camera where the shutter revolves. (See Casler, XQ189, page 48, and Marvin, XQ51.)

Marvin admits that his company never manufactured a machine like the machine Casler's Exhibit First Machine for the purpose of projecting pictures, and that they had never used this

exhibit machine in the way he describes it as capable of being used (XQ54, page 143).

There is a further inherent defect in the machine in that it depends for the motion of the film solely upon frictional rollers. While this construction might be effective in taking a series of pictures upon a film it seems exceedingly doubtful whether in projecting it would be possible to cause these friction rollers to so accurately drive the picture-bearing film as to cause the pictures to take their proper positions with relation to each other. It is further apparent that the shutter of this first machine when it was used for projecting, was not adjusted, so that the periods of rest and illumination were substantially greater than the periods of motion. The relative lengths of such periods are stated in Armat's application to be in the ratio of 1 to 10.

Marvin states that when the machine was used in the fall of 1895 as a projecting machine the adjustment of the devices was such that the period of pause and illumination exceeded the interval of movement (see Re Q77), but it further appears from his statement in Re-XQ82 that "the cut away portion of the shutter, to the best of my knowledge and belief, was one-half of the total circumference of the shutter."

This excess of period illumination existed, as is stated by Casler (XQ277):

"A. Because, while the period of total obstruction is of the same length as the period of uninterrupted passage of light, there are two periods in the revolution of the shutter when the passage of light is only partially obstructed, and the period of passage of light to the screen exceeds the period of darkness such a period

4361

of time as is required for the shutter to allow the unobstructed passage of light through the lens after it begins to allow the light to pass through said lens."

And he further testifies:

"XQ280. Do you mean, then, to state that a shutter such as has been described does not obstruct the passage of light for one-half the time?

A. I mean to say that a shutter constructed as described does not wholly obstruct the passage of light for one-half the time."

4364

This is mere quibbling, since it is evident that there was no substantial difference between the duration of the periods of rest and illumination and the duration of the periods of movement. This machine, like Latham's Exhibit Machine No. 12, was used solely as a taking machine, and was not used as a projecting machine until February or March, 1896, when Casler and Marvin say it was so used.

As to its later use there is no definite testimony and it cannot in any event avail Casler, since it is after the filing date of Armat's application. Casler, like Latham, experimented with his taking machine in an attempt to use it as a projecting machine and did nothing but experiment. We are not satisfied from the evidence that the results of these experiments were satisfactory, but we are satisfied that in each case a shutter was used, and that in neither case was the shutter so adjusted as to provide a period of rest and illumination longer than the period of motion of the film. In other words, even if Latham's trial of his Exhibit Ma-

chine No. 12 and Casler's trial of his Exhibit First Machine as projecting cameras were so successful in result as to indicate that the machines were machine and did nothing but experiment. We are adapted and perfected for use, and therefore re ductions to practice of whatever inventions are contained therein, we are still of the opinion that such machines did not contain the invention called for by the issue.

4367

It is not necessary to consider in detail the evidence offered on behalf of Armat, for the reason that it consists mainly of his own testimony, unsupported by sufficient corroborative evidence. The earliest date upon which he can rely is that of filing his application.

It is the well-settled rule in interference proceedings that in order to constitute a reduction to practice of the combination specified by an issue the device must contain every element specified in the issue. (See Wolfenden vs. Price, 83 O. G., 1801.) It follows from this rule that the practical test of a combination which does not embrace every such element is not a reduction to practice of the issue. (See Tracy vs. Leslie, 87 O. G., 891, and the cases there cited.)

4368

Applying this rule to the case before us, neither Latham nor Casler has shown that they had a conception of the invention of the issue or reduced it to practice before the dates of filing of their respective applications.

As Armat was the first to file an application containing a clear description and claim of the invention of the issue, he is entitled to an award of priority.

On behalf of Casler the testimony of one Lauste was offered to show that Latham was not the original inventor of his machine, Exhibit No. 12.

This evidence cannot be received or considered in this proceeding, for the reason that it is impertinent to the issue, which is as to priority of invention between the applications involved in this interference, and between them only. (See Foster vs. Antisdel, 88 O. G., 1526.)

In our opinion Armat is the prior inventor of the invention in issue, and the decision of the examiner of interference awarding priority to Latham is accordingly reversed.

> J. H. BRICKENSTEIN, T. G. STEWARD,

Examiners-in-chief.

Third member absent.

Limit of appeal will expire Nov. 16, 1899.

Endorsed: Thomas Armat—Appeal No. 22185—Intfc. No. 18461; paper No. 3—Decision, dated October 17, 1899—Latham vs. Casler vs. Armat—Examiners-in-chief, U. S. Patent Office, Oct. 17, 1899. Recorded, vol. 27½, page 138.

4371

4372

Defendants' Exhibit 46.

CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,
SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS Co., Complainant,

VS.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE Co. of AMERICA,

Defendant.

In Equity, No. 5-167.

4373

COMPLAINANT'S EXHIBIT.

Decision of Commissioner of Patents in Armat Interference.

Jan. 10, 1900.

S. E. T.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

4374

LATHAM

VS.

CASLER

V8.

ARMAT.

Intf. No. 18461. Apparatus for Projecting on a Screen Pictures of Moving objects.

Appeal from examiners-in-chief.

Application of Woodville Latham filed June 1, 1896, No. 593,747.

Application of Herman Casler filed February 26, 1896, No. 580,810.

Application of Thomas Armat filed February 19, 1896, No. 579,901.

Mr. J. E. M. Bowen and Mr. W. G. Henderson for Latham; Mr. Phillips Abbott of counsel.

Messrs. E. M. Marble & Sons and Mr. John T. Easton for Casler; Messrs. Kerr, Page & Cooper of counsel.

Mr. Julian C. Dowell for Armat.

This case is before me on appeals by Casler and Latham from the decision of the examiners-in-chief awarding priority of invention to Armat upon the following issue:

4376

"In a picture-exhibiting apparatus for giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion, the combination with a picture-carrying strip of film, a tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension device. whereby the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film."

4377

The examiner of interferences awarded priority to Latham.

The invention is a picture-exhibiting device, and although it is well recognized that devices for so exhibiting pictures as to give the impression to the eye the objects in motion are in some instances very closely related to devices for taking those pic-

tures, and although some devices may by modification and adjustment be used for both purposes, it does not follow that the construction and use of a device for taking pictures is a reduction to practice of a device embodying much of the same mechanical construction for the purpose of exhibiting pictures. There are certain necessary changes which must be made in any taking device before it is adapted for use as an exhibiting device, and it does not follow that because a device is satisfactory for one purpose that it will in its modified form be satisfactory for the other purpose. It does not follow, furthermore, that the modifications necessary in a particular device to adapt it to its new use are in all cases obvious to those skilled in the art. This question has been fully discussed by the examiners-in-chief, since it is directly brought up for consideration and decision by the evidence in the case.

Latham's case rests almost entirely upon evidence in regard to a device introduced in evidence as Exhibit 12. The evidence clearly shows that this exhibit was completed in February, 1895, and that it was successfully used at that time and subsequently for taking photographs. As used for that purpose and as it exists at present, the exhibit does not embody the issue, since it is provided with a shutter having a very small opening for the passage of light, so that the period of illumination is much shorter than the period of movement instead of being greater. If that shutter were removed or a different form of shutter were used and certain modifleations, including the provision of a light, a condensing lens, and a picture-carrying film, were made in it the device would have been a pictureexhibiting device embodying the issue. Latham

4379

contends that it has been shown that the changes indicated were in fact made, and that the device was successfully used for projecting pictures, as stated, as early as January or February, 1895. The evidence on this point is, however, far from satisfactory, and indicates clearly that, even if the device was in fact so used, it was not regarded by Latham and his associates as a satisfactory projecting apparatus, but was abandoned by them for that purpose. This is clearly testified to by the party, Latham (XQ252), and his son, Otway Latham (Q41). There is no positive statement by the witnesses that the shutter was omitted when projecting pictures, but it seems probable that it was it fact omitted. This cannot avail Latham, however, for, as above noted, according to his own admission, after testing the device for projecting he gave it up for that purpose and proceeded to devise another apparatus, in which the film moves continuously. On behalf of Latham much stress is laid upon his statement that the reason that he abandoned the use of Exhibit 12 as a projecting apparatus was that he thought the arresting device would make the life of the film too short. It is argued that the length of time the film lasts has nothing to do with the question whether or not the device satisfactorily projected pictures at the time it was used and amounted to a reduction to practice of the invention at that time. This contention is not sound, however, since the question is not merely whether or not the device accomplished the purpose of projecting pictures as intended, but is whether it accomplished it in the way desired, and was as a whole a satisfactory device for the purpose and was so regarded by the inventor. So long as the device was regarded by the inventor as imprac-

4382

tical and unsatisfactory and was abandoned, it is immaterial what reasons caused him to abandon it and regard it as unsatisfactory. The film is a necessary part of a projecting apparatus, and since the operation of the other parts of the apparatus were such as to cause Latham to think after testing it that the film would be destroyed so soon as to make the device impractical for the purpose and to induce him to abandon that device for projecting, it must be held that the test was a mere abandoned experiment. It is noted, furthermore, that Latham does not say that the life of the film was the only thing that made him abandon the use of Exhibit 12, but says that it was one reason "among others." XQ235.

4385

Even conceding that Latham had a conception of the invention in January or February, 1895, he did not reduce it to practice or exercise diligence in regard to the matter between that date and February 19, 1896, when Armat constructively reduced it to practice by filing his application. He not only failed to reduce it to practice, but according to the evidence, abandoned it in favor of another form of picture-exhibiting device, in which the film moved continuously.

4386

Casler alleges a conception of the invention in December, 1894, and a reduction to practice by the completion and use of a device introduced in evidence as "Casler Exhibit First Machine" as early as March 1, 1895. That device is said to have been commenced in January, 1895. The evidence shows that the device referred to was completed at the time stated, and that it was then operated by using a strip of paper in place of the film. Nothing further seems to have been done with it after its completion until June, 1895, when it was first used

for taking pictures. It was made and intended as a picture-taking device, as clearly appears from the testimony of Casler and his witnesses, and was not used or adopted for projecting pictures until November, 1895. To adopt it for that purpose it was necessary to make certain changes in it, which are briefly described by Casler as follows:

"As all machines used for the purpose of projecting pictures require a lens and some source of light, I provided the source of light and also a mirror for directing the light through the film and some pegs for carrying the film in front of the mirror, the lens being already attached to the machine." XQ181.

4388

Casler and his witnesses testify generally that when the device was first made he had the idea of using it for projecting as well as taking pictures, but the witnesses fail to testify to any disclosure to them of the means by which this would be done prior to November, 1895. It is clear, therefore, that whatever general statements Casler may have made as to the possibility of adapting the device to projecting pictures, the evidence does not show a conception by him of the means here involved prior to November, 1895, even if it can be held to show a conception at that date.

4389

The Exhibit "First Machine" is provided with an adjustable revolving shutter, or, in other words, one wherein the size of the opening can be varied from a very small opening up to one-half of the circumference of the shutter. That shutter was in the machine when used for projecting pictures in November, 1895, and, since it is impossible to so adjust it that the opening will be greater than one-half of its circumference, the examiners-in-chief held that the device did not embody a construction

in which "the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion," as set forth in the issue. They held that with such a shutter the picture would be obscured for substantially onehalf of the time and illuminated for one-half of the time. This holding is not strictly correct, for, as pointed out by Casler, on account of the width of the opening through which the picture is projected, the shutter will not totally obscure the picture for one-half the time, but there will be two periods during which the edges of the shutter are passing across the opening when there will be a partial illumination of the picture. The period during which the passage of light is entirely obstructed by the shutter and the period during which it is uninterrupted are equal, but the period during which it is partially obstructed must be counted with the period of illumination. This period of partial illumination is not great, but is, strictly speaking, sufficient to make "the interval of pause and illumis nation exceed the interval of motion." amount of light which passes through the opening is just one-half of what it would be if not interrupted at all, but the time during which it passes is a little more than half. It seems doubtful if such a construction, operating as it does, would meet the requirements had in mind by Armat and Latham when they conceived the invention in issue, or that it was so contemplated by Casler when it was devised by him, in spite of the fact that the issue construed literally reads upon it. Casler himself says in his specification: "The shutter and the feeding mechanism shown in the drawings are arranged to admit the passage of light during half the revolution of the shutter," and proceeds to say: " . . "The intensity of the illumination upon the screen

4391

may be greatly increased by increasing the time during which the shutter is open."

He also says that the shutter may be dispensed with entirely. These statements indicate that when the device was used in November, Casler had no conception of the idea of making the period of illumination more than half of the entire period, and it does not appear from the testimony when he first conceived the idea of modifying or omitting his shutter so as to admit more light, as set forth in his specification. There is no evidence that he ever made or used such modified construction prior to filing his application. The claim of the issue was first made by Armat and was adopted by the other parties, and therefore, if there is doubt as to its meaning, it should be determined from Armat's specification. In his device the relative lengths of the periods during which the picture is illuminated and obscured are in the ratio of 6 to 1, and while the claim is not limited to this ratio, it clearly means, in view of his specification, that there shall be a substantial difference between the lengths of the periods. Even if the issue is to be construed with reference to Casler's specification, it must be held that it was not intended by him to apply to a device wherein one-half of the shutter is cut away, in view of his statement that such a shutter admits light for one-half of the time, but was intended to apply to the different forms of the device in which more light is admitted. According to Casler's own specification, therefore, the issue does not apply to his "first machine."

Even if it could be held that the machine as modified and used in November, 1895, did embody the issue, it has not been established that the test proved satisfactory and amounted to a complete 4394

reduction to practice. Marvin states that in projecting pictures in November, 1895, the shutter was so adjusted that one-half of the circumference was cut away and that "the exhibition was very satisfactory." The device was tested for projecting one night only and was not afterwards used for projecting, and no other machines were made like it for that purpose. The parts added to adapt it for projecting were apparently at once removed and not used in the device again. It is contended by Armat that, even aside from the question whether or not it embodied the issue, it could not have operated satisfactorily for projecting pictures, since it depends for the motion of the film solely upon frictional rollers, which, it is alleged, would slip and thus displace the pictures on the screen. In Casler's specification it is acknowledged that the film does slip, and one of the principal features of the invention set forth in his application here involved is mechanism to compensate for this slipping. seems doubtful if the device would operate satisfactorily without this compensating mechanism, and it was not present in the "first machine," in November, 1895. The circumstances of the case and Casler's action in reference to the device after the single test in November indicate strongly that its use was not a reduction to practice of the invention embodied in it, but was merely an experiment abandoned as unsatisfactory. The mere statement by Casler and Marvin that the test was satisfactory is not sufficient to overcome the presumption raised by their action in abandoning the use of the device for that purpose after the test, nor is it sufficient to overcome the doubt raised by the construction of the device itself as to whether it is capable of satisfactory operation for the purpose.

4397

Armat testifies that he exhibited pictures at the Atlanta Exposition in October, 1895, with a machine introduced in evidence as "Armat machine." That machine as first constructed was made by the witness Wellauer and shipped to Armat, in Atlanta, in September, 1895. Wellauer identifies parts of the machine as having been made and assembled by him. Armat testifies that he made certain changes in its construction after it reached Atlanta, and it is stipulated that his testimony as to what workmen in Atlanta actually made these changes is correct. Those changes are said to have been completed in October, when the device was in substantially the same condition as it is now and embodied the invention in controversy. Armat testifies that he saw and operated for exhibiting pictures either the machine in evidence as "Armat machine" or one similar to it in October. 1895, at the Atlanta Exposition. He states that he can swear that the machine he operated in Atlanta was like the Exhibit "Armat Machine," but cannot swear that it was the identical machine. witness Daniel states that he recognized Exhibit "Armat Machine" as the identical machine used for exhibiting pictures in his office in November, 1895. His identification of the exhibit as the same machine is very positive, and he bases this identification not only upon the general appearance of the machine, which he states was impressed upon his mind, but also upon the mechanical construction and operation of the parts which he describes (XQ57). An attempt was made to discredit this witness's identification of the machine by calling attention to Armat's admission that one of the standards now in the machine is not the identical standard which was in it when used as alleged.

4400



Microcard Editions

An Indian Head Company

A Division of Information Handling Services

CARD

This difference, however, is immaterial and one not likely to be noticed by any one in examining the machine, and therefore it can take nothing from the force of Daniel's testimony. The machine undoubtedly embodies the invention in controversy, and it must be held from the evidence that Armat made and used it at least as early as November, 1895. Whether or not this use in November was a reduction to practice, he is entitled to the date of filing his application as his date of constructive reduction to practice, and that is prior to any date of reduction to practice proved by the other parties

4403

Casler has not shown a conception of the invention prior to Armat's proven date of conception, and armough Latham may have been the first to conceive, he was the last to reduce to practice and did not exercise reasonable diligence in effecting that reduction to practice.

The decision of the examiners-in-chief awarding priority of invention to Armat is affirmed.

A. P. GREELEY,

4404

Acting Commissioner, now Assistant Commissioner.

February 5, 1900.

Endorsed:—Intf. No. 18461—paper No. 9— Latham vs. Casler vs. Armat—Comm'r's decision, dated Feb'y 5, 1900—Recorded vol. 68, page 458. CIRCUIT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS Co., Complainant,

VS.

INDEPENDENT MOVING PICTURE COMPANY OF AMERICA,
Defendant.

4406

COMPLAINANT'S EXHIBIT.

Decision of Court of Appeals in Armat Interference.

BENJAMIN BARKER, Examiner.

Appeals

WOODVILLE LATHAM,
Appellant,
vs.

THOMAS ARMAT.

4407 No. 153 Patent

This is an appeal from the decision of the Commissioner of Patents in an interference proceeding having the following issue:

"In a picture-exhibiting apparatus for giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion, the combination with a picture-carrying strip or film, a tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension device, whereby the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film."

4409

There were three parties to this proceeding on whose behalf testimony was taken, namely, Armat, Latham and Casler. The last named has taken no appeal from the final decision against him. Armat, having filed his application on February 19, 1896, is the senior party. Latham filed June 1, 1896, and upon him therefore lies the burden of proof. His testimony tended to show conception of the invention during the summer of 1894; but the examiner of interferences, who awarded him priority, though it is plain that he did not, until after January 1, 1895, conceive any means for "Intermittently moving the film."

4410

All the tribunals agreed that Armat's conception and reduction to practice could not have earlier than about November, 1895. Whether Latham had an earlier conception than accorded him by the examiner of interferences, or Armat's reduction to practice shall be carried back to September or October of 1895, or confined to the date of his application, would seem to be unimportant. The question of priority must turn upon Latham's claim of reduction to practice between January 1, and early in May of 1895—in which his claim of conception of

the invention of the issue is largely involved—for if that claim should fail, efforts made in 1896 would not avail.

It is contended on behalf of the appellant that, in deciding this question, the Commissioner "misconceived the gist and essence of the real improvement in issue." In view of this contention it becomes important, preliminarily, to consider the state of the art of taking and exhibiting moving pictures at the time of the invention in controversy, and the conditions of its application therein.

It has been ascertained that the average human eye will retain the impression created by the rays of light from an object in sight, for a period of about one-seventh of a second of time, after the actual removal or obscuration of the object. All devices for the exhibition of moving pictures have been founded on this phenomenon, called the "persistence of vision."

If, therefore, a series of pictures, consecutively taken, be exhibited in such rapid succession as to come within the aforesaid period of persistence of vision, the eye will not detect the fact that the pictures are being shifted, and the consequent effect will be that of a continuous representation of the objects in motion.

Several devices for the creation of such effects had been in existence for some years before the present parties entered the field. Among these was the well known Kinetoscope, patented to Edison March 14, 1893. In this a moving object that had been consecutively and rapidly photographed upon a long and narrow film, was made to move before the eye with the necessary rapidity to create the impression of the same object in continuous motion.

In these devices, however, the picture could be exhibited to but one person at a time. The next step in order was the projection of the picture upon 4412

a screen for exhibition to a greater number of

persons, at the same time, through the aid of the magic lantern. Instead of transferring the pictures to glass as had been the custom in the ordinary use of the magic lantern, the long picture film or translucent celluloid base was arranged to pass between the condensing and magnifying lenses, with such motion as to cause the projection of the desired moving picture. A number of devices or machines, both for rapidly taking consecutive pictures up a long films and for projecting similarly taken pictures upon screens through combination with the magic lantern, had been patented before this controversy began. How successful these had been or how largely they had been utilized does not appear. Some of them have been referred to on the argument, and copies have been exhibited by the parties in aid of their respective contentions; but there is no occasion to enumerate them here. In some of these, the continuous film was passed along with an intermittent, or step by step, motion, thereby giving a brief period of rest for the exposure followed by a rapid substitution of the proper succeeding space. This intermittent motion is essential to the satisfactory performance of either process. It gives the rest period necessary for the impression of a distinct picture in the one, and for an effective view of the other. A rapid movement following the rest period maintains the proper consecutiveness in tak-

The Joly apparatus for taking pictures, and one of those above referred to, embodies also the feature of forming slack in the film at the point where it enters the tension device. This formation of slack is a part of the combination of the issue and will be recurred to later. A machine, called the plantoscope,

ing the pictures, and makes available the "persistence of vision" in its subsequent exhibition.

4415

for the purpose of projecting pictures was patented to Jenkins and Armat July 20, 1897. One of the objects set forth in its specifications is to provide means for displacing and substituting a picture in an interval of time less than the period of exposure and illumination.

One serious impairment of the value of these picture exhibiting machines, including the plantoscope aforesaid, was the injury and speedy destruction of the film by repeated use. This film which is often of great length and very expensive is wound upon a reel for feeding to the carrying mechanism. After passing the point of exposure it is taken up by a corresponding reel upon that side.

To bring the pictures forward regularly and accurately, perforations made in the edge of the film are engaged by the teeth of the sprocket wheel which imparts the intermittent motion. The film must also be engaged by a device that keeps it tight and smooth at the point of exposure and illumination. After coming to a stop for the established exposure period, the film is moved rapidly so as to present the next succeeding picture for illumination and exposure before the impression of the first shall have faded from the retina.

An increased rapidity of this movement will add to the efficiency of the apparatus. Now, when operated by one mechanism, as had formerly been the case, the sudden jerk following the period of rest had not only to overcome the resistance of that inertia and the friction of the tension device, but also the resistance of the reels which, in some instances, would be great. The resulting injury to the films consisted mainly in tearing at the points of engagement with the teeth of the sprocket wheel.

One object of the invention of the issue, and which the appellant contends is the only patentable

4418

feature of the combination, was the provision of means for maintaining the intermittent feed of the film and relieving it of all additional strain and wear during the operation. The new apparatus embraces two separate and independently actuated feeding mechanisms. One of these operates continuously and with comparative slowness to unwind the film from one reel and wind it upon the other, and is so constructed and arranged as to maintain any desired amount of slack in the film between the delivery reel and the tension device. The second co-operates, but is quick acting and intermittent.

4421

By its sudden, quick motion, it jerks the film, for a space not exceeding the slack maintained therein, through the exposure opening after each period of rest.

In addition to this feature the Patent Office authorities regarded another as essential to render the combination of the issue patentable, namely, "means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion." And it appears that Armat's application in this case was rejected until he added to his claim the words of the issue-so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion. We have seen that former devices were made to feed the film in such manner as to provide a period of rest longer than the following period of movement; but it seems that exhibiting machines were operated like the taking cameras with shutters usually in the form of a revolving disk, with openings, which alternately cover and expose the film spaces as moved. reason of this, the period of illumination was made less than the period of rest, and the general effect

of the exposition was impaired by the frequent passage of the opaque part of the shutter across the rays of light while the picture was still at the point of exposure. At any rate, it was thought essential to the combination allowed, and as such declared in interference, that the period of pause and illumination should exceed the period of motion required to bring forward the next succeeding picture of the series.

This was equivalent to saying that each picture when in the field of exposure should be illuminated without interruption. This brings us to the contention of the appellant that the sole patentable novelty of the invention of the issue consists in the feature of the mechanism for intermittently moving the film "with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film."

For reasons that have been sufficiently expressed in former decisions, the question of patentability, is not ordinarily regarded as open on appeal to this court in an interference case, but is to be regarded therein as conclusively established by the Commissioner of Patents. The question in such cases is one of priority and not of patentability.

Hiser vs. Peters, 6 App. D. C., 68, 70. Doyle vs. McRoberts, 10 Idem, 445, 467. Newton vs. Woodward, 16 Idem, 568, 572.

It is true that there might be exceptional circumstances in a particular case whereby the question might be inextricably involved in the merits of the claim of priority, and become incidentally a part of the final determination thereof. No such circumstances are shown here.

Again, patentable novelty has been declared in the Patent Office to lie in an apparatus embodying all of the elements set forth in the issue. The rule

4424

of the Patent Office seems to be well established that when a party has incorporated an element into his claim it is to be regarded as a material part of his invention.

Wolfenden vs. Price, 83 O. G., 1801; C. D., 1898, page 87.

Be that as it may, having said that the question of patentability is one for the exclusive determination of the Commissioner of Patents, to the extent that it is involved in a proceeding of the restricted nature of an interference case, it would seem to follow that such determination must be accepted in the terms in which it has been formulated.

It remains now to consider Latham's claim of reduction to practice.

A picture taking camera, like many of those heretofore referred to as patented, could undoubtedly be utilized as an apparatus for exhibiting pictures also, by substituting a picture film in the carrying device and then applying the apparatus of the magic lantern. Notwithstanding this capacity for both uses, as said by the examiners in chief, "the Patent Office appears to have recognized the distinction between the cameras for taking pictures and similar apparatus for exhibiting pictures." They refer, for illustrative examples, to claim 1 of the Jenkins and Armat patent and claim 4 of Edison's patent for a kinetographic camera, and say: "The sensitive film of the Edison taking apparatus has precisely the same intermittent motion as the picture carrying surface described in the claim of the Jenkins-Armat patent." The reason for this distinction need not be entered into. It has not been questioned, and, moreover, would seem to stand as any other question of patentability in respect of collateral inquiry in this character of proceeding.

4428

It appears that the original apparatus of Latham (Exhibit 12) on which the reduction to practice of the invention of the issue has been claimed, operated with the double mechanism-one continuously feeding the film from the reel, and the other intermittently moving it across the path of exposure. This was undoubtedly an effective machine operated as a camera for taking consecutive pictures, but that is the only practical use to which it has been put. That it was experimented with on one or more occasions by Professor Latham and his sons, as an apparatus for projecting pictures, may be regarded as established. In ascertaining the result of this experimentation, the evidence relating to it, given several years afterwards, must be considered in the light of the subsequent acts and conduct of the parties interested, and other surrounding circumstances. So considered, it does not appear to us sufficient to justify the reversal of the decisions of the Examiners in Chief and Commissioner to the effect that what was then done is trial of the machine amounted to nothing more than an abandoned experiment. These private tests were not followed by a public exhibition. The machine, though kept and satisfactorily operated as a camera for taking pictures, was not again tried for their projection. Such use, however, cannot be taken as reduction to practice of the other, because of the patentable distinction, before referred to. that has been observed between apparatus for taking pictures, and that for their exhibition.

> Breul vs. Smith, 10 App. D. C., 180, 185. Tracy vs. Leslie, 14 Idem, 126, 135.

Just what does amount to reduction to practice of a machine, as contradistinguished from unsatisfactory and abandoned experiments, presents a

4430

question of constant difficulty in this class of cases, and depends, chiefly, upon the special circumstances of each case in which it is sought to be established. A rule cannot be laid down in one case to govern all others. At one time it may be held reduction to practice, where the machine, though defective in mechanical construction and working crudely in practical, public trials, nevertheless demonstrates its practical efficacy and utility, and the subsequent failure to perfect by the application of the necessary mechanical skill, has been satisfactorily accounted for, as in cases like that of Coffee vs. Guerrant, 3 App. D. C., 497. Again, it may be held as falling short of reduction to practice, where a machine, though skillfully constructed, at great expense, has only been tested by the inventor once in the presence of a witness, and then all testimony fails in respect to its subsequent use for the only purpose of its alleged invention, as in cases like that of Reichenbach vs. Kelley (Present Term), and others therein cited.

4434

4433

We are free to confess in this case that the inspection of the original machine, and the proof of its efficient performance in intermittently moving the film for the taking of pictures, in connection with the evidence of the first private trials in exhibiting pictures, has strongly inclined us to decide in favor of its reduction to practice. But we have not been able to overcome the weight of one circumstance that has important bearing upon the sufficiency of the test as reduction to practice, when we bear in mind all of the limitations and requirements of the issue, which we have heretofore said must be done.

As we have seen, an important element of the invention of this issue is the requirement to give a longer period for pause, and for the illumination of the picture, than is required for its displacement

and substitution by the one following: and this period of pause and illumination is concurrent. The original machine was constructed with a shutter and that shutter remains a part of it. Such a shutter performs an important, if not necessary function in a camera for taking pictures, but operates injuriously when the apparatus is used for their exhibition, as has been heretofore described. Practically it reduces the illumination period to that of the movement of substitution.

The Examiner of Interferences, who decided in favor of Latham, stated in his decision, that the machine has been constructed for taking pictures and not for their exhibition, and that with the shutter it could not be made to conform to the issue in respect of giving a period of illumination in excess of the period given to jerk the film from picture to picture. His conclusion in favor of Latham's priority was put upon the ground that the shutter was not demanded by the issue, and being no essential element of a picture exhibiting machine, could be removed and set aside, whereupon the machine would become an embodiment of every element of the issue. Consequently, as the machine, though invented for taking pictures, could, by removing the shutter, be as effective for their exhibition, he was of the opinion that Latham was entitled to the benefit of this additional use even if he had not conceived or appreciated it.

For reasons heretofore given, this view is not tenable.

Recurring to the testimony, it does not appear that Latham had any idea of detaching this shutter in using the machine for exhibiting pictures.

It was attached when he made the experiments relied upon. Nor does it appear that he dispensed with it in making the later machines with which he 4436

4439

had made exhibitions. If he ever realized that the shutter of the taking camera was useless in the machine when converted into an exhibitor, or an impediment to the excellence of its use as such, and therefore dispensed with it in subsequent constructions, his evidence does not show it, affirmatively; and this it was incumbent upon him to do.

It is this condition that involves, to a certain extent, the question of his conception of the invention of the issue, with that of his reduction to practice, and renders it impossible for us to find that he has overcome the burden necessary to an award

of priority over Armat.

The case has been one of difficulty, and we have come to a decision not without some doubts as to its soundness; but that very doubt, if nothing more, would demand that the decision of the Commissioner be not reversed.

For the reasons given the decision will be affirmed, and the proceedings herein will be certified to the Commissioner of Patents, as required by law. It is so ordered.

4440

Affirmed,

SETH SHEPARD,
Associate Justice.

Endorsed:—No. 153 Patent Appeals—Woodville Latham, Appellant, vs. Thomas Armat— Opinion of the Court per Mr. Justice Shepard —Court of Appeals, District of Columbia— Filed Jan. 8, 1901—Robert Willet, Clerk.

A true copy.

Test: HENRY W. HODGES,

(Seal.) Clerk of the Court of Appeals,
of the District of Columbia.
By MONCURE BURKE,
Assistant Clerk.

Defendants' Exhibit No. 48, Baltimore 4441 Sun Article, October 3, 1895.

MR. EDISON OUTDONE.

PHANTOSCOPE MORE WONDERFUL THAN HIS KINETOSCOPE.

4442

LIFE SIZE FIGURES SHOWN.

The Remarkable Invention of a Washington Stenographer.

It Will be Shown for the First Time at the Atlanta Exposition, Where it May Reproduce All the Details of a Mexican Bull-Fight Without Fear of Interference by Mr. Ballou—It May Also Figure Largely at the Corbett-Fitzsimmons Prize-Fight at Dallas.

4443

(Special Dispatch to the Baltimore Sun)

Washington. Oct. 2.—The last concession of space made by the Atlanta Exposition management before the opening of the big cotton States show will be occupied by the machine that Edison has been working years to perfect. There is no Edison in this, however. The Wizard of Menlo Park has been beaten at his own game by two young Wash-

4445

ingtonians, and they left this city last week for Atlanta, where they will put up a \$5,000 building to display their new device. It is known as the phantoscope and is a combination of the kinetoscope principles with those of the stereopticon. The result is a machine that will throw life-sized figures or figures of any other size, for that matter, on a large screen and impart to them all the movements of life. This may seem a simple thing at first sight, so long as the kinetoscope has reached a stage of perfect operation, but it is not so easy as it looks. It is the thing that has baffled Edison, and the kinetoscope, which produced tiny figures dancing inside a dark box, is the nearest approach he has ever made to solving the problem. phantoscope has been successfully running in Washington for some weeks past, but the machine taken by Mr. Jenkins, one of the inventors, to Atlanta last week is the first that he and his colleague, Mr. Armat, have ever turned out. It is 12x15x24 inches in size and weighs, all told, fifty pounds. But Mr. Jenkins is now at work on another machine that will do the same work and can be put under a silk hat. The machine is quite simple in operation. As in the kinetoscope, the pictures to be reproduced are taken on a continuous strip of sensitive film at the rate of twenty-five or thirty per second. The film is only about an inch wide, and is wound off one spool in the machine upon another, and can be almost instantly reversed and run back.

4446

The length of any scene reproduced depends only on the length of film used, and this can be increased almost indefinitely, so that a whole act of a theatrical performance could be taken, if necessary, on a single film. As a matter of fact, most of the scenes that Messrs. Armat and Jenkins carried South with them were vaudeville and specialty "turns," of only a few minutes each, that had been caught on the fly, so to speak, in Washington and New York. One virtue of the new phantoscope camera by which these young men take their pictures is that it operates with a very large aperture and makes it possible to take snap-shot pictures at a high rate of speed in the theatre itself, and in many other places where heretofore photography has been impossible. Another feature of this rather remarkable camera is that it has no shutter nor light-interrupting device.

4448

ITS MYSTERIOUS OPERATION.

The operation of the phantoscope itself is silent and almost mysterious. The screen used with the present machine is twenty feet square. Upon this the lens is focused, and, without other warning than a soft whir in the darkness, a figure leaps out into the lighted space. With gliding step it moves forward to the edge of the "stage" and gathers its flowing draperies in either hand with a sweeping curtsy. It throws back its head with a saucy jerk, flipping the point of a black lace mantilla away from the dark Spanish face, and then, with a familiar flash and smile of those dark Spanish eyes, whirls away in graceful, passionate, but withal stately, mazes of the "Santiago." Of course, it is Carmencita, the little witch of Madrid, who has had so many poor imitators and not a single equal. But no matter whether Carmencita has a worthy successor or not, she is preserved, let us hope, to posterity in the magic records of the phantoscope.

There are any number of other scenes and per-

formances which have already been caught in the phantom camera, including the acrobatic death of Svengali from the burlesque "Trilby." greatest drawing card of the phantoscope at Atlanta is likely to be the Southern plantation scene which the inventors intend to catch on the spot and reproduce in the \$5,000 building which they are now erecting for the accommodation of their machine. Besides this, they will keep in touch with the advancing theatrical season in New York and reproduce all the hits of the hour from the variety and specialty performances. It is likely that the exposition, by means of the phantoscope, will get a glimpse of a Mexican bull fight, in spite of Mr. Hosea Ballou and his humane society. As soon as the exposition management was assured of the success of the phantoscope they said that they wanted one of the inventors to go down to old Mexico and catch a bull fight in his machine. In this event, no matter how many bulls were slaughtered or how many picadors were tossed over the barriers, it is hard to see how even Mr. Ballou could interfere with the performance unless he got out extradition papers for the wicked phantoscope camera while it was absorbing the bull fight on Mexican soil. Mr. Jenkins says that in case the bull fight by proxy is made one of the features of the Atlanta Exposition he has a scheme for turning it into a big outdoor entertainment. The management intends to have a large artificial "mist bank" produced on certain nights, to be illuminated by colored lights after the manner of the great McManies fountain at the World's Fair. If this is done, Mr. Jenkins says he can use it as a background and throw his bull fight against it for the benefit of the public.

4451

MAY REPRODUCE THE BIG FIGHT.

It is quite possible also that the phantoscope may figure largely in the Fitzsimmons-Corbett fight at Dallas. Lanky Bob has expressed himself as much disgusted at the way Corbett and his partner Brady have gobbled all the privileges appertaining to the show, including among other things the use of the eidoloscope, a machine with which it is intended to reproduce the big fight all over the country. In view of the fact that the phantoscope can do all and more than is claimed for the eidoloscope, Mr. Jenkins will open negotiations with Fitzsimmons to get a privilege for the phantoscope at the big show. If this is done, the whole country will ultimately get a chance to see a faithful reproduction of what promises to be one of the greatest fight in the history of the ring.

Both the inventors of the phantoscope are young J. Francis Jenkins is a native of Ohio, but a citizen of the world. He climbed glaciers in Alaska, punched cattle in the Panhandle, slept out of doors in the semi-tropical skies of old Mexico and has had quite a number of adventures for so young a man. In conversation with the writer Mr. Jenkins said he had been thinking of and working on his pet invention for six years past. The first suggestion came to him one day while mountain climbing in Oregon. While sitting down to rest on a ledge, with his gun across his knees, he saw in the canyon below him a gang of Chinese axemen blazing a line of new railroad. It was so far off that the sound of the axes did not even reach him, and in the clear mountain air it looked like a great living picture which ought to have been saved for the entertainment of those who could not do their own mountain climbing in search of the picturesque, "From that moment," said Mr. 4454

Jenkins, "I think I can date my search for the phantoscope." Mr. Jenkins came to Washington more than a year ago, and has been regularly employed as a stenographer at the lifesaving service division of the treasury. He has worked on his device outside of office hours, and has at length been rewarded with success.

OTHER INVENTIONS BY MR. JENKINS.

It was about eight months ago that he met his present colleague, Mr. George Armat, who is also an inventor and better supplied with that great requisite for inventions-ready money. them they projected the phantoscope. But this is not the only machine which Mr. Jenkins has on hand. He has already perfected an instrument for transferring a photographic image by wire. is perhaps the most weird and uncanny of all his contrivances. By means of it the image of a man in New York may be thrown upon a ground-glass screen in Philadelphia. This would seem at first sight a very near approach to witchcraft, which a few centuries ago would have probably brought the inventor to the stake. As it now stands, it requires a cable of several strands and the intention of the inventor is now turned toward accomplishing the same thing by means of a single wire. Another of his devices is intended to produce the same mental effect by presenting a succession of colors to the eye as is given by presenting musical notes to the ear. By this means the inventor proposes to produce what he calls "a symphony of colors," and by a certain arrangement of rapidly moving lights to give all the enjoyments of an exquisitely arranged piece of music. This machine, in its crude state, has been shown to some of the inventor's friends. and the effects produced are said to be remarkable.

4457

Defendants' Exhibit No. 49, Dyer Interview in Show World of April 4, 1908.

April 4, 1908. THE SHOW WORLD

11

EDISON COUNSEL TALKS OF MOVING PICTURE WAR.

Orange, N. J., March 28.—Frank L. Dyer, general counsel for the Edison Manufacturing Company, upon being asked by a Show World representative if he cared to make any further statement in reference to the moving picture situation, said:

4460

"My attention has just been called to a statement issued by Mr. Kleine and appearing The Show World of March 21, I have nothing to retract from my original characterization of the Latham patent a 'a joke in the business.' The Latham patent was granted August 26, 1902, and according to the people who are now affirming its validity it has been infringed by everyone since that time. Why was it not litigated in the final hearing as was done with the Edison camera patent? Obviously, because its original owners thought so little of its validity that they did not care to incur the expense of a suit.

4461

"I have been familiar with this patent ever since its issue, and a gentlemen very closely connected with the corporation by which it was originally owned is a very close personal friend of mine. To oblige him, I several times looked into the Latham patent in the hope that I might be able to persuade myself that it possessed value, but I could not see anything in it. Furthermore, when Mr. Latham's application was pending in the patent office he became involved in interference with

Thomas Armat, and the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia decided in that interference that Armat and not Latham was the first inventor. As a result of this controversy all that Latham was able to obtain from the patent office was a very limited patent, and even as to this limited subject matter I regard the patent as utterly invalid.

ADMITS KLEINE IS CORRECT; BUT-

"Mr. Kleine's statement that the suit on the first reissue of the Edison film patent was withdrawn is correct. Two reissues were granted on

4463

the same day, one on the camera and the other on the film, and two suits were simultaneously brought on these patents against the American Mutoscope & Biograph company. It was subsequently discovered that a slight clerical error had been made in the first reissue patent for the film, which had to be corrected by again reissuing It was for this reason that the suit on the first reissue of the film patent was discontinued. The procuring of the second reissue necessitated delay, and it was therefore decided to proceed independently with the suit on the camera patent. The camera patent having been sustained by the Court of Appeals, carries with it a very strong presumption in favor of the patent on the film. Mr. Kleine appears to believe that I have doubts concerning this film patent, but in this he is mistaken. and the suits against him are to be pressed with every possible vigor. There are always short delays in the starting of litigations of this sort, but when a suit is once at issue it can be speedily terminated. This is what I propose to do.

"THE FACTS" PAMPHLET UNFAIR.

"My attention also has been directed to a small pamphlet entitled 'The Facts,' issued by the American Mutoscope & Biograph company. This is so obviously unfair that it hardly requires serious consideration. The Court of Appeals did say, in referring to Mr. Edison, that 'he was not the inventor of the film,' but in this statement they did not use the word 'film' in its present acceptance. They meant simply that Mr. Edison was not the inventor of the original negative film on which the moving pictures are taken, because that film had been independently developed by the Eastman Kodak company. The court has nowhere said that Mr. Edison was not the inventor of the modern moving picture film, and the patent office has granted him a patent on that very thing. It should also be noted that the patent on the film was reissued by the patent office after the decision of the Court of Appeals and when the patent office had before it the entire record and all of the moving picture art.

"Finally, I observe that in this pamphlet the statement is made that the Edison company and others have been compelled to adopt the camera of the Latham patent No. 707,924, which is the patent previously referred to. It is sufficient to say as to this statement that the Latham patent relates to a projecting machine and in no way

refers to a camera."

4466



DEFENDANTS' EXHIBIT No. 50 Photograph of Feeding Mechanism Atlanta Machine



UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS, FOR THE SECOND CIRCUIT.

No. 248-October Term, 1915.

Argued April 4, 1916.

Decided June 15, 1916.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, Complainant-Appellant,

VS.

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company, Defendants-Appellees. Appeal from the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York.

Before Coxe and ROGERS, Circuit Judges, and Au-GUSTUS N. HAND, District Judge.

Appeal from the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York. This cause comes here on an appeal from a decree entered by the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York, dismissing the complainant's bill. The complainant is the owner of the patent in suit (No. 707,934) for Motion Picture Projecting Machines, and on June 12, 1912, granted to the Precision Machine Company a license to manufacture and sell these machines for not less than \$150 per machine, and at a royalty of \$5 to the licensor eac', with the further restriction that each machine put out by the licensee shall be used (1) solely for exhibiting or projecting motion pictures containing the invention of reissued Letters Patent No. 12,192 leased by a licensee of the licensor while it owns said patent and (2) upon

other terms to be fixed by the licensor and complied with by the user while the said machine is in use and while the licensor owns said patents (which said other terms shall only be the payment of a royalty or rental to the licensor while in use).

The license also provided that a plate should be attached to each

machine and such plate was attached in the following form:

" Mfr's		Special
"Serial No.		License No.
" 3557	SIMPLEX	3666
" made TI	HE PRECISION MACHINE COM	PANY
" by	Patented.	
"No. 576,185, M	arch 2, 1897. No. 580,749, Apri	il 13, 1897.
"No. 586,953, Ju	ly 20, 1897. No. 673,329, Apr.	
"No. 673,992, M	THE MORE COLL A	gust 26, 1902.
11	No. 722,382, March 10, 1903.	

"The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use "it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of Reissued "Patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents "Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while "it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion "Picture Patents Company and complied with by the user while it "is in use and while the Motion Picture Patents Company owns said "patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the "right to use this machine.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, New York, N. Y., U. S. A."

Reissued Letters Patent No. 12,192 expired subsequent to the execution of the license by the complainant to the Preci-

sion Machine Company, thereupon the Universal Film Manufacturing Company made a film embodying that invention, and sold it to the Universal Film Exchange, who furnished it for use to the Prague Amusement Company. The 72nd Street Amusement Company became the lawful possessor of a moving picture machine made by the Precision Machine Company. The defendant, Prague Amusement Company, leased the machine from the 72nd Street Amusement Company and used the film furnished to it by the Universal Film Exchange upon the machine in question. The use of the film upon the machine is the act of infringement alleged. The defendants set up three defenses: (1) That the restrictions in the contract of license to the Prague Amusement Company are contrary to public policy, illegal and void, and the machine, therefore, is free from the burden of them. (2) That there is no proof of joint infringement as alleged. (3) That the patent is invalid.

MELVILLE CHURCH and GEORGE F. SCULL, Counsel for Appellant. EDMUND WETMORE, JOHN B. STANCHFIELD and OSCAR W. JEFFERY, Counsel for Appellees.

AUGUSTUS N. HAND, District Judge:

It was held by this Court in the case of Victor Talking Machine Company vs. Straus, 230 Fed., 449, that a license to use a patented talking machine upon payment of an initial royalty to cover the life of the patent and upon condition that the licensee purchase all sound records to be used with the machine from the licensor was valid, even though the license provided that title to the machine should pass to the licenser upon the expiration of the patent if the terms of the license had been observed. The present case differs from that case because here the title to the machine at once passed by the sale of the projecting machine to the 72nd Street Amusement Company. We think this case comes within the doctrine of Bauer vs. O'Donnell. 229 U. S., 1, rather than that of Dick vs. Henry, 224 U. S., 1. This is especially true since the enactment of the so-called Clayton Bill, which provides:

"That it shall be unlawful for any person engaged in commerce, in the course of such commerce, to lease or make a sale or contract for sale of goods, wares, merchandise, machinery, supplies, or other commodities, whether patented or unpatented, for use, consumption or resale within the United States, or any territory thereof * * * on the condition, agreement or understanding that the lessee or the purchaser thereof shall not use or deal in the goods, wares, merchandise, machinery, supplies or other commodities of a competitor or competitors of the lessor or seller, where the effect of such lease, sale, or contract for sale or such condition, agreement or understanding may be to substantially lessen competition or tend to create a monopoly in any line of commerce."

This Act was not regarded as applicable either in the District Court, or in this Court, in the case of Victor Talking Machine vs. Straus, supra, because that case was decided upon a demurrer to the bill upon the face of which no substantial restraint of competition or monopoly in any line of commerce appeared. Here, however, the testimony shows that the complainant has a monopoly under its patents of projecting machines so that if no films not manufactured by complainant can be used upon these machines, the complainant will obtain an absolute monopoly of the film business in spite of the fact that its patent on films has expired. If the prohibitions of the Clayton Act mean anything at all, this case falls within them and the restrictions as to the use of films other than complainant's with the projecting machines are, therefore, void. Indeed, the Report of the Judiciary Committee of the House concerning the Clayton Act shows that its purpose is to reach the film monopoly. A portion of this report, quoted by Judge Dyer in his opinion in United States vs. United Shoe Machinery Co., 227 Fed., 507, is as follows:

"Where the concern making these contracts is already great and powerful, such as the United Shoe Machinery Company, the American Tobacco Company, and the General Film Company, the exclusive or 'tying' contract made with local dealers becomes one of the greatest agencies and instrumentalities of monopoly ever devised by the brain of man. It completely shuts out competitors, not only from trade in which they are engaged already, but from the opportunities to build up trade in any community where these great and powerful conditions are appearing under this system and practice."

Judge Sessions has held in the case of Elliott Machine Co. vs. Center, 227 Fed., 126, that this act applies to contracts made before the passage of the act, and we think his opinion justified by decisions of the Supreme Court on which he relied. Louisville & Nashville Railroad Co. vs. Mottley, 219 U. S., 467; Armour Packing Co. vs. United States, 209 U. S., 56; Philadelphia, Baltimore & Washington R. R. vs. Schubert, 224 U. S., 603. In the case of United States vs. United Shoe Machinery Company, 227 Fed., 507, Judge Dyer reached the same conclusion in regard to the Clayton Act.

Inasmuch as the contract with the Precision Machine Company involved and restrained interstate commerce, it makes no difference that the particular act of infringement occurred within the State of New York, and the prohibitions of the Clayton Act apply.

Marienelli vs. United Booking Offices, 227 Fed., 170; Nash vs. United States, 229 U. S., 373.

It is urged that the defendant, Prague Amusement Company, cannot rely upon the license and repudiate its terms. It does not rely upon the license, but obtained a lease of the machine from the owner, the 72nd Street Amusement Company, which acquired it after having paid the purchase price, and thus freed the machine from the unlawful restrictions. The remarks of this Court upon the motion for a stay pending the decision of the appeal from Judge Dickinson's decree in the criminal prosecution for violation of the Sherman Act, 225 Fed., 800, would be applicable to the case if the restrictions we have held il-

legal had been held valid. Then it would have been true that the defendant who was using the patented article under a license could not question the validity of the patent, or claim it lacked invention. These remarks are not applicable when the restrictions are held invalid and the article having been thus freed from all restrictions may be used at the will of the licensee.

In view of the foregoing considerations it is unnecessary to discuss the other defenses raised by the defendants, and the decree dismissing the bill is affirmed. At a Stated Term of the United States Circuit Court of Appeals, in and for the Second Circuit, held at the Court Rooms in the Post Office Building in the City of New York, on the 25th day of June, one thousand nine hundred and sixteen.

Present—Hon. Alfred C. Coxe,
Hon. Henry Wade Rogers,
Circuit Judges.
Hon. Augustus N. Hand,
District Judge.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, Complainant-Appellant,

VS.

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, et al.,

Defendants-Appellees.

Appeal from the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York.

This cause came on to be heard on the transcript of record from the District Court of the United States, for the Southern District of New York, and was argued by counsel.

ON CONSIDERATION WHEREOF, it is now hereby ordered, adjudged and decreed that the decree of said District Court be, and it hereby is, affirmed with costs.

H. W. R.

It is further ordered that a mandate issue to the said District Court in accordance with this decree.

ENDORSED

UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS SECOND CIRCUIT

M. P. P. Co. vs. Universal Film Co.

ORDER FOR MANDATE.

United States Circuit Court of Appeals Second Circuit Filed Jun 26, 1916 William Parkin, Clerk.

UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS

FOR THE SECOND CIRCUIT.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,
Complainant-Appellant,

VS.

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company,

Defendants-Appellees.

PETITION FOR REHEARING.

TO THE HONORABLE THE JUDGES OF THE UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE SECOND CIRCUIT.

And now comes the complainant-appellant and prays that it may be accorded a rehearing and an adjudication upon the following point, referred to in its brief on this appeal, but not passed upon by this Court in its opinion—to wit:

That the use of the Precision machine by defendant Prague Amusement Company, without first complying with the condition as to royalty or rental imposed by complainant on users of machines manufactured under its licenses, constituted an infringement of the patent in suit.

No further hearing in this Court is sought by complainant upon any other point.

A rehearing and an adjudication upon this point is urged for the

following reasons:

Complainant's contention as to infringement, as shown by its brief on this appeal, has always been that the use of the Precision machine by the defendant, Prague Amusement Company, was an unauthorized one, and therefore in infringement of the Latham patent, because in using it said defendant did not comply with the following conditions of use imposed by complainant upon users of machines manufactured under its license:

License Condition No. 1. The machine shall be used only with motion pictures leased from a manufacturer licensed by the complainant.

License Condition No. 2. The user of the machine shall pay to the complain int a royalty or rental (to be fixed by the complainant) while the machine is in use.

Non-compliance by defendant, Prague Amusement Company, with either condition resulted in an unauthorized use of the machine, and,

therefore, an infringement by it of the Latham patent.

Apparently this Court does not understand this to be the situation, because, in the statement of the case forming part of its opinion, after referring to the motion picture film procured from the Universal concerns by the defendant, Prague Amusement Company, and used by it on the Precision machine, it says:

"The use of the film upon the machine is the act of infringement alleged."

This is not the fact, and the finding of this Court, based thereon, as to the issue of infringement, is erroneous and unjust to complainant.

It is true that the Universal concerns were not licensees of the complainant, and that, therefore, the motion pictures procured from them by the Prague Amusement Company were not leased by the latter from a licensee of the complainant.

It is true also that in using these motion pictures on the Precision machine the Prague Amusement Company was guilty of non-com-

pliance with the terms of License Condition No. 1.

Its non-compliance, however, did not end there, because it did not pay royalty or rental to complainant before using the Precision machine. In neglecting to do so it was guilty also of non-compliance with License Condition No. 2, and, therefore, of unauthorized use of the Precision machine and of infringement of the Latham patent.

And its co-defendants were contributing infringers, not merely because the film or motion pictures furnished by them were not manufactured by a licensee of complainant, but because, regardless of this fact and on account of its non-compliance

with License Condition No. 2, the use of the Precision machine was unauthorized and an act of infringement, to which these co-defendants knowingly contributed by "supplying motion pictures for use on such" machine, which was "being used without license" (Record, pages 746-9).

THERE IS NO JUSTIFICATION, THEREFORE, FOR THE SELECTION MADE BY THIS COURT OF NON-COMPLIANCE BY THE PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY WITH LICENSE CONDITION NO. 1, AS THE BASIS FOR THE CHARGE OF INFRINGEMENT AND FOR DETERMINING THE ISSUE OF INFRINGEMENT ACCORDINGLY.

The basis for the charge of infringement is, as before stated, non-compliance by the Prague Amusement Company with the License Conditions Nos. 1 and 2 or either of them. In other words, use of the machine in such circumstances was outside the license to which the machine was subject, and, therefore, just as much an act of infringement as if the machine had never been licensed.

The determination of the issue of infringement in favor of detendants cannot be predicated, as this Court predicates it, upon a finding in their favor as to only one of the complainant's two license conditions. It can be predicated only upon a finding in their favor as to both.

This Court, in finding for defendants as to License Condition No. 1, and therefore as to the infringement issue, has entirely overlooked and therefore makes no adjudication whatever as to non-compliance with License Condition No. 2, which is of paramount importance on this issue.

The issue of infringement cannot be properly determined, without such an adjudication, and complainant is clearly entitled to it as a matter of right. A denial of it would be tantamount to a denial of justice to complainant.

If such adjudication be in its favor, the adjudication of the infringement issue must, of necessity, also be in its favor.

LICENSE CONDITION No. 2 IS NOT OPEN TO THE CRITICISM EXPRESSED BY THIS COURT WITH SPECIFIC REFERENCE TO LICENSE CONDITION No. 1, WHICH LATTER IT VIEWS AS VOID.

The two license conditions are essentially different, License Condition No. 1 is in terms and in effect a purely restrictive one,

as to use of the machine. License Condition No. 2 is not, in any sense, a restrictive one as to use of the machine or otherwise. It therefore does not come within the prohibitions of the Sherman Act or Clayton Act or the decision in Bauer vs. O'Donnell or the decisions in other cases dealing with conditions imposed by patent owners on purchasers or users of machines manufactured or licensed by such patent owners.

The royalty or rental condition expressed in License Condition No. 2 is the commonest kind of a license condition imposed by patent owners and the legality of such a condition has never been questioned, under anti-trust laws, or any other laws dealing with matters of public policy, and this for the reason, among others, that it obviously

has no effect in restraining trade or lessening competition.

These statements are perhaps unnecessary. They are made simply out of abundant caution, first, because the general language in that part of the opinion of this Court referring to the case of Bauer vs. O'Donnell is possibly open to the inference that it is the view of this Court that License Condition No. 2 is, like License Condition No. 1, void and non-enforceable under that decision, and in view of the Sherman Act or Clayton Act or both of them, and, second, because that part of the opinion of this Court referring specifically to License Condition No. 1, particularly when it is taken in connection with the concluding paragraph of its opinion, is possibly open to the inference that it is the view of this Court, and that this Court intended to decide, that License Condition No. 1, being, in its opinion, void, the complainant's license agreement, of which it forms part, is void as a whole, which of course would include License Condition No. 2, also forming part of such license agreement.

This, however, is not complainants' understanding of the Court's

opinion.

"It is laid down by Chitty as the result of the cases, and his authorities support the statement, 'that agreements in restraint of trade, whether under seal or not, are divisible; and, accordingly, it has been held that when such an agreement contains a stipulation which is capable of being construed divisibly, and one part thereof is void as being in restraint of trade, whilst the other is not, the Court will give effect to the latter, and will not hold the agreement to be void altogether.' "Oregon R. and N. Co. vs. Winsor, 20 Wall., 64-72.

See also U. S. Co. vs. Griffin Co. (126 Fed., 364).

Another matter for consideration by this Court in this connection is that if the complainant's license agreement with the Precision Machine Company had been held to be void as a whole by this Court, the Precision Machine Company's manufacture and sale of machines would have been unlawful ab initio and the use of every machine purchased from it unlawful and an infringement because legally unauthorized.

THE DEFENDANT, PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY, TOOK THE PRECISION MACHINE WITH NOTICE OF AND SUBJECT TO LICENSE CONDITION No. 2.

License are of two kinds—express and implied. The license in this case applying to the Precision machine is an express license. Defendant now prefers to call it an implied license, which it is not. Its reason for doing so apparently is to get away, if possible, from the express license and bring this case within certain decisions dealing with the sale of machines by patent owners without notice of any restrictions as to use or otherwise, in which the courts have held that there was an implied license without any limitation or condition as to use or otherwise. That, however, is not the situation here. The license was not implied but express. It could not be otherwise in view of the patent plate notice.

It was interjected into this case, as an affirmative defense, by defendants, in an amendment to their answer, which was really in the nature of a plea (Record, pp. 21-21; p. 33, fol. 99; p. 34, fol. 102; pp. 46, 47, fols. 137-140), and the burden was upon the defendants to prove, not simply the license, but compliance with its conditions by the Prague Amusement Company (Watson vs. Smith, 7 Fed., 350; Jones vs. Berger, 58 Fed., 1006; Foster's Fed. Pr., 4th Ed., Vol. I, p. 545) or, failing that, that it had no notice of such conditions.

The defendants did not discharge this burden.

On the other hand, the defendants' pleadings and proofs show that the defendant, Prague Amusement Company, had notice of License Condition No. 2, or, certainly, notice sufficient to put it on inquiry concerning it.

The answer as originally filed (Record, p. 10) did not rely upon any license at all but simply on the defenses of invalidity and noninfringement usually presented in patent cases. Later, however, the license was pleaded, as an affirmative defense, by amendment to the answer, in the course of which the defendants, referring to the use of the Precision (or "Simplex") machine by the Prague Amusement Company, averred that

"The said use of said machine was, as the defendants allege, under a license from the plaintiff under said letters patent No. 707.934."

In their proofs the defendants, in support of this averment, showed, among other things, that the Precision machine, at the time the defendant Prague Amusement Company leased it had upon it the patent plate referred to in the opinion of the Court. The notice on this plate, which is necessarily brief, contained a general statement of License Condition No. 1 and a general reference to License Condition No. 2, to wit, "other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company and complied with by the user while it (the machine) is in use" (Record, page 1073).

The defendant also offered in evidence, in further support of the averment just referred to, a copy of the license from the complainant to the Precision Machine Company, under which the Precision machine was manufactured and sold, and which license, referring to the "other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company and complied with by the user while it (the machine) is in use," provided that the same "shall only be the payment of a royalty or rental to the licensor while in use" (Record, page 1074).

In the course of the trial defendants' counsel stated (Record, page

47):

"We claim that we have a license by reason of the fact that that machine was manufactured under a license."

Considering simply the defendants' pleadings and proofs, there can be no question that the defendant, Prague Amusement Company, took the Precision machine subject to the patent plate notice, and that it knew that the "other terms" in this notice meant royalty or rental.

There is no proof to the contrary, but, even if there were, ignorance of these facts would not relieve the defendant Prague Amusement Company from the necessity of compliance with License Condition No. 2 because it could have readily ascertained the facts, including the amount of the rental or royalty, by proper inquiry, which, under the authorities, it was its duty to make:

"The terms of the license which the seller gave to the purchasers were sufficient to put them upon inquiry, and it is quite obvious that the means of knowledge were at hand, and that if they had made the least inquiry they would have ascertained that their grantor could not give them any title to use the machine beyond the period of fourteen years from the date of the original letters-patent, as he was only a licensee and never had any power to sell a machine so as to withdraw it indefinitely from the operation of the protection secured by the patent" (Mitchell vs. Hawley, 16 Wall., 544).

This opinion was quoted with approval in Dick vs. Henry, 224 U. S., 1.

"Notice of facts which would incite a man of ordinary prudence to an inquiry under similar circumstances is notice of all the facts which a reasonably diligent inquiry would disclose" (Coder vs. M'Pherson, 152 Fed., 951, 953).

"The defense of a bona fide purchase includes the concept of a lack of notice and the burden of pleading and of proof of this absence of notice rests upon the one making such a defense. * *

"The facts already stated and others not necessary to detail, demonstrate that the appellant, at and before the time the conveyances were made to it, was not without notice of facts which should have incited a person of reasonable prudence to an inquiry, and this inquiry, would have disclosed the fraudulent character of the entries" (Stonebraker-Zea Cattle Co. vs. United States, 220 Fed., 99, 101).

"The contractors, Campbell & O'Keefe, knew at the time they made the contract for the erection of the building that Miss Patterson was not the owner of the lots, but only a lessee of Mrs. Mellon. When they entered into the contract they were chargeable with notice, not only of all matters which they knew, or which were of record, but of all facts which by the exercise of reasonable diligence they could have ascertained. By inquiry of Mrs. Mellon, the lessor, they could have learned the terms of the lease before they entered into the contract. Coder vs. McPherson, 152 Fed., 951, 82 C. C. A., 99; 2 Pomeroy's Eq. Jurisprudence (3d Ed.), 597. Failing to exercise reasonable diligence to ascertain that fact, they cannot appeal to the conscience of the chancellor and plead their failure to exercise reasonable diligence as an excuse. Ketchum vs. St. Louis, supra" (Mellon vs. St. Louis Union Trust Co., 225 Fed., 693, 703).

If the proofs concerned with License Condition No. 2, and knowledge or ignorance thereof, and compliance or non-compliance therewith, by defendant, Prague Amusement Company, are defective, the defendants, and not the complainant, must be prejudiced thereby.

In this connection attention is called to the fact that, notwithstanding the burden was upon defendant to show compliance, or explain non-compliance, with License Condition No. 2 by defendant, Prague Amusement Company, the complainant proffered testimony (Record, pages 50-56; pages 63, 64, X21), which was rejected by the Court below on defendants' objection of irrelevancy and immateriality, and which, if admitted, would have disclosed the details of complainant's licensing system (Crown Cork & Seal Co. vs. Brooklyn Bottle Stopper Co., 172 Fed., 225, 228; affirmed by the Circuit Court of Appeals of this circuit, 200 Fed., 592), and also actual knowledge thereof by the trade, generally, including the defendants here. The proofs proffered by complainant, though technically unnecessary if the burden be on defendant, as complainant contends it is under the authorities, to prove lack of knowledge, was clearly relevant and material, particularly when it is considered that practically all of the motion picture projecting machines used in the United States are used under complainant's license system (Record, page 60, Re-d. Q146).

But, whether complainant be right or wrong in its view as to where the burden rested, it should not be prejudiced in this Court by the absence of testimony as to these facts. If this Court should disagree with the complainant as to where the burden rested, then, in view of the rejection by the Court below of the testimony proffered by complainant, this Court should, in justice to complainant, remand this case to the Court below for further proceedings as to this branch

of it.

IMPORTANCE TO COMPLAINANT OF THE REHEARING AND ADJUDICATION SOUGHT BY THIS PETITION.

In one respect this case is like that of Dick vs. Henry. In the latter it appears that the complainant's machines were disposed of substantially without profit to it and that that fact was considered by the Court as having an important bearing upon the determination of the case, because it showed that the complainant had a substantial financial interest in the license restriction which limited the use of the machines to ink to be supplied by it and on which it realized its real profit. This is identically the situation here. All the complainant receives from the manufacturers licensed by it to make and sell machines is \$5.00 per machine or approximately 3% of the minimum selling price, \$150 (Record, page 1079, fol. 3235; page 1084, fol. 3251), so that its machines are disposed of to users substantially without profit to itself in the sale thereof, complainant being dependent for its real profit (under License Condition No. 2) upon the continuing royalty or rental payable to it by the users of such machines. No sane patent owner would accept, and it is inconceivable that a court would place him in a position where he would have to accept, as the financial return for the use of his invention by others, a paltry 3% of the selling price of machines embodying it, particularly if the invention be as important as that of the Latham patent which, as shown by the proofs, is embodied in practically every moving picture machine used in the United States (Record, page 60, Re-d. Q146).

The importance of a patent owner's financial interest, in license conditions imposed by him, in the determination of infringement suits based on such conditions, is further evidenced by the opinion in Bauer vs. O'Donnell, in which the complainant's lack of financial interest in the maintenance of re-sale prices was commented on by the Supreme Court and was one of the controlling factors in the decision against the complainant.

In Conclusion.

Your petitioner believes that if an opportunity be granted it for full argument on the point heretofore stated, it will be able to convince this Court that the decision in this case should not be allowed to stand.

And your petitioner, as in duty bound, will ever pray.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS CO.,

By George F. Scull,

Counsel for Petitioner.

MELVILLE CHURCH, of Counsel.

George F. Scull certifies that he is of counsel for the Motion Picture Patents Company, petitioner and appellant in the above entitled cause; that in his opinion the above petition is well founded, both in point of law and on question of fact, and is deserving of judicial consideration, and that the same is not interposed for delay.

New York, June 26, 1916.

GEORGE F. SCULL.

UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS,

FOR THE SECOND CIRCUIT.

No. 248-October Term, 1915.

Petition filed June 26, 1916.

Decided Aug. 4, 1916.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, Complainant-Appellant,

VS.

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company, Defendants-Appellees. Appeal from the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York.

Before Coxe and Rogers, Circuit Judges, and Au-GUSTUS N. HAND, District Judge.

PETITION FOR REHEARING.

PER CURIAM:

The appellant seeks a re-argument upon the question whether the Prague Amusement Company did not infringe by not complying with the condition as to royalty or rental imposed by the appellant on users of machines manufactured under its licenses.

The sale of the projecting machine carried with it, in the absence of any restriction, an implied license of use. *Mitchell* vs. *Hawley*, 16 Wall., at page 547. The notice which was attached attempted to impose the condition that it should only be used with films containing the invention of a patent which had ex-

company." The condition as to use only with the specified films we have held illegal for the reasons given in our opinion heretofore endered. The condition as to which re-argument is desired relating to a continuing royalty was not brought to the notice of the defendants and cannot, therefore, be regarded as limiting the implied license which accompanied the sale of the machine. (Cortelyou vs. Johnson, 107 W. S., 196; Lovell-McConnell Mfg. Co. vs. Waite Auto Supply Co., 198 Fed., 133.) The clause "upon other terms to be fixed" in no way specified the nature of these terms and in particular in no way mentioned a continuing royalty, or the amount thereof. There is no evidence, however, that any "other terms" were ever fixed or demanded. We think such a vague condition insufficient to limit the mplied right of user passing to the vendee of the machine, and consequently unenforceable.

The appellant offered evidence at the trial, which was excluded, that the Prague Amusement Company had knowledge of the terms apon which the Motion Picture Patents Company was accustomed to grant permission to use a machine put out by its licensed manufacturers, but this evidence, had it been allowed, would not have obviated the difficulty with the form of the notice. If the terms that were customary had been known, there was nothing in the notice or elsewhere to prevent the appellant from varying the royalty as to nature for amount. Such a condition is too indefinite for enforcement, though a notice of a precise amount to be paid might be perfectly good. The notice affixed to the machine was so broad as to allow the patentee to fix any terms he might choose and to be repugnant to all rights which the owner of the machine might have obtained by his purchase and

implied license.

The motion for reargument is denied.

At a stated Term of the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, held at the court rooms in the Post Office Building, City of New York, on the 14th day of August, 1916.

Present—Hon. Alfred C. Coxe,
Hon. Henry Wade Rogers,
Circuit Judges.
Hon. Augustus N. Hand,
District Judge.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, Complainant-Appellant,

VS.

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company, Defendants-Appellees.

A petition for a rehearing having been filed herein by counsel for appellant.

Upon consideration thereof it is

ORDERED that said petition be and hereby is denied.

ALFRED C. COXE, U. S. J.

Endorsed:—United States Circuit Court of Appeals, Second Circuit.— Filed Aug. 16, 1916. William Parkin, Clerk. United States of America, Southern District of New York.

I, William Parkin, Clerk of the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, do hereby certify that the foregoing pages, numbered from 1 to 1512 inclusive (2 vols.), contain a true and complete transcript of the record and proceedings had in said Court, in the case of Motion Picture Patents Company, against Universal Film Manufacturing Company, as the same remain of record and on file in my office.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, I have caused the seal of said Court to be hereunto affixed, at the City of New York, in the Southern District of New York, in the Second Circuit, this 28th day of September, in the year of our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Sixteen, and of the Independence of the said United States the One Hundred and Forty-first.

WM. PARKIN, Clerk.

(Seal)

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, 88:

[Seal of the Supreme Court of the United States.]

The President of the United States of America to the Honorable the Judges of the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, Greeting:

Being informed that there is now pending before you a suit in which Motion Picture Patents Company is appellant, and Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company are appellees, which suit was removed into the said Circuit Court of Appeals by virtue of an appeal from the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York, and we, being willing for certain reasons that the said cause and the record and proceedings therein should be certified by the said Circuit Court of Appeals and removed into the Supreme Court of the United States.

Do hereby command you that you send without delay to the said Supreme Court, as aforesaid, the record and proceedings in said cause, so that the said Supreme Court may act thereon as of right and according to law ought to be done.

Witness the Honorable Edward D. White, Chief Justice of the United States, the first day of November, in the year of our Lord one thousand nine hundred and sixteen.

JAMES D. MAHER, Clerk of the Supreme Court of the United States.

[Endorsed:] File No. 25,545. Supreme Court of the United States, No. 715, October Term, 1916. Motion Picture Patents Company vs. Universal Film Manufacturing Company et al. Writ of Certiorari. United States Circuit Court of Appeals, Second Circuit. Filed Nov. 10, 1916. William Parkin, Clerk.

In the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit.

No. 248.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, Appellant,

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM Exchange of New York, and Prague Smusement Company, Appellees.

Stipulation.

It is hereby stipulated and agreed that the Transcript already filed in the Clerk's office of the Supreme Court of the United States with

the Petition for the Writ of Certiorari, be taken as a return to the Writ of Certiorari issued out of said Supreme Court on the 1st day of November, 1916.

MELVILLE CHURCH,

Counsel for Appellant.
OSCAR W. JEFFREY,

Counsel for Appellees.

Endorsed: In the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit. Motion Picture Patents Company, Appellant, against Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York and Prague Λmusement Company, Appellees. No. 248. Stipulation. United States Circuit Court of Appeals, Second Circuit. Filed Nov. 10, 1916. William Parkin, Clerk.

To the Honorable the Supreme Court of the United States, Greeting:

The record and all proceedings whereof mention is within made having lately been certified and filed in the office of the Clerk of the Supreme Court of the United States, a copy of the stipulation of counsel is hereto annexed and certified as a return to the writ of certiorari issued herein.

Dated New York November 10, 1916.

[Seai United States Circuit Court of Appeals, Second Circuit.]

WM. PARKIN,

Clerk of the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit.

[Endorsed:] 715/25545. United States Circuit Court of Appeals, Second Circuit. Motion Picture Patents Co. v. Universal Film Mfg. Co. Return to Certiorari.

[Endorsed:] File No. 25,545. Supreme Court U. S. October Term, 1916. Term No. 715. Motion Picture Patents Co., petitioner, vs. Universal Film Manufacturing Co. et al. Writ of certiorari and return. Filed November 13, 1916.



INDEX TO CITATIONS.

PETITION.	
PAG	E
Bauer vs. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1	8
Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1	8
Victor Talking Mach. Co. vs. Straus, 230 Fed.,	
449	8
BRINF.	
Bauer vs. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1	0
De La Verne Mach. Co. vs. Featherstone, 147	
U. S., 209-222	27
Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1	30
Shauer vs. Alterton, 151 U. S., 607-622	28
Wood vs. Carpenter, 101 U. S., 135-141	28



Supreme Court of the United States 1

OCTOBER TERM, 1916.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,

Petitioner,

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING
COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM
EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and
PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY,
Respondents.

In Equity.

2

To Wetmore & Jenner, Counsel for Respondents:

Gentlemen:

Please take notice that a petition, praying for a writ of certiorari to the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, a copy of which is hereto annexed, will be submitted to the Supreme Court of the United States, for the decision of that Court thereon, on the 23rd day of October, 1916, at the Court Room, in the Capitol, in the City of Washington, District of Columbia, at the opening of the Court on that day, or as soon thereafter as counsel may be heard.

Dated, New York, October 6, 1916.

MELVILLE CHURCH,

Counsel for Petitioner, McGill Building, Washington, D. C.

Service acknowledged this 6th day of October, 1916.

WETMORE & JENNER, Counsel for Respondents.

SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES, OCTOBER TERM, 1916.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,

Petitioner.

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING
COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM
EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and
PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY,
Respondents.

In Equity.

Petition for Writ of Certiorari from the Supreme Court of the United States to the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit.

To the Honorable, the Chief Justice and Associate Justices of the Supreme Court of the United States:

Your petitioner, MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, respectfully represents:

I. That it is a corporation duly created and existing under the laws of the State of New Jersey.

II. That it is the owner of patent No. 707,934, granted to Woodville Latham, August 26, 1902 (upon an application filed June 1, 1896), for Improvements in Projecting Kinetoscopes, or what

have come to be known as "Motion Picture Projecting Machines." This patent describes and claims novel means for moving a quantity of motion picture film having considerable bulk through a motion picture machine, with an intermittent movement, in such manner as not to expose the film to excessive strain and wear and tear, and with a regular, uniform and accurate feed.

III. That your petitioner has not itself made, used or sold machines embodying the invention of said patent, but has sought to derive its profit from said patent (1) by licensing the manufacture of such machines by others on payment of a small royalty, and (2) by licensing the use of such machines by the purchasers thereof on payment of a small additional royalty while in use.

IV. That pursuant to its above outlined policy petitioner, on June 12, 1912, granted to the Precision Machine Company, a corporation of New York, the right and license

(page 1077, C. C. A. Record)

"to manufacture and sell motion picture exhibiting or projecting machines embodying one or more of the inventions described in the said United States Letters Patent Nos. * * * 707,934 * * *

coupled with the restriction that each machine put out by the licensee should be sold only

(page 1080)

"under the restriction and condition that such exhibiting or projecting machines shall be used 10

(1) solely for exhibiting or projecting motion pictures containing the invention of reissued letters patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the licensor while it owns said patents, and (2) upon other terms to be fixed by the licensor and complied with by the user while the said machine is in use and while the licensor owns said patents (which other terms shall only be the payment of a royalty or rental to the licensor while in use),"

provided that

11

(page 1081)

"the licensee further covenants and agrees that the licensee will attach in a conspicuous place to each and every exhibiting and projecting machine of the licensee's manufacture, sold by the licensee, except for export, after the date hereof, a plate showing plainly not only the dates of the letters patent under which the said machine is licensed, but also the following words and figures:

12

SERIAL NO.
PATENTED

NO.

The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of reissued patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Pat-

ents Company and complied with by the user while it is in use and while the Motion Picture Patents Company owns said patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the right to use this machine."

The license further provided that the licensee manufacturer should pay the licensor

(page 1079)

"on each such machine capable of exhibiting or projecting by transmitted light, motion pictures on film of a width greater than approximately one inch (1 in.) a royalty of five dollars (\$5)."

V. That every machine put out by the Precision Machine Company under its said license from your petitioner had attached to it the agreed license plate bearing the words set forth in the license, said license plate purporting to have emanated from your petitioner (page 1073).

VI. That the respondent, Prague Amusement Company, since November 2, 1914, has, without payment of royalty to your petitioner, been using a machine procured from 'petitioner's licensee, Precision Machine Company, and bearing the license plate aforesaid (pages 63, 736), in connection with unlicensed film made by the respondent, Universal Film Manufacturing Company (pages 736, 746), the said unlicensed film so made having been delivered to the respondent, Universal Film Exchange of New York (pages 736, 748) and by the

16 latter delivered to the respondent, Prague Amusement Company for use by the latter, as aforesaid.

VII. That notice of the fact that Precision Machine Company was a licensee of your petitioner and of the terms and conditions under which alone the said machine put out by it under its license could be used, was brought home to the respondent, Prague Amusement Company, by the notice itself on the license plate attached to said machine, and that specific notice that the said machine was being used in an infringing manner was given to all the respondents (pages 745, 746, 748, 753, 735 and 59), but thereafter and in disregard of said notice respondents continued their said infringing practices.

17

VIII. That on the 18th day of March, 1915, your petitioner filed in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, its bill of complaint against the respondents, Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company, alleging infringement of its said patent.

IX. That the said respondents duly filed their answer to said bill of complaint, and at the trial urged in defense, inter alia, a license in the Prague Amusement Company to use the said machine furnished it by Precision Machine Company, and the alleged illegality of the conditions of use imposed by the agreement between your petitioner and Precision Machine Company and by the license plate attached to the said machine itself.

X. That respondent's contentions were sustained by the District Court, Judge Hough presiding, and petitioner's bill was dismissed; and that the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Cir-

20

21

cuit, on appeal, affirmed said decree (page 1499) and denied an application for a rehearing (page 1512).

Copies of the opinions filed in the District Court and in the Court of Appeals are appended hereto, the opinion of the District Court being marked "Exhibit A"; the opinion of the Court of Appeals on the original hearing being marked "Exhibit B," and the opinion of the Appellate Court on the rehearing being marked "Exhibit C."

XI. That consideration of these opinions shows that petitioner's contention as to infringement is and has always been that the use of the Precision machine by the respondent, Prague Amusement Company, was an unauthorized one and therefore an infringement of the Latham patent, because, in using said machine the Prague Amusement Company did not comply with the following conditions of use imposed by petitioner upon users of machines, namely:

License Condition No. 1. That the machine should be used only with motion pictures leased from a manufacturer licensed by the petitioner; and

License Condition No. 2. That the user of the machine should pay to petitioner a royalty or rental (to be fixed by petitioner) while the machine was in use.

XII. That non-compliance by respondent, Prague Amusement Company, with either condition, resulted, as petitioner claims, in an unauthorized use of the machine, and therefore an infringement of the Latham patent.

Both of these conditions the Court of Appeals holds are unlawful and unenforceable, and as constituting no lawful restriction upon the right of use of the machine purchased from the Precision Company.

XIII. That your petitioner contends that the said conditions of use imposed are lawful within the principles laid down by this Court in Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1, and by the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit in Victor Talking Machine Co. vs. Straus, 230 Fed., 449; while the Court of Appeals holds that the Dick case is inapplicable and that the case of Bauer vs. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1, is controlling, especially in view of the Clayton Act, of October 15th, 1914 (38 Stat. at L., pages 730, 731).

XIV. That the Victor Talking Machine case referred to is now before this Court for review, on certiorari, being case No. 374 on the docket, and your petitioner contends that if the principles held by the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit to be controlling in that case are upheld by this Court they will require a determination favorable to petitioner in this case if the same is taken up by this Court for review.

XV. For these reasons and because the decree of the Court of Appeals in this case is believed to have been erroneous and contrary to right, your petitioner prays that a writ of certiorari may be issued out of and under the seal of this Court directed to the said United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit demanding the said

Court to certify and send to this Court, on a day certain to be therein designated, a full and complete transcript of the record of all proceedings in said Circuit Court of Appeals in the said case therein entitled Motion Picture Patents Company. complainant-appellant, vs. Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company, defendants-appellees, and which was In Equity, No. 248, of the October Term, 1915, of said Court, to the end that the said case may be certified and determined by this Court as provided in Section 240 of the Act of Congress entitled "An act to codify, revise and amend the laws relating to the judiciary, approved March 3, 1911," and your petitioner further prays that the said decree of said Circuit Court of Appeals in the said case, and every part thereof, may be reversed by this Court, and that your petitioner may have such other and further relief or remedy in the premises, as to this Court may seem appropriate and in conformity with the judiciary act.

Dated, New York, N. Y., October 6, 1916.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,

By George F. Scull,

Vice President.

MELVILLE CHURCH,
Counsel for Petitioner.

25

26

28 State of New York County of New York ss.:

George F. Scull, being duly sworn, deposes and says that he is the Vice President of Motion Picture Patents Company, the petitioner herein; that he has read the foregoing petition by him subscribed and knows the contents thereof and that the same is true of his own knowledge except as to the matters therein stated to be on information and belief, and as to those matters he verily believes it to be true.

29

GEORGE P. SCULL.

Sworn to and subscribed before me this 6th day of October, 1916.

GEORGE E. BROWN,
Notary Public, Richmond County,
Certificate filed in New York County No. 179,
(Seal)
New York Register No. 7223,
Term expires March 30, 1917.

DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

Southern District of New York.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COM-PANY

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTUR-ING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE and PRAGUE AMUSE-MENT COMPANY.

32

33

Final hearing in Equity; action on Patent 707934

GEORGE F. Scull and Melville Church, Esqrs., for Plaintiff;

OSCAR W. JEFFERY and EDMUND WETMORE, Esqrs., for Defendants.

Memorandum.

This decision is filed because the discussion at bar has not been preserved by the stenographer, and it seems advisable to put on file my reasons for decision in order that the decree may not be misleading.

The following facts appeared: Plaintiff is the owner by assignment, not only of the patent in suit, but of many other patents relating to what is commonly called the Moving Picture art.

It entered into an agreement with the Precision Machine Company by which it gave the Machine Company "subject to the covenants, conditions and stipulations hereinafter expressed, the right and license * * * to manufacture and sell picture exhibiting or projecting machines embodying" the invention described in the patent in suit and many other patents. One of the covenants assumed by the Precision Company in respect of machines so sold was that it would "pay royalties as follows," viz., \$5 on each machine of one type, and 3% of the "net retail selling price" on machines of other types.

Under the contract this was the only royalty or remuneration collectible by the plaintiff herein from the Precision Company.

The latter Company, however, further covenanted that every machine (of the type here presented) made by it "in the United States" should be "sold " " " under the restriction and condition that such " " machine shall be used solely for exhibiting or projecting motion pictures containing the inventions of re-issued Letters Patent No. 12192, leased by a licensee of the (plaintiff herein) while it owns (the patent in suit), and upon other terms to be fixed by (the plaintiff herein) and complied with by the user while the said machine is in use and while the (plaintiff owns the patent in suit),—which other terms shall only be the payment of a royalty or rental to the (plaintiff herein) while in use."

The Precision Company further agreed to attach on each machine so manufactured and sold, a plate showing the Letters Patent under which the said

machine was licensed (including the patent in suit), and also the following legend:

"The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of Reissued Patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Moion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company and complied with by the user while it is in use and while the Motion Picture Patents Company owns said patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the right to use this machine."

Subsequent to the execution of this agreement Reissued Letters Patent 12,192 expired and the invention thereby covered became public property.

Subsequent to such expiration of said patent the defendant Universal Film Manufacturing Company made a reel of film which embodied the invention of said expired re-issued Letters Patent. That film it sold to the defendant the Universal Film Exchange, which in turn furnished it for use to the defendant the Prague Amusement Company.

Also subsequent to the expiration of said reissued Letters Patent the 72d Street Amusement Company was lawfully in possession of a machine suitable for exhibiting picture film made and sold by the Precision Machine Company embodying the invention of the patent in suit and bearing upon it a plate with the inscription hereinabove set forth.

The 72d Street Amusement Company had as

...

between itself and the Precision Company bought and paid for said machine, and its possession and use thereof were, so far as the Court is informed, lawful and uncomplained of. On November 2d, 1914, the defendant Prague Amusement Company leased from the 72d Street Amusement Company certain property including said machine, and thereafter used said machine for the exhibition of the picture film hereinabove referred to as made by one defendant, sold to the second and leased to the third.

41

This act, viz: the exhibition of said film through, with or by means of said machine, is the act of infringement complained of.

Being of opinion that the limitation on the use of a patented article sold in the manner above set forth is invalid, I have directed a decree to be entered dismissing the bill on that ground alone.

Briefly stated, my reasons for this opinion are that there is no distinction, logical or intelligible, to be drawn between a limitation upon the re-sale of a patented article and a limitation upon the use of a patented article contained in a condition subsequent to the contract of sale.

42

Referring to the decisions, it was my opinion that Bauer vs. O'Donnell is so inconsistent with Dick vs. Henry that the latter case can no longer be considered as stating the law. This belief I had intimated already in Great Atlantic &c. Co. vs. Cream of Wheat Co., 224 Fed. Rep., at page 559.

The foregoing is a summary of what occurred at bar.

Subsequent to decision rendered, defendants offered a final decree for signature, and plaintiff moved for a re-argument.

The substance of the error said to have been committed is a failure to distinguish between the property in a corporeal thing, eg. a patented machine, and that incorporeal hereditament which is the use of the aforesaid corporeal substance, or the machine.

That error (in the sense of belonging to the minority) may have been committed herein is quite likely, but the point has not been overlooked.

It remains my opinion:

(1) That such attempted severance between corporeal and incorporeal property cannot be lawfully maintained under the patent laws,—nor asserted in an action on the patent,—whatever may be the ultimate limit of permitted contractual arrangements; and also

(2) That the attempted reservation or severance here shown is specifically bad in that it attempts not only to confine the use of a machine once sold and delivered to a particular kind of film, but further seeks to render that use subject to any and every restriction or regulation which the patent owner may from time to time choose to make or vary.

The reargument is denied and decree signed.

Dec. 31, 1915.

C. M. HOUGH, U. S. D. J. 44

AR

Exhibit B.

UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS,

FOR THE SECOND CIRCUIT.

No. 248-October Tenm, 1915.

Argued April 4, 1916.

Decided June 15, 1916.

Before—COXE and ROGERS, Circuit Judges, and AUGUSTUS N. HAND, District Judge.

47

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS
COMPANY,
Complainant-Appellant,

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY, Defendants-Appellees. Appeal from the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York.

48

Appeal from the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York. This cause comes here on an appeal from a decree entered by the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York, dismissing the complainant's bill. The complainant is the owner of the patent in suit (No. 707,934) for Mo-

tion Picture Projecting Machines, and on June 12, 1912, granted to the Precision Machine Company a license to manufacture and sell these machines for not less than \$150 per machine, and at a royalty of \$5 to the licensor each, with the further restriction that each machine put out by the licensee shall be used (1) solely for exhibiting or projecting motion pictures containing the invention of reissued Letters Patent No. 12,192 leased by a licensee of the licensor while it owns said patent and (2) upon other terms to be fixed by the licensor and complied with by the user while the said machine is in use and while the licensor owns said patents (which said other terms shall only be the payment of a royalty or rental to the licensor while in use).

The license also provided that a plate should be attached to each machine and such plate was attached in the following form:

" Mfr's "Serial No.

Special License No.

" 3557 .

" by

SIMPLEX

3666

"made THE PRECISION MACHINE COMPANY Patented.

> "No. 576,185, March 2, 1897. "No. 580,749, April 13, 1897.

"No. 586,953, July 20, 1897.

"No. 673,329, April 30, 1901.

"No. 673,992, May 14, 1901.

"No. 707,934, August 26, 1902.

"No. 722,382, March 10, 1903.

" The sale and purchase of this machine gives "only the right to use it solely with moving pictures

"containing the invention of Reissued Patent No. "12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture "Patents Company, the owner of the above patents "and reissued patent, while it owns said patents, "and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion "Picture Patents Company and complied with by "the user while it is in use and while the Motion "Picture Patents Company owns said patents. The "removal or defacement of this plate terminates the "right to use this machine.

" MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, New York, N. Y., U. S. A."

Reissued Letters Patent No. 12,192 expired subsequent to the execution of the license by the complainant to the Precision Machine Company, thereupon the Universal Film Manufacturing Company made a film embodying that invention, and sold it to the Universal Film Exchange, who furnished it for use to the Prague Amusement Company. 72nd Street Amusement Company became the lawful possessor of a moving picture machine made by the Precision Machine Company. The defend-54 ant, Prague Amusement Company, leased the machine from the 72nd Street Amusement Company and used the film furnished to it by the Universal Film Exchange upon the machine in question. The use of the film upon the machine is the act of infringement alleged. The defendants set up three defenses: (1) That the restrictions in the contract of license to the Prague Amusement Company are contrary to public policy, illegal and void, and the machine, therefore, is free from the burden of them.

(2) That there is no proof of joint infringement as alleged. (3) That the patent is invalid.

MELVILLE CHURCH and GEORGE F. SCULL, Counsel for Appellant.

EDMUND WETMORE, JOHN B. STANCHFIELD and OSCAR W. JEFFERY, Counsel for Appellees.

AUGUSTUS N. HAND, District Judge:

It was held by this Court in the case of Victor Talking Machine Company vs. Straus, 230 Fed., 449, that a license to use a patented talking ma- 56 chine upon payment of an initial royalty to cover the life of the patent and upon condition that the licensee purchase all sound records to be used with the machine from the licensor was valid, even though the license provided that title to the machine should pass to the licensor upon the expiration of the patent if the terms of the license had been observed. The present case differs from that case because here the title to the machine at once passed by the sale of the projecting machine to the 72nd Street Amusement Company. We think this case comes within the doctrine of Bauer vs. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1, rather than that of Dick vs. Henry, 224 U.S., 1. This is especially true since the enactment of the so-called Clayton Bill, which provides:

"That it shall be unlawful for any person engaged in commerce, in the course of such commerce, to lease or make a sale or contract for sale of goods, wares, merchandise, masupplies, or other commodities, chinery. whether patented or unpatented, for use, con-

sumption or resale within the United States, or any territory thereof * * * on the condition, agreement or understanding that the lessee or purchaser thereof shall not use or deal in the goods, wares, merchandise, machinery, supplies or other commodities of a competitor or competitors of the lessor or seller, where the effect of such lease, sale, or contract for sale or such condition, agreement or understanding may be to substantially lessen competition or tend to create a monopoly in any line of commerce."

59

60

This Act was not regarded as applicable either in the District Court, or in this Court, in the case of Victor Talking Machine vs. Straus, supra, because that case was decided upon a demurrer to the bill upon the face of which no substantial restraint of competition or monopoly in any line of commerce appeared. Here, however, the testimony shows that the complainant has a monopoly under its patents of projecting machines so that if no films not manufactured by complainant can be used upon these machines, the complainant will obtain an absolute monopoly of the film business in spite of the fact that its patent on films has expired. If the prohibitions of the Clayton Act mean anything at all this case falls within them and the restrictions as to the use of films other than complainant's with the projecting machines are, therefore, void. Indeed, the Report of the Judiciary Committee of the House concerning the Clayton Act shows that its purpose is to reach the film monopoly. A portion of this report, quoted by Judge

Dyer in his opinion in *United States* vs. *United Shoe Machinery Co.*, 227 Fed., 507, is as follows:

"Where the concern making these contracts is already great and powerful, such as the United Shoe Machinery Company, the American Tobacco Company, and the General Film Company, the exclusive or "tying" contract made with local dealers becomes one of the greatest agencies and instrumentalities of monopoly ever devised by the brain of man. It completely shuts out competitors, not only from trade in which they are engaged already, but from the opportunities to build up trade in any community where these great and powerful conditions are appearing under this system and practice."

Judge Sessions has held in the case of Elliott Machine Co. vs. Center, 227 Fed., 126, that this act applies to contracts made before the passage of the act, and we think his opinion justified by decisions of the Supreme Court on which he relied. Louisville & Nashville Railroad Co. vs. Mottley, 219 U. S., 467; Armour Packing Co. vs. United States, 209 U. S., 56; Philadelphia, Baltimore & Washington R. R. vs. Schubert, 224 U. S., 603. In the case of United States vs. United Shoe Machinery Company, 227 Fed., 507, Judge Dyer reached the same conclusion in regard to the Clayton Act.

Inasmuch as the contract with the Precision Machine Company involved and restrained interstate commerce, it makes no difference that the particular act of infringement occurred within the State

62

of New York, and the prohibitions of the Clayton Act apply.

Marienelli vs. United Booking Offices, 227 Fed., 170; Nash vs. United States, 229 U. S., 373.

It is urged that the defendant, Prague Amusement Company, cannot rely upon the license and repudiate its terms. It does not rely upon the license, but obtained a lease of the machine from 65 the owner, the 72nd Street Amusement Company, which acquired it after having paid the purchase price, and thus freed the machine from the unlawful restrictions. The remarks of this Court upon the motion for a stay pending the decision of the appeal from Judge Dickinson's decree in the criminal prosecution for violation of the Sherman Act. 225 Fed., 800, would be applicable to the case if the restrictions we have held illegal had been held valid. Then it would have been true that the defendant who was using the patented article under a license could not question the validity of the pat-66 ent, or claim it lacked invention. These remarks are not applicable when the restrictions are held invalid and the article having been thus freed from all restrictions may be used at the will of the licensee.

In view of the foregoing considerations it is unnecessary to discuss the other defenses raised by the defendants, and the decree dismissing the bill is affirmed.

UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS,

FOR THE SECOND CIRCUIT.

No. 248-October Tenm, 1915.

Petition filed June 26, 1916. Decided Aug. 4, 1916.

Before—Coxe and Rogers, Circuit Judges, and Augustus N. Hand, District Judge.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS
COMPANY,
Complainant-Appellant,

VS.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY, Defendants-Appellees. 68

Appeal from the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York.

69

PETITION FOR RE-HEARING.

PER CURIAM:

The appellant seeks a re-argument upon the question whether the Prague Amusement Company did not infringe by not complying with the condition as to royalty or rental imposed by the appellant on users of machines manufactured under its licenses.

The sale of the projecting machine carried with it, in the absence of any restriction, an implied license of use. Mitchell vs. Hawley, 16 Wall., at page 547. The notice which was attached attempted to impose the condition that it should only be used with films containing the invention of a patent which had expired "and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company." The condition as to use only with the specified films we have held illegal for the reasons given in our opinion heretofore rendered. The condition as to which a re-argument is desired relating to a continning royalty was not brought to the notice of the defendants and cannot, therefore, be regarded as limiting the implied license which accompanied the sale of the machine. (Cortelyou vs. Johnson, 207 V. S., 196; Lovell-McConnell Mfg, Co. vs. Waite Auto Supply Co., 198 Fed., 133.) The clause "upon other terms to be fixed" in no way specified the nature of these terms and in particular in no way mentioned a continuing royalty, or the amount thereof. There is no evidence, moreover, that any "other terms" were ever fixed or demanded. think such a vague condition insufficient to limit the implied right of user passing to the vendee of the machine, and consequently unenforceable.

The appellant offered evidence at the trial, which was excluded, that the Prague Amusement Company had knowledge of the terms upon which the Motion Picture Patents Company was accustomed to grant permission to use a machine put out by its licensed manufacturers, but this evidence, had it been allowed, would not have obviated the difficulty with the form of the notice. If the terms that were customary had been known, there

71

was nothing in the notice or elsewhere to prevent the appellant from varying the royalty as to nature or amount. Such a condition is too indefinite for enforcement, though a notice of a precise amount to be paid might be perfectly good. The notice affixed to the machine was so broad as to allow the patentee to fix any terms he might choose and to be repugnant to all rights which the owner of the machine might have obtained by his purchase and implied license.

The motion for re-argument is denied.

SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES,

OCTOBER TERM-1916.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,

Petitioner.

VS.

In Equity.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY, Respondents.

BRIEF FOR PETITIONER.

The following points are urged in support of the foregoing petition:

I. Petitioner did not make, or sell the machine whose use is claimed to be an infringement. It was made by a manufacturing concern that was authorized by the petitioner to make it and that was authorized by the petitioner to sell it for use only upon compliance with certain conditions specified and brought home to the purchaser.

II. The patented machine is a machine for projecting motion pictures and is usable only in connection with motion picture films consisting of long strips of transparent material of indefinite length bearing a succession of photographic impressions of objects in motion.

III. The purchaser of the machine was apprised by the license plate attached to the machine that he could not lawfully use it (1) save with motion picture film leased by a licensee of petitioner and (2) "upon other terms to be fixed" by the petitioner "and complied with by the user while it is in use."

IV. The first condition relating to the use of the machine only in connection with film obtained from specially designated parties has been decided by the Court of Appeals to be a condition violative of the Clayton Act and, therefore, void and unenforcible.

Petitioner, however, denies that this is so, and contends that such condition is lawful and enforcible under the decision of this Court in Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1, and that the Clayton Act is inapplicable, because the petitioner is not "engaged in commerce," within the meaning of the Act, but is a mere holding company whose sole property, patents, is of an incorporeal, intangible nature (De La Verne Machine Co. vs. Featherstone, 147 U. S., 209-222) and not susceptible of being made the subject of commerce, within the meaning of the Act, or of the Constitutional provision of which the Act is predicated.

V. The second condition, however, relating to the right of the purchaser to use the patented machine only upon compliance with "other terms to be fixed" by petitioner, is not contended, by any one, to be violative of the Clayton Act and depends of for its validity upon its intrinsic merits.

It is not denied that the name plate and the matter inscribed upon it—still on the machine—

were brought to the purchaser's attention, but it is urged by the respondents and by the Courts below, that the notice itself is insufficient because in its reference to the "other terms to be fixed" by the petitioner and to be "complied with by the user while the machine is in use," it does not set out, in detail, what those terms and conditions are.

In this Court citation of authority is hardly needed for the proposition that

"Whatever is notice enough to excite attention and put the party on his guard and call for inquiry is notice of everything to which such inquiry might have led. When a person has sufficient information to lead him to a fact, he shall be deemed conversant of it."

Wood vs. Carpenter, 101 U. S., 135-141. Shauer vs. Alterton, 151 U. S., 607-622.

When, therefore, the purchaser of the machine in question saw from a perusal of the name plate notice that he could only use it "upon terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company and complied with by the user while it is in use" and saw from the plate that the notice was subscribed "Motion Picture Patents Company, New York, N. Y., U. S. A.," he was put upon inquiry and placed under the legal obligation to seek the Motion Picture Patents Company, at the address given, and ascertain upon what terms he could lawfully use the machine obtained by him from that company's licensee, and he cannot now be heard to say that he did not know what those terms were, when upon inquiry he could have read-

ily ascertained; and to proceed with a use of the machine that was not authorized was to infringe the patent.

The record clearly shows that the terms of use which the prosecution of such an inquiry would have developed would have been

"only the payment of a royalty or rental to the licensor while in use,"

as specifically provided in petitioner's license agreement with the Precision Machine Company, the manufacturer and seller of the machine purchased (page 1081, fol. 3241).

VI. This case, therefore, presents for the determination of this Court the following questions of great public concern, viz.:

- 1. Whether or not a corporation which is a mere patent-holding company, and that neither makes, uses nor sells the patented article, but only licenses others to make and sell such article under restrictions as to use, is "engaged in commerce," within the meaning of the Clayton Act and of the Commerce Clause of the Constitution of which it is predicated.
- 2. Whether or not the restrictions as to the use of a patented article imposed upon a purchaser at the time of the purchase of such article, recognized by this Court as valid and enforcible in Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1, are still valid and enforcible under the later decision of this Court in Bauer vs. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1.

3. Whether or not notice of conditions or restrictions as to use applied to a patented article, such as present in this case, is sufficient to put a purchaser of the article upon inquiry and to charge him with notice of the facts which such inquiry would have developed, and render him guilty of infringement for a use without compliance with such conditions.

Since the case of Straus et al. vs. Victor Talking Machine Company (No. 374), now before this Court on certiorari, calls for an interpretation by this Court, for the first time, of the Clayton Act, and its bearing upon the rights of patents owners, and also calls for a pronouncement as to the effect of the decision in Bauer vs. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1, upon the decision in the earlier case of Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1, it is conceived that the Court may not be unwilling to also take and review this case, which presents much the same questions upon only a slightly different state of facts.

An authoritative determination by this Court of these very much discussed questions will render patent owners more certain and secure in their rights than at present.

> MELVILLE CHURCH, Counsel for Petitioner.





OCT 18 1916

JAMES D. MAHER

OLERA

No.715

Supreme Court of the United States.

OCTOBER TERM, 1916.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,

Petitioner,

against

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE OF NEW YORK, and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY,

Respondents.

Brief for Respondents in Opposition to Petition for Writ of Certiorari.

EDMUND WETMORE,
OSCAR W. JEFFERY,
Counsel for Respondents.



SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES, OCTOBER TERM, 1916.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,
Petitioner,

AGAINST

Universal Film Manufacturing
Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and
Prague Amusement Company,
Respondents.

BRIEF FOR RESPONDENTS IN OPPOSITION TO PETITION FOR WRIT OF CERTIO-RARI.

This suit was brought to restrain and recover for the alleged infringement of Letters Patent to Latham No. 707,934 for an apparatus for projecting (exhibiting) motion pictures.

The charge of infringement was that the defendant, Prague Amusement Company, used a machine which incorporated the patented apparatus in infringement of the patent, and that the other defendants joined in such infringement by furnishing the film used on the machine. The plaintiff licensed the machine to be built under the patent in suit and other patents owned by it, but it is alleged that the use complained of was

contrary to the terms of a notice of certain restrictions which notice was contained on a plate attached to the machine in question. In other words, the charge of infringement is that the defendants jointly violated restrictions on the use of the machine, which were caused to be placed thereon by the plaintiff, the licensor.

The facts and circumstances on which the complaint is based are set forth with conciseness and clearness in the memorandum opinion of Judge Hough, before whom the case was tried in the District Court (Petition for Writ, pp. 11-14), and therefore will not be repeated here, but certain salient and important particulars are to be noted.

First. The machine was sold by the Precision Machine Company, the original licensee to manufacture, and the plaintiff, the licensor, so contemplated. The license agreement between plaintiff and the Precision Company and the notice placed on the machine both refer to the "sale and purchase of this machine";

SECOND. The notice plate on the machine contained the restriction, first, that it be used *solely* for exhibiting motion pictures containing the invention of Reissued Patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the plaintiff.

THIRD. Patent No. 12,192 had expired at the time the alleged acts of infringement occurred.

FOURTH. The second part of the restriction was that the machine was to be used upon other terms to be fixed by the plaintiff, but no other terms were ever fixed and no notice of other terms was given to any of the defendants.

FIFTH. The machine in question, the use of which was alleged to infringe the patent, was leased by the defendant, Prague Amusement Company from the 72d Street Amusement Company which purchased it from the Precision Machine Company, and neither the Prague

Amusement Company, nor either of the other defendants, was a party to the license agreement between the plaintiff and the Precision Machine Company, nor was the Prague Amusement Company's title to the machine in any way subject to the terms of the said license agreement.

Sixth. The Prague Amusement Company had a license to use the machine, but that license was an *implied* license and *not* a *contractual* license (see Opinion of Circuit Court of Appeals, Petition, p. 24, fol. 70).

In the District Court proof was taken at considerable length on the issue of the validity of the patent in suit, but neither the District Court nor the Circuit Court of Appeals considered it. The defendants denied the validity of the patent, but inasmuch as the Courts below held that the proof did not show acts of infringement, they found it unnecessary to decide the issue presented on the pleadings and proofs as to the validity of the patent.

The only questions presented by this case are those raised by the particular facts involved. No new question is presented of importance to any part of the public except the parties, which has not already been passed upon by this Court.

I

This case is not controlled by the principles to be applied in Victor Talking Machine Company vs. Straus, 230 Fed., 449, now before this Court for review. In that case the notice on the phonograph carefully and explicitly stated that the machine was only licensed to be used, and the terms of the notice made it clear that there was no sale. On

that account the Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit held that it came within the doctrine of Henry vs. Dick, 224 U.S., 1. In the present case there was, as was held by Judge Hough and affirmed by the Circuit Court of Appeals, an absolute unqualified sale of the projecting machine. As was stated in the opinion of the Circuit Court of Appeals herein, referring to Victor Talking Machine Company vs. Straus (Petition, p. 19):

"The present case differs from that case because here the title to the machine at once passed by the sale of the projecting machine to the 72nd Street Amusement Company."

(The defendant, Prague Amusement Company leased the machine along with its moving picture theatre from the 72nd Street Amusement Company).

There can be no doubt that this finding of fact of both the Courts below is correct; and it is not understood that the plaintiff denies that the machine here in question was sold.

On account of this distinction of fact the Circuit Court of Appeals held that this case comes within the doctrine of Bauer vs. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1, rather than that of Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1. In Bauer vs. O'Donnell, the notice was "this package is licensed by us for sale and use at a price not less than one dollar" and this Court said "to call the sale 'a license to use ' is a mere play upon words."

In the present case the notice reads that the machine can be used only on "terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company." Non constat, that those terms may not consist of a restriction on the price to be charged by the Seventy-second Street Amusement Company or the Prague Company for using the machines for exhibition purposes, or on the price to be charged by them for the machine when re-sold or leased, which would bring it directly within the holding in Bauer vs. O'Donnell.

There being no doubt that the projecting machine in question was actually sold, this case clearly involves merely an application of the principle enunciated in Bauer vs. O'Donnell, and that principle was correctly applied by the Circuit Court

of Appeals.

There is no proof whatever in the record to sustain the statement in the Petition (p. 3, par. III.) concerning the manner in which the Petitioner has sought to derive its profits, and particularly there is no basis in the evidence for the assertion that the business of the Petitioner is the gathering of royalties from the users of machines made under its patents.

II.

The Circuit Court of Appeals held that the doctrine of Bauer vs. O'Donnell was especially applicable in this case since the enactment of Section 3 of the Clayton Act, which prohibits the placing of conditions upon the sale of patented or unpatented articles which prevent the purchasers or lessees of the same from using or dealing in the supplies or commodities of the competitors of the lessor or seller, where the effect of the restriction may be to substantially lessen competition or create a monopoly. The Circuit Court of Appeals finds (Petition, p. 20), as matter of fact, that

"the testimony shows that the complainant has a monopoly under its patents of projecting machines so that if no films not manufactured by complainant can be used upon these machines, the complainant will obtain an absolute monopoly of the film business in spite of the fact that its patent on films has expired."

The plaintiff through its licenses to manufacturers and users of film is engaged in and controls commerce among the

several states. The making of the license agreements by virtue of which all motion picture projecting machines in the United States were manufactured was a participation in commerce.

The plaintiff was found by Judge Dickinson in the Government's suit against it and others to have violated the Sherman Act by imposing unlawful monopolies and restraints upon trade by means of its license agreements (R., pp. 1107-1109). The Petitioner's position, therefore, is that although it may be restraining commerce (lawfully or unlawfully), it is not "engaged" in commerce and is therefore free to commit with impunity the acts which the statute expressly prohibits.

If the Clayton Act can be evaded by the plaintiff on the pretext that it is not engaged in commerce in the sense of the language of the Act, then any owner of a patent who desires to place restrictions on the use of a patented article may avoid the law by the subterfuge of having the patent held by a person or corporation which merely grants licenses under the patent, but does not make, sell or use the patented article.

The condition or restriction in this case clearly violates the spirit and letter of the Clayton Act, which was aimed not only at all restrictions of the nature of the one here involved, but also at the plaintiff itself and the very restriction it now seeks to enforce, as is pointed out in the opinion of the Circuit Court of Appeals (Petition, p. 20).

III.

Irrespective of the Clayton Act the restriction that the film used on the machine be film containing the invention of Reissued Edison Patent No. 12,192, and be leased by a licensee of plaintiff (under that patent) was of no effect, because the Reissued Patent had expired prior to the defendants' alleged violation of the restriction, and the film (known

as the Edison film) was then open to the public to make and sell, and any attempt to further monopolize it was unlawful.

To impose as a condition of using the Latham patent that it shall only be used with films made in accordance with the Edison patent after the expiration of said last named patent, and sold by a licensee of the plaintiff after the power to grant a license thereunder had ceased to exist, is simply to extend the term of the Edison patent beyond the period allowed by law. It is not the same as if the Edison film had never been patented at all, because the consideration for granting the Edison patent and the condition on which it was granted was that the Edison film which was the subject of that patent, should become public property when the patent expired, and it is a most substantial invasion of that right of property if it cannot be used in a machine for which it is primarily adapted unless it is furnished by a particular class of makers or dealers, viz. : the plaintiff's licensees. It will be noted that in Dick vs. Henry the ink and other supplies furnished by the plaintiff in that case were none of them patented or, so far as the record showed, ever had been.

The only interest which the Motion Picture Patents Company had in the machine was that it was the owner by assignment of certain unexpired patents relating to certain features or mechanical combinations which said machine contained. It held no patents which singly or together covered the whole machine. The suit was brought for the alleged infringement of one of these patents relating to the feeding mechanism of the machine, known as the Latham patent. The act of infringement consisted in using the machine with a reel of film containing the invention of the Reissued Patent mentioned in the notice and not leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company. This use was at an exhibition in New York, March 17, 1915; the said Reissue patent expired in August, 1914, and the invention thereby covered became public property.

Subsequent to such expiration the defendant, the Universal Film Manufacturing Company, made the film complained of and sold it to the defendant, the Universal Film Exchange, which in turn furnished it for use to the defendant, the Prague Amusement Company.

As the patent for the invention covered by the Reissued patent had expired and the invention had become public property not only before the film in controversy was used, but before it was even made, the first restriction attempting to limit the use of said film is absolutely void. The patent has ceased to exist and cannot be the subject of a license, and the attempt to license the use of said film under said patent by any person is not only without effect, but an unlawful attempt to extend the monopoly of the patent and a trespass upon the rights of the public.

IV.

The condition that the machine could be used "on other terms to be fixed" is void and unenforceable for several reasons, as was held by the Courts below.

(1) The notice is too indefinite to be enforced. Judge Hough says that the notice seeks to render the use of the machine "subject to any and every restriction and regulation which the patent owner may from time to time choose to make or vary" (Petition, p. 15, fol. 44).

The notice does not specify any particular terms. It does not state that the terms are to remain permanent when fixed. It does not limit the time when they are to be made or their nature. If it is enforceable, then the plaintiff has the right to require the possessor of the machine to pay fifty cents royalty

one day and a dollar royalty the next, and he will be compelled to inquire each day before using the machine whether those terms have been changed or not.

In Cortelyou vs. Johnson, 207 U. S., 196, it was held that notice of the restriction must be brought home to the defendant, and that the burden of proof in this respect rests upon the plaintiff.

"The purchaser of an article made under a patent and sold originally subject to restrictions as to place or method of use is not bound by such restrictions unless he buys with notice of them, as such restrictions do not run with the goods and are obligatory only upon those persons who take the article with knowledge of the conditions."

Henry vs. Dick, 224 U.S., 42.

In Lovell-M'Connell Mfg. Co. vs. Waite Auto Supply Co., 198 Fed. Rep., 133, Judge Brown held that the doctrine of acceptance of conditions of the kind here in question "requires at law specific proof that the conditions were brought to the purchaser's notice."

(2) No notice of other terms fixed by the plaintiff was ever given to the Prague Amusement Company, nor is there any by the any terms ever were fixed evidence that plaintiff for the use of the machine. The Petition refers to a condition in the agreement with the Precision Machine Company providing for a royalty or rental for the use of the machine, but, as already stated, the defendant Prague Amusement Company was not a party to that agreement, had no notice of it and does not hold the machine subject to its It leased its machine from the 72nd Street Amusement Company, to whom it was sold by the Precision Machine Company, and thereby obtained an implied license to use the machine, but there was no agreement to which it was a party or privy by which it was to pay any royalty whatever.



The machine was put upon the market and offered to the public under conditions that conferred upon the buyer all the right and title which an absolute sale conveys, and an implied license was conveyed to the purchaser so far as related to the patents enumerated at the head of the plate. The only condition sought to be imposed on the purchaser was that contained on the plate. There was nothing thereon to show or to intimate that the use of the machine was subject to a continuing license fee. The statement contained on the plate and the fact that the machine was bought and paid for and possession thereof acquired from a party having the unquestioned right to that possession, estops the plaintiff from claiming that the machine is not licensed, and it cannot limit that estoppel by any terms or conditions which may be contained in the agreement with the Precision Company, of which explicit notice is not given in the conditions enumerated on the plate.

(3) The purchaser of the machine was not bound to institute an inquiry to ascertain whether terms had been fixed by the plaintiff, and, if so, what they were, but, on the contrary, if the Motion Picture Patents Co. desired to fix any "other terms" on the use of the machine, it was its duty, as above shown, to give notice of those terms in clear and definite language. The cases cited at page 28 of the Petitioner's Brief are not in point. The question involved in them was as to the application of the Statute of Limitations, and particularly as to what is necessary in order to show notice of a fraud sufficient to start the running of the Statute, which is not analogous to the present case, where the terms of a contract to be performed depend on the act of the promisee.

"Where a party contracts to do a thing, but the act on which the right to demand performance of the contract is to arise is indefinite, the defendant is en-

titled to notice before he can be called upon to perform it.

"And, in general, where any option at all remains to be exercised by the plaintiff, notice of his having determined that option ought to be given."

Chitty on Contracts, p. 767, 16th Ed.

"When the time of performance is to be directly determined by the promisee, the law raises by implication a stipulation that notice shall be given to the promisor, and such notice must be alleged in the complaint and proven."

4 Enc. Pl. & Pr., p. 653.

"Where a man promised to pay for certain weys of barley as much as he sold them for to any other man; there the plaintiff is bound to aver notice, because the person to whom the weys are to be sold is perfectly indefinite and altogether at the option of the plaintiff, who may sell them to whom he pleases."

Vyse vs. Wakefield, 6 Meeson & Welby, pp. 453, 454, citing Viner's Abridgement, "Condition."

The principle of this case has a wide application and forbids the notion that the defendants, with no other knowledge of the subject than is derived from the bare general reservation under consideration, were under any obligation whatever to seek for further information.

(4) The Petitioner's position in effect is that before the Universal Film Company or the Universal Film Exchange supplied film to the Prague Amusement Company they should have ascertained whether that Company had applied to the Petitioner for further terms on the use of the machine and had complied with those terms. On no other theory can it support its charge of a joint infringement, which is the only charge against the defendants.

The only issue determined by the Courts below in this

case was whether the particular notice on the machine of the defendant, Prague Amusement Company, is one which can be enforced in the present suit. It is not a question of "great public concern." The doctrines concerning notices of restrictions on patented articles have already been fully announced by this court, and the proposition here concerns only the particular notice which is the subject of the present case. The Circuit Court of Appeals in Victor Talking Machine Co. vs. Straus, said that the transaction in that case was "not a sale outright or a conditional or restricted sale or any sale at all" (italics ours). In the case at bar, the transaction was an absolute unqualified sale, and for that reason alone the two cases rest on entirely different principles.

The respondents, therefore, submit that the Petition for a Writ of Certiorari, should be denied.

EDMUND WETMORE, OSCAR W. JEFFERY, Counsel for Respondents.

NOV 15. 1916

JAMES D. MAHER
GLERK

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1916.

No. 715.

IN EQUITY.

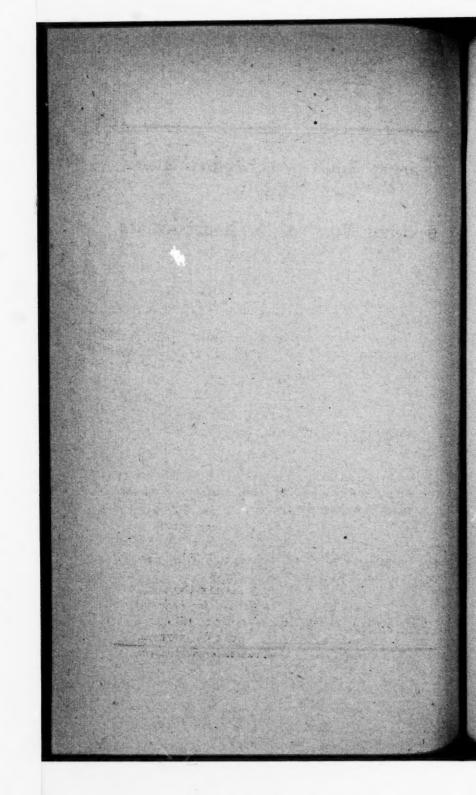
Motion to Advance and Affidavit in Support Thereof.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, Petitioner,

US.

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company, Respondents.

MELVILLE CHURCH, Counsel for Petitioner.



IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1916.

No. 715.

IN EQUITY.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, Petitioner,

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company, Respondents.

NOTICE.

EDMUND WETMORE, Esq., and OSCAR W. JEFFERY, Esq., 34 Pine Street, New York, N. Y.

GENTLEMEN:

Take notice, that on Thursday, the 16th day of November, 1916, at the opening of the Court or as soon thereafter as counsel may be heard, I shall present the accompanying motion to advance the hearing of this cause. A copy of such motion and the affidavit of George F. Scull, Esq., in support of the same, is herewith served you.

Melville Church,
Counsel for Petitioner.
Copy received this 14th day of November, 1916.
Oscar W. Jeffery,
Counsel for Respondents.

IN THE SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES.

OCTOBER TERM, 1916.

No. 715.

IN EQUITY.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, Petitioner,

US.

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company, Respondents.

MOTION.

And now comes Motion Picture Patents Company, petitioner, by Melville Church, its counsel, and moves that the hearing of this cause be advanced, and, specifically, that the cause be advanced to be heard in connection with the cause of Victor Talking Machine Company vs. Straus, No. 374, now set for argument on December 4, 1916.

MELVILLE CHURCH, Counsel for Petitioner.

IN THE SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES.

OCTOBER TERM, 1916.

No. 715.

IN EQUITY.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, Petitioner,

US.

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company, Respondents.

AFFIDAVIT.

County of New York, State of New York, ss.

GEORGE F. Scull, being duly sworn, deposes and says as follows:

I. That he is the Vice-President of Motion Picture Pat-

ents Company, the petitioner herein.

II. That this cause is now in this Court on Writ of Certiorari issued herein on the 1st day of November, 1916, the return to said Writ having been filed on the 13th day of November, 1916.

III. That the cause involves important questions of gen-

eral interest in regard to the right of a patentee to impose conditions of use on the sale of a patented article.

IV. That the cause of Victor Talking Machine Company vs. Straus, No. 374, is also now in this Court, on Certiorari, and has been assigned for argument, as deponent is informed and believes, on December 4, 1916.

V. That it seems desirable that both these causes should be heard at the same time.

VI. That the Latham patent No. 707,934, dated August 26, 1902, involved in this cause, has less than three years to run, and will nearly have expired before this cause is reached in regular order on the docket.

VII. That the accompanying motion to advance the hearing of this cause is not made for purposes of delay, nor for any other ulterior purpose.

GEORGE F. SCULL.

Subscribed and sworn to before me this 14th day of November, 1916.

(Seal.)

GEORGE E. BROWN,
Notary Public.
Notary Public, Richmond County.
Certificate Filed in N. Y. Co., No. 179.
New York Register No. 7223.
Term Expires March 30, 1917.

Office Supreme Cowt, U. S.

FILED

NOV 16 1916

JAMES D. MAHER

OLERK

IN THE SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES.

OCTOBER TERM, 1916,

No. 715.

MOTION, PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,
Petitioner,

VB.

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company,

Respondents.

In Equity.

Affidavit in Opposition to Motion to Advance Cause for Argument.

STATE OF NEW YORK, SS. County of New York,

OSCAR W. JEFFERY, being duly sworn, says:

I. I am one of the counsel for the Respondents in the above entitled cause. The bill of complaint in this suit alleged, as the only cause of action, the joint infringement by defendants of Letters Patent to Latham, No. 707,934, but, as appears by the Record, the machine, the use of which was claimed to infringe the patent, was manufactured by the Precision Machine Company, not a party to this suit, under a

license from the plaintiff, the Motion Picture Patents Company, and its use was claimed to be an infringement only on the ground that said use was in violation of a notice of restrictions placed upon the said machine; in other words, the suit is, in reality, one to enforce the said restrictions, although the question of the validity of the said patent must be determined before a decree can be rendered for the Petitioner.

II. The question in Victor Talking Machine Company vs. Straus, No. 374, which cause has been assigned for argument in this Court on December 4, 1916, is whether certain restrictions on the use of a machine not sold but the use of which was licensed under a patent are enforceable, while in the present cause the question is whether certain other and different restrictions on a machine which was sold can be enforced.

III. Some of the other questions which are raised by the Petitioner's appeal in the case at bar are as follows:

- (1) Whether a restriction confining the use of the patented machine when sold to film made by authority of a license under a patent which at the time of the alleged infringement had expired, is enforceable.
- (2) Whether a restriction that the machine can only be used upon compliance with "other terms to be fixed" by the owner of the patent, which terms were never fixed, is enforceable, and whether said restriction required the purchaser of the machine to inquire from the owner of the patent what those "other terms" were.
- (3) Whether the restriction involved in this cause violates Section 3 of the so-called Clayton Act and whether the plaintiff is "engaged in commerce" within the meaning of that Act.
- (4) Whether the plaintiff has proved a joint infringement as alleged in the bill of complaint.

IV. None of the above enumerated questions are involved in Victor Talking Machine Company vs. Straus, and that they will be presented to the Court in this cause by the petitioner appears from its petition for writ of *certiorari* and brief in support thereof, and from the opinions of the Courts below.

V. In addition to the questions above enumerated, the question of the validity of the Latham patent in suit is to be determined. Out of 1491 pages of pleadings, testimony and exhibits in the Record, all but about fifty are devoted to that

question.

VI. In the suit brought by the United States against the Motion Picture Patents Company, the petitioner herein, and others, over two years prior to the filing of the bill in the present case, for violation of the so-called Sherman Act, it was held (before the trial of the case at bar) by the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Pennsylvania (Rec., pp. 1089, 1108), that the license agreements between the petitioner, the Motion Picture Patents Company, and the manufacturers of projecting machines, pursuant to one of which agreements the notice of restrictions hereinabove referred to was placed upon the alleged infringing machine, were and are unlawful and void, and a decree was entered, among other things, to that effect from which decree an appeal was taken to this Court and is now pending here. Therefore, if this Court should hold that the restrictions on the use of the alleged infringing machine are valid and enforceable, the plaintiff will be able to enforce an agreement which the said United States District Court for the Eastern District of Pennsylvania has decreed to be unlawful, and which this Court may hereafter hold to be unlawful, and it is therefore submitted, on behalf of the respondents, that this cause should not be advanced for argument, if at all, until the said appeal in the said suit of the United States against the petitioner has been heard and determined by this Court.

VII. If this cause is set down for argument on December

4th, it well be impossible for the petitioner, or the respondents, to sub at briefs within the time required by the rules of this Court, and there will not be sufficient time to properly prepare the brief? The respondents.

VIII. Only two days notice of the motion to advance this cause upon the calendar was given to Counsel for the respondents and therefore this affidavit and the grounds of opposition to the motion have of necessity been prepared in great haste and cannot be as fully stated as they could be if longer notice had been given.

IX. Respondent's Counsel have not yet received a copy of the transcript of the record in this Court.

X. It is respectfully submitted that the petitioner has shown no good cause for advancing the cause upon the calendar and that on account of the number and diversity in character of the questions involved and the importance of the case to the respondents, they should not be prejudiced in the preparation of their case for argument by the suspension of the rules which the Petitioner's motion in effect asks for.

The motion is not opposed for purposes of delay, but to preserve the substantial rights of the respondents.

OSCAR W. JEFFERY.

Subscribed and sworn to before me this 15th day of November, 1916.

GRACE A. TAYLOR,
Notary Public,
New York County No. 16.
New York Register No. 8001.

DEC 18 1916
JAMES D. MAHER

Supreme Court of the United States

No. 715.

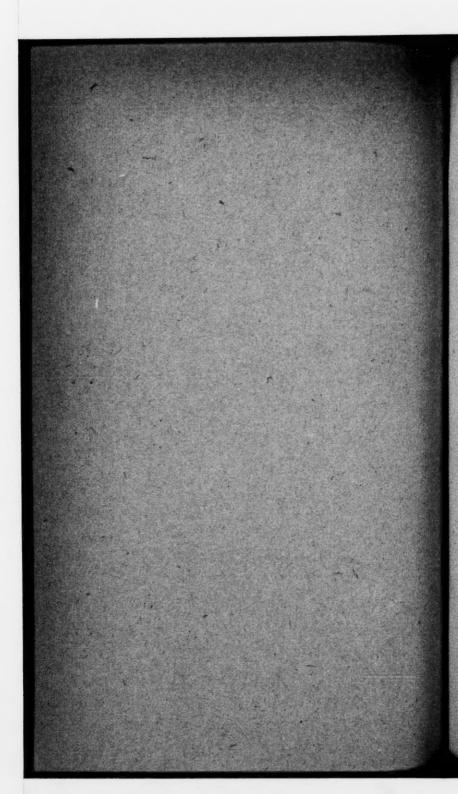
Motion Picture Patents Company, Petitioner,

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company, Respondents.

On Certiorari to the Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit.

BRIEF FOR PETITIONER.

MELVILLE CHURCH, Counsel for Petitioner.

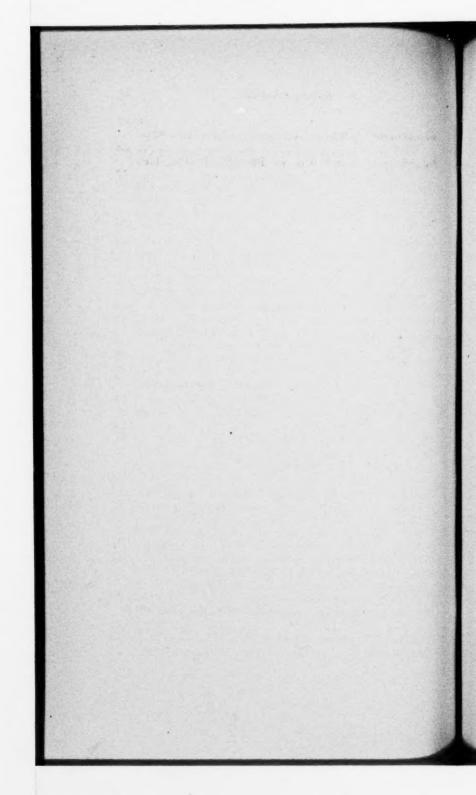


AME * 23 1	12/2/20	13113134
- K	114	INDEX.

	5.
Statement of the Case	1
Important Questions Involved	2
Petitioner's Policy in Dealing with its Patent	3
Specific Facts of the Case	4
Liability of the Respondent, Prague Amusement Com-	
pany, Determines that of the Other Respondents	9
Liability of the Respondent, Prague Amusement Com-	
pany	9
The Two Restrictions as to Use Imposed by the Patent	
Owner in this Case, Either of Which, if Valid,	
Fixes the Liability of Respondents	10
License Restriction No. 1	13
License Restrictions 1 and 2, Being Severable, No. 2 not	
Affected by No. 1, if the Latter is Held Invalid	15
General Observations and Their Application to the In-	
stant Case	17
Liability of the Other Respondents as Contributory in-	
fringers	23
The Invention in Controversy and Universality of its	
Use	23
The Respondents' Machine	34
Prior Art Defenses	35
The Chinnock Camera	35
The Marey French Patent of 1890	37
The Marey French Patent of 1893	37
The U. S. Patent of Gray, 540, 545 of 1895	37
The Green & Evans British Patent 10131 of 1899.	38
The Printing Press Patents (Kidder, Echerson and	
Cox)	39
The Edison Patents	39
The Armat Patent	40
The Joly Patents (French and U. S.)	45
The Casler Patent	45
Other Defense Patents	49
The Latham Improvement as Summarized by Mr. Mar-	
vin, Petitioner's Practical Expert	49
Defense of Estoppel by Patent Office Proceedings	53

P	age
Latham's Date of Invention	58
TABLE OF CASES CITED.	
American Cotton Tie Supply Co. vs. Bullard, et al., 4 Banning & Arden, 520 American Graphophone Co. vs. Boston Store of Chicago, 225 Fed., 785 American Graphophone Co. vs. Walcutt, 87 Fed., 556. Automatic Pencil Sharpener Co. vs. Goldsmith Bros., 190 Fed., 205 Bauer vs. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1 Bement vs. National Harrow Co., 186 U. S., 70 British Mutoscope & Biograph Co. vs. Homer, 17 Times Law Rep., 213 Broderick Copygraph Co. vs. Mayhew, 131 Fed., 92 Brooks vs. Ryan, et al., 2 Robbs Patent Cases, 161 Chambers vs. Smith, et al., 5 Fish Pat. Cases, 12 Crown Cork and Seal Co. vs. Standard Brewery; Same vs. Greenberger, 174 Fed., 252 Crown Cork & Seal Co. vs. Brooklyn Bottle Stopper Co., C. C. A., 2nd Circuit, 200 Fed., 592 De La Ferne Machine Co. vs. Featherstone, 147 U. S., 209	21 21 21 9 21 21 22 21 21 22 21 22
Dick Co. vs. Henry, et al., 149 Fed., 424	22
930	21 21 21 21 21 21
Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1	, 22

Par	ge
Incandescent Gaslight Co. vs. Cantelo, 12 Pat. Law Rep.,	•
262	22
262	20
Rep., 179 Indiana Mfg. Co. vs. Case Threshing Machine Co., 154	22
Indiana Mfg. Co. vs. Case Threshing Machine Co., 154	21
	21
International Pavement Co. vs. Richardson, 75 Fed.,	21
390	23
National Phonograph Co. vs. Schlegel, et al., 117 Fed.,	
624	21
New Jersey Patent Co. vs. Schaefer, 144 Fed., 436	21
New Jersey Patent Co. vs. Schaefer, 159 Fed., 171	21
Oregon R. & U. Co. vs. Windsor, 20 Wall., 64-72	16
Paper Bag Patent Case, 210 U. S., 405, 425, 429	19
Philadelphia Creamery Supply Co. vs. Davis & Rankin	21
Co., 77 Fed., 879	21
Pope Mfg. Co. vs. Omsley, 27 Fed., 100	21
Rice vs. Boss, 40 Fed., 195	
Co., C. C. A., 7th Cir., 154 Fed., 358	21
Rupp & Wittgenfeld Co. vs. Elliot, et al., C. C. A., 6th	
Cir 131 Fed. 730	22
Shauer vs. Alterton, 151 U. S., 607-622	12
St. Paul Plow Works vs. Sparling, 140 U. S	16
The Fair vs. Dover Mfg. Co., C. C. A., 7th Cir., 160	22
II S 117	22
Tubular Rivet & Stud Co. vs. O'Brien, et al., 93 Fed.,	22
200	16
Victor Talking Machine Co. vs. The Fair, 123 Fed., 424.	22
Virtue vs. Creamery Package Co., et al., 227 U. S., 8	21
Wicke vs. Kleinknicht, 1 Ban. & Arden, 608	21
Wilson vs. Sherman, 1 Fish. Pat. Cases, 361	21
Winchester Repeating Arms Co. vs. Olmsted, C. C. A.	
7th Cir. 203 Fed., 493	22
Winchester Repeating Arms Co. vs. Buengar, et al., 199	-
Fed 786	21
Wood vs. Carpenter, 101 U. S., 135-141	12
Woodworth, et al., vs. Cook, 1 Fish. Pat. Cases, 423	21



Supreme Court of the United States

No. 715.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, Petitioner,

US

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company, Respondents.

On Certiorari to the Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit.

BRIEF FOR PETITIONER.

STATEMENT OF THE CASE.

This case is here on certiorari to review a decree of the Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, affirming a final decree of the District Court for the Southern District of New York, dismissing the bill of complaint, in a

suit brought by Motion Picture Patents Company, plaintiff-petitioner, against Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange of New York, and Prague Amusement Company, defendants-respondents, for infringement of Letters Patent No. 707,934, granted to Woodville Latham, August 26, 1902 (upon an application filed June 1, 1896), for improvements in projecting kinetoscopes, or what have come to be known as motion picture projecting machines.

The bill of complaint sets forth the grant of the patent in suit and plaintiff's ownership thereof and charges the de-

fendants with joint infringement.

The answer sets up, *inter alia*, as affirmative defenses, (1) anticipation of the patent in suit by certain prior patents and (2) by certain instances of alleged prior knowledge and use; (3) an alleged extoppel growing out of a Patent Office proceeding to which the defendants were not parties nor privies; (4) a license under the patent in suit; and (5), non-infringement.

The District Court, passing over the other defenses, held that the defendants had established their defense of license, and directed the entry of a decree dismissing the bill (p. 698). From this decree the plaintiff appealed to the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, and that court affirmed the decree of the court below (p. 1494). A petition for rehearing was denied (p. 1510).

IMPORTANT QUESTIONS INVOLVED.

Several questions of overshadowing importance are involved in the case, viz:

- (1) The right of a patent-owner to prescribe restrictions as to use on the sale of a patented article by a licensee under the patent.
 - (2) The obligation of a purchaser from a licensee of the

patent-owner to inquire as to the restrictions, if any, under which his vendor sells the patented article.

- (3) The sufficiency of a notice of restrictions as to use conveyed by a name plate applied to a patented article sold by a licensee of the patent-owner, and the binding effect of such notice and restrictions on the purchaser of such patented article.
- (4) The bearing, if any, of the Clayton Act (38 Stat., 730-731) on the transaction involved in the instant case.

PETITIONER'S POLICY IN DEALING WITH ITS PATENT.

The Latham patent in suit covers means for feeding a quantity of motion picture film of considerable weight and of great length, through a motion picture projecting machine, with a regular, uniform and accurate movement and so as not to expose the film to excessive strain and wear and tear.

The method adopted by the petitioner to extend the use of its patented invention as rapidly and as widespread as possible and to derive revenue from those who profited by that use, and concurrently with such use, consisted-(a) in authorizing or licensing certain manufacturers to make the patented machines on payment to the petitioner of a small royalty amounting to five dollars (\$5) per machine; (b) in authorizing the licensee-manufacturers to sell such machines, at not less than one hundred and fifty dollars (\$150) per machine; (c) in authorizing the licensee-manufacturers to sell such machines only with the express restriction that such machines should not be used except (1) in connection with certain designated film and (2) upon terms to be fixed by petitioner as to payment of a royalty while the machine was in use; and (d) in requiring that the licensee-manufacturer should apply to each machine sold by him a name plate containing the notice of the restrictions under which only the machine could be lawfully used.

THE SPECIFIC FACTS OF THE CASE

The material facts in the present case are as follows:

(a) The petitioner, Motion Picture Patents Company, as the owner of the patent in suit (No. 707,934), on June 12, 1912, granted to the Precision Machine Company (p. 1974) the right and license

(p. 1977)

"to manufacture and sell motion picture exhibiting or projecting machines embodying one or more of the inventions described and claimed in the said United States Letters Patent Nos. * * * 707.934 * * *"

coupled with the restriction that each machine put out by the licensee should be sold only

(p. 1080)

"under the restriction and condition that such exhibiting or projecting machines shall be used (1) solely for exhibiting or projecting motion pictures containing the invention of reissued Letters Patent No. 12,-192, leased by a licensee of the licensor while it owns said patents, and (2) upon other terms to be fixed by the licensor and complied with by the user while the said machine is in use and while the licensor owns said patents (which other terms shall only be the payment of a royalty or rental to the licensor while in use)."

(b) The license also provided that:

(p. 1081)

"The licensee further covenants and agrees that the licensee will attach in a conspicuous place to each and

every such exhibiting or projecting machine of the licensee's manufacture sold by the licensee, except for export, after the date hereof, a plate showing plainly not only the dates of the letters patent under which the said machine is licensed, but also the following words and figures:

SERIAL NO.

PATENTED NO.

The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of reissued patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company and complied with by the user while it is in use and while the Motion Picture Patents Company owns said patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the right to use this machine."

(c) The license further provided that the licensee-manufacturer should pay the licensor—

(p. 1079)

"On each such machine capable of exhibiting or projecting by transmitted light, motion pictures on film of a width greater than approximately one inch (1 in.), a royalty of five dollars (\$5.00)."

(d) The machine (Defendant's Exhibit No. 3, Simplex Machine) whose use is charged by the petitioner to be an infringement of the patent in suit, was made by the Precision Machine Company under its license and bears a plate upon which is plainly inscribed a notice from petitioner of the restrictions under which, only, the machine might be lawfully used, the exact wording of the plate being, in full, as follows (Defendants' Exhibit No. 1):

(p. 1073)		
"Mfr's Serial No. 3557	Simplex	Special License No. 3666
	Made by	

THE PRECISION MACHINE COMPANY

	Patented		
No. 576,185	March	2.	1897
No. 580,749	April		1897
No. 586,953	July	20,	1897
No. 673,320	April	30,	1901
No. 673,992		. ,	1901
No. 707,934	August		
No. 722,382	March	10,	1903

The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of Reissued Patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company and complied with by the user while it is in use, and while the Motion Picture Patents Company owns said patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the right to use this machine.

Motion Picture Patents Company, New York, N. Y., U. S. A."

- (e) The machine referred to was delivered by the Precision Machine Company to the 72nd Street Amusement Company, operating the 72nd Street Playhouse, New York City, and, when so delivered, bore petitioner's name plate and notice above set out (p. 63).
- (f) The respondent, Prague Amusement Company, on Nov. 2, 1914, leased from the 72nd Street Amusement Company, the 72nd Street Playhouse, and among the equipment

on the premises and included in the lease was the machine in question, which, at that time, also bore the name plate and notice (Stipulation, p. 63).

- (g) The respondent, Prague Amusement Company, being itself a mere lessee of the premises in which the machine was and is used, claims no property right in the machine itself.
- (h) On Jan. 18, 1915, petitioner notified the respondent, Universal Film Exchange of New York, that a picture projecting machine embodying the invention of the patent in suit was being used, without license, at the 72nd Street Playhouse, New York City, and that the Universal Film Exchange of New York was aiding and contributing to such unauthorized use by supplying motion picture films for cooperation with such machine (Plaintiff's Exhibit H, p. 746). Receipt of this notice is admitted (p. 59).
- (i) On March 3, 1915, the petitioner also notified the respondent, Universal Film Manufacturing Company of the use, without license, of the projecting machine embodying the invention of the patent in suit at the 72nd Street Playhouse, and that it was aiding and contributing to such unlicensed use by furnishing motion picture films to the Universal Film Exchange of New York, to be supplied by the latter for use, without license, on that machine (Plaintiff's Exhibit I, p. 748). Receipt of this notice is also admitted (p. 59).
- (j) On January 18, 1915, the petitioner also notified the 72nd Street Amusement Company and Mr. L. Bolognino, who is President of the respondent Prague Amusement Company, at 350 East 72nd Street, New York City, of the

use, without license, at the premises No. 350 East 72nd Street, New York City, of the projecting machine embodying the invention of the patent in suit (Plaintiff's Exhibit G, p. 745).

This notice was served by registered mail and receipt given for same by an agent of L. Bolognino (Plaintiff's Exhibit K, p. 753).

- (k) It is established that L. Bolognino is the President of the respondent, Prague Amusement Company (Bolognino, X-Q. 2, p. 64) which does business at the 72nd Street Playhouse, located at 350 East 72nd Street, New York City (Stipulation, par. 3, p. 735).
- (1) It is admitted by respondents that, subsequent to March 4, 1915, and prior to March 17, 1915, the respondent, Universal Film Manufacturing Company, sold to respondent, Universal Film Exchange of New York, a certain motion picture film entitled "The Five Pound Note," and a certain other motion picture film entitled "Refugees," and that these films were supplied by the respondent, Universal Film Exchange of New York, on March 17, 1915, to the respondent, Prague Amusement Company, for use on Simplex machine mentioned and were used on that machine by the Prague Amusement Company on the last mentioned date by feeding the film through the machine and projecting the photographs thereon on a screen. (Stipulation, p. 736; also, Stipulation, p. 65.)
- (m) Whether or not the 72nd Street Amusement Company paid any special consideration to the Precision Machine Company when it obtained from the latter the projecting machine in question does not affirmatively appear, but inasmuch as the Precision Machine Company was ob-

ligated, under its license agreement with petitioner, not to part with any machine for less than \$150, it may fairly be assumed that that amount was paid in this particular instance.

THE LIABILITY OF THE RESPONDENT, PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY, DETERMINES THAT OF THE OTHER RESPONDENTS.

The liability of the respondents, Universal Film Manufacturing Company and Universal Film Exchange of New York, is dependent upon the liability of the respondent, Prague Amusement Company, because the first named companies are only sued as contributors to the act of infringement alleged to have been committed by the Prague Company. The liability of the Prague Company will, therefore, first be discussed.

THE LIABILITY OF THE RESPONDENT, PRAGUE AMUSE-MENT COMPANY.

It is petitioner's contention that the restrictions as to the right to use the machine in the possession of the Prague Amusement Company, imposed by the petitioner, were and are lawful and enforceable, and that they were fully brought home to the Prague Company, so as to make them binding on the latter.

This court, in the Dick case (Henry v. Dick, 224 U. S., 1), affirmed the law to be that a patent-owner might, on the sale of a specimen of the patented invention, impose lawful restrictions as to time, place, method or conditions of its use, so as to render an unauthorized use an infringement.

We find nothing in the Sanotogen case (Bauer v. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1) qualifying this holding.

The point that was presented for decision in the latter

case was thus expressed by Mr. Justice Day, in delivering the opinion of the Court:

(p. 16)

"The real question is whether in the exclusive right secured by statute to 'vend' a patented article there is included the right, by notice, to dictate the price at which subsequent sales of the article may be made."

It will thus be seen that the patentee's right to impose restrictions or qualifications as to use was not there involved.

In the Dick case, however, as in the case at bar, the right of "use" was alone involved, and there, as here, the patent-owner did not derive his entire revenue from the sale of the patented thing, but by far the greater portion of it from the subsequent use of it.

THERE ARE TWO RESTRICTIONS AS TO USE IMPOSED BY THE PATENT-OWNER IN THIS CASE, EITHER OF WHICH, IF VALID, FIXES THE LIABILITY OF RESPONDENTS.

The petitioner in this case never gave the licensee-manufacturer a right to sell a single machine embodying the patented invention, without restriction as to its use. On the contrary, two separate and distinct restrictions were imposed, namely:

License Restriction No. 1:

That the machine should be used only with motion pictures leased from a manufacturer licensed by petitioner.

License Restriction No. 2:

That the machine could not be used at all without compliance with terms previously fixed by the petitioner.

Either of these restrictions, if valid and brought home to the respondent, Prague Amusement Company, would fix the liability of the latter as an infringer, unless it could show

compliance therewith.

License Restriction No. 1 is claimed by the respondents to be repugnant to the Clayton Act, so, for the present, that will be passed, and License Restriction No. 2, which is not even contended to fall within the Clayton Act, will be first considered.

THE DUTY AND RESPONSIBILITY LAID UPON ONE WHO PURCHASES AND USES AN ARTICLE COVERED BY A PATENT.

When one purchases, in open market, an article covered by a patent, it is his duty, whether he perform it or not, to inquire if its sale is authorized and, if authorized, under what restrictions, if any, it may be used. While he may have a remedy over against his vendor, upon an implied warranty, if he uses the thing purchased without authority of the patent-owner, he does so at his own risk.

So, likewise, one who uses a thing marked "Patented," purchased from another than the patent-owner, is bound to inquire as to the existence of conditions qualifying his right to such use; especially if the thing purchased shows, on its face, that it was made and sold by a mere licensee under the

patent.

Here, the Simplex machine in question, when it left the hands of the Precision Machine Company, bore, on its face, evidence that it was put out by a mere licensee of the patent owner. The name plate then and now upon it shows (1) that it was "Made by the Precision Machine Company"; (2) that it was covered by the patent in suit, i.e., "No. 707,934, dated August 26, 1902"; (3) that it was made under "Special License No. 3666"; (4) that the petitioner, Motion Picture Patents Company was the owner

of the patent; (5) that it could not be used at all save upon terms first fixed by petitioner and complied with while it was in use.

All of these announcements on the name plate plainly indicated to the original purchaser of the machine and to each and every user thereof, thereafter, including respondent, the Prague Company, that the Precision Machine Company was only a licensee of petitioner and called upon such purchaser and user to inquire of the Precision Machine Company, the terms of the license under which the machine was put out, or to inquire of the petitioner, as the named owner of the patent, the terms and conditions under which the machine could be lawfully used. If inquiry had been made of the Precision Machine Company, it would have been found that its license-agreement prohibited it from selling machines except for use

"upon other terms to be fixed by the licensor and complied with by the user while said machine is in use and while the licensor owns said patents (which other terms shall only be the payment of a royalty or rental to the licensor while in use)"

and, if inquiry had been made of the petitioner, Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the patent, the same information would have been elicited.

The duty of the user to make inquiry, when thus put upon notice, and the result of neglecting and failing to do so, need not be argued in this court.

"Whatever is notice enough to excite attention and put the party on his guard and call for inquiry is notice of everything to which such inquiry might have led. When a person has sufficient information to lead him to a fact, he shall be deemed conversant of it."

Wood v. Carpenter, 101 U. S., 135-141. Shauer v. Alterton, 151 U. S., 607-622.

License Restriction No. 2, being, then, a valid restriction respecting the right of use, within the principles of the Dick case, and not an invalid restriction as to "vending" condemned in the Sanotogen case, and notice of such valid restriction having been brought home to the respondent, Prague Amusement Company, the use by the latter, despite and in disregard of such restriction without making terms with petitioner and without the payment of the royalty which petitioner relied upon for its revenue, was an infringing use, which the courts below should have restrained and which this court, we submit, ought now to restrain.

LICENSE RESTRICTION No. 1.

The terms of License Restriction No. 1, giving the purchaser of the patented machine

"the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of Reissued Patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents"

is, in effect, but a setting forth of a short description of the kind of film that may be used in the patented projecting machine authorized by the patent-owner to be made and sold, (the date, term and ownership of the reissued patent being immaterial) and a designation of the manufacturers (licensees of the petitioner) who may furnish such film to the user.

Such a restriction as to use, embodied in the licenseagreement of June 12, 1912, would be lawful within the principles laid down by this court in the Dick case, decided March 11, 1912; but whether such a restriction, valid at the time it was made, was and is rendered unlawful and unenforceable by the passage of the Clayton Act, on October 15, 1914, is for this court to decide. It is contended by petitioner that this case is not within the terms or purview of the Clayton Act. That Act (Sec. 3) is only applicable to the case of

"persons (or corporations) engaged in commerce," who,

"in the course of such commerce" * * *

"lease or make a sale or contract for sale of goods, wares, merchandise, machinery, supplies or other commodities,"

"on the condition, agreement or understanding that the lessee or purchaser thereof shall not deal in the goods, wares, merchandise, machinery, supplies or other commodities of a competitor of the lessor or seller."

(a) The petitioner, Motion Picture Patents Company, is not engaged in commerce, and has not leased or sold any commodity, nor made any contract for the sale of any commodity. It is a mere patents-holding concern. It has no factory, nor selling force. It makes and sells no commodity.

Having made no commodity, sold no commodity, nor made any contract for the sale of any commodity, and having no commodity to sell, it is not seen how it can be properly charged with having made with its lessees or purchasers (of which there are none), of any of its commodities (there being none such), on the condition, agreement or understanding that such lessee or purchaser shall not use or deal in the goods, wares, mechandise, machinery, supplies or other commodities of any of its competitors (of which there are none).

The petitioner has, therefore, it is respectfully submitted. done nothing declared by the Clayton Act to be unlawful. (b) Nor has the Precision Machine Company violated the Act. It is true it is a manufacturer and seller of projecting machines, but it makes and sells nothing else. There is no evidence that it has ever made or contemplated making, or that it has ever sold or contemplated selling, motion picture films. Nor is there any evidence that any other concern that manufactures or sells projecting machines also manufactures or sells motion picture films. The restriction in its contract of sale with the purchaser of the projecting machine, in question, had only to do with the use of motion picture films. As the Precision Machine Company has no competitors who make and sell films, and is not in the film business itself, the restriction as to films is not unlawful, within the Act.

It is respectfully submitted that the legality of the Act can only be supported on the theory that it is a regulation of commerce, aimed at those engaged in commerce, who unfairly compete in such commerce. One must be engaged in commerce, must have competitors engaged in the same commerce, and must unfairly compete with such competitors to be within the Act.

The Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, in its opinion in this case, confounds the petitioner, Motion Picture Patents Company, with the General Film Company (p. 1495), which is a manufacturer and dealer in motion picture films, and assumes (doubtless unwittingly) the identity of the two corporations, whereas, they are, in fact, quite distinct and separate.

Should License Restriction No. 1 Be Held Unlawful, it Would Not Affect the Lawful Restriction No. 2. They Are Severable.

Whether License Restriction No. 1 is decreed to be lawful or unlawful, it can not, it is respectfully submitted,

affect the lawfulness of License Restriction No. 2, which the respondent, Prague Company, has admittedly violated and under which it is liable, if notice has been properly brought home to it.

Oregon R. & U. Co. v. Windsor, 20 Wall., 64-72; U. S., etc., Co. v. Griffen, 126 Fed., 364-370.

It has not been and can not be contended that the presence of License Restriction No. 1 in the license-agreement with The Precision Machine Company had the effect of rendering the whole license null and void. The two restrictions are independent and severable. If one is "unlawful," under the Clayton Act, and the other is lawful, the latter will support the license-agreement. Petitioner relied upon the payment of a continuing royalty while the machine was in use as its main source of revenue. The \$5 received from the licensee-manufacturer was but a paltry 3 1-3 per cent of the selling price, and utterly inadequate. This Court has upheld a license restriction based upon a continuing royalty for use. St. Paul Plow Works v. Sparling, 140 U. S., 184.

Upon the License Restriction No. 2, alone, petitioner can, therefore, afford to rely.

Whether the name-plate notice was sufficient in itself to require the licensee-user to make inquiry of the petitioner as to the "other terms" upon compliance with which the machine could only be lawfully used, or to make inquiry of the selling concern (i. e., The Precision Machine Company) that, on the face of the notice, was but itself a licensee-manufacturer—either line of inquiry, properly followed up, as the law required, would have developed the details of such other terms and shown them to relate only to the fixing of a royalty for use, to be paid only during use—a most reasonable arrangement.

If respondent, Prague Amusement Company, shall, in this Court, contend that the presence of License Restriction No. 1 in the license granted to The Precision Machine Company renders such license wholly void, and this Court shall so rule, respondent will take nothing by it, for it will leave it as a naked infringer, undertaking to use a machine not procured from the owner of the patent, but from a manufacturer that had no license to make or to sell or to use it.

And, if the license, with its License Restriction No. 2, is good and enforceable, the respondent, Prague Amusement Company, because of its failure to arrange with petitioner for terms of royalty for use, has never had a license to use and was and is, therefore, an infringer while using.

Some General Observations and Their Application to the Instant Case.

In view of the importance of the questions involved in this case and the breadth of discussion that may ensue, the following observations are, with some diffidence, respectfully submitted:

I. Confusion is liable to result from a failure to observe the distinction between the nature of the property rights conferred by a patent and the property rights in a machine made under the patent.

II. The rights conferred by a patent, i. e., the exclusive right to make, the exclusive right to sell, and the exclusive right to use, constitute an example of incorporeal personal property; while a machine embodying a patented invention is an example of corporeal personal property.

This Court in De La Vergne Machine Co. v. Feather-stone, 147 U. S., 209-222, has declared:

"The privileges granted by letters patent are plainly an instance of an incorporeal kind of personal property, which as personalty, in the absence of context to the contrary, would go to the executor or administrator in trust for the next of kin."

III. The incorporeal rights conferred by a patent are imponderable, and can neither be seen, handled, levied upon under execution, nor replevied; while a machine embodying a patented invention is subject to all of these incidents.

IV. Patent rights, unlike physical machines made under a patent, are susceptible of infinite subdivision, without impairment.

The Statute (Sec. 4898, R. S. U. S.) provides that a patentee may

"grant and convey an exclusive right under his patent to the whole or any specified part of the United States."

Under this statute the patent privileges may be divided into any number of individual parts, each co-extensive with the whole country, or into grants covering any number of specific parts of the country.

V. In addition to assignments and grants for which the statute specifically provides, the separate substantive exclusive privileges of making, using and selling conferred by a patent, may be parcelled out by licenses, To one may be given a license to make, use and sell at a specified place only; to another, to make and use, but not to sell; to another, to make and use at a specified place only, but not to sell; to another, to make and use at a specified place for a specific purpose only; to another, to use only, but not to make nor to sell; to another, to use, at a specified place, only, but not

to make nor to sell; to another, to use for a specified purpose only, but not to make nor to sell; to another, to make or to use, or to sell, for a limited or specified time only; to another to make and to sell a specified number of machines only; to another to make, to use or to sell, only upon compliance with certain conditions precedent, and so on, ad infinitum.

VI. Any of the above enumerated licenses may be granted upon the payment to the patent owner of a lump sum down, or upon the agreement or understanding that a royalty shall be paid by the licensee of so much a year, or of so much a machine, or the like.

VII. Under present law, a patent-owner is not required to make, use or sell any specimens of the patented invention; nor can he be compelled to license others to do so. (Paper Bag Patent Case, 210 U. S., 405-425-429.)

VIII. On the authorized sale of a patented machine there is involved the transfer of the property in the corporeal physical machine itself, and so much, and only so much, of the incorporeal rights conferred by the patent as the patent-owner chooses to relinquish.

If the machine is sold outright, for a lump sum, without restriction, both the patent-owner's corporeal and incorporeal rights pertaining to that machine pass to the purchaser, absolutely, and the machine is ever thereafter freed of the dominion of the patent-owner and of the patent. If, however, at the time of the sale, the patent-owner restricts the purchaser's enjoyment of the incorporeal right of use conferred by the patent as to time, place, method or otherwise, a use by the purchaser other than such as is thus specifically authorized, becomes an infringing use, because an infraction of the patent-owner's reserved rights, and may be restrained by the courts, in proper cases.

The possibility of the ownership of the corporeal rights of property in a physical machine, by one person, and of the ownership of the incorporeal rights of property in a patent covering that machine, by another person, is aptly demonstrated by the following examples:

(a) If a person innocently purchases, in open market, a machine that was, without his knowledge, made in infringement of an outstanding patent he may, unless and until interfered with by the patentee, use, mortgage, lease, or sell such machine. The machine in his hands may also be seized and sold on execution and if he is unlawfully dispossessed of it he may recapture it by an action of replevin.

If the incorporeal rights of the owner of the outstanding patent are never enforced, the holder of the machine may do with it all that he might do with any unpatented machine. His dominion over it will be complete.

But the patent-owner can not be defeated of his rights respecting that machine. By proper proceedings, he may restrain the owner of the machine from the further use of it and make him pay damages and profits for its past use. Even after he is thus enjoined from the use of the machine, the property in the machine remains in the holder thereof, and while he may no longer use the machine, as such, he may, if he pleases, break it up and sell the resulting materials, as junk, and pocket the proceeds.

(b) Again, if a patent-owner sells a machine with the license restriction that it may be used only at a specified place, and that machine, while in the licensees hands, is seized and sold on execution, the purchaser from the sheriff, while obtaining a perfectly good title to the physical machine itself, may not use it, at a different place, and, if he does so, may be restrained by the patent-owner, on the theory that the patentowner's reserved incorporeal rights respecting that different place have been invaded.

Both of these illustrations show the difference between the right of property in a machine itself covered by a patent and the right of property in the patent covering such machine, and the possibility of the complete severability and independent ownership of these separate rights.*

*The following cases illustrate instances of the grant by a patent

owner of limited rights that have been upheld by the courts:
The right to manufacture the patented article by the employment of six persons and no more. Brooks v. Ryan, 2 Robbs. Pat. Cas., 161; the right to use six machines within a certain county and to dispose of the product in such county and nowhere else. Woodworth, et al., v. Cook, 1 Fish. Pat. Cas., 423; the right to use the patented structure but once. American Cotton Tie Subbly Co. v. Bullard, et al. structure but once. American Cotton Tie Supply Co. v. Bullard, et al., 4 Banning & Arden, 520; the right to manufacture goods of a par-4 Banning & Arden, 520; the right to manufacture goods of a particular variety under the patentee's process. Goodyear v. Congress Rubber Co., 3 Blatchf., 449; the right to manufacture articles of certain given dimensions only. Pope Mfg. Co. v. Owsley, 27 Fed., 100; the right to manufacture but not to sell. American Graphophone Co. v. Walcutt, 87 Fed., 556; the right to restrict the use, manufacture or sale to a certain territory. Chambers v. Smith, et al., 5 Fish. Pat. Cas., 12; Wicke v. Kleinknecht, 1 Ban. & Arden, 608; Hawley v. Mitchell, et al., 4 Fish. Pat. Cas., 388; Rice v. Boss, 46 Fed., 195; International Pavement Co. v. Richardson. 75 Fed., 590; Philadelphia Creamery Co. v. Davis & Rankin Co., 77 Fed., 879; Wilson v. Sherman, 1 Fish. Pat. Cas., 361; the right to restrict use so as to be binding Creamery Co. v. Davis & Rankin Co., 77 Fed., 879; Wilson v. Sherman, 1 Fish. Pat. Cas., 361; the right to restrict use so as to be binding even upon a purchaser of a machine under a rent distress. British Mutoscope & Biograph Co. v. Homer, 17 Times Law Reports, 213; the right to restrict the price at which the patented article should be sold. Edison Phonograph Co., et al., v. Kaufman, et al., 105 Fed., 960; Edison Phonograph Co., et al., v. Pike, 116 Fed., 863; National Phonograph Co. v. Schlegel, et al., 117 Fed., 624; New Jersey Patent Co., et al., v. Schaeffer, 144 Fed., 336; Indiana Mfg. Co. v. J. I. Case Threshing Machine Co., 154 Fed., 365; Rubber Tire Wheel Co. v. Milwaukee Rubber Works Co., 154 Fed., 358; Goshen Rubber Works v. Single Tube Auto & Bicycle Tire Co., 166 Fed., 431; New Jersey Patent Co., et al., v. Schaeffer, 159 Fed., 171; Thomas A. Edison v. Ira M. Smith Merc. Co., 188 Fed., 925; Automatic Pencil Sharpener Co. v. Goldsmith Bros., 190 Fed., 205; Winchester Repeating Arms Co. v. Buengar, et al., 199 Fed., 786; Bement v. National Harrow Co., v. Buengar, et al., 199 Fed., 786; Bement v. National Harrow Co., v. Buengar, et al., v. Creamery Package Co., et al., 227 U. S., 8;

IX. In the case at bar, there was no unqualified sale of a specimen of the patented machine for use without restriction.

On the contrary, the machine, through its name-plate, plainly said, in effect, to the purchaser:

"I am a patented machine. I am not free. If I, as a corporeal, physical, thing, pass into your possession, you can not lawfully use me unless and until you have first agreed to terms of use prescribed by the patent-owner, Motion Picture Patents Company, of New York, N. Y., U. S. A. Go to that company and make terms with it, else, if you use me, you may and probably will be sued for infringement."

X. It is objected that the notice was not full enough, that it did not state what "terms" were "to be fixed" by the Motion Picture Patents Company.

The answer, of course, is that the notice plainly and unmistakably indicated that the machine was not free, that it was under the dominance of the named patent-owner, and that such owner was to be applied to for the terms of use. More of a notice was not required, and, if it had been followed up, a reasonable royalty contract would undoubtedly have resulted, as it did in thousands of other cases.

Winchester Repeating Arms Co. v. Olmstead, 203 Fed., 493; American Graphophone Co. v. Boston Store, etc., 225 Fed., 785; Victor Talking Machine Co. v. The Fair, 123 Fed., 424; The Fair v. Dover Mfg. Co., 166 U. S., 117; the right to restrict the use of patented machines to supplies or materials furnished by the patent owner. Heaton Peninsular Button Fastener Co. v. Eureka Specialty Co., 77 Fed., 288; Tubular Rivet & Stud Co. v. O'Brien, 93 Fed., 200; Rupp & Wittgenfeld Co. v. Elliott, 131 Fed., 730; Broderick Copygraph Co. v. Mayhew, 131 Fed., 92; A. B. Dick Co. v. Henry, et al., 149 Fed., 424; Henry, et al., v. A. B. Dick Co., 224 U. S., 1; A. B. Dick Co. v. Milwaukee Office Specialty Co., 168 Fed., 930; Crown Cork & Seal Co. v. Standard Brewery, Crown Cork & Seal Co. v. Brooklyn Bottle Stopper Co., 200 Fed., 592; Incandescent Gaslight Co. v. Brogden, 16 Patent Law Reports, 179.

The truth is, the purchaser, not desiring to pay any royalty, at all, for use, utterly disregarded the notice, refused to apply to petitioner for a royalty contract, and took its chances of being stopped by a suit for infringement.

XI. Observe that, unlike many other cases, there is no question, here, as to whether the patent-owner's remedy is on the patent, for the tort, or on a contract, for damages.

There is no contract. The respondent, though admonished by the notice that a contract must be made with the petitioner, as a prerequisite to use, refused to make one, and can not, therefore, now claim that there was a contract and that petitioner has mistaken its remedy.

THE OTHER RESPONDENTS ARE LIABLE AS CONTRIBUTORY INFRINGERS.

The liability of the other respondents, Universal Film Manufacturing Company, and Universal Film Exchange of New York, is that of contributory infringers. They were apprised of the wrongful unlicensed use that was being made of the machine by the respondent, Prague Amusement Company, and co-operated with the latter in the carrying on of such use. On familiar principles, all of the respondents are responsible as joint tort feasors and are also separately liable. Lovejoy v. Murray, 3 Wall 1-11 Walker on Patents, 4 Ed., §406, p. 343.

THE INVENTION IN CONTROVERSY AND THE UNIVERSALITY OF ITS USE.

The error of the Court below, in dealing with the only defense considered by it, having been pointed out, it becomes necessary to briefly examine the other defenses that are relied upon, more or less, by the defendants.

This requires, first, an explanation of the nature of the invention in controversy.

The particular invention upon which this suit is brought consists, generally speaking, in means for moving a quantity of motion picture film of considerable bulk through a motion picture machine with an intermittent motion in such a manner as to obviate undue strain and wear and tear upon the film, and with a regular, uniform and accurate feed.

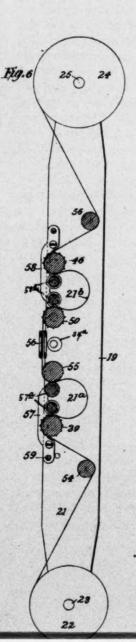
Turning to the patent in suit (p. 719), we find that it purports to be for Improvements in Projecting-Kinetoscope. The specification and drawings disclose a projecting machine, complete in all its parts; but we are concerned only with that special combination of mechanism shown by means of which the perforated film is supported and fed through the machine, which special combination of mechanism forms the subject-matter of the 7th claim of the patent, reading as follows:

Claim 7 of Patent in Suit.

"7. The combination with devices adapted to support the bulk of a flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positively-driven tooth rotary devices located between and entirely disconnected from said supporting devices and at opposite sides of the exposure window, said toothed devices being adapted to carry and feed the flexible film by the engagement of their teeth with equally-spaced holes made in the edges of the film, and to respectively produce and take up slack in the film, and an intermittently acting rotary feeding device also provided with teeth which engage with the holes in the film, whereby the film is intermittently fed across the exposure opening."

A clear idea of the mechanism called for by this claim may be gathered from an inspection of Fig. 6, Sheet 4, of the drawings of the patent in suit. In said Fig. 6, there are shown two film supporting reels 22 and 24, one at the bottom and the other at the top of the machine, each reel being mounted on an axis 23 or 25, and being of such capacity as





to carry a considerable quantity of wound-up motion picture film.

As, in the machine shown, the movement of film is from bottom to top, the lower reel 22 is called the delivering reel, and the upper reel 24 is called the receiving or take-up reel. Between these two film supporting reels is located a toothed drum 50 which is positively driven by gearing of such character as to impart to it an *intermittent* rotary motion. Located between this intermittingly operated toothed drum 50 and the delivering reel 22 is another toothed drum 39, which is also positively driven, but by gearing which imparts to it a uniform *continuous* rotary motion.

Between the intermittingly operating toothed drum 50 and the receiving or take-up reel 24, is arranged a third toothed drum 46, which, like the toothed drum 39, is positively driven so as to have a uniform, continuous rotary

motion.

The continuously operating toothed drums 39 and 46 are of the same diameter and are geared so as to revolve in the same direction and at the same speed. Their direction of rotation is also the same as that of the intermittingly acting toothed drum 50.

The relative peripheral speed of rotation of the two continuously operating rotary toothed drums 39 and 46 and of the single intermittingly operated toothed drum 50, is such that, during any given interval of time the forward motion of the continuously operating drums 39, 46 will only equal the aggregated forward motions of the intermittingly operated drum 50 during the same time so that the aggregate quantity of film advanced or fed by each of these three toothed drums in a given period of time, say a minute, is exactly the same.

Below the intermittingly operating toothed drum 50 is an

exposure window 56.

To prepare the machine for operation, a supply of perforated film is wound upon the delivering or supply reel 22 loosely mounted upon the fixed axis 23 and the end of the film is threaded through the machine in the following manner; that is to say: The end of the film is first carried upwardly to the right, around an idler roller 54, and thence to the toothed drum 39, around which it is partly wrapped, the teeth of the drum engaging positively with the perforations near the edges of the film, such engagement being insured by an idler roller 57° which presses the body of the film against the surface of the drum. After passing the toothed drum 39 and idler 57°, the end of the film is drawn out to the right, then brought back to the left and passed between a pair of co-operating idlers 57a and 55, a loop of slack 21°, being left between the toothed roller 39 and the idlers 57° and 55, as shown. From the idler 55 the film is then carried past the exposure window 56 and wrapped partly around the intermittingly operating toothed drum 50, the teeth of the latter positively engaging the perforations of the film, being kept so engaged by an idler 58°. After passing the toothed drum 50 and idler 58*, the film is again drawn out to the right and returned to the left, so as to form a second loop 21b, and is then wrapped part way around the upper toothed drum 46, whose teeth likewise positively engage with the perforations of the film, being held in such engagement by the upper idler 58a. leaving the upper toothed drum 46, the film passes first around an idler 56 and thence to the receiving or take-up reel 24. The reel 24 is locked to the axis 25 which is frictionally driven (Fig. 2, sheet 2) by a slipping friction belt 30° running over a pulley 26.

The operation of the machine thus threaded up with film is as follows:

Assuming that, with the intermittingly operating toothed

drum 50 at a position of rest and with the portion of the film in front of the exposure opening also at rest, the machine is started, immediately the continuously operating toothed drum 39 begins to revolve, clockwise, and operates through the engagement of its teeth with the perforations of the film to positively and uniformly draw film from the supply reel 22 and enlarge the loop 21a, while, at the same time and to the same extent, the continuously operating toothed drum 46 draws film from the loop 21b and feeds it uniformly and positively to the frictionally driven winding or take-up reel 24, as shown in Fig. 3. At the end of a predetermined interval, the intermittingly operating toothed drum 50 commences to also revolve, clockwise, and by the positive engagement of its teeth with the equally spaced perforations in the film, causes the portion of the film extending across the exposure window 56 to be quickly, positively and uniformly drawn past said window, thereby causing the lower loop 21° to be momentarily decreased in size and the upper loop 21b to be momentarily correspondingly increased in size. Each intermittent movement of the intermittingly operating toothed drum 50 is so timed that when the drum is once started it will quickly draw the portion of the film that is directly in front of the exposure window completely away and present and arrest a new surface of the film at the window, the said toothed drum 50, at the end of such movement, stopping positively and causing a positive arrest of the part of the film engaged by its teeth while the continuously operating toothed drums 39 and 46 continue their positive feeding action, uninterruptedly, restoring the loops 21° and 21° to normal dimensions.

It results, therefore, from the continued operation of the machine, that film is constantly, uniformly and positively withdrawn from the supply reel 22 and fed into the loop 21^a by the action of the continuously acting toothed drum 39

and that, by means of the continuously acting toothed drum 46 film is constantly, uniformly and positively drawn from the loop 21b and fed to the take-up while the intermittingly acting toothed drum 50 intermittingly and positively draws film with a quick, positive, uniform movement from loop 21° across the exposure opening and delivers it into the loop 21b, above.

It will be especially noted that all the strain incident to the drawing of film from the supply reel 22 is taken steadily and uniformly by the toothed drum 39, that the toothed drum 46 steadily, uniformly and positively supplies exposed film to the frictionally driven reel 24 that the intermittingly operated toothed drum 50 itself sustains no strain except that necessary to move the very short portion of the film extending between the toothed drum 39 and the toothed drum 50, and that such short portion of film, itself, because of its lightness and small inertia, is subject only to a minimum amount of strain and wear and tear by the action of the toothed drum 50 upon it.

It should be further noted that the intermittingly acting toothed drum 50 advances the film during each period of movement a definite, positive, invariable amount measured by the regularly spaced holes or perforations in the film with which the teeth of said drum engage; that is to say, if the movement of the said toothed drum 50 is such as to advance four (4) teeth during each interval of movement, an amount of film containing, runningwise, four (4) holes or perforations, and no more, is absolutely advanced at each cycle of movement, without any possibility of slippage of the film on any of the drums.

Since the continuously running toothed drums 39 and 46 and the intermittingly running toothed drum 50 are all positively engaged with the film by the projection of their teeth into the holes or perforations in the film, the aggregate

quantity of film embraced in the two loops 21^a and 21^b and included between the continuously running toothed drums 39 and 46 having once been fixed and determined in the threading of the film through the machine, can never afterward be altered in the slightest degree by the continued normal operation of the machine. The effect of this coordination is that wear and tear upon the intermittingly acting toothed drum and upon the film itself is never greater than it would be if the intermittent mechanism were acting upon a film only a few inches in length.

Inasmuch as the portion of the film that is acted upon by the intermittent toothed drum is always slack and is never under tension the holes or perforations in the film are never

strained by the pull of the teeth.

The uniform maintenance of the loop 21° by the continuously acting positively engaging toothed drum 39 prevents the possibility of the film ever being drawn taut or strained by the intermittingly acting toothed drum 50, and the positive engagement of the continuously running toothed drum 46 with the film also prevents the film from ever being drawn taut against the intermittent toothed drum 50 by the friction drag of the take-up reel 24, and there is thus no possibility of the film ever being exposed to strain by the regular or irregular operation of the machine.

If the continuously running toothed drum 46 were omitted, the action of the frictionally-driven take-up reel would be most erratic and would subject the film to a series of severe strains, for the following reasons: The frictionally driven take-up reel with its constantly accumulating film would necessarily constitute a mass of considerable weight that would be expected to be rotated by the comparatively gentle friction of a constantly slipping belt. These conditions would preclude the possibility of stopping and starting the take-up reel in synchronism with the stopping

and starting of the intermittingly acting toothed feeding device. Therefore, while the frictionally driven take-up reel was starting up and getting under way, a considerable quantity of slack film would accumulate between the intermittent feeding device and the take-up reel, and this slack would be taken up as the frictionally driven reel acquired velocity and would finally be entirely exhausted and stop with a jerk that would strain the perforations of the film against the teeth of the intermittent feeding device and tear them out. This jerk would, at the same time, arrest the movement of the frictionally driven take-up reel and the process would then be repeated indefinitely, becoming more severe as the quantity of film upon the reel and the resulting diameter of the roll of film increased.

The introduction of the second continuously operating toothed drum 46 obviates this difficulty by maintaining a constant supply of slack film between said toothed drum 46 and the intermittingly acting toothed drum 50, and by supplying film to the frictionally driven take-up reel at a constant and uniform rate, so that the movement of this reel is never stopped and its velocity is not permitted to accelerate beyond the speed at which the film is delivered from the said constantly feeding toothed drum.

The surface velocity of the roll of film upon the take-up reel thus always remains just sufficient to keep the film between the take-up reel and the constantly feeding toothed drum under a gentle, uniform tension that may be regulated by the tension of the slipping friction belt that drives the take-up reel.

If the continuously running toothed drum 29 were omitted, the intermittent feed of the intermittently operating toothed drum 50 would pull directly upon film coming straight from the supply reel 22 carrying a large bulk of film, and the sudden quick pull of the intermittently acting

drum 50 in its effort to overcome the inertia of the mass of film wound upon the reel 22 would result in tearing or straining the sprocket holes in the film.

The quantity of film commonly used in machines of this class is 1,000 feet in length and weights several pounds. The film is commonly fed through the machine at such a rate that the intermittent sprocket wheel makes about 16 movements per second. It is obvious that such a series of quick jerks directed to pulling film off from a heavy reel would inevitably result in the rapid destruction of the film and would be fatal to the accurate registration of successive portions of the film at the exposure window, where variations of registration amounting to a few thousandths of an inch produce upon the screen very serious displacements of the projected picture since a picture three-quarters of an inch high at the window is commonly magnified on the screen to a height of ten or twelve feet.

From the above detailed description of the construction and mode of operation of the film supporting and feeding devices of the machine, it is clear that every element detailed in claim 7 of the patent is legitimately combined with every other element and that all the elements are essential to the proper operation of the machine, that is to say:

- (a) The devices for supporting the film are essential since they must be of a character to support a considerable bulk of film, i. e., a band or strip of film, a thousand feet or more in length, wound spirally. This mass of film has considerable weight and inertia and must be supported so as to revolve readily on its axis when it is rotated."
- (b) The positively driven rotary toothed drums are also essential. They must be entirely disconnected from the film supporting devices in order that they

may be independent of said supports and operate upon the free ribbon or strip of film itself, instead of directly upon the bulk of film or its supports. They must be positively driven and continuously rotated in the same direction in order that they may act synchronously and steadily to produce and take up a like amount of slack in the film.

They must also be located between the film supporting devices and at opposite sides of the exposure window in order that the slack portion of film produced may extend across the exposure-window.

They must be toothed and their teeth must co-operate ate with equally spaced holes or perforations in the edges of the film, so that the connection between drum and film shall be absolutely positive, like the engagement of a pinion with its rack, thereby ensuring a positive and uniform feed of the film unaffected by the weight, bulk or thickness of the film dealt with, the amount of tension on the film, or the surface condition of the film, or the surface condition of the body of the drums, thereby distinguishing from friction feed devices whose accuracy of operation is affected by mass of film, tension of film, and surface condition of both film and frictional feeding devices, rendering the production by them of maintained, uniform loops or slack portions of film impossible, without frequent hand-adjustments to correct variations due to slippages or other causes.

(c) The intermittingly acting rotary toothed feed drum is also essential. It, like the continuously acting rotary feed toothed drums just described, must have its teeth arranged so as to engage the equally spaced holes or perforations in the film and intermittingly feed the slack portion of the film with absolute positiveness,

uniformity and regularity, picture by picture, and independent of any shrinkage of the film to and away from the exposure opening, and regularly, uniformly though intermittingly increasing and decreasing, respectively, the size of the loops of the film as said loops are being respectively constantly and continuously replenished and depleted by the action of the continuously operating toothed feed drums.

If this intermittingly acting device, instead of being a toothed drum co-operating positively with equally spaced holes in the film, consisted of an intermittingly acting frictional feeding device, operating on the film by friction merely, variations in the intermittent feeding of the film would result due to the impossibility of maintaining stable conditions because of variations in the thickness of the film, variations in the condition of the surface of the film, variations in the condition of the frictional feeding surfaces themselves, and variations in the pressure and surface speed of said frictional feeding surfaces.

It goes, without saying, that any variation in the feed of the film, however small it may in itself be in any individual instance, will, when many times repeated, in the handling of a long length of film, cause such a gradual creeping of the film as will, after a while, carry the pictures out of registration with the exposure opening and require the stoppage and readjustment of the machine, or the employment of some hand-operated corrective means that may be manipulated while the machine is running, to bring the pictures again in proper registry.

It follows, therefore, that any machine that does not have (1) supports for the bulk of film to be operated upon, (2) independent, positively driven toothed ro-

tary feeding devices located at opposite sides of the exposure opening for positively and uniformly engaging equally spaced holes or perforations in the film and maintaining a uniform slack portion of film between them and across said exposure opening, and (3) an intermittingly operated toothed rotary feeding device also provided with teeth for positively engaging the said equally spaced holes or perforations in the slack portion of the film, neither anticipates nor infringes the invention embodied and claimed in the 7th claim of the patent in suit.

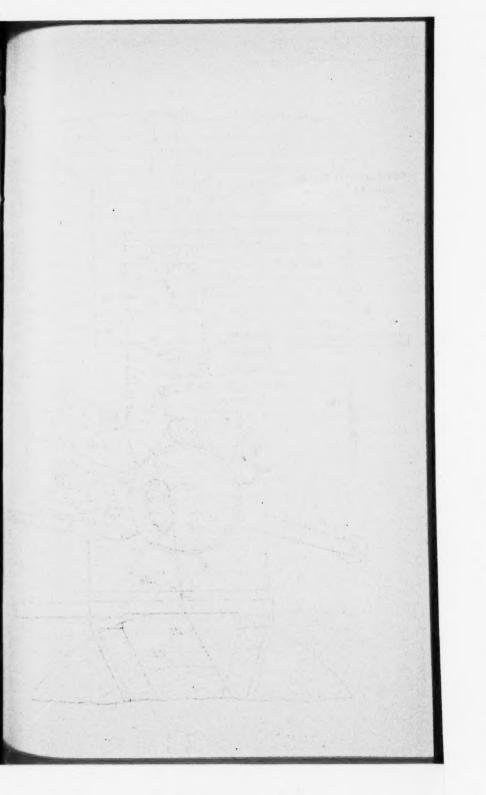
The utility of the combination of this 7th claim is not open to question. In the first place, the defendants use it, exactly, and are in no position to deny its utility. In the second place, it is universally used on all projecting machines now on the market and has been so universally used for many years (Marvin, R-D Q. 145, p. 60); and has been used on upwards of forty thousand (40,000) projecting machines, of which twenty to twenty-five thousand (20,000 to 25,000) are now in use.

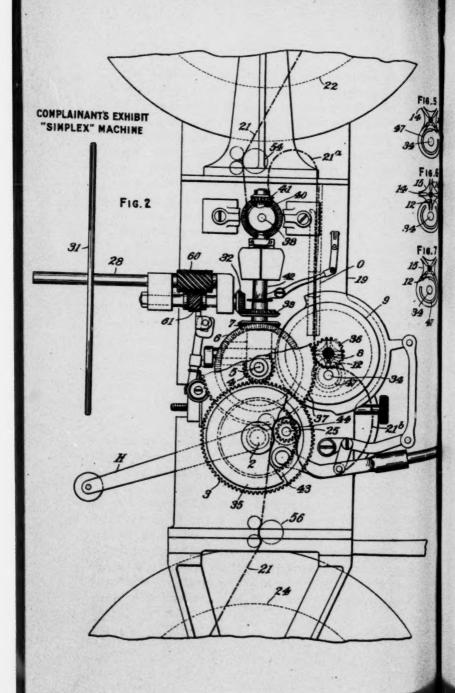
THE RESPONDENTS' MACHINE.

There are contained in the record four sheets of drawings illustrative of respondents' machine, marked "Complainant's Exhibit Simplex Machine" (p. 737, et seq.).

In this machine the perforated film is fed through the machine downward from top to bottom, instead of upward from bottom to top, as in the machine of the patent in suit, but this is, of course, an immaterial difference.

Referring to the drawings, and particularly to Fig. 1 (page 737), it will be seen that in respondents' machine there is a delivery or supply reel 22 at the top of the machine, a receiving or take-up reel 24, at the bottom of the machine,





adapted to support a considerable bulk of perforated motion picture film, two continuously rotating toothed drums 39 and 46 and an intermediate intermittingly operating toothed drum 50, the teeth of all the drums fitting the equally spaced holes or perforations in the film 21.

In threading the film 21 through the machine it passes from the delivering or supply reel 22 down and partly around an idler 54, thence partly around the continuously rotated toothed drum 39, then is formed into a loop 21^a, then is conducted by suitable guides past the exposure window O, thence passes partly around the intermittingly acting toothed drum 50, then is formed into another loop 21^b, then passes partly around another continuously operating toothed drum 46, and thence over an idler 56 to the receiving or take-up reel 24.

In this machine, as in the machine of the patent in suit, the two continuously rotating toothed drums 39 and 46 are positively driven and the intermediate intermittingly acting toothed drum 50 is also positively though intermittingly driven.

Mr. Marvin, petitioner's expert, testifies to the substantial sameness of defendants' machine and the machine of the patent in suit (Marvin, Q. 17, p. 30, et seq.) and defendants' expert, Mr. Hammer undertakes no denial of his testimony.

There can be no doubt, therefore, that respondents' machine complained of is within the patent.

PRIOR ART DEFENSES.

The Chinnock Camera.

The respondents have offered proofs regarding the alleged prior invention of one Charles E. Chinnock, of Brooklyn, New York, of a camera alleged to contain the combina-

tion of the 7th claim of the patent in suit. The defense is not made out as the machines are not the same.

An idea of the Chinnock camera may be obtained from the remaining one of the Chinnock cameras offered in evidence as "Chinnock Camera (Exhibit 40)," from five (5) photographs of such camera (pp. 1309 to 1317, inclusive) and a somewhat inaccurate diagram designated "Defendants' Exhibit No. 43" (p. 1319).

Mr. Marvin, petitioner's expert, carefully examined all of the proofs in regard to Chinnock's work and gives a very clear epitomization of the same (Q. 161, et seq., pp. 335-341), which we ask the Court to read, to avoid repetition here. Suffice it to say, Mr. Marvin in his deposition makes it perfectly clear that Chinnock's camera is not an anticipation of the 7th claim of Latham, because it lacks at least two essential elements called for specifically by the claim, to wit:

(1) "positively-driven toothed rotary devices located

* * * at opposite sides of the exposure window, said toothed devices being adapted to carry
and feed the flexible film by the engagement of
their teeth with equally spaced holes made in the
edges of the film * * *" and

(2) "an intermittently-acting rotary feeding device also provided with teeth which engage with the

holes in the film," etc.

The film of Chinnock is unperforated and the continuously operating feeding devices as well as the intermediate intermittingly operating feeding device are not toothed. Friction is relied upon for feeding and frictional feeding will not do, as Mr. Marvin points out.

If respondents wish to use Chinnock's apparatus, they are free to do so. It will not answer, and they know it.

The Marey French Patent of 1890.

Another alleged anticipation relied upon by respondents is the Marey French patent of 1890. The drawings of this patent are found in the record (p. 1175), also a translation of the specification (p. 1169), and an alleged diagrammatic representation of the device disclosed by the patent (p. 1177).

Mr. Marvin, petitioners' expert, dissects the patent (p. 341, et seq.), and shows its shortcomings. It has no "positively driven toothed rotary devices adapted to carry and feed the flexible film by engagement of their teeth with equally spaced holes made in the edge of the film," nor "an intermittently acting rotary feeding device also provided with teeth which engage with the holes of the film." The film employed is not perforated at all.

The Marey French Patent of 1893

The French patent of Marey of 1893 (p. 1191) is also relied upon. An alleged diagrammatic representation of the structure disclosed by it has been introduced by the respondents (p. 1193).

Mr. Marvin, petitioner's expert, discusses this patent and clearly shows its inadequacy as an anticipation (p. 343, et seq.). The apparatus shown has no "positively-driven toothed rotary devices" for continuous feeding, nor any "intermittently acting rotary feeding device also provided with teeth," and the film employed is not perforated at all.

The U. S. Patent of Gray, No. 540,545, June 4, 1895.

This patent to Gray (p. 1225) is carefully analyzed by Mr. Marvin, petitioner's expert (p. 345, et seq.) and found wanting. It shows a device that is entirely impracticable and there is no evidence that it was ever even attempted to be used. Mr. Marvin says (p. 348):

"But whether the Gray device could be made to operate or not, it certainly does not show positively acting toothed wheels for withdrawing the film from the film supply reel, or delivering the film to a winding reel, or any slack portion of the film between such film feeding wheels, nor a toothed intermediate wheel acting intermittently to feed the slack portion of the film positively."

An alleged diagrammatic representation of the device of the patent has been offered by respondents (p. 1231).

Green & Evans British Patent No. 10,131 of 1899.

The drawings of the patent (p. 1161) and a couple of alleged diagrammatic representations of the device disclosed therein (pp. 1165, 1166), are shown in the record.

Mr. Marvin, petitioner's expert, makes a clear-cut description of the mechanism of this patent also (p. 348, et seq.), and points out its inadequacy as an anticipation.

It does not show the prime elements of the combination of Latham's 7th claim, namely:

"positively-driven toothed rotary devices located between and entirely disconnected from said supporting devices and at opposite sides of the exposure window, said toothed devices being adapted to carry and feed the flexible film by the engagement of their teeth with equally spaced holes made in the edges of the film and to respectively produce and take up slack in the film,"

nor

"an intermittently-acting rotary feeding device also provided with teeth which engage with the holes in the film, whereby the film is intermittently fed across the exposure opening." The Printing Press Patents—Kidder, 224,440 of 1880; Echerson, 433,766 of 1890; and Cox, 508,814 of 1893.

These patents are for improvements in a non-analogous art. Aside from that, however, they are not anticipatory. Kidder (p. 1115) and its alleged diagrammatic representation (p. 1137), Echerson (p. 1127) and its alleged diagrammatic representation (p. 1139) and Cox (p. 1135) and its alleged diagrammatic representation (p. 1141) are all discussed by Mr. Marvin, petitioner's expert (p. 350, et seq.).

In all of these machines the web of paper manipulated is unperforated and the feeding is all done by *frictionally* acting feeding devices which obviate the necessity of a serious discussion of them, for reasons hereinbefore set forth.

The Edison Patents, No. 491,993, dated Feb. 21, 1893; No. 493,426, dated Mar. 14, 1893; No. 589,168, dated Aug. 31, 1897.

It is not contended by respondents that either of these Edison patents discloses the combination of devices covered by the 7th claim of the patent in suit. They simply cite them to show that, as early as Aug. 24, 1891, the date of the application for the Edison patent 589,168 (p. 1217), Mr. Edison proposed the use, both in a camera and in a projecting machine, of an intermittingly operated toothed feed wheel for feeding a perforated film across an exposure opening, as a substitute for a constantly acting device for continuously feeding the film.

In the machine of these early Edison patents there was no mechanism for forming loops in the film so that a short slack portion only would be acted upon by the proposed intermittingly acting feeding wheel, but the said feeding wheel was adapted to draw the film directly from the reel and required the whole body of film to be moved with a jerk, each time. This arrangement interdicted the use of any but very short films of little weight. It is significant that not till after the invention disclosed in the patent in suit, by Latham, did Edison put out any projecting machines save those of the so-called "peep hole" variety wherein was employed a continuously running non-interrupted film, such as shown in Figs. 1 and 2 of the Edison patent 493,426 (pp. 1200-1201).

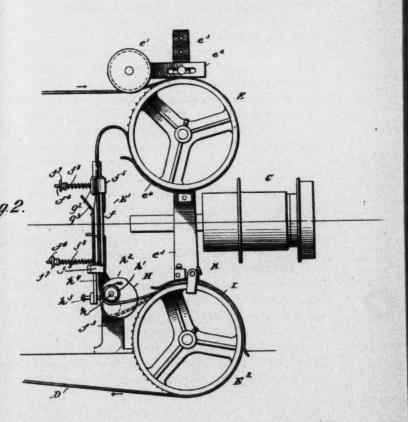
It remained for Latham to teach Edison and all prior investigators that by employing positively acting continuously operating toothed feeding devices for forming and maintaining loops and a definite slack portion in a perforated film, in combination with a toothed intermittingly acting feeding device for operating on such slack portion of the perforated film only, it was possible to use films of indefinite length and to feed such slack portion, picture by picture, and step by step, past the exposure opening, without liability of rupturing the film or of permitting the pictures to creep out of registration with the exposure opening.

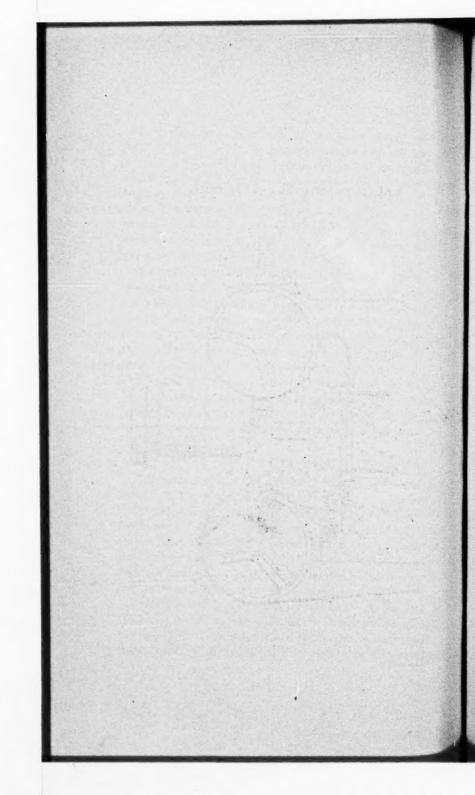
The Armat Patent No. 673,992, of May 14, 1901.

This Armat patent (p. 1263) is respondents' chief reliance. A diagrammatic representation of the mechanism of it (not altogether faithful) has been introduced by the defendants (p. 1271). Apart from the fact, hereinafter to be shown, that the Armat invention is too late in point of time to be an anticipation of Latham, the Armat structure does not disclose the Latham combination called for by the 7th claim and is, therefore, of no pertinence.

Referring to Fig. 2 of the drawings of the Armat Patent (p. 1260) it will be seen that there is shown a continuously rotating toothed drum E located above and another continuously rotating toothed drum E located below the exposure

Armat Patent No. 673,992.





opening or window f4 (Fig. 4), a tension device E' for guiding and clamping frictionally the film D on opposite sides of the exposure opening, and an intermediate intermittingly acting "beater" for acting on the film to feed it, said beater consisting of a disk H, having a friction roller h' which is adapted to impinge frictionally against the film and pull it down with a quick jerk as the disk H is rotated, and having also a cam h2 for striking the end of a screw h3 and releasing the clamp at the moment the roller h' commences its feeding action on the film. The operation of the two continuously rotating feed wheels E, E2 would undoubtedly be to produce a portion of slack film between them extending across the exposure opening and the operation of the rotating beater H would also be to open the clamp and intermittingly feed a portion of this slack film past the exposure opening.

Now, if petitioner were asserting here a broad claim to a combination of two continuously operating toothed feed rollers for producing a slack in the film, with any kind of an intermediate intermittingly acting feeding device for intermittingly feeding such slack portion, this Armat device, if early enough, might have some pertinence, but inasmuch as petitioner is here asserting only a relatively narrow claim (the 7th) covering a specific combination of specifically contrived elements, one of which elements is an intermittingly acting toothed drum for producing a given result, i. e., the feeding of the perforated film, rapidly, evenly, positively, with the minimum amount of strain upon it and without injury to its photographic surface, the Armat device has no relevance whatever, for the following rea-

sons:

⁽a) In the Latham device, as claimed in the 7th claim, the intermittent feeding element is;

"an intermittently acting rotary feeding device also provided with teeth which engage with the holes in the film."

In the Armat device this element is a "beater," consisting of a disk bearing a friction roller which beats against the film and pulls it frictionally and does not engage with the holes in it at all.

In point of fact, Armat was rather keen to have no engagement of his feeding device, with the holes in the film, for in his patent he states, referring to the friction roller in the beater disk:

(Record, p. 1266, line 29, et seq., Col. 1, page 3 of patent.)

"This roller is preferably provided with a suitable covering and may have reduced ends, as shown in Fig. 8, so that it may engage the surface of the film between the perforations in order to prevent enlarging or otherwise distorting the perforations."

(b) In the Latham device, the teeth of the intermittingly operating toothed feed drum are always positively engaged with the holes in the slack portion of the film like a pinion with its rack in readiness to instantly advance the film when the drum is put into action. The drum and film are, in effect, positively geared together and move as a unit.

In the Armat device, on the other hand, the friction roll h' of the beater is normally separated from the slack portion of the film (i. e., that portion which lies between the clamp guide and the continuously rotating lower toothed wheel E²) and when said friction roll is rotated by the turning of the disk H said roll strikes the stationary film with a glancing blow which pro-

duces a quick tension on the film that has to be resisted by the walls of the perforations engaged with the rapidly receding teeth of said continuously rotating lower feed roll, thereby tending to tear out said perforations and injure the film.

(c) In the Latham device, the parts of the film engaged by the intermittingly acting feed device are parts that are removed from the portion of the film devoted to the photographic pictures, i. e., the margins of the film, and there is therefore no abrasion of the film dur-

ing the feeding operation.

In the Armat device, on the other hand, only the picture bearing part of the film, i. e., the middle part is acted upon by the feeding device or beater (the perforated margins being purposely left untouched as we have seen) and each time the beater roller strikes the film it sweeps across such middle portion with frictional contact, thereby tending to deface and scratch the film and produce that ghost or rain effect observable when a defaced film is exhibited.

But, say the respondents, conceding that the positively acting toothed drum feeding device of Latham is better than the frictional beater device of Armat, a positively acting toothed drum feeder was itself an old appliance as shown in the prior Edison patents, and, therefore, there was no invention required of Latham to put Edison's feeder in place of Armat's beater; it was a mere substitution of equivalents.

This argument is specious and of no force.

Latham made a perfectly good combination of instrumentalities for producing a new result. It was not essential to the integrity of that combination that any one of the instrumentalities, separately considered, should have been new. All, or some or none of them might well have been old, and the *combination* of them new.

Compared with Edison, Latham's combination shows novelty and utility. Compared with Armat it also shows novelty and utility.

Continuously operating toothed feeding devices co-operating with a perforated web were old, per se, when Edison invented his positive intermittingly operated toothed feeder. If Edison had thought of the combination of such continuously operating toothed devices with his intermittingly acting toothed feeding device he might have anticipated Latham; but he did not. Similarly, if Armat had thought of combining with his continuously acting toothed feed wheels an intermittingly acting toothed feed wheel he might have anticipated Latham; but he did not.

The logic of respondents' argument requires the Court to find that Latham did not first invent the combination of the 7th claim, because Armat first invented it. But Armat never claimed to have invented it, and while his patent shows four distinct forms of his beater feeder (see Figs. 2, 9, 10, and 11 of his patent, pp. 1260-1261), there is no suggestion anywhere that he ever used or thought of using a rotary toothed intermittingly operating toothed feeder as a substitute for a beater. But if he had had the idea of using such a device much work of an inventive order would have been required to embody and co-ordinate it with the other elements.

We would particularly ask the attention of the Court to the discussion of this Armat patent by Mr. Marvin, petitioner's expert (p. 353, et seq.). He shows that, although the Armat apparatus would doubtless work, it would work but poorly and be open to many objections not found in the Latham construction: that the \rms tstructure.

ture is not commercially practical for a projecting machine where the film is used over and over; that there are no machines on the market embodying it; and that its use would certainly be a backward step in the art.

The Joly French Patent No. 249,875, dated August 26, 1895, and the Joly U. S. Patent No. 569,875, of October 20, 1896.

The Joly French patent (p. 1241), the Joly U. S. patent (p. 1249) and the respondents' diagrammatic representation (imperfect though it be) may be considered in this connection.

Assuming for present purposes and contrary to the fact that the apparatus of Joly was early enough in point of time, still, it is not an anticipation of Latham.

As pointed out by Mr. Marvin, petitioner's expert (p. 358), Joly, like Armat, employed a *beater* operating on the film with frictional impingement only and not an intermittingly acting toothed wheel positively engaging the perforations of the film, like Latham's. All the objections urged against Armat are applicable to Joly.

If, as respondents contend, the toothed intermediate feeder was an obvious substitute and equivalent for a beater, it is somewhat remarkable that, considering the immeasurable superiority of such toothed wheel feed over a beater, Joly did not somewhere, in either his French or U. S. patent suggest it as a substitute. He did not, however, but, like Armat, was industrious in suggesting an additional form of beater (p. 1254, column 2, lines 85 to 89).

The Casler Patent No. 466,495, of January 22, 1901.

The inapplicability of this patent as a reference to the 7th claim of the Latham patent is thus very clearly shown by Mr. Marvin, petitioner's expert (p. 359):

"This apparatus is designed to handle unperforated film. It comprises an upper and a lower support for the bulk of the film, between which supports is located an exposure window. Adjacent to the exposure window is an intermittently operated clamp adapted to pinch the film and prevent its movement. Between the supports are two continuously operating frictional feed wheels, one located adjacent to the upper support and adapted to draw film continuously from the upper support, the other being located adjacent to the lower support and adapted to continuously deliver the film to the lower support. Between these two sets of continuously operating feed wheels is another set of continuously operating friction rollers, between which the film passes, and by which the film is gripped. The operation of the machine is as follows: The revolution of the upper friction feeding rollers draws the film from the supply reel and delivers it in the form of a loop above the exposure window where the film is clamped fast by the intermittently acting clamp. In the meantime the continuous feed rollers located below the exposure window are revolving and straining the film taut between the clamp and themselves. And the lower continuously feeding friction roller is taking up the slack film that exists between the continuously running feed rollers below the exposure window and itself and delivering film to the frictionally driven take-up reel.

When the clamp at the window operates and releases the film, it is drawn downward rapidly across the exposure window by the continuously running friction rollers located below the window. These rollers run at a higher peripheral velocity than do the other continuously feeding rollers, so that by their operation they pull out slack that has accumulated above the exposure window and strain the film taut against the upper feed rollers. They then continue to pull down the film as rapidly as it is delivered by the upper feed rollers until the intermittently acting clamp again seizes

the film and stops its motion.

In this patent, means are indicated by which the relative rotation of the feed wheels and the operation of the clamp may be varied from time to time by the operator in order that the successive variations in the pitch of the successive pictures may be corrected so that the creep of the film before the exposure window may be avoided, thus enabling the operator to maintain the successive pictures continuously in registration before the exposure window.

This structure differs from the structure of the Latham patent in suit in that it discloses no toothed rotary feeding device that engages with holes in the edges of the film separate and distinct from the supports, and that feeds the film positively and regularly, and no rotary toothed intermittently acting feeding de-

vices.

This device of the Casler patent is adapted to be used in projecting a series of pictures on a film by means of the continual manipulation of the operator, but it is not adapted to automatically project a series of motion pictures, because no means are indicated for automatically maintaining the presentation of successive pictures in register at the exposure window."

As Mr. Marvin, petitioner's expert, had had practical experience with cameras and projecting machines in which the film was frictionally driven, and knew their shortcomings thoroughly well he was questioned generally, as to their mode of operation and gave the following illuminating testimony:

"Q. 196. In cameras having such frictionally driven mechanism, are the pictures produced equally or un-

equally spaced?

A. In frictionally driven cameras they are always unevenly spaced. I know that very extensive, very serious, efforts have been made under my direction to overcome that difficulty. But in spite of a variety of devices and the greatest possible refinement in the mechanism. I have never known it to be possible to produce a frictionally operated camera that would produce uniformly spaced pictures.

Q. 197. Where friction devices were employed in a camera and unequally spaced pictures resulted, what expedient, if any, was adopted to produce the positives that would be equally spaced?

A. The process of producing equally spaced positives from unequally spaced negatives was a little involved.

In the beginning, it involves the-

Q. 198. I do not ask you to go into all the details, but just state the result.

A. I can tell it briefly, I think.

Q. 199. Yes?

A. In order to obtain uniformly spaced positives from irregularly spaced negatives, it was necessary to perforate the negative film with registry holes at the time the photographic exposure was made. These registry holes were subsequently used in a special printing machine to correct the irregularities in the spacing of the negative, and to print regularly spaced positives. These regularly spaced positives were then suitable to be used in special projecting machines.

Q. 200. When you got your regularly spaced positives and used them in projecting machines, in which the film was frictionally driven, what then did you have to do to keep the pictures uniform in register with the

exposure opening?

A. In spite of the greatest efforts, we found it impossible to produce a frictionally feeding projecting machine to handle unperforated films that would maintain the successive pictures in register at the exposure window, for no matter how perfectly the machine was constructed and how perfect the spacing of the positive pictures upon the film, we found that the accumulating errors of registration would constantly operate to make the picture appear to crawl up or down on the screen. For example, supposing we should set the frictional feed device so as to feed the height of one picture as exactly as we could-but in practice we might find that it was feeding one-thousandth of an inch too much. That thousandth of an inch would be negligible between adjacent pictures, but after we had progressed ten pictures it would amount to ten one-thousandths,

and after we had fed a thousand pictures it would amount to an inch, which would be the total height of the picture. We found it impossible to so adjust the machine that it would continue to feed perfectly. The machine was, as you may express it, in a condition of unstable equilibrium. In order to correct this and to make it possible to use the frictionally driven machines with unperforated film, we resorted to the expedient of putting in a regulating device by which the feed of the machine could be constantly varied. Then, as the operator watched the picture upon the screen, when he found the picture beginning to creep up a little, he moved his handle down, and that changed the feed of the machine a trifle so that the picture would commence to travel down, and when it got down a little ways, he would move it up again, and then the picture would commence to travel up, so that the picture projected by a frictionally driven device of that kind always appeared to gradually seesaw up and down the screen a little, and could only be made approximately central by the continued vigilance of the operator. If he were to leave the machine for a fraction of a minute, the picture would creep entirely off."

The Other Patents Set up by Respondents of no Importance.

We have not taken time to discuss the Le Prince patent No. 376,247 of Jan. 10, 1888 (p. 1149), the Mayer patent No. 525,991 of Sept. 1, 1894 (p. 1223), and the Latham patent 600,113 of Mar. 1, 1898 (p. 1291).

They were considered by Mr. Marvin, petitioner's expert, and were found by him not to disclose the combination of the 7th claim of the patent in suit (p. 361).

THE LATHAM IMPROVEMENT AS SUMMARIZED BY MR. MARVIN, PETITIONER'S PRACTICAL EXPERT.

After reviewing the so-called prior art structures, Mr. Marvin, petitioner's practical expert, a man of the widest

possible experience in this art, gave the following testimony, showing the practical value of the Latham structure:

"Q. 185. Taken as a whole, what improvement or advantage, if any, does the structure of the Latham patent in suit present over any individual structure shown in any individual patent or structure of the prior art to which your attention has been directed?

Mr. Jeffrey: I object unless the question will be limited to the structure which is described in claim 7 in suit,

Mr. Church: The witness may limit his answer to that structure.

A. The Latham patent in suit discloses a structure that is superior to any structure disclosed in any of the patents to which reference has been made, in the means for manipulating a body of flexible film of considerable bulk so as to feed it across an exposure window intermittently with positive quick movement without subjecting the film at any part, or at any time, to any severe tension or strain and to move the film intermittently across the exposure window in a manner uniform as to equally spaced perforations along the edges of the film, and independent of the linear dimension of the film as affecting the pitch of the perforations.

The mechanism is further adapted to so move the film automatically and without the continued manipulation or adjustment of any part of the mechanism other than supplying of power by hand or otherwise to the main shaft.

Q. 186. What are the physical elements of this mechanism by which the result you speak of is attained?

A. The physical elements are first two supports for the bulk of the film, a fixed support adapted to receive the film before use and a frictionally rotated support adapted to receive the film after use. Between these supports and entirely disconnected from them are two toothed rotary feed wheels adapted to continuously draw film from the supply reel and deliver it to the take-up reel, and to respectively produce and take up slack film, and an intermittently acting rotary toothed feeding device located between the two continuously operating toothed feeding devices and adjacent to an exposure window, and adapted to feed the film across the exposure window with an intermittent motion; all of these feeding devices having teeth adapted to engage equally spaced perforations made in the edges of the film.

Q. 187. When in your testimony you have spoken of a maintained slack portion, or maintained loop, or loops, what do you mean, and how is the maintained slack or the maintained loops provided in the actual

operation of the machine?

A. By the maintained loops referred to in the description of this mechanism and its operation, is meant the quantity of slack film that exists between the upper pair of continuously running toothed feed wheels and the intermittently operating toothed feed wheel, and between the lower pair of continuously running toothed feed wheels and the intermittently operating toothed feed wheel. This slack or loop of film is adjusted by the operator when he threads the machine. It may be

of any convenient magnitude.

After the machine has been threaded and the machine started in operation, the total quantity of the slack film between the two sets of continuously operating toothed feeding wheels never varies, but this slack portion is intermittently fed across the exposure window. The purpose of this loop, or slack portion of film above and below the exposure window is to relieve the film from strain under the action of the intermittent feeding device and establishes, with reference to the movement of the film, substantially the same condition that would exist were the film only a few inches in length instead of being possibly a thousand feet in length, as is customary in commercial practice.

But no matter how long the film and how large the

bulk of film contained upon the supports, the total weight of film to be manipulated by the intermittent device consists always only in that slack portion which lies between the two continuously feeding devices."

Respondents have intentionally or otherwise introduced testimony by the witness Hammer purporting to show that the function of the so-called "framing device" on projecting machines is to in some way insure or facilitate the accurate registration of successive pictures in the exposure window so as to contribute to the steadiness of the projected image. This is a total misconception of the function of the framing device.

The real function of this device is disclosed by Mr. Marvin in his testimony on pages 364, 365 and 366. The precision and regularity of the presentation of successive images at the exposure window and the consequent steadiness of the projected picture upon the screen is dependent solely upon the regularity and accuracy of operation of the intermittent feeding device and upon the uniformity and regularity of the perforations in the edges of the film that coact with the teeth on the intermittent feeding device. Any variation in the feed of the intermittent feeding device will be instantly apparent on the screen, enormously magnified This intermittent feed is really the soul of the machine upon which the merit of the entire performance rests. It is most essential that its construction and operation should be extraordinarily precise and perfect and that it should be carefully shielded from any disturbing forces and variable strains in order that its delicate mechanism and the holes in the delicate perforated film may be subjected to no fluctuating forces that inevitably produce slight but most important variations in the registry of successive pictures at the exposure window.

To confuse this essential regularity of feed with the func-

tion of the framing device is misleading and absurd. Given an uninterrupted strip of film of any length in normal condition and a normally acting projecting machine of the Latham type and the framing device would have no function whatever, and its presence or absence from the machine would in no way modify the operation of the machine and the results produced.

The framing device is an emergency device put into use only when abnormal conditions develop through imperfections of some nature and its function is then to enable the operator to restore operating conditions to normal without

necessity of stoping the exhibition.

DEFENSE OF ESTOPPEL BY PATENT OFFICE PROCEEDINGS.

It appears that while the application for the Latham patent in suit was pending in the Patent Office, it was put in interference with the then pending application of Thomas Armat, filed Feb. 19, 1896 (which afterward resulted in patent No. 673,992 of May 14, 1901 (p. 1263) hereinabove considered) and the then pending application of Herman Casler, filed Feb. 26, 1896 (which afterward resulted in patent No. 666,495 of Jan. 22, 1901 (p. 1279), also hereinabove considered) as to the following subject-matter or issue:

(P. 1347.)

"In a picture exhibiting apparatus for giving the impession to the eye of objects in motion, the combination with a picture carrying strip or film, a tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent the flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film."

Testimony was taken by all the parties to the interference and the interference coming on to be heard was decided, first, by the Examiner of Interferences in favor of Latham (p. 1015), then on appeal by the Board of Examiners-in-Chief, in favor of Armat (p. 1437), which last named decision was affirmed by the Commissioner of Patents (p. 1458) and again, and finally, by the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia (p. 1469).

Each of the parties, Latham, Armat and Casler, disclosed in their respective applications many details of structure not shown by any of the others, and, therefore, subject-matter of which no interference issue could be predicated; but all of them did positively show the particular combination of elements called for by the above quoted single issue, and this it was that brought on the interference.

Without pausing to discuss, in detail, the several decisions rendered in the interference, suffice it to say, that the Court of Appeals, the ultimate tribunal appealed to, found that one of the essential elements of the issue before it, to wit, "means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion" (p. 1474), while present in the structure disclosed in the Latham application, as filed, was not present in the particular structure offered in evidence by Latham to carry back his date of invention (Exhibit 12), and, therefore, awarded judgment of priority as to the matter in issue to Armat.

It is important to particularly note that in deciding the

interference in favor of Armat, the dominating consideration as indicated in the opinion of the Court was that the alleged anticipatory structure of Latham was originally used as a camera for the purpose of making motion pictures and that in the structure as so used the shutter was so proportioned as to admit light to the film for a comparatively small portion of the time only, that is, the solid part of the shutter that obscured the light during its rotation constituted much more than one-half of the total period of revolution so that while the interval of pause of the film in the Latham early structure exceeded the interval of movement, the interval of pause and illumination did not exceed the interval of movement, but was less than the interval of movement.

The Court found that Latham was unable to prove that he had operated his machine either without any shutter at all, as indicated in Armat's application, or with a shutter so proportioned that the interval of pause and illumination exceeded the interval of movement of the film.

Armat in his application claimed to be able to accomplish new results in projection by making the interval during which the picture was visible exceed the interval during which it was obscured. Latham's evidence did not show that he had grasped this idea or embodied it in practice, therefore the Court was compelled to decide that Armat had disclosed the first structure embodying the exact elements of the issue of the interference. The evidence that Latham's early structure, used as a camera, long anticipated Armat's first structure is conclusive, and this structure of Latham's clearly embodied all of the other elements of the issue of the interference except the element of the excess of pause and illumination over the interval of rest. Latham clearly proved that his structure first embodied "the combination with a picture carrying strip of film, a

tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent the flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement * * * and mechanism for feeding the film so as to produce slack therein between the same and said tension device whereby the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film.

Had Latham with his early machine used a properly proportioned shutter, that is, a shutter adapted for the projection of pictures rather than a shutter adapted for the making of pictures, the interference must of necessity have been decided in his favor. The evidence in the interference proceedings show that while Armat may have been entitled to credit for contributing to the art the idea that an excess of illumination of the picture improved the result, yet to Latham, as between the parties in the interference, was due the credit of first organizing a mechanism for feeding the film corprising means for uniformly feeding the film so as to produce slack therein and means for intermittently moving the slack across the exposure window with regularity and precision.

Armat's patent issued, May 14, 1901, as patent No. 673,-992 (p. 1263) containing a claim (claim 2) in the identical words of the interference issue (p. 1268).

Afterwards, Latham, conceiving himself still emitted to a patent for the subject-matter contained in his application, but not shown in the Armat application, amended his application by inserting, among others, claim 7 here involved, and his patent here in suit was, on Aug. 26, 1902, duly granted.

Respondents contend that the judgment in the interference against Latham and in favor of Armat operates as an estoppel on Latham and those claiming under him, and precludes the latter from asserting the Latham patent to be valid in this proceeding against them.

There are several conclusive answers to this contention.

(a) In the first place, inasmuch as defendants are not in privity with nor claiming title under either party to the interference judgment, they are in no position to invoke here such judgment as an estoppel, as to

anything.

(b) In the second place, the matter adjudicated in the interference did not cover the subject-matter of the 7th claim here in controversy. Such subject-matter was not and could not have been adjudicated in the interference because it was not only not made an issue there, but could not, by any possibility have been made an issue there, since Armat neither made the claim nor could have claimed it, because his application did not disclose it.

An essential element of Latham's 7th claim is as we have seen:

"an intermittently-acting rotary feeding device also provided with teeth which engage the holes in the film, whereby the film is intermittently fed across the exposure opening."

and this element Armat's application did not disclose, as we have pointed out in discussing the Armat patent based upon such application (*onte*, p. 43).

Of course, the former judgment could, upon principle, only be pleaded as res adjudicata or as an estoppel, as to a matter that was or could have been put in issue in the former proceeding.

The defense of estoppel thus goes up in smoke.

LATHAM'S DATE OF INVENTION.

Inasmuch as there is lack of identity between the Latham structure of invention as embodied in claim 7 of the patent in suit, and the structures of Armat, Joly and Gray, set up as anticipations, it would seem immaterial and unnecessary to go into the proofs as to Latham's date of invention. Such proofs show, however, that as early as February 26, 1895, Latham had made and successfully operated a machine embodying the film supporting and feeding mechanism here involved, which is earlier than any date established for Armat, Joly or Gray; Armat's earliest date being the fall of 1895 (p. 145), Joly's Aug. 26, 1895 (p. 1233), and Gray's, Mar. 9, 1895 (p. 1225).

True, such mechanism was, at that time, embodied by Latham in a camera and not in a projecting machine, but it was equally applicable to both kinds of machines without change (Marvin, X-Q. 206, et seq., p. 371), it making no difference whether the mechanism was employed to feed a perforated film upon which pictures were to be taken, or a film upon which pictures had already been taken.

Recognition of this fact that a film feeding mechanism is universally regarded as such, whether present in an apparatus used as a camera or in an apparatus used as a projecting machine, is found in many of the patents set up as anticipations by the defendants in this case.

For instance, in the Edison patent No. 493,426 of March 14, 1893 (p. 1207), which is, primarily, for a projecting machine, the film feeding mechanism is described as equally applicable to a camera, as follows:

(P. 1207, lines 97 to 103):

"The means for advancing the film and for operating the shutter to expose the pictures may be the same in all particulars as in the apparatus for taking pic-

tures described in my application Serial No. 403,535, filed August 24, 1891."

Again, in the Joly patent, No. 569,875 of Oct. 20, 1896 (p. 1249), which is, primarily, for a camera or taking machine, it is stated:

(P. 1249, line 11):

"The invention relates to a chronophotographic apparatus whereby a large number of photographs, each very clear, may be taken within a given time. It may serve also as a kinetoscope."

A kinetoscope is a projecting machine.

Again, in the Marey French patent No. 231, 209 of June 29, 1893 (p. 1179), which is, primarily, for a camera or taking apparatus, the use of the mechanism for exhibiting is indicated as follows:

(P. 1190):

"The reversibility of this apparatus can easily be seen, if a strip carrying positive images, lighted from the rear, are made to pass through the focus of the objective."

Again, in the Gray patent, No. 540,545 of June 4, 1895 (p. 1227), which is for a camera, the same step-by-step film feeding apparatus described as used in the device when used as a camera is also described as used when the device is employed as a projecting machine, as follows:

(P. 1228, line 93):

"When the film has been developed and printed on a similar film for projection, the positive film is placed in the camera and illuminated by two sources of light J J', which in the present case are electric arc lights, the light being converged by condensers as in an ordinary optical lantern. The film is drawn along by the step-by-step motion as described in the operation of taking the impressions and the projection is alternatively by direct and reflected beams."

Turning now to the specific proofs as to Latham's early work, the facts and circumstances leading up to the production of the machine that was in complete operative form and actually operated on Feb. 26, 1895, were as follows:

In the latter part of the year 1894 Mr. Latham, having secured, through the assistance of his two sons, Otway and Gray, funds for the development of his invention and plans for carrying on the business of taking and exhibiting motion pictures, leased a shop at 35 Frankfort Street, in the city of New York; purchased the necessary tools and materials, employed a skilled mechanic, Eugene Lauste, and set him to work under the immediate supervision of Otway, to construct machines for the purpose contemplated and in accordance with Mr. Latham's ideas and instructions (pp. 392, 393; and p. 519).

On the 24th of December, 1894, a second mechanic, Emil W. Kleinert, was employed and set to work to assist Lauste, who had, by that date, constructed the feed mechanism of the camera, but was using an intermittent device in it which was not proving satisfactory. It appears, however, that when Kleinert arrived at the shop on the day named, he found the camera substantially complete and satisfactory. with the exception of this feed device (p. 520; pp. 627, 628).

It further appears that when Kleinert came to the shop, Lauste and his employers were experimenting with a feed device, which had been suggested to Latham by one W. K. L. Dickson, but that it proved unsatisfactory and inadequate for the purpose, on account of its slowness and ten-

dency to impart vibrations to the film (pp. 621, 622; pp. 520, 521).

For some days after Kleinert's arrival, Latham and his assistants cast about for a better form of stop device than that suggested by Dickson, and finally decided to try a form of intermittent gear which they found illustrated in a catalogue of the Boston Gear Works, of Boston, Mass. Acting under Mr. Latham's instructions, Kleinert wrote to this company, ordering one of these gears of prescribed dimension, and such gear was furnished, as appears from the bill of the Boston Gear Works, January 7, 1895 (p. 631). Experiments with this gear led to its adoption in a slightly modified form procured from Pearce, of New York, and the machine was altered to use a film much wider than the Edison film, which was the only one then obtainable on the market. To meet the requirements of the wider film, Lauste was set to work on a punching machine for perforating the edges of the film of the width contemplated (pp. 393, 396; p. 72).

Some time in the early part of February, 1895, a quantity of the wide film, sensitized but unperforated, was ordered by Latham from the Eastman Kodak Company, of Rochester, New York, and this film was shipped to him on February 18, 1895, as appears from the bill of the Eastman

Company of that date in evidence (p. 1010).

It is not necessary for present purposes to go into the details of the testimony of the numerous witnesses by which the facts above outlined are established, especially as the point vital to the matter under immediate consideration is that the camera embodying the feeding device here involved was completed and the wide film for it perforated and ready for use on February 26, 1895. On the night of that date, Otway Latham, Dickson, Lauste and Kleinert, at the shop on Frankfort Street, put the camera

to its first practical use, by taking with it a series of photographs of a swinging incandescent lamp (p. 393; pp. 446-447; p. 511; p. 624).

Some of the film after exposure in the camera was at once developed and after the experiment was concluded, Otway Latham, Dickson and Kleinert, went up to the Hotel Bartholdi, where Mr. Woodville Latham lived, and where, being indisposed on that evening, he had retired before the others arrived (p. 624; p. 511).

At the shop, after having developed a section of the film bearing the photographs of the swinging lamp, Mr. Dickson wrote a note in the following words:

"To my friend, Mr. Woodville Latham. Compliments of W. K. L. Dickson, February 26, 27, 1895, Midnight"

(P. 522; p. 447).

To this note Dickson attached a strip of the developed film, and the two were slipped under Mr. Latham's door at the hotel by Otway, together with a note written by himself, and which read as follows:

"Experiment most successful. We took a picture, machine is very fine, works beautifully. Don't wake us up as we did not reach the room until 3 A.M. Otway."

(P. 1043).

Dickson's note with the attached strip of film was offered in evidence as an exhibit in the Patent Office interference, entitled, Latham vs. Casler vs. Armat," in which the application for the patent in suit became involved in 1897, as hereinabove stated, and as is shown by the testimony in this case, after the termination of that interference, Latham's exhibits therein were shipped to his assignees, the E. & H. T. Anthony Company and preserved for some years, when most of them were destroyed. As no trace of the note can be found, it was presumably among the exhibits destroyed.

On arising on the morning of February 27, 1895, Mr. Woodville Latham found both of the notes above referred to on the floor of his room, and at the end of Otway's, he wrote as follows:

"Slipped under my door at 3 A.M., February 27, '95, and got by me at 5.30 A.M. W. L."

(P. 1043).

Otway's note with his father's memorandum was not used as an exhibit in the interference case referred to, but remained in Mr. Latham's possession until produced by him in the former suit brought on his patent (to be hereinafter further referred to), entitled "Motion Picture Patents Company vs. Independent Moving Pictures Company of Amer-

ica" (p. 512).

All of the participants in this affair, except Dickson, testified in 1897, in the interference case referred to, to the facts above narrated and the testimony of all of them, with the exception of Otway Latham, is present, under stipulation, in the case at bar, leaving no room to question the certainty of the fact that a camera was used in Latham's shop on February 27, 1895, to take a series of photographs of a swinging incandescent lamp; that said camera as then and there used was devised by Woodville Latham and that it contained film feeding mechanism identical with that of the patent in suit, as covered by the 7th claim thereof. On these points, we have the testimony of Woodville Latham, Lauste, Kleinert and Dickson, stipulated in from the record

of the former suit, and the testimony of Thomas Armat, taken in the present case (pp. 439-440; p. 453; pp. 529-530; p. 628; pp. 382-383).

The original camera, sometime after the use of it on February 26, 1895, referred to, passed out of Mr. Latham's possession, but was subsequently purchased by him and offered in the interference case as "Exhibit 12." This was one of the exhibits sent to E. & H. T. Anthony Company, after the determination of the interference, but as no trace of it can be found, notwithstanding diligent search for it, it was presumably among the machines that were some years ago scrapped. (Stevens, p. 665; Page, pp. 672, 673; Casler, p. 387, et seg.)

Thomas Armat, Latham's opponent in the interference case referred to, and who acted as his own attorney in the conduct of that case and cross-examined Latham and his witnesses, testified in the present case, that while the interference case was in progress he examined the Latham camera "Exhibit 12" with care and found that it corresponded to the drawings of the Latham patent (pp. 382-383). fact that Armat, who was at the time of the interference thoroughly familiar with devices of this character and was personally interested in breaking down Latham's case, found, at that time, no discrepancies between the drawings of the Latham application and the Latham camera "Exhibit 12," leaves no doubt in the mind as to the identity and construction of the said camera "Exhibit 12." tion of the camera accords with that of Woodville Latham and of Kleinert (p. 529; p. 628).

The evidence is that after the trial and use of the camera on February 26, 1895, which, for present purposes, we may assume to be Latham's date of invention of the 7th claim in issue, the camera was put into immediate practical use. Photographs of a scene were taken early in March, 1895, and these were subsequently exhibited to the public.

An enlargement of one of these photographs was preserved by Lauste and offered in evidence as "Lauste Photograph" (p. 1071). The "New York Sun" of Monday, April 22, 1895, a clipping from which is in evidence, gives a fairly good reproduction of a picture from the same scene (p. 1049). Thereafter, on May 5, 1895, with the same camera, a fake prize fight on the roof of the Madison Square Garden was photographed on a very long film, and the extracts from the newspapers of that date, which are in evidence (pp. 1005, 1045) show that wide publicity was given to the fact. One of the original negatives, preserved as a relic by Mr. Dickson is in evidence. (See print, p. 1041.)

From the very first the machine was used commercially to produce all the pictures exhibited by the Lathams in their enterprise, and after some months additional machines containing the same feeding mechanism were built and used both for taking and projecting pictures. The application for the Latham patent was filed on June 1, 1896, a little more than a year after the first practical use of the invention.

While this machine "Exhibit 12" was built for taking pictures, the feasibility of its use as a projecting machine was appreciated and it was so used in an experimental way (Latham, pp. 515, 583, 584; Lauste, p. 424, X-Q. 240, et seq.; Lauste, p. 771, Q. 89, et seq.; Kleinert, p. 641, X-Q. 122, et seq.). So far as the means for supporting and feeding the film is concerned, no change was required or made when the machine was changed from a camera to a projecting machine or vice versa.

Lest the Court be misled by the evidence of the meager and rather unsatisfactory use of the early Latham machine as a projecting machine, it may be well to point out obvious reasons why this machine, more or less crudely constructed for the primary purpose of a camera, naturally would not give good results when used under the then existing conditions for projecting motion pictures.

It has herein before been plainly indicated that a successful projecting machine is necessarily a machine of great precision of operation, and in the Latham type of machine this precision depends for one thing upon a very nice adaptation of the spacing or pitch of the perforations in the edges of the film to the spacing or pitch of the sprocket teeth on the intermittent feeding device.

It is apparent in the first place that it is essential that the pitch of the sprocket teeth be uniform and very accurate, and in the second place that the perforations in the film be also uniform and very accurate, and it is further of absolute importance that the pitch of the holes in the film should exactly match the pitch of the sprocket teeth. If the pitch of the holes in the film is slightly greater or slightly less than the pitch of the sprocket teeth, the film will tend to ride on the teeth and the holes will be strained or torn as the film is forced down over two or more teeth of the sprocket wheel.

In modern construction the very nicest mechanical appliances and work are necessary to secure this desired accuracy. It is very unlikely that such accuracy was to be found in the first model of the machine and perforated film constructed by Latham, but assuming that Latham's camera was sufficiently well constructed to carry perforated negative film in a reasonably satisfactory manner, nevertheless, a very convincing reason why the identical sprocket wheels of this machine were not adapted to satisfactorily handle film perforated with Latham's perforating machine for projection purposes is indicated in Lauste's answer to "Q. 94" on page 771.

It should be remembered that a camera used unexposed, undeveloped film and that film shrinks greatly during the process of development, therefore, if Latham's sprocket teeth and his perforating machine for making unexposed negative film were designed to properly coact so that unexposed perforated film would run properly over his sprocket

teeth, it was almost inevitable that when this film was shrunk in development, the holes in the film being thus brought closer together would no longer perfectly fit over the sprocket teeth and the film would inevitably be strained or torn and would not be advanced to the exposure window with regular accuracy. No importance, therefore, is to be attached to the more or less imperfect results obtained by Latham in his experiments in projecting developed motion The fact that that pictures in his camera mechanism. mechanism in substantially the identical form used by Latham is at present in use in all commercial projecting machines, effectually disposes of the suggestion that the mechanism was not adapted to projecting pictures. should be further remembered that in these experiments Latham presumably, since there is no evidence to the contrary, used the same shutter that he used with his camera, viz., a shutter having a comparatively narrow opening which would result in introducing a most objectionable flicker in the projected picture.

THE PREVIOUS LITIGATION ON THE PATENT IN SUIT.

The patent in suit was involved in a former suit, entitled, "Motion Picture Patents Company vs. Independent Moving Pictures Company of America," as before stated. The alleged infringing device in that suit was a camera, and the claims of the patent involved were claims 1, 3, 5 and 8. The 7th claim here in issue was not involved in that suit. His Honor, Judge Learned Hand, who heard that case, decided that, in view of the Patent Office proceedings in the interference case, the patent must be held to be limited to projecting machines, and that it could not be held to cover cameras or taking machines such as defendant in that case used. On appeal, this decision was affirmed (200 Fed., 411), His Honor, Judge Coxe, dissenting.

In the present suit the patent is being advanced as a patent for a projecting machine, and the defendants use a projecting machine, so that the former case on the only point decided therein is not controlling of this one.

There can be no question, but that the particular specific feeding mechanism that forms the subject-matter of the 7th claim, if not specifically claimed, originally, in the identical language now found in the claim, was claimed at in the original 6th claim, which reads as follows (p. 1338):

"6. The combination with a perforated picture bearing strip and feeding appliances therefor including a series of three toothed feed drums, of a driving shaft, gearing transmitting the motion of said shaft continuously to two of said drums, broken gearing whereby the motion of the said shaft is transmitted intermittently to the remaining drum, and appliances for insuring slacks in the film, above and below the intermediate drum, whereby each picture is momentarily brought to rest as it comes into line with the optical axis of the apparatus and the slack in the film are alternately taken up and restored."

This claim was not included in the Latham-Armat-Casler interference, for the very good reasons (1) that neither Armat nor Casler had made a corresponding claim, nor (2) had either of them a predicate for such a claim, since neither showed a structure in which there were two continuously operating toothed feeding drums engaging with the perforations of a perforated film and an intermediate intermittingly operating toothed drum also engaging positively the perforations in said film.

The interference was upon an entirely different subjectmatter, the single issue involved being, as quoted in the opinion of the Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia, as follows (p. 1469): "In a picture exhibiting apparatus for giving the impression to the eye of objects in motion, the combination with a picture carrying strip or film, a tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of motion, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension device, whereby the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film."

Judgment on this issue was awarded Armat by the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia on January 8, 1901 (p. 1480), and afterward, to wit, on August 2, 1902, Latham's present 7th claim was introduced into his application by amendment (p. 1413), and on August 6, 1902, the application was formally allowed (p. 1415).

The 7th claim, as thus allowed and granted was within Latham's original disclosure and conformed to it, and was as we have seen, but a restatement, in narrower form, of

his original 6th claim.

No just criticism, therefore, can be made of the 7th claim of Latham, on the ground that it involves a departure from the original disclosure or from the subject-matter originally claimed, nor on the ground that Latham was not entitled to it because of the judgment in the interference case in favor of Armat.

If Armat in his application had shown a film feeding device in which the intermediate intermittingly acting feeding element were a toothed feed drum having teeth which positively engage equally spaced perforations in a perforated film, it might be argued that the judgment in the interference in his favor concluded Latham, not only in respect

of the matter there actually put in issue and decided, but also in respect of any other matter, common to the Armat and Latham applications, that might have been put in issue. But there is no foundation for such an argument, since, as we have seen, Armat did not disclose such a structure and no issue between him and Latham was, therefore, possible respecting it.

While it is true, therefore, that the issue in the Patent Office interference was between Armat and Latham, respecting a projecting machine, it is not true that the judgment in the interference barred Latham from lawfully claiming, after the interference, a combination that was neither claimed, nor that could have been claimed, by Armat in his application, and that was neither put in issue, nor could have been put in issue, by Armat, in that interference.

Petitioner is, we repeat, here claiming under the Latham patent as one for a projecting machine, and as not one for a camera, and it is pursuing, as infringers, those who are unlawfully using, not a camera, but a projecting machine.

The reasoning of the Court in the previous suit on this patent is, therefore, here wholly inapplicable.

The only defense passed upon by the Court below having been shown to be untenable and the other defenses being equally without merit, the decree below should be reversed and a decree directed to be entered for an injunction and an accounting.

MELVILLE CHURCH,

For Petitioner.

Dec. 15, 1916.



JAMES D. MAHEB

Supreme Court of the United States.

OCTOBER TERM, 1916.

No. 715.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY,

Petitioner,

25.

UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY, UNIVERSAL FILM EXCHANGE and PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY,

Respondents.

On Certiorari to the Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit.

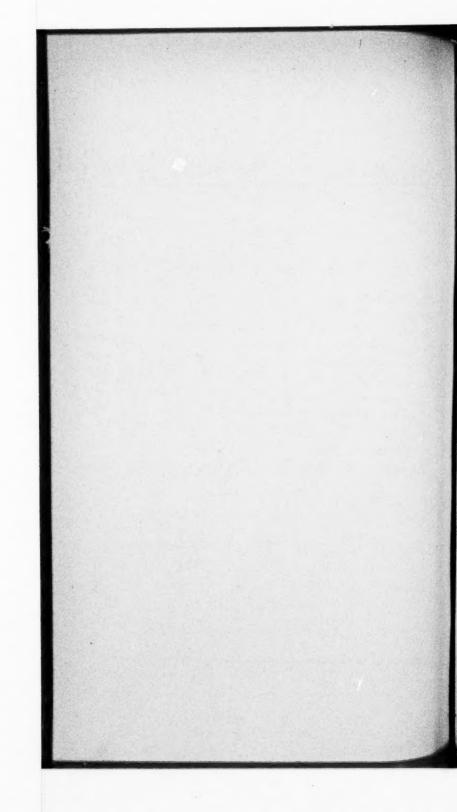
BRIEF FOR RESPONDENTS.

OSCAR W. JEFFERY,
EDMUND WETMORE,

Counsel for Respondents.

JOHN B. STANCHFIELD,

Of Counsel.



SUBJECT INDEX.

I.

THE	ALLEGED	INFRINGEMENT.
-----	---------	---------------

	PAGE
Statement of facts	2
Position of Respondents	13
Implied license of Prague Amusement Company	15
Sale of machine and its effect	18
Henry vs. Dick and Bauer vs. O'Donnell discussed	20
Restrictions specifically unlawful and void	25
Restriction to film licensed under patent No. 12,192 an	
attempt to continue the monopoly of an expired patent	26
Restrictions further unlawful monopoly and restrain trade	
in violation of Sherman Act	29
Restrictions contrary to Clayton Act	31
"Terms to be fixed"	42
No notice given of terms " to be fixed "	45
Prague Amusement Company not bound to inquire con-	
cerning terms	47
Universal Film Mfg. Co. and Universal Film Exchange	
had no notice of Restrictions	52
Joint infringement not proved	57
II.	
THE PATENT AND ITS VALIDITY.	
Statement as to patent	61
Intermittent sprocket well known prior to Latham	64
Date of Latham's invention	68

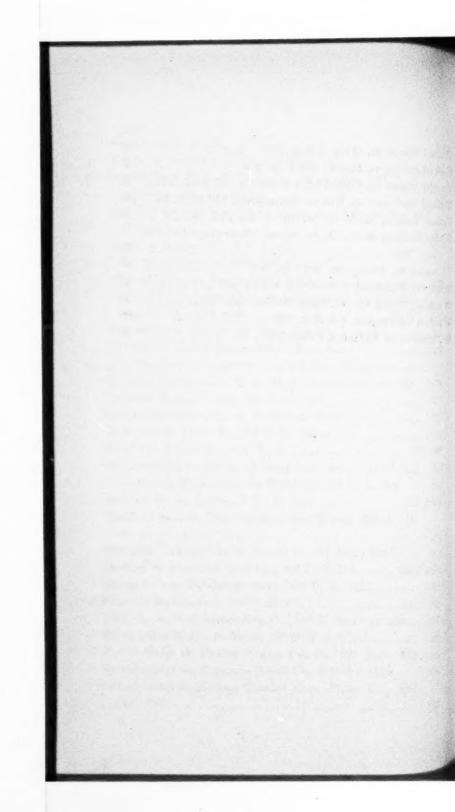
Decision in Motion Picture Patents Co. vs. Independent	PAGI
Moving Picture Co. and its effect	
Armat Patent.	68
Armat Patent contains equivalent of intermittent sprocket	72
Joly Patent.	
Gray Patent	78
Greene & Evans Patent	80
Marey Patents	81
Chinna k Camera	82
Chinneck Camera Edison Patents	83
Edison Patents Printing-Press Patents	84
Printing-Press Patents	86
Lauste the real inventor	88
History of Latham's patent.	91
Latham's Original Application	91
Interference proceeding	92
Proceedings subsequent to Interference Proceeding	95
Patent Office exceeded its authority in issuing Latham	
patent	97
Invention of patent as issued not the invention applied	
for1	02
Unange of invention without new oath invalidates patent 1	02
Practical value of Latham patent1	06

Cases Cited.

Adams vs. Burke, 17 Wall., 453	23
American Graphophone Co. vs. Leeds, 170 Fed., 331	90
Armour Pack. Co. vs. United States, 209 U. S., 56	40
Bauer vs. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1, 9, 13, 20, 21	29
Bement vs. National Harrow Co., 186 U. S., 92	36
Blackford vs. Wilder, 28 App. D. C., 535	99
Blanchard vs. Sprague, 1 Cliff., 288	16
Bloomer vs. McEwan, 14 How., 539	16
Bresnahan vs. Tripp Giant Leveller Co., 99 Fed., 282	72
Carpentier vs. Thurston, 30 Cal., 123	48
Chitty on Contracts, p. 767	48
Clark Thread Co. vs. Willimantic Linen Co., 140 U. S.,	
48988,	90
Consolidated Co. vs. McKeesport, 40 Fed., 21 at 26	104
Continental Wall Paper Co. vs. Voight & Sons Co., 212	
U. S., 262	42
Corrington vs. Westinghouse, 178 Fed., 711	90
Cortelyou vs. Johnson, 145 Fed., 93646, 55,	56
Cortelyon vs. Johnson, 207 U. S., 19646, 51,	
	104
Edison vs. American Mutoscope Co., 151 Fed., 767	66
Elliott Mach. Co. vs. Center, 227 Fed., 126	40
4 Enc. Pl. & Pr., p. 653	49
	100
Ex rel. Newcomb Motor Co. vs. Moore, 30 App. D. C.,	
	100
Fichtel vs. Barthel, 173 Fed., 491	58
Germania Iron Co. vs. James, 89 Fed., 817	72
Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1	, 51
	104
Holy Trinity Church vs. United States, 143 U.S., 460	38
Hollister vs. Benedict Mfg. Co., 113 U. S., at p. 73	88
Jayne vs. Loder, 149 Fed., 21, at p. 31	57

	PAGE
Kent, Comm., p. 476	72
Keyes vs. Eureka Min. Co., 158 U. S., 153	16
Louisville & Nashville R. R. Co. vs. Mottley, 219 U. S.,	
468, at p. 485	40
Lovell-M'Connell Mfg. Co. vs. Waite Auto Supply Co., 198	
Fed., 133	47
Mahn vs. Harwood, 112 U. S., 354	101
Miles Medical Co. vs. Park, 220 U. S., 373	30
Minnesota Co. vs. National Co., 3 Wall., 334	72
Motion Picture Patents Co. vs. Independent Moving Pic-	
ture Co., 200 Fed., 42261, 67,	106
McGruther vs. Pitcher, 20 Times Law Reports, 652	47
McLean vs. United States, 226 U.S., at 380	33
Ney Mfg. Co. vs. Swineford Co., 211 Fed., 469 at 472	104
Nicholas Power Co. vs. C. R. Baird Co., 222 Fed., at 935.	108
Oates vs. National Bank, 100 U.S., 244	38
Oregon Navigation Co. vs. Winsor, 20 Wall., 70	42
Oscanyan vs. Arms Co., 103 U. S., 261 at 267	42
People vs. Lacombe, 99 N. Y., 4938,	39
Peoples Bank vs. Etting, 41 Legal Intelligencer (Pa.), 5	48
Phil. Balt. & Wash. R. R. vs. Schubert, 224 U. S., 603	40
Railway Co. vs. Sayles, 97 U. S., 554	104
Standard Sanitary Mfg. Co. vs. United States, 226 U. S.,	
49	30
Standard Cartridge Co. vs. Peters Co., 77 Fed., 630	90
Steward vs. American Lava Co., 215 U.S., 161103,	104
Straus vs. Am. Publishers' Ass'n, 231 U. S., 222	30
Sweetser vs. Emerson, 236 Fed., 161	38
Tack Co. vs. Two Rivers Mfg. Co., 109 U. S., at p. 120	87
Texas & Pacific Co. vs. Reiss, 183 U. S., 626	48
United States vs. Motion Picture Pat. Co., 225 Fed., 800	10
United States vs. Keystone Watch Co., 218 Fed., 514	23
United States vs. Kellogg Toasted Corn Flake Co., 222	
Fed., 725	30

	PAGE
United States vs. Winn, 3 Sum., 211	38
United States vs. Lacher, 134 U.S., 268	38
United States vs. United Shoe Mach. Co., 227 Fed., 507	40
United States ex rel. Hoe vs. Butterworth, 112 U. S., 50	100
Victor Talking Mach. Co. vs. Straus, 230 Fed., 452	24
Victor Talking Mach. Co. vs. Sonora Phonograph Co., 188 Fed., 330	
Vrooman vs. Penhollow, 222 Fed., 895	57
Vyse vs. Wakefield, 6 Meeson & Welby, 453	49
Washing Mach. Co. vs. Earle, 29 Fed. Cas., 334	51
Weston vs. Empire, 136 Fed., 599	101
Wilkinson vs. Leland, 2 Peters, 238	. 38



SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES. OCTOBER TERM, 1916—No. 715.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, Petitioner,

VB.

Universal Film Manufacturing Company, Universal Film Exchange, and Prague Amusement Company,

Respondents.

ON WRIT OF CERTIORARI TO THE UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE SECOND CIRCUIT.

BRIEF FOR RESPONDENTS.

The writ of certiorari granted in this suit brings before this court a mandate of the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit affirming a decree of the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York dismissing, after a trial on the merits, a bill of complaint (R., Vol. II., p. 1498), * which alleged that the defendants "without the license" of the plaintiff, "jointly made, used and sold,

Vol. I. contains pages 1 to 710.
 Vol. II. contains pages 711 to 1515.

and caused to be made, used and sold, and now continue jointly to make, use and sell * * * motion picture apparatus which embodies the invention" of Letters Patent No. 707,934 to Woodville Latham, assignor to E. & H. T. Anthony & Company, and now owned by the plaintiff (Rec., Vol. 1, p. 5). At the trial the charge of infringement was limited to claim 7 of the patent (Vol. 1, pp. 22, 23).

The answer denied infringement and set up that the patent is invalid on various grounds which will be stated hereafter. By an amendment to the answer (Vol. 1, p. 20), the defendants admitted that the defendant, Prague Amusement Company, Inc., used a machine containing the alleged invention, but alleged that the said use of the machine was under a license from the plaintiff under said patent No. 707,934, which is for a part of the feeding mechanism used in motion picture exhibiting machines, by which a loop in the film is maintained in a manner and for purposes which will be explained hereafter. The license pleaded was an *implied*, not an express, license.

Statement of Facts Concerning the Alleged Infringement.

The Petitioner, the plaintiff in the court below, owns not only the Latham patent in suit, but many other patents relating to the moving picture art. On June 20, 1912, it entered into a written agreement with the Precision Machine Company of New York City (not a party to this suit), by which it licensed the Machine Company "to manufacture" and sell motion picture exhibiting or projecting machines "embodying one or more of the inventions described and "claimed in" thirteen United States Letters Patent, including the patent in suit, throughout the United States, and for export, in consideration of royalties, consisting of five dollars on each machine of one type and three per cent. of the "net retail selling price" on machines of other types,

and other covenants and considerations contained in the agreement (R., Vol. II., p. 1074, at 1077).

One of the said covenants was that every licensed machine should be sold by the licensee under the restriction and condition that it be used solely for exhibiting or projecting motion pictures containing the inventions of Reissued Letters Patent No. 12,192 "leased by a licensee" of the Patents Company "while it owns" the said patents "and upon other terms to be fixed" by the Patents Company (pp. 1080, 1081).

The agreement further provided that the Machine Company must attach to each machine, manufactured and sold pursuant to its license, a plate showing the Letters Patent under which the said machine was licensed, including the patent in suit, and also the following notice:

"The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of Reissued Patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company and complied with by the user while it is in use and while the Motion Picture Patents Company owns said patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the right to use this machine."

Reissued patent No. 12,192 was a reissue of part of the original Edison patent No. 589,168, one of the basic patents in the art, and covered the film universally used in motion picture machines (R., Vol. I., p. 37, x-Qs. 32-47). It expired on August 31, 1914, subsequent to the execution of the said license agreement, and the film was from that time on open to the public to make, sell and use.

No "other terms" were ever made known to the Prague Amusement Company or the 72nd Street Amusement Company, and none were ever fixed so far as the record shows.

The 72nd Street Amusement Company purchased from the Precision Machine Company a moving picture machine, made under said license agreement of June 12, 1912, at some date not shown by the record (Vol I., p. 63, fol. 187). Said machine bore the notice above quoted.

On November 2, 1914, the defendant, Prague Amusement Company leased the 72nd Street Playhouse in the Borough of Manhatten, City of New York, from the 72nd Street Amusement Company, and along with the premises and equipment included in the lease was the said machine, Defendants' Exhibit 3, which at that time bore the said notice (p. 63, fols. 188, 189). This also was subsequent to the expiration of patent No. 12,192.

Subsequent to the expiration of said patent No. 12,192, the defendant, Universal Film Manufacturing Company, made two "pictures" or reels of film, named respectively "The Five Pound Note" and the "Refugee" (R., Vol. I., p. 38). On January 18, 1915, the Patents Company sent a letter to the 72nd Street Amusement Company of New York City informing it that it was using, without license from the Patents Company, machines embodying the inventions of the patent in suit No. 707,934, and warning them such use constituted an infringement, but no details or reasons were given in the letter. On the same day the Patents Company addressed a letter to the Universal Film Exchange of New York informing it that at a number of places, listed in the letter, motion picture machines embodying the inventions of the said patent were being used without the license of the Patents Company, and notifying the Film Exchange to cease supplying films for use on such machines. No details or facts concerning the infringement were given in the letter. For purposes

of convenience and exact information copies of said letters are reprinted below, omitting full addresses, signatures and lists.* The letters themselves are in the record (Vol. II., pp. 745, 746).

On March 3, 1915, the Patents Company sent a letter to the defendant Universal Film Manufacturing Company informing it that, at a number of places named in the letter, including the 72nd Street Playhouse, machines embodying the invention of the patent in suit were being used without license from the Patents Company, and that the furnishing of film to the Universal Film Exchange by the Universal Film Manu-

" JANUARY 18, 1915.

To THE

" 72nd Street Amusement Company, Mr. L. Bolognino,

GENTLEMEN :

We are informed that you are using without our license at the above address one or more motion picture projecting machines embodying the inventions of United States Letters Patent No. 707,934 (Latham), dated August 26, 1902, owned by us. Such use constitutes an infringement of said patent and makes you liable to s suit for an injunction and an accounting of profits and damages, and we hereby notify you to desist from such infringement."

" JANUARY 18, 1915.

To THE

"Universal Film Exchange of New York,

GENTLEMEN :

We are informed that at the following places one or more motion picture projecting machines embodying the inventions of United States Letters Patent No. 707,984 (Latham), dated August 26, 1902, are being used without license from us as owners of said patent.

72nd Street Playhouse, 350 East 72nd Street, New York City.

We are informed also that you are supplying motion picture films for use on such machines and are thereby aiding and contributing to such infringing use of said machines. We hereby notify you to cease such supply; otherwise we will be obliged to enforce our rights by a suit asking for an injunction and an accounting of profits and damages."

facturing Company to be supplied by it for use on such machines was a contributory infringement of the patent, and it was notified to cease supplying film for use on said machines. The letter is reprinted below* (see also R., Vol. II., p. 748).

Between March 4th and March 17th, 1915, the Universal Film Manufacturing Company sold to the Universal Film Exchange copies (that is, reels of film) of the pictures "The Five Pound Note" and the "Refugee" (R., Vol. I., p. 736, fol. 2207).

On March 17, 1915, the Universal Film Exchange supplied the said pictures to the defendant, Prague Amusement Company, for use upon its said machine (Defendants' Exhibit 3) and other machines, and on that date the said pictures were used by the Prague Amusement Company at the 72d Street Playhouse on the said machines (p. 736, fols. 2207, 2208). On the next day, March 18, the bill of complaint in this suit was sworn to by Mr. Marvin, the president of the plaintiff company (Vol. I., p. 9), and it was filed on or about that date.

" MARCH 8, 1915.

To THE

" Universal Film Manufacturing Company,

GENTLEMEN:

We are informed that at the following places one or more motion picture projecting machines embodying the inventions of United States Letters Patent No. 707,984 (Latham), dated August 28, 1902, are being used without license from us as owners of said patent:

72nd Street Playhouse, 350 East 72nd Street, New York City.

We are informed also that motion picture films for use on such machines are being supplied by the Universal Film Exchange of New York, Inc., and that you are supplying to the Universal Film Exchange of New York, Inc., the motion picture films which it is supplying for use on such machines, and you are thereby aiding and contributing to such infringing use of such machines.

We hereby notify you to cease such supply; otherwise we will be obliged to enforce our rights by a suit asking for an injunction and an accounting of profits and damages." For convenience we insert a chronological statement of the events above set forth:

- June 20, 1912, Agreement of License from Motion Picture
 Patents Company to Precision Machine
 Company.
- Subsequent to June 20, 1912, patented machine, Defendants'
 Exhibit 2, manufactured by Precision
 Machine Company and sold by it to 72nd
 Street Amusement Company.
- Aug. 31, 1914, Reissued patent No. 12,192 expired.
- Subsequent to Aug. 31, 1914,, film pictures, "Five Pound Note" and "Refugee," made by Universal Film Manufacturing Company.
- Oct. 15, 1914, Clayton Act effective.
- Nov. 2, 1914, Patented machine Exhibit 2, leased by Prague
 Amusement Company from 72nd Street
 Amusement Company.
- Jan. 18, 1915, Letter of Motion Picture Patents Company to 72nd Street Amusement Company.
- Jan. 18, 1915, Letter of Motion Picture Patents Company to Universal Film Exchange.
- March 3, 1915, Letter of Motion Picture Patents Company to Universal Film Manufacturing Company.
- March 17, 1915, Universal Film Exchange supplied "Five Pound Note" and the "Refugee" to the Prague Amusement Company, and the same were used on the patented machine at the 72nd Street Playhouse.

March 18, 1915, Bill of Complaint.

The bill of complaint charges that the defendants "jointly * made, used and sold, and caused to be made, used "and sold, and now continue jointly to make, use and sell, "and to cause to be made, used and sold, motion picture ap"paratus which embodies the invention or discovery described "and claimed," in the patent in suit, and plaintiff charged at the trial that the defendants committed a joint act of infringement in that the Universal Film Manufacturing Company made and supplied film to the Universal Film Exchange, which in turn supplied it to the Prague Amusement Company, which used it "without license" on a machine containing the invention of claim 7 of the patent in suit.

Inasmuch as the last named company obtained the machine lawfully, and it was lawfully made under the Petitioner's license to the Precision Machine Company, the Petitioner's allegation that the use of the machine was without license can be based only on the violation by the defendant, the Prague Amusement Company, of lawful and enforceable restrictions on the use of the machine which were clearly and distinctly made known to the Prague Amusement Company, and it is also necessary for petitioner to prove that the other two defendants jointly furnished the film of the pictures in question to the Prague Amusement Company with knowledge that the use of said films by the Prague Amusement Company on the said machine would be a violation of such lawful and enforceable restrictions.

All the moving picture projecting machines in the United States were licensed to be made under the Petitioner's patents (Vol. I., p. 61, Re-x-Q. 152).

The Precision Machine Company which is located in New

Italics occurring in quotations have been supplied by us unless it is otherwise stated.

York City (Vol. I., p. 63, fol. 188) made and sold projecting machines manufactured by it pursuant to the said license agreement, to customers located in States outside of the State of New York (R., Vol. I., p. 65, fol. 194), and is, therefore, engaged in interstate commerce.

Judge Hoven directed that the complaint be dismissed on the ground that "the limitation on the use of a patented article sold in the manner above set forth is invalid" (R., Vol. I, p. 696, fols. 2087, 2088). He came to this conclusion during the trial, but in order that the record on appeal might be complete, he directed the defendants to complete their proofs after the close of the plaintiff's case, which was done, such proofs consisting principally of evidence in support of the defense that the patent in suit is invalid.

Thereafter the petitioner filed a petition for rehearing, whereupon Judge Hough filed a written opinion, in which, after clearly and concisely stating the essential facts in the case, he held that not only is the notice of restriction invalid on the ground above stated, but also on the further ground that it is

"specifically bad in that it attempts not only to confine the use of a machine once sold and delivered to a particular kind of film, but further seeks to render that use subject to any and every restriction or regulation which the patent owner may from time to time choose to make or vary" (Vol. I., p. 697, fol. 2091).

The Circuit Court of Appeals, affirming the decree of Judge Hough, held that the case comes within the doctrine of Bauer vs. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1, rather than that of Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1, and that this is especially true since the enactment of the so-called Clayton Act (R., Vol. II., p. 1494).

The Petitioner filed a petition for rehearing in the Court of Appeals in which it was urged that the Prague Amusement Company had infringed by not complying with the condition of "other terms to be fixed," contained in the notice. The peti-

tion was denied on grounds stated in a Per Curiam opinion (Vol. II., p. 1511).

There is no evidence, as there was in Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1, that the Patents Company obtained its profit from the Latham patent from the sale of the non-patented articles adapted to be used with the patented machine, and that it made no profit on the patented machine or the patent itself. contrary, it appears that the plaintiff obtained a substantial royalty, to wit, five dollars per machine or three per cent. of the selling price (depending on the type of machine), and that inasmuch as all projecting machines in the United States have been made and sold under the Patents Company's license, it has obtained a large return from the patent and its other patents on the machines. The facts in this case very clearly show that the object of the Petitioner in requiring its licensees to place the notice in question on the patented machines was to levy tribute on the film used on such machines, the patent on which has expired, in addition to a substantial profit on the patent rights in the machines themselves.

Sometime prior to the filing of the bill of complaint in the case at bar, the United States brought suit against the Motion Picture Patents Company and others for violation of the Sherman Act in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Pennsylvania. On October 1, 1915, Judge DICKINSON, on the petition, answers and proofs in that case, filed his opinion (R., Vol. II., p. 1089; 225 Fed., 800), and held, as stated therein, that the end of the combinations, contracts and arrangements made by the Patents Company and the other defendants therein was "the imposition upon the trade of an undue and unreasonable restraint, in order that, as the immediate and direct effect and result of the combination, the defendants might monopolize the trade in all the accessories of the motion picture art so far as they are articles of commerce" (R., Vol. II., p. 1107).

He also found that

"The end and purpose of the combination, and in this sense the motive or moving cause, further was, not to protect the patent rights, which the Motion Picture Patents Company was organized to take over, but the control of the patents was made a feature of the scheme in the belief, or at least the hope, that this would render the scheme (otherwise illegal) not open to the condemnation of the law" (R., Vol. II., p. 1108).

In the conclusion to his opinion he made formal finding

"that the contracts enumerated in the petition, and the combination there described, was a conspiracy in restrain of trade or commerce among the several States, and with foreign nations, and were and are illegal, and that the defendants and each of them (with the exception noted) have attempted to monopolize, and have monopolized, and have combined and conspired, among themselves and with each other, to monopolize a part of the trade or commerce among the several States and with foreign nations, consisting of the trade in films, cameras, projecting machines and other accessories of the motion picture business, as charged in the petition of complaint filed "(R., Vol. II., p. 1109).

The decree in the Government suit was entered in the Eastern District of Pennsylvania on January 24, 1916, sometime subsequent to the entering of the decree in the present case and the filing of the record on appeal therefrom in the Circuit Court of Appeals. It is, therefore, not part of the record herein, but it is before this Court (Calendar No. 461) on the appeal of the Motion Picture Patents Company and the other defendants in the Government case in Pennsylvania.

It provided that, among other contracts and matters, the agreements between the Patents Company and the manufacturers of exhibiting machines of which the agreement between the Patents Company and the Precision Machine Company, was

one (R., Vol. I., pp. 45, 46; x-Qs. 96-98) "were and are the means adopted and used by the defendants in order to carry into effect the objects and purposes of said unlawful combination and conspiracy" and that, "the said contracts, licenses and agreements are, therefore, hereby declared illegal, and the defendants (including the petitioner here) and all and each of them, and their officers, agents, servants and employees are enjoined and prohibited from doing anythiny in furtherance of such agreements and from enforcing in any manner the said agreements or any of the terms thereof."

It appears, therefore, that the Motion Picture Patents Company, in the suit at bar, is attempting to further and enforce the provisions of an agreement which by the said decree of Judge Dickinson, it is ordered not to enforce or further, subject, it is understood, to a stay of proceedings pending the determination of the appeal to this court in that suit.

There are two main issues in this case:

FIRST. INFRINGEMENT, which was the only question considered by the Courts below and which involves the determination of the validity and enforceability of the notice of restrictions on the patented machines;

SECOND. VALIDITY of the Latham patent in suit, in case this Court considers that question in the absence of any consideration of or finding upon it in the Courts below.

It is proper to observe that although the Petition and the Petitioner's brief upon which the writ of certiorari in this case was granted urged that the questions of "great public concern" involved, which justified the granting of the writ, were those concerned with the right of the Petitioner to enforce the restrictions in the notice and advanced no other reasons for the Writ (Brief on Petition for Certiorari, pp. 29, 30), and although the Peti-

tioner moved for the advancement of the cause on the calendar on the ground that it "involves important questions of general interest in regard to the right of a patentee to impose conditions of use on the sale of a patented article," in the Petitioner's brief on this appeal twenty-three pages are devoted to the discussion of the said questions of "great public concern" and the remaining forty-seven pages to the discussion of the validity of the Latham patent in suit, which was not considered or passed upon by either of the courts below, and on which this court has not the benefit of the examination and findings on the facts, which those courts would have made had they considered that question.

If the issue first above stated is decided in favor of the Respondents, it will be unnecessary to consider the second, because, if it is held that the Respondents have—as they maintain—an implied license to use the machine free and clear of all restrictions, by virtue of its lawful purchase and possession, there could have been no infringement of the patent as alleged in the bill.

For that reason the statement of facts and the argument concerning the validity of the Latham patent is postponed to the latter part of this brief.

RESPONDENT'S POSITION ON THE FIRST ISSUE, INFRINGEMENT.

The Respondents maintain:

1st. That there was an absolute, unqualified sale of the machine in question and that, on the principle announced by this Court in *Bauer vs. O'Donnell*, 229 U. S., 1, and other cases, the patent owner could not restrict the use of the machine in the hands of subsequent purchasers or lessees thereof.

2nd. That, even assuming for the purpose of the argument that the Patents Company could impose conditions on the use

of the machine after its sale by the licensee, by a notice placed thereon, the restrictions in the *present* case are *specifically void* and cannot be enforced for several reasons:

- (1) To restrict the use of the machine to film "licensed" under an expired patent, is an attempt to unlawfully continue the term of that patent and the statutory monopoly thereby granted.
- (2) The restrictions in the notice on the patented machine are violations of Section 3 of the Act of Congress of October 15, 1914, commonly known as the Clayton Act, were part of plaintiff's attempts to monopolize the motion picture business as held by Judge Dickinson in the Government case above referred to, and also violate the Sherman Act as well as the common law rules against monopolies and restraint of trade.
- (3) The notice as to "terms to be fixed" is too vague and indefinite to be enforceable and is unreasonable.

3rd. That the Petitioner has failed to prove that the Respondents had notice of the restrictions now claimed by it to have been placed upon the use of the alleged infringing machines, and that, without such notice, its case fails.

4th. That the Petitioner has failed to prove a joint infringement of the patent in suit by the Respondents, as alleged in the bill of complaint, and for that reason its case fails.

ARGUMENT ON THE FIRST ISSUE, INFRINGEMENT.

It is the Respondents' contention that, on the facts above stated, there is no infringement of the Latham patent in suit, but that, on the contrary, the Prague Amusement Company had a right to use the alleged infringing machine, it having acquired possession of the same lawfully; and the Universal Film Exchange and the Universal Film Manufacturing Company had a right to furnish film to the Prague Amusement Company, the patent on the said film having expired and there being no violation by the Prague Amusement Company of any other terms to which the use of the machine in the hands of the Prague Company, was subject.

THE "LICENSE" OR RIGHT TO USE THE ALLEGED INFRINGING
MACHINE WHICH RESPONDENTS CLAIM, IS NOT WRITTEN
OR EXPRESSED BUT IMPLIED.

The implied license is derived from the fact that the Prague Amusement Company leased the machine from the 72nd Street Amusement Company which had bought and paid for said machine, and was in both apparent and lawful possession thereof, with full right to dispose thereof, subject, if Petitioner is correct in its contention in that particular, only to the restrictions, if valid, mentioned in the notice contained on the plate.

That this was the license pleaded by defendants appeared also at the trial, where plaintiff's counsel asked counsel for defendants whether the defendants claimed under said license agreement, to which defendants' counsel replied that the license is "by reason of the fact that the machine was manufactured under a license" and that the defendants' "right to use it is a right dependent upon the right of every man

who buys a machine that is stamped 'licensed'" (R., Vol. I, pp. 46, 47).

Judge Hough pointed this out to Petitioner's Counsel at the trial as follows:

"The Prague Amusement Company has not endeavored to show that it had any license in that sense of the word; that is, a contractual license" (R., p. 56).

The machine in question was, of course, manufactured and originally sold by authority of the said license agreement, but the fact that the Prague Amusement Company afterward leased it from the vendee of the licensee does not make it, said Prague Company, subject to the terms of that agreement. The Prague Amusement Company stands in the same position as any purchaser of a patented article, who, when he purchases it either direct from the manufacturer or from the manufacturer's vendee or licensee, has the implied right to use it.

Bloomer vs. Mc Ewan, 14 How., 539. Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 19.

There is and can be no doubt as to the validity of an implied license. It is as potent as an express license.

> Blanchard vs. Sprague, 1 Cliff., 288. Keyes vs. Eureka Min. Co., 158 U. S., 153.

In Blanchard vs. Sprague (supra), the suit was for infringement as here and the bill dismissed because of an implied license. Said Judge CLIFFORD:

"Notwithstanding the allegations of the bill of complaint are so framed that they charge the respondent, as an infringer of the complainant's patent, it is apparent, from the whole case, that the real controversy between the parties arises solely out of the claim to recover the additional half-cent for each article manufactured" (1 Cliff., 288, at 296).

Moreover, there can be no dispute here as to the only license in the case, viz., the implied license. There can be no dispute that the defendant the Pragne Amusement Company had a perfect right to use the machine, subject to the said restrictions, if valid, on the plate. There is no question as to the validity of that implied license as a whole or any allegation of estoppel on that ground, the only question is as to the validity of the restrictions. If the restrictions are invalid the plaintiff's charge of unlawful use falls to the ground and the bill must be dismissed. The existence of unlawful restrictions does not affect the defendants' right to use in other respects.

Therefore the question on this branch of the case is brought down to a single issue. Under the old form of pleading this would properly have been raised by plea. Under the new equity rules it is raised by answer, but the effect is the same, and if the restrictions are, as the defendants claim, invalid and unenforceable, the bill must be dismissed whether the point

is raised by plea or answer.

This suit, though in form an infringement suit, is, in fact, nothing whatever except a suit to enforce the condition (Blan-

chard vs. Sprague, supra).

The question whether the defendant has infringed the Latham patent cannot properly arise until the question whether the restrictions on the plate are valid and enforceable has first been determined.

This decisive issue turns upon the validity of the restrictions. If the plaintiff has the right to enforce against the Prague Amusement Company the restriction that it cannot use its machine except with the "licensed" Edison film then it has a monopoly of enormous extent. The Edison film is used on practically all the machines for the exhibition of moving pictures in the Country. A person engaged in the business of exhibiting such pictures, if debarred from using the Edison film, is wholly shut out from that business. If he can only use it when licensed by the plaintiff, then he is partially debarred, because the film, which has become free to the public is unobtainable, except on a condition which the plaintiff has no right to impose. The motion picture business has developed so that it extends over the whole United States, and involves capital and expenditures to the amount of many millions of dollars, and this great business will be completely under the plaintiff's control if it can enforce these restrictions.

POINT L.

THERE WAS A SALE OF THE ALLEGED INFRINGING MACHINE BY THE LICENSEE WHICH ENABLED SUBSEQUENT HOLDERS THEREOF TO USE IT FREE OF ALL RESTRICTIONS AND CONDITIONS.

It is pointed out in the opinion below (R., Vol. 1, p. 694) that the license agreement between the plaintiff and the Precision Machine Company gave the latter the right "to manufacture and sell" exhibiting machines (R., Vol. II., p. 1077, fol. 3231) upon the payment of royalties of \$5 on each machine of one type, and three per cent. of the net selling price" on machines of other types (p. 1079); also that all the machines "sold by" the Precision Company shall bear the restrictions contained in the notice already quoted (p. 1081), and that notice itself begins with the statement "The sale and purchase of this machine" (p. 1081).

In other words, the plaintiff did not license the Precision Company to manufacture projecting machines to be used on terms, but to sell those machines at a purchase price, and in return the plaintiff received the royalties mentioned.

Not only did the license agreement with the Precision

Company contemplate, and the notice refer to, a sale of the machine, but the record shows that it was actually sold by the Precision Machine Company to the Seventy-Second Street Amusement Company, and the plaintiff so stipulated (R., Vol. I., p. 63, fol. 188). The fact, is therefore, that the article of commerce, to wit, a motion picture projecting machine, the use of which is alleged to constitute infringement in this case, was sold and the title passed unreservedly and unrestrictedly from the vendor, who thereafter had and has no claim whatever over the machine, and has never attempted to assert that it did. The vendee in turn leased it to another corporation, one of the defendants, the Prague Amusement Company, which had no relations whatever with the manufacture of the machine or with the manufacturer's licensor, but that licensor seeks to restrict the use of the machine by means of a notice of attempted restrictions as to use, which pursuant to its contract with its licensee was placed on the machine at the time it was sold by the manufacturer, the Precision Machine Company. That is the state of facts on which the Petitioner claims that it, the original licensor, has the right to restrain the defendant, the Prague Amusement Company, from the use of the machine.

It is not our purpose to argue at length the question of the right to restrict the use of patented articles by notices of restrictions placed thereon. That question has been so often argued before this court that further discussion at this time, particularly after the argument of Victor Talking Machine Company vs. Straus, would uselessly encumber this brief and not aid the court. We will, therefore, confine ourselves to pointing out the application of, and distinctions from, the decisions on this question which are most in point, on the facts in the present case.

In the Circuit Court of Appeals the Petitioner contended, as it contends here, that this case is to be determined by the

decision of Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 1, and not by the later decision of Bauer vs. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1, but the court held directly to the contrary and that this case does come, as the Respondents contend, directly within the doctrine of Bauer vs. O'Donnell (R., Vol. II., p. 1494).

The facts in the two cases referred to differ in two important particulars.

In Henry vs. Dick, first, the original vendee, who purchased the patented machine with the notice upon it from the complainant, used upon it an article which did not conform to the restrictions, and the defendants, who supplied those articles with knowledge of the restrictions, were held liable on the ground that they were contributory infringers; second, the complainant sold its machines at cost or less, and depended upon the profit realized from the sale of non-patented articles adapted to be used with the machines and to which their use was restricted.

In Bauer vs. O'Donnell, first, the patented article was sold to the defendant by a jobber, who purchased it outright from the plaintiff or his agent; and, second, the manufacturer and vendor of the article received his full profit when he sold it.

In each of these two particulars the facts of the present case conform to those in Bauer vs. O'Donnell. The defendant, the Prague Amusement Company, which is alleged to be the direct infringer, is the lessee of the vendes of the licenses of the plaintiff, the owner of the patent, and the plaintiff received its full royalty or recompense on the patented article from the original licensee.

The Petitioner claims that it sought to derive most of its profit from the patent in suit by licensing the use of the patented machines by the purchasers thereof on payment of a small additional royalty while in use, but there is absolutely no proof of this fact in the record, as has already been stated.

The differences in fact between Henry vs. Dick and Bauer vs. O'Donnell, above referred to, are pointed out and empha-

sized in the opinion in the latter case. Throughout that opinion the fact that the packages of Sanatogen were purchased by the defendants, not directly from the owner of the patent or its agent, but from a jobber who had purchased them from said owner, is referred to. The question certified by the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia in that case explicitly stated that the said packages were purchased of jobbers. The question presented for determination (229 U. S., p. 11), referring to the packages in question, contains the following:

"such article being in the hands of a retailer by purchase from a jobber who has paid to the agent of the patentee the full price asked for the article sold."

The opinion also points out that in Henry vs. Dick the patented mimeograph was sold at cost or less and the patentee depended for his profit on the sale of the non-patented articles to be used with the machine (229 U.S., p. 14). The opinion then states (p. 16):

"It is contended in argument that the notice in this case deals with the use of the invention, because the notice states that the package is licensed 'for sale and use at a price not less than one dollar,' that a purchase is an acceptance of the conditions, and that all rights revert to the patentee in event of violation of the restriction. But in view of the facts certified in this case, as to what took place concerning the article in question, it is a perversion of terms to call the transaction in any sense a license to use the invention. The jobber from whom the appellee purchased had previously bought, at a price which must be deemed to have been satisfactory, the packages of Sanatogen afterwards sold to the appellee. The patentee has no interest in the proceeds of the subsequent sales, no right to any royalty thereon or to participation in the profits thereof. The packages were sold with as full and complete title as any article could have when sold in the open market, excepting only the attempt to limit the sale or use when sold for not less than one dollar. In other words, the title transferred was full and complete with an attempt to reserve the right to fix the price at which subsequent sales could be made. There is no showing of a qualified sale for less than value for limited use with other articles only, as was shown in the Dick Case."

The above exactly states the facts in the present case, for here the licensee, who corresponds to the jobber of the Sanatogen, had obtained the right to manufacture and sell the patented article at a price which must be deemed to have been satisfactory to the licensor, and it had sold that article, to wit, the projecting machines, absolutely and unqualifiedly. As above stated "The patentee has no interest in the proceeds of the subsequent sales (so far as the licensee's vendee was concerned), no right to any royalty thereon or to participation in the profits thereof."

It is said, on plaintiff's behalf, that the restriction on the Prague Amusement Company's machine is a restriction on the use, but there seems to be no logical distinction between a restriction on the use after a sale by the licensee of the patented article and a restriction on the re-sale of it as to price or other terms. That there is no such distinction in the present case is shown by the notice which reads that the machine can be used only on "terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company." Non constat, that those terms may not consist of a restriction on the price to be charged for the machine when resold or leased.

It appears clearly from the foregoing that, while the owner of a patent may make such lawful and reasonable terms as he pleases with his licensee, and the licensee is bound to observe them, the patent owner cannot, once the article is sold by his licensee, restrict future dealings in it. Title to the patented article has been passed and with the title all control over the

article and its use is lost. The following quotation from Adams vs. Burke which concludes the opinion in Bauer vs. O'Donnell directly applies:

"The true ground on which these decisions rest is that the sale by a person who has the full right to make, sell, and use such a machine carries with it the right to the use of that machine to the full extent to which it can be used in point of time.

"The right to manufacture, the right to sell, and the right to use are each substantive rights, and may be granted or conferred separately by the patentee.

"But, in the essential nature of things, when the patentee, or the person having his rights, sells a machine or instrument whose sole value is in its use, he receives the consideration for its use and he parts with the right to restrict that use. The article, in the language of the court, passes without the limit of the monopoly. That is to say, the patentee or his assignee having in the act of sale received all the royalty or consideration which he claims for the use of his invention in that particular machine or instrument, it is open to the use of the purchaser without further restriction on account of the monopoly of the patentees."

Adams vs. Burke, 17 Wall., 453.

The distinction between Henry vs. Dick and Bauer vs. O'Donnell based on the difference between a patent owner's agreement with a licensee, for example a jobber, and an attempt to enforce a restriction in the hands of subsequent purchasers of the article which bears it, was explicitly recognized and applied by the Circuit Judges of the Third Circuit in United States vs. Keystone Watch Co., 218 Fed., at 514, where the court said:

"Certain material parts of the Howard watch were covered by bona fide patents taken out and used for a lawful purpose, and as the owner of these patents the company had the right to make a direct agreement with

the jobbers whereby a minimum price was fixed at which the jobber might sell. Bement v. Harrow Co. 186 U. S., 70, 22 Sup. Ct., 447, 46 L. Ed., 1058; Henry v. Dick Co., 224 U. S., 1, 32 Sup. Ct., 364, 56 L. Ed., 645, Ann. Cas. 1913D, 880. But the company went further, and by mere notice to the retailer, accompanying the box in which the watch was sold by the jobber, attempted to fix the minimum price at which the retailer might sell to the consumer. No direct agreement was made with the retailer. When the company sold the watch to the jobber it had fully exercised its right to vend and had no right to use the notice subsequently given in order to control the price at which the retailer might sell. Bauer v. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 1, 33 Sup. Ct., 616, 57 L. Ed. 1041, 50 L. R. A. (N. S.) 1185."

The difference in fact between Victor Talking Machine Company vs. Straus and the present case is that in the former the claim of the plaintiff is that title to the machine did not pass, but there was granted to the purchaser only a right to use, while in the present case there was admittedly a complete transfer of title which carried with it, by implication, the unqualified right to use. Judge Lacombe, in the Circuit Court of Appeals opinion in the Victor case, said that the Victor Company avoided making a sale of its machine, and that it was not "a conditional or restricted sale or any sale at all."

Victor Talking Machine Co. vs. Straus, 230 Fed., at 452.

On the grounds stated the respondents contend that the Prague Amusement Company, having lawfully obtained the machine in question by lease from the 72nd Street Amusement Company, which had lawfully and in regular course of business purchased it from the Precision Machine Company, which had been licensed by the plaintiff to manufacture it in

consideration of royalties paid to the plaintiff, it—Prague Amusement Company—had an absolute unqualified right to use the machine without regard to any restrictions contained thereon, to the making of which it was not a party.

But without regard to the questions above discussed under Point I., the particular restrictions which the machine actually bore were unlawful, improper and unenforceable for reasons to be stated under the following point:

POINT IL

THE ATTEMPTED RESTRICTIONS IN THIS CASE ARE UNLAWFUL, VOID AND NOT ENFORCEABLE.

Coming to the conditions themselves, it is to be observed:

- 1. There is no condition or restriction binding upon the purchaser or user of a machine bought directly from the Precision Company or leased by the vendee of that company, except the restrictions contained in the notice on the plate.
- 2. Those restrictions will not be upheld if they are against statute or public policy or so ambiguous or inequitable that equity will not enforce them.
- 3. The right of the patentee to impose any conditions he chooses upon the exclusive right to use conferred by the patent, is not absolutely unbounded so that, although the conditions are such that their acceptance would affect the public interest, any one desiring to use the invention must use it under the obnoxious terms or not at all. To give such effect to the restriction would make it the means of offering a consideration to those who desired to accept it to enter into an unlawful contract. Nor is it any answer to this

to say that it is a case in which the law will help neither party. The question is not between the parties to the contract alone but between the patentee and the public.

FIRST.

The attempted restriction to film licensed under reissued Patent No. 12,192, is an attempt to continue the monopoly of an expired patent, and is therefore contrary to public policy and void.

At the time (June 20, 1912) of the making of the agreement between the Motion Picture Patents Company and the Precision Machine Company, pursuant to which this notice was placed on the machine, the said reissued patent No. 12,192 had not expired, and only persons licensed by the Motion Picture Patents Company could lawfully make, sell or use film containing the invention of that patent. It expired on August 31st, 1914 (R., p. 34).

The notice limits the machine to use with film made under the reissued patent No. 12,192. The only film described is film "containing the invention" of said patent. The notice conveys to the ordinary purchaser the idea that he must use the machine with film covered by a patent owned by the plaintiff which film he can obtain from those who are licensed to sell it under that patent.

Petitioner states in its brief that the restriction confining the right to use the machine "with moving pictures containing the invention of re-issued patent No. 12,192 leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents, and reissued patent, while it owned said patents", was only for the purpose of describing the film, although that exact form of notice was drawn two years before that patent expired; and it also contends that

"licensee" in the notice means one of a number of concerns which are regarded by it as "licensees" under its natents.

But that is not what the notice states. To place that meaning upon it is to make it obscure. What does the word "licensee" mean if not a "licensee" under patent No. 12,192? How is the owner of a machine to ascertain who are the "licensees" who may furnish him with this film? Unless the notice is given the meaning that "licensee" means a licensee under patent No. 12,192 it conveys no information by which the reader may know what kind of a license is referred to. It is like one of the Roman decrees that were purposely hung so high that the people could not clearly see what was forbidden.

The so-called description in the part of the notice above quoted limits the film to one that would have been an infringement of the patent if used without the consent of the owner thereof while the patent was in existence and became public property when the patent expired.

Mr. Marvin, plaintiff's president, says, with reference to the license, "I think what it did do was license users of projecting machines to use licensed film so long as the film was covered by the patent owned by the Patents Company" (R., p. 61, Re-x-Q. 154).

The corollary of this is that when that patent expires he has the right to use film purchased from any one he chooses, for the public generally may make and sell that film, but if he is compelled to buy it only from persons who are licensees of the plaintiff under other patents, then the expiration of the patent avails him nothing, in which case plaintiff continues its monopoly of the patented film, and the Government has received no consideration for its grant of a seventeen year monopoly.

To impose as a condition of using the Latham patent that

it shall only be used with films made in accordance with the Edison patent even after the expiration of said last named patent and sold by a licensee of the plaintiff after the power to grant a license thereunder had ceased to exist, is simply to extend the term of the Edison patent beyond the period allowed by ew. It is not the same as if the Edison film had never been patented at all, because the consideration for granting the Edison patent and the condition on which it was granted was that the Edison film which was the subject of that patent, should become public property when the patent expired, and it is a most substantial invasion of that right of property if it cannot be used in a machine for which it is primarily adapted unless it is furnished by a particular class of makers or dealers, viz: the plaintiff's licensees. It will be noted that in Dick vs. Henry the ink and other supplies furnished by the plaintiff in that case were none of them patented, or, so far as the record showed, ever had been.

An article once covered by a patent which has expired, differs from an article which has never been patented at all, in this respect. The unpatented article is free to the public to make, use or sell, subject only to the ordinary rights of private ownership. If the owner wishes to maintain a monopoly in the manufacture or use of such article, the only way to do so, is to keep the method of manufacture or the way to use it a secret. But if the article is patented, the patentee has an exclusive statutory right to make, use and sell the same for seventeen years on the condition that the same shall be absolutely free to the public at the end of that period. That transaction constitutes a contract between the public and the inventor, of which the free public use is the consideration, and any act, the object and effect of which is to impede or abridge that free use, is against public policy and void, even though the same act might be perfectly lawful if no patent had ever been granted.

"It (the Patent Statute) was passed for the purpose of encouraging useful invention and promoting new and useful improvements by the protection and stimulation thereby given to inventive genius, and was intended to secure to the public, after the lapse of the exclusive privileges granted, the benefit of such inventions and improvements."

Bauer vs. O'Donnell, 229 U. S., 10.

SUCH A MONOPOLY IS UNLAWFUL AND VIOLATES THE SHERMAN ACT.

The film in question, which contains the invention of reissued Letters Patent No. 12,192 is shown by Complainant's Exhibit F, which Mr. Marvin testifies is a specimen of the film intended for use in the defendant's machine. As described by him it is a "flexible transparent, or translucent film having equally spaced perforations along its edges and having upon it a series of sharply defined equi-distant photographs of different phases of a moving object as observed from a single point of view" (R., p. 32). This particular film has been universally used in the motion picture business both before and since the expiration of the reissued patent (R., p. 37, x-Qs. 42-47). No projecting machines are manufactured except under license from the Motion Picture Patents Company (R., p. 61, Re-x-Q. 152). It is therefore clear that the purpose of this restriction and its result, if it can be enforced, will be to give the plaintiff a monopoly in the sale of the only kind of film which is used on projecting machines, that is to say, it can impose such terms as it pleases on the manufacture and sale of all film used in the motion picture business of the United States.

The Circuit Court of Appeals found as a fact that

"the testimony shows that the complainant has a monopoly under its patents of projecting machines so that if no films not manufactured by complainant can be used upon these machines, the complainant will obtain an absolute monopoly of the film business in spite of the fact that its patent on films has expired "(R., Vol. II, p. 1495).

A monopoly of this character is a clear violation of the Anti-Trust Law of 1890, otherwise termed the Sherman Act.

As Judge Dickinson said in his opinion in the suit of the Government against the plaintiff under the Sherman Act "it is evident that whoever controls the films referred to controls the motion picture business" (R., Vol. II., p. 1093, fol. 3278).

The restriction that the Precision machine shall only be used with the designated Edison film is not essential or necessarily incidental to the use of the Latham patent in suit. Therefore it is not an exercise of the exclusive right to use conferred by the patent.

It is clear, therefore, that the plaintiff is endeavoring to use the restriction to obtain an unlawful monopoly. Efforts of the same kind have already been condemned by this Court in numerous cases.

"Rights conferred by patents are indeed very definite and extensive, but they do not give any more than other rights an universal license against positive prohibitions. The Sherman Law is a limitation of rights, rights which may be pushed to evil consequences and therefore restrained."

Standard Sanitary Mfg. Co. vs. United States, 226 U. S., 49.

Miles Medical Co. vs. Park, 220 U. S., 373, at 406. Straus vs. Am. Publishers' Ass'n., 231 U. S., 222 at 234.

United States vs. Kellogg Toasted Corn Flake Co., 222 Fed. Rep., 725 at 731.

SECOND.

The attempted restrictions are contrary to the Act of Congress of October 15, 1914, known as the Clayton Act, and are therefore not enforceable.

The license agreement of June 20, 1912, to the Precision Machine Company, granted that company "the right and "license for the United States, its territories and possessions, "to manufacture and sell motion picture exhibiting or project-"ing machines embodying one or more of the inventions described" in thirteen Letters Patent named in the agreement, including the Latham patent in suit. The licensee agreed to pay five dollars per machine royalty on one type of machine and three per cent. of the net selling price on other types. The agreement contemplated both foreign and interstate commerce (R., Vol. II., p. 1074–1088), and the Precision Machine Company sold its projecting machines in interstate commerce (R., Vol. I., p. 65, fol. 194).

It does not appear when the particular machine in question was sold by the Precision Machine Company to the 72nd Street Amusement Company, but it was leased by the 72nd Street Amusement Company along with the rest of the equipment of the 72nd Street Playhouse to the Prague Amusement Company on November 2d, 1914, subsequent to the taking effect of the Clayton Act.

The record shows that the Motion Picture Patents Company licensed the projecting machine manufacturers in the United States and a number of film manufacturing concerns under its reissued Letters Patent No. 12,192, the latter under the condition that the films so licensed should be used only on exhibiting or projecting machines licensed by the Motion Picture Patents Company under its patents (R., Vol. II., pp. 1076, 1077, fols. 3228, 3229), and it collected royalties from its licensees. But there is no evidence that the only business

of the company was the granting of licenses. The record does not show whether it did any other business or not. It does appear clearly, however, that it granted patent licenses to and received royalties from both the manufacturers of exhibiting machines and the producers of motion pictures throughout the United States (see License Agreement above referred to, R., p. 1074).

That the effect of the conditions on the sale of the machines made by the Precision Machine Company is to substantially lessen competition and that they tend to create a monopoly, is sufficiently obvious from the fact that, if in the business of the Universal Film Manufacturing Company or the Universal Film Exchange, they are unable to supply the Edison film to their customers, their competition with the Petitioner or its licensees will not only be lessened but destroyed, and the Petitioner will be enabled to create a monopoly of vast extent, because it can levy tribute upon every manufacturer and seller of motion pictures, although the film on which those pictures are taken is open to the world.

That the object of the agreements of the Petitioner with the Manufacturers of projecting machines was to obtain a monopoly and substantially lessen competition was held by Judge Dickinson in the suit of the Government against it. We fail to find in the Petitioner's brief on this appeal any denial of the fact that the conditions in those agreements did actually tend to monopoly and lessen competition.

Section 3 of the Clayton Act provides:

"That it shall be unlawful for any person engaged in commerce, in the course of such commerce, to lease or make a sale or contract for sale of goods, wares, merchandise, machinery, supplies or other commodities, whether patented or unpatented, for use, consumption or resale within the United States or any Territory thereof * * * on the condition, agreement, or

understanding that the lessee or purchaser thereof shall not use or deal in the goods, wares, merchandise, machinery, supplies or other commodities of a competitor or competitors of the lessor or seller, where the effect of such lease, sale or contract for sale or such condition, agreement or understanding may be to substantially lessen competition or tend to create a monopoly in any line of commerce."

It appears from the terms of the Statute, above quoted, that its purpose is to prevent the placing of conditions on the sale of commodities of all kinds which will prevent or restrict competition and tend to create a monopoly.

The Act was directly aimed at the so-called "tying" contracts, which oblige a dealer to surrender his right to handle the goods of any manufacturer he sees fit to deal with. This clearly appears from the Report of the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives of May 6, 1914 (page 11), which accompanied the bill reported to Congress by that Committee, and which was, with some modifications, enacted by Congress into the Statute now under consideration. Reference to it is justified (McLean vs. United States, 226 U. S., at 380).

That Report also shows that the monopolization of the moving picture business by means of such "tying" contracts, one of which is under consideration in this case, was one of the specific evils the statute was designed to remedy. The Report above referred to contains the following at page 13:

"Where the concern making these contracts is already great and powerful, such as the United Shoe Machinery Co., the American Tobacco Co., and the General Film Co., the exclusive or 'tying' contracts made with local dealers become one of the greatest agencies and instrumentalities of monopoly ever devised by the brain of man. * *

"The General Film Co., by the same method practiced by the Shoe Machinery Co. under the lease system, has practically destroyed all competition and acquired a virtual monopoly of all films manufactured and sold in the United States. When we consider contracts of sales, made under this system, the result to the consumer, the general public, and the local dealer and his business is even worse than under the lease system."

Report No. 627 of House Committee on Judiciary, Page 13.

It is true that the General Film Company is a corporation distinct from the Motion Picture Patents Company, but it was one of the defendants in the suit brought against the Motion Picture Patents Company, and is referred to by Judge Dickinson in his opinion as part of the film monopoly to further which both it and the Petitioner were organized.

R., Vol. II., p. 1103, fol. 3309.

Without such "tying" agrreements as the one between the Petitioner and the Precision Machine Company, the General Film Company and the Petitioner would not have been able to accomplish that monopoly.

It is clear that the purpose of the Act, as gathered from its terms and from the declarations of its framers, is to prohibit the restraint of trade by preventing limitations and restrictions on the sales of commodities, which limitations and restrictions prevent the purchasers of those commodities from freely dealing in the products of all manufacturers, and it is equally clear that such was the purpose and result of the restrictions placed upon the machine involved in the present case, as was held by the Circuit Court of Appeals, as follows:

"The testimony shows that the complainant has a monopoly under its patents of projecting machines so that if no films not manufactured by complainant can be used upon these machines, the complainant will obtain an absolute monopoly of the film business in spite of the fact that its patent on films has expired. "If the prohibitions of the Clayton Act mean anything at all, this case falls within them and the restrictions as to the use of films other than complainant's with the projecting machines are, therefore, void. Indeed, the Report of the Judiciary Committee of the House concerning the Clayton Act shows that its purpose is to reach the film monopoly."

R., Vol. II., p. 1495.

The Petitioner does not deny that the intent of the Statute is to prevent conditions of the character imposed by the Petitioner, and that the purpose of those restrictions and their result, if enforced, is to accomplish the very purpose which the statute aims to prevent, but it maintains that the statute does not apply for two technical reasons: First, because the Motion Picture Patents Company is not "engaged in commerce" and did not make the agreement with the Precision Machine Company "in the course of such commerce", and, Second, because it is not a "competitor" of the concerns from whom the supplies, viz., the films used on the projecting machines, could be obtained.

Thus the Petitioner endeavors to take advantage of what it asserts to be the letter of the statute in order to evade it and at the same time continue a monopoly which comes directly within the spirit of the Act by means which the framers of the Act intended it should prevent.

The argument on which the Petitioner seeks to escape the prohibition of the statute is exceedingly technical and amounts to this: that although the Petitioner grants licenses to the projecting machine manufacturers of the United States and collects royalties from them, and although it has, as the control and has in fact to shows, sought record projecting machines, in controlled commerce in used in the motion picture articles and in other is nevertheless not "engaged in" the in the words of tion picture business, or,

statute in "commerce," and that although it enables its licensees to compete with those engaged in the manufacture and sale of supplies for projecting machines, and they can not obtain those supplies without its permission (according to the Petitioner's contention), nevertheless it is not a "competitor" in the sense in which that word is used in the statute.

If these contentions are correct, any owner of a patent who desires to place restrictions on the use of his patented article may avoid the law merely by the subterfuge of having the patent held by a person or corporation which grants licenses under the patent subject to restrictions, but does not make, sell or use the patented article; a conclusion which would render the statute ineffective for the purposes intended, and leads to an absurdity, for it is absurd to say that the framers of the Act intended to create exceptions which would defeat its object.

This court has held that patent license agreements are a part of commerce.

"We think the licenses do by their terms and by their plain meaning refer to, include and provide for interstate as well as other commerce. * * * The contracts plainly look to the sale and they also determine the price of the article sold, throughout the United States, as well as to the manufacture in the State of Michigan."

Bement vs. National Harrow Co., 186 U.S., at p. 92.

In the present case the license agreement made by the plaintiff recites that the licensor has granted licenses to lease motion picture film under its reissued patent in the United States, its territories and possessions (R., Vol. II., p. 1076, 1077), and grants to the licensee a license to manufacture and sell projecting machines in the United States, its territories and possessions (p. 1077, fol. 3231). It provides that the licensee shall not sell its machines at less than \$150 (R., Vol.

II., p. 1084, fol. 3251); and the licensee will neither make nor sell repair parts for projecting machines manufactured or sold by any other licensees of the Petitioner (R., Vol. II., p. 1083, fol. 3248).

Speaking of the Petitioner's agreements, among which were those similar to the agreement with the Precision Machine Company, Judge Dickinson said that their end and result "was the restraint of trade" (R., Vol. II, p. 1101, fol. 3302), that the immediate result of the acts of the defendants (including the Petitioner) was that they "might monopolize the trade in all the accessories of the motion picture art so far as they are articles of commerce"; that the further end proposed and largely achieved was "the domination of the motion picture business itself" (fol. 3320); that the restraint was

"not merely incidental to efforts to protect the rights, "granted by the patents, but went far beyond the fair and normal possible scope of any efforts to protect such rights, and that as a direct and intended result of such undue and unreasonable restrictions, the defendants have monopolized a large part of the interstate trade and commerce in films, cameras, projecting machines and other articles of commerce, accessory to the motion picture business" (R., Vol. II, p. 1108, fols. 3321-3322).

Judge Dickinson's formal finding was that the contracts enumerated in the petition (among which were the contracts with the projecting machine manufacturers) and the combination "was a conspiracy in restraint of trade or commerce", and that the defendants and each of them have attempted to monopolize a part of the trade or commerce among the several States, consisting of the trade in films, cameras, etc. (pp. 1108, 1109).

To say that a corporation which has participated in commerce in the manner and to the extent indicated in the above extracts from the license agreement and Judge DICKINSON'S opinion, is not "engaged in" commerce is little less than absurd. Certainly the Clayton Act contemplated no such distinction as that which the Petitioner here attempts to make between restraining, controlling and participating in commerce and "engaged" in commerce.

The fact is, that the Petitioner in the course of its acts by which it controlled or sought to control commerce in machines, films and all apparatus and supplies used in the motion picture art, made a contract providing for the sale of motion picture machines in interstate and foreign commerce, on the condition that the purchasers thereof should not use, on said machines, supplies, to-wit, films universally employed in the business, furnished by the Universal Film Manufacturing Company or any concerns which did not see fit to take some kind of a "license" from the Petitioner. Every sale of film by a concern not a licensee of the Petitioner, directly diminished its profits and interfered with its business, but, notwithstanding this, the Petitioner asserts that those concerns were not engaged in competition with it.

Under well established rules of statutory construction, the Petitioner cannot escape the effect of the statute by the very literal meaning which it seeks to give to the terms thereof.

It is a universal rule long and frequently applied in this court, that in the construction of statutes the intention and purpose of the legislature is to be ascertained and followed, that the literal meaning of terms and phrases employed must yield to that intention, and that any construction which leads to the defeat of that intention or to absurd consequences will be discarded.

United States vs. Winn, 3 Sum., 211, 212.
Wilkinson vs. Leland, 2 Peters, 238.
Oates vs. National Bank, 100 U. S. at 244.
United States vs. Lacher, 134 U. S., 268.
Holy Trinity Church vs. United States, 143 U. S. at 460.

Sweetser vs. Emerson, 236 Fed., 161. People vs. Lacombe, 99 N. Y. at p. 49. In the last cited case it is said :

"Where it is apparent that a strict construction of a statute would defeat the main purpose and object, not only of the statute, but of other legislative enactments which relate to the same subject, and which have been enacted in pursuance of and according to a general purpose of accomplishing a particular result, such interpretation should not be upheld, as it would be absurd to say that the law-makers designed to secure a result which would be antagonistic to their plain and clear intention.

People vs. Lacombe, 99 N. Y., at p. 50.

The Petitioner attempts to give to the words "trade" and "commerce" as used in the Clayton Act, the meaning of actual barter, sale and interchange of goods, but, according to the Century Dictionary, "commerce" also means traffic, mutual dealings in common life, intercourse in general, commercial transactions. "Business" is a synonym. The verb "commerce" means "to traffic," "to carry on trade" (Century Dictionary). Can it be doubted that the making of the Petitioner's license agreements was trade or commercial intercourse, or that it was not an active engagement in traffic and commercial transactions among the states of the United States? The Act itself in its first section defines commerce as trade.

It is not denied by the Petitioner that the Precision Machine Company, which placed the notice of the attempted restriction on the patented machines, is engaged in interstate commerce, but it is asserted (Petitioner's brief, p. 15) that it does not make or sell motion picture films, and that therefore it is not a competitor of those who deal in such articles. But under the liberal interpretation of the terms of the statute to which it is entitled, the Precision Machine Company was engaged in competition. It was endeavoring, when it placed the notice in question on the machine, to restrict the trade of

some manufacturers and dealers in films, and therefore was endeavoring to prevent those competitors from dealing in the articles which must be used on the machines which it sold.

Therefore, whether or not the Motion Picture Patents Company is engaged in commerce, the Clayton Act applies, because the *Precision Machine Company*, which concededly was engaged in commerce, violated the statute by leasing or making a sale of goods, wares and merchandise, to wit, the projecting machine, on the condition that the purchaser should not deal in the goods, wares or supplies of a competitor.

Other objections to the Act suggested in the Petitioner's Argument will be briefly referred to.

1. THE CLAYTON ACT APPLIES EVEN THOUGH THE AGREEMENT, PURSUANT TO WHICH NOTICE WAS PLACED UPON THE MACHINE, WAS MADE PRIOR TO THE PASSAGE OF THE STATUTE.

"As the contract in question would have been illegal if made after the passage of the commerce act, it cannot now be enforced against the railroad company, even though valid when made."

Louisville & Nashville R. R. Co. vs. Mottley, 219 U. S., 467 at 485.

This principle was applied to the Clayton Act by Judge Sessions in *Elliott Machine Co. vs. Center*, 227 Fed., 126. In support of his ruling he cited, in addition to the Louisville & Nashville case above referred to, the following:

Armour Packing Co. vs. United States, 209 U. S., 56; Phil., Balt. & Wash. R. R. vs. Schubert, 224 U. S., 603,

and a number of other cases in this court and the Circuit Courts of Appeal, which the Court below held justified his opinion (R., Vol. II, p. 1496).

Judge Dyer in the Eastern District of Missouri reached the same conclusion in *United States vs. United Shoe Machinery Company*, 227 Fed., 507.

2. THE CLAYTON ACT APPLIES TO THE RESTRICTION AS TO "TERMS TO BE FIXED" AS WELL AS TO THE RESTRICTION ON THE FILM.

It is contended by the Petitioner (Brief, pp. 15-17) that the license restriction in question may be divided into two parts, the first relating to the film to be used on the machine, and the second to other "terms to be fixed." Whether or not the condition may be thus separated, the Clayton Act directly applies to both, for the reason that the restriction to "terms to be fixed" enabled Petitioner to make terms which came directly within the prohibition of the statute. Those terms might be further restrictions on the persons from whom the films might be obtained, or to whom they might be sold, or any other terms which the Petitioner saw fit to enforce.

The Petitioner contends that the further "terms to be fixed" would have been, if the Prague Amusement Company had inquired of the Petitioner, only a royalty for use. This assertion occurs several times in Petitioner's brief, and appears to be based on the provision in the agreement between the Petitioner and the Precision Machine Company that the further terms would be a royalty. The notice on the machine, however, did not so state. There is not a scintilla of evidence in the record that the Prague Amusement Company was ever notified that a royalty was required or that terms of any kind had been fixed on the use of the machine in addition to the restriction as to film.

Inasmuch, therefore, as the notice on the machine of terms to be fixed enabled the Petitioner to make terms in violation of the Clayton Act, that clause, whether separable from the rest of the notice or not, is unlawful.

RESPONDENTS HAVE THE RIGHT TO INVOKE THE CLAYTON ACT.

The contract or "license" by virtue of which the Prague Company has the right to use its machine is an *implied* contract, implied from the fact that it lawfully obtained the machine. The fact that the agreement, by authority of which the said machine was made and sold, contained provisions which violate the law, and that those conditions are stated on the machine does not prevent the defendants from availing themselves of the protection of the statute which was designed to prohibit just such monopolies as that which the plaintiff is endeavoring in this suit to obtain.

Oregon Navigation Co. vs. Winsor, 20 Wall., 70.

Nor is it in the interest of the defendants alone which is to be regarded. The public must be considered and its interests protected.

Continental Wall Paper Co. vs. Voight & Sons Co., 212 U. S., at p. 262.

It is not necessary to plead the illegality.

Oscanyan vs. Arms Co., 103 U. S., 261, 267.

THIRD.

The attempted restriction that the machine is to be used on terms "to be fixed" by the Motion Picture Patents Company is not enforceable, irspective of the Clayton act.

The petitioner contends that the condition of "other terms to be fixed" is one which the defendant, the Prague Amusement Company, was bound to observe, although no terms on the use of the machine were ever fixed by the Patents Company so far as the record shows.

It is stated in the Petitioner's brief that the so-called "second" condition in the notice is that the user is to pay to the Petitioner a royalty or rental (to be fixed by Petitioner) while the machine is in use but there

is no proof whatever that the Prague Amusement Company was ever notified or learned of the condition that it must pay a royalty to the Petitioner or that any royalties were ever fixed or disclosed by Petitioner. The "terms to be fixed" by the Petitioner might have been any terms which it desired to impose at any time while the machine was in use, and they might vary from time to time. They might be the fixing of a re-sale price on the machine, or the price at which it might be rented for exhibition purposes, or any similar restriction, and such restrictions would come directly within the rule of Bauer vs. O'Donnell, supra, and be void on that account.

Not only that, but, if the Petitioner may enforce the notice on the theory it now advances, it may compel a purchaser of the machine to inquire from day to day as to the terms on which he can use it. Even assuming that those terms are confined to the requirement of royalties, the Petitioner might demand fifty cents royalty one day and raise it to one dollar for the next day, and according to its position here, the purchaser would be bound to ascertain before he used the machine whether the conditions had been changed.

Judge Hough found on this point that this "attempted reservation" seeks to render the use of the machine "subject to any and every restriction or regulation which the patent owner may from time to time choose to make or vary" (R., Vol. I., p. 697, fol. 2091).

The Court of Appeals, after consideration of the petition for reargument filed by the Petitioner, said:

"The clause 'upon other terms to be fixed' in no way specified the nature of these terms and in particular in no way mentioned a continuing royalty, or the amount thereof. There is no evidence, however, that any 'other terms' were ever fixed or demanded (a finding of fact). We think such a vague condition insufficient to limit the implied right of user passing to the vendee of the machine, and consequently unenforceable.

* * If the terms that were customary had been known, there was nothing in the notice or elsewhere to prevent the appellant from varying the royalty as to nature or amount. Such a condition is too indefinite for enforcement, though a notice of a precise amount to be paid might be perfectly good. The notice fixed to the machine was so broad as to allow the patentee to fix any terms he might choose and to be repugnant to all rights which the owner of the machine might have obtained by his purchase and implied license" (R., Vol. II., p. 1511).

The Courts below made the findings of fact and law above quoted after careful consideration, not only of the arguments, but of petitions for rehearing, which were filed by the Petitioner in both courts, and in which all the reasons now urged were argued with great particularity by the Petitioner (R., Vol. I., pp. 679-693; Vol. II., pp. 1500-1508).

Their conclusions were clearly correct. The obligation, if any existed, on the part of the Prague Amusement Company to comply with the condition expressed on the plate as "terms to be fixed" by the Petitioner, was purely a contract obliga-It could not exist before the Amusement Company had any knowledge that such a condition had even been proposed. When the company received the machine bearing the plate, then, for the first time, it knew the restrictions upon the use of the machine, including the condition that it should be used in accordance with "terms to be fixed" by the Petitioner. Now that did not mean and could not mean terms previously fixed by the complainant, of which the Amusement Company had never heard. It only meant such terms as might be thereafter fixed, which that company might or might not accept. It had no notice that any terms had previously been fixed, and the acceptance of the machine with the plate upon it, could not be deemed an acceptance of those terms if any of them were continuing.

No notice of the "other terms" was ever given to the Prague Amusement Company.

There is not a scintilla of evidence in the record to show that the Prague Amusement Company knew what the "other terms" were which are mentioned in the notice. The machine in question was leased by the Prague Amusement Company, as already stated, on November 2, 1914. Even the letter to the Prague Amusement Company, already referred to, that it was using the machine "without license" was not sent until some months thereafter, so that it made its lease, and presumably gave the consideration therefor, without even knowing that it was claimed that the use of the machine was restricted to some terms or other, which had been fixed by the Patents Company.

Not only that, but at no time was any notice of those terms

given to the Prague Company.

The plaintiff endeavored to show at the trial by questions asked of Mr. Marvin, that an officer of the Prague Amusement Co. had "knowledge of the conditions under which the Patents Company was accustomed to grant licenses when application was made for the right to use licensed machines" (Vol. I., p. 53, Re-d. Q. 129). Those questions were ruled out by the court, and no error is assigned because of that ruling, but, even had the questions been allowed, it is of no consequence what the Patents Company was "accustomed" to do. The only testimony which was relevant, and what the plaintiff was bound to prove was that the Prague Amusement Company had knowledge of certain imposed terms on the use of that machine.

There is no proof whatever to that effect and no questions were asked of Mr. Marvin to elicit such proof.

The first principle of the cases which have recognized the right of the owner of a patent to enforce restrictions on the use of the patented article in the hands of his licensee is that those conditions shall be clearly and unmistakably made

known to the purchaser at the time he acquires the patented article, and in the absence of such notice the condition cannot be enforced.

The restriction on the use of the patented mimeograph which was passed upon in *Henry vs. Dick* was first sought to be enforced in *Cortelyou vs. Johnson*, 207 U. S., 196. That case also was in the Circuit Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, where Judge Coxe held:

"The foundation of the complainant's action is defendant's knowledge, not of the machine, not of the ink, but of the restriction agreement which alone made the sale of ink to the owners of the Neostyle machine unlawful.

Cortelyou vs. Johnson, 145 Fed., 933 at 936.

This court affirmed the decision of the Circuit Court of Appeals on the ground that notice of the restriction had not been proved.

Cortelyou vs. Johnson, 207 U.S., 196.

The rule applied in *Cortelyou vs. Johnson* is that knowledge of restriction on the article is an indispensable condition precedent to the cause of action in cases of this character. It is manifest that that requirement is not fulfilled and that knowledge of restrictions cannot be imputed to a licensee in possession of a patented article unless the terms of the notice, which he receives, are clear and definite and without ambiguity, so that he will know precisely what the restrictions are and govern himself accordingly.

Judge Brown in the District of Rhode Island well expressed this rule, as follows:

"The doctrine of acceptance of conditions upon the purchase of articles with labels, notices, or indorsements theron requires at law specific proof that the conditions were brought to the purchaser's notice. In equity the chancellor should be satisfied, not only that the text was brought to the purchaser's attention, but that the implications and indirect legal consequences of the agreement were understood, or at least were such as were fairly obvious to a purchaser in the ordinary course of trade."

Lovell-M'Connell Mfg. Co. vs. Waite Auto Supply Co., 198 Fed. Rep., 133.

The necessary knowledge of the restrictions was also stated in *Henry vs. Dick*, as follows:

"The purchaser of an article made under a patent and sold originally subject to restrictions as to place or method of use is not bound by such restrictions unless he buys with notice of them, as such restrictions do not run with the goods and are obligatory only upon these persons who take the article with knowledge of the conditions."

Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 42, citing McGruther vs. Pitcher, 20 Times Law Reports, 652.

The petitioner does not deny the rule of the cases above cited as to notice of the conditions, but contends that the notice in this case required the Prague Amusement Company to inquire of the Motion Picture Patents Company and ascertain what the terms would be for the use of the machine.

The contention is unsound.

THE PRAGUE AMUSEMENT COMPANY WAS NOT BOUND TO IN-QUIRE WHETHER TERMS HAD BEEN FIXED BY THE MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY FOR THE USE OF THE MACHINE.

The best that Petitioner can claim for the notice is that it is ambiguous, and in that case doubts as to its meaning will be resolved in favor of the purchaser and against the Petitioner who was the author of the notice (R., Vol. I., p. 36, x-Q. 39, 40), and caused it to be placed upon the machine.

Texas & Pacific Co. vs. Reiss, 183 U. S., at 626. Carpentier vs. Thurston, 30 Cal., 123.

The purchaser of the machine had a perfect right to take the notice on its face, and to assume that if and when the Motion Picture Patents Company fixed other terms would bring them the use of the machine, it The Petitionand attention. to his knowledge unjustifiable assumption requires the er's contention that the purchaser of the machine agreed to a condition not expressed in the notice, or that he made a subsequent contract in which he agreed to that condition.

> "Notice to affect a party must not be vague but certain * * * and must be of an accomplished fact—and not of an intention to do an act."

Peoples Bank vs. Etting, 41 Legal Intelligencer (Pa.), 5.

Second, before the Petitioner could call upon the purchaser of the machine to comply "with the other terms to be fixed" it was his duty to give notice of those terms in clear and definite language.

- "Where a party contracts to do a thing, but the act on which the right to demand performance of the contract is to arise is indefinite, the defendant is entitled to notice before he can be called upon to perform it.
- "And, in general, where any option at all remains to be exercised by the plaintiff, notice of his having determined that option ought to be given."

Chitty on Contracts, p. 767, 16th Ed.

"When the time of performance is to be directly determined by the promisee, the law raises by implication a stipulation that notice shall be given to the promisor, and such notice must be alleged in the complaint and proven."

4 Enc. Pl. & Pr., p. 653.

"Where a man promised to pay for certain weys of barley as much as he sold them for to any other man; there the plaintiff is bound to aver notice, because the person to whom the weys are to be sold is perfectly indefinite and altogether at the option of the plaintiff, who may sell them to whom he pleases."

Vyse vs. Wakefield, 6 Meeson & Welby, pp. 453, 454, citing Viner's Abridgement, "Condition."

The principle of this case has a wide application and forbids the notion that the defendants, with no other knowledge of the subject than is derived from the bare general reservation under consideration, were under any obligation whatever to seek for further information.

In Vyse vs. Wakefield (supra), the Judges of the Court of Exchequer held that where there was an option by the plaintiff, which was to be exercised before the obligation of the defendant accrued, it was necessary for the plaintiff to give notice of the exercise of the option. Lord ABINGER said that where a party stipulates to do a thing which lies within the peculiar knowledge of the opposite party, notice ought to be given him (6 Meeson & Welby, 453). Baron Parke laid down the rule stated in Chitty on Contracts (supra), and held that where a condition is indefinite "notice ought to be given by the plaintiff of his having determined his choice" (p. 455). Baron Alderson held that inasmuch as the plaintiff had a selection to make under the contract there in question, it was his duty to give notice of his having made the selection (p. 456). Baron Rolfe said, "What is the meaning of the contract where a party covenants to do something at the option of another? It must mean provided he have notice of that option having been exercised" (p. 456).

The cases cited at page 12 of the Petitioner's Brief are not

in point. The question involved in them was as to the application of the Statute of Limitations, and particularly as to what is necessary in order to show notice of a fraud sufficient to start the running of the Statute, which is not analogous to the present case, where the terms of a contract to be performed depend on the act of the promisee.

It is further to be observed that if the Petitioner can enforce the "other terms to be fixed" without those terms being brought to the attention of the purchaser or lessee of the machine at the time he acquired it, it may not only change and vary the terms from time to time and day to day as it sees fit, but it may require, as the Petitioner contends, any purchaser or lessee, wherever he may be situated, to ask the Motion Picture Patents Company on what terms he may use it.

That is to say, before the purchaser located in Portland, Oregon, or El Paso, Texas, or Tampa, Florida, can use his machine, it is necessary for him to write to or by some means communicate with the Motion Picture Patents Company in New York and ascertain what terms are imposed on the use of the machine.

The Court of Appeals was completely justified in its statement at the close of its opinion on the petition for rehearing that

"The notice affixed to the machine was so broad as to allow the patentee to fix any terms he might choose and to be repugnant to all rights which the owner of the machine might have obtained by his purchase and implied license" (R., Vol. II, p. 1511).

THE EXISTENCE OF THE LATHAM PATENT DID NOT RELEASE THE PETITIONER FROM THE DUTY OF GIVING ADEQUATE NOTICE OF ANY TERMS IT MIGHT FIX.

The vice of the Petitioner's argument is the assumption that the bare fact that the motion picture machine is patented makes it the duty of the user of that machine to first institute inquiries in relation to restriction and then follow them up as far as he can, under penalty of suffering the consequences if he fails to discover restrictions on the use which an inquiry, if pushed further, would have disclosed. Now it is true that, if a user knows that an article is patented, either because so marked or otherwise, he is charged with knowledge of what the patent itself discloses. But his obligation stops there. He is not bound, without notice, to ascertain what contracts or restrictions the patentee has made with others outside the patent.

The suggestion that where a patentee reserves the continuous right to impose such other terms as to the use of a patented machine to be fixed as he sees fit, the user is bound without notice to ascertain what those other terms are before using the machine seems scarcely worthy of serious consideration. Circumstances may alter the obligation of the respective parties as to inquiry or notice, but one fact is conclusive; where the condition that requires action (viz., here the terms to be fixed) can only be known to one party and cannot be known to the other, the party requiring the action must first give notice. That is this case. The petitioner has not cited any authority to support his extraordinary proposition; on the contrary, the authorities are all the other way, as abundantly appears. This Court has decided that the existence of a patent in no respect discharges the obligee from the duty of giving notice.

Cortelyou vs. Johnson, 207 U. S., 196. Henry vs. Dick, 224 U. S., 42. Washing Mach. Co. vs. Earle, 29 Fed. Cas., at 334.

The necessity of giving notice is absolutely inconsistent with the claim (Petitioner's Brief, p. 11) that the purchaser of a patented article must inquire to ascertain whether conditions have been imposed on its use.

POINT III.

THE DEFENDANTS, UNIVERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY AND UNI-VERSAL FILM EXCHANGE DID NOT HAVE NOTICE OF THE RESTRICTIONS WHICH THE PETITIONER CLAIMS WERE PLACED ON THE PATENTED MACHINE BY THE NOTICE.

The point last above made is that the *Prague Amusement Company* did not have notice of any terms fixed by Petitioner pursuant to the notice of "terms to be fixed" and that no terms were ever fixed by the Petitioner.

Our contention under this point is that the Universal Film Manufacturing Company and the Universal Film Exchange never received notice of any of the restrictions placed upon the patented machine, and therefore cannot be held as contributory infringers. This is true both as to the restriction that the machine was to be used only with the film of the Edison Reissued Patent No. 12,192 purchased "from a licensee" of the Petitioner and the "terms to be fixed" by the Petitioner. Nowhere in the letters above set out (supra, pp. 5, 6) is there any statement that the infringement of the Petitioner's patents, therein referred to, consisted of a violation of the terms of the notice placed upon the machine. In order to enforce the alleged restrictions of the notice against the Respondents, it was necessary for the Petitioner to prove that the Prague Amusement Company used the machine with knowledge of the restrictions, and that the violation thereof would be an infringement of the patent, that the Manufacturing Company knew at the time it supplied the films "The Refugee" and the "Five Pound Note" to the Exchange that those films or pictures were to be supplied to the Prague Amusement Company and used by it contrary to the terms of the said notice, and that the Exchange knew at the time it supplied the said films to the Prague Amusement Company that they were to be used in violation of said notice. This required proof that both the Manufacturing Company and the Film Exchange, at the time it supplied the films in question, knew the terms imposed upon the use of the machine of the Prague Amusement Company by the notice thereon. There is no proof whatever to that effect.

The only notion which the Petitioner ever attempted to give the Universal Film Manufacturing Company and the Universal Film Exchange was that contained in the letters which were to the effect that an unidentified projecting machine at the 72nd Street Playhouse was being used without a license at the time the notice was sent.

It is to be observed that the letter to the Exchange was written on January 18, 1915, and the letter to the Manufacturing Company on March 3, 1915. The proof upon which the Petitioner relies to support its charge of contributory infringement by reason of the supplying of film by the Manufacturing Company to the Exchange, and by the latter to the Prague Amusement Company, with knowledge that the said film would be used in violation of the alleged restrictions on the machine is that "subsequent to March 4, 1915, and prior to March 17, 1915, it (the Manufacturing Company) sold to said Exchange a copy of a certain motion picture entitled the Five Pound Note" * * * "and a copy of a certain motion picture entitled Refugees and * * * that said copies of said motion pictures * were supplied by said Exchange of New York to said Prague Amusement Company on March 17, 1915, for use upon its said Simplex (projection) machine and that said motion pictures were so used on that date by said Prague Amusement Company" (Stipulation, R., Vol. II., p. 736, fols. 2206, 2207).

The mere fact that notice was served upon the Exchange on January 18, 1915, that the Prague Amusement Company was at that time using an infringing machine without license from the Petitioner is certainly not proof that the Exchange knew on March 17, 1915, when it supplied the said film, that it was contributing to an infringement, that is, that the Prague Amusement Company at that date, March 17th, did not have a license and right to use the machine. Nor is the fact that the Manufacturing Company had notice on March 3, 1915, that the Prague Amusement Company was using an infringing machine without license of the Petitioner proof that when, on some date between March 4th and March 17th, it sold the said pictures to the Exchange, it knew that said pictures were to be supplied to the Prague Amusement Company.

The Petitioner's theory with respect to its notice to the Manufacturing Company and the Exchange is directly in line with its theory and contention that the Prague Amusement Company was bound to inquire the terms upon which the machine could be used, although those terms could be varied from time to time as the Petitioner might desire. Petioner's claim in reality is that after it had sent the letters referred to to the Manufacturing Company and the Exchange it was the duty of the former Company to ascertain, before it supplied film to the Exchange, whether the Prague Amusement Company had obtained a right or license to use its machine and see to it that the Exchange did not supply the film furnished to it to the Prague Amusement Company at such times as the latter company did not have a license; and that it was the duty of the Exchange each time that it desired to supply pictures to the Prague Amusement Company to ascertain whether the Prague Company had a license, that is, whether it had complied with whatever terms the Petitioner might have fixed. On no principle of law or justice can such a theory be supported.

Furthermore the letters sent to those two defendants merely stated that the Prague Company was using its machine "without license." What kind of a license? By whom granted? What did it cover? No answer to these questions is given in the notice. The sellers of the film were entitled to know. To say they were bound to inquire is to repudiate the doctrine of Cortelyou vs. Johnson, for certainly the burden of proving notice which, under that doctrine, rests upon the plaintiff, is not sustained by a warning which does not inform but shifts the burden to the defendants to investigate and find out. The letters were in effect nothing more than this: "Your customer is using the film you sell him in a manner contrary to our claim of right, go and find out what that claim is and what he is doing,"-which certainly is not notice of any limitations on the use of the machine which plaintiff had imposed and the Prague Company had disregarded.

The burden is upon the Petitioner to prove that the Manufacturing Company and the Exchange knew that the Prague Amusement Company had not complied with terms which the Motion Picture Patents Company had the right to fix on the machine in question and had in fact fixed. Proof that the said defendants were warned that the supplies, which they had the right to make and sell, might perhaps be used to infringe a patent, is not sufficient.

In Cortelyou vs. Johnson, the Circuit Court of Appeals said:

"In that case the bill alleged, and the demurrer admitted, that the defendants 'with full knowledge of this method of putting complainants' monopoly in general use are making and selling staples adapted only to use with these machines.' In this case, as in all cases, the burden is on complainants to prove infringement by a preponderance of evidence. The defendant's knowledge of complainants' 'selling plan' is specifically alleged in the bill and denied in the answer. It must

be proved. The presumption drawn from the fact that the machine was largely advertised and therefore the officers of the defendant must have known its character is entitled to little weight in the face of the explicit testimony of these officers that they did not know. Having assumed that they had knowledge of the machine the next presumption is that 'they doubtless inspected the Neostyle Company's ink used thereon.' All this is plausible but insufficient."

"The foundation of the complainants' action is defendant's knowledge, not of the machine, not of the ink, but of the restriction agreement which alone made the sale of ink to the owners of the neostyle machines unlawful. The defendant had a right to sell to the owner of a machine, sold without the restriction, and there was nothing unlawful in selling to an owner of a machine having the notice thereon unless the defendant

"Furthermore, though we are convinced that Randall, defendant's salesman, read the restriction notice it is evident that he misunderstood its import as he assured Gerber that no trouble would follow from buying the defendant's ink as it was not patented."

Cortelyou vs. Johnson, 145 Fed., 933 at 936, 937.

This court concurred " in the views expressed by all the Judges of the Court of Appeals that there is no sufficient evidence of notice."

Cortelyou vs. Johnson, 207 U.S., 196.

knew of such notice.

POINT IV.

THE PETITIONER DID NOT PROVE A JOINT INFRINGEMENT AS ALLEGED IN THE BILL, WHICH, FOR THAT REASON, SHOULD BE DISMISSED.

The only infringement alleged in the bill, is a joint infringement, and therefore the only proof of infringement which would sustain a decree in favor of the plaintiff would be that all three defendants had joined in the infringement, or, more particularly stated, that the Universal Film Manufacturing Company and the Universal Film Exchange together contributed to the infringing use of the machine by the Prague Amusement Company. The defendants cannot in this suit be held liable for anything sort of a common participation in the alleged infringing act. If the bill had alleged a several, or joint and several, infringement it would have been demurrable and it cannot be sustained by proof of anything less than joint infringement by all the defendants.

"A joint tort being charged, not only had it to be proved as laid * * * but the defendants had all to be liable for all that was resolved upon or done."

Jayne vs. Loder, 149 Fed. Rep., 21 at 31 (C. C. A., 3rd Circuit.)

It is said (C. C. A., Sixth Circuit):

"It is, of course, clear that two or more defendants cannot be jointly sued for infringement, except for acts in which there is some kind of common participation, and that there could rightfully be no injunction decree, nor accounting against Penhollow and Baker jointly for the independent acts of Penhollow or the independent acts of Baker."

Vrooman vs. Penhollow, 222 Fed. Rep., 895.

And Judge Ward applied the rule, on demurrer, in Fichtel vs. Barthel (173 Fed., 491) as follows:

"I find one (objection) that seems to me substantial, namely, that the complainants by charging the defendants as joint and several infringers, have combined distinct and independent causes of action which do not affect all the defendants. In other words, they cannot prove in the same case that the defendants Barthel and Daly, who are copartners, and Albert F. Miller, the other defendant, have been guilty of separate and independant acts of infringement."

It was, therefore, necessary for the plaintiff to prove, not only that the Prague Amusement Company used its machine in violation of lawful and enforceable restrictions of which it had notice, but that both the Universal Companies contributed to such use with knowledge. It follows that the plaintiff must show, (first) that the Manufacturing Company and the Exchange supplied film to the Prague Amusement Company intended to be used contrary to the provisions of the notice, with knowledge thereof, and (second) that the Prague Amusement Company, to the knowledge of the other two defendants had not, when it used the said film, complied with "terms" fixed by the plaintiff, and there is no proof of any "terms" fixed by the plaintiff, of which any of the defendants had notice.

It has been shown under Point III. (supra) that Petitioner failed to prove that when the Manufacturing Company supplied the pictures, the "Refugee" and the "Five Pound Note," to the Exchange, it knew or had any reason to believe that said pictures were to be supplied to the Prague Amusement Company, nor did the Petitioner prove that at the time the Exchange supplied the said film pictures to the Prague Amusement Company, it knew that they would be used in violation of the terms of the notice on the machine. For that and the other reasons set forth under Point III., the Peti-

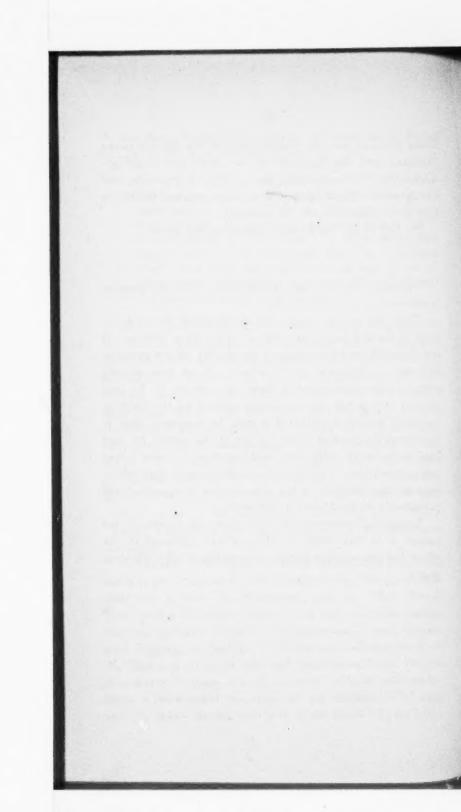
tioner failed to prove the participation of the Manufacturing Company and the Exchange in the alleged acts of infringement. The Petitioner, therefore, has failed to prove the *joint* infringement alleged in its bill of complaint, and the bill on that ground alone should be dismissed.

Neither of the Courts below passed on this point.

The above argument and points cover the only question considered by the courts below.

Under the present equity rules and pursuant to the directions of the trial judge, the evidence on the other defences of the Respondents which attacked the validity of the patent in suit, was incorporated in the record. As we have already stated the questions raised by these defences are to be considered only in case the restrictions are held by the Court to be lawful and enforceable, and it may be suggested that in that event the question of the validity of the patent be sent back to the courts below for consideration and decision before being passed upon by this Court in the first instance, particularly because the decision of the Circuit Court of Appeals would presumably be conclusive on that issue.

Inasmuch, however, as the evidence on the merits of the patent is in the record, the Respondents' argument to the effect that the patent is invalid is contained in the following pages.



Notice on Defendant's Machine.

Mfr.'s Serial No. 3557

SIMPLEX

Special License No. 3666

by Patented.

No. 576,185, March 2, 1897. No. 586,953, July 20, 1897. No. 580,749, April 13, 1897. No. 673,329, April 30, 1901.

No. 673,992, May 14, 1901.

No. 707,934, August 26, 1902.

No. 722,382, March 10, 1903.

The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of Reissued Patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company and complied with by the user while it is in use and while the Motion Picture Patents Company owns said patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the right to use this machine.

MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY, New York, N. Y., U. S. A. Some statements in the Petitioner's brief may perhaps produce the impression that the Respondents deny that the machine of the Prague Amusement Company (Defendants' Exhibit No. 2) embodies the device described and claimed in the patent in suit. Such is not the case. The Respondents in the amendment to the answer above referred to (R., p. 20) pleaded that the machine in question did embody that device and they do not deny that fact.

THE PATENT.

The Bill of Complaint charged infringement of all the claims of the patent. At the trial the charge of infringement was confined to the seventh claim alone, which came as a surprise to the defendants, who had the right to suppose that they were to meet the same claims, among others, which were in suit in a former case on this patent, Motion Picture Patents Co. vs. Independent Moving Picture Co., 200 Fed., 411, in which the Circuit Court of Appeals of the Second Circuit, then composed of Judges Coxe, WARD and Noves, affirmed the decree below on the opinion of Judge LEARNED HAND, Judge Coxe dissenting, and held that the patent covers a projector and not a camera. In that suit, infringement was charged of Claims 1, 3, 5 and 8. The invention which was then claimed by the plaintiff to reside in the Latham patent, as set forth in those claims, was a continuous sprocket feed, which produced and maintained a loop in the film and thus prevented strain on the film, the sprockets on this continuous feed engaging in the holes in the edges of the film.

It appears also that in the Answer filed by the plaintiff in the suit brought against it by the Government in Philadelphia above referred to, it stated, as Mr. Marvin testifies, that "the gist of the invention made by Latham consisted in providing a device for feeding the film regularly and continuously so that a predetermined loop of slack was formed and maintained"; and further, that the "intermittent sprocket feeding device operated on this loop of slack film which was freely moved, and hence there was no likelihood of the teeth of the intermittent sprocket wheel tearing or straining the film" (R., pp. 41, 42, x-Qs. 70, 72). That is to say, the plaintiff there contended, as it did in the suit against the Independent Company, that the invention consisted in providing a sprocket continuous feed to draw the film from the feed wheel and provide a slack or loop from which the intermittent sprocket would take the film witnout the strain which, it is obvious, would be involved in pulling it by jerks from the heavy reel, which bears a considerable weight of film. Up to the time of the trial of this suit that was the invention which had always been claimed by the plaintiff for the Latham patent.

The object of the plaintiff in limiting its charge of infringement to the seventh claim is to endeavor to avoid the effect of the decision in the Independent Company suit and the prior Armat and Joly patents, which show a continuous sprocket feed for maintaining a loop, but which, so the plaintiff contends and defendants deny, do not show the equivalent of a sprocket on the intermittent feed. There is no real difference between the devices of the seventh and fifth claims.

For purposes of convenient comparison and to show the close similarity of the 5th and 7th claims, they are here inserted:

CLAIM 5.

The combination with devices which support the bulk of a flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positivelydriven devices separate and distinct from the film-supporting devices and located between them at opposite sides of the exposure-window, and which engage the film and accurately insure its feeding, which last named devices respectively produce and take up slack in the film, and an intermittently-acting device provided with teeth which engage in holes in the film whereby it feeds the film across the exposure-opening.

CLAIM 7.

The combination with devices adapted to support the bulk of a flexible film and supply it for exposure and receive it after exposure, of positivelydriven toothed rotary devices located between and entirely disconnected from said supporting devices and at opposite sides of the exposurewindow, said toothed devices being adapted to carry and feed the flexible film by the engagement of their teeth with equally-spaced holes made in the edges of the film and to respectively produce and take up slack in the film, and an intermittently-acting rotary feeding device also provided with teeth which engage with the holes in the film, whereby the film is intermittently fed across the exposure-opening.

The Latham patent in suit issued from the Patent Office several years after it was applied for. The application, after a number of amendments, was placed in interference with Armat, Casler and another, and priority of invention, after a long and hard fought contest, was awarded to Armat. Subsequent to that decision a new patent solicitor, representing Latham's assignee, the E. & H. T. Anthony Company, completely rewrote the specification and claims of Latham's application and finally obtained the patent on the argument, which the Patent Office erroneously accepted, that the invention stated in the amended specification and claims was not involved in the interference.

RESPONDENTS' POSITION ON THE MERITS OF THE PATENT IS

Respondents maintain that the Latham patent in suit is invalid on the ground that in view of the patent to Edison for an intermittent sprocket which could be used both on cameras and projecting machines, and other patents to be referred to hereafter, no invention was involved in Latham's use of such a sprocket; that the patent was anticipated by patents to Armat, Joly and others; that the Patent Office having awarded the patent for the invention described by Latham in his original application to Armat, after the interference proceeding between them, the Office was without authority to award the patent to Latham, and its act in so doing was ultra vires; that the invention for which the patent purported to be issued was not the invention which Latham swore he had made when he originally filed his application and he never thereafter made oath that he had made the invention which purports to be covered by the amended specification and claims; that the alleged invention now claimed to be covered by the patent was not made by Latham, but by his skilled mechanical employee, Lauste; and that Latham in reality contributed nothing to the advancement of the art of motion picture projecting machines.

The Intermittent Sprocket with all its Functions and Advantages was Well Known in the Art Prior to Latham.

The intermittent sprocket and its so-called "positive engagement" of the film, was an important and essential part of Edison's invention of the Motion Picture camera, on which the entire art is based, and was set forth in his original and re-issued patents. The object of the intermittent movement is, primarily, in the camera to permit intervals of rest of the

film while pictures are being taken, and, in the projecting machine, to permit intervals of rest while the pictures are being projected on the screen. It is so geared that the period of rest much exceeds the period of movement of the film. The pictures move at the rate of about sixteen a second, and it is apparent that the gearing must be an accurate piece of mechanism.

If this intermittently moving drum pulls directly on the reel, it is obvious that it is likely to tear holes in the side of the film and the film itself. As Mr. Marvin testified, the continuous feed was provided "to avoid strain on the film and create there a condition similar to what you would have if you were operating on a few inches of film only" (R., pp. 38, 39, x-Qs. 49-57).

A clear description of the device of the Latham patent and the respective functions of the intermittent and continuous sprockets will be found in the testimony of the defendant's Expert, Mr. Hammer, at pages 68-76 of the Record.

Mr. Hammer also describes the device of the Edison patents Nos. 491,993, 493,426 and 589,168 (R., p. 103). One of these patents, No. 589,168, originally contained claims covering the film used on the Edison camera and the projecting machines in question, which claims were afterwards embodied in and constitute the claims of the reissued Edison patent No. 12,192. This film, as described in said patent, was of a certain dimension, with holes in the edges, in which the sprockets are adapted to engage. Mr. Hammer points out (R., p. 103, fol. 308) that the Edison patent No. 491,993 contemplates the employment of an intermittent sprocket wheel for co-operation with the spaced holes in the sides of the film for feeding the film forward; also that the Edison patent, No. 589,168, describes the intermittent movement, and he shows that in these patents Mr. Edison "contributed to the art the definite idea that either of two forms of film, or either of two forms of feed mechanism, might be employed in photographic cameras, or photographic projectors, or photographic kinetoscopes. In other words, if one uses plain film, one may use therewith a friction feed. On the other hand, if one employs a film with perforated edges, one may use therewith a sprocket feed. The art was definitely instructed that the selection of one form of feed or the other form of feed was merely a matter of choice on the part of the user and a matter of preference" (R., p. 104, fols. 310, 311).

Mr. Hammer has made it clear that the intermittent sprocket to draw the pictures along before the lens of the camera and obtain a period of rest greater than the period of movement, was clearly described and set forth by Edison, and was well known in the art long prior to the date of Latham's invention, as appears from the date of said Edison patents, viz., 1893, 1897.

The function of the intermittent sprocket in the camera was distinctly stated by Judge Lacombe in the suit on reissued patent No. 12,037, which was a re-issue of some of the claims of No. 589,168, which patent was sub-divided by re-issues into said patent No. 12,037 and said patent No. 12,192. Judge Lacombe said:

"The important distinctive feature is the manner in which these intermittently moving parts handle the film. * * * Such novelty, however, cannot be predicated solely on the circumstances that the intermittently moving parts operate directly upon the film. The meritorious feature of the device is that they (intermittently moving parts) seize hold of the film firmly, move it positively, regularly, evenly, and very rapidly without jarring, jerking, or slipping producing a negative, which can be printed from and reproduced as a whole without rearrangement to correct imperfect spacing of the successive pictures."

Edison vs. American Mutoscope Co., 151 Fed., 767, at 771.

Judge Lacombe points out in his opinion in the above case that the "specification of re-issued patent No. 12,037 and No. 589,168, explicitly states that the 'teeth of the wheels, 5, enter the holes along the edges of the film for the purpose of positively advancing the film.' The organization described shows that the sprocket wheels are adapted to push the film along as they revolve, as well as to hold it back when they are at rest"—and further, "In succession each sprocket enters a hole thereby holding the film firmly and positively and either advancing it forward or holding it at rest by a method of engagement, which eliminates all chance of slip" (1d., 771).

It is apparent that the problem of pulling the film across the lens of the *projecting* machine is exactly the same as that of pulling the film across the lens of the *camera*. The film moves at the same speed in both cases, and in both, as has already been shown, there must be a period of rest.

Mr. Marvin's testimony shows that the function and advantage of the sprockets in the Latham Patent are exactly the same as in the Edison patent as described above by Judge LACOMBE (R., pp. 373, 378).

In the Independent Company case Judge Coxe referring to the Edison patent No. 589,168 said, "the Plaintiff's Expert, Mr. Waterman, asserts, and I see no reason to differ from him, that the apparatus here described (of Edison patent No. 589,168) can be used equally well for taking pictures and projecting them. It comprises a supply and take-up reel, with an escapement between them, having a sprocket wheel engaging the holes perforated at regular intervals on the two edges of the film to feed it along intermittently across the exposure opening. There is not, however, the distinguishing characteristics of the Latham patent, the second feeding mechanism, which continuously maintains a loop and relieves the pressure on the intermittently feeding sprocket."

Motion Picture Patents Co. vs. Independent Co., 200 Fed., at 422.

The novelty of the invention therefore cannot rest in the intermittent sprocket. If it does it is completely anticipated by the Edison patent, which, as Judge Coxe stated, applies to projectors as well as cameras. Nor can it be said that the novelty resides in the combination of the intermittent and continuous sprockets. The invention of the patent does not rest in that combination, but, as Judge Coxe pointed out and as the plaintiff up to the trial of this case always contended, the only feature which is not shown in the Edison patent is the continuous sprocket feed by means of which the loop is maintained, and it makes no difference whether the particular claim in question cover the combination of that feature with the intermittent sprocket, as in the seventh and fifth claims, or with any kind of intermittent device as in the first and some other claims. Every advantage and function which the intermittent sprocket possesses was completely shown in the Edison patents.

The continuous sprocket, in combination with mechanism for intermittently moving the film, was completely described in the Armat United States patent and the Joly French patent prior to the date of Latham's invention. There is considerable evidence in the record concerning that date, and as the Armat and Joly patents are not part of the prior art unless prior to that date, it is necessary first to determine when Latham's invention was made.

The Date of the Invention of the Patent in Suit.

THE DECISION IN THE INDEPENDENT COMPANY CASE.

The decision of the Circuit Court of Appeals in Motion Picture Patents Co. vs. Independent Company (supra), is directly controlling on this point. It affirmed Judge Hand who held that Latham's patent is for a projector and not for a

camera. Therefore, the date of Latham's invention is the date when he first conceived and reduced to practice a projector embodying the invention described and claimed in the patent, and that date is subsequent to Armat and Joly. The evidence on this point will now be briefly referred to.

Woodville Latham was, at the time of his alleged invention, an elderly man, not a practical machinist, and having no particular acquaintance with the motion picture business except that derived from his sons, who were young men engaged in exhibiting the Edison "peep-hole" machines. He engaged a skilled machinist, who had been employed in the Edison works, by the name of Eugene Lauste, who did the practical work, and, as will be seen hereafter, is the man who actually designed the combination which is now claimed to be Latham's invention. He engaged in addition Emil W. Kleinert, another mechanic, and also had the assistance of a Mr. Dickson.

It is claimed by the plaintiff in this case, as in the suit against the Independent Company, that Latham's date of invention was February 26, 1895. Assuming that there was a reduction to practice at that date by the use of a machine containing the continuous sprocket, the evidence shows that the machine was used only as a camera. All the evidence on this point cannot be considered in this brief. Suffice it to say that the Appellant's brief admits that the use of the machine on February 26, 1895, was a use in a camera. It is stated in the Petitioner's brief that the feasibility of its use as a projecting machine was appreciated and it was so used in an experimental way, but there is absolutely no proof that it was ever used as a projector until subsequent to the exhibition of the Armst machine, which will be hereafter referred to. Without referring in detail to the evidence, it may be said that it shows that Latham and Lauste both knew that the success which had attended Edison's efforts in the motion picture field had been due, primarily, to the fact that he had

devised a camera for photographing moving pictures in which the pictures were taken with great rapidity, and this had been done by intermittently moving the film and bringing it to rest, so that the exposure might be taken, and then moving it along for the next exposure, and in this apparatus the interval of rest of the film had been very much greater than the period In the Edison camera kinetograph the film had been perforated and had been intermittently moved by sprocket feed devices, as already shown; and his patent 493,426 showed that the device was applicable to projectors also (see specification, R., p. 1207, lines 88-103). It was natural, therefore, that when Latham and Lauste began their work they should select the Edison type of film, the Ediscn type of sprocket feed devices, and the use of an intermittent feed device in connection with the shutter having a small opening, for their camera. Lauste testified that he had been familiar with the idea of forming a loop connection in a moving picture apparatus, where long films were employed, and incorporated that idea in the Latham camera (R., Vol. I., p. 773, line 103). The only departure which they made from the Edison camera was the employment of longer films, and the loop of slack film of which Lauste had knowledge, as above stated.

It was not until May, 1896, subsequent, as will be seen hereafter, to Armat's use of the continuous sprocket feed, that additional development work was done which brought Latham to the point where he could make application for the patent in suit.

Latham's original machine was never used except in a very few experiments for projecting pictures. It was experimented with once as a projector, but the results were very "unsatisfactory" (R., p. 642, x-Q. 127), and instead of developing the machine into a projector they used the continuously moving machines—like Edison kinetoscope—as above stated (R., p. 642, x-Qs. 128-130). Mr. Latham himself testified in the

interference proceeding that he abandoned the idea of using his camera as a projecting machine, and that meanwhile he had found out how to project the pictures of a continuously running film (R., p. 957, fol. 2871, p. 533, fol. 1597).

The Patent Office Tribunals held affirmatively that he had abandoned it (R., p. 1462, fol. 1385), and that Armat ante-

dated Latham (R., Vol. II., pp. 1462, 1477).

The Examiner of Interferences, in the Patent Office, in deciding the Interference between Latham, Armat and Casler, held that it was apparent that Latham's machine "was designed and made primarily for the purpose of taking pictures and not for projecting the pictures on a screen" (R., p. 384, x.Q. 4). He further held that the machine as it stood at that time was not in a condition for exhibiting pictures, but arranged to be used as a camera, which was the use to which it had been put almost continuously (R., p. 384, x-Q. 5).

As above stated, Mr. Latham used a so-called kinetoscope for exhibiting the pictures taken on his camera, and it was not until May, 1896, that he adapted his machine to project pictures. He was probably induced to do this because his son, Gray Latham, saw Armat's machine on exhibition at the Atlanta Exposition during September and October, 1895 (R., Vol. 2, p. 735), and Mr. Armat testified that he saw Gray Latham looking at the machine while it was being operated at Atlanta (R., p. 385, x-Q. 9). Gray Latham was also present at the first night exhibition of the machine in Koster & Bial's Theatre in New York (R., p. 385). It was after Latham knew of the success of Armat's use of the continuous sprocket feed and the other mechanisms of Armat's machine, that he, with Lauste, set to work to build a machine which would project pictures on that principle (p. 384, x-Qs. 8-12), and it was not until then and after they had altered the camera so that it would work as a projector that the patent was applied for.

The machine itself is not before the Court. It is impossible in this brief to discuss the evidence as to its use by

Latham and, as already stated, the decision in the Independent Company case, makes it unnecessary to do so. Under that decision the patent covers a projector and not a camera, and therefore the only date of invention which can be relied on is the date when Latham first used a projector embodying his alleged invention.

Chancellor Kent says:

"If a decision has been made upon solemn argument and mature deliberation, the presumption is in favor of its correctness; and the community have a right to regard it as a just declaration or exposition of the law, and to regulate their actions and contracts by it."

Kent, Comm., 476.

Minnesota Co. vs. National Co., 3 Wall., 334.

Bresnahan vs. Tripp Giant Leveller Co., 99 Fed.,

280, at 282.

Germania Iron Co. vs. James, 89 Fed., 811, at 817.

Victor Talking Machine Co. vs. Sonora Phonograph
Co., 188 Fed., 330.

The Armat Patent and Invention.

The Armat projector is set forth in his patent No. 673,992 (R., Vol. II., p. 1258), which is owned by Petitioner and is among the patents in the list on the notice on the alleged infringing machine.

It is stipulated (R., p. 734) that that patent correctly describes and illustrates a machine publicly exhibited by Mr. Armat at the Atlanta Exposition in September and October, 1895, which is several months prior to Latham's completion of his projector in May, 1896. Armat's application for his patent was filed on February 19, 1896, also prior to the completion of Latham's projector, so that confining Latham to the invention of the projector under the former decision, there is no doubt that Armat was prior in point of time.

The Armat patent, which is printed at page 1258 of the record, is clearly described by Mr. Hammer (R., pp. 117-124), and is illustrated by a diagram (Defendant's Exhibit 32, p. 1271). It contains a continuously operating sprocket feed, which draws the perforated film steadily and continuously through the delivery reel and a similar sprocket for feeding the film to the take-up reel. This apparatus, like that of Latham and in the same manner, supplies a loop from which the intermittent feed takes the film and a loop from which the film is taken by the "take-up" reel.

The plaintiff does not deny that the Armat patent contains the continuous sprocket feed which forms the loop in combination with an intermittent feed, but contends that the Armat intermittent feed is not a sprocket feed. Leaving that point aside for the moment, we again call attention to the fact that the plaintiff is now trying to distinguish its seventh claim from the claims which were involved in the former suit against the Independent Company on the ground that Claim 7 is for a different invention.

Such is not the case. As already pointed out, the alleged invention of the Latham patent, and which the plaintiff always claimed prior to this suit is the combination of a continuous sprocket feed with an intermittent movement to form a loop, and it is immaterial whether the intermittent is a sprocket or some other kind of an intermittent feed.

The seventh claim is substantially identical with the fifth claim which was involved in the former suit and is for the same alleged invention as the other claims, to-wit, the loop formed and maintained by the continuous sprocket feed.

We have already quoted the plaintiff's characterization of the Latham invention in its answer in the Government suit. In its suit against the *Independent* Company, in which it alleged infringement of claim five, its whole contention and claim was that Latham's invention consisted of the maintaining of a loop by means of a continuous sprocket, as is shown in the record and brief in that case, the former containing the depositions of Professor Main and Mr. Waterman, two very able patent experts, who testified in that suit on behalf of the plaintiff.

Petitioner's contention in that case is well shown by the following extract from the brief of its Counsel in the case, which was admitted by Mr. Marvin:

"It (the Latham invention) was shortly afterwards (the date of its use in a camera) invented independently in France by M. J. H. Joly, who used it both in cameras and projectors, and still later, in the year 1895, in this country by Thomas Armat, who used it exclusively in projecting machines" (R., p. 379).

In other words, plaintiff in that case took the position that Latham's invention was shown in the Armat and Joly patents, but that they did not affect the validity of Latham's patent, because he was the first to make the invention.

It recognized that, under the decision in the Independent Company suit, the earliest date of invention it could prove for Latham was subsequent to Armat and Joly, and therefore it was necessary, in order to sustain the Latham patent, to make the invention something different from what is shown in those patents. For that reason, in this case, claim 7 is invoked, because it specifically mentioned an intermittent sprocket, apparently overlooking the fact that it is to all practical purposes identical with claim 5.

This attempted distinction is one of words and not of substance. The alleged invention covered by the first, third, fifth and eighth claims and by the seventh claim, is the same, viz., the maintaining of a loop by a continuous sprocket.

It is to be noted that claim 5 contains the combination of the toothed intermittent and the toothed continuous sprocket. It specifically mentions the "intermittently acting device provided with teeth" and refers to the continuously acting devices "which engage the film and accurately insure its feeding." The "accuracy" here referred to is to be obtained only by sprocket teeth on the continuous feed. So that claim five, according to the plaintiff's own contention, is specifically for the same combinations of toothed intermittent and toothed continuous devices which are covered by the seventh claim.

But even if claim 7 can, by any forced interpretation be said to be for a different invention from that stated in the other claims, it is nevertheless anticipated, because

THE ARMAT PATENT CONTAINS THE EQUIVALENT OF THE INTER-MITTENT SPROCKET.

It is important to note in connection with the Armat patent and the other anticipatory patents hereafter to be mentioned that Latham had specifically pointed out that equivalents of the sprocket may be used in practicing his invention. He says in his patent (p. 4, line 8; R., p. 722):

"in order that the slack may be formed and the intermittent movement across the optical axis effected with accuracy and certainty it is desirable, although not essential, that the rollers which effect these movements be provided with the sprocket teeth shown or their equivalent, so that they may positively engage with the film and positively move it without the possibility of any slipping, which is apt to occur when frictional contact alone is relied on, because such slipping will preclude proper registration between the picture and the optical axis."

In other words, any device by which the film is held posiitvely, i. e., so as to prevent slipping, will perform the same function and have the same advantages as the toothed sprocket, either on the continuous or intermittent feed, and be the equivalent of those sprockets in the sense of the Latham disclosure.

Armat states, with reference to his means for obtaining a

longer period of rest and illumination than of movement, as follows:

"This I accomplish by moving the film or other picture-carrying surface intermittently in such manner that the interval of exposure and illumination of the picture shall exceed the interval of time required to effect the change" (R., p. 120, Armat patent, p. 2, line 64).

The continuously operating feed mechanisms are provided with teeth and are admittedly the equivalent of the continuous sprockets of the Latham patent. Armat's preferred method for securing intermittent movement was through the use of a "beater" but his specification indicates a full knowledge of the use of a toothed intermittent feed as appears from a part of his specification, which reads as follows:

"This roller is preferably provided with a suitable covering and may have reduced ends, as shown in Fig. 8, so that it may engage the surface of the film between the perforations in order to prevent enlarging or otherwise distorting the perforations" (R., 122, fol. 366).

That is to say, Armat preferred to use a "beater" to obtain intermittent movement, but he recognized, and in effect pointed out, to those skilled in the art, that an intermittent sprocket feed might be used, bearing in mind that he was already using a perforated film and continuous sprocket feeds.

The beater, by means of which the intermittent movement is obtained, pulls a certain and predetermined amount of film from the loop each time it engages with the film, and therefore contains the equivalent of the device of the Latham patent.

Mr. Armat himself (called as plaintiff's witness) testifies that

"If the machine be constructed and designed to feed the film 'so that the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain or wear upon the film 'it would, in my opinion, be an embodiment of the Latham feeding mechanism" (R., p. 385, x-Q. 13).

There is no denial that in his patent the film is "intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film."

Mr. Armat's testimony is that in view of prior suggested devices it would not involve any originality merely to suggest a type of projector employing an intermittent sprocket or sprockets, and that it was a mere matter of choice to those who had knowledge of the Edison method of taking pictures whether they would adopt a friction feed or a sprocket feed for their cameras (R., pp. 386, 387, x-Q. 19). Mr. Armat has been engaged in the designing and perfecting of motion picture machines for many years, and is an educated, intelligent man, who at one time acted as his own attorney in the Interference proceeding.

Mr. Hammer said that the Armat patent shows a projecting machine embodying all the elements of Claim 7 because Armat discloses in the passage above quoted that toothed intermittent feeds are contemplated as among the possibilities and as equivalent structures, and are simply considered by him as of less practical advantage than a friction device or beater, to accomplish the identical result, with less strain, than if teeth were employed (R., Vol. I, pp. 136, 137, fols. 403-411).

It is to be borne in mind that Mr. Marvin, who testified as an expert for the Petitioner, is the President of the Plaintiff Company and greatly interested in the success of this suit, and his testimony is not that of a disinterested party and is to be considered in the light of his sympathies and interests, which naturally are all with the plaintiff.

He admitted that in the suit against the Independent Company, Mr. Waterman, a recognized authority and expert, testified on behalf of the plaintiff, that Joly and Armat, who were the only "patentees of machines which can lay any claim to practical and commercial utility, embodied his (Latham's) improvements in the machines shown in their patents" (R., pp. 376, 377, x-Q. 244).

The Armat machine was used for projecting pictures for some time at the Atlanta Exposition, in a practical commercial It was afterwards used at Koster & Bial's Music Hall, where it certainly could not be said to be an experiment. Armat's invention cannot be thrown aside as impracticable and his patent considered as a paper patent, for it was a practical success and the plaintiff itself owns it and licenses projecting machines under it. The notice on each machine manufactured under plaintiff's licenses contains in the list directly under the word " patented," the number and date of the Armat patent, viz., "673,992, May 14, 1901," and the license agreement (R., p. 1074) with the Precision Company specifically licenses the Precision Company to manufacture projecting machines under that patent. It is true of the Armat patent, as of the Latham patent, that there is no projecting machine made or sold in this country which is not licensed under it.

In view of the licenses granted by the Petitioner under the Armat patent, it is estopped to say that there are no machine on the market embodying it.

The Joly Patent.

The Joly French patent is dated August 26, 1895; the Joly United States patent was applied for June 5, 1896, and issued October 20, 1896, and is for the same invention as the French patent (R., pp. 1233, 1244).

Mr. Hammer prepared a diagrammatic representation of it (Defendants' Exhibit 30, R., p. 1255). The date of Joly, like the date of Armat, is subsequent to Latham's alleged use of his invention on a camera, but many months prior to Latham's

first use as a *projector*. The only difference between Joly and Latham which is claimed by the plaintiff is that, like Armat, Joly's drawings show a beater operating on the film and not an intermittently acting toothed wheel.

The same considerations which make Armat a prior inventor apply to Jely. He shows the invention which, up to the present suit, vas always claimed for the Latham patent, viz., the maintaining of the loop by a continuous feed sprocket, and Claim 7 being, in substance, for the same invention, Joly, like Armat, anticipates Latham, the latter's date of invention being long subsequent to Joly.

The Joly machine, while referred to in his patent as a camera, is also there said to be adapted for use in making "animated projections" (R., p. 111, fol. 332). The device is well shown in the diagrammatic representation (R., Vol. II, p. 1255), which, in connection with Mr. Hammer's description (pp. 111-115), so dearly sets forth the mechanism that it is unnecessary to further describe it. It is sufficient to say that it completely covers Latham's invention, as was admitted by the Plaintiff in the suit against the Independent Company, where its counsel's brief contained the statement already referred to, viz., that Latham's invention was made independently in France by Joly, who used it both in cameras and projectors (p. 175, x-Q. 255).

The only distriction which plaintiff attempts to make between the devices of Joly and Latham is that the form of intermittent mechanism shown by Joly is not a sprocket. But it did not involve invention for those skilled in the art to substitute the intermittent sprocket for the beater of Joly, and when he and Armat showed the continuous feed sprocket for maintaining the loop and obtaining accuracy and certainty of registration of the film, they showed everything which may possibly be claimed for the Latham patent and all that had been claimed for it by the plaintiff until it was forced by the decision in he suit against the Independent Company,

to find some means, if possible, to evade the effect of the priority of Armat and Joly; and, furthermore, the "beater" is the equivalent of the intermittent sprocket under the terms of the patent in suit, as above shown.

Other Patents in the Prior Art.

There are other patents in the prior art which deprive the patent in suit of patentable novelty, and will therefore be briefly referred to.

THE GRAY PATENT No. 540,545 of June 4, 1895. (R., Vol. 2, p. 1225).

There is a diagrammatic representation of this patent at page 1231 and it is described by Mr. Hammer at pages 105-108. Further description is unnecessary except to say that Gray shows a feeding mechanism to continuously feed the film by which a loop of slack is maintained and a hook w, which is the device to intermittently feed the slack, and corresponds to, and is the equivalent of, the intermittent sprocket of Latham.

It is to be noted here that in the suit against the Independent Company, the defendant's device was the camera known as the "Warwick" camera, which, as Mr. Marvin testifies (R., p. 377), contained a reciprocating hook as the intermittent device, and the plaintiff there contended that that intermittent hook was the equivalent of the intermittent sprocket of the Latham patent. The Gray reciprocating hook corresponds to the hook of the Warwick camera and is likewise the equivalent of that sprocket.

The film of this patent moves upward instead of downward as in the modern moving picture machines, but there is a feeding mechanism to uniformly feed the film from the feed roll and a corresponding mechanism to deliver it to the take-up reel, thus forming a loop at each end of its path between the

two reels, and hooks for drawing the film intermittently across the exposure window. The continuous feeds n and n^1 are not toothed, but they perform the same function in substantially the same way as the tooth arms of Latham, and the patent shows that the maintaining of a loop in connection with an intermittent sprocket was not new with Latham.

Mr. Hammer says that the Gray patent, taken in the light of the state of the art and the date of the application

"was a full disclosure of means for the protection of a "delicate strip of film or photographic material in passing through a photographic device adapted for use in connection with moving Pictures" (R., p. 135, x-Q. 57).

There can be no doubt of the correctness of Mr. Hammer's statement, and it may further be said that inasmuch as Gray clearly showed an intermittent sprocket performing the same function, doing the same work as the intermittent sprocket of Latham, and being in all respects its equivalent, it did not involve invention to put teeth on Gray's continuous feed, such teeth, or sprockets, being clearly shown in Armat and Joly.

Greene & Evans (British) Patent, No. 10,131 of 1889. (R., p. 1153.)

Diagrammatic representations of the mechanism of this patent used by Mr. Hammer will be found at pp. 1165-1167, showing two different forms in which the invention may be used. Mr. Hammer's description will be found at pages 89-94, to which the court is referred. It is sufficient to say here that the patent shows clearly, in a camera, an intermittent feed mechanism in which sprockets engage with the film and a continuous feed for maintaining the loop, although the continuous feed is not provided with sprockets.

These patentees clearly set forth the idea of relieving the strain on the film by providing a loop between the reel and

the intermittent movement in the same manner as in the Latham patent. It will likewise be noted that the intermittent sprocket was shown in this patent seven years prior to Latham's alleged invention.

THE MARRY (FRENCH) PATENTS OF 1890 AND 1893 (R., pp. 1169, 1179).

Translations of these patents with copies of the original drawings are at pages 1169 and 1179 of the record. A diagrammatic representation of the 1890 patent, produced by Mr. Hammer, is reproduced at page 1177, and a similar representation of the 1893 patent at page 1193.

The 1890 patent shows in a camera a reel for supporting the bulk of the film, an intermittent feed r, and another reel for supporting the film after exposure. Between the intermittent and the take-up reel is a feeding mechanism to uniformly feed the film. This 1890 patent is explained by Mr. Hammer at pages 95-97 of the record. Marey recognized and provided for the problem of preventing the strain on the film, caused by the intermittent jerk and provided a continuous feed to relieve the strain. The patent describes independent feed reels and take-up reels and apparatus for securing a definite and constant amount of film to the take-up reel; also the provision of a loop of slack film against which the pull of the intermittently acting spring r is brought to bear (B., p. 97).

The Marey patent of 1893 is for a camera or a projector. The lower reel a (diagram, p. 1193) supports the film before exposure. The continuously rotating feed device j drives the film continuously and steadily from the delivery reel, and in this way forms a loop of slack film. The take-up reel B is positively driven, and drives the film past the exposure opening. The intermittent movement is provided by an intermittently acting pressure device L, L³, which is in

the nature of a clamping device. Other apparatus is provided for the winding up of the film without strain. Mr. Hammer's description of this patent is referred to for further details (R., pp. 98-101).

These Marey patents show everything in Latham except that the feeding mechanism is not provided with teeth.

THE CHINNOCK CAMERA.

The existence and use of the Chinnock Camera prior to Latham's invention of the patent in suit is contained in the depositions of a number of witnesses and a considerable number of exhibits in the record which need not be referred to, because the plaintiff's objection to the machine as a reference is, not that it is not proved to have existed at the time claimed, but that it does not contain Latham's invention.

The Chinnock camera is described by Mr. Hammer at pages 127-129, and his diagrammatic representation of it is at page 1319. Photographs of the machine are reproduced at pages 1309-1317.

In this machine the film moves downward as in the defendants' machine, and not upward as in the machines of the prior art which have just been discussed. The machine itself is in evidence, but it is believed that a clearer idea of its construction and mode of operation is contained in the diagrammatic representation than in the machine itself.

In brief, the film is drawn from the reel by the uniformly or continuously driven feed roll 39, which produces the slack 21°, and an intermittently acting device $50^{a,b,c,d}$ draws the slack from the film across the exposure window, after which there is a second slack 21° in the film, and a device 46 for taking up the slack. Thus the same problem is solved in the same way as in Latham by providing a continuous feed of the film from the supply reel, the formation of a loop of slack

film drawn upon by an intermittent feed mechanism, which in turn forms a second loop of slack from which the film is taken on to the supply reel.

In view of the statements of the Latham specification, already quoted, to the effect that any device which will give continuous movement to the film for the production and taking up of loops and the intermittent action of the film past the optical axis is an equivalent of the sprocket feeds illustrated in the Latham patent, it becomes a question of fact as to whether the Chinnock device, for example, did or did not give that character of positive feed which the Latham patent describes as desirable. The testimony of the men who actually built and used the Chinnock apparatus, to the effect that it was a satisfactory and commercial device cannot be overcome by the ex post facto testimony of Mr. Marvin, plaintiff's president, to the contrary; that testimony showing directly that Chinnock's apparatus was operative in this particular point of accuracy and certainty and positive engagement of the film against slipping (R., pp. 213-15). Certainly, Mr. Marvin's testimony is more than balanced by the testimony of Mr. Latham's second patent-No. 600,113-in which he glorifies the accuracy and certainty of the friction feed device in contrast to an imperfect action of sprocket feeds.

This testimony likewise supports Mr. Hammer in his statement that the apparatus of the Gray, Greene & Evans, and Marey patents contain the advantage claimed for Latham in that they prevent the slipping of the film.

THE EDISON PATENTS Nos. 491,993, 493,426 AND 589,168. (R., pp. 1196-1200-1212.)

The mechanism and the inter-relation of these patents is described by Mr. Hammer (pp. 102-104), whose testimony should be referred to for explanation.

In No. 493,426, which is for the so-called "peep-hole ma-

chine" or kinetoscope in which pictures are exhibited upon a long continuous strip of film, Mr. Edison says that the means for advancing the film and operating the shutter may be the same as in the apparatus for taking pictures described in the application of his Serial No. 403,535, which resulted in patent No. 491,993 (R., p. 1196). Referring to the drawings of No. 491,993, there is shown an intermittent sprocket wheel 19 for co-operating with the space holes in the sides of the film for feeding the film forward.

In patent 589,168 the movement of the film may be continuous or intermittent, but the latter is preferable as is also the longer period of rest than of movement. At line 44, page 1, of that patent, Mr. Edison states, in effect, that with the apparatus of that patent he had been actually able to attain a rate of exposure of forty-six pictures per second with a period of movement which was only one-tenth of the total elapsed time.

In these patents Mr. Edison contributed to the art the idea that in cameras or projectors a plain film should always be used with a friction feed, and a film with perforated edges with a sprocket feed. So that, as was pointed out at the outset of the discussion on the validity of the Latham patent, we have the patents of Edison, particularly patent No. 589,168, pointing out the function of the intermittent sprocket to positively engage the film and regularly and swiftly move it across the exposure window, which is exactly the function of the intermittent sprocket referred to in claim 7 of the Latham patent. And it is clear also from these patents that Mr. Armat was absolutely correct, when he testified in the former suit as already referred to, that to those skilled in the art, viz., those acquainted with the Edison patents among others, it was merely a matter of choice as to whether a sprocket or a friction feed was used (R., p. 386, x-Q. 19). On account of the development of the Edison film with its perforated edges, covered by the Reissue patent No. 12,192 and the Edison camera



patent, Reissue No. 12,037 (also a reissue of 589,168), and the acquiring of those patents by the plaintiff, who compelled all manufacturers and users of cameras and projecting machines to observe the terms of its licenses, so that the film, the cameras and the projectors were all tied together, the sprocket became the universal mechanism used, but to say that that universal adoption of the sprocket is due to Latham is entirely false. Edison originated the sprocket, and taught the art the advantages of its use both in cameras and projectors.

THE PRINTING PRESS PATENTS.

Kidder No. 224,440;
Eckerson No. 433,776,
Cox No. 508,184

(R., pp. 1112, 1119 and 1134).

These patents show that the idea of maintaining a loop to prevent the strain of a jerk on the heavy roll of material, such as paper or film, was well known and old prior to Latham's invention. For a description of the mechanism of these patents the court is referred to Mr. Hammer's testimony (pp. 77-85). Diagrammatic representations of their mechanism will be found at pages 1137, 1139 and 1141.

In addition to the above patents, the LePrince patent No. 376,247 of January 10, 1888, should be referred to as described by Mr. Hammer, page 87. It shows both a camera and a projector. A strip with perforated edges is employed and fed forward by sprocket wheels, the sprockets engaging in the perforations of the strip, and the patent also shows that where the intermittent movement of the film is to be secured, it is necessary and desirable to have the pull of the intermittent device brought to bear on a loop of slack film rather than on the reel (R., p. 88).

The Mayer patent No. 525,991 of 1894 shows means for continuously supplying film to a slack loop pulled upon by an intermittent feed device (B., pp. 104, 105).

The question of the validity of claim 7, considering it by itself and irrespective of its equivalency to the claims in suit in the Independent case, comes down to this. The Latham machine employs a sprocket for the intermittent feed. There was nothing new in the combination of the continuous and the intermittent feed in projectors. There was nothing new in an intermittent feed in the combination shown in claim 7. There was nothing new in a sprocket as one form of intermittent feed or in a rotary sprocket. There is no new result in the combination of claim 7. There is no proof of any advantage of a rotary sprocket intermittent feed, over a "beater" intermittent feed. The difference between the different kinds of intermittent feed devices was merely a matter of choice and mechanical judgment. Taking the combination as a whole all that can be claimed for claim 7 is that it substitutes for one element of the Armat and Joly combinations a simple equiv-That the substitution is an improvement does not appear and its general use is due to the fact that the Motion Picture Company through its system of patent licenses and contracts deprived the art of any choice in the matter. There is no invention whatever in claim 7, but as we submit merely mechanical skill. Furthermore, claim 7 is practically identical with claim 5 which plaintiff itself asserted was for the same invention independently made by Armat and Joly.

Tack Co. vs. Two Rivers Mfg. Co., 109 U. S., at p. 120.

[&]quot;In view of this state of the art, there was no patentable invention, and nothing more than mechanical skill, in putting the diagonal cuts or bevels on the same side of each leg of the staple."

"It is but the display of the expected skill of the calling, and involves only the exercise of the ordinary faculties of reasoning upon the materials supplied by a special knowledge, and the facility of manipulation which results from its habitual and intelligent practice; and is in no sense the creative work of that inventive faculty which it is the purpose of the Constitution and the patent laws to encourage and reward."

Hollister vs. Benedict Mfg. Co., 113 U. S., at p. 73.

Lauste Designed Latham's 1895 Camera. It Was Not Invented by Latham.

There being no doubt of the existence of Armat's machine, the Joly patent and the Gray patent at the time they bear date, the burden is on the plaintiff, if it may, as we deny, rely on Latham's early claims, to prove that Latham made the alleged invention prior to those references, by thoroughly convincing proof.

Clark Thread Co. vs. Willimantic Linen Co., 140 U. S., 481.

In order to sustain that burden of proof it was necessary for the plaintiff to show, not only that a machine embodying the invention of the Latham patent was in existence on February 26, 1895—the date claimed for it—but also that that machine was designed by Latham or under his direction; that the invention was his and not made by some one else. The evidence of the plaintiff is not sufficient to sustain this burden, but, on the contrary, indicates that not Latham but Lauste is entitled to whatever of credit there is for the machine of 1895, which, according to plaintiff's contention, forms the basis of plaintiff's claim of priority over Armat, Joly and Gray.

Lauste was a skilled mechanic who had been employed in Edison's works, and when Mr. Latham started his shop with the idea of building machines Mr. Dickson, who had been associated with Edison in the development of moving picture apparatus, sent Lauste to him. Lauste testified in the Interference Proceeding between Latham, Armat and Casler, on behalf of Mr. Casler, to the effect that he, and not Mr. Latham, invented the 1895 camera (see Rec., Vol. II., p. 765 et seq.) The testimony given by him in the suit against the Independent Company on behalf of the plaintiff was relied on greatly to show the use of the camera on February 26, 1895, but it also shows that Lauste was the real designer or inventor. He said that his testimony in the Interference Proceeding was true (R., p. 409, x-Qs. 115, 116) and further testified that all of the machine except a supplemental roller which was suggested by Mr. Dickson was his work (R., p. 412, x-Qs. 135, 136).

Lauste had expert mechanical knowledge of moving picture machines, Latham had no practical knowledge whatever about them. He had some ideas but was incapable of carrying them into effect. The alleged invention, which is not that of a broad idea, but claimed to be merely the use of sprockets or teeth on the feeds of the machine, was a purely mechanical expedient which would not have occurred to him, but would have occurred immediately to a skilled mechanic like Lauste.

It will be seen by reference to his testimony in the Interference Proceeding that Lauste testified specifically that he conceived and carried out the mechanism for maintaining the loop (R., Vol. I., p. 777).

It is impossible here to refer to all the testimony of Latham and Lauste which shows that Mr. Latham had nothing but the most general notion of a camera or a projector, while Lauste on the other hand, knew, from his experience with moving picture machines, exactly the problems to be met, the functions of sprockets and various kinds of feed mechanisms on such machines, and, as the record shows, made sketches of the machine for Mr. Latham (R., p. 404, x-Qs. 77, 78; p. 392, x-Q. 13).

"In contemplation of law an invention does not exist until the inventor's ideas have been reduced to practical form."

American Graphophone Co. vs. Leeds, 170 Fed., at

331 (C. C. A., 2nd Circ., Judge COXE).

In Standard Cartridge Co. vs. Peters Co., 77 Fed., 630, cited by Judge Coxe in the above case, Judge Lubron said:

"On the other hand, if Ligowsky had only an inchoate dea that in some way an endless belt carrier, suitably actuated, might be devised, which could be substituted for the old rigid circular carrier, but did nothing towards developing and demonstrating the utility of his conception, he would not be an inventor at all. The mere existence of an intellectual notion that a certain thing could be done, and, if done, might be a practical utility, does not furnish a basis for a patent, or estop others from developing practically the same idea. Agawam Co, v. Jordan, 7 Wall., 583-602; Christie v. Seybold, 6 U. S. App., 544, and 5 C. C. A., 33, and 55 Fed., 69."

In the present case Latham, who was a pure theorist, who had no practical experience in mechanics and could not read the ordinary mechanical drawing (R., p. 547, x-Q. 76), let alone reduce to concrete form, by way of drawing, sketch or description, a mechanical structure comprising several interrelated parts and movements, was incapable of representing in physical form the device which was described in his patent and never did so.

"He may have conversed eloquently and persuasively on the subject, but it is requisite that something more tangible than a mental conception must be proved."

Corrington vs. Westinghouse, 178 Fed., 711. Clark Thread Co. vs. Willimantic Linen Co., 140 U. S., 489.

THE HISTORY OF LATHAM'S PATENT.

The opinion of Judge Hand in the suit against the Independent Company (200 Fed. Rep., p. 410) is concerned principally with a discussion of the facts surrounding Latham's invention and the progress of his application through the Patent Office. In the opinion those facts are referred to in connection with the discussion of the question of whether the patent covers a camera or must be limited to a projector, but they are also relevant and material particularly to the points:

- (1) That the Patent Office was without power to issue the patent to Latham, it having already held that Armat was the earlier inventor; and
- (2) That the alleged invention for which Latham was given his patent was not the same invention on which he applied for it.

LATHAM'S ORIGINAL APPLICATION.

It was filed June 1, 1896. The character of its disclosure and the nature of the original claims were discussed by Judge Hand in the Independent Company case (200 Fed., 413).

It was, in effect, for a device in which was obtained a greater period of rest than of motion as a means for securing better illumination of the screen, in contrast to the Edison Kinetoscope arrangement, for example, which had a continuously moving film (R., Vol. II., p. 1325). The problem of protecting the film from injury as it was intermittently jerked along arose incidentally to the arresting of the motion of the film for the purpose of better illumination. The invention he conceived he had made was, as is apparent from his original specifications and claims, the stopping of the film as a means for better securing the illumination of the screen and thus obtaining a better picture with a smaller source of light.

The original claims were disallowed on July 9, 1896, in

view of the prior patent to Gray, in connection with other references. In December, 1896, Latham assigned his application to the E. & H. T. Anthony Company (R., pp. 1344-45), and thereafter had no interest in it, and on December 26, 1896, less than three weeks later, he filed an application for his patent No. 600,113 (R., p. 1291), in which he expressly condemned the sprocket feed and stated that the only way to achieve a successful result was to use friction feed, both on the continuous and intermittent. He expressly discarded the perforated film as impracticable and used plain film with friction feed. In this patent he said "sprocket machines are apt to tear the picture strip, besides being otherwise objectionable." Again at line 61 (p. 1291) he says that in his accompanying drawings he shows "one embodiment of my invention, the best known to me at the present time", and (p. 1293, line 131) he says "for scientific purposes this apparatus (friction feed) is the only one of which I have any knowledge that is capable of giving anything like accurate results."

INTERFERENCE PROCEEDING.

On January 23, 1897, about a month after Latham's second application in which he discarded the sprocket feed, an interference was declared with Armat, Casler and one Amet who does not afterwards appear (R., p. 1347), the issues of which were, in brief, a film, a tension device to keep the film taut and prevent puckering at the point of exposure, means for intermittent movement of the film, so that the periods of rest and illumination exceed the period of movement, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack between said mechanism and tension device, "whereby the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without unnecessary strain and wear upon the film" (R., p. 1347).

It is necessary here to consider briefly Armat's application and the proceedings in his case. His patent was applied for on February 19, 1896, three and a half months prior to the application for the patent in suit.

As originally applied for, his claims covered the combination with a picture carrying strip or film of a tension device adapted to keep the film taut and prevent flexing or puckering at the point of exposure, and mechanism for feeding the film so as to provide slack therein between the same and said tension device, whereby the film may be intermittently moved with great rapidity without sustaining unnecessary strain and wear. We have already seen that he had used a machine at the Atlanta Exposition in the Fall of 1895 which concededly contained the continuous sprocket maintaining a loop, in combination with an intermittent feed, and his original application showed, as his patent shows, such an apparatus (See Stipulation, R., p. 374).

In order to make Armat's claim patentable, the Patent Office required him to add to it another element, viz., " means for intermittently moving the film through the tension device at short intervals exceeding the interval required in effecting the movement, so that the interval of pause and illumination shall exceed the interval of rest," and Armat's application was rejected until he added the words above quoted to his claim, which then made up the issue of the interference which appears in the record (p. 1347). In other words, as the Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia (R., p. 1474, fols. 4421-22) holds, the Patent Office then regarded as indispensable to render the combination patentable the inclusion of the provision that the interval of pause and illumination should exceed the interval of movement, and Armat was refused a patent for the device for which a patent was afterwards awarded to Latham, viz., the maintaining of a loop by means of a continuous sprocket feed in the combination with an intermittent feed device, irrespective of the feature of pause and illumination.

A great deal of testimony was taken on the interference,

which was decided by the Examiner of Interferences in favor of Latham, but, on appeal, he was reversed by the Board of Examiners, which was affirmed by the Commissioner, whose decision in turn was affirmed by the Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia (See decisions, R., Vol. II., pp. 1437-80).

The Board of Examiners-in-Chief held that merely because a camera might be modified so as to be used as a projector, did not mean that Latham's camera fell within the issues, and that there was no proof that in Latham's camera there ever was an arrangement giving a period of rest and illumination greater than the period of movement; that if it was obvious and simple to transform the Latham camera into a projector, he had not done so for some fifteen months after February 26, 1895, when he first used his camera, apparently being compelled to develop a different type of exhibiting machine in which the film moved continuously (R., pp. 1450-52). The Commissioner of Patents in his decision awarding priority to Armat said that Latham did not reduce his invention to practice prior to the filing of Armat's application, but, on the contrary, abandoned it in favor of another form of picture exhibiting device in which the film moved continuously (R., p. 1462).

So that the Board of Examiners-in-Chief and the Commissioner both held in accordance with our contention here, viz., that Latham's date of invention cannot be predicated upon his camera use of February, 1895, but was some time subsequent to the filing date of Armat.

The language of the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia shows clearly what has already been referred to, viz., that the Patent Office regarded the interval of pause and illumination as an essential element of the invention and treated Armat on that basis, so that while he was granted priority to Latham, he was required to limit his invention to the loop mechanism now said to be covered by Latham, in combination with the element of interval of pause and illumination, although

he had originally endeavored to obtain his patent for the broader claim which *omitted* this last named element (R., p. 1474).

Pursuant to the District Court of Appeals decision, the patent for the invention in interference was awarded to Armat on May 14, 1901, and at that time the Patent Office had found and decided that there was no room for a broad mechanical claim on an intermittently moving film with devices for taking up slack, and that ruling had deprived Armat of the claim which he had originally filed and to which he claimed to be entitled.

PROCEEDINGS ON LATHAM'S APPLICATION SUBSEQUENT TO THE DECISION OF THE INTERFERENCE.

The original rejection of Latham's application by the Patent Office on July 9, 1896, left original claims 8 and 10 only allowed. On March 23, 1901, the E. & H. T. Anthony Company filed an amendment containing seven new and very broad claims, only one of which mentioned sprocket feed (R., p. 1351). On April 12, 1901, sixteen of the seventeen claims were rejected (R., p. 1355). On January 21, 1902, Mr. Phillips Abbott, who had been substituted as attorney, filed an amendment, in which he stated that the interference had been "entirely without justification" (R., pp. 1356, 1357). He re-wrote the specification and claims (pp. 1370-1388) and included in them the "positive feed" of the film. A number of important changes occurred in this new specification; it may be said of all of them that they appear to have been made with the idea of emphasizing accuracy and certainty as concomitants of the sprocket feed, although that idea was nowhere put forward in the original specification, and was condemned by Latham himself. Mr. Abbott was at first unsuccessful but he persisted in his arguments, both oral and written, with the Primary Examiner and finally succeeded in obtaining the patent.

A very important part of the specification of the patent as

issued and that which contains the description of the necessity, functions and advantages of the feeding devices and points out that it "is desirable, though not essential, that the rollers which effect these movements be provided with the sprocket teeth shown or their equivalent, so that they may positively engage with the film and positively move it without the possibility of any slipping which is apt to occur when frictional contact alone is relied on," was first introduced in the patent by this amendment, although at that time the inventor himself had expressly condemned the sprocket or "positive engagement" and had stated that the friction feed was the only one of which he had "any knowledge that is capable of giving anything like accurate results "(R., Vol. II., p. 1293, lines 130 et seq.).

Under the well settled rule, which will hereafter be referred to, where a new invention is incorporated into an application, there must be a new oath. There was no new oath to the amendment introduced by Mr. Abbott, as Judge Hand pointed out in his opinion, and Mr. Latham could not and, as a truthful man, would not have made oath to it, because, as he stated himself, he had no knowledge of that invention, to wit, the use of sprockets to positively engage the film and thereby secure accuracy and certainty of registration.

On February 18, 1902, the Patent Office rejected all of the new claims, filed as above stated on January 21st, with the exception of claims 11 and 12, which were of a very detailed character (R., p. 1389).

On July 18, 1902, after Mr. Abbott had had a personal interview with the Examiner on July 8th, he filed a reply containing an argument, in which he devoted his attention, first, to the "law" of the case, and then to what he claimed was a differentiation between Latham and the prior art (R., pp. 1393-1406). In this communication he cancelled all of the claims which had up to that time been presented and submitted twelve new claims which are very different from, and

some of them, including claim seven, considerably broader than, the original claims which will be referred to hereafter.

On July 30, 1902, three of these new claims, 7, 10 and 12, were held by the Examiner to be objectionable because the film was made an element (R., p. 1412), and the Anthony Company was required to take that element out which was accordingly done by a communication by Mr. Abbott, dated August 2, 1902, in which he substituted new 7th and 10th claims, the former being now in suit (R., p. 1413). The patent was then passed to issue on August 26, 1902.

On the above facts the defendants contend, as heretofore stated, (1) that the Patent Office had no right to issue to Latham a patent for an alleged invention which it had already awarded to Armat; and, (2) that the invention on which the patent was issued to Latham was not the same invention on which he applied for one.

1. THE AWARDING TO LATHAM OF A PATENT BROADER IN ITS SCOPE THAN THAT OF ARMAT WAS AN ULTRA VIRES ACT ON THE PART OF THE PATENT OFFICE, WHICH HELD ARMAT TO BE THE FIRST INVENTOR, BUT REFUSED TO ALLOW HIM A CLAIM FOR THE BROAD INVENTION NOTWITHSTANDING HE APPLIED FOR IT.

The claims as finally issued to Latham were broader than the issues of the interference proceeding, although they cover the identical structure which was the subject of that interference, and all the evidence in the interference proceeding was directed to the priority of the conception and reduction to practice of the invention embodied in that structure. The Board of Examiners-in-Chief, the Commissioner of Patents and the Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia all agreed that priority of invention and reduction to practice of this invention, embodied in the structure which the plaintiff contends embodied Latham's invention, belonged to Armat.

But a Primary Examiner, persuaded by the ex parte

argument of an ingenious patent solicitor, in effect, though perhaps unwittingly, overruled the findings of those tribunals and awarded a patent to Latham, the defeated party in the Interference, with claims broader than those granted to Armat, and which in fact covered and dominated Armat's invention.

The enlargement of the scope of the claims in Latham's patent in suit results from the omission, in his amended claims, of the element of greater rest and illumination which was in his original application, and which, as already pointed out, Armat was compelled by the Patent Office to put in his application in order to obtain his patent. The omission of this element was deliberate and, as appears from the amendments and arguments of Mr. Abbott—was expressly designed to get a broader claim which would dominate the Armat structure, on the pretext that it was not involved in the interference (R., pp. 1356-57).

The 10th claim of Latham's original application, which was the basis of placing him in interference with Armat and Casler, did not contain any reference to the longer period of pause and illumination, but the interference was declared on the expressed statement of the Examiner, acquiesced in by the applicant, that that element was embraced in claim 10, and was therefore part of the interference (R., p. 1347). Latham never asserted during the interference that he was entitled to any broader claim than that stated in the issues (R., p. 1347).

It is a well settled rule that the Commissioner of Patents is without authority to issue to a party, who, in an interference proceeding, is adjudged to be the later inventor, a patent for his interfering structure, with claims which cover the structure of the party who, in that proceeding, has been adjudged the prior inventor. In the present case the structures of Latham and Armat were equivalents. They were so held to be by the Patent Office and the Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia, and were acknowledged to be so in this case

by Mr. Armat, who repeated his testimony in the interference case that it was only a matter of engineering choice to use a sprocket in the intermittent feed (R., p. 386), and his specification itself in the part already quoted recognizes and shows to those skilled in the art the possibility of using a toothed intermittent feed, which we may again repeat is not the invention which, up to this case, Latham was claimed to have made.

In Blackford vs. Wilder, 28 App. D. C., 535, Wilder, after priority had been awarded to Blackford, asserted broader claims upon the interfering subject matter, and persuaded the Primary Examiner to declare a second interference, in which respect he was fairer than the applicant here, but his reason was the same, viz., that he had an earlier device, adjudged in the interference not to conform to the issue, which, however, embodied the broader claims later asserted. The Court of Appeals said:

"Assuming patentability, therefore, the question to be determined is whether, in view of the former proceedings in the Office culminating in the first declaration of interference between these same applications, and the final decision therein in favor of Blackford, Wilder is now deprived of the right to go back and amend by inserting broader claims dominating those that were by that decision awarded to Blackford? In other words is Wilder's right to make the amended claims and maintain the present interference thereon concluded by the former adjudication?

"Having had the right to make the broader claims in the earlier stages of the proceedings in the Patent Office, as well as the opportunity, in the first proceeding, to introduce all of his evidence relating to the construction and operation of his Exhibit E, structure, his right, in both respects, terminated with that litigation."

Blackford vs. Wilder, 28 App. D. C., 535.

Commissioner of Patents Mitchell said:

"No claim should be allowed to the defeated party which could, by any latitude of construction, be held to embrace matter common to the structure of both parties to the interference."

Ex parts Booth, 56 O. G., 141.

In Blackford vs. Wilder (supra), the Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia viewed the case from the standpoint of an estoppel, although the authority of the Commissioner was necessarily in question and it was implied that he lacked authority to issue a patent to the defeated party. In a subsequent case, the same court held directly to that effect and said:

"The remedy of the defeated party is by way of appeal. He has no right whatever thereafter to prosecute the claims of the issue in an ex parte case. It follows, therefore, that when Thomson and Lemp abandoned their appeals from the decision of the Primary Examiner denying their right to make the claims in issue, that decision became final and res adjudicata as between the parties to the interference, and that thereafter the Commissioner was without authority to direct the Primary Examiner to readjudicate in Thompson's and Lemp's ex parte applications the question whether they had the right to make the identical claims of the issue in the interference proceedings."

Ex rel. Newcomb Motor Co. vs. Moore, 30 App. D. C., 464.

This Court held that only by an adjudication in accordance with Section 4915 of the Revised Statutes has the Commissioner authority to issue a patent to one who has been adjudged a later inventor in an interference proceeding for an invention which was at issue in that proceeding.

U. S. ex rel. Hoe vs. Butterworth, 112 U. S., 50.

Section 4915 provides that, where a patent has been refused either by the Commissioner or on appeal from his decision, the applicant may bring a suit in equity to compel issue of a patent to him for his invention, and such adjudication, if in his favor, "shall authorize the Commissioner to issue such patent." There is no other authority by which the Commissioner can issue a patent on an invention for which he has once refused a patent.

Further, it is clear from Section 4904 of the Revised Statutes that the Commissioner has no authority to issue a patent for interfering subject matter to any party to the interference, except the one adjudged to be a prior inventor.

Where the Commissioner has no authority to issue a patent, his granting it cannot serve to made it valid.

Mahn vs. Harwood, 112 U. S., 354. Weston vs. Empire, 136 Fed., 599.

The argument of the assignee's attorney, which was to a considerable extent made in oral interviews, was, so far as appears from those parts of it which were in writing and are in the file wrapper (R., p. 1356, etc.), contrary to the law and did not correctly state the facts. No tribunal which passed on the case had conceded broad claims to Latham, as Mr. Abbott argued after the interference had ended, nor did the Court of Appeals of the District, or any other tribunal, adjudge Latham to be the prior inventor of any part of the subject matter which, as above shown, included what was afterwards awarded to Latham. It was held that what Latham claimed to have done at an earlier date, and had abandoned, had been defined as not patentable by the Patent Office and did not involve the invention which was the subject of the interference.

Therefore it is submitted that the Patent Office was without authority to issue the patent to Latham because, by so doing, it awarded to him a patent which deprived Armat of the benefit of the decision which had been rendered in his favor and of the monopoly to which he was thereby entitled.

2. THE INVENTION NOW CLAIMED FOR LATHAM WAS NOT THE INVENTION WHICH HE ORIGINALLY APPLIED FOR, AND A NEW INVENTION HAVING BEEN INSERTED IN HIS APPLICATION WITHOUT A NEW OATH, HIS PATENT IS INVALID.

Petitioner contends that the original claim 6 of the Latham patent, which is the nearest of the original claims to claim 7 here in issue, claims three toothed feed drums, and on that account the invention now claimed was contained in the original application. Such is not the fact.

Latham did not disclose, show or claim as his invention a device consisting of a continuous feed sprocket for maintaining a loop on which an intermittent sprocket acts. Nowhere in his original specification is there an indication that he conceived any such invention. He did not make oath that he had made such an invention. The original 6th claim which is now said to disclose it covered an entirely different combination, viz., three toothed feed drums plus the following elements:

- (1) A perforated picture bearing strip;
- (2) a driving shaft;
- (3) gearing transmitting the motion of said shaft to two of said drums;
- (4) broken gearing whereby the motion of said shaft is transmitted intermittently to remaining drum;
- (5) appliances for insuring slacks in the film above and below the intermittent drum, whereby each picture is momentarily brought to rest as it comes into line with the optical axis of the apparatus and the slacks of the film are alternately taken up and restored (R., p. 1338).

Element (4), viz., the broken gearing whereby the intermittent movement was obtained, was essential in this combination not only because it was made so by inserting it therein, but also because by that gearing Latham obtained the greater

period of rest and also of illumination, which was his primary idea and to which the feeding appliances were subsidiary. He conceived and believed his invention to rest on his success in obtaining this intermittent motion, but the claims as amended do not contain that element which was necessarily eliminated after the decision against Latham in the interference proceeding. There is no such element in the 7th claim, and without it claim 7 is for an entirely different combination and invention from that which originally resided in claim 6.

It was the combination of original claim 6 to which Latham made oath of inventorship. That combination is the combination necessary in the light of the Latham original specification to accomplish the purpose of the invention.

It does not follow that if Mr. Latham had been asked to make oath that he was the inventor of the combination now set forth in the 7th claim, he would have done so. Every indication is that he would not, first, because of the prior art, and, second, because he absolutely repudiated it. In his application for his patent No. 600,113, he said that for scientific purposes his friction feed apparatus, which is the antithesis of the positive feed of the patent in suit "is the only one of which I have any knowledge which is capable of giving anything like accurate results" and that "sprocket machines are apt to tear the picture strip besides being otherwise objectionable" (R., p. 1291, line 19).

The facts in this case are analogous to those in Steward vs. American Lava Co., 215 U.S., 161, where the specification was materially changed by a new attorney of the applicant without a new oath. The original specification spoke of producing a hollow-shaped funnel flame by reason of gas being forced through contracted openings at very great pressure, but the invention was not stated to rest in this feature. "He (Dolan) made no claim for a process and disclosed no invention of a device. This being so, the amendment (which rested the invention on the funnel-shaped flame)

required an oath that Dolan might have found it difficult to take and for want of it the patent is void."

Steward vs. American Lava Co., 215 U.S., at 168.

In the present case, as in Dolan's case, the original application for the patent mentioned the device or devices which were afterward inserted in the patent, but the applicant never made oath that he was the inventor of that device. On the contrary, his oath was that he had invented a different device. He never made a new oath that he was the inventor of the device for which the patent afterward issued, and there is nothing to show that he himself claimed to be an inventor of that device because, as above stated, there was no presumption when he filed his application that he claimed to be the inventor of anything except what he then described and claimed as his invention.

The rule of Steward vs. American Lava Company is based on well settled authority and has been applied to facts closely analogous to those in the case at bar.

Railway Co. vs. Sayles, 97 U. S., 554.

Eagleton vs. West, 111 U. S., 491.

Consolidated Co. vs. McKeesport, 40 Fed., 21 at 26.

Hestonville Co. vs. M'Duffee, 185 Fed., 798.

Ney Mfg. Co. vs. Swineford Co., 211 Fed., 469, at 472.

Judge Hand specially found that the "positive feed" claims of the patent in suit were for a "new invention" which was inserted in the patent without a new oath, and that those claims were, therefore, bad. He says:

"So much for the argument drawn from the formal change in the claims; but the vice goes to the essence. In his second patent, which, as I have said, he made expressly applicable to cameras and projectors, which operated by friction devices only, and the claims of which do not mention the pause feature, Latham had

spoken of that device as 'the only one of which I have any knowledge that is capable of giving anything like scientific purposes.' That accurate results' 'for means that the 'positive feed' of the patent in suit gave nothing like accurate results, as well as being apt to tear the films. Page 1, lines 19 to 22. Turning next to the patent in suit, we see the 'invention', as defined in the specifications, originally consisted, and still consists, of the positive feed only as a means to the full rest for purposes of illumination. The purpose of his invention was 'the stoppage of each picture during its exposure (to) permit the requisite quantity of light to pass through the condenser,' etc. It consists of three elements-means of bringing the film to rest, means of reducing the strain on the film arising from the rapid interruption and renewal, which the period of rest requires, and means for uniform winding and unwinding. Here is no suggestion that the accuracy of measurement is a factor, or that the positive feed is important, except as the pause requires rapid interruption and renewal. It is perfectly consistent with the second application, which was for accuracy of registration. Coming next to the original claims, the consistency continues. The first four are clearly directed at securing the necessary pause. Claims 6 and 7 are of the same character and refer to the same period of rest * * * The claims after January 17, 1902, do contain the 'positive feed,' some of them alone, and some still as a means of securing the required rest; and it was then the change first occurred.

"" * " In so far as the 'invention' resides now in the 'positive feed' feature, it is a complete abandonment of his position for nearly six years after the application was filed. In so far as it resides in the 'rest' features, it completely ignores the interference litigation as though it had never occurred. As to the former, I think I have already shown it in enough detail. There was no suggestion anywhere of it till the date I mention. There was repudiation of its accuracy in the

second patent. The means to secure the rest were of consequence only in so far as they actually did assure the period of rest. If the patent abandons that and substitutes the 'positive feed' as the patent, it has become a 'new invention' in every sense." (Italies supplied.)

Motion Picture Patents Co. vs. Independent M. P.

Co., 200 Fed. Rep., at pp. 416, 417.

It appears from the history of Latham's application that the plaintiff is in this position: If the positive feed mechanism was the original invention disclosed and claimed by Latham, it was involved in the interference which was decided against him and the patent for it was Armat's; but, if it was not the invention of his original specification and claims, then he has put in a new invention by his amendments without oath.

The Practical Value of the Latham Patent.

All motion picture projecting machines were licensed by the plaintiff under the Armat patent, the Latham patent and other patents on projectors acquired by the plaintiff, and the infringing machine, like practically all projecting machines, bears the notice that it is covered by those patents. The use of the projecting machines has been tied up with the film and the cameras, so that the plaintiff could impose terms on all users of such machines and, as the licenses covered all the patents, the licensees, pursuant to their agreements used the Latham patent.

Under these circumstances it cannot rightly be said that the fact that all projecting machines contain the combination set forth in the Latham patent is evidence that Latham made a highly valuable invention.

The success of those machines is largely accounted for by the invention of Edison, the invention of Armat and the other patentees under whose patents the machines are licensed to be manufactured. It is to be carefully noted also that, even if the success of the machine could in large part be attributed to the combination shown in the Latham patent, that has no bearing on the question as to whether Armat and Joly anticipated Latham. If the success of the machine is due to their invention, the credit of that success belongs to them and not to Latham. Nor does it have any bearing on other questions in the case, particularly as to the defendants' contention that the Patent Office was without authority to issue the patent to Latham, and that a new invention was inserted in the application without an oath, so that the patent was issued for a different invention from that in the original application.

Furthermore, while the plaintiff now claims that the invention of the Latham patent rests in the sprocket for obtaining accuracy and certainty of registration, it is proved by the defendants and admitted by the plaintiff (R., pp. 39, 40, x-Qs. 58, 61), that every projecting machine must have on it an apparatus usually termed the "framing device" for permitting an adjustment of the film and the sight opening or aperture to provide for the frequent disturbance of the original registration, caused by the tearing of, or wearing on, the perforations in the film and other defects therein. Mr. Hammer, in his testimony (R., p. 132), mentions a suit brought by the Nicholas Power Company, a manufacturer of projecting machines, for infringement of a patent for such a "framing device." So that the continuous and intermittent sprockets to some extent at least fail in the adventage and invention claimed for them, viz., accuracy of registration, and every moving picture projecting machine in the United States contains a device to permit the operator to readily compensate for and correct the inaccuracies and uncertainties and irregularities in the movement of the film by means of the sprockets.

The patent in suit also shows a device for aiding in the "accuracy and certainty" of registration, to wit; the frames

57 and 58 provided "so that the strip may be fed or moved with greater accuracy and certainty" (R., p. 721, line 257), which is further evidence that accuracy and certainty are not due to the sprockets alone, but that other devices not part of the seventh claim of the patent in suit materially contribute to that result.

In the case of the Nicholas Power Company, above referred to, Judge Mayer said:

"It was early discovered that some means must be provided to permit a relative adjustment of the film and the 'sight opening' or aperture, as now called, because even with the short lengths of film then used (50 or 100 feet) the original registration of the picture and opening would be disturbed by imperfections in the sprocket holes, splices in the film and the like, and necessitate readjustment or 'framing of the picture' to continue the exhibition."

Nicholas Power Co. v. C. R. Baird Co., 222 Fed. at 935-936.

While commercial success may turn the scale when the question of *invention* is in doubt, the facts above stated demonstrate that it is unsafe to predicate invention on large sales of a machine which contain the patented combination as one of many patented features some of which have been claimed and held to be highly valuable, and as to any other issue in the case it is absolutely immaterial.

The plaintiff has failed to prove that the defendants have infringed the patent in suit as alleged in the bill of complaint, for it appears that the Prague Amusement Company had an implied license to use that machine, and that the conditions sought to be imposed upon that use were unlawful, unreasonable and unenforceable and knowledge of them was not brought home to the defendants. Even had the defendants used the device of the patent without right, the

plaintiff cannot recover, for the patent is invalid, because it was anticipated by Armat and Joly, because there was no invention present in the patented combination in view of the patents to Edison and others, because the Patent Office was without authority to issue the patent in view of the interference proceedings and the requirements made of Armat, and also because the invention for which the patent purported to be issued was not the invention which Latham swore he had made and for which he originally applied. It appears also that, if any invention was made in connection with the work of Latham, it was made, so far as it is contained in the patent in suit, by Lauste. The development and success of the art of projecting moving pictures is due not to Latham, but to Edison, Armat, Power and others, whose inventions are used in the great majority of moving picture projecting machines in this country, but the Petitioner is endeavoring to continue the control it has enjoyed over the entire motion picture business by means of the Latham patent which, according to Petitioner's own claim, covers nothing more than pointed teeth on a wheel or drum.

The decree of the court below was right and should be affirmed.

OSCAR W. JEFFERY,
EDMUND WETMORE,
Counsel for Respondents.

JOHN B. STANCHFIELD, Of Counsel. MOTION PICTURE PATENTS COMPANY v. UNI-VERSAL FILM MANUFACTURING COMPANY ET AL.

CERTIORARI TO THE CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE SECOND CIRCUIT.

No. 715. Argued January 12, 15, 1917.—Decided April 9, 1917.

Under the patent law the grant by patent of the exclusive right to use, like the grant of the exclusive right to vend, is limited to the invention described in the claims of the patent, and that law does not empower the patent owner by notices attached to the things patented to extend the scope of the patent monopoly by restricting their use to materials necessary for their operation but forming no part of the patented invention, or to send such articles forth into the channels of trade subject to conditions as to use or royalty, to be imposed thereafter, in the vendor's discretion. The Button-Fastener Case, 77 Fed. Rep. 288, and Henry v. Dick Company, 224 U.S. 1, overruled.

In determining how far the owner of a patent may restrict the use after sale of machines embodying the invention, weight must be given to the rules long established that the scope of every patent is limited to the invention as described in the claims, read in the light of the specification, that the patentee receives nothing from the patent law beyond the right to restrain others from manufacturing, using or selling his invention, and that the primary purpose of that law is not to create private fortunes but is to promote the progress of science and the useful arts.

The extent to which the use of a patented machine may validly be restricted to specific supplies or otherwise by special contract between the owner of the patent and a purchaser or licensee, is a question outside of the patent law and not involved in this case.

235 Fed. Rep. 398, affirmed.

THE case is stated in the opinion.

Mr. Melville Church for petitioner:

The restrictions on the right to use the machine were fully brought home to the Prague Amusement Company

243 U.S.

and were binding. This is settled by Henry v. Dick Co., 224 U. S. 1, and no doubt is cast upon that case by Bauer v. O'Donnell, 229 U. S. 1, which did not involve the right to impose restrictions on use.

In the present case there were two distinct restrictions: First, that the machine should be used only with motion pictures leased from a manufacturer licensed by the plaintiff; and second, that the machine could not be used at all without compliance with terms previously fixed by the plaintiff. The first restriction is not repugnant to the Clayton Act of October 15, 1914, § 3, 38 Stat. 730; but even if it were, the lawfulness of the second restriction, which the Prague Company admittedly violated if it had notice, would not be affected. Oregon R. & U. Co. v. Windsor, 20 Wall. 64-72; U. S. &c. Co. v. Griffen, 126 Fed. Rep. 364-370. The two are independent and severable and the latter will support the plaintiff's right to exact a license agreement providing for a continuing royalty, which it might lawfully reserve and rely upon. St. Paul Plow Works v. Sparling, 140 U.S. 184. The \$5.00 received from the licensed manufacturer was but a paltry 31/2 per cent. of the selling price, and utterly inadequate. The nameplate gave notice of the facts in relation to patent ownership and that restrictions were placed by the plaintiff upon the use. The Prague Company was under a duty to inquire of the Precision Machine Company the terms of the license under which the machine was put out, or to make like inquiry of the plaintiff. Inquiry of the former would have shown that the Precision Company was inhibited from selling except for use "upon other terms" to be fixed by the licensor and relating to the payment of royalty. The same information would have been obtained by inquiry of plaintiff. Either line of inquiry, properly followed up (Shauer v. Alterton, 151 U.S. 607-622; Wood v. Carpenter, 101 U. S. 135-141), would have revealed the details of these "other terms" and resulted in the fixing of a royalty for use, to be paid only during use—a most reasonable arrangement.

Having failed to arrange for terms of royalty with the petitioner, the Prague Amusement Company never had a license to use and was and is, therefore, an infringer while using.

The distinction between the property rights conferred by patent and property rights in the machine, must be borne clearly in mind. The former are incorporeal, the latter corporeal, personal property. De La Vergne Machine Co. v. Featherstone, 147 U. S. 209-222. Under the patent laws, R. S. § 4898, the incorporeal rights are susceptible of infinite subdivision without impairment. Besides assignments and grants, the separate substantive, exclusive privileges of making, using, and selling may be parceled out by licenses with a wide variety of choice and combination as to time, place, method. Any such license may be granted for a lump sum or upon agreement for a continuing royalty. The patent owner can neither be required to make, use, or sell, nor to license others to do so. Paper Bag Patent Case, 210 U. S. 405, 425, 429. Upon a sale of the thing patented there is a transfer of the property in the thing itself but of only so much of the incorporeal patent rights as the owner chooses to relinquish. A sale outright without restriction passes both kinds of rights absolutely, but if, when selling, the patent owner restricts the purchaser's enjoyment of the incorporeal right of use conferred by the patent, any use by the purchaser beyond what is specifically authorized is an infringement upon the patent owner's reserved rights and may be restrained by the courts.

In the present case the machine proclaimed through the notice upon it that the right to use was restricted, and notified the purchaser to go to the plaintiff and make terms for the use, else it would be unlawful.

It is no objection that the notice itself did not state

the terms. Plainly and unmistakably it showed that the machine was not free but under the domination of the named patent owner who must be applied to. If the notice had been followed up, a reasonable royalty contract would have undoubtedly resulted. In ignoring the notice out of a desire to escape any royalty, the purchaser took its chances of being stopped for infringement.

There is no question but that plaintiff's remedy is on the patent for the tort. There was no contract. Respondent, having deliberately refused to make one, is estopped to claim a contract or that the plaintiff has mistaken its

remedy.

The liability of the other respondents is that of contributory infringers who knowingly coöperated in carrying on an unlicensed use. All the respondents are jointly and severally liable in tort. Lovejoy v. Murray, 3 Wall. 1-11; Walker on Patents, 4th ed., § 406, p. 343.

The patent in suit is valid. Plaintiff is not estopped,

as claimed, by proceedings in the Patent Office.

Mr. Oscar W. Jeffery, with whom Mr. Edmund Wetmore and Mr. John B. Stanchfield were on the brief, for respondents.

MR. JUSTICE CLARKE delivered the opinion of the court.

In this suit relief is sought against three defendant corporations as joint infringers of claim number seven of United States letters patent No. 707,934 granted to Woodville Latham, assignor, on August 26, 1902, for improvements in Projecting-Kinetoscopes. It is sufficient description of the patent to say that it covers a part of the mechanism used in motion picture exhibiting machines for feeding a film through the machine with a regular, uniform and accurate movement and so as not to expose the film to excessive strain or wear.

The defendants in a joint answer do not dispute the title

of the plaintiff to the patent but they deny the validity of it, deny infringement, and claim an implied license to use

the patented machine.

Evidence which is undisputed shows that the plaintiff on June 20, 1912, in a paper styled "License Agreement" granted to The Precision Machine Company a right and license to manufacture and sell machines embodying the inventions described and claimed in the patent in suit, and in other patents, throughout the United States, its territories and possessions. This agreement contains a covenant on the part of the grantee that every machine sold by it, except those for export, shall be sold "under the restriction and condition that such exhibiting or projecting machines shall be used solely for exhibiting or projecting motion pictures containing the inventions of reissued letters patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the licensor while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the licensor and complied with by the user while the said machine is in use and while the licensor owns said patents (which other terms shall only be the payment of a royalty or rental to the licensor while in use)."

The grantee further covenants and agrees that to each machine sold by it, except for export, it will attach a plate showing plainly not only the dates of the letters patent under which the machine is "licensed," but also

the following words and figures:

"Serial No.

"Patented No.

"The sale and purchase of this machine gives only the right to use it solely with moving pictures containing the invention of reissued patent No. 12,192, leased by a licensee of the Motion Picture Patents Company, the owner of the above patents and reissued patent, while it owns said patents, and upon other terms to be fixed by the Motion Picture Patents Company and complied with by the user while it is in use and while the Motion Picture

243 U.S.

Opinion of the Court.

Patents Company owns said patents. The removal or defacement of this plate terminates the right to use this machine."

The agreement further provides that the grantee shall not sell any machine at less than the plaintiff's list price, except to jobbers and others for purposes of resale and that it will require such jobbers and others to sell at not less than plaintiff's list price. The price fixed in the license contract for sale of machines after May 1st, 1909, is not less than \$150 for each machine and the licensee agrees to pay a royalty of \$5 on some machines and a percentage of the selling price on others.

It is admitted that the machine, the use of which is charged to be an infringement of the patent in suit, was manufactured by The Precision Machine Company and was sold and delivered under its "License Agreement" to the Seventy-second Street Amusement Company, then operating a playhouse on Seventy-second Street, in New York, and that when sold it was fully paid for and had attached to it a plate with the inscription which we have

quoted as required by the agreement.

Reissued patent 12,192, referred to in the notice attached to the machine, expired on August 31, 1914. The defendant Prague Amusement Company on November 2, 1914, leased the Seventy-second Street playhouse from the Seventy-second Street Amusement Company, and acquired the alleged infringing machine as a part of the equipment of the leased playhouse. Subsequent to the expiration of reissued patent 12,192 the defendant, Universal Film Manufacturing Company, made two films or reels, which, between March 4th and 17th, 1915, were sold to the defendant the Universal Film Exchange and on March 17, 1915, were supplied to the defendant Prague Amusement Company for use on the machine, acquired as we have stated, and were used upon it at the Seventysecond Street playhouse on March 18th, 1915.

On January 18, 1915, the plaintiff sent a letter to the Seventy-second Street Amusement Company, notifying it in general terms that it was using without a license a machine embodying the invention of patent No. 707,934 and warning it that such use constituted an infringement of the patent, and on the same day the plaintiff addressed a letter to the defendant Universal Film Exchange notifying it that it also was infringing the same patents by supplying films for use upon the machine of the Seventy-second Street playhouse and elsewhere. The bill in this case was filed on March 18, 1915.

The District Court held that the limitation on the use of the machine attempted to be made by the notice attached to it, after it had been sold and paid for, was invalid, and that the Seventy-second Street Amusement Company, the purchaser, and its lessee, the Prague Amusement Company, had an implied license to use the machine as it had been used, and it dismissed the bill without passing on the question raised in the pleadings as to the validity of the patent. The Circuit Court of Appeals affirmed the District Court (235 Fed. Rep. 398) and the case is here for review on certiorari.

It was admitted at the bar that 40,000 of the plaintiff's machines are now in use in this country and that the mechanism covered by the patent in suit is the only one with which motion picture films can be used success-

fully.

This state of facts presents two questions for decision: First. May a patentee or his assignee license another to manufacture and sell a patented machine and by a mere notice attached to it limit its use by the purchaser or by the purchaser's lessee, to films which are no part of the patented machine, and which are not patented?

Second. May the assignee of a patent, which has licensed another to make and sell the machine covered by it, by a mere notice attached to such machine, limit the

243 U.S.

Opinion of the Court.

use of it by the purchaser or by the purchaser's lessee to terms not stated in the notice but which are to be fixed, after sale, by such assignee in its discretion?

It is obvious that in this case we have presented anew the inquiry, which is arising with increasing frequency in recent years, as to the extent to which a patentee or his assignee is authorized by our patent laws to prescribe by notice attached to a patented machine the conditions of its use and the supplies which must be used in the operation of it, under pain of infringement of the patent.

The statutes relating to patents do not provide for any such notice and it can derive no aid from them. Revised Statutes, § 4900, requiring that patented articles shall be marked with the word "Patented" affects only the damages recoverable for infringement, Dunlap v. Schofield, 152 U. S. 244, and Rev. Stats., § 4901, protects by its penalties the inventor, but neither one contemplates the use of such a "License Notice" as we have here and whatever validity it has must be derived from the general and not from the patent law.

The extent to which the use of the patented machine may validly be restricted to specific supplies or otherwise by special contract between the owner of a patent and the purchaser or licensee is a question outside the patent law and with it we are not here concerned. Keeler v. Standard

Folding Bed Co., 157 U. S. 659.

The inquiry presented by this record, as we have stated it, is important and fundamental, and it requires that we shall determine the meaning of Congress when in Rev. Stats., § 4884, it provided that "Every patent shall contain . . . a grant to the patentee, his heirs or assigns, for the term of seventeen years, of the exclusive right to make, use, and vend the invention or discovery throughout the United States, and the Territories thereof." We are concerned only with the right to "use," authorized to be granted by this statute, for it is under warrant of this

right only that the plaintiff can and does claim validity for its warning notice.

The words used in the statute are few, simple and familiar, they have not been changed substantially since they were first used in the Act of 1790, c. 7, 1 Stat. 109; Bauer v. O'Donnell, 229 U. S. 1, 9, and their meaning would seem not to be doubtful if we can avoid reading into them that which they really do not contain.

In interpreting this language of the statute it will be of service to keep in mind three rules long established by this court, applicable to the patent law and to the construction

of patents, viz:

1st. The scope of every patent is limited to the invention described in the claims contained in it, read in the light of the specification. These so mark where the progress claimed by the patent begins and where it ends that they have been aptly likened to the description in a deed, which sets the bounds to the grant which it contains. It is to the claims of every patent, therefore, that we must turn when we are seeking to determine what the invention is, the exclusive use of which is given to the inventor by the grant provided for by the statute,—"He can claim nothing beyond them." Keystone Bridge Co. v. Phænix Iron Co., 95 U. S. 274; Railroad Co. v. Mellon, 104 U. S. 112, 118; Yale Lock Mfg. Co. v. Greenleaf, 117 U. S. 554, 559; McClain v. Ortmayer, 141 U. S. 419, 424.

2nd. It has long been settled that the patentee receives nothing from the law which he did not have before, and that the only effect of his patent is to restrain others from manufacturing, using or selling that which he has invented. The patent law simply protects him in the monopoly of that which he has invented and has described in the claims of his patent. United States v. American Bell Telephone Co., 167 U. S. 224, 239; Paper Bag Patent Case, 210 U. S. 405, 424; Bauer v. O'Donnell, 229 U. S. 1, 10.

3rd. Since Pennock v. Dialogue, 2 Pet. 1, was decided in

Opinion of the Court.

1829 this court has consistently held that the primary purpose of our patent laws is not the creation of private fortunes for the owners of patents but is "to promote the progress of science and useful arts" (Constitution, Art. I. § 8), an object and purpose authoritatively expressed by Mr. Justice Story, in that decision, saying:

"While one great object [of our patent laws] was, by holding out a reasonable reward to inventors, and giving them an exclusive right to their inventions for a limited period, to stimulate the efforts of genius; the main object was 'to promote the progress of science and useful arts."

Thirty years later this court, returning to the subject. in Kendall v. Winsor, 21 How. 322, again pointedly and

significantly says:

"It is undeniably true, that the limited and temporary monopoly granted to inventors was never designed for their exclusive profit or advantage; the benefit to the public or community at large was another and doubtless the primary object in granting and securing that monopolv."

This court has never modified this statement of the relative importance of the public and private interests involved in every grant of a patent, even while declaring that in the construction of patents and the patent laws. inventors shall be fairly, even liberally, treated. Grant v. Raymond, 6 Pet. 218, 241; Winans v. Denmead, 15 How.

330; Walker on Patents, § 185.

These rules of law make it very clear that the scope of the grant which may be made to an inventor in a patent, pursuant to the statute, must be limited to the invention described in the claims of his patent (104 U.S. 118, supra) and to determine what grant may lawfully be so made we must hold fast to the language of the act of Congress providing for it, which is found in two sections of the Revised Statutes. Section 4886 provides that "Any person who has invented or discovered any new and useful art, machine, manufacture or composition of matter, or any new and useful improvement thereof, . . . may . . . obtain a patent therefor"; and § 4884 provides that such patent when obtained "shall contain . . . a grant to the patentee, his heirs or assigns . . . of the exclusive right to . . . use . . . the invention or discovery."

Thus the inventor may apply for, and, if he meets the required conditions, may obtain, a patent for the new and useful invention which he has discovered, which patent shall contain a grant of the right to the exclusive use of his

discovery.

Plainly, this language of the statute and the established rules to which we have referred restrict the patent granted on a machine, such as we have in this case, to the mechanism described in the patent as necessary to produce the described results. It is not concerned with and has nothing to do with the materials with which or on which the machine operates. The grant is of the exclusive right to use the mechanism to produce the result with any appropriate material, and the materials with which the machine is operated are no part of the patented machine or of the combination which produces the patented result. The difference is clear and vital between the exclusive right to use the machine which the law gives to the inventor and the right to use it exclusively with prescribed materials to which such a license notice as we have here seeks to restrict it. The restrictions of the law relate to the useful and novel features of the machine which are described in the claims of the patent, they have nothing to do with the materials used in the operation of the machine; while the notice restrictions have nothing to do with the invention which is patented but relate wholly to the materials to be used with it. Both in form and in substance the notice attempts a restriction upon the use of the supplies only and it cannot with any regard to pro-

Opinion of the Court. 243 U. S.

priety in the use of language be termed a restriction upon the use of the machine itself.

Whatever right the owner may have to control by restriction the materials to be used in operating the machine must be derived through the general law from the ownership of the property in the machine and it cannot be derived from or protected by the patent law, which allows a grant only of the right to an exclusive use of the new and useful discovery which has been made—this

and nothing more.

This construction gives to the inventor the exclusive use of just what his inventive genius has discovered. It is all that the statute provides shall be given to him and it is all that he should receive, for it is the fair as well as the statutory measure of his reward for his contribution to the public stock of knowledge. If his discovery is an important one his reward under such a construction of the law will be large, as experience has abundantly proved. and if it be unimportant he should not be permitted by legal devices to impose an unjust charge upon the public in return for the use of it. For more than a century this plain meaning of the statute was accepted as its technical meaning, and that it afforded ample incentive to exertion by inventive genius is proved by the fact that under it the greatest inventions of our time, teeming with inventions, were made. It would serve no good purpose to amplify by argument or illustration this plain meaning of the statute. It is so plain that to argue it would obscure it.

It was not until the time came in which the full possibilities seem first to have been appreciated of uniting, in one, many branches of business through corporate organization and of gathering great profits in small payments, which are not realized or resented, from many, rather than smaller or even equal profits in larger payments, which are felt and may be refused, from a few, that it came to be thought that the "right to use . . . the invention" of a patent gave to the patentee or his assigns the right to restrict the use of it to materials or supplies not described in the patent and not by its terms made a part

of the thing patented.

The construction of the patent law which justifies as valid the restriction of patented machines, by notice, to use with unpatented supplies necessary in the operation of them, but which are no part of them, is believed to have originated in Heaton-Peninsular Button-Fastener Co. v. Eureka Specialty Co., 77 Fed. Rep. 288 (which has come to be widely referred to as the Button-Fastener Case), decided by the Circuit Court of Appeals of the Sixth Circuit in 1896. In this case the court, recognizing the pioneer character of the decision it was rendering, speaks of the "novel restrictions" which it is considering and says that it is called upon "to mark another boundary line around the patentee's monopoly, which will debar him from engrossing the market for an article not the subject of a patent," which it declined to do.

This decision proceeds upon the argument that, since the patentee may withold his patent altogether from public use he must logically and necessarily be permitted to impose any conditions which he chooses upon any use which he may allow of it. The defect in this thinking springs from the substituting of inference and argument for the language of the statute and from failure to distinguish between the rights which are given to the inventor by the patent law and which he may assert against all the world through an infringement proceeding and rights which he may create for himself by private contract which, however, are subject to the rules of general as distinguished from those of the patent law. While it is true that under the statutes as they were (and now are) a patentee might withhold his patented machine from public use, yet if he consented to use it himself or through others, such use immediately fell within the terms of the Opinion of the Court.

statute and as we have seen he is thereby restricted to the use of the invention as it is described in the claims of his patent and not as it may be expanded by limitations as to materials and supplies necessary to the operation of it

imposed by mere notice to the public.

The high standing of the court rendering this decision and the obvious possibilities for gain in the method which it approved led to an immediate and widespread adoption of the system, in which these restrictions expanded into more and more comprehensive forms until at length the case at bar is reached, with a machine sold and paid for yet claimed still to be subject not only to restriction as to supplies to be used but also subject to any restrictions or conditions as to use or royalty which the company which authorized its sale may see fit, after the sale, from time to time to impose. The perfect instrument of favoritism and oppression which such a system of doing business, if valid, would put into the control of the owner of such a patent should make courts astute, if need be, to defeat its operation. If these restrictions were sustained plainly the plaintiff might, for its own profit or that of its favorites, by the obviously simple expedient of varying its royalty charge, ruin anyone unfortunate enough to be dependent upon its confessedly important improvements for the doing of business.

Through the twenty years since the decision in the Button-Fastener Case was announced there have not been wanting courts and judges who have dissented from its conclusions, as is sufficiently shown in the division of this court when the question involved first came before it in Henry v. Dick Co., 224 U. S. 1, and in the disposition shown not to extend the doctrine in Bauer v. O'Donnell, 229 U. S. 1.

The exclusive right to "vend" a patented article is derived from the same clause of the section of the statute which gives the exclusive right to "use" such an article and following the decision of the Button-Fastener Case, it was widely contended as obviously sound, that the right existed in the owner of a patent to fix a price at which the patented article might be sold and resold under penalty of patent infringement. But this court, when the question came before it in Bauer v. O'Donnell, 229 U.S. 1, rejecting plausible argument and adhering to the language of the statute from which all patent right is derived, refused to give such a construction to the act of Congress, and decided that the owner of a patent is not authorized by either the letter or the purpose of the law to fix, by notice, the price at which a patented article must be sold after the first sale of it, declaring that the right to vend is exhausted by a single, unconditional sale, the article sold being thereby carried outside the monopoly of the patent law and rendered free of every restriction which the vendor may attempt to put upon it. The statutory authority to grant the exclusive right to "use" a patented machine is not greater, indeed it is precisely the same, as the authority to grant the exclusive right to "vend," and, looking to that authority, for the reasons stated in this opinion we are convinced that the exclusive right granted in every patent must be limited to the invention described in the claims of the patent and that it is not competent for the owner of a patent by notice attached to its machine to, in effect, extend the scope of its patent monopoly by restricting the use of it to materials necessary in its operation but which are no part of the patented invention, or to send its machines forth into the channels of trade of the country subject to conditions as to use or royalty to be paid to be imposed thereafter at the discretion of such patent owner. The patent law furnishes no warrant for such a practice and the cost, inconvenience and annoyance to the public which the opposite conclusion would occasion forbid it.

It is argued as a merit of this system of sale under a

243 U.S.

Opinion of the Court.

license notice that the public is benefited by the sale of the machine at what is practically its cost and by the fact that the owner of the patent makes its entire profit from the sale of the supplies with which it is operated. This fact, if it be a fact, instead of commending, is the clearest possible condemnation of, the practice adopted, for it proves that under color of its patent the owner intends to and does derive its profit, not from the invention on which the law gives it a monopoly but from the unpatented supplies with which it is used and which are wholly without the scope of the patent monopoly, thus in effect extending the power to the owner of the patent to fix the price to the public of the unpatented supplies as effectively as he may fix the price on the patented machine.

We are confirmed in the conclusion which we are announcing by the fact that since the decision of Henry v. Dick Co., 224 U.S. 1, the Congress of the United States, the source of all rights under patents, as if in response to that decision, has enacted a law making it unlawful for any person engaged in interstate commerce "to lease or make a sale or contract for sale of goods . . . machinery, supplies or other commodities, whether patented or unpatented, for use, consumption or resale . . . or fix a price charged therefor . . . on the condition, agreement or understanding that the lessee or purchaser thereof shall not use . . . the goods . . . machinery, supplies or other commodities of a competitor or competitors of the lessor or seller, where the effect of such lease, sale, or contract for sale or such condition, agreement or understanding may be to substantially lessen competition or tend to create a monopoly in any line of commerce." 38 Stat. 730.

Our conclusion renders it unnecessary to make the application of this statute to the case at bar which the Circuit Court of Appeals made of it but it must be accepted by us as a most persuasive expression of the public policy of our country with respect to the question before us.

It is obvious that the conclusions arrived at in this opinion are such that the decision in *Henry* v. *Dick Co.*, 224 U. S. 1, must be regarded as overruled.

Coming now to the terms of the notice attached to the machine sold to the Seventy-second Street Amusement Company under the license of the plaintiff and to the first

question as we have stated it.

This notice first provides that the machine, which was sold to and paid for by the Amusement Company may be used only with moving picture films containing the invention of reissued patent No. 12,192, so long as the plaintiff continues to own this reissued patent.

Such a restriction is invalid because such a film is obviously not any part of the invention of the patent in suit; because it is an attempt, without statutory warrant, to continue the patent monopoly in this particular character of film after it has expired, and because to enforce it would be to create a monopoly in the manufacture and use of moving picture films, wholly outside of the patent in suit and of the patent law as we have interpreted it.

The notice further provides that the machine shall be used only upon other terms (than those stated in the notice) to be fixed by the plaintiff, while it is in use and while the plaintiff "owns said patents." And it is stated at the bar that under this warrant a charge was imposed upon the purchaser graduated by the size of the theater

in which the machine was to be used.

Assuming that the plaintiff has been paid an average royalty of \$5 on each machine sold, prescribed in the icense agreement, it has already received over \$200,000 for the use of its patented improvement, which relates only to the method of using the films which another had invented, and yet it seeks by this device to collect during the life of the patent in suit what would doubtless aggre-

243 U. S. Holmes, McKenna, and Van Devanter, JJ., dissenting.

gate many times this amount for the use of this same invention, after its machines have been sold and paid for.

A restriction which would give to the plaintiff such a potential power for evil over an industry which must be recognized as an important element in the amusement life of the nation, under the conclusions we have stated in this opinion, is plainly void, because wholly without the scope and purpose of our patent laws and because, if sustained, it would be gravely injurious to that public interest, which we have seen is more a favorite of the law than is the promotion of private fortunes.

Both questions as stated must be answered in the negative and the decree of the Circuit Court of Appeals is

Affirmed.

MR. JUSTICE McREYNOLDS concurs in the result.

MR. JUSTICE HOLMES, dissenting.

I suppose that a patentee has no less property in his patented machine than any other owner, and that in addition to keeping the machine to himself the patent gives him the further right to forbid the rest of the world from making others like it. In short, for whatever motive, he may keep his device wholly out of use. Continental Paper Bag Co. v. Eastern Paper Bag Co., 210 U. S. 405, 422. So much being undisputed, I cannot understand why he may not keep it out of use unless the licensee, or, for the matter of that, the buyer, will use some unpatented thing in connection with it. Generally speaking the measure of a condition is the consequence of a breach, and if that consequence is one that the owner may impose unconditionally, he may impose it conditionally upon a certain event. Ashley v. Ryan, 153 U. S. 436, 443. Lloyd v. Dollison, 194 U. S. 445, 449. Non debet, cui plus licet, quod minus est non licere. D. 50, 17, 21.

HOLMES, McKenna and Van Devanter, JJ., dissenting. 243 U.S.

No doubt this principle might be limited or excluded in cases where the condition tends to bring about a state of things that there is a predominant public interest to prevent. But there is no predominant public interest to prevent a patented tea pot or film feeder from being kept from the public, because, as I have said, the patentee may keep them tied up at will while his patent lasts. Neither is there any such interest to prevent the purchase of the tea or films, that is made the condition of the use of the machine. The supposed contravention of public interest sometimes is stated as an attempt to extend the patent law to unpatented articles, which of course it is not, and more accurately as a possible domination to be established by such means. But the domination is one only to the extent of the desire for the tea pot or film feeder, and if the owner prefers to keep the pot or the feeder unless you will buy his tea or films, I cannot see in allowing him the right to do so anything more than an ordinary incident of ownership, or at most, a consequence of the Paper Bag Case, on which, as it seems to me, this case ought to turn. See Grant v. Raymond, 6 Pet. 218, 242.

Not only do I believe that the rule that I advocate is right under the Paper Bag Case, but I think that it has become a rule of property that law and justice require to be retained. For fifteen years, at least since Bement v. National Harrow Co., 186 U. S. 70, 88-93, if not considerably earlier, the public has been encouraged by this court to believe that the law is as it was laid down in Heaton-Peninsular Button-Fastener Co. v. Eureka Specialty Co., 77 Fed. Rep. 288, 25 C. C. A. 267, and numerous other decisions of the lower courts. I believe that many and important transactions have taken place on the faith of those decisions, and that for that reason as well as for the first that I have given, the rule last announced in Henry v. Dick Co., 224 U. S. 1, should be maintained.

I will add for its bearing upon Straus v. Victor Talking

243 U.S.

Syllabus.

Machine Co., ante, 490, that a conditional sale retaining the title until a future event after delivery, has been decided to be lawful again and again by this court. Bailey v. Baker Ice Machine Co., 239 U. S. 268, 272. I confine myself to expressing my views upon the general and important questions upon which I have the misfortune to differ from the majority of the court. I leave on one side the question of the effect of the Clayton Act, as the court has done, and also what I might think if the Paper Bag Case were not upheld, or if the question were upon the effect of a combination of patents such as to be contrary to the policy that I am bound to accept from the Congress of the United States.

Mr. JUSTICE McKenna and Mr. JUSTICE VAN DE-VANTER concur in this dissent.

END

OF

CASE